2025 INSTALLATION GUIDE

WHAT'S NEW FOR 2025:

- » **Page 9** Updated Care and Cleaning Signature and Aluminum Railing
- » **Page 30** Updated Decking SKUs
- » **Page 31** Updated Fastener SKU's
- » **Page 37** Updated Dock Applications
- » **Page 41** Added Canada CCMC span and gapping requirements
- » **Page 68** Updated Railing SKU's
- » **Page 267** Added Select Mesh Rail
- » **Page 281** Added Select Aluminum Railing
- » **Page 282** Added Aluminum Post Sleeve
- » **Page 294** Added Enhance Steel Rail
- » **Page 311** Updated Cladding SKU's
- » **Page 316** Updated Warranties
- » **Page 327** Updated color palette

NEED HELP?

Trex provides a variety of valuable resources to answer your questions or concerns. For additional assistance, check out:

- » **Trex.com**
  Here you will find a wealth of useful information on Trex's extensive products including: installation, care and cleaning instructions and videos, technical help, and FAQs. You can also find inspiring photos of deck projects, steps to help you plan and start your project, and tips for selecting the right deck builder. At **trex.com**, you can request information, register your warranty, and reach out to customer service representatives who can answer even more questions.

- » Call **1-800-BUY-TREX (1-800-289-8739)** and speak to a Customer Loyalty Advocate who can answer your questions.

Refer to ***www.trex.com*** for up-to-date installation and technical documents that may not be found in this printed guide.

This symbol indicates text continues to next page.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

CONTENTS

SECTION ONE: General Information

Safety 5
Tools 5
Care and Cleaning 6

SECTION TWO: Planning Ahead

Decking 11
Railing (Including ADA Handrail) 11
Lighting 11
Trex® RainEscape® Drainage System 11
Installing Hot Tubs, Planters, and Seating 12
Installing Fireplaces and/or Fire Pits 12
Installing Trex® Pergola 12
Installing Trex® Spiral Stairs 12
Installing Trex® Outdoor Kitchens 12

SECTION THREE: Lighting

How to Install Trex® Outdoor Lighting™

Outdoor Lighting SKUs 14
Parts List/Tools Needed 15
Lighting and Wiring Overview 15
Helpful Tips 15
General Information 16
Planning 16
Installing Wiring 16
Making Connections 16
Timer Operation Instructions 17
Installing Post Cap Lights 17
Installing Deck Rail Lights 17
Installing Riser Lights 18
Installing Recessed Deck Lights 18

How to Install Trex Signature® Post Cap Light 19

How to Install Trex® Wedge Deck Rail Light 20

How to Install Trex® Solar Post Cap Light 22

Trex® Wifi Controller Setup 26

SECTION FOUR: Decking

Decking, Fascia, and Fastener SKUs 30
Decking and Fascia Recommended Fasteners 32
Trex® Fascia Installation Recommendations 34
Framing and Fastening Tips 37
Rooftop and Sleeper Deck Systems 38
Metal Framing Requirements and Gapping 39
Code Compliance 40
Gapping and Overhang 41
Important Notes Before Installing Trex Decking 42
Routing Square-Edged Boards for Trex Hideaway Hidden Fasteners 42
Abutted Board Attachment Requirements 42
Trex Hideaway® One-Step Hidden Fastener Tool Instructions 43
Butt Joint Clip Instructions 45
Installing Decking without One-Step Tool 46
Replacing Decking 47
Trex Hideaway® Deck Plug for Trex Transcend® and Trex Select® Decking 48
Trex Hideaway® Deck Plug for Trex Enhance® Decking 49
Trex Hideaway® Fascia Plug 50
Trex® Color Match Composite Screw 51
Trex® Fascia Color-Match Composite Screw 52
Spanning Requirements For Trex Stairs 53
Stairs 53
Installing Trex Stair Treads Installed with Hidden Fasteners 54
Location and Installation of Surface Mount Post – Decking 55
Parts List/Tools and Materials Needed 55
How to Install Post Mounts on Pressure-Treated Wood Framing 55
How to Install Guide Blocks 56
How to Install Railing System of Choice 57
Location and Installation of Post Mounts – Concrete 57
How to Install Joist Mount Posts 59
Inside Mount 60
Fascia Mount 64

SECTION FIVE: Railing

Post Sleeves, Caps and Skirts SKUs 68
Trex Signature Aluminum Railing SKUs 69
Trex Transcend Railing SKUs 71
Trex Select Railing SKUs 72
Trex Enhance SKUs 74
Aluminum ADA Compliant Handrail SKUs 74
Aluminum Gates SKUs 74

Trex Signature® Railing

Parts List/Determining Balusters Needed 75
Installing Trex Signature Posts and/or Trex Signature Crossover Posts on Wood or Concrete 76
Installing Pressure-Treated Post, Post Sleeves, and Skirts to Use with Trex Signature Railing 77
Installing Trex Signature Posts on Concrete 77
Railing Configurations 78
Bracket Hardware – Horizontal Applications 79
How to Install Horizontal Railing 80
How to Install Horizontal Line and Corner Crossover Brackets 81
How to Install Horizontal Railing Post to Post 83
How to Install Horizontal Railing Post to Crossover Post 87
How to Install Horizontal Railing Crossover Post to Crossover Post 90
How to Install Cocktail Railing 94
How to Install Traditional Railing 95
How to Install Horizontal Swivel Brackets 97
How to Install Horizontal Swivel Railing 98
Bracket Hardware – Stair Applications 100
How to Install Stair Posts and Stair Railing 101
Attaching Fixed Stair Brackets and Rails to Trex Signature Posts and Pressure-Treated Posts and Post Sleeves 102
Attaching Stair Swivel/Compound Swivel Brackets And Rails To Trex Signature Posts And Pressure-Treated Post And Post Sleeves 106
Attaching Crossover Swivel Bracket On Trex Signature Post 109
Attaching Stair Rails In Crossover Post Applications 109
How To Install Signature Cocktail Stair Railing 112
How To Install Signature Traditional Stair Railing 114
How to Install Signature Horizontal Curved Railing 116

Trex® Signature® Panels

Parts List/Tools Needed 119
Bracket Hardware – Horizontal Applications 120
How to Install Horizontal Panels 121
Parts List Stair Panels 125
Bracket Hardware – Stair Applications 126
How to Install Stair Panels 127

TREX INSTALLATION GUIDE

CONTENTS/CONTINUED

Trex Signature® Rod Rail
- Parts List/Tools Needed ... 133
- Railing Configurations ... 134
- Bracket Hardware – Horizontal Rail Applications ... 135
- How to Install Horizontal Brackets ... 136
- How to Install Horizontal Standard Rod Rail ... 138
- How to Install Horizontal Cocktail Rod Rail ... 142
- How to Install Horizontal Traditional Rod Rail ... 144
- Bracket Hardware – Rod Rail Stair Applications ... 145
- How to Install Standard Rod Rail Stair ... 147
- How to Install Crossover Swivel Brackets ... 153
- How to Install Cocktail Rod Rail Stair ... 155
- How to Install Traditional Rod Rail Stair ... 157

Trex Signature® Glass Railing
- Parts List/Tools Needed ... 158
- How to Install Signature Glass Railing ... 159
- How to Install Horizontal Fixed Brackets ... 159
- How to Install Horizontal Swivel Brackets ... 160

Trex Signature® Mesh Railing
- Parts List/Tools Needed - Horizontal Mesh ... 165
- Horizontal Mesh Configurations ... 166
- How to Install Mesh Brackets ... 167
- How to Install Mesh Swivel Brackets ... 168
- How to Install Horizontal Mesh Railing ... 169
- How to Install Horizontal Mesh Cocktail Railing ... 174
- How to Install Mesh Traditional Railing ... 176
- Parts List/Tools Needed - Mesh Stair Railing ... 177
- How to Install Mesh Stair Railing Posts/Bracket Hardware ... 178
- How to Install Mesh Stair Railing ... 180
- How to Install Mesh Cocktail Stair Railing ... 189
- How to Install Mesh Traditional Stair Railing ... 191

Trex Signature® X-Series™
- How to Install Posts ... 192
- How to Install Horizontal Cable Rail ... 194
- How to Install Stair Cable Rail ... 206
- How to Install Horizontal Frameless Glass Rail ... 217

Trex Aluminum Gate
- How to Install Aluminum Gate ... 221

Trex Transcend® Railing
- Parts List/Determining Balusters Needed - Horizontal Railing ... 223
- Railing Configurations ... 224
- How to Install Standard Railing ... 225
- How to Install Cocktail Railing ... 227
- How to Install Traditional Railing ... 229
- How to Install On-An-Angle Railing ... 230
- How to Install Crown and Universal Bird's Mouth Railing ... 231
- Parts List/Determining Balusters Needed -Stair Railing ... 233
- Stair Rail Configurations ... 234
- How to Install Standard Stair Railing ... 235
- How to Install Cocktail Stair Railing ... 239
- How to Install Traditional Stair Railing ... 240

Trex Select® Classic Railing
- Parts List/Determining Balusters Needed - Horizontal Rail ... 241
- Horizontal Railing Configurations ... 242
- How to Install Standard Horizontal Railing ... 243
- How to Install Cocktail Horizontal Railing ... 245
- How to Install Traditional Horizontal Railing ... 247
- How to Install On-An-Angle Railing ... 248
- Parts List/Determining Balusters Needed - Stair Railing Applications ... 249
- Stair Railing Configurations ... 250
- How to Install Standard Stair Railing ... 251
- How to Install Cocktail Stair Railing ... 254
- How to Install Traditional Stair Railing ... 255
- Parts List/Determining Balusters Needed - T-Rail® Horizontal Rail ... 257
- How to Install T-Rail® Horizontal Rail ... 257
- How to Install T-Rail® 22.5˚ Horizontal Rail ... 260
- Parts List T-Rail® Birdsmouth Horizontal Rail ... 261
- How to Install T-Rail® Birdsmouth Horizontal Rail ... 262
- Parts List/Determining Balusters Needed - T-Rail® Stair Rail ... 263
- How to Install T-Rail® - Stair Rail ... 264
- Parts List Horizontal Mesh Railing ... 267
- How to Install Horizontal Mesh Railing ... 268
- Parts List/Tools Needed - Mesh Stair Railing ... 273
- How to Install Mesh Stair Railing ... 274
- Aluminum Posts ... 281
- Installing Aluminum Posts on Pressure-treated Wood Framing (Corner Post Installation) ... 281
- Aluminum Post Sleeve ... 282
- Parts List/Tools Needed - Aluminum Horizontal Rail Panel ... 283
- How to Install Aluminum Horizontal Rail Panel ... 283
- How to Install Aluminum Horizontal Rail Panel Cocktail Configurations ... 287
- How to Install Aluminum Horizontal Rail Panel Traditional Configurations ... 288
- How to Install Aluminum Horizontal Rail Panel Swivel Brackets ... 290
- Tools Needed - Aluminum Stair Rail Panel ... 291
- How to Install Aluminum Stair Rail Panel ... 291

Trex Enhance® Steel Railing
- Steel Posts ... 294
- Installing Steel Posts on Pressure-treated Wood Framing (Corner Post Installation) ... 294
- Parts List Steel Rail Horizontal Panel ... 296
- How to Install Steel Rail Horizontal Panel ... 296
- How to Install Steel Horizontal Rail Panel Cocktail Configurations ... 299
- How to Install Steel Horizontal Rail Panel Traditional Configurations ... 301
- How to Install Steel Horizontal Rail Panel Swivel Brackets ... 303
- Tools Needed - Steel Rail Stair Panel ... 304
- How to Install Steel Rail Stair Panel ... 304

Trex Aluminum ADA-Compliant Handrail
- ADA Handrail Guidelines ... 306
- Ramp Application ... 306
- ADA Railing Profiles ... 307
- Hardware ... 307
- How to Install Trex Aluminum ADA-Compliant Components ... 308

Trex® Cladding
- How To Install Open-Joint Cladding ... 311

SECTION SIX: Warranties
- Trex® Decking, Fascia & Cladding Limited Warranty ... 316
- Trex® Fasteners Limited Warranty ... 318
- Trex® Steel Railing Limited Warranty ... 320
- Trex® Aluminum and Composite Railing and Ancillary Products Limited Warranty ... 322
- TrexPro® Residential Labor Limited Warranty ... 324
- Color Palette ... 325

Safety

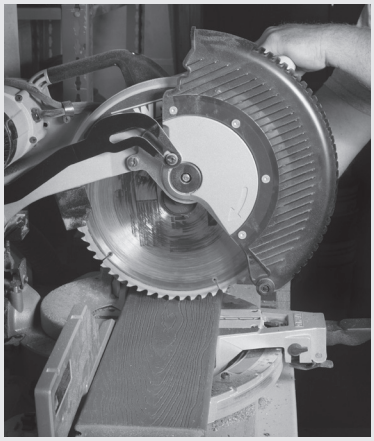
When working on any construction project, you should wear protective clothing and safety equipment. Wear safety glasses, gloves, a dust mask and long sleeves, particularly when cutting in confined spaces.

Trex decking and railing are heavier and more flexible than wood. **DO NOT** try to lift the same quantity of Trex boards as you would traditional lumber. Go to ***www.trex.com*** for Safety Data Sheets (SDS).

Tools

SAWS

Miter Saw:
When using a miter saw we recommend using the Trex Blade™ or a carbide-tipped blade with 60 teeth or more. The Trex Blade comes in three different sizes and is ideal for cutting all Trex decking and railing products.



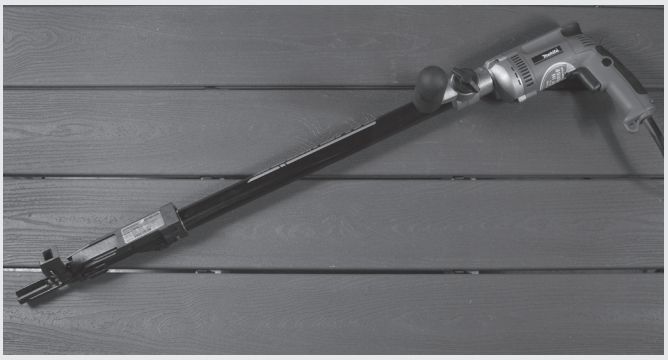
Jigsaw:
For detailed and/or small cuts (i.e., cutting deck board to fit around a post), a jigsaw with a carbide-tipped blade can be used.

DRILLS

Install Trex recommended fasteners with standard power drills, impact drivers (use care if using impact drivers), or right angle drills.

SPECIFIC DECK BOARD ATTACHMENT TOOLS

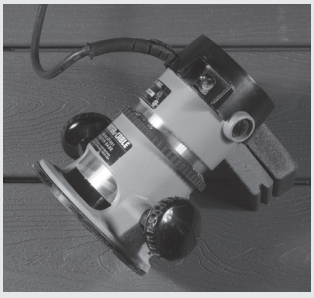
Screw Guns:

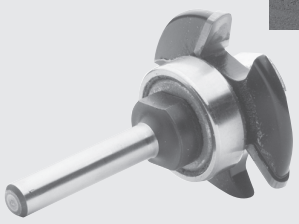


Some Trex recommended deck fasteners are compatible with screw guns. Refer to the recommended fasteners page for more information.

TigerClaw® Pneumatic Gun:
If choosing the TigerClaw TC-G Hidden Fasteners, the TigerClaw pneumatic gun is a terrific option that allows for quicker install time.

Trex Router Bit:
Trex decking routs to give extremely crisp edges when using the Trex Router Bit with standard router, and can be used with all Trex Hideaway Hidden Fasteners.





**Trex® Blade™ is manufactured and sold by Freud Tools, Inc. under a Trademark License Agreement with Trex Company, Inc.*

**Tiger Claw® is a registered trademark of Tiger Claw, Inc.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SIGNATURE®, TRANSCEND®, ENHANCE® AND TREX SELECT® DECKING–Care and Cleaning Guide

All exterior building materials require cleaning. Generally, soap and water is all that is required to clean all Trex Decking products. For Trex Signature decking, some cleaning agents or chemicals such as solvents, acids or plasticizers can damage the surface of Trex Signature decking. Examples may include insect repellents, sunscreen products, or degreasing cleaning agents. Always refer to manufacturing labels as well as contact Trex customer care to determine if a specific product is safe to use. Many products will contain warning information regarding damage to plastic and these such products should never be used on Trex Signature decking. Refer to Trex.com for cleaning recommendations for early generation decking products.

Problem	Solution
Dirt and Debris	The affected area should be sprayed off with a hose to remove surface debris. Use warm soapy water and a soft bristle brush to remove dirt and debris from the embossing pattern.
Using a Pressure Washer (General Cleaning Issues)	A pressure washer with **no greater** than 3100 psi** that has a fan attachment/adjustment and soap dispenser may be used to remove dirt or mud. Spray deck with soap, then follow by gently scrubbing each deck board with a soft bristle brush. Spray/rinse each individual deck board using a fan tip no closer than 8-in (203 mm) from the decking surface. **RINSE THOROUGHLY.** If dirty water from cleaning is left to dry, a film will remain on the decking surface.
Issues with Concrete, Cement, Mortar, or Stucco Dust	When working with cement, concrete, mortar, or stucco, protect the decking as much as possible in order to not get dust particles on the decking surface. These particles, once they get hot or wet, can cause a reaction on the decking surface and are very difficult to remove. If particles get on the decking surface, Trex recommends using Sakrete™ Concrete Dissolver (***www.sakrete.com/products/concrete-dissolver***). BE SURE TO FOLLOW MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS.
Hard Water Staining	Hard water is water with high amounts of mineral deposits like lime, silica and calcium. When the water dries, deposits are left behind, leaving unsightly spots on surfaces. This is not a defect of Trex products but an issue with the water itself. Generally, these deposits can be cleaned with white vinegar on decking surfaces. Rinsing is required, so care should be taken to not use hard water for this purpose. If hard water must be used, dry with a cloth or use a blower to dry surfaces. In some cases a deck brightener product may also be used to help clean hard water stains.
Chalk Lines	Most colored chalks are permanent and may discolor the surface. Use only Irwin Strait-Line Dust-Off Marking Chalk (purple), DeWalt® Blue Chalk, or DeWalt® Orange High Visibility Chalk.
Tannins Due to Debris	Remove all debris from the deck using a hose or broom. Once the deck surface is dry, apply a deck "brightener"* to the deck as directed by the manufacturer. Deck Brighteners contain oxalic acid, which will also remove tannins.
Ice and Snow	A plastic shovel may be used to remove snow from the deck. Use calcium chloride or rock salt to melt the snow and ice from the deck surface.
Oil, Grease, and Food	All food spills should be removed as soon as possible. **The surface must be cleaned within seven days to maintain the stain warranty.** To remove, spray off with a hose and use warm, soapy water and a soft bristle brush (do not use a wire brush) to remove spills from the embossing pattern.
Mold and Mildew	If debris such as pollen and dirt is allowed to remain on the deck surface, mold can feed on the biofilm. Using a hose and warm, soapy water with a soft bristle brush (do not use a wire brush) is recommended to remove the food source and mold.

TREX SIGNATURE®, TRANSCEND®, ENHANCE® AND TREX SELECT® DECKING-Care and Cleaning Guide

Problem	Solution
Trex and Static Electricity	While this is not common, static electricity can occur on walking surfaces in dry climates or in areas where dry winds and dust-borne particles lay on the decking surfaces. Static electricity can build up on occupants walking across any composite decking surface, including Trex, then produce a small static shock if they touch a grounded metal surface such as railing, door, etc. This condition can be decreased greatly with the use of a product call ACL Staticide®. Two products tested were General Purpose Staticide® and Heavy Duty Staticide®. Both are effective in greatly reducing static electricity on Trex decking surfaces. Apply full strength, using a mop on a dry decking surface, and allow to dry; no rinsing or diluting needed. Products are non-toxic, non-flammable, non-staining (will not change the color of decking surface), completely biodegradable, and safe to use. Product is water-based and may require a second application after rain or other weather conditions. Over a period of time, the effect of static will dissipate naturally on the decking surface. See link for more information on product: ***https://www.aclstaticide.com/categories/anti-static-coatings***
Rubber Mats	Use caution when using rubber-backed mats i.e., welcome mats, etc. as these may contain substances that can sometimes discolor or lighten the decking surface.
Curving Trex Decking	There are methods to heat Trex decking to a high enough temperature to achieve a desired curved radius. Please contact Trex for additional details. Trex Signature and Trex Enhance decking cannot be curved.
Material Handling/ Storage	Store decking on a flat level surface and ALWAYS use proper supports (dunnage). **DO NOT** store directly on the ground. When stacking Signature, Transcend, or Select decking as well as all fascia products, bundles, supports (dunnage) should start approximately 10″ (254 mm) from each end (Enhance decking should start approximately 18″ (457 mm) from each end) and be spaced approximately 2′ (0.61m) on center. In addition, supports (dunnage) should line up vertically/perpendicular to the decking product. Adjust support blocks (dunnage) accordingly if bundles are loose. For Select decking, Enhance decking, and 1x12 and 1x8 products, the maximum stack height is 12 bundles. For all other decking products maximum stack height is 14 bundles **(IMPORTANT TO NOTE THAT PROPER DUNNAGE SPACING MUST BE IN PLACE FOR THESE HEIGHTS).** When stacking multiple bundles, ensure that dunnage lines up vertically down through each stack. ALWAYS cover decking products on site until ready to be installed.

Sakrete™ is a trademark of Oldcastle APG, a CRH Company.

**Use of products containing bleach or acid can lighten the surface of Trex. Use in an inconspicuous area to determine whether you like the effect. Product will affect the structural integrity of Trex.*

***Use of a pressure washer greater than 3100 psi could damage the boards and void the warranty.*

NOTES:

- **Refer to www.trex.com to view a general care and cleaning video for Transcend, Enhance, and Select decking.**
- **Refer to www.trex.com for a care and cleaning guide for Trex Early-Generation Composite and PVC Decking.**

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX TRANSCEND®, TREX ENHANCE®, AND TREX SELECT® RAILING CARE AND CLEANING GUIDE

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex® railing is important. The occasional wash is recommended as over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

For installations where the atmosphere is influenced by bodies of salt water or other contaminant conditions, cleaning is required every 6 to 9 months. Failure to adhere to the required cleaning guidelines will void the Trex Limited Warranty with respect to any condition resulting from such failure. For purposes of any warranty claim, you should retain documentation of the cleaning date, cleaning method used, brand and amount of chemical used, and invoice from cleaning company (or a receipt for chemicals used).

- Never use acetone or other solvents on composite railings as this can damage/dull the surface.

- For color transfer issues (from attachment of baluster spacer), use Mr. Clean® Magic Eraser® Original or Plexus® Plastic Cleaner to help remove this. Note that Plexus Plastic Cleaner can only be used on PVC/acrylic railings and balusters and cannot be used on metal railings or metal balusters.

- For small surface scratches, marks, or scuffs, use Dupli-Color® Scratch Seal® Clear Sealer Pen.

- Hard water is water with a high amount of mineral deposits like lime, silica, and calcium. When the water dries, deposits are left behind, leaving unsightly spots or a “film-like” substance on railing and decking surfaces. For hard water issues on railing, these can be cleaned with Mr. Clean® Magic Eraser® Original or white vinegar. After applying products to surface, some gentle scrubbing would be needed on the surface to help loosen deposits, and rinsing is required, so care should be taken to not use hard water for this purpose, and if it must be used dry with a cloth or use a blower to dry railing.

Mr. Clean® and Magic Eraser® are registered trademarks of The Proctor and Gamble Company.
Plexus® is a registered trademark of BTI Chemical Company Inc.
Dupli-Color® and Scratch Seal®are registered trademarks of Dupli-Color Products Company.

TREX SIGNATURE®, TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™, TREX SELECT™ ALUMINUM RAILING CARE AND CLEANING GUIDE

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex Aluminum Railing system is important. After installation of any Trex railing system, it is recommended to complete an initial cleaning to remove any dirt or contaminants that may have accumulated during installation. The occasional wash is recommended as, over time, your railing system may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

Regular cleaning may minimize the effects of weathering and remove dirt, grime and other build-up. The best method of maintaining the appearance of your Trex Aluminum Railing system is to occasionally wash it using a solution of warm water and a non-abrasive, pH neutral detergent solution. The railing surface should be thoroughly rinsed after cleaning to remove all residues. Use a soft white cloth, sponge or a soft bristle brush. It is recommended to test cleaning products on a small, inconspicuous area before use.

PRODUCT	RECOMMENDED CLEANERS
Trex Signature® Railing, Trex Signature® X-Series™ Railing, Trex Select™ Aluminum Railing	*» Formula 409® Multi-Surface Cleaner* *» Spray Nine® Heavy Duty Cleaner/Degreaser* *» Fantastik® Disinfectant Multi-Purpose Cleaner* *» Windex® Original Glass Cleaner*
Trex Signature® X-Series™ Cable Rail *Specifically for the stainless steel cable infill/assemblies on Trex Signature® X-Series™ Cable Rail*	*» Boeshield T-9®* *» RustFree™* For optimal results, it is recommended to apply Boeshield T-9® after installation and each regular cleaning. Use RustFree™ to remove rust, corrosion and stains from stainless steel cables and hardware; use Boeshield T-9® after cleaning with RustFree™ to protect bare metal surfaces. Follow manufacturer's instructions for proper application and use of both products. Regular maintenance of the cables is recommended. This includes, but is not limited to, inspection of cable fittings/hardware and general cleaning. It is the responsibility of the owner, at a minimum, to inspect the fittings/hardware once every 12 months. Over time, hardware may loosen and require adjustment and/or tightening. Hardware may also discolor over time. This is cosmetic and will not affect the integrity and strength of the hardware.
DO NOT clean Trex Signature railing with solvents such as thinners or solutions containing chlorinated hydrocarbons, esters or ketones.	

For installations where the atmosphere is influenced by bodies of salt water or other contaminant conditions, cleaning is required every 6 to 9 months. Failure to adhere to the required cleaning guidelines will void the Trex Limited Warranty with respect to any condition resulting from such failure. For purposes of any warranty claim, you should retain documentation of the cleaning date, cleaning method used, brand and amount of chemical used, and invoice from cleaning company (or a receipt for chemicals used).

NOTE: Even by strictly following the above instructions, stainless steel products may corrode, discolor and/or develop surface rust. The likelihood of this is largely determined by the environment in which the products are installed. Installations near salt water are especially susceptible to this. The above mentioned issues, in most cases, can be largely mitigated by completing frequent cleanings in conformance with these instructions.

Formula 409® is a trademark of The Clorox Company.
Spray Nine® is a trademark of Illinois Tool Works Inc.
Fantastik® and Windex® are trademarks of S.C. Johnson & Son, Inc.
Boeshield T-9® and RustFree™ are trademarks of The Boeing Company.
Trex Company, Inc. is not affiliated with nor endorsed by any of the above-referenced companies.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

PLANNING AHEAD

PLANNING AHEAD

Trex Decking:

» When installing ANY Trex decking product, especially streaked boards, it is a good idea to mix and match all of the boards on the job site prior to installation to ensure an appealing mix of light and dark tones.
» **DO NOT combine Trex Select decking with other Trex decking products**. Trex Select boards are thinner than Signature, Transcend, or Enhance boards.
» For added protection to wood framing, use Trex® Protect Joist and Beam Tape on the top of joists, rim joists, and ledger boards to help prevent rot and wood decay. Refer to trexprotect.com for more details.

Trex Decking Temperature:

Like many other outdoor surfaces, such as concrete, asphalt, beach sand, wood decking, other brands of composite decking, etc., Trex® decking can get hot due to weather and sun exposure. On such days, care needs to be taken to make sure skin does not have extended contact with the surface of the deck, especially with young children and those with special needs. Please note also that the darker the color, the hotter the deck will feel. For hotter climates, consumers should consider choosing a lighter color.

Trex Products Near Low-E Window:

Low-E glass reflects more sunlight. It has been observed that the extra reflectivity, combined with any concavity in the glass, can act like a concave mirror. This mirror effect concentrates sunlight onto outdoor objects, including that of decking and railing. This can result in an extreme amount of heat concentrated on areas of the decking surface. This can sometimes char the decking surface or cause the decking to slightly bow.

Installing Trex® Lattice:

» No special skills or tools are required to install Trex Lattice. The lattice cuts, drills and routes using standard wood cutting tools. Fastening can be done with stainless steel screws or nails.

Refer to www.trexlattice.com/ for information on how to plan, order and install Trex Lattice. Trex Lattice is manufactured and sold by Home & Leisure, Inc., d/b/a/ Structureworks, under a Trademark License Agreement with Trex Company, Inc. A 20-year Limited Warranty is provided by the manufacturer.

Railing (Including ADA Handrail):

» First, pick the railing style you want.
» Calculate your spanning based on the railing you choose.
» Determine the number of balusters you will need based on the railing you choose.
» All 2024 Trex railing products are made to be installed at 6′ or 8′ clear span between posts.

NOTE: **For post placement on stairs, it is VERY IMPORTANT to plan your post spacing based on the length of the rail and angle of the stairs. For nominal 6′ and 8′ stair rail lengths, stair post spans (measured horizontally) will be less than 6′ or 8′ due to the angle of the stairs.**

» Determine post locations prior to installing any decking. In most cases, posts are usually installed before decking is installed.
» Confirm with your local building official if ADA Handrail is required, and if so, plan spanning for posts accordingly to allow for attachment of Trex ADA Handrail. ADA Handrail requires a span of 6′ OC for posts.
» Grill placement: A good recommendation to help prevent damage to your railing is to not have a grill too close to your railing. Allow for ample airspace. 18″-30″ is recommended – refer to grill manufacturer for additional details between the back/sides of your grill to help prevent charring or staining to the railing.

Refer to www.trex.com to view detailed install instructions for Signature, Transcend or Select railing.

Trex® Outdoor Lighting:

» Plan locations of lights, power supply, timer, and dimmer. These should be accessible for service if necessary.
» Install wiring before decking and railing have been installed.
» **DO NOT** run wires between joists and deck boards.

Refer to www.trex.com to view detailed Trex lighting instructions.

Trex® RainEscape® Deck Drainage System:

» Plan ahead for deck layout to allow for proper placement of Trex RainEscape within the joist system.
» Make sure joists are straight and square.

See www.trex.com for more information on Trex® RainEscape® recommendations and installation. Trex RainEscape is manufactured and distributed by IBP, LLC, under a trademark license with Trex Company, Inc.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

PLANNING AHEAD/CONTINUED

Installing Hot Tubs, Planters, and Seating:

» Plan ahead proper joist spanning if required (this is especially important if installing a hot tub).
» *Refer to page 40 for Trex Decking Span Chart for specific loads.*

Call 1-800-BUY-TREX for detailed questions.

Installing Fireplaces and/or Fire Pits With Trex Decking:

» Determine if fire will be gas or wood burning. (***NOTE**:* Most fire pits shown in Trex images are gas burning.)
» For gas, the fire pit is installed by cutting around the Trex decking. **It is not to be installed on top of Trex® decking.** A fire-resistant material is installed under the fire pit and a protective wall made from stone or other fire-resistant material is installed to hold fire pit in place and also protect the decking from heat.
» For wood, fire pits are not recommended directly on top of Trex decking unless using a protective thermal barrier. Wood-burning fire pits can damage the decking due to extreme heat from the bottom of the fire pit and/or embers shooting onto the decking.
Trex does recommend that this thermal barrier be moved from time to time for general cleaning underneath. It should be noted that even when using a thermal barrier, embers could shoot beyond this and burn the deck. Ensure from the manufacturer that the thermal barrier is compatible with composite decking.

Installing Trex® Spiral Stairs:

» *Refer to **www.trexspiralstairs.com** for detailed information on how to plan and install Trex Spiral Stairs.*

Trex® Spiral Stairs are manufactured and sold by SS Industries dba Paragon Stairs. Trex® is a trademark of Trex Company, Inc., and is used by SS Industries dba Paragon Stairs under license with Trex Company, Inc.

Installing Trex® Outdoor Kitchens:

» *Refer to **trex-outdoorkitchens.com** for detailed information on how to install Trex Outdoor Kitchen products.*

Trex® Outdoor Kitchens is manufactured and sold by Danver Acquistions LLC., under a Trademark Agreement with Trex Company, Inc. A Limited Warranty is provided by the manufacturer.

Installing a Trex® Pergola on Trex® Decking:

» Keep in mind that if you are planning to install a Trex® Pergola on your deck, you will need access to the underside of the deck. Trex® Pergola mounts with a 10″ x 10″ (254 mm x 254 mm) aluminum plate on the underside of the deck, creating a clamping effect on both the top and bottom of the deck for maximum strength. If installed, water barriers and any under deck coverings will have to be removed to properly install the pergola posts.

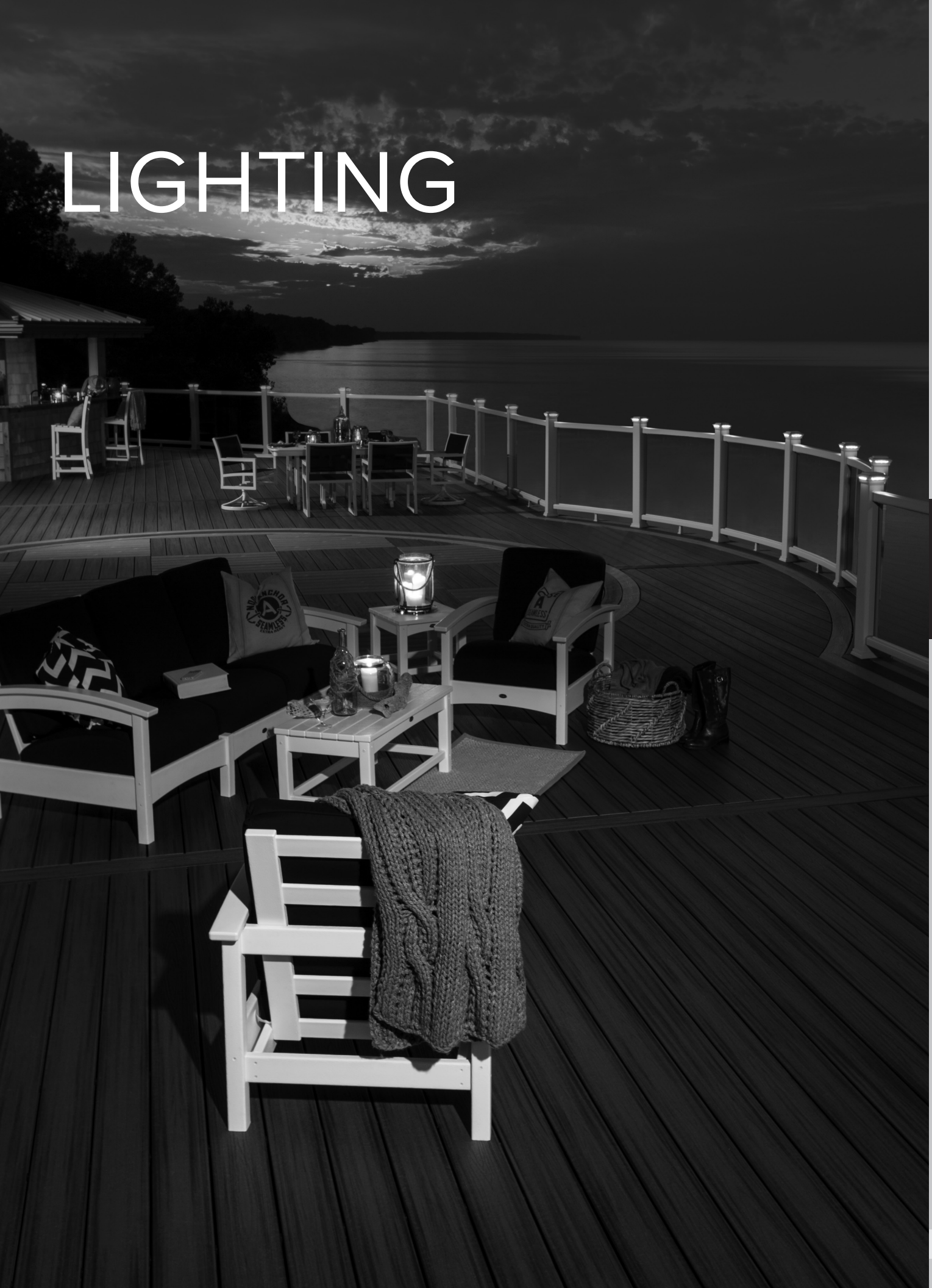
» Consider the location of your pergola posts with respect to joists. However, you do not have to mount your plates between joists. It is possible to place blocks on the bottom of the joists and mount the Trex Pergola brackets through the blocks.

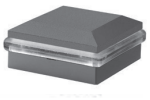
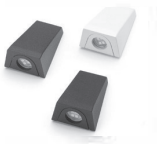
Trex® Pergola products are manufactured and sold by Home & Leisure, Inc., d/b/a/ Structureworks under a Trademark License Agreement with Trex Company, Inc. A 25-year Limited Warranty is provided by manufacturer.

NOTE: You can always reference the Design Tools Section on www.trex.com for additional planning ahead aids.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

LIGHTING

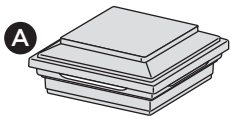


COMPONENT	ITEM #	COMPONENT	ITEM #
Flat Post Cap Light » 4" x 4" LED Post Cap Light [4.55 in x 4.55 in (115 mm x 115 mm) actual internal dimensions] » Use with Trex 4-in Composite Railing Posts » 5.5-ft (1.67 m) Male LightHub® Lead 	BKSQLEDCAP4X4C WTSQLEDCAP4X4C VLSQLEDCAP4X4C RSSQLEDCAP4X4C BKSOLAR4X4CAP WTSOLAR4X4CAP VLSOLAR4X4CAP	**Transformer with Timer** » Output Voltage: 12VDC » Output Power: 100W or 30W » Output Current: 8.3A or 2.5A » Photo-Activated Timer » 20-ft (6.09 m) LightHub® Wire Extension Cable 	8.3A, 100W: DIMMABLE 83DLTRANSFORMERCC 2.5A, 30W: 25DLTRANSFORMER
Aluminum Post Cap Light » 2.5" x 2.5" LED Aluminum Post Cap Light [2.6 in x 2.6 in (66 mm x 66 mm) actual internal dimensions] » Use with Trex 2.5-in Aluminum Railing Posts » 5.5-ft (1.67 m) Male LightHub® Lead 	BKALCAPLED25 BZALCAPLED25 WTALCAPLED25	**LightHub® Accessories** » 3-Way Splitter » 6-Way Splitter » 5 ft (1.52 m) Wire Extension Cable » 10 ft (3.04 m) Wire Extension Cable » 20 ft (6.09 m) Wire Extension Cable » Female to Female Adapter 	DL3SPLIT6PK DL6SPLIT4PK DL5FTWR4PK DL10FTWR4PK DL20FTWR4PK DLFADAP6PK
Aluminum Deck Rail Light » LED Deck Rail Light [2.75-in (69 mm) OD] » 5.5-ft (1.67 m) Male LightHub® Lead 	BKLAMPLEDC BZLAMPLEDC WTLAMPLEDC	**Dimmer** » Single Channel with Remote 	DLDIMMER
Aluminum Wedge Deck Rail Light » LED Wedge Deck Rail Light [1.875-in wide x 3-in high (47 mm x 76 mm) actual dimensions] » Compatible with all Trex Railing Posts » 5.5-ft (1.67 m) Male LightHub® Lead 	BKALPOSTLAMPLED BZALPOSTLAMPLED WTALPOSTLAMPLED	**Wifi Lighting Controller** 	DLWiFiC
Aluminum Stair Riser Light » 4 LED Riser Lights [1.25-in (31 mm) OD] » 5.5-ft (1.67 m) Male LightHub® Lead 	BKRISERLED4PKC BZRISERLED4PKC WTRISERLED4PKC	**Forstner Bit** » Pack of 6 » 1-in (25 mm) 	DLBIT6PK
Recessed Deck Light » 4 LED Recessed Lights [1-in (25 mm) OD] » 5.5-ft (1.67 m) Male LightHub® Lead 	RECESSLED4PKC	**Multi-zone Transformer Adapter** 	DL5TFSPLIT1PK

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX® DECKLIGHTING™

PARTS

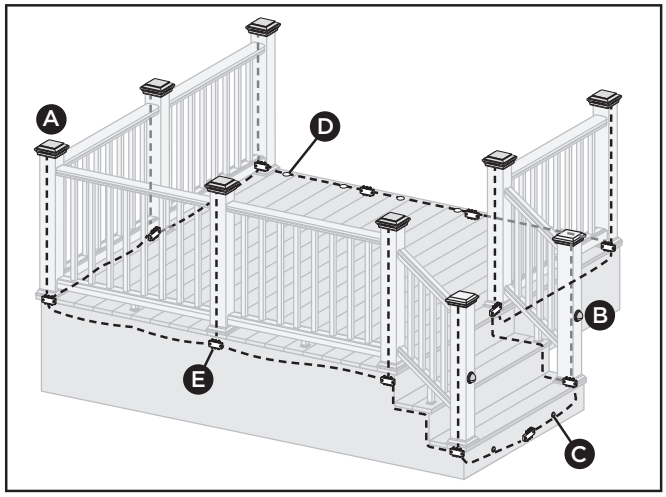


Flat Post Cap Light

Deck Rail Light | Riser Light | Recessed Deck Light | Splitter

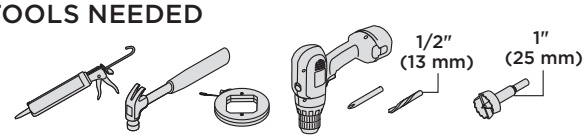
» 5ft, 10ft, and 20ft connection/extension wires sold separately (these are male-to-male connection wires).

Lighting and Wiring Overview



NOTE: *All wiring and splitters are mounted to the inside of framing. Picture above is a general representation of where to place them.*

TOOLS NEEDED



WARNING:

» ***DO NOT INSTALL DECKLIGHTING IN CLOSE PROXIMITY TO POOLS OR HOT TUBS AS CHEMICALS FROM THE WATER CAN DAMAGE LIGHTING FIXTURES.***

» ***DO NOT INSTALL WIRING UNDER HEAVY WEIGHT OR LOAD AS THIS CAN DAMAGE WIRING.***

NOTE: *Avoid railing brackets and locations for deck rail lights when running wires up posts.*

NOTE: *It is recommended to install wiring and splitters before decking and railing have been installed.* ***DO NOT*** *run wires between joists and deck boards.*

HELPFUL TIPS

» Please note that Trex lighting operates on DC power. **NEVER** mix AC and DC fixtures on the same circuit. Doing so will result in extremely premature fixture failure and is not covered by the Trex limited warranty. **You must use a Trex transformer on all Trex lighting installations.**

» **Never fully drive staples when securing wire. Wire should move under staple.**

» **ALWAYS** protect any wire that is close to the ground with conduit or wire loom to prevent rodent damage.

» Cap all unused female connections with caps provided or weather-resistant silicone to prevent water damage or corrosion.

» Each dimmer operates on a separate remote.

» It is recommended to have power source installed and turned on when installing lights to ensure all components work.

» When installing wiring, avoid extreme angles, pressure, or tension on the wiring, as this can cause pinching of the wiring and create a lighting failure.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX® DECKLIGHTING™/CONTINUED

General Information

» ***Refer to www.trex.com for instructional videos on how to install Trex DeckLighting.***

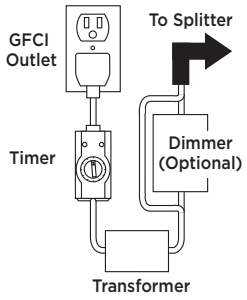
» **USE TREX TRANSFORMER ONLY. Use of any other transformer voids warranty.**

Transformer Capacity by Type		
Type of Light	**8.3A Transformer (83 DL TRANSFORMER)**	**2.5A Transformer (2.5 DL TRANSFORMER)**
Riser	79	27
Recessed	79	27
Post Cap	79	27
Deck Rail	79	27

Above listing is for maximum number of each individual light fixture type. For mixing and matching requirements, visit Trex.com and use the interactive Lighting Transformer Calculator (located on the Trex® Decklighting™ product page).

Planning

NOTE: *When designing your deck, plan locations of lights, power supply, timer, and dimmer. These should be accessible for service. Installing a GFCI outlet is REQUIRED to help prevent damage to lighting from electrical surges.*



1. The dimmer remote will work in a 30′ (9 m) radius of the unit.
2. Dimmer should be installed in a dry location.
3. Timer must be installed vertically with receptacle facing downwards. Timer must be at least 1′ (.305 m) from ground level when installed as per federal safety code height regulations. Timer must be in view of the sun to use the dusk/dawn feature.

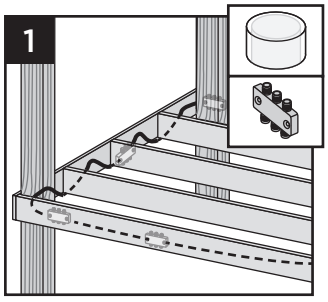
Installing Wiring

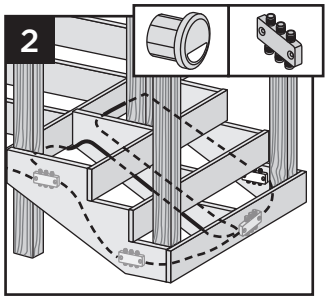
NOTES:

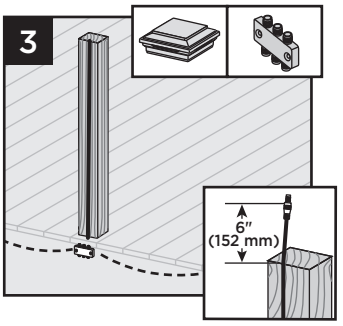
» *It is recommended to install wiring and splitters before decking and railing have been installed.*

» *Use male-to-male connection wire (lengths vary) that will connect to each required splitter.*

1. Wiring must be run under decking structure and behind stringers. **DO NOT** run wires between deck boards and joists. Staple to frame with cable staples at least 1/4″ (6 mm) wide. **DO NOT** crush wire insulation with staples.



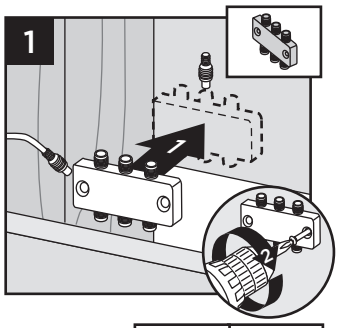


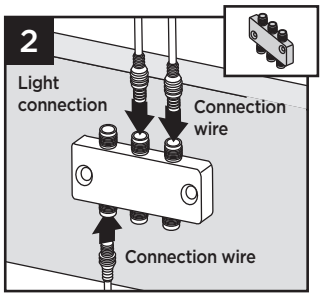


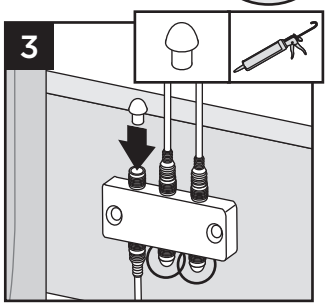
2. Wiring can be run under deck and behind risers. Staple to frame with cable staples at least 1/4″ (6 mm) wide. **DO NOT** crush wire insulation with staples.
3. Remove 5′ (1.52 m) lead wire that is connected to post cap and attach wire to post with male connection at top of post (female connection would be at bottom of post and connect into splitter). Avoid running wire on side of post where railing brackets or deck rail lights will be installed. Leave approximately 6″ (152 mm) of lead at top to make connections. Staple to frame and posts with cable staples at least 1/4″ (6 mm) wide. **DO NOT** crush wire insulation with staples.

Making Connections

1. Install splitters to inside of framing using hardware provided. Install at every post base where lighting is present and depending on spacing in between each riser and recessed light.







2. Attach male lead from lights to female connections on splitter. Also attach male-to-male connection wires in between each splitter. Continue until all wiring from lights are attached to splitters and connector wires are attached in between splitters.
3. Cap off all unused female connections on splitters using caps provided or weather-resistant silicone.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX® DECKLIGHTING™/CONTINUED

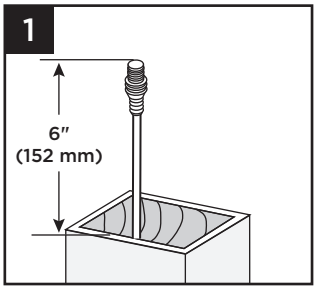
Timer Operation Instructions

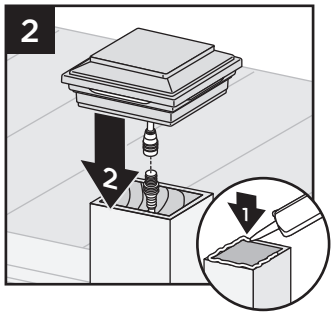
1. Select the mode of operation:
   - » Dusk to Dawn
   - » 2–8 hours
   - » Always “ON”
   - » “OFF”

Program repeats daily. When power is flowing to lights, green light above POWER is on.

Installing Post Cap Lights

NOTE: *Install post cap lights after the railing system, post sleeve skirt, and post sleeve have been installed.*



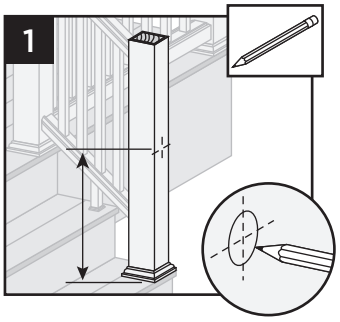


1. Connect male lead from wiring to female connector from cap. Also attach male-to-male connection wires in between each splitter. Continue until all wiring from lights is attached to splitters and connector wires are attached in between splitters.
   (See Making Connections section for details.)
2. After verifying wiring is correct by turning lights on, attach cap to top of post with silicone caulk.

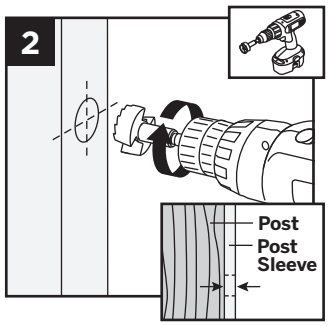
Installing Deck Rail Lights

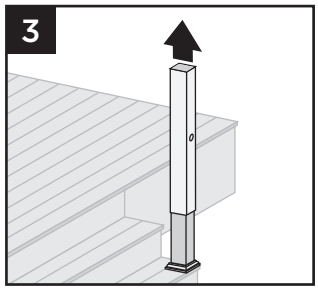
NOTE: *Instructions shown below are for new deck installation and are shown* ***BEFORE*** *railing system has been installed.*

1. Place post sleeve over pressure-treated post and mark desired height, centered on post sleeve for deck rail light location.

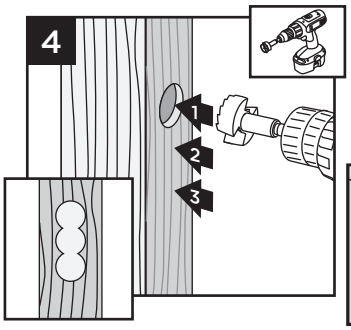


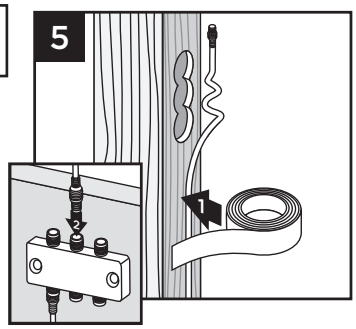
NOTE: *If deck boards are not installed yet, place a deck board on framing to ensure post sleeve is at correct height.*





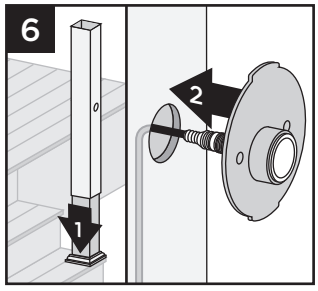
2. Drill a 1″ (25 mm) hole through post sleeve. Drill deep enough to mark location on pressure-treated post.
3. Remove the post sleeve from the post.

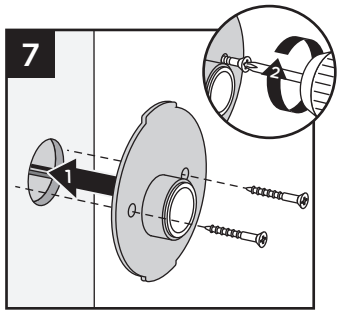




4. Drill out existing hole on pressure-treated post 3/4″ (19 mm) deep. Drill two additional holes vertically below main hole—this will allow space for wiring after post sleeve is attached.
5. Leave enough slack at top of lead wire and attach lead wire to post using heavy duty tape. Attach lead wire to splitter under decking.

TIP: To hold lead wire in place at drilled-out location, use painters tape.

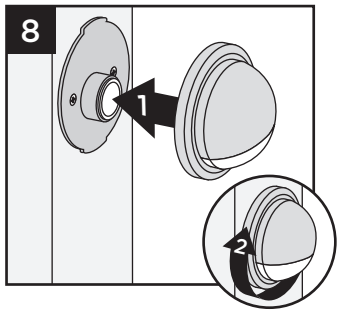




6. Slide post sleeve back over post. If using a post sleeve skirt, make sure to install the skirt first. Connect plug on deck rail light to lead wire and tuck wiring into previously drilled-out pockets on post.
7. Align holes for screws horizontally and attach fixture base to post with provided screws.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX® DECKLIGHTING™/CONTINUED

8. Line up polycarbonate lens with fixture housing. Twist onto fixture base. Continue until all wiring from lights is attached to splitters and connector wires are attached in between splitters. *(See Making Connections section for details.)*



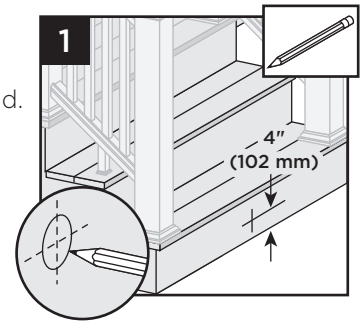
***NOTE:** If railing has already been installed, lead wires will need to be fished through the post sleeve to reach the desired location for the deck rail light. In some cases, if the provided lead wire does not fit (due to connector size), the wire connectors can be cut off and wire nuts can be used. Test lights with the power on. If lights that are wired with this method do not function, then switch the connector wires.*

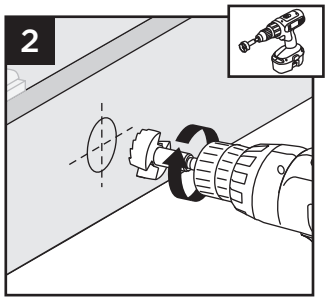
Installing Riser Lights

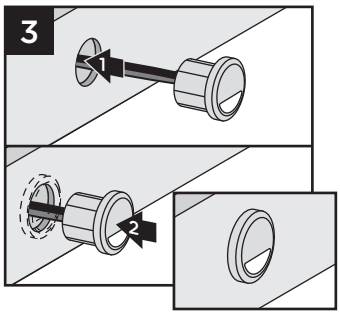
***NOTE:** Install riser lights after stairs and risers have been installed.*

1. Mark locations for each light, generally 4″ (102 mm) above tread. Consult local codes for lighting requirements.

***NOTE:** If possible, avoid locations over stringers as holes will be more difficult to create.*







2. Drill a 1″ (25 mm) diameter hole at least 1″ (25 mm) deep into riser. If riser material is thicker than 1″ (25 mm), use a 1/2″ (13 mm) drill bit to create a passage for wires.
3. Thread wires through hole. Press light into hole, ensuring lens is horizontal. Make connections behind stairs from male lead wire from recessed light into female connection on splitter. Also attach male-to-male connection wires in between each splitter. Continue until all wiring from lights is attached to splitters and connector wires are attached in between splitters. *(See Making Connections section for details.)*

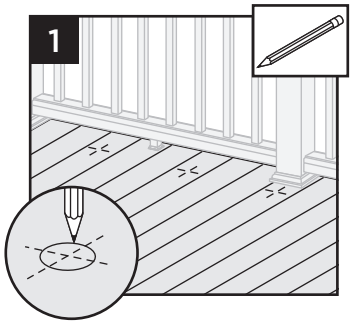
***NOTE: DO NOT** install riser light or deck rail light into top or bottom rails or balusters.*

Installing Recessed Deck Lights

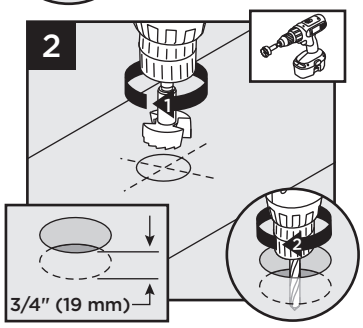
***NOTE:** Install recessed deck lights after installing decking.*

1. Mark locations for lights in deck boards.

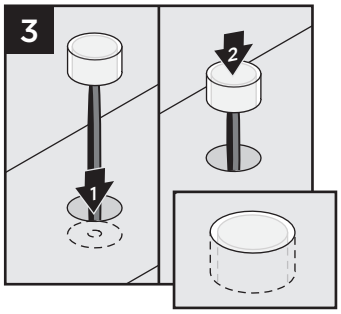
***NOTE:** If possible, avoid locations over joists as holes will be more difficult to create.*



2. Drill a 1″ (25 mm) diameter hole 3/4″ (19 mm) deep into deck board. Hole cannot go all the way through deck board or light will fall through. Make sure drill bit is perpendicular to board. Drill a 1/2″ (13 mm) diameter hole in base of the first hole through deck board.



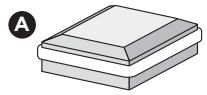
3. Thread wires through hole. **DO NOT pull LED into hole by pulling on wires. This may damage wires or LED.** Press light into hole until flush with surface. Make connections under deck from male lead wire from riser light into female connection on splitter. Also attach male-to-male connection wires in between each splitter. Continue until all wiring from lights is attached to splitters and connector wires are attached in between splitters. *(See Making Connections section for details.)*



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® CAP LIGHT
(can only be used on Trex Signature® posts)

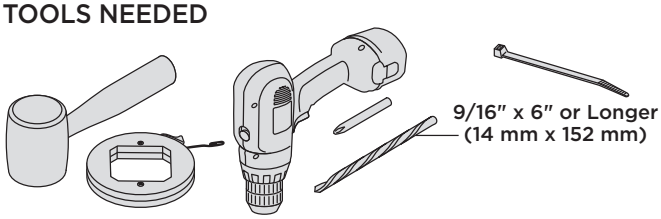
PARTS



Post Cap Light (includes 5ft male-to-male wire)

» 5ft, 10ft, and 20ft connection/extension wires sold separately (these are male-to-male connection wires).

TOOLS NEEDED



9/16" x 6" or Longer (14 mm x 152 mm)

Helpful Tips

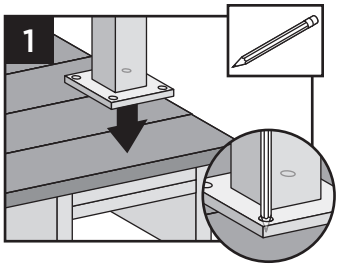
- » Leave slack in wire to make fixture terminations.
- » Post lamps work well at changes in levels of a deck—at the top or the bottom of the stairs, or in conjunction with post cap lights.
- » Splitters should be used at each post that has lights and depending on spacing in between each riser and recessed light.
- » Cap all unused female connections with caps provided or weather-resistant silicone to prevent water damage or corrosion.
- » The splitter is cross-linked so there is no specified plug for lights versus lead wires.
- » Leads attached to each light are approx. 5.5′ (1.67 m) in length and have male terminals to plug into splitter.
- » Use a separate dimmer control for each light type for maximum control.
- » It is recommended to have power source on when installing lights to ensure all components work.

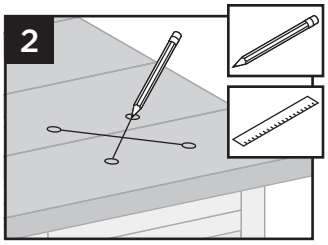
Transformer Capacity by Type		
Type of Light	**8.3A Transformer (83 DL TRANSFORMER)**	**2.5A Transformer (2.5 DL TRANSFORMER)**
Signature Post Cap	59	29

Above listing is for maximum number of each individual light fixture type. For mixing and matching requirements, visit Trex.com and use the interactive Lighting Transformer Calculator (located on the Trex® Decklighting™ product page).

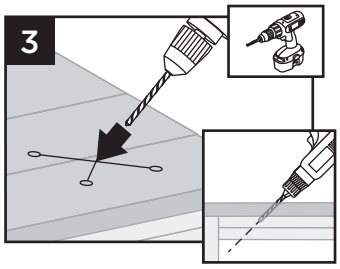
Installing Post Cap Lights

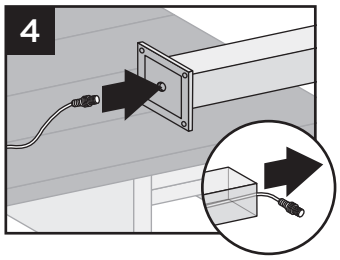
***NOTE:** Instructions shown below are for new deck installation and are shown **BEFORE** railing system has been installed.*



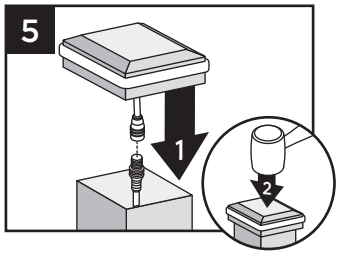


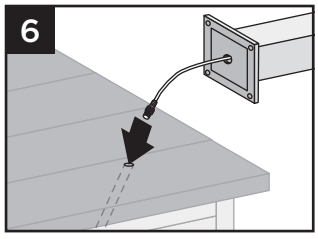
1. Before attaching post to deck, locate placement of post and mark desired bolt locations.
2. Using a straight edge, mark an "X" between the four bolt locations.



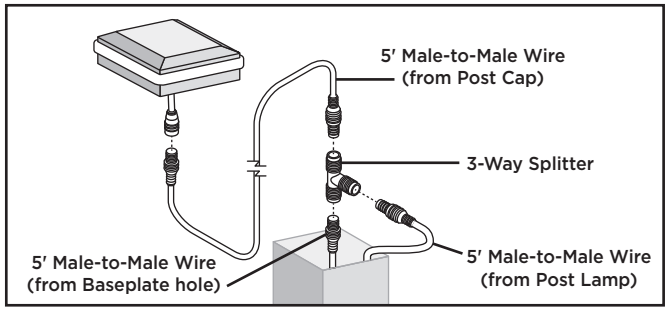


3. Using a 9/16" (14 mm) x 6" (152 mm [or longer]) drill bit, drill a diagonal hole through the decking and blocking. Ensure that the angle will allow wire to not be pinched by support plate under blocking (if using Trex ALPOSTHWDECK mounting kit). *(See Making Connections section for details.)*
4. Turn post upside down and fish 5′ male-to-male wire *(provided)* through hole in baseplate.





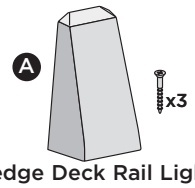
5. Connect the female connector on the post cap light to this wire and, using a rubber mallet, gently tap the cap onto top of post until it is secure.
6. Turn post over and carefully fish wire through hole created in Step 3 to underside of the deck. Ensure exit point of wire under blocking will not be pinched by ALPOSTHWDECK plate.
7. Mount post per instructions.



***NOTE:** If connecting a Trex Wedge Deck Rail Light as well, a 3-way adapter and extra 5′ male-to-male wire (not provided) can be used inside the post so that only one wire must be run through the hole in the base of the post (and post blocking). This is optional.*

HOW TO INSTALL TREX® WEDGE DECK RAIL LIGHT

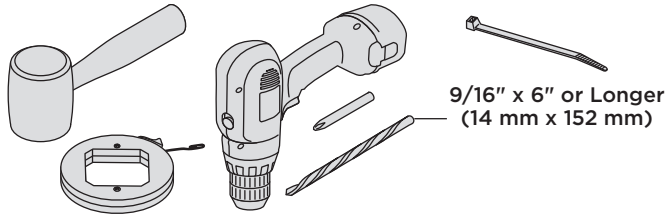
PARTS



Wedge Deck Rail Light (includes 5ft male-to-male wire)

» 5ft, 10ft and 20ft connection/extension wires sold separately (these are male-to-male connection wires).

TOOLS NEEDED



9/16" x 6" or Longer (14 mm x 152 mm)

Helpful Tips

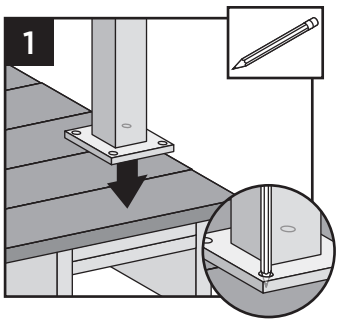
» Leave slack in wire to make fixture terminations.
» Deck rail lights work well at changes in levels of a deck—at the top or the bottom of the stairs, or in conjunction with post cap lights.
» Splitters should be used at each post that has lights and depending on spacing in between each riser and recessed light.
» Cap all unused female connections with caps provided or weather-resistant silicone to prevent water damage or corrosion.
» The splitter is cross-linked so there is no specified plug for lights versus lead wires.
» Leads attached to each light are approx. 5.5′ (1.67 m) in length and have male terminals to plug into splitter.
» Use a separate dimmer control for each light type for maximum control.
» It is recommended to have power source on when installing lights to ensure all components work.

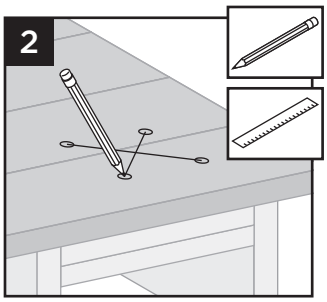
Transformer Capacity by Type		
Type of Light	**8.3A Transformer (83 DL TRANSFORMER)**	**2.5A Transformer (2.5 DL TRANSFORMER)**
Signature Wedge Deck Rail Light	79	27

Above listing is for maximum number of each individual light fixture type. For mixing and matching requirements, visit Trex.com and use the interactive Lighting Transformer Calculator (located on the Trex® Decklighting™ product page).

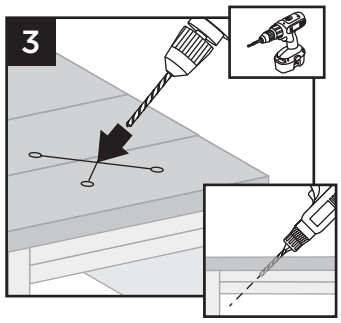
Installing Post Lamps

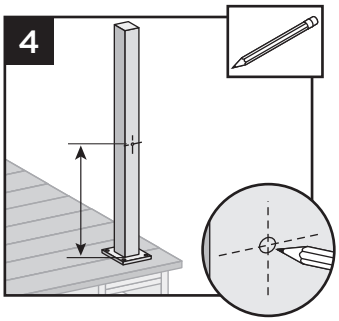
NOTE: *Instructions shown below are for new deck installation and are shown BEFORE railing system has been installed.*



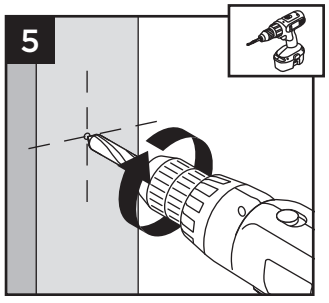


1. Before attaching post to deck, locate placement of post and mark desired bolt locations.
2. Using a straight edge, mark an "X" between the four bolt locations.

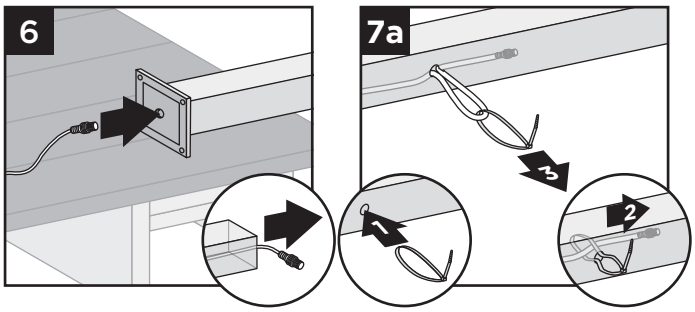


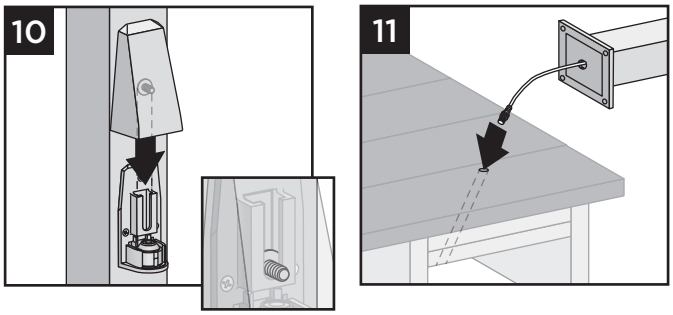


3. Using a 9/16" (14 mm) x 6" (152 mm [or longer]) drill bit, drill a diagonal hole through the decking and blocking. Ensure that the angle will allow wire to not be pinched by support plate under blocking (if using Trex ALPOSTHWDECK mounting kit).
4. Locate placement of post lamp. Mark entry point of the wire.
5. Drill 9/16" (14 mm) hole where wire will enter post.



HOW TO INSTALL TREX® WEDGE DECK RAIL LIGHT/CONTINUED



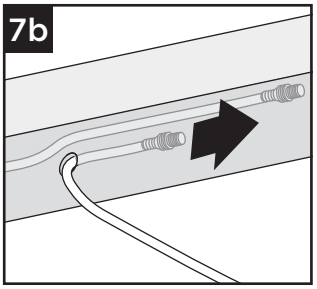


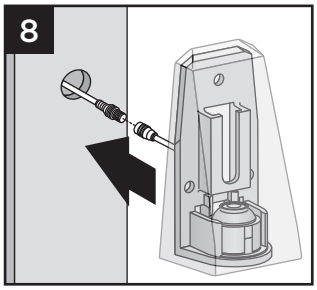
6. Turn post upside down and fish 5′ male-to-male wire *(provided)* through hole in baseplate.

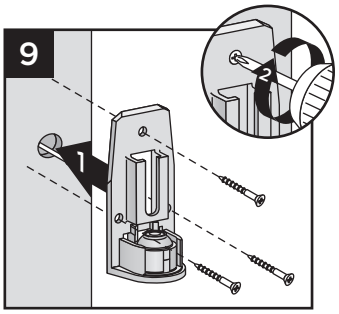
7a. If connecting a Wedge Deck Rail Light only, pull wire through hole.

TIP: Insert a zip-tie loop (or small grabber tool) through 9/16″ (14 mm) hole. Fish wire through loop in zip-tie. Pull wire through hole with zip-tie.

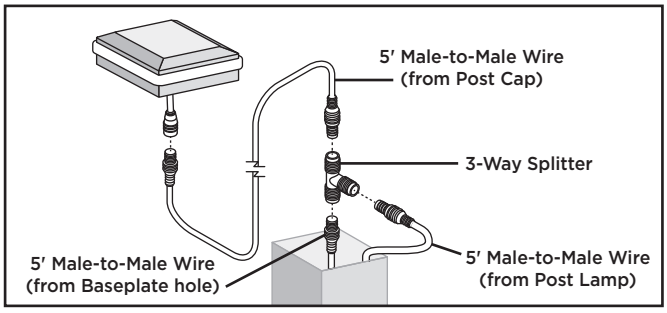
7b. If connecting a Trex Signature post cap light as well, and using the 3-way splitter *(see note after Step 12),* simply run one wire through the hole created in Step 5 to the top of the post.







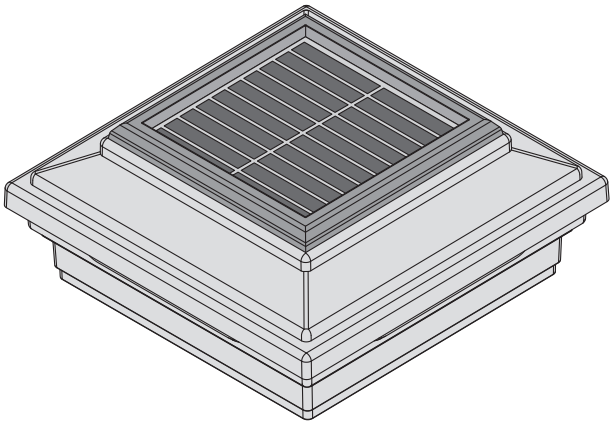
8. Connect male connector to female connector on light housing.
9. Place light and attach backing plate to post with three screws *(provided).*
10. Slide light cover down over backing plate, adjusting mounting screws as necessary to achieve a tight fit.
11. Turn post over and carefully fish wire through hole created in Step 3 to underside of the deck. Ensure exit point of wire under blocking will not be pinched by ALPOSTHWDECK plate.
12. Mount post per instructions.



NOTE: *If connecting a Trex Signature post cap light as well, a 3-way adapter and extra 5′ male-to-male wire (not provided) can be used inside the post so that only one wire must be run through the hole in the base of the post (and post blocking). This is optional.*

HOW TO INSTALL TREX® SOLAR POST CAP LIGHT

PARTS



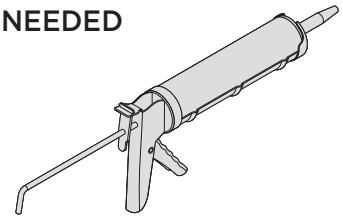
HELPFUL TIPS

» Install the solar post cap in locations that receive the most amount of sunlight.

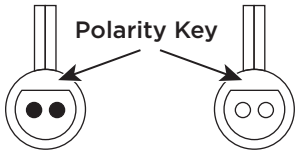
» If the installation location experiences long periods of temperatures below 32°F (0°C) it is recommended to shut the post cap off to prolong the battery life.

» Maintenance - Periodically clean the glass solar panel to be free of dust and debris for optimum charging performance using a water dampened cloth.

TOOLS NEEDED



CAUTION:



Do not short the pins of the battery connector. Doing so will damage the battery and may cause it to overheat and burst.

When installing a replacement battery the male and femnale connectors have a flat side that **MUST MATCH UP** for polarity.

Do not force the connections together. Failure to match polarity **will** damage the controller board.

Do not puncture or allow sharp objects to come into contact with the battery.

Do not attempt removal of battery jacket.

Do not dispose of battery in a fire.

Do not attempt to alter or modify the battery from its original manufacture design.

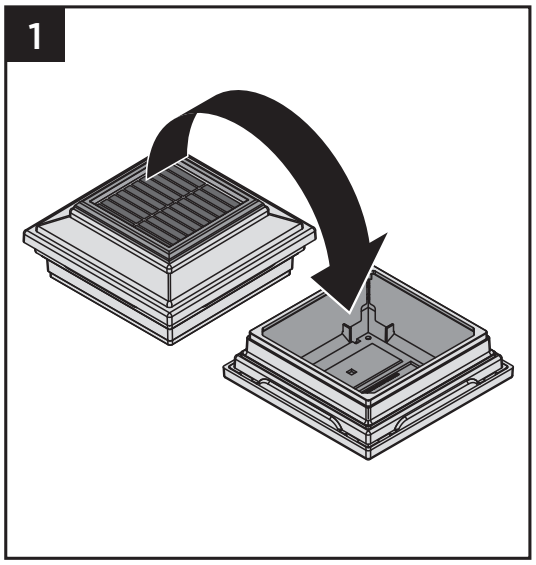
The battery is intended for use in the TREX Solar Post Cap any other use is prohibited and will void the warranty.

Check local regulations for proper battery disposal.

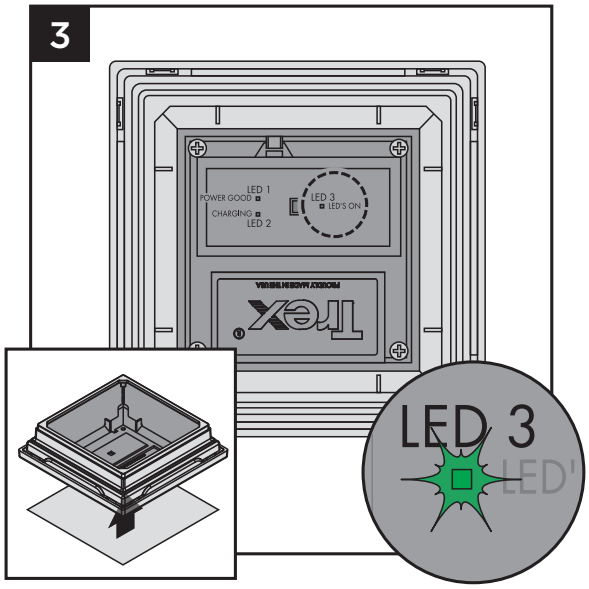
Keep out of reach of children.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

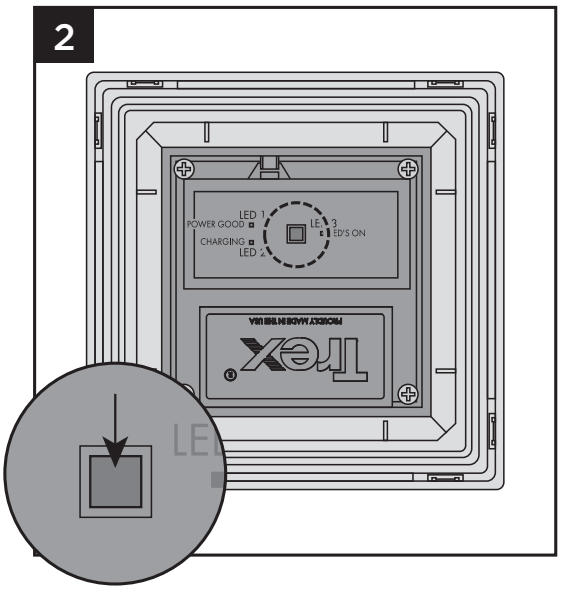
HOW TO INSTALL TREX® SOLAR POST CAP LIGHT/CONTINUED



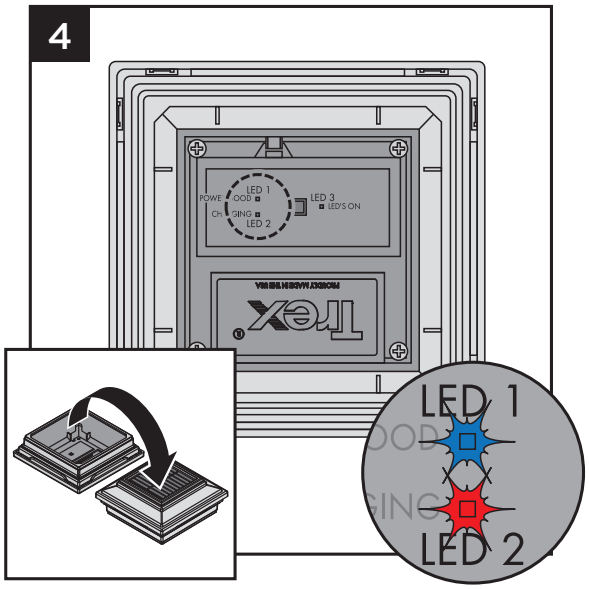
1. Turn the post cap upside down.



3. Cover the solar panel and the LED 3 (LED's On) will turn on as well as the post cap LEDs.



2. Press the switch to turn the post cap on.

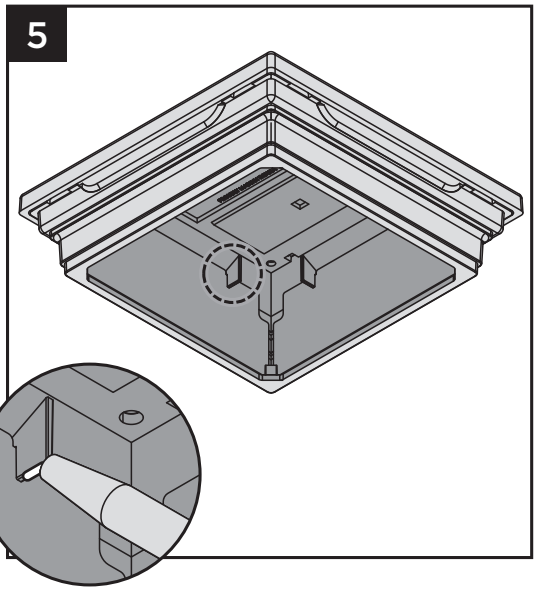


4. Turn the post cap over so the solar panel is facing direct sunlight.

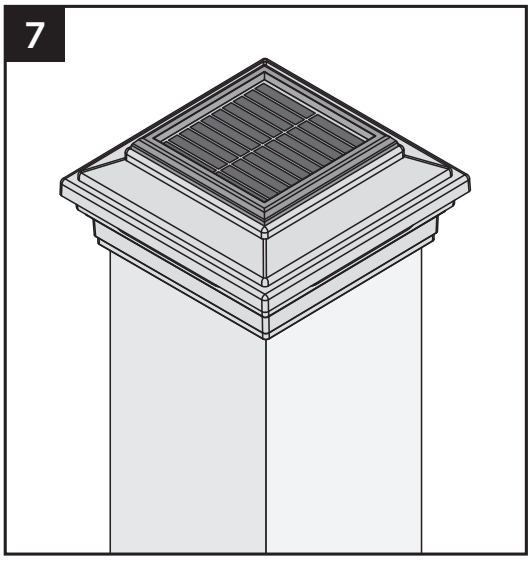
   LED 1 (Power good) and LED 2 (Charging) will turn on. LED 3 (LED's On) and the post cap LEDs will turn off.

NOTE: *if there is not enough sunlight then LED 2 (Charging) may not turn on.*

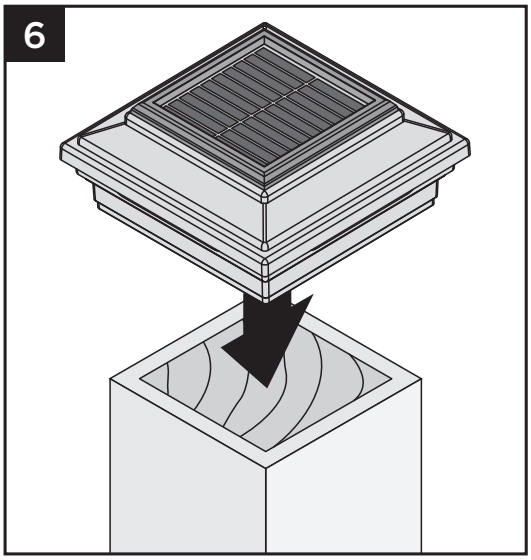
HOW TO INSTALL TREX® SOLAR POST CAP LIGHT/CONTINUED



5. Add a small button of silicone to the tabs on the bottom of the post cap.



7. The post cap is ready for use.



6. Seat the post cap on top of the post sleeve.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX® SOLAR POST CAP LIGHT

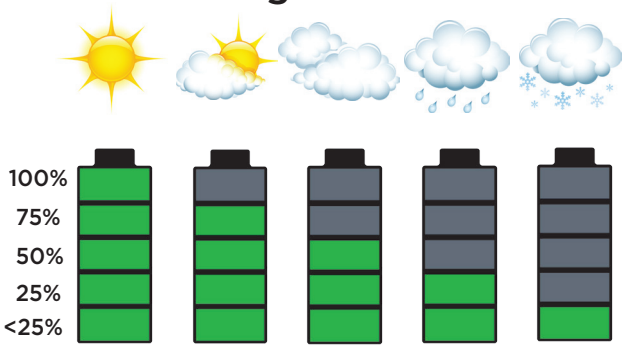
Operation Parameters

1. Trex solar post cap lights should be installed in a location with as much direct sunlight as possible for best performance.

2. Shading can **reduce** the charging performance by as much as 50-80%.

3. Solar light run time is based on:
   - Angle of sunlight for recharging
   - Sun/Cloud conditions for recharging
   - Duration of sunlight for recharging
   - Seasonal conditions for recharging
   - How clean the solar panel is for charging

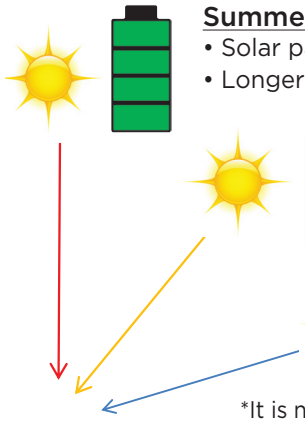
Effective Charge in Sunlight VS Cloud Coverage



Run times vary significantly with actual daily weather conditions, post cap installation location, battery condition and numerous other factors.

If the installation location experiences long periods of temperatures below 32°F (0°C) it is recommended to shut the post cap off to prolong the battery life.

Angle of the Sun in Different Seasons



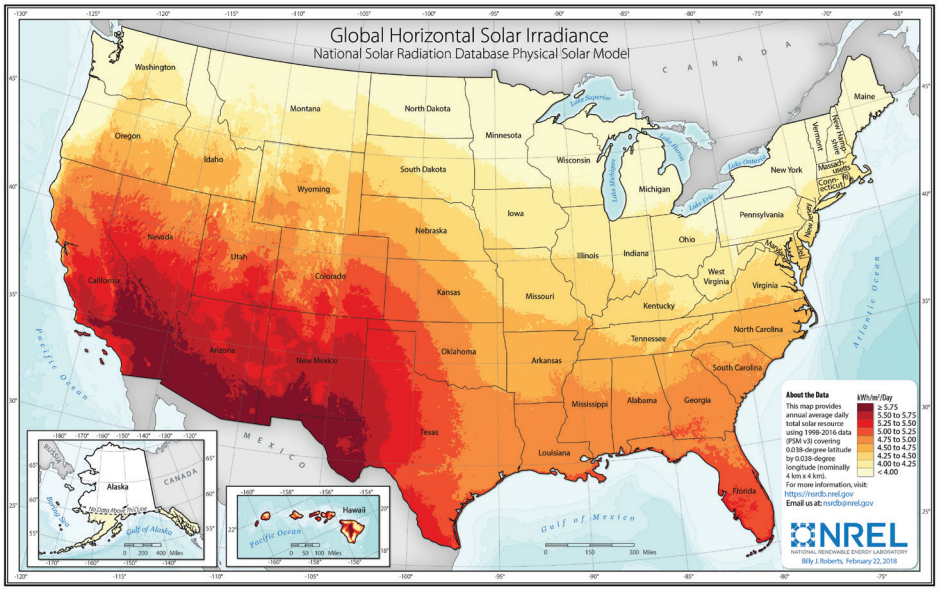
Summer:
- Solar panel 75-100% power
- Longer daylight and optimal charging performance.

Spring/Fall:
- Solar panel 50-75% power
- Medium daylight and better charging performance.

Winter*:
- Solar panel <50% power
- Shorter daylight and low charging performance.

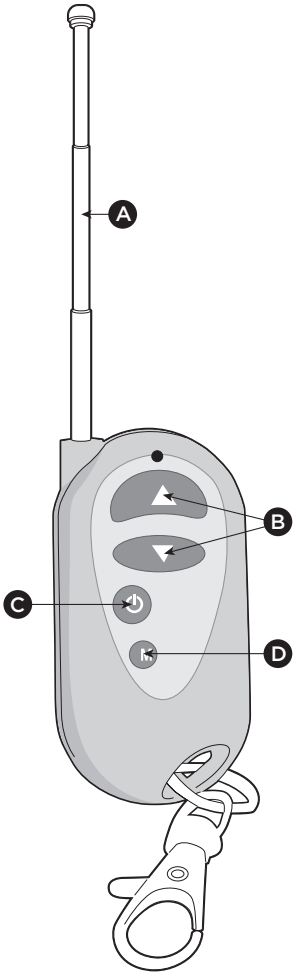
*It is not recommended to charge or operate the Trex solar post cap in temperatures below 32°F (0°C).

kWh Hight to Low Map



Note *this map provides annual average daily total solar resource. The darker color regions have a higher charge efficiency potential while lighter shaded regions have lower efficiency potential. This map does not account for daily adverse weather conditions that may occur such as rain, overcast and snow fall.*

HOW TO PROGRAM DIMMER REMOTE



A. **ALWAYS** keep antenna fully extended for maximum range.

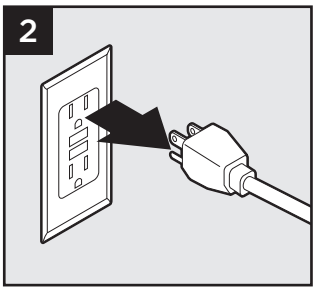
B. Up/Down arrows gradually dim or brighten lighting.

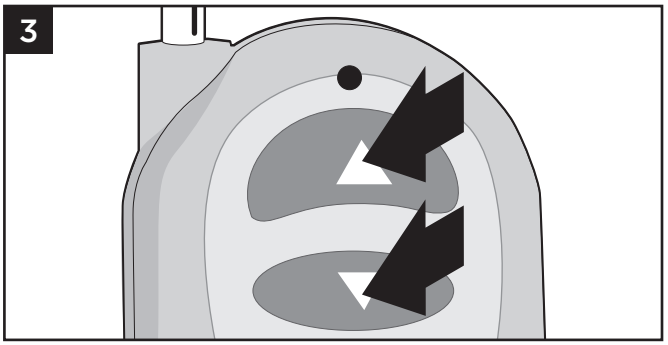
C. On/Off button cycles lights ON/OFF.

D. Mode button cycles through 3 preset dimming levels: High, Medium, Low, and Off.

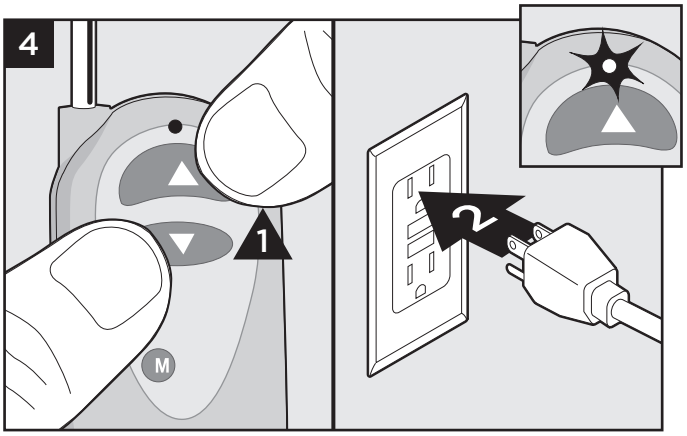
NOTE: *First, make sure the red light is illuminated on the remote. If there is no red light and the product is new, contact 1-800 BUY-TREX for a replacement. If the product is not new, the A27 battery is replaceable.*

1. Install dimmer per instructions and make sure lights are ON and working properly.
2. Unplug the transformer to turn lights OFF.





3. Press and hold both the up and down arrow on the dimmer remote simultaneously.

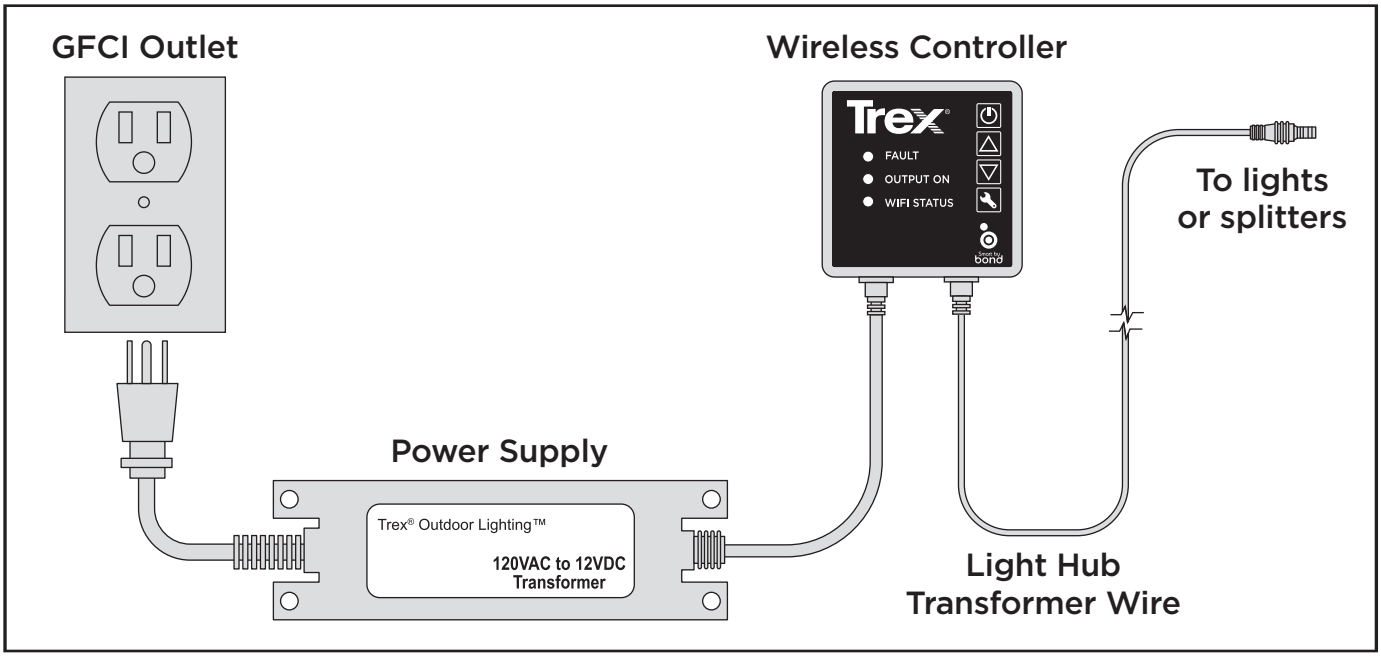


4. With the dimmer arrow buttons held down, plug the transformer back in. The lights should blink once to confirm programming.
5. Release the up and down arrows on the remote and test remote to confirm proper operation.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX® WIFI CONTROLLER SETUP INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

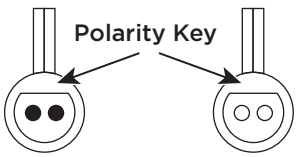
The Trex® WiFi Controller allows you to control your Trex® Decklighting™ from anywhere. With the easy-to-use Bond Home app, you can monitor status, set schedules and fine-tune the brightness of your installations. The controller is compatible with the Trex® Light Hub system and can be used to control up to 60W of LED lights.



Controller Installation

1. With the power supply unplugged, connect the input lead of the Trex WiFi Controller to the Trex Transformer.
2. Connect the Light Hub Transformer Wire to the output terminal of the Trex WiFi controller then to the first light installation.

CAUTION:



When making connection between a Light Hub connector or splitter, observe the polarity key to make a proper connection.

The male and female connectors have a flat side that **MUST MATCH UP**. Do not force the connections together.

Light Hub connectors are waterproof, but for increased protection the dielectric grease should be added prior to connection.

3. Plug the power supply into a GFCI-protected wall socket. If you see the red "FAULT" light, your system has reversed polarity. Check the polarity key on your input cable and correct any problems before proceeding. ***Note:*** *WiFi controller has built-in overload protection. System will fault when used to control more than 60W of LED lights. To reset:* ***unplug*** *transformer from the power source, decrease control to 60W of LED lights or less, then plug back into power source.*
4. Mount the WiFi controller in place with the included pressure sensitive adhesive strips and/or by replacing the installed black screws with the included 1.5" black wood screws.

For wireless connection support, visit the help center in the app.

TREX® WIFI CONTROLLER SETUP INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

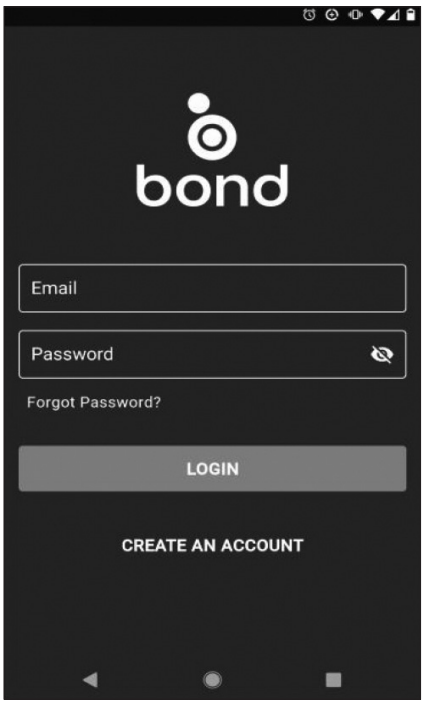
Controller Setup

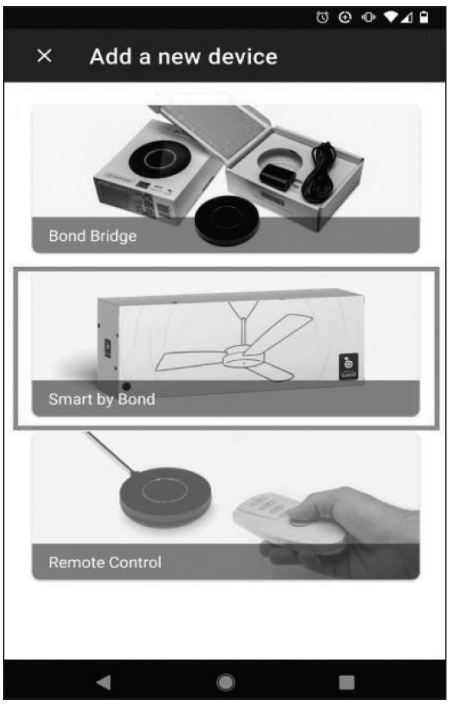
1. On an Android or iOS device, download the Bond Home App.
2. Create an account and sign in to the app.
3. Trex WiFi Controller is a "Smart by Bond" device. Follow the in-app prompts to add the controller to your account and connect it to your home WiFi network.

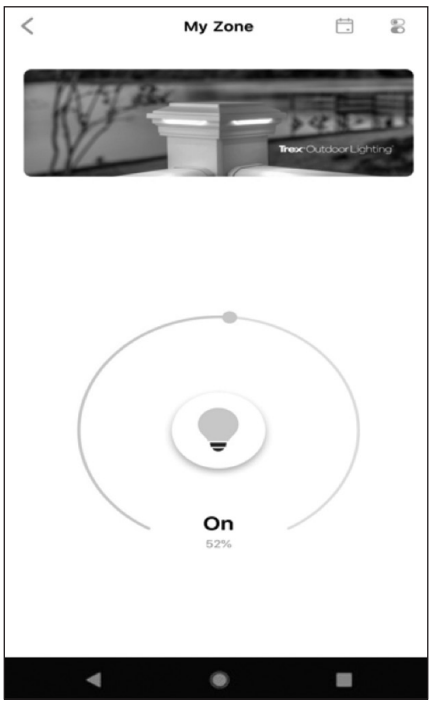
Smart by bond

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

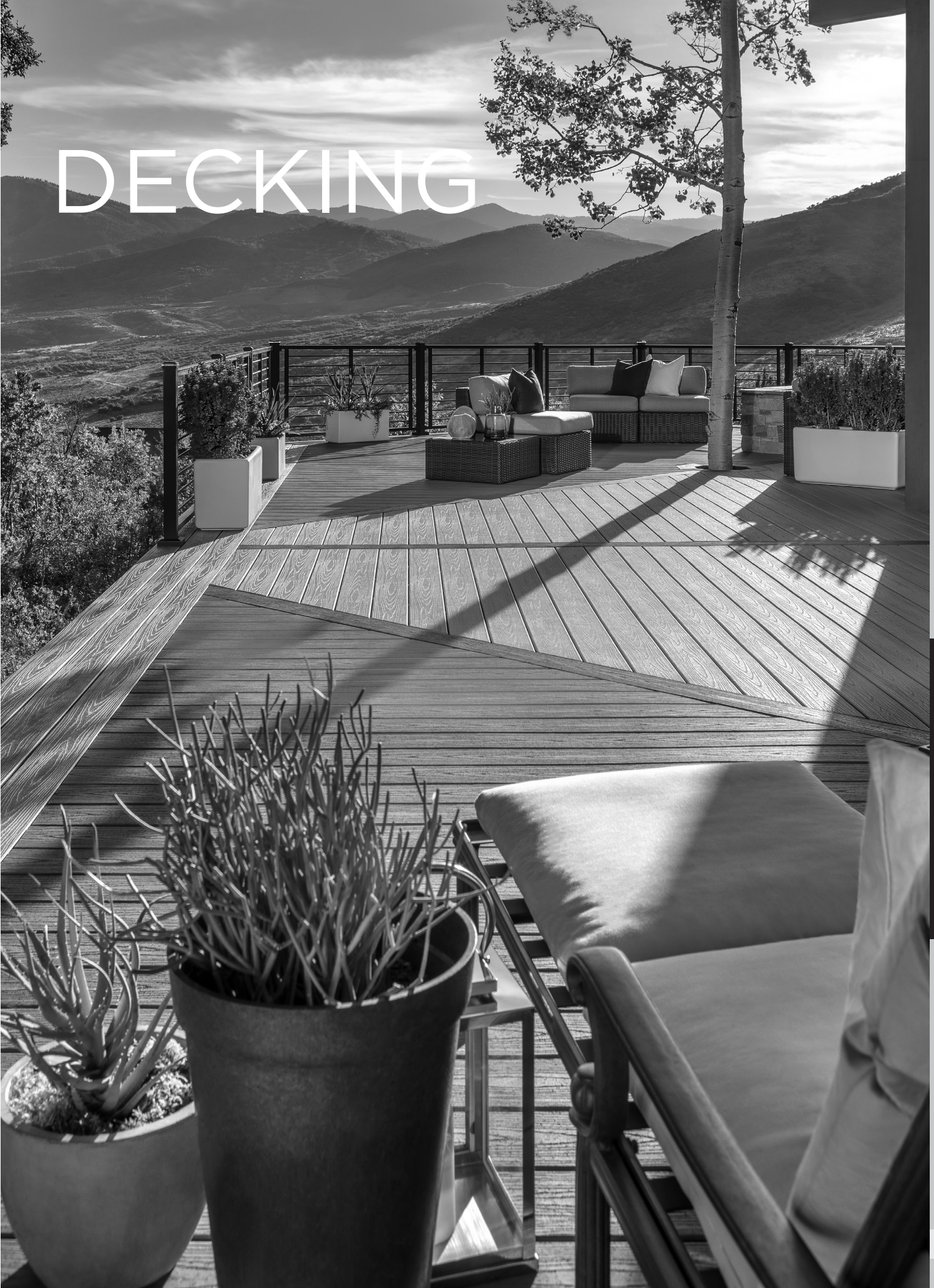




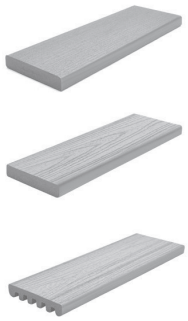
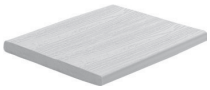
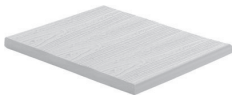
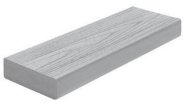


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

DECKING



TREX® DECKING & FASCIA

PROFILE		DESCRIPTION		ITEM #	COLORS
1" Square-Edge Board *Actual dimensions:* Trex Signature .94 in x 5.5 in x 20 ft (24 mm x 140 mm x 609 cm) Transcend & Enhance: .94 in x 5.5 in x 16 ft / 20 ft (24 mm x 140 mm x 487 cm / 609 cm) Trex Select: .82 in x 5.5 in x 16 ft / 20 ft (20 mm x 140 mm x 487 cm / 609 cm)		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Trex Signature	XX010616NS01 XX010620NS01	OC, WY
		1 x 6 x 12' 1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Lineage	XX010612TLS01 XX010616TLS01 XX010620TLS01	BC, CL, HT, JA, IM, RN, SF
		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Tropicals	XX010616TS01 XX010620TS01	HG, IM, LR, SR, TT
		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Earth Tones	XX010616T2S01 XX010620T2S01	RS
		7/8 x 6 x 12' 7/8 x 6 x 16' 7/8 x 6 x 20'	Trex Select	XX010612SS01 XX010616SS01 XX010620SS01	PG, SD
		7/8 x 6 x 12' 7/8 x 6 x 16' 7/8 x 6 x 20'	Trex Select	XX010612S2S01 XX010616S2S01 XX010620S2S01	MY, MS, WL
		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Enhance Naturals	XX010616E2S01 XX010620E2S01	CB, CC, FW, HY, RH, TS
		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Enhance Basics	XX010616E2S01 XX010620E2S01	CS, BD, SD, TP
1" Grooved-Edge Board *Actual dimensions:* Trex Signature, Transcend & Enhance: .94 in x 5.5 in x 12 ft / 16 ft / 20 ft (24 mm x 140 mm x 365 cm / 487 cm / 609 cm) Trex Select: .82 in x 5.5 in x 12 ft / 16 ft / 20 ft (20 mm x 140 mm x 365 cm / 487 cm / 609 cm)		1 x 6 x 12' 1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Trex Signature	XX010612NG01 XX010616NG01 XX010620NG01	OC, WY
		1 x 6 x 12' 1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Lineage	XX010612TLG01 XX010616TLG01 XX010620TLG01	BC, CL, HT, JA, IM, RN, SF
		1 x 6 x 12' 1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Tropicals	XX010612TG01 XX010616TG01 XX010620TG01	HG, IM, LR, SR, TT
		1 x 6 x 12' 1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Earth Tones	XX010612T2G01 XX010616T2G01 XX010620T2G01	RS
		7/8 x 6 x 12' 7/8 x 6 x 16' 7/8 x 6 x 20'	Trex Select	XX010612SG01 XX010616SG01 XX010620SG01	PG, SD
		7/8 x 6 x 12' 7/8 x 6 x 16' 7/8 x 6 x 20'	Trex Select	XX010612S2G01 XX010616S2G01 XX010620S2G01	MY, MS, WL
		1 x 6 x 12' 1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Enhance Naturals	XX010612E2G01 XX010616E2G01 XX010620E2G01	CB, CC, FW, HY, RH, TS
		1 x 6 x 12' 1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Enhance Basics	XX010612E2G01 XX010616E2G01 XX010620E2G01	CS, BD, SD, TP
1" x 8" Fascia Board *Actual dimensions:* Trex Signature, Transcend, Enhance, Trex Select, Universal White: .56 in x 7.25 in x 12 ft (14 mm x 184 mm x 365 cm)		1 x 8 x 12'	Trex Signature	XX010812NS01	OC, WY
		1 x 8 x 12' 1 x 8 x 12' 1 x 8 x 12'	Transcend Lineage Transcend Tropicals Transcend Earth Tones	XX010812TLS01 XX010812TS01 XX010812T2S01	BC, CL, HT, JA, IM, RN, SF HG, IM, LR, SR, TT RS
		1 x 8 x 12'	Trex Select	XX010812SS01	PG, SD
		1 x 8 x 12'	Trex Select	XX010812S2S01	MY, MS, WL
		1 x 8 x 12' 1 x 8 x 12'	Enhance Naturals Enhance Basics	XX010812E2S01 XX010812E2S01	CB, CC, FW, HY, RH, TS CS, BD, SD, TP
		1 x 8 x 12'	Universal White	WW010812ES01	WW
1" x 12" Fascia Board *Actual dimensions:* Trex Signature, Transcend, Enhance, Trex Select, Universal White: .56 in x 11.375 in x 12 ft (14 mm x 288 mm x 365 cm)		1 x 12 x 12'	Trex Signature	XX011212NS01	OC, WY
		1 x 12 x 12' 1 x 12 x 12' 1 x 12 x 12'	Transcend Lineage Transcend Tropicals Transcend Earth Tones	XX011212TLS01 XX011212TS01 XX011212T2S01	BC, CL, HT, JA, IM, RN, SF HG, IM, LR, SR, TT RS
		1 x 12 x 12'	Trex Select	XX011212SS01	PG, SD
		1 x 12 x 12'	Trex Select	XX011212S2S01	MY, MS, WL
		1 x 12 x 12' 1 x 12 x 12'	Enhance Naturals Enhance Basics	XX011212E2S01 XX011212E2S01	CB, CC, FW, HY, RH, TS CS, BD, SD, TP
		1 x 12 x 12'	Universal White	WW011212ES01	WW
2" Square-Edge Board *Actual dimensions:* Transcend 2x4: 1.3 in x 3.4 in x 16 ft (33 mm x 86 mm x 487 cm) Transcend & Trex Select 2x6: 1.3 in x 5.5 in x 12 ft / 16 ft / 20 ft (33 mm x 140 mm x 365 cm / 487 cm / 609 cm)		2 x 4 x 16'	Transcend Tropicals	XX020416TS01	HG, IM, LR, SR, TT
		2 x 6 x 12' 2 x 6 x 16' 2 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Tropicals	XX020612TS01 XX020616TS01 XX020620TS01	HG, IM, LR, SR, TT
		2 x 6 x 12' 2 x 6 x 16' 2 x 6 x 20'	Trex Select	XX020612SS01 XX020616SS01 XX020620SS01	PG, SD
		2 x 6 x 12' 2 x 6 x 16' 2 x 6 x 20'	Trex Select	XX020612S2S01 XX020616S2S01 XX020620S2S01	MY, MS, WL

XX = COLOR PREFIX

**Beach Dune and Coastal Bluff will be discontinued effective October 2025*

BC Biscayne
BD Beach Dune*
CL Carmel
CC Cinnamon Cove
CS Clam Shell
CB Coastal Bluff*
FW Foggy Wharf
HT Hatteras
HG Havana Gold
HY Honey Grove
IM Island Mist
JA Jasper
LR Lava Rock
MY Malted Barley
MS Millstone
OC Ocracoke
PG Pebble Grey
RN Rainier
RH Rocky Harbor
RS Rope Swing
SD Saddle
SF Salt Flat
SR Spiced Rum
TP Tide Pool
TT Tiki Torch
TS Toasted Sand
WW Universal White
WY Whidbey
WL Whiskey Barrel

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

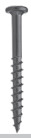
TREX® FASTENERS

COMPONENT	75 CT. ITEM #	350 CT. ITEM #	1400 CT. ITEM #	COLORS
Trex Color-Match Deck Screws » #10 x 2.5" (6.35 cm) » 75 ct. box, 350 ct. box, 1,400 ct. tub » HexStix® bits included	TCM25BC75 TCM25BD75 TCM25CL75 TCM25CS75 TCM25FW75 TCM25HT75 TCM25HY75 TCM25IM75 TCM25LR75 TCM25PG75 TCM25RH75 TCM25SD75 TCM25SF75 TCM25SR75 TCM25TP75 TCM25TS75 TCM25TT75	TCM25BC350 TCM25BD350 TCM25CL350 TCM25CS350 TCM25FW350 TCM25HT350 TCM25HY350 TCM25IM350 TCM25LR350 TCM25PG350 TCM25RH350 TCM25SD350 TCM25SF350 TCM25SR350 TCM25TP350 TCM25TS350 TCM25TT350	TCM25BC1400 TCM25BD1400 TCM25CL1400 TCM25CS1400 TCM25FW1400 TCM25HT1400 TCM25HY1400 TCM25IM1400 TCM25LR1400 TCM25PG1400 TCM25RH1400 TCM25SD1400 TCM25SF1400 TCM25SR1400 TCM25TP1400 TCM25TS1400 TCM25TT1400	BC BD CL CS FW HT HY IM LR PG RH SD SF SR TP TS TT

COMPONENT	ITEM #	COLORS
Trex Color-Match Fascia Screws » 1-3/4" (4.4 cm) » 75 ct. box » Tools sold separately	TCMF175BC75 TCMF175BD75 TCMF175CL75 TCMF175CS75 TCMF175FW75 TCMF175HT75 TCMF175HY75 TCMF175IM75 TCMF175LR75 TCMF175PG75 TCMF175RH75 TCMF175SD75 TCMF175SF75 TCMF175SR75 TCMF175TP75 TCMF175TS75 TCMF175TT75 TCMF175WW75	BC BD CL CS FW HT HY IM LR PG RH SD SF SR TP TS TT WW

XX = COLOR PREFIX
BC Biscayne
BD Beach Dune/ Jasper
CB Coastal Bluff
CL Rope Swing/ Carmel/ Malted Barley (MY)
CS Clam Shell
FW Foggy Wharf/ Rainier
HT Hatteras
HY Honey Grove
IM Island Mist/ Millstone (MS)
LR Lava Rock
PG Pebble Grey/ Whidbey
RH Rocky Harbor
SD Saddle/Ocracoke/ Hatteras
SF Salt Flat
SR Spiced Rum/ Cinnamon Cove/ Whiskey Barrel (WL)
TP Tide Pool
TS Toasted Sand/ Havana Gold
TT Tiki Torch
WW Woodgrain White

COMPONENT	ITEM #
Trex Decking Plug Screws » #10 x 2.5" (6.35 cm) » 75 ct. box, 350 ct. tub » Includes depth setters, black	TDPS25BK75 TDPS25BK350

COMPONENT	ITEM #
Trex Enhance® Decking Plug Screws » 2" (5.0 cm) » 75 ct. box, 400 ct. tub, black » Tools sold separately 	TENDPLGS2BK75 TENDPLGS2BK400

COMPONENT	ITEM #
Trex Plug System Fascia Screws » 1-3/4" (4.4 cm) » 75 ct. box, black » Tools sold separately	TPSF175BK75

COMPONENT	80 CT. ITEM #		COLORS		416 CT. ITEM #		COLORS	
Trex Enhance® Decking/Fascia Plugs » 80 ct., 416 ct.	TPSDFCS80 TPSDFFW80 TPSDFRH80 TPSDFSDEN80 TPSDFTS80	TPSDFHY80 TPSDFTP80 TPSDFBD80 TPSDFCC80 TPSDFCB80	CS FW RH SDEN TS	HY TP BD CC CB	TPSDFCS416 TPSDFFW416 TPSDFRH416 TPSDFSDEN416 TPSDFTS416	TPSDFHY416 TPSDFTP416 TPSDFBD416 TPSDFCC416 TPSDFCB416	CS FW RH SDEN TS	HY TP BD CC CB

COMPONENT	80 CT. ITEM #	COLORS	400 CT. ITEM #	COLORS
Trex Decking Plugs » 80 ct., 400 ct.	TDPLGBC80 TDPLGCL80 TDPLGHG80 TDPLGHT80 TDPLGIM80 TDPLGIML80 TDPLGJA80 TDPLGLR80 TDPLGMS80 TDPLGMY80 TDPLGPG80 TDPLGRN80 TDPLGRS80 TDPLGSD80 TDPLGSF80 TDPLGSR80 TDPLGTT80 TDPLGWL80	BC CL HG HT IM IML JA LR MS MY PG RN RS SD SF SR TT WL	TDPLGBC400 TDPLGCL400 TDPLGHG400 TDPLGHT400 TDPLGIM400 TDPLGIML400 TDPLGJA400 TDPLGLR400 TDPLGMS400 TDPLGMY400 TDPLGPG400 TDPLGRN400 TDPLGRS400 TDPLGSD400 TDPLGSF400 TDPLGSR400 TDPLGTT400 TDPLGWL400	BC CL HG HT IM IML JA LR MS MY PG RN RS SD SF SR TT WL

COMPONENT	80 CT. ITEM #	COLORS
Trex Fascia Plugs » 80 ct.	TPSFBC80 TPSFCL80 TPSFHG80 TPSFHT80 TPSFIM80 TPSFIML80 TPSFJA80 TPSFLR80 TPSFMS80 TPSFMY80 TPSFPG80 TPSFRN80 TPSFRS80 TPSFSDSL80 TPSFSF80 TPSFSR80 TPSFTT80 TPSFWL80 TPSFWW80	BC CL HG HT IM IML JA LR MS MY PG RN RS SDSL SF SR TT WL WW

XX = COLOR PREFIX
BC Biscayne
CL Carmel
HG Havana Gold
HT Hatteras
IM Island Mist
IML Island Mist Lineage
JA Jasper
LR Lava Rock
MS Millstone
MY Malted Barley
PG Pebble Grey
RN Rainier
RS Rope Swing
SD Saddle
SDSL Saddle Select
SF Salt Flat
SR Spiced Rum
TT Tiki Torch
WL Whiskey Barrel
WW Woodgrain White

UNIVERSAL FASTENERS

COMPONENT	ITEM #
Universal Fastener » Glass-filled nylon	UNIVCONCLIP *(50 sq. ft. box)* DA00002 *(500 sq. ft. bucket)*
Universal Starter Clip » 400 sq. ft. (37 sq. m.) bag	UNIVSTARTCLIP
Butt Joint Clip » 14/pk.	BJC14PK
Groove Router Bit	ROUTBIT
Universal Fastener Installation Tool	ONESTEPTL

DECKING/FASCIA SYSTEM TOOLS

COMPONENT	ITEM #
Trex Color-Match Fascia Counterbore Tool Kit » w/ Drive Bits	TCMFCBKIT
Trex Plug System Fascia Counterbore Tool Kit » w/ Depth Setters	TPSFCBKIT
Trex Plug System Enhance Decking Tool Kit » w/ Depth Setters	TPSWENDCBKIT

DECKING TOOLS

COMPONENT	ITEM #
HexStix Bit » 2-pk	THB2PK
Decking Depth Setter » 1-pk	TDDS1PK

TREX BRANDED RECOMMENDED FASTENERS

If any condition occurs which is attributable to the use of non-recommended or non-approved fasteners, such condition shall not be covered under the Trex Limited Warranty.

		Signature®	Transcend®	Enhance ®	Select®
APPROVED FASTENERS	**DECKING–HIDDEN FASTENERS**				
	Trex Hideaway® Universal Hidden Fastener	X	X	X	X
	Trex Hideaway® Deck Plug* *Ensure to use correct Trex Hideaway plug system for designated Trex Decking Profile		X	X	X
	DECKING–COMPOSITE SCREWS				
	Trex Hideaway® Color Match Decking Composite Screw	X	X	X	X

		Signature®	Transcend®	Enhance®	Select®
APPROVED FASTENERS	**FASCIA****				
	Trex Hideaway® Fascia Plug* *Ensure to use correct Trex Hideaway plug system for designated Trex Fascia Profile		X	X	X
	Trex Hideaway® Color Match Fascia Composite Screw	X	X	X	X

OTHER APPROVED FASTENERS

If any condition occurs which is attributable to the use of non-recommended or non-approved fasteners, such condition shall not be covered under the Trex Limited Warranty.

		Signature®	Transcend®	Enhance®	Select®
OTHER APPROVED FASTENERS	**DECKING–HIDDEN FASTENERS**				
	Tiger Claw® TC-G Hidden Fastener	X	X	X	X
	Cortex® Concealed Fasteners**	X	X		X
	Starborn® Pro Plug® System for Composite Epoxy Coated & Stainless (2" are recommended for sleeper & roof top applications only)	X	X		X
	Simpson Strong-Tie® Deck Drive™ DCU Composite Screw & DCU Plugs (Handdrive only & must also use Auto-Set Drive Bit)		X		X
	DECKING–COMPOSITE SCREWS				
	FastenMaster® TrapEase 3 Ultimate Composite Deck Screw	X	X	X	X
	Simpson Strong-Tie® Deck Drive™ DCU Composite Screw (Collated & Handdrive)	X	X	X	X
	Quik Drive® Composi-Lok Deck Screw		X	X	X
	SplitStop™ Titan III Composite Screw		X	X	X
	Starborn® Cap-Tor® xd Epoxy Coated & Stainless (available collated for Muro CH7390 Driver) (2" are approved for sleeper & roof top applications only)	X	X	X	X
	Screw Products C-Deck Exterior Star Drive Composite Deck Screw	X	X	X	X
	Kameleon™ GRKFasteners® Composite Deck screws				X

		Signature®	Transcend®	Enhance®	Select®
OTHER APPROVED FASTENERS	**FASCIA****				
	Cortex® Hidden Fastening System for Fascia		X	X	X
	Starborn® Pro Plug® System for Fascia – Epoxy & Stainless		X	X	X
	Starborn® Deckfast® Fascia System – Epoxy Coated* and Headcote® Stainless	X	X	X	X
	SplitStop™ Fascia Screws		X	X	X
	Simpson Strong-Tie® Fascia Board Screw		X	X	X
	FastenMaster® TrapEase® Fascia Fastener	X	X	X	X

IMPORTANT ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

- **FOR TREX ENHANCE PROFILES, THE ONLY TREX RECOMMENDED PLUG BASED HIDDEN FASTENERS ARE TREX HIDEAWAY DECK PLUGS; DO NOT USE ANY OTHER PLUG BASED HIDDEN FASTENERS WITH TREX ENHANCE PROFILES**
- **Trex requires the use of two screws per joist.**

OTHER NOTES:

» All recommended color-matching face fastener screws are designed to be installed flush with decking surface. DO NOT countersink screws.

» Use recommended stainless steel screws in any areas near bodies of saltwater.

» 2-3/4" or 3" screws can be used with Trex 2x6 product.

» 2-1/2" that are supplied with **plug-based fasteners** are allowed to be used with Trex 2x6 product.

» All decking products are recommended for use with Trex Hideaway Fasteners, thus all decking products can be routed according to our instructions.

» Simpson Strong-Tie Deck Drive DCU Composite Screw in collated versions works with Quik Drive gun.

» Fascia system screws listed above **can only be used with composite fascia profiles**, and cannot be used with standard thickness decking boards used as fascia. Use stainless steel screws near water applications.

- ** Not for use with sleeper systems. Refer to FastenMaster® literature for more information.

Minimum Fastener Size		
	SCREWS	
Profile	Length	No.
1x6	2-1/2" or 2-3/4"	#8, #10
2x6	2-3/4" or 3"	#8, #10

FastenMaster® TrapEase® and Cortex® are registered trademarks of OMG, Inc.

Strong-Tie Quik Drive® is a registered trademark and Composi-Lok™ is a trademark of Simpson Strong-Tie Company, Inc.

Starborn DeckFast® Cap-Tor®, Pro Plug®, and Headcote® are registered trademarks of Starborn Industries Inc.

C-Deck Exterior Star Deck Composite Deck Screw is a product of Screw Products Inc.

SplitStop™ is a trademark of Titan Metal Werks, LLC.

Kameleon is a trademark and GRKFasteners® is a registered trademark of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX FASCIA INSTALLATION RECOMMENDATIONS

General Notes:

» ***Trex Fascia utilized around the perimeter of a deck must be gapped with the same requirements as Trex decking to allow for expansion/contraction of the fascia.***

» ***When using 2 x 8 framing, attach fascia using 2 fascia recommended fasteners; when using 2 x 10 or larger framing, attach fascia using 3 fascia recommended fasteners. Top screw should be placed 1" from the top of the rim joist, the second screw in the center of the rim joist, and the third screw 1" from the bottom of the rim joist.***

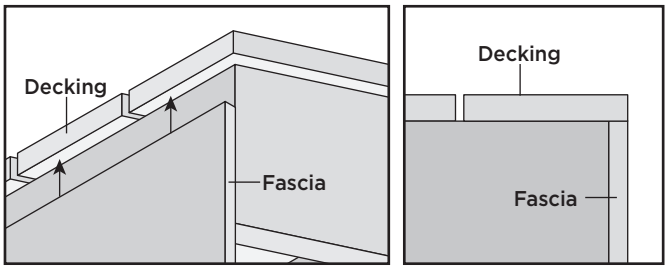
» ***Refer to page 32-33 for fascia recommended fascia fasteners.***

WHEN USING RECOMMENDED FASCIA FASTENERS:

» Recommended fascia fasteners can only be used with 1x8 or 1x12 fascia product and cannot be used with decking products that are being used as fascia trim or stair risers.

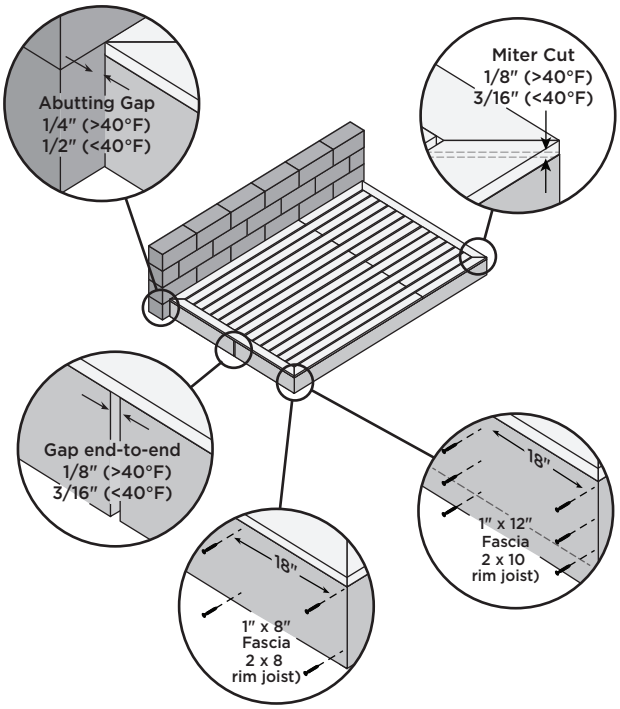
Method 1: Fascia Under Decking

(**Note:** reflects 2x8 fascia installation & square-edge decking).



Install fascia **UNDER** decking edges/ends. This will optimize the aesthetics and performance of the installation.

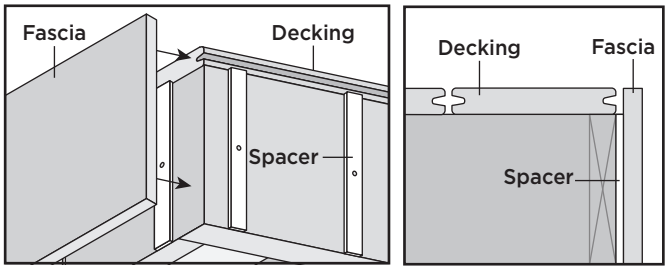
All images shown here reflect fascia under the decking as well as using recommended fascia screws.



Method 2: Fascia Beside Decking

(**Note:** spacers below reflect 2x8 fascia installation)

When using this method, attachment of spacers to framing may vary depending on the fascia size. If installing 1x12 fascia use two screws spaced properly apart so as to not interfere when installing fascia screws.



Install 3/16" to 1/4" thick x minimum 1" wide exterior grade spacers (these should be cut the same length as the rim joist), and spaced 9" on center. Install fascia screws as stated below at spacer locations (ensure that spacer screw does not interfere with fascia screw).

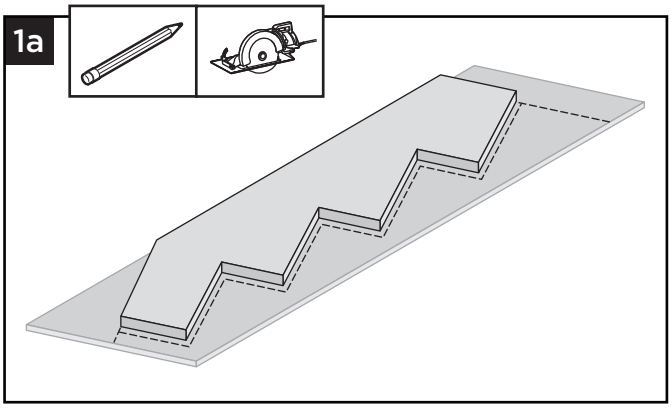
TIP: Prior to installing spacers, paint ends black so as these are not as visible (especially when using contrasting colors).

TREX FASCIA INSTALLATION RECOMMENDATIONS

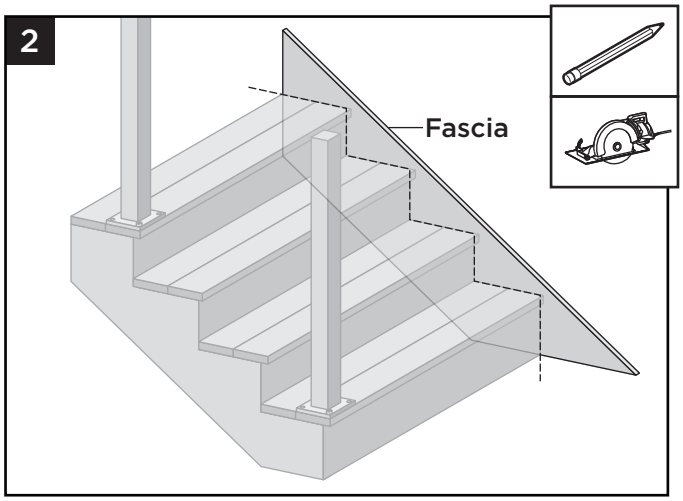
Using Fascia to Box in Stairs

Cutting Fascia

Method 1: Stair Stringer as Template

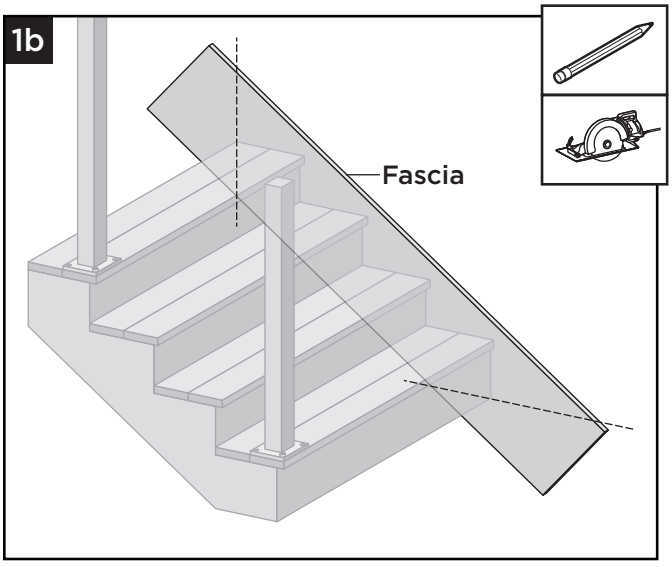


1a. Using a stair stringer as a template, lay this on the fascia and trace out pattern for stair stringer, ensuring you also factor in stair tread/deck board thickness and riser thickness before cutting. This option is shown above. Proceed to step 3.



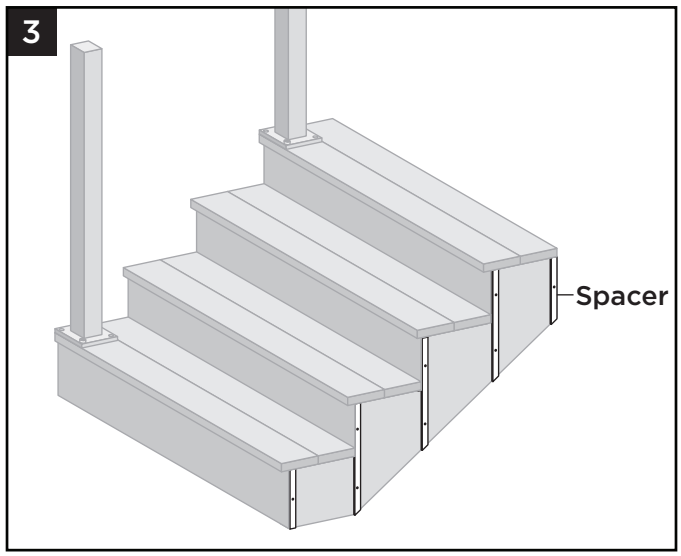
2b. Once completed place fascia in proper location and trace around stair treads and risers and then cut to fit.

Method 2: Fascia Beside Decking



1b. Another option is cutting fascia plumb to the rim joist at the top and flush at the bottom of the stairs as shown.

Installing Fascia To Stringers

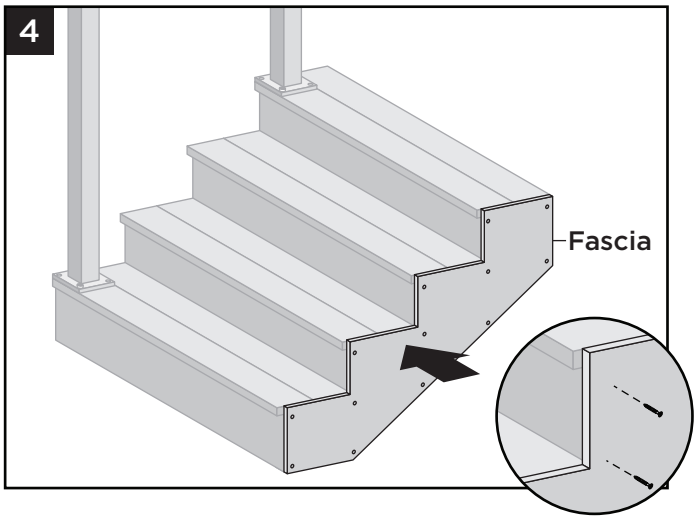


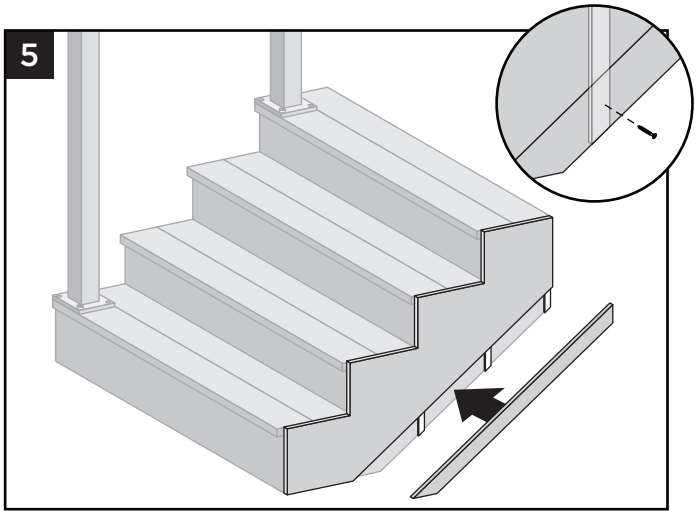
3. Spacers should be installed like that of standard decking, ensuring these are spaced 9" apart (see previous page for detailed information on all requirements for spacers).

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX FASCIA INSTALLATION RECOMMENDATIONS

Using Fascia to Box in Stairs/CONTINUED



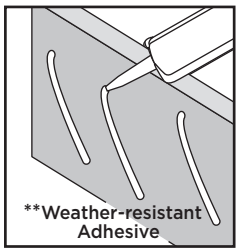


4. Install appropriate number of recommended fasteners as per pattern shown above, as overall size of fascia after being cut may be smaller than that of the standard size, thus the number of screws used every 18" may be different in different areas. Ensure screws are installed 1" from edge of stringer (do not install screws in the end of the stair tread).

5. If the fascia is not wide enough to cover the stair stringer, a secondary piece of fascia may need to be cut accordingly and installed. Install using one recommended fascia fastener on or near the spacer.

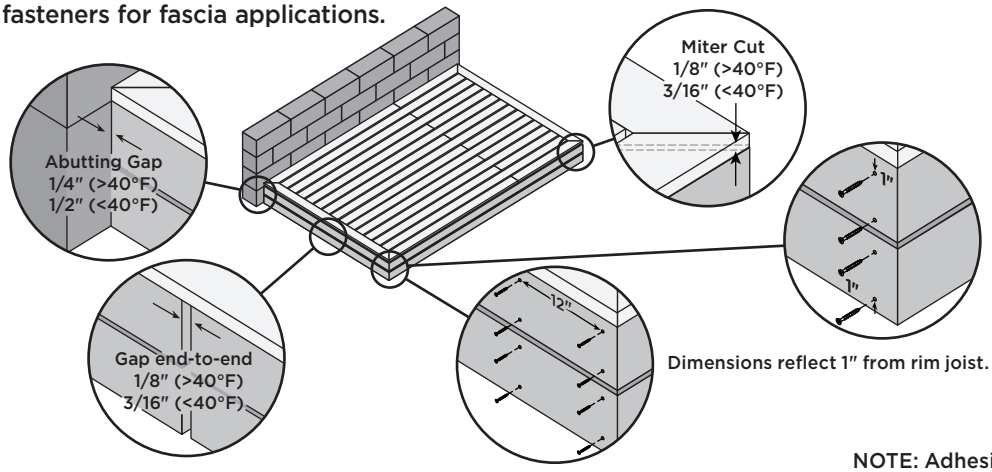
WHEN USING DECK BOARDS AND COMPOSITE DECKING FASTENERS FOR FASCIA

While Trex prefers the previous methods of attachment for fascia applications, as these are the very best options, there are also other recommendations that can be followed for deck boards being used for fascia. Use two Trex recommended composite decking screws every 12". ***NOTE THAT TREX RECOMMENDED FASCIA RECOMMENDED FASTENERS CANNOT BE USED IN THIS APPLICATION. IN ADDITION ALWAYS refer to manufacturer instructions to ensure that recommended screws can be used for fascia applications.*** The top screw should be placed 1" from the top of the **rim joist**, and the second screw 1" from the bottom of the **rim joist**.



****IN ADDITION**, also use a weather-resistant, construction-grade adhesive (adhesives that work with wood will work with Trex products) as a **SECONDARY** fastener when attaching deck boards used for fascia. ***Remember to wipe away any excess before it dries or is allowed to drip onto other Trex surfaces.***

All images shown here reflect deck boards used for fascia applications, and using recommended composite fasteners for fascia applications.



Dimensions reflect 1" from rim joist.

NOTE: Adhesive is also required as stated within instructions.

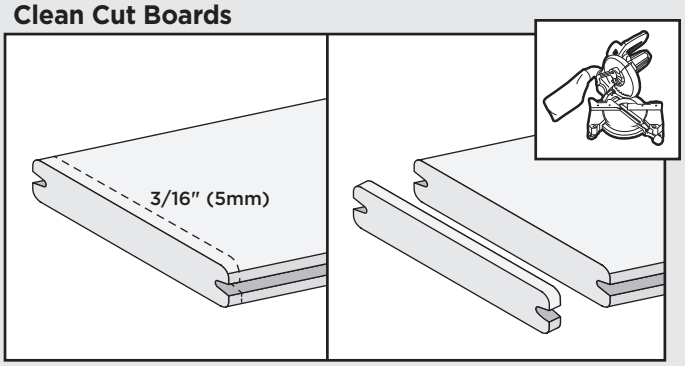
NOTE: *English measurements are shown. Convert to metric measurements if necessary.*

Framing and Fastening Tips

Fastening Tip for Trex® Decking

NOTE: When using pneumatic or battery-operated equipment, adjust the pressure so that you only shoot the head of the screw to be flush with the board's cap. DO NOT shoot the fastener head completely through the shell.

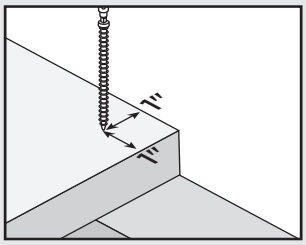
Clean Cut Boards



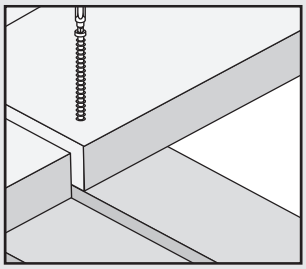
It is required that boards be clean cut on both ends a minimum of 3/16" (5mm). Ensure board ends are cut square.

Composite decking is a great alternative to traditional wood decking. When building your deck and railing, it is recommended that code-approved structural material be used as the framing and joists. Check your local building codes for restrictions. Trex decking cannot be used for structural applications. **Do not attach Trex decking directly to any solid surface or watertight system.**

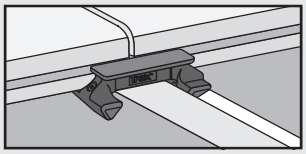
In most cases, install fasteners at a 90° angle (perpendicular to the board).

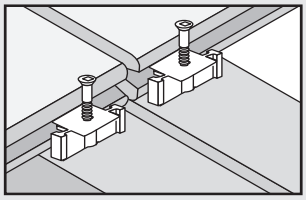


At board ends on the deck's edge, you can install screws placed perpendicularly at the recommended distance, at minimum of 1" (25mm) from the board end and edge, without splitting the board.



For butt joints, where boards meet over a single joist, use the Trex Hideweay Butt Joint Clip. Optional method is to add a 2 x 4 "nailer" board at the joist and use two Trex Hideaway Universal Hidden Fasteners. This allows screw-in at 90 degrees and allows fasteners to be used at end of each board.





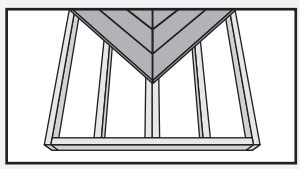
Dock Applications

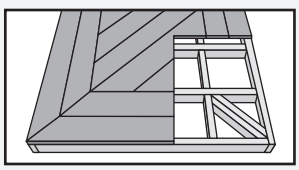
Trex decking is approved for all water-contact applications. Boards can be submerged in water for extended periods of time, including multiple times a day with rising tides.

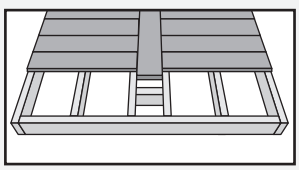
Stainless steel fasteners should be used. In addition, if there is a great deal of contact between the dock and gasoline, grounding of the dock is also recommended.

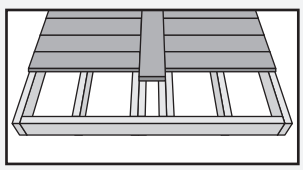
Special Patterns

When planning a unique pattern, you will need to adjust the framing to support the surface pattern. Many decks are designed to take advantage of angles, as shown below.


Herringbone Pattern


Picture Frame Pattern

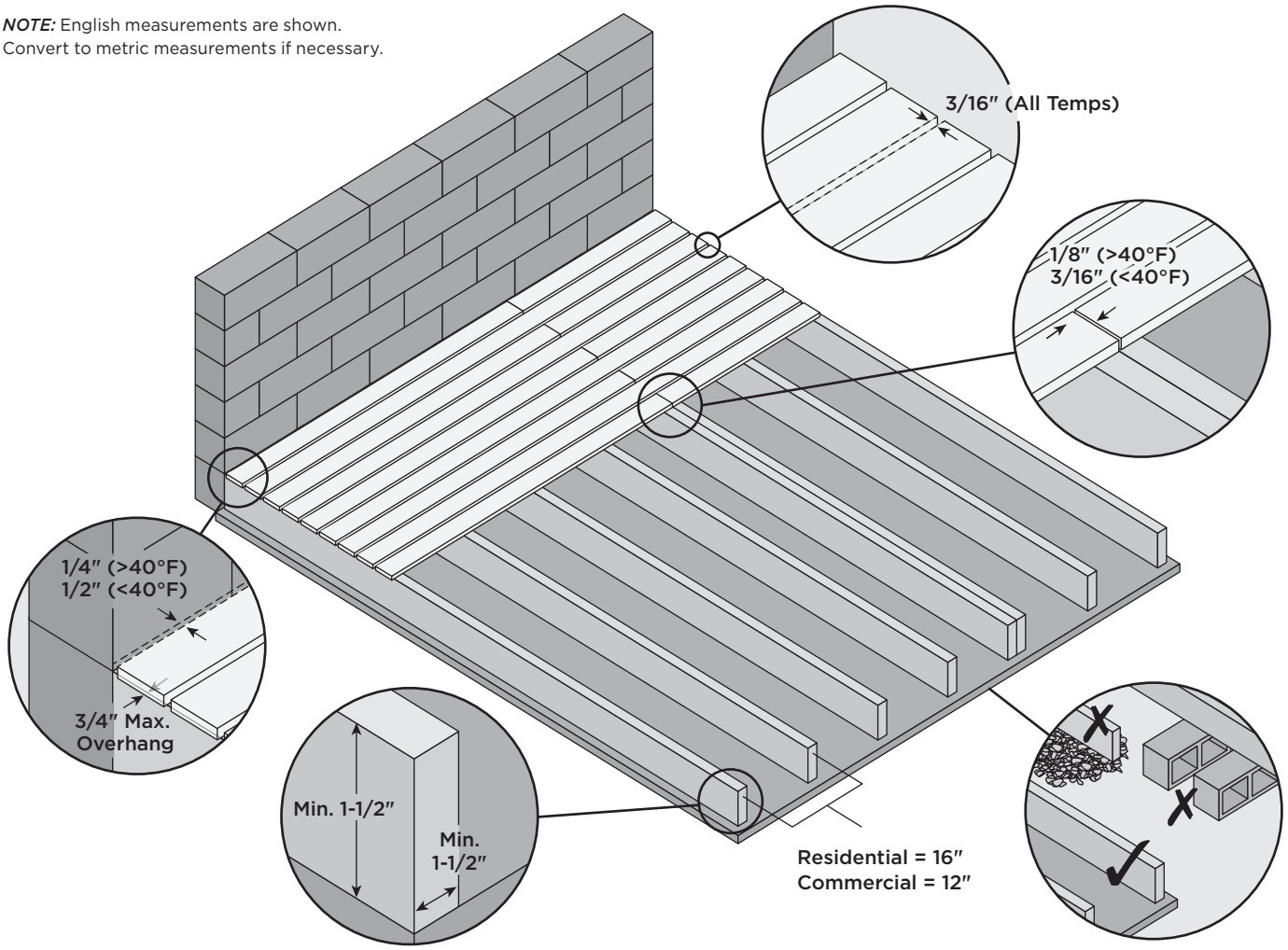

Breaker Board
Single Joist


Breaker Board
Double Joist

Rooftop and Sleeper Deck Systems – Pressure-Treated Framing

A sleeper system is a substructure between a solid surface and Trex decking. Drainage, access, and airflow are critical. Water must be able to flow through and away from the deck. For repairs and removal of debris, joist system access may be necessary.

NOTE: English measurements are shown.
Convert to metric measurements if necessary.

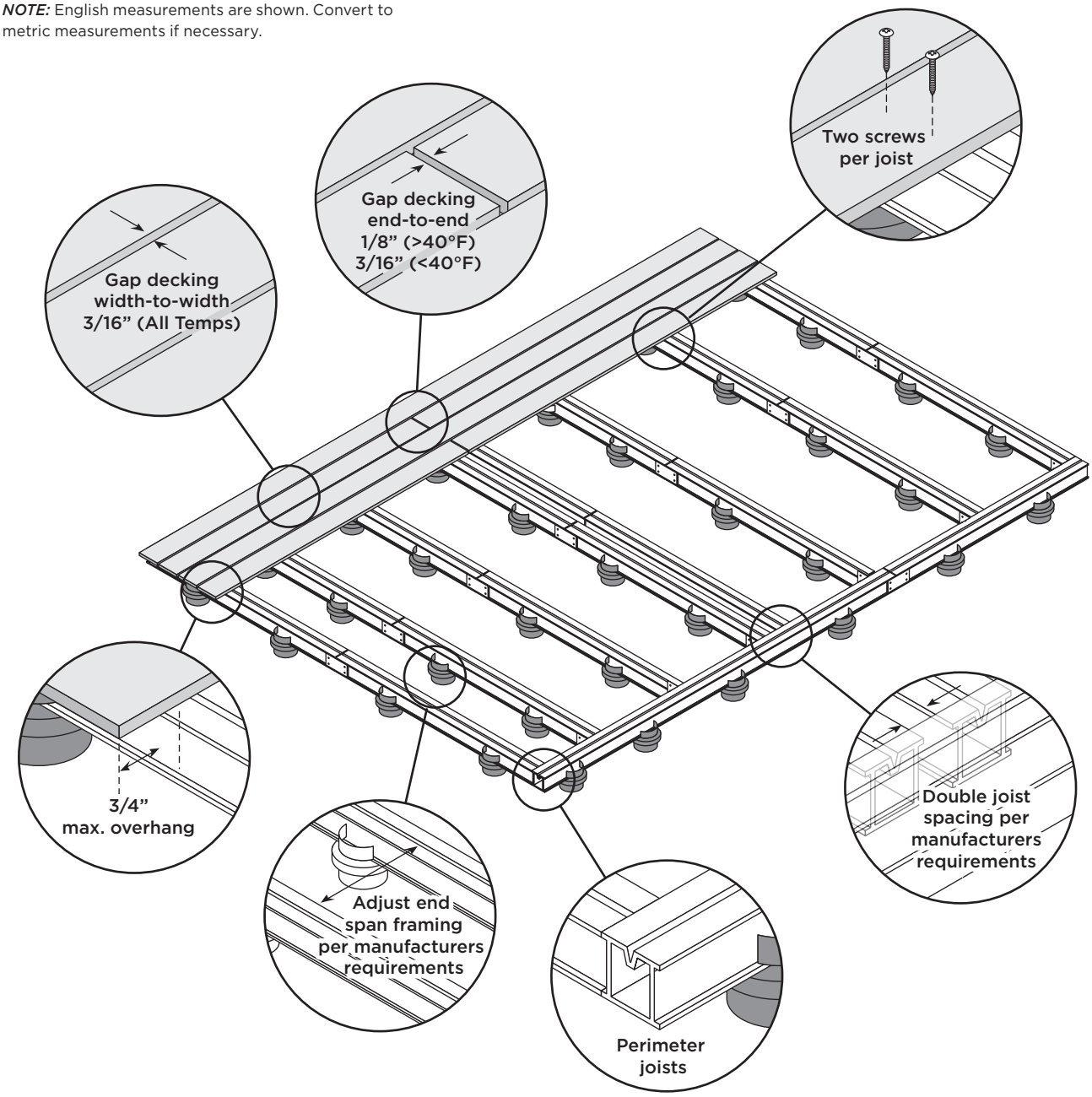


- » It is recommended that building-code approved structural material be used as the supports.
- » This system should not be allowed to float. It must be attached in a manner that secures the framing/system.
- » The sleeper system must be level and have no uneven undulations. Any uneven areas of the substructure will transfer to the Trex decking, resulting in uneven decking.
- » Trex, when used with a sleeper system, must be supported below its entire length. If using in a roofing application, the supports must run the direction of the pitch of the roof to facilitate proper drainage. Sleeper should be placed perpendicular to the deck board orientation.
- » For commercial applications, consult a local building code official for specific requirements.
- » If installing decking at an angle, decrease spans 4" (100 mm) for each of the above. (12" (305 mm) for residential and 8" (204 mm) for commercial.)
- » For sleeper systems where small debris (pine needles, leaves, sand, dirt) can accumulate either between or under deck boards, a minimum of 1-1/2" (38mm) height is allowable. Trex recommends the use of Trex Universal Hidden Fasteners or 2" Starborn Cap-Tor® xd - Epoxy Coated screws. ***NOTE:*** Trex recommended composite decking screws are too long when using 1-1/2" (38 mm) height as this will penetrate through the sleeper.
- » For areas with the potential for debris buildup, a minimum 3-1/2" (89 mm) or greater height is recommended to allow the debris to be removed along with the use of either Trex Universal Hidden fasteners or any Trex recommended or approved screws.
- » **Always** consult your local building code authority for proper details on roof and railing installation to the roof structure if required.
- » Any deviation from these recommendations could result in voiding of the Trex warranty.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Metal Framing Requirements and Gapping

NOTE: English measurements are shown. Convert to metric measurements if necessary.



NOTES:

» When using a metal framing system follow manufacturer's instructions for proper installation.

» When using screws to attach decking to framing, use two screws per every joist.

	Compatible Fastener Materials for use with Trex decking		
Substrate Material	*Carbon Steel with Corrosion-Resistant Coating*	*Stainless Steel: 410 Series or 1.4003 / 1.4006*	*Stainless Steel: 300 Series or 1.4301 / 1.4401 / 1.4567*
Steel	No	Yes*	No

*Trex Steel Framing Universal Hidden Fastener (SKU-ELVUNICLIP) are recommended.

» If using a fastener that is material compatible with substrate but is not listed as a recommended Trex fastener, the decking material will need to be predrilled before use.

» If any condition occurs which is attributable to the use of non-recommended or non-approved fasteners, such condition shall not be covered under the Trex Limited Warranty.

Code Compliance

Joist Spanning for Decking

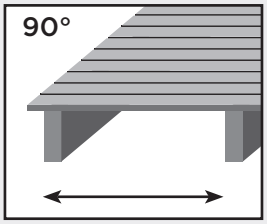
Trex decking meets all applicable national model building codes. The joists must be spaced on center according to the chart below. Be sure that joists are level and plumb. Trex decking must span at least three joists. **For heavy items such as hot tubs, planters, etc., consult a local building engineer or inspector for span recommendations.**

Code Listings

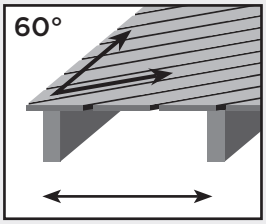
Trex complies with major model building codes and has been evaluated by the International Code Council evaluation service.

For a Safety Data Sheets (SDS), please visit ***www.trex.com.***

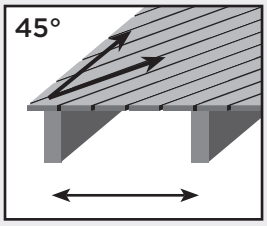
Adjust Joist Spanning to Accommodate Angled Decking Patterns



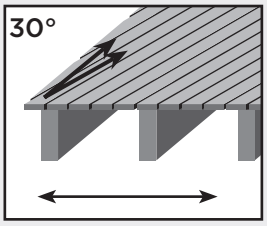
Perpendicular to joists. *See chart below.*



At a 60° angle, maximum joist spanning is 2″ (51 mm) less than listed in the chart below.



At a 45° angle, maximum joist spanning is 4″ (102 mm) less than listed in the chart below.



At a 30° angle, maximum joist spanning is 1/2 of the distance listed in the chart below.

Trex Decking Span Chart (on center)			
	Residential Decks, Light Duty Docks, Residential/Day Care Playground	Commercial Decks, Boardwalks and Marinas	
Decking Loading	100 psf = 4.8 kN/m2	100 psf = 4.8 kN/m2	200 psf = 9.5 kN/m2
1″ (25 mm) Boards, and .875″ (22 mm) Select Boards	16″ (406 mm)	16″ (406 mm)	12″ (305 mm)
2 x 6 (51 mm x 152 mm) Boards	24″ (610 mm)	24″ (610 mm)	16″ (406 mm)

Trex Railing Span Chart
See code reports and instructions for allowable spans for railing applications

Canada Requirements For Trex Transcend and Trex Select Decking: The following changes are to be followed with respect to spans and gapping instructions; these spans are specific for CCMC requirements only.

Canada Allowable Joist and Stair Stringer Spacing		
Product	Maximum Allowable Joist Spacing	Maximum Allowable Stair Stringer Spacing
21mm x 140mm Select Decking	400 mm	200 mm
24mm x 140mm Transcend Decking	400 mm	230 mm
33mm x 140mm Select Decking	600 mm	250 mm
33mm x 140mm Transcend Decking	600 mm	250 mm

Canada Gapping Requirements		
Gap Type	Temperature at Time of Installation	Minimum Gap Requirement (mm)
Width to Width Gap	Above -9 °C	5
End to End	Above 15°C	4
End to End	Between 3°C to 15°C	6
End to End	Between -9°C to 3°C	8
End to Solid Object	Above 3°C	6
End to Solid Object	Between -9°C to 3°C	13

Gapping and Overhang

You must gap Trex decking both end-to-end and width-to-width. Gapping is necessary for drainage and the slight thermal expansion and contraction of Trex decking boards. Gapping also allows for shrinkage of the wood joist system.

» **ALWAYS** follow Trex gapping guidelines.
» Maximum allowable perpendicular overhang for all Trex decking is 3/4″ (19 mm).
» All decks require air circulation to keep them dry and looking good. To improve air flow, leave openings under the decking or increase gapping to 3/8″ (10 mm).
» For areas that require CCMC Evaluation, refer to the Trex Canadian Decking Installation Guide for gapping requirements.

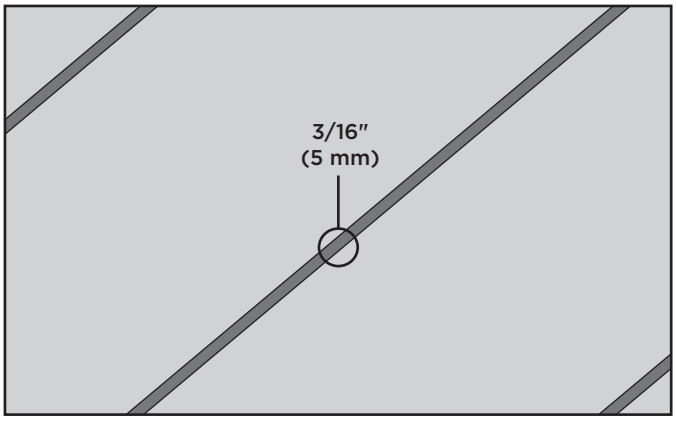
Width-to-Width Gap
3/16″ (5 mm)

End-to-End/End-to-Width and Abutting Gap		
	End-to-End/ End-to-Width	Abutting Gap
Above 40°F* (4.5°C)*	1/8″ (3 mm)	1/4″ (6 mm)
Below 40°F* (4.5°C)*	3/16″ (5 mm)	1/2″ (13 mm)

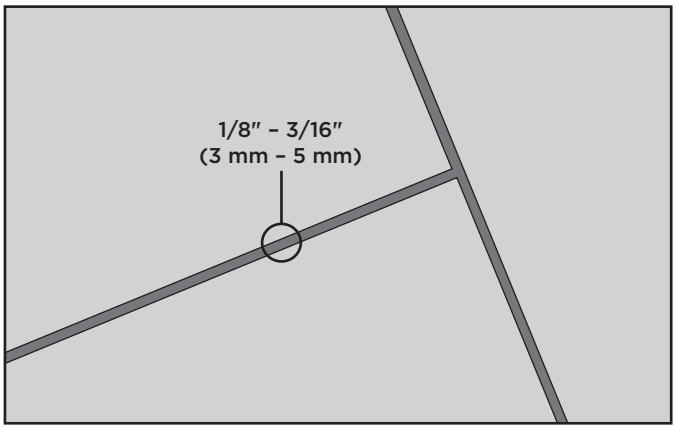
**Temperature at installation.*

When you use the recommended hidden fasteners, the placement of the hidden fastener establishes the designated gap size.

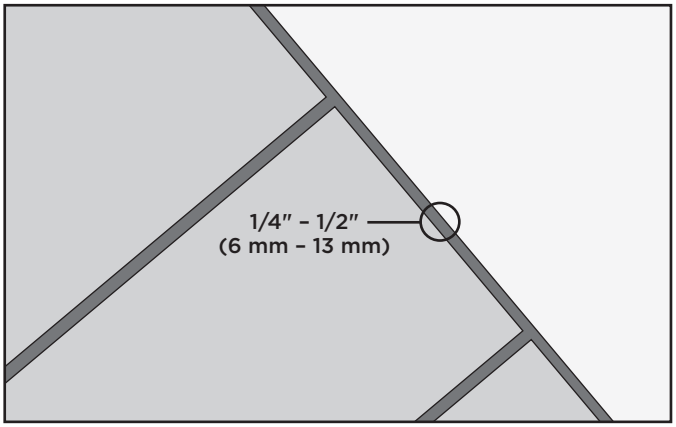
When installing fascia, gapping guidelines must be followed.



Width-to-Width
The minimum required width-to-width gapping is 3/16″ (5 mm). This is allowed for both hot and cold weather installations. For docks and heavily wooded areas, Trex recommends a 3/8″ (10 mm) gap. No gapping should ever exceed 1/2″ (13 mm).



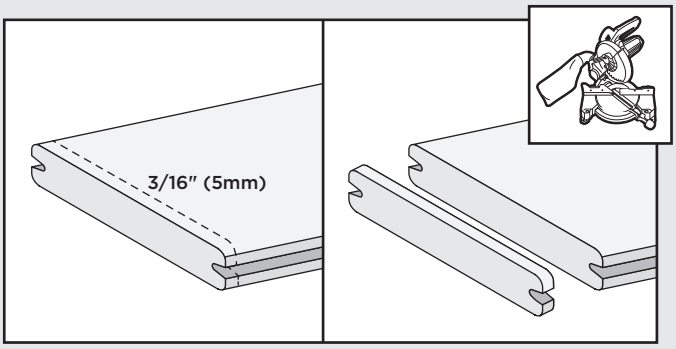
End-to-End/End-to-Width
Gap Trex decking end-to-end, based upon the temperature at installation. *See chart at left.* *For fastening tips, see page 37.*



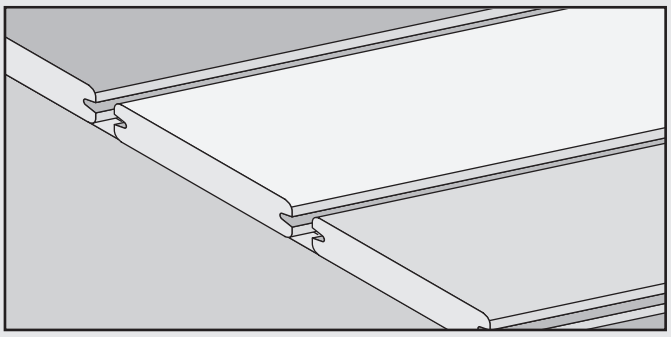
Abutting Solid Objects
When decking is abutting a wall, you must also gap it 1/4″–1/2″ (6–13 mm) depending on the temperature at installation. *See chart to the left.*

Important Notes Before Installing Trex® Decking

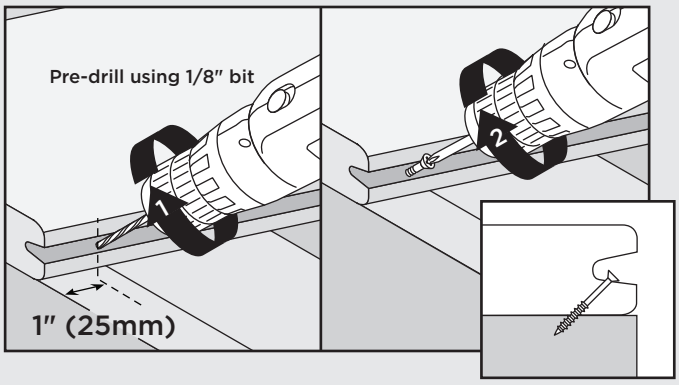
It is required to clean cut boards on both ends a minimum 3/16" (5mm).



To ensure an appealing mix of color tones, mix and match all boards prior to installation.

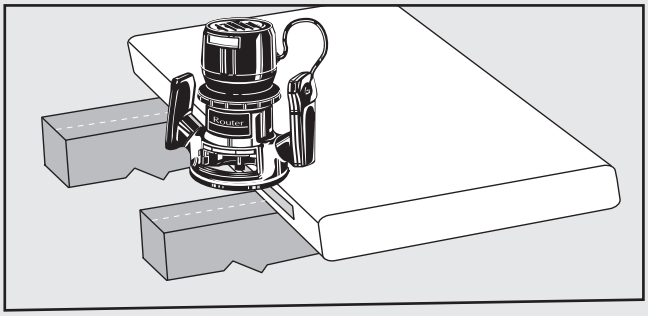


If installing in localities prone to large temperature shifts within a 24-hour period, and installing Trex Universal Hidden Fasteners, predrill and toenail a screw (use same screw used in hidden fasteners) at an angle in groove at both ends (at least 1" (25mm) from board end) and center of each board.



Routing Square Edge Boards for Trex Hideaway Hidden Fasteners

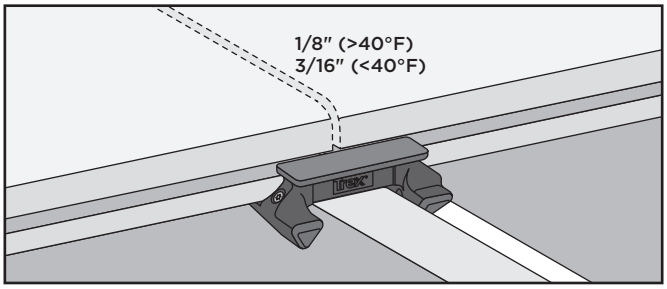
NOTE: All Trex square edge profiles, either 1x6 or 2x6, can be routed.



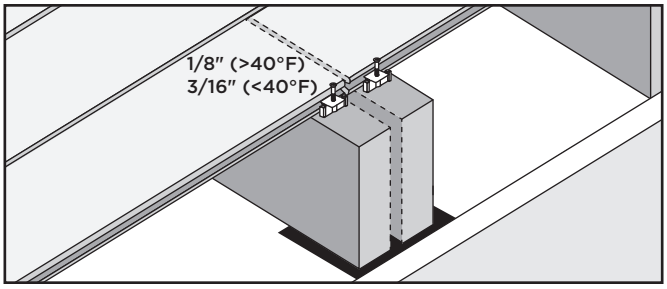
Using a Trex router bit with standard router:

1. Rout from bottom side of board.
2. Rout the entire length of the board, or at every intersection where board is over support joists.

Abutted Board Attachment Wood Framing- Option 1

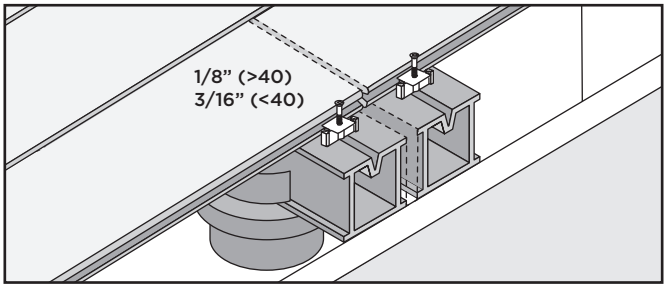


Abutted Board Attachment Wood Framing- Option 2



NOTE: Optional - Gap joist framing 1/8" – 1/4" to allow for water drainage. Refer to local building code recommendations to determine if gapping between joists to allow for additional airflow is required.

Metal Framing



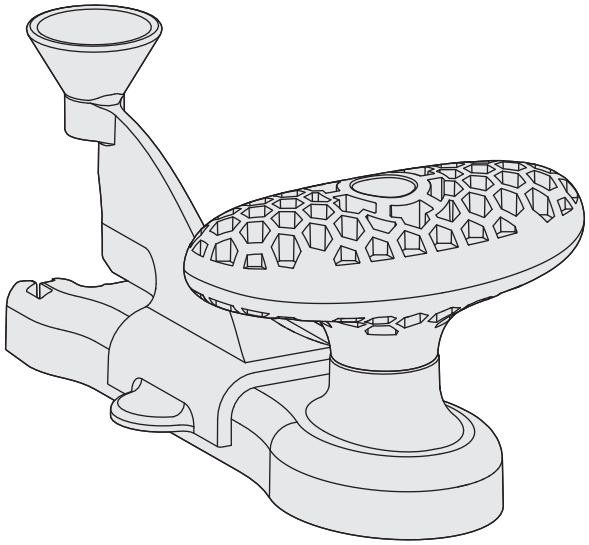
NOTE: Hidden Fasteners MUST be used at every joist.

NOTE: Use a drill (with adjustable clutch and torque) and adjust these settings if necessary to ensure screw is seated correctly in fastener. DO NOT countersink the screw head into the fastener. Screw head should be flush with the top of the fastener.

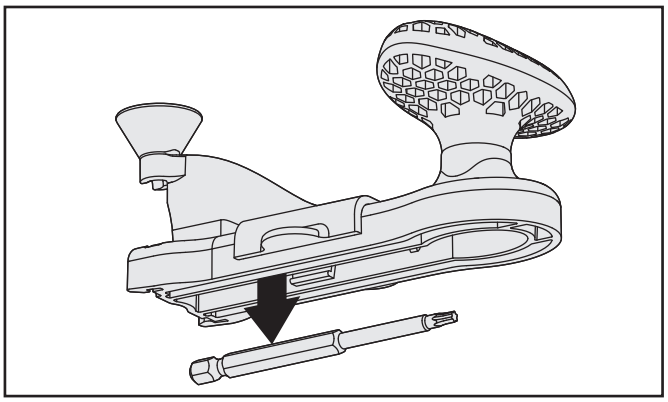
TREX HIDEAWAY®
One-Step Hidden Fastener Tool Instructions

The Hideaway® One-Step Installation Tool increases installation speed by allowing you to install the fastener in one easy step. With this tool you can fully actuate the fastener and still install your next deck board, converting what's normally a two-step process into a one-step installation process.

One-Step Hidden Fastener Tool

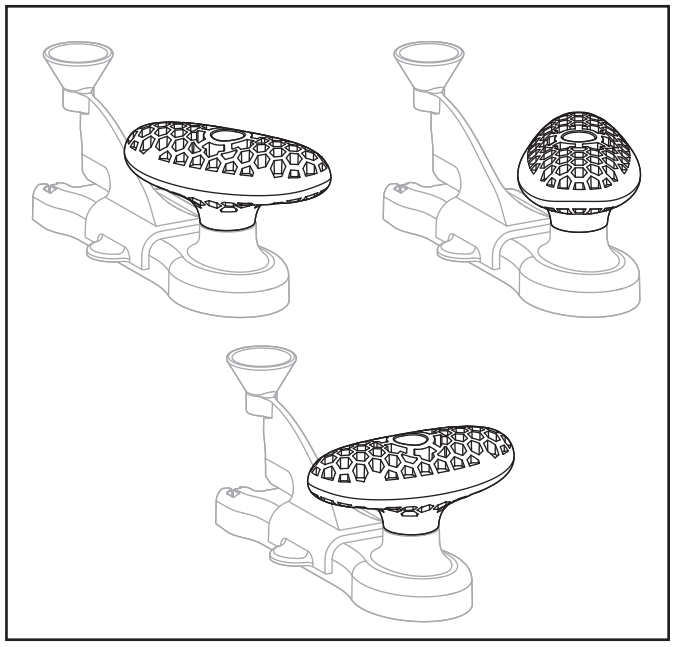


One-Step Hidden Fastener Tool Bit

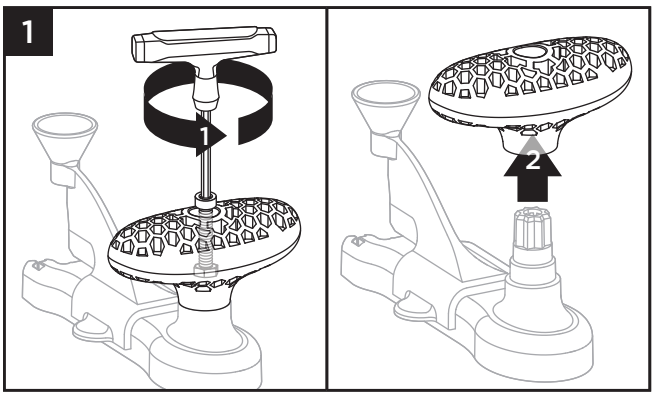


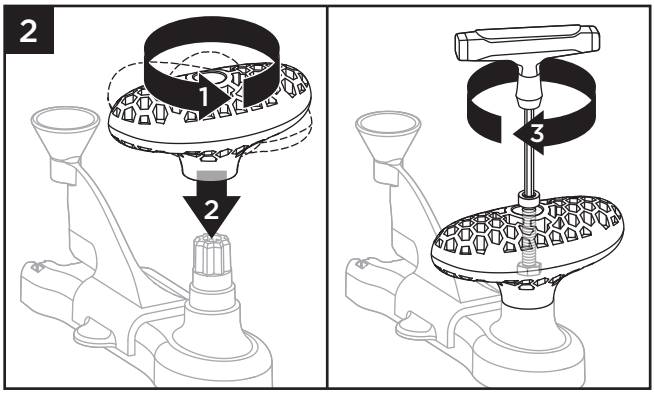
The bit supplied with the Trex Universal Fasteners and the One Step Tool are the same bit, and both are compatible with the tool. Turned down T10 bits from other manufacturers will also work, but please ensure the turned down portion (the narrow nose) is at least 1-1/2" long. Using an inappropriate bit will not allow fasteners to seat correctly and could damage the tool. Bit is conveniently located on the underside of the one-step tool. For replacement Trex® bits please visit Shop.Trex.com.

Handle Adjustment



Handle is adjustable and can be loosened and rotated using a 3/16" hex tool to a comfortable position for the user.



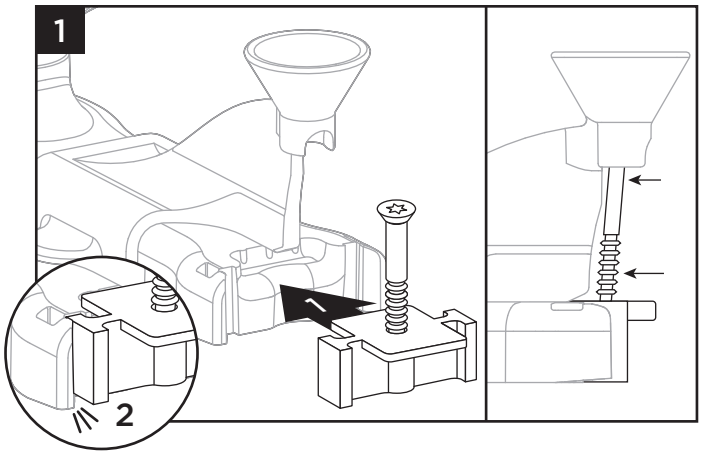


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

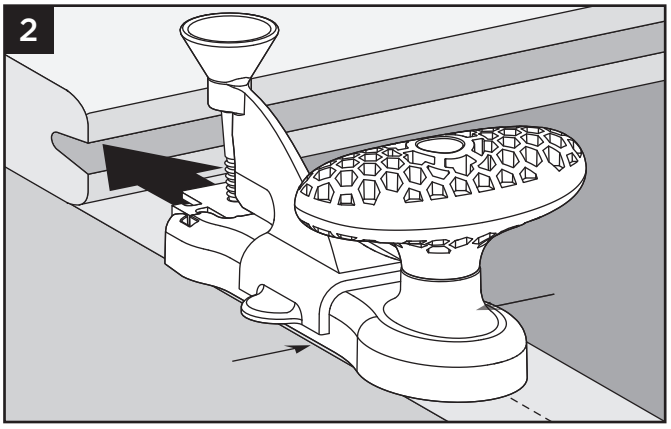
TREX HIDEAWAY®
One-Step Hidden Fastener Tool Instructions/CONTINUED

NOTE: *See instructions included with Trex Hideaway Universal Hidden Fasteners for general rules including clean cutting board ends, gapping rules, abutted board rules and installation of angled deck boards, as well as start clip instructions, steps to take for large temperature shifts and installation of last deck board.*

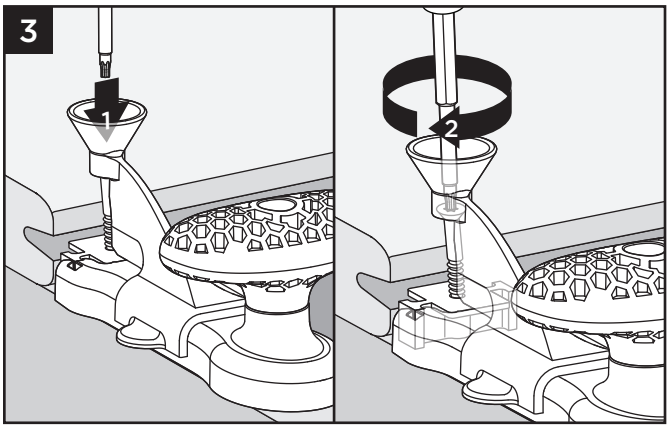
Installation Instructions



1. Place Hideaway hidden fastener into one-step tool. There will be a slight click when fastener is engaged properly. Screw will also be slightly at an angle when engaged in one-step tool properly.

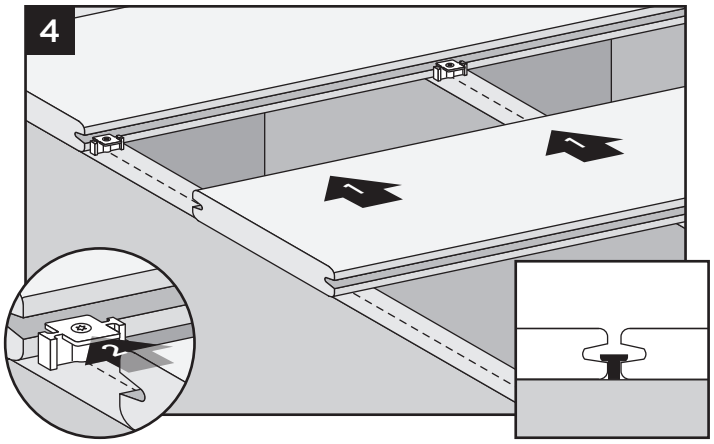


2. Center one-step tool (with fastener included) on joist and push into groove of board.



3. Using bit included with one-step tool, install screw as shown. Screw should be slightly countersunk into fastener when installed correctly. Continue to install fasteners on every joist. **Do Not Overdrive Screw**.

NOTE: *Signs of overtightening would be the tool getting stuck and unable to remove properly and/or signs that the shaft of the bit is damaging the conical screw guide.*



4. Install next board against installed hidden fasteners. Some slight force (using a rubber mallet) to seat next board against fasteners may be required.

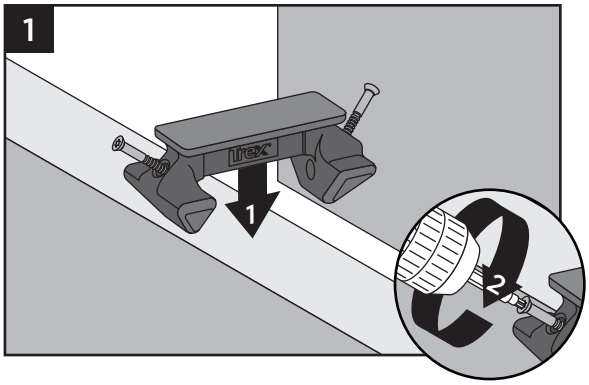
HOW TO INSTALL DECKING

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

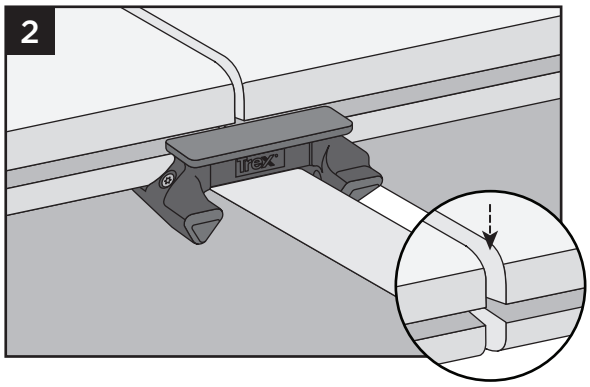
TREX HIDEAWAY®
Butt Joint Clip Instructions

IMPORTANT NOTES:
» Proper end-to-end gapping is required. See complete installation instructions for details.
» Cannot be used with Trex RainEscape® applications.
» Deck boards must be installed across a minimum of 3 supports.

Installation Instructions



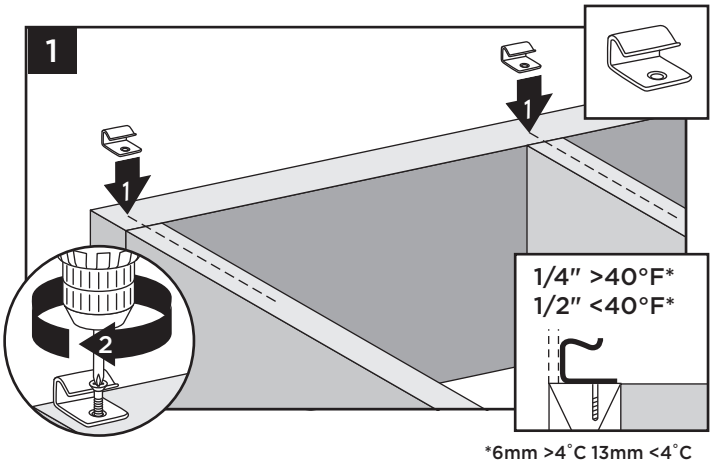
1. For butt joints, where boards meet over a single joist, install butt clip to shared joist as shown with 2 screws (supplied with clip).



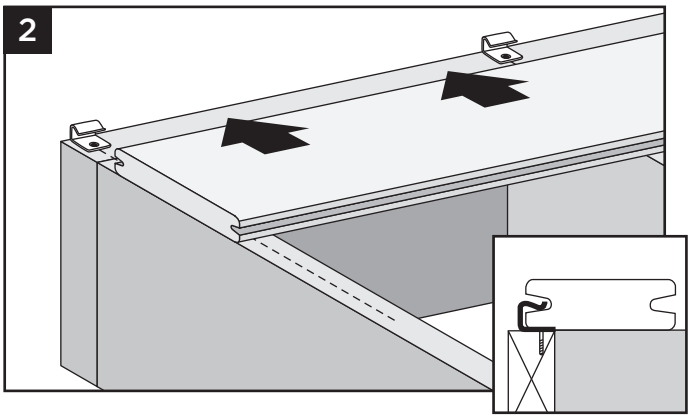
2. Properly gap decking per Trex requirements.

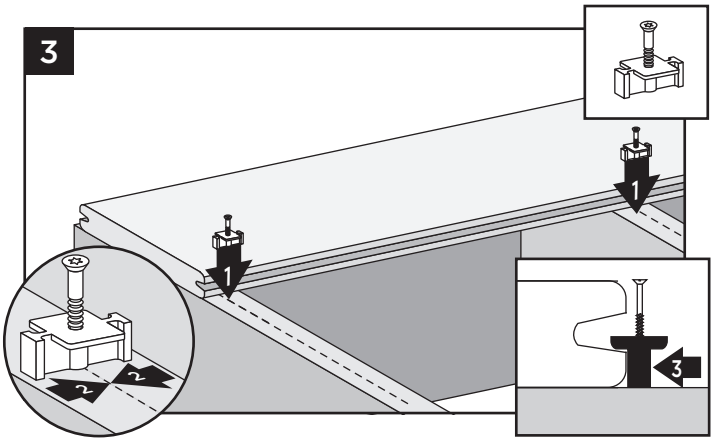
Installing Trex Signature®, Transcend®, Enhance®, Trex Select® Decking

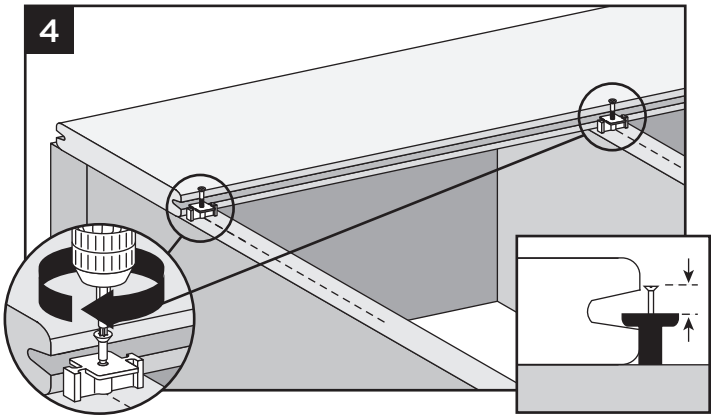
NOTE: *These instructions should be followed when* ***NOT*** *using the One-Step Tool.*



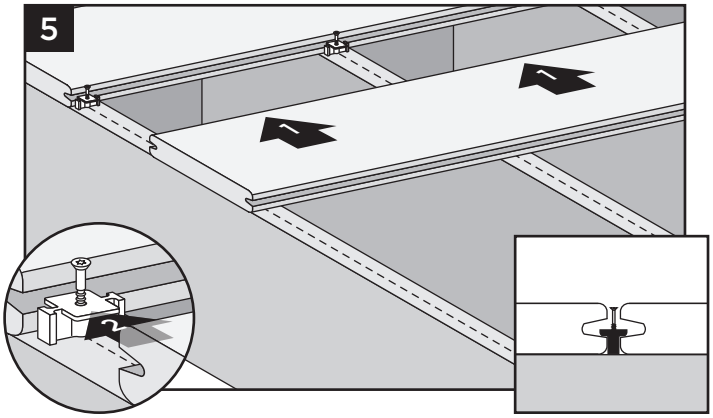
*6mm >4˚C 13mm <4˚C

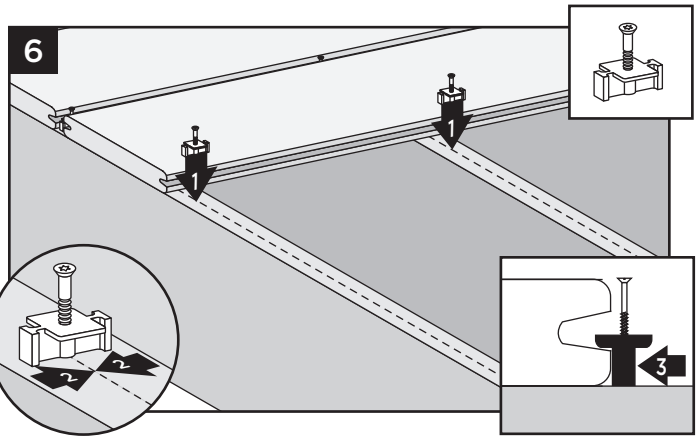


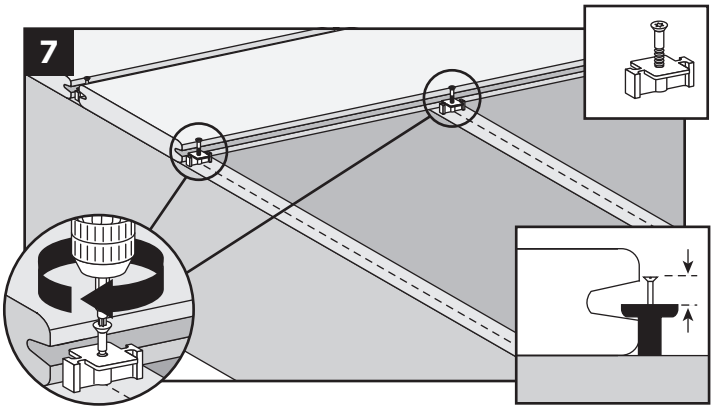


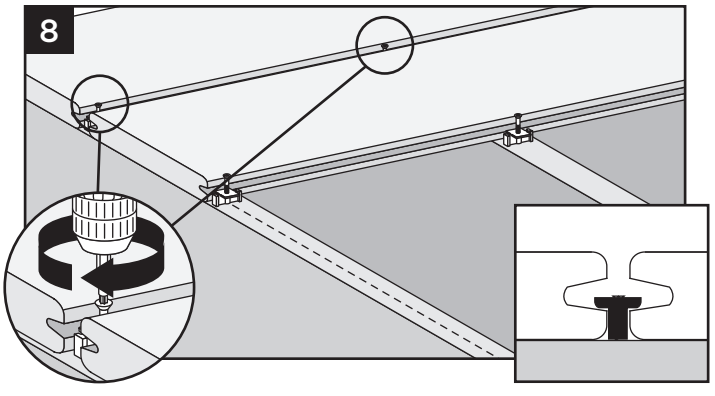


NOTE: Use scrap piece of decking to help hold fastener in place while attaching.



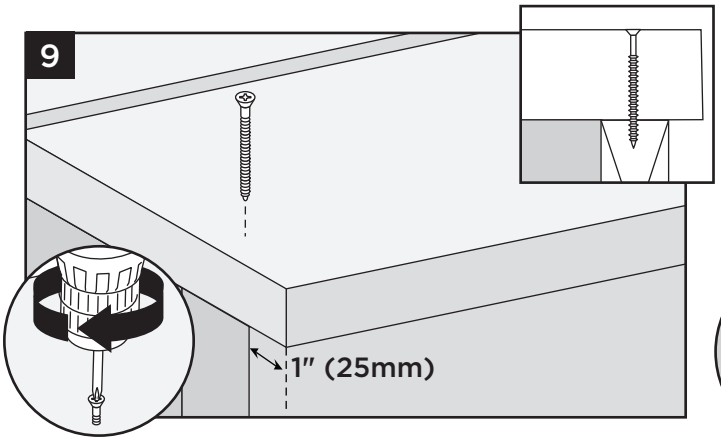






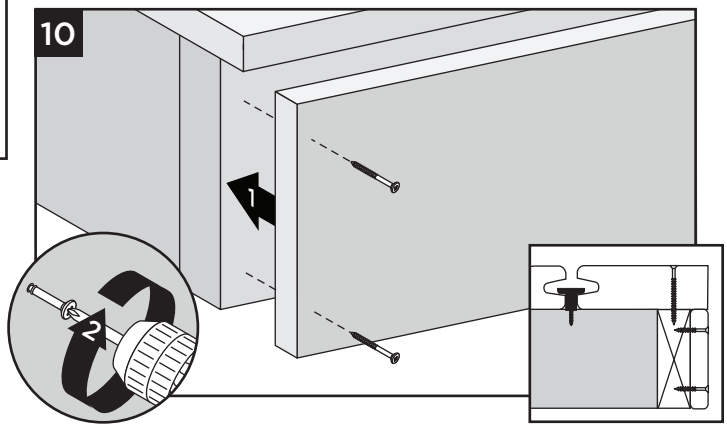
Installing Trex Signature®, Transcend®, Enhance®, Trex Select® Decking/continued

Installing Last Deck Board (Square-Edge Board Recommended)



Route one side of square-edge board to use with hidden fasteners.

TIP: Use a recommended hidden fastener screw and plug for last board installation.

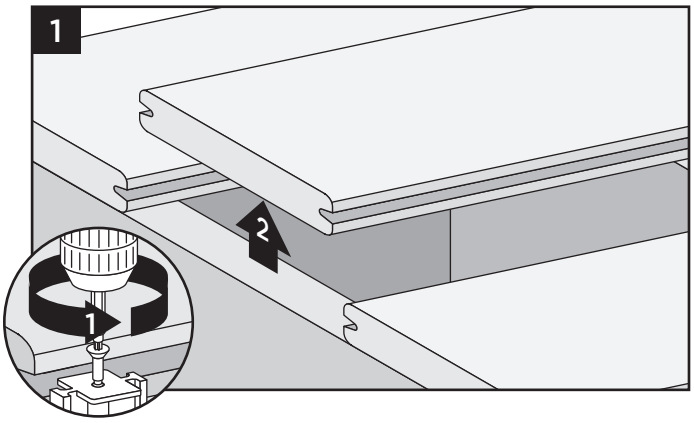


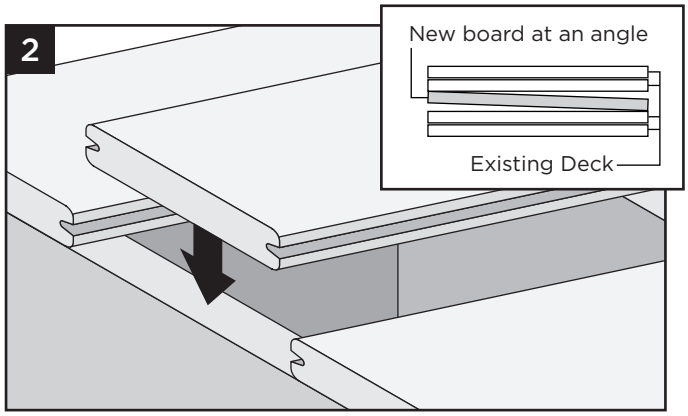
Fascia screws supplied by installer (1 x 8 fascia shown)

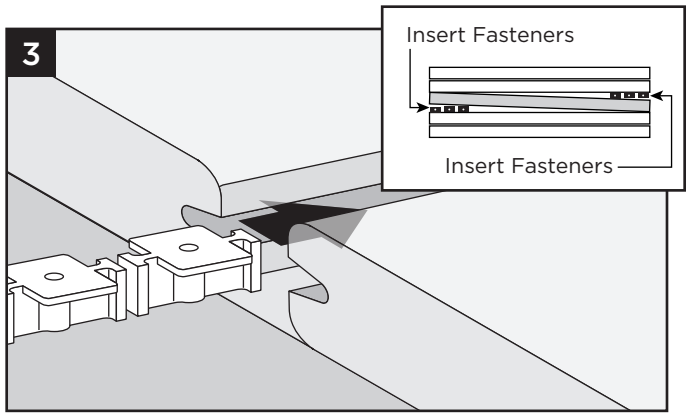
NOTE: Refer to page 35 for detailed fascia attachment instructions.

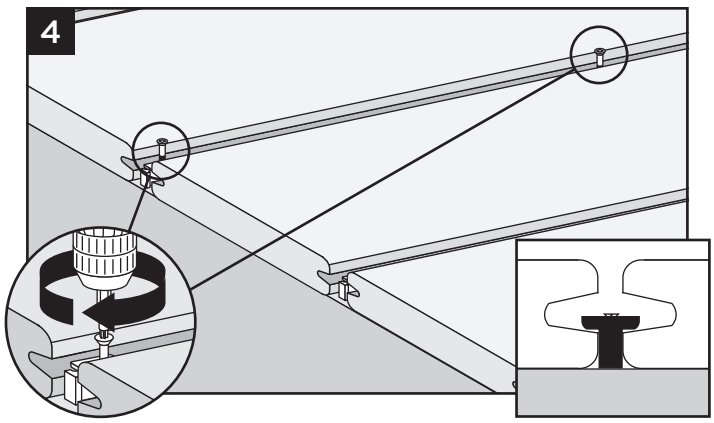
Replacing Trex Decking (Signature®, Transcend®, Enhance®, Trex Select®)

Installed with Trex Hideaway® Universal Fasteners









NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX® HIDEAWAY® DECK PLUG FOR TREX TRANSCEND®, TREX SELECT®, AND TREX SIGNATURE® DECKING

Installation Instructions

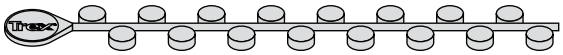
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *DO NOT use for Trex® Enhance® Decking (or any scalloped profile).*
- *DO NOT use to install fascia.*
- *Not recommended for use in salt environments.*
- *Not for use with sleeper systems.*
- *Trex Hideaway® plug systems are compatible only with Trex Plugs.*
- *Always follow deck board manufacturer's installation guidelines.*

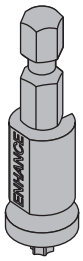
General Installation Recommendations:

- Always use two screws per joist or stair stringer.
- At board ends on the deck's edge, install screws placed perpendicularly at the recommended distance, at minimum of 1" from the board end and edge, without splitting the board.

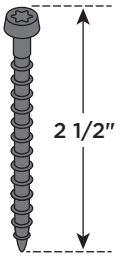
PARTS & TOOLS NEEDED



Trex Transcend® or Trex Select® Color Match Deck Plugs



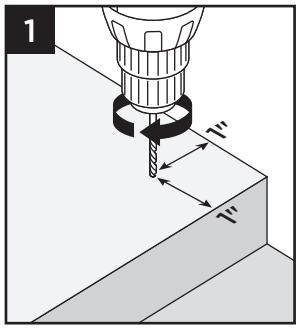
HEXSTIX® Depth Setter (Select/Transcend/Signature Decking)



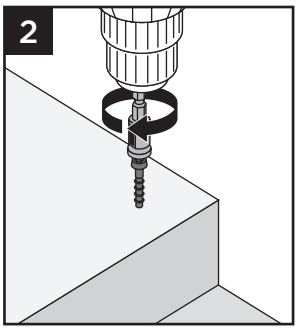
Trex Hideaway® Composite Screw

Installation Instructions:

- For best results pre-drill through deck board only, using 1/8" drill bit. When installing close to the end of the board pre-drilling is required.

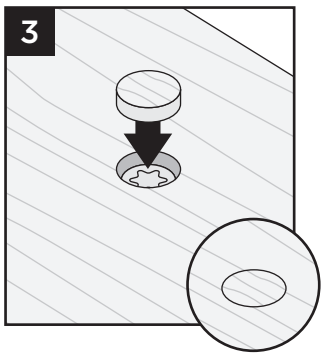


- For best results using an 18V or higher cordless drill and the included HEXSTIX® depth setter, install fasteners at a 90° angle (perpendicular to the board). Drive the screws into the decking until the bit releases from the screw.



NOTE: Drive the screw in all at once, do not stop. You will hear the sound change when the screw is fully driven.

- Clean out hole of any remaining debris and using a Trex Transcend or Trex Select color matched plug (sold separately), align the grain and press plug into the hole, and tap flush with a smooth faced hammer.



Hexstix® is a registered trademark of Phillips Screw Company

Trex Hideaway® Deck Plug for Trex® Enhance® Decking

Installation Instructions

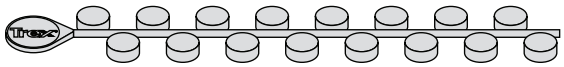
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *For use with Trex® Enhance® Decking.*
  Note: This counterbore tool can also be used for Trex Fascia Plug applications.
- *Not recommended for use in salt environments.*
- *Trex Hideaway® plug systems are compatible only with Trex Plugs.*
- *Not for use with sleeper systems **that are less than 2" thick.***
- *Always follow deck board manufacturer's installation guidelines.*

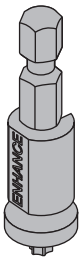
General Installation Recommendations:

- Always use two screws per joist or stair stringer.
- At board ends on the deck's edge, install screws placed perpendicularly at the recommended distance, at minimum of 1" from the board end and edge, without splitting the board.

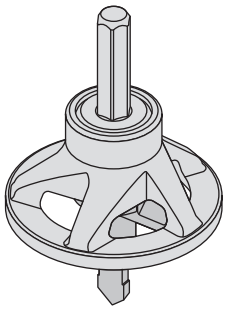
PARTS & TOOLS NEEDED



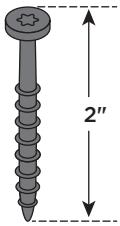
Trex Enhance® Color Match Deck Plugs



HEXSTIX® Depth Setter (Enhance/Fascia)



Trex Counterbore tool (teal)

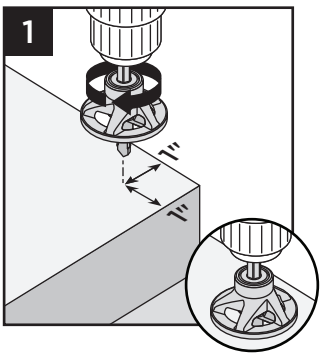


Trex Hideaway® Enhance screw

Installation Instructions:

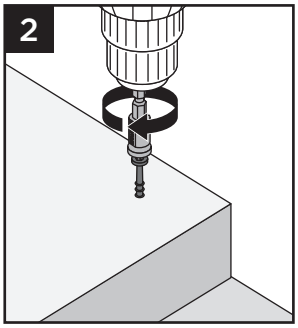
- Using an 18V or higher cordless drill and the Trex Counterbore tool (sold separately), bore counterbore holes to the proper depth by drilling until the cup stops spinning.

NOTE: This teal counterbore tool can also be used with Trex Fascia Plug installations.

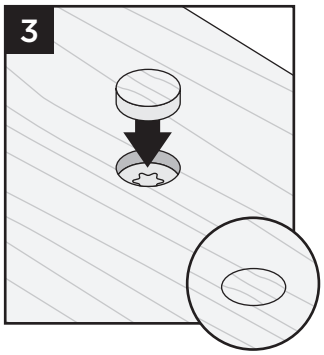


- Using the HEXSTIX® depth setter in a 18v or greater drill or impact driver, install fasteners at a 90° angle (perpendicular to the board). Drive the screws into the decking until the bit releases from the screw.

NOTE: Drive the screw in all at once, do not stop. You will hear a change in sound when the screw is fully driven.



- Clean out hole of any remaining debris and using a Trex Enhance decking color matched plug (sold separately), align the grain and press plug into the hole, and tap flush with a smooth faced hammer.



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

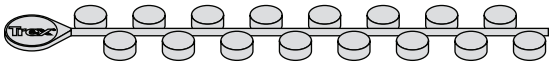
Trex Hideaway® Fascia Plug

Installation Instructions

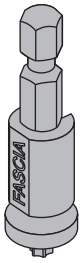
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *Do NOT use for Trex Decking applications. (however note this counterbore tool can also be used for Trex® Enhance® Deck plug applications)*
- *Not recommended for use in salt environments.*
- *Trex Hideaway® plug systems are compatible only with Trex Plugs.*
- *Always follow deck board manufacturer's installation guidelines for gapping and general installation recommendations.*

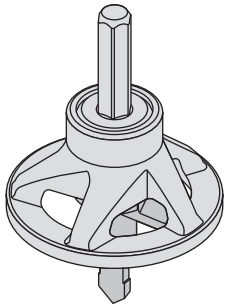
PARTS & TOOLS NEEDED



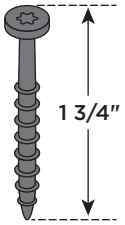
Trex® Fascia Color Match Plugs



HEXSTIX® Depth Setter (Enhance/Fascia)



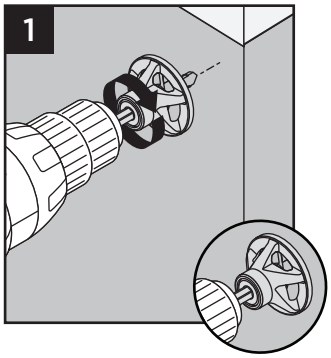
Plug Counterbore tool (teal)



Trex Hideaway® Fascia screw

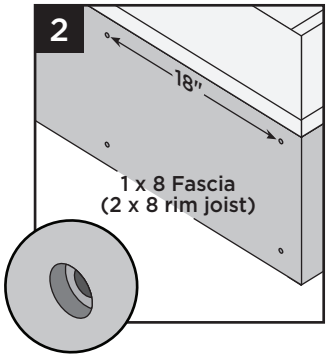
Installation Instructions:

- Using an 18V or higher cordless drill and the Plug Counterbore tool (sold separately), counterbore holes into the fascia board to the proper depth by drilling until the cup stops spinning.

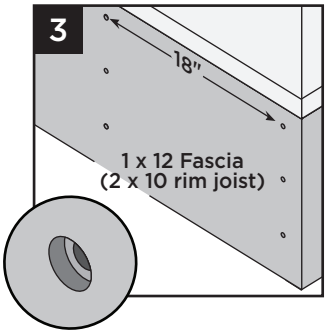


NOTE: This teal counterbore tool and teal Enhance/Fascia HEXSTIX® depth setter can also be used with Trex Enhance Deck Plug installations

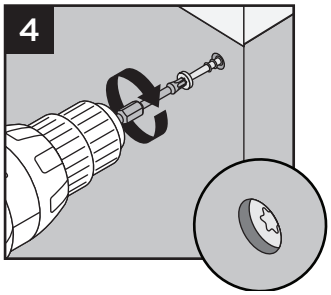
- When using 2 x 8 framing (in most cases 1x8 fascia is used for this application), bore two holes into the fascia every 18", ensuring that holes are starting and ending at least 1" away from ends of the fascia as well as 1" from bottom and top of the rim joist.



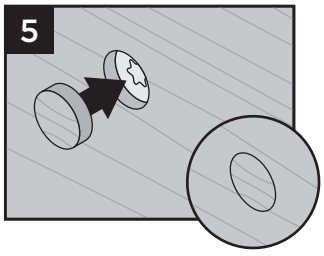
- When using 2 x 10 or larger framing (1 x 12 fascia applications), bore 3 holes into the fascia every 18" ensuring that holes are starting and ending 1" away from the ends of the fascia as well as 1" from the bottom and top of the rim joist.



- Using the Fascia HEXSTIX® depth setter, install fasteners at a 90° angle (perpendicular to the fascia). Drive the screws into the fascia until the bit releases from the screw.



NOTE: Drive the screw in all at once, do not stop. You will hear the sound change when the screw is fully driven. Do not overdrive screw.



- Clean out hole of any remaining debris and using a Trex fascia plug (sold separately), align the grain and press plug into the hole, and tap flush with a smooth faced hammer.

Trex® Color Match Composite Screw

Installation Instructions

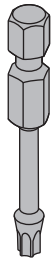
IMPORTANT NOTES:

» Not recommended for use in salt environments.
» Not for use with sleeper systems that are less than 2" thick.
» Always follow deck board manufacturer's installation guidelines.

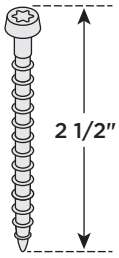
General Installation Recommendations:

- **Always use two screws per joist or stair stringer.**
- **At board ends on the deck's edge, install screws placed perpendicularly at the recommended distance, at minimum of 1" from the board end and edge, without splitting the board.**

PARTS & TOOLS NEEDED



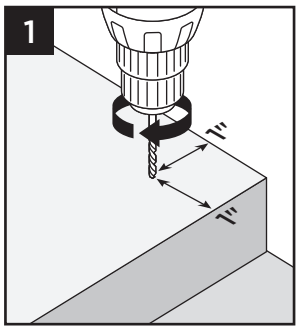
HEXSTIX® HS-20 Drive Bit



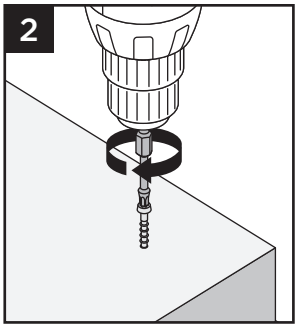
Trex Hideaway® Color-Match Composite Screw

Installation Instructions:

- For best results pre-drill through deck board only, using 1/8" drill bit. When installing close to the end of the board pre-drilling is required.

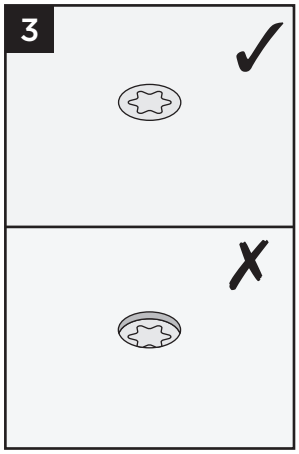


- For best results use an 18V or higher cordless drill and the included HEXSTIX® driver bit, install fasteners at a 90° angle (perpendicular to the board). Always drive screw in one smooth, continuous motion.



- Screws are designed to be installed flush with decking surface.

  DO NOT countersink screws.



Note: Never use Torx® ttap® bits in a HexStix® screw.

ttap® is a registered trademark of Ttapdrive AS. Torx® is a registered trademark of Acument Intellectual Properties, LLC

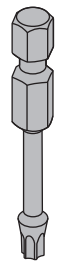
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Trex® Fascia Color-Match Composite Screw

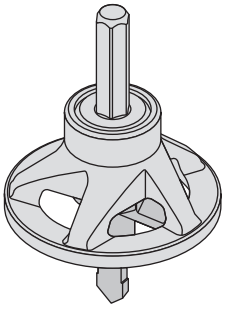
IMPORTANT NOTES:
» Do NOT use for Trex Decking applications.
» Not recommended for use in salt environments.
» Always follow fascia board manufacturer's installation guidelines for gapping and general installation recommendations.

The Trex Hideaway® Fascia System works by allowing movement from the moisture cycling of the wood as well as the thermal movement from the wood-plastic composite or PVC fascia. The counterbore tool drills a hole that is slightly larger than the shank of the screw intentionally to allow for this. Do not over tighten screw.

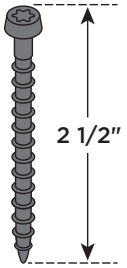
PARTS & TOOLS NEEDED



HEXSTIX® HS-20 Drive Bit



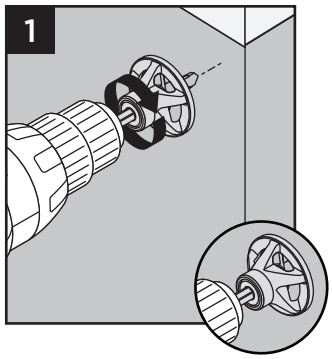
Color-match Fascia Counterbore tool (red)



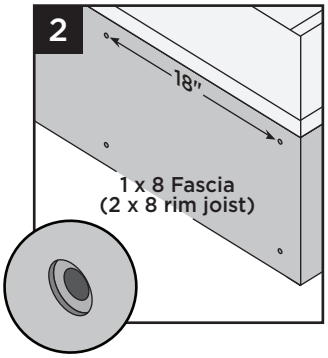
Color-Match Fascia Screw

Installation Instructions:

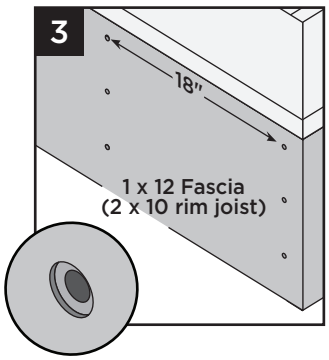
- Using the Color-match Fascia Counterbore tool (sold separately) in an 18V or higher cordless drill, counterbore holes into the fascia board to the proper depth by drilling until the cup stops spinning.



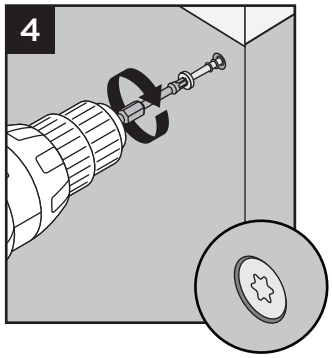
- When using 2 x 8 framing (in most cases 1 x 8 fascia is used for this application), bore two holes into the fascia every 18", ensuring that holes are starting and ending 1" away from ends of the fascia as well as 1" from bottom and top of the rim joist.



- When using 2 x 10 or larger framing (1 x 12 fascia applications), bore 3 holes into the fascia every 18" ensuring that holes are starting and ending 1" away from the ends of the fascia as well as 1" from the bottom and top of the rim joist.



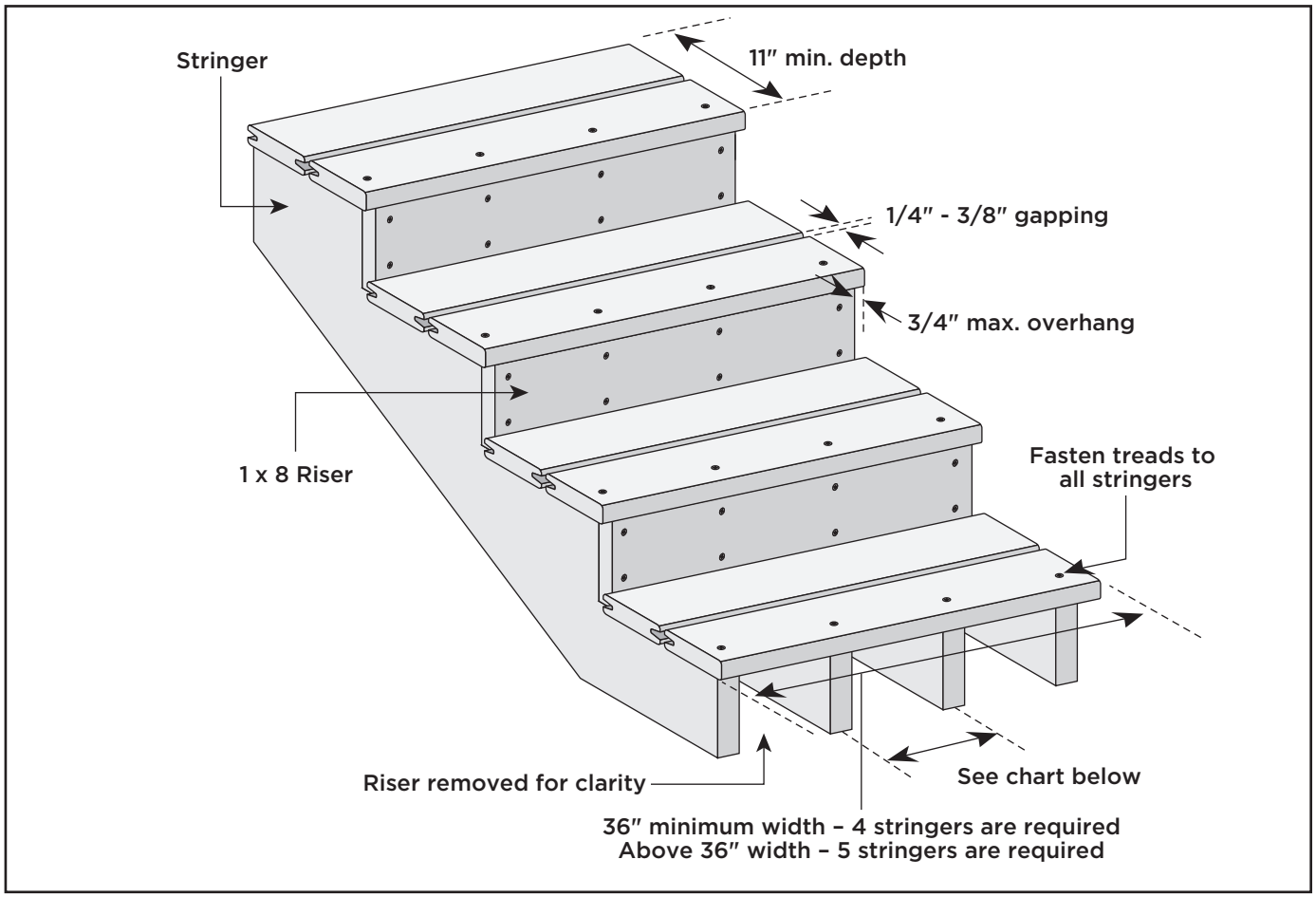
- Using the HEXSTIX® Drive Bit, install fasteners at a 90° angle (perpendicular to the fascia). Screws are designed to be installed flush with decking surface. **DO NOT countersink screws. DO NOT overdrive screws.**



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Spanning Requirements for Trex® Stairs

Note: *English measurements are shown. Convert to metric measurements if necessary.*



Stairs

Stairway Detail

- » Stair treads built with Trex meet requirements of the major national building codes. Consult your local municipality for specific requirements.
- » Fasten stair treads continuously across at least four stringers.
- » See chart (to the right) for center-to-center spacing of profiles.
- » Dress the sides of the stringers and risers with trim or Trex fascia for a finished look.
- » When installing risers, use two screws per every stringer.
- » Fascia fasteners can only be used if fascia boards are being used for risers. If deck boards are used, recommended composite deck screws must be used (glue is not required for this application).
- » Most model building codes require the stair treads to be constructed under the following requirements:
  - › Stairways must be at least 36″ wide*
  - › Stair treads must be at least 11″ deep
- » Gapping between Trex boards on stair treads must be 1/4″–3/8″.
- » The overhang of the stair tread is not to exceed 3/4″.

**For railings that are installed directly over stair treads, the stair treads may need to be larger than 36″ wide. Refer to local building code regulations for details prior to installing stairs and railings.*

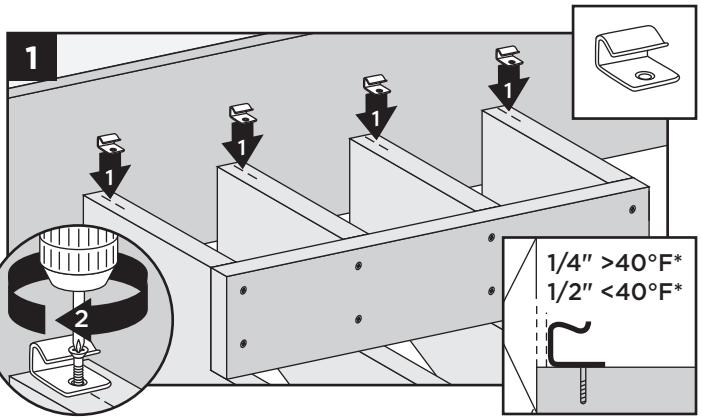
NOTES:

- » Trex rails meet all major building codes for use as a guardrail system. Local municipalities may require a graspable handrail on stairways. Check with your local building code official for local requirements. See Trex ADA Handrail System in the Trex product catalog.

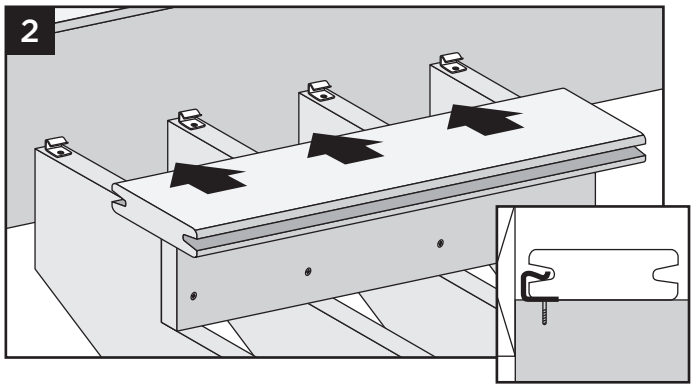
Maximum Spacing on Center of Stair Stringer	
Signature and Transcend 1 x 6, Select 1 x 6	12″
Enhance 1 x 6	9″
Transcend & Select 2 x 6	16″

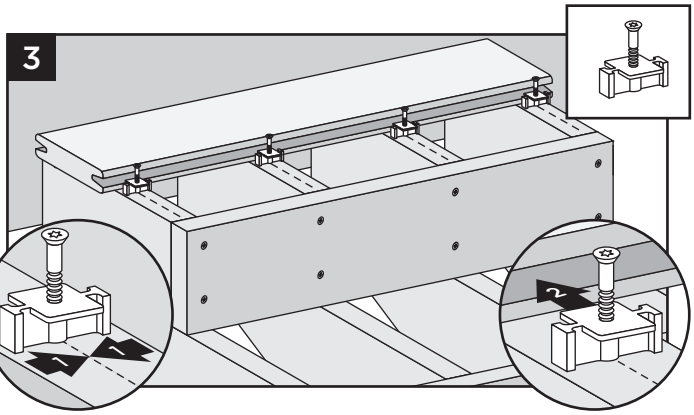
Installing Trex® Stair Treads
Installed with Hidden Fasteners

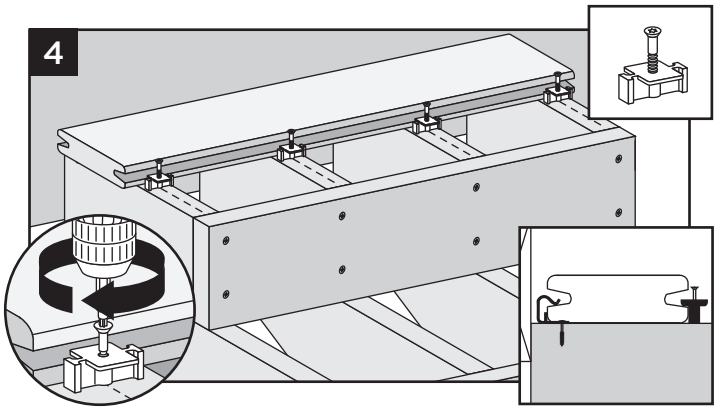
NOTE: If using hidden fasteners, use square-edge, composite decking boards and manually route these on required sides to allow for use with hidden fasteners. In addition, if not using hidden fasteners, square-edge boards can all be used and face fastened using Trex recommended fasteners.

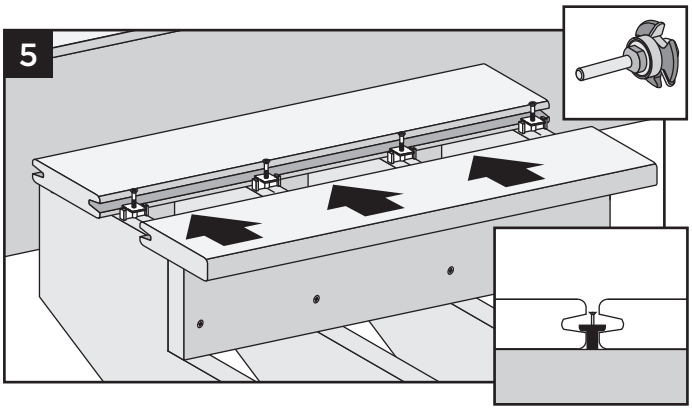


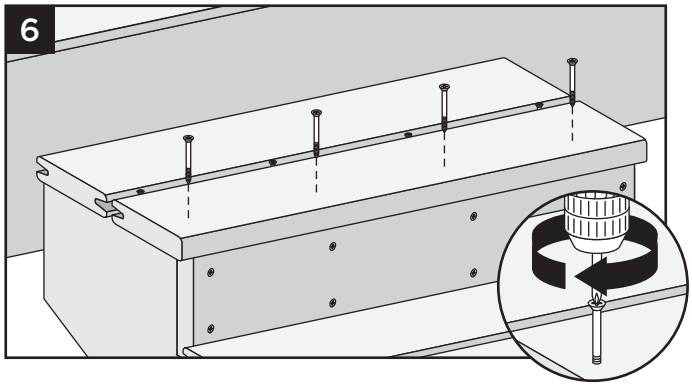
*6mm >4˚C 3mm <4˚C



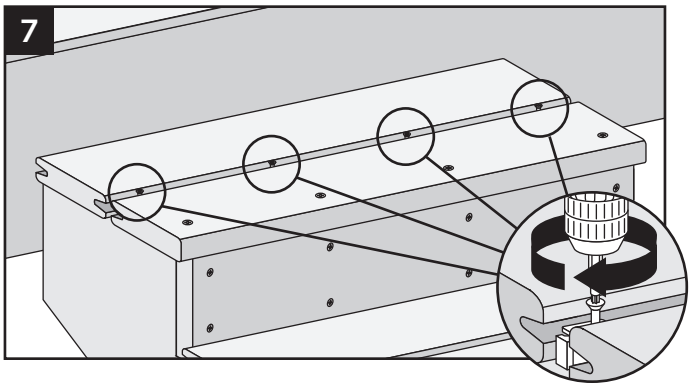








Rout one side of board (last stair tread).



LOCATION AND INSTALLATION OF SURFACE MOUNT POST - DECKING

IMPORTANT NOTES:

» *EACH POST MUST BE ATTACHED AS SHOWN TO ENSURE A CODE COMPLIANT AND SAFE INSTALLATION.*

» *ALWAYS REFER TO YOUR LOCAL BUILDING CODE OFFICIAL PRIOR TO INSTALLING ANY RAILING SYSTEM TO ENSURE ALL CODE AND SAFETY REQUIREMENTS ARE MET. TREX® CANNOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR IMPROPER OR NON-RECOMMENDED INSTALLATIONS.*

» *WHEN INSTALLING TREX POST MOUNTS ON ACQ OR CCA SURFACES, USE AN APPROPRIATE ISOLATION BARRIER BETWEEN POST AND SURFACE (CONTACT LOCAL BUILDING CODE OFFICIAL IF NEEDED).*

» *ENSURE THAT CORRECT SKU HARDWARE IS ORDERED FOR THE TYPE OF RAILING BEING INSTALLED.*

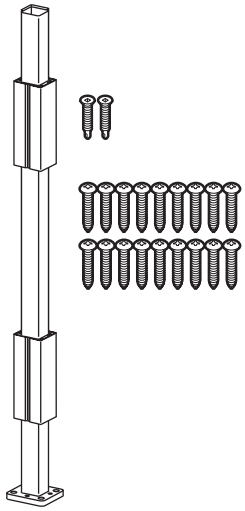
» *CANNOT BE USED WITH TREX TRANSCEND COCKTAIL RAILING.*

TOOLS AND MATERIALS NEEDED

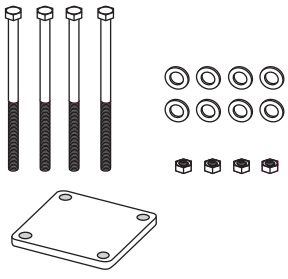
» Drill and/or screw gun
» 1/2" (1.27 cm) drill bit for wood
» Blocking - 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) pressure-treated Southern Yellow Pine or equivalent
» Qty: 36 (per post) - 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws

PARTS

» (1) Post mount
» (2) Guide blocks
» (18) #8-15 x 1-1/4" (3.2 cm) screws
» (2) 10 x 1" (2.5 cm) Self-tapping screws



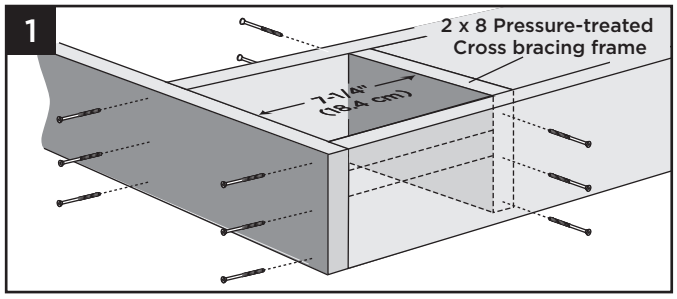
SKU ALPOSTHWDECK *(this SKU SOLD SEPARATELY and must be used for code-approved applications)*



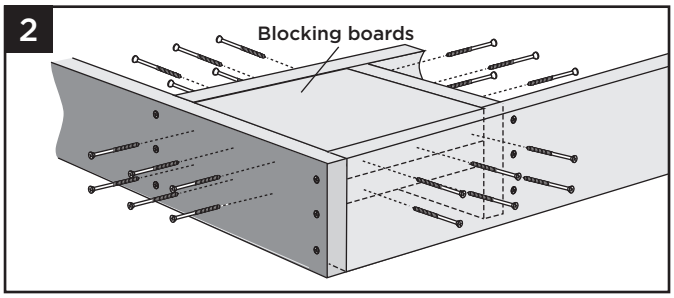
» (4) 3/8" x 6" (1 cm x 15.2 cm) Hex cap bolts
» (1) Back plate
» (8) Flat washers
» (4) Hex nuts

Installing Post Mounts on Pressure-treated Wood Framing

Corner Post Installation



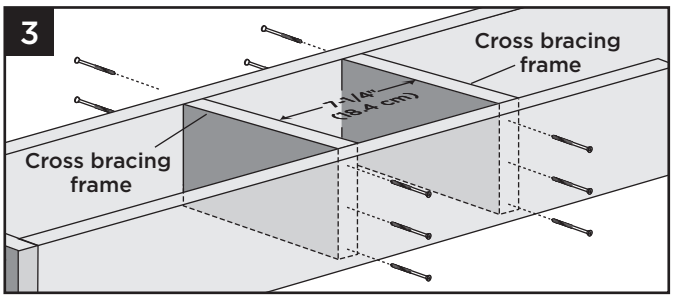
1. Install 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) cross bracing frame in between joists at 7-1/4" (18.4 cm). Attach a total of twelve 3" (7.6 cm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.



2. Install two 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of twenty-four 3" (7.6 cm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

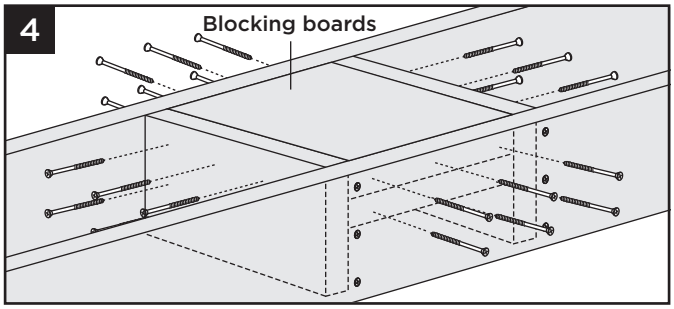
NOTE: TO ENSURE THE BLOCKING IS FULLY SECURE, USE THE AMOUNT OF SCREWS INDICATED ABOVE.
TIP: USE TWO ADDITIONAL SCREWS TO "SANDWICH" BLOCKING BOARDS TOGETHER FOR EASIER ATTACHMENT TO FRAMING.

Line Post Installation

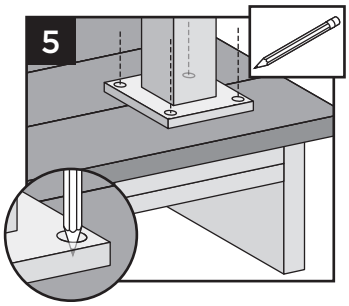


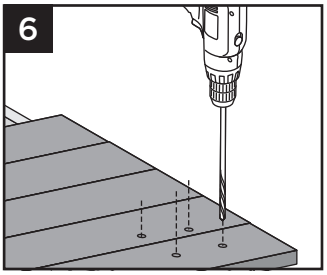
3. Install two 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) cross bracing frames in between joists at 7-1/4" (18.4 cm). Attach a total of twelve 3" (7.6 cm) pressure-treated compatible screws (not provided).

LOCATION AND INSTALLATION OF SURFACE MOUNT POST – DECKING/
CONTINUED



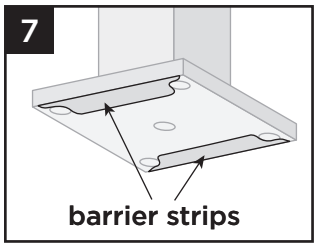
4. Install two 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of twenty-four 3" (7.6 cm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.



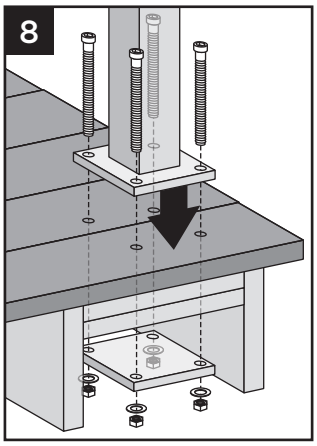


5. Using post a template, mark locations of holes.
6. Drill through decking and blocking boards using 5/8" diameter bit (long drill bit will be required).

7. Insert (2) stainless steel barrier strips (not provided) under the mounting bolt holes. BARRIER STRIPS ARE REQUIRED ONLY IF ATTACHING POST DIRECTLY TO PRESSURE-TREATED FRAMING.



8. Attach posts using four 3/8" x 6" (1 cm x 15.2 cm) hex cap bolts, washers, and nuts, along with aluminum back plate on underside of blocking. If the project requires IRC compliance, this back plate **MUST** be installed under the decking to ensure this will meet code compliance. Reference SKU part number ALPOSTHWDECK for required hardware and aluminum plate. (Consult local code official for more information on IRC Compliance.)

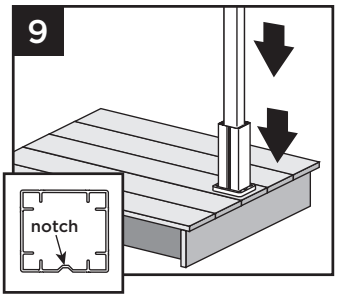


NOTES:
- » *Use composite shims or similar material (not provided) if posts are not plumb. Ensure that post is placed on decking surface so that it clears the rim joist and there is enough clearance on the underside blocking for the back plate to be installed.*
- » *Rim joist removed to show proper attachment of hardware.*

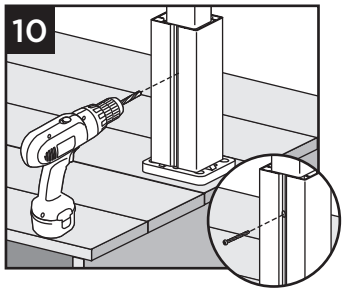
Install Guide Blocks

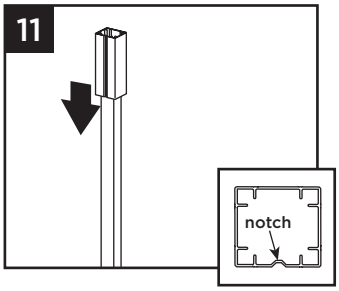
NOTE: Pre-drilling is not required but is optional for attachment of guide blocks to post. Use a drill bit slightly smaller in size than that of screw being installed.

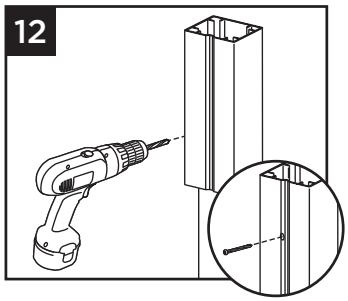
9. Place or rest bottom aluminum guide block on bottom of post. Place guide on post so that notch is on a side that does not require railing to be attached.



10. Attach bottom guide block using one 10 x 1" self-tapping screw *(provided)* in notch to lock guide block onto post.





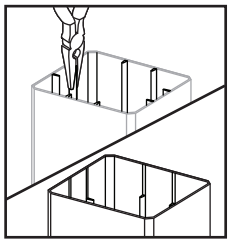


11. Location of top guide block will vary slightly depending on type and height of railing being installed. Determine this measurement and place top guide block in location where top bracket for desired railing would be approximately on center of the top railing bracket location.
12. Attach top guide block using one 10 x 1" self-tapping screw *(provided)* in notch to lock guide block onto post.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

LOCATION AND INSTALLATION OF SURFACE MOUNT POST – DECKING/
CONTINUED

Install Railing System of Choice



IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *POST SLEEVE WILL NEED TO HAVE INTERNAL RIBS TRIMMED SLIGHTLY IN ORDER FOR POST SLEEVE TO SIT OVER BASE OF POST MOUNT. THIS IS NOT MANDATORY AND ONLY REQUIRED IF NOT USING A POST SLEEVE SKIRT.*
- *A quantity of 18 #8-15 x 1-1/4" screws are provided to cover all types of Trex railing bracket installations (Transcend, Trex Signature®, and Select). Depending on the type railing being installed, you may have screws that are not used.*
- *If using 6x6 post sleeves, attach designated railing brackets using #8-15 x 1-3/4" (4.4 cm) 316 stainless steel self-tapping screws (not provided).*
- *If installing Trex Transcend Bird's Mouth brackets, attach brackets using 1 1/2" 316 stainless steel self-tapping screws (not provided).*
- *Pre-drilling IS REQUIRED when attaching brackets to designated posts. Use a 9/64" (3.6 mm) drill bit to pre-drill at specified locations according to instructions provided with railing kits.*

***NOTE:** If installing Trex Deck Lighting on the posts, drill hole through support blocks to allow wiring for lights to be below the surface of the decking.*

LOCATION AND INSTALLATION OF IRC-APPROVED POST MOUNTS - CONCRETE

NOTES:

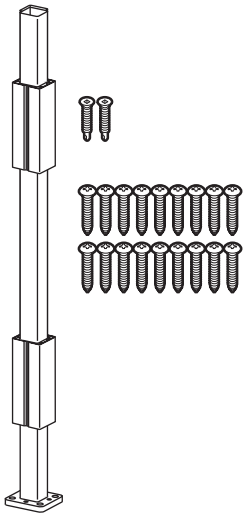
- *INSTALLATION SHOWN HERE IS FOR IRC APPROVED APPLICATIONS ONLY.*
- *MAKE SURE CONCRETE IS LEVEL BEFORE INSTALLING POSTS.*
- *ALWAYS REFER TO YOUR LOCAL BUILDING CODE OFFICIAL PRIOR TO INSTALLING ANY RAILING SYSTEM TO ENSURE ALL CODE AND SAFETY REQUIREMENTS ARE MET. TREX® CANNOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR IMPROPER OR NON-RECOMMENDED INSTALLATIONS.*
- *CANNOT BE USED WITH TREX TRANSCEND COCKTAIL RAILING.*

TOOLS NEEDED

- Hammer
- Drill and/or screw gun
- 3/8" (10 mm) drill bit for concrete

PARTS

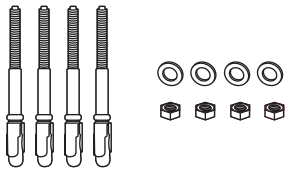
- (1) Post mount
- (2) Guide blocks
- (18) #8-15 x 1-1/4" (32 mm) screws
- (2) 10 x 1" (25 mm) Self-tapping screws



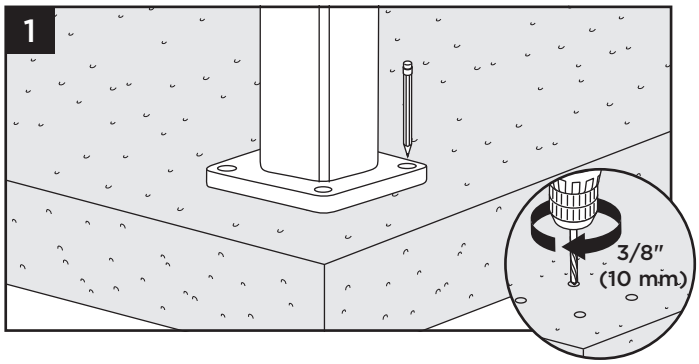
SKU ALPOSTHWCONC

(this SKU SOLD SEPARATELY)

- (4) 3/8" x 3-3/4" (10 mm x 95 mm) Expansion anchor
- (4) Flat washers
- (4) Hex nuts



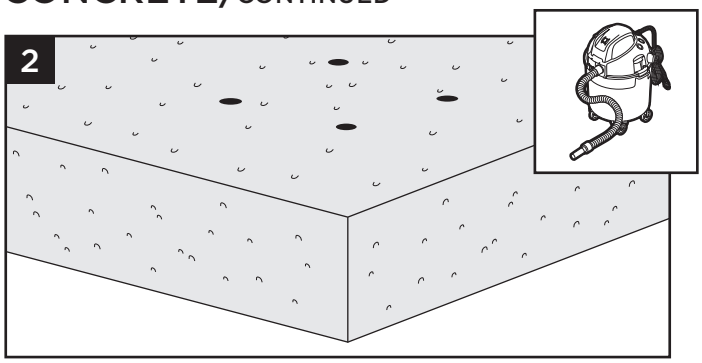
Pre-drill Holes



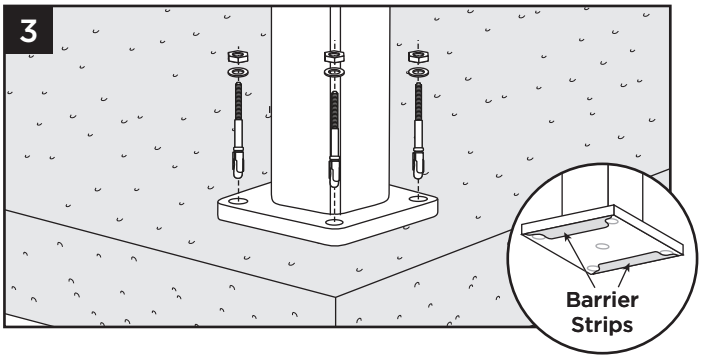
1. Using post as a template, mark locations of the four holes and drill into concrete at least 2-5/8" (66.7 mm) using a 3/8" (10 mm) masonry bit.

***NOTE:** You can either set drill bit to correct depth on drill or mark drill bit with tape at required dimension to ensure all holes are drilled at the correct depth.*

LOCATION AND INSTALLATION OF IRC-APPROVED POST MOUNTS - CONCRETE/CONTINUED



2. Clean out holes to remove all concrete dust.



3. Insert (2) stainless steel barrier strips (not provided) under mounting bolt holes (these can be purchased on ShopTrex.com). Use appropriate shims if posts are not plumb. Secure post mount with the four expansion anchors, washers and nuts.

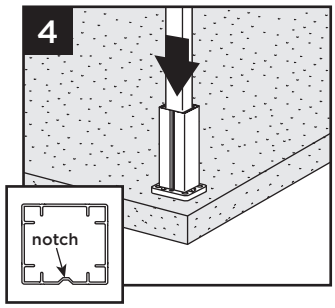
NOTE: *When using hammer to tap anchors in place, keep the threaded nut at the top of the anchor in order to not damage the threads.*

NOTE: *Recommended torque for anchors is 30 ft-lbs.*

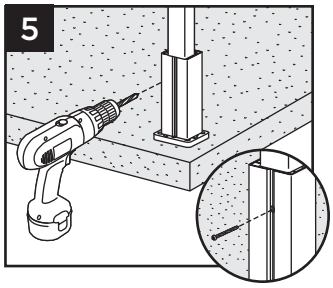
Install Guide Blocks

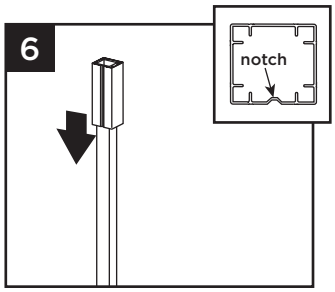
NOTE: Pre-drilling is not required but is optional for attachment of guide blocks to post. Use a drill bit slightly smaller in size than that of screw being installed.

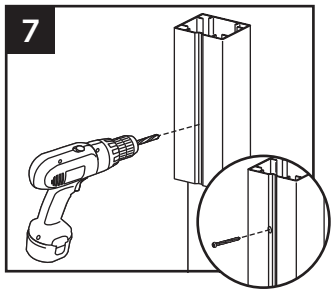
4. Place or rest bottom aluminum guide block on bottom of post. Place guide on post so that notch is on a side that does not require railing to be attached.



5. Attach bottom guide block using one 10 x 1" (25 mm) self-tapping screw (provided) in notch to lock guide block onto post.

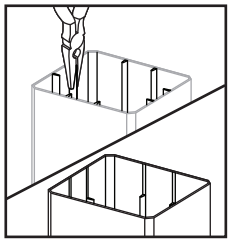






6. Location of top guide block will vary slightly depending on type and height of railing being installed. Determine this measurement and place top guide block in location where top bracket for desired railing would be approximately on center of the top railing bracket location.
7. Attach top guide block using one 10 x 1" (25 mm) self-tapping screw (provided) in notch to lock guide block onto post.

Install Railing System of Choice



IMPORTANT NOTES:

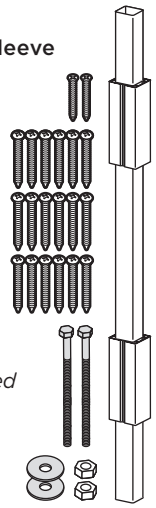
- *POST SLEEVE WILL NEED TO HAVE INTERNAL RIBS TRIMMED SLIGHTLY IN ORDER FOR POST SLEEVE TO SIT OVER BASE OF POST MOUNT. THIS IS NOT MANDATORY AND ONLY REQUIRED IF NOT USING A POST SLEEVE SKIRT.*
- *A quantity of 18 #8-15 x 1-1/4" screws are provided to cover all types of Trex railing bracket installations (Transcend, Trex Signature®, and Select). Depending on the type railing being installed, you may have screws that are not used.*
- ***Pre-drilling IS REQUIRED when attaching brackets to designated posts. Use a 9/64" (3.6 mm) drill bit to pre-drill at specified locations according to instructions provided with railing kits.***
- *If using 6x6 post sleeves, attach designated railing brackets using #8-15 x 1-3/4" (44 mm) 316 stainless steel self-tapping screws (not provided).*
- *If installing Trex Transcend Bird's Mouth brackets, attach brackets using 1 1/2" 316 stainless steel self-tapping screws (not provided).*

NOTE: If installing Trex Lighting on the posts, drill hole through support blocks to allow wiring for lights to be below the surface of the decking.

HOW TO INSTALL JOIST MOUNT POSTS

ALL INSTRUCTIONS BELOW ARE FOR METAL POSTS ONLY; NO PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS ARE TO BE USED FOR THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

Joist Mount Post for Trex Composite Post Sleeve
SKU CPJMNTPOST63

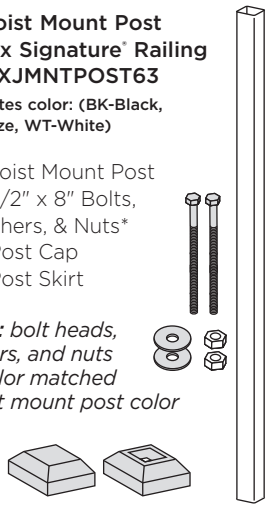


- (1) Joist Mount Post
- (2) Guide blocks
- (2) 10 x 1" (2.5 cm) Screws
- (18) #8-15 x 1-1/4" (3.2 cm) Screws
- (2) 1/2" x 8" Bolts, Washers, & Nuts

**NOTE: If using 6x6 post sleeves, attach designated railing brackets using #8-15 x 1-3/4" (4.4cm) 316 stainless steel self-tapping screws (not provided). Pre-drilling IS REQUIRED when attaching brackets to designated posts. Use a 9/64" (3.6 mm) drill bit.*

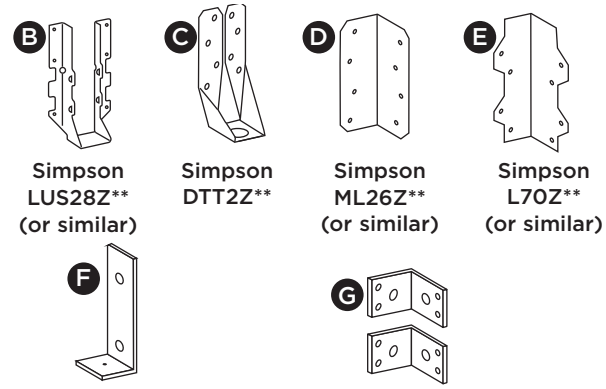
Trex Joist Mount Post for Trex Signature® Railing
SKU XXJMNTPOST63

XX denotes color: (BK-Black, BZ-Bronze, WT-White)



- (1) Joist Mount Post
- (2) 1/2" x 8" Bolts, Washers, & Nuts*
- (1) Post Cap
- (1) Post Skirt

**NOTE: bolt heads, washers, and nuts are color matched to joist mount post color*



Simpson LUS28Z (or similar)** | **Simpson DTT2Z**** | **Simpson ML26Z** (or similar)** | **Simpson L70Z** (or similar)**

Trex Signature® Fascia Mount Kit
SKU - XXFMNTWOOD

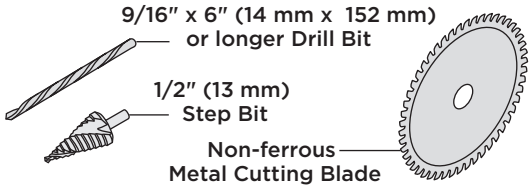
Trex Fascia Mount Corner Bracket Kit (Brackets, Bolts, Nuts, Washers, & Screws)
SKU - XXCORNERFMNTWOOD

XX denotes color BK-Black, BZ-Bronze, WT-White

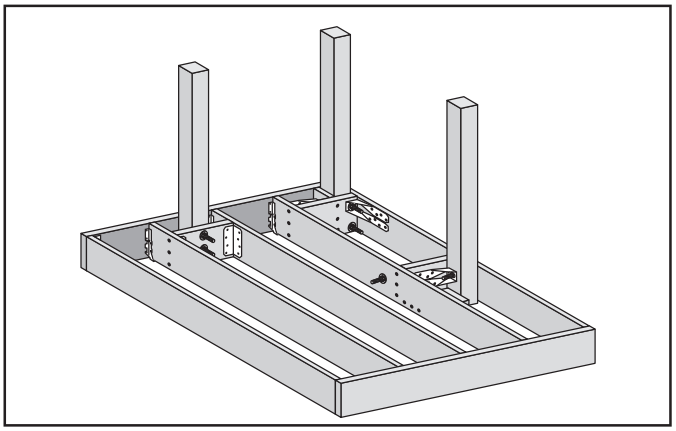
GENERAL GUIDELINES

- **Code-Approved Joist Mount Post Applications:**
  - **30" or less deck height - Code approval not applicable**
  - **IRC Compliant - Yes**
  - **IBC Compliant - No**
- Minimum framing is 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm). (Ensure all structural brackets are sized appropriately for framing.)
- Follow all structural bracket manufacturer's guidelines for fastener selection and corrosion protection requirements.
- Maximum OC framing is 16" (406 mm).
- This post is designed to cut-to-length and will accommodate up to 42" (1067 mm) stair railing on 2 x 12 (51 mm x 305 mm) framing.
- Included template works for most, but not all, applications. Review instructions carefully prior to drilling holes, making sure to center holes on post.
- **Simpson structural brackets are not included with joist mount posts and must be purchased separately.

HELPFUL TOOLS

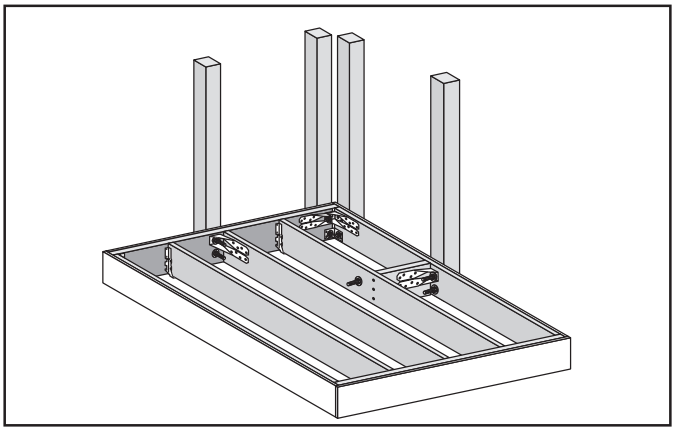


Wood Frame (Inside Mount) Overview



***NOTE:** To allow fascia to sit flat against framing, route/trim out back side of fascia to allow for fit over bolt locations.*

Wood Frame (Fascia Mount) Overview

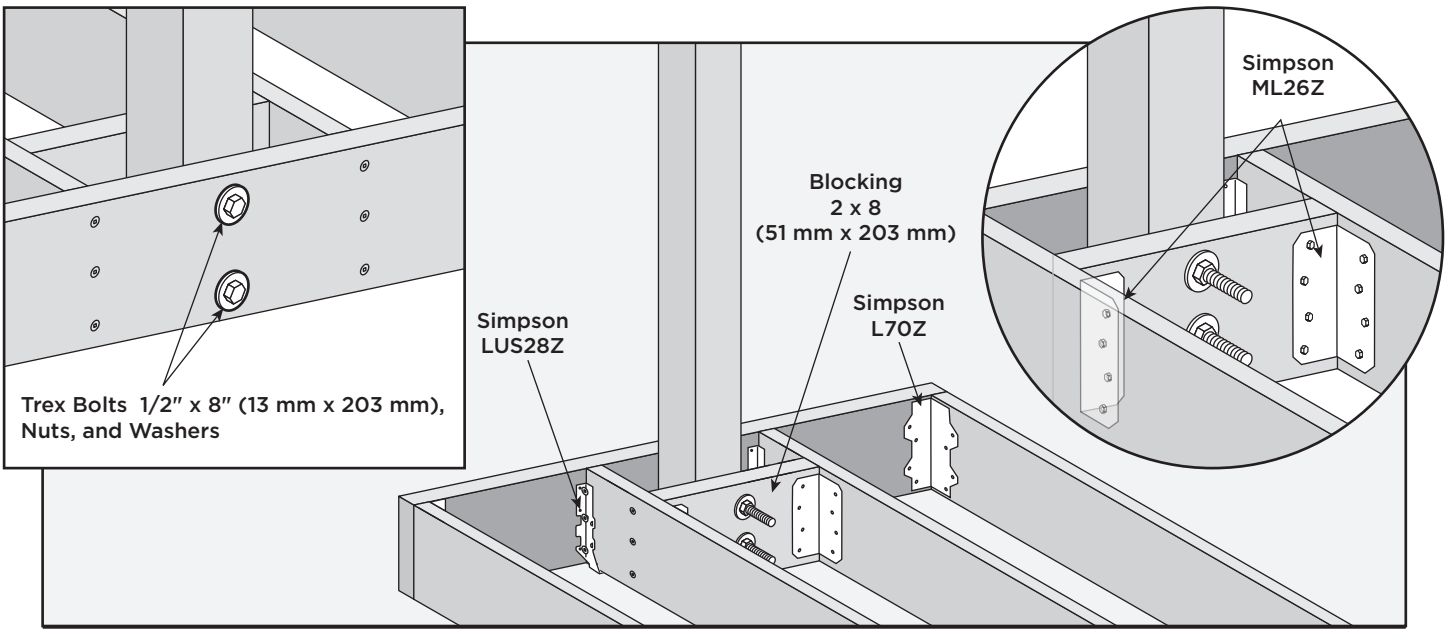


NOTES:

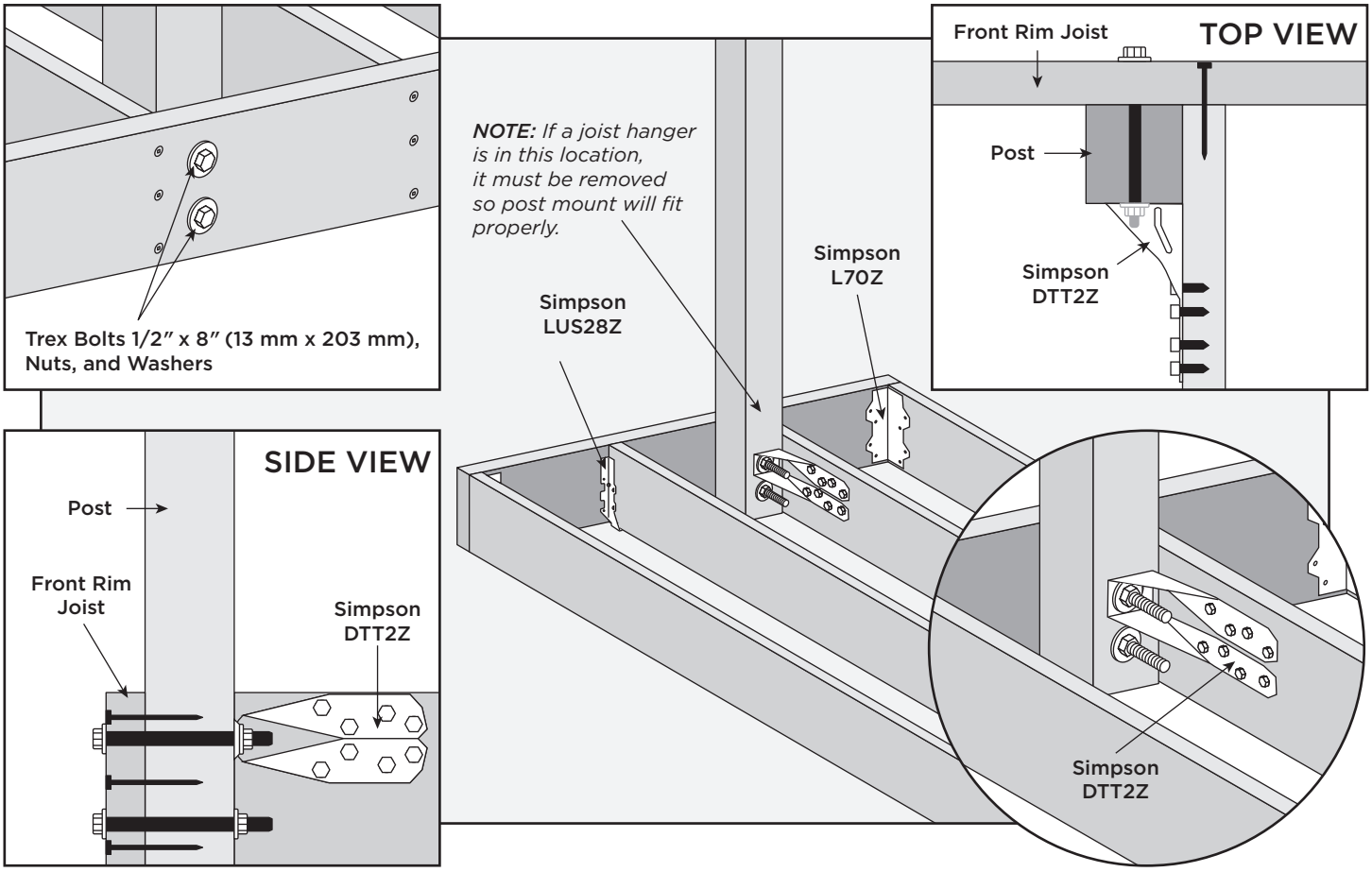
- *Trex fascia should be installed prior to installing any outside joist post mounts.*
- ***Can only be used with Trex Signature 6' or less railing spans.***

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

INSIDE MOUNT (FRONT RIM PLATE - BETWEEN JOISTS WITH BLOCKING)

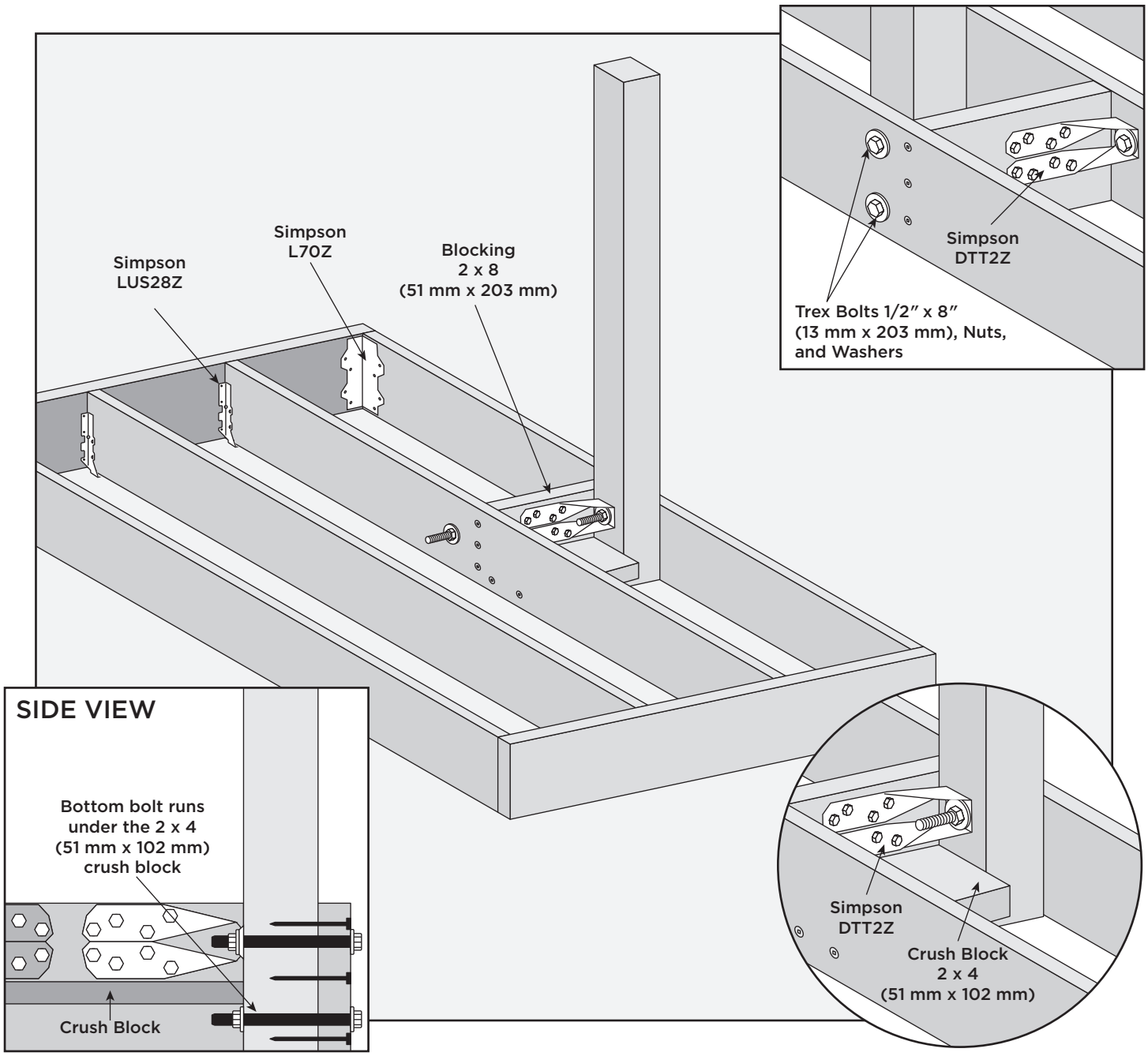


INSIDE MOUNT (FRONT RIM PLATE - NEXT TO JOIST)



INSIDE MOUNT (SIDE JOIST)

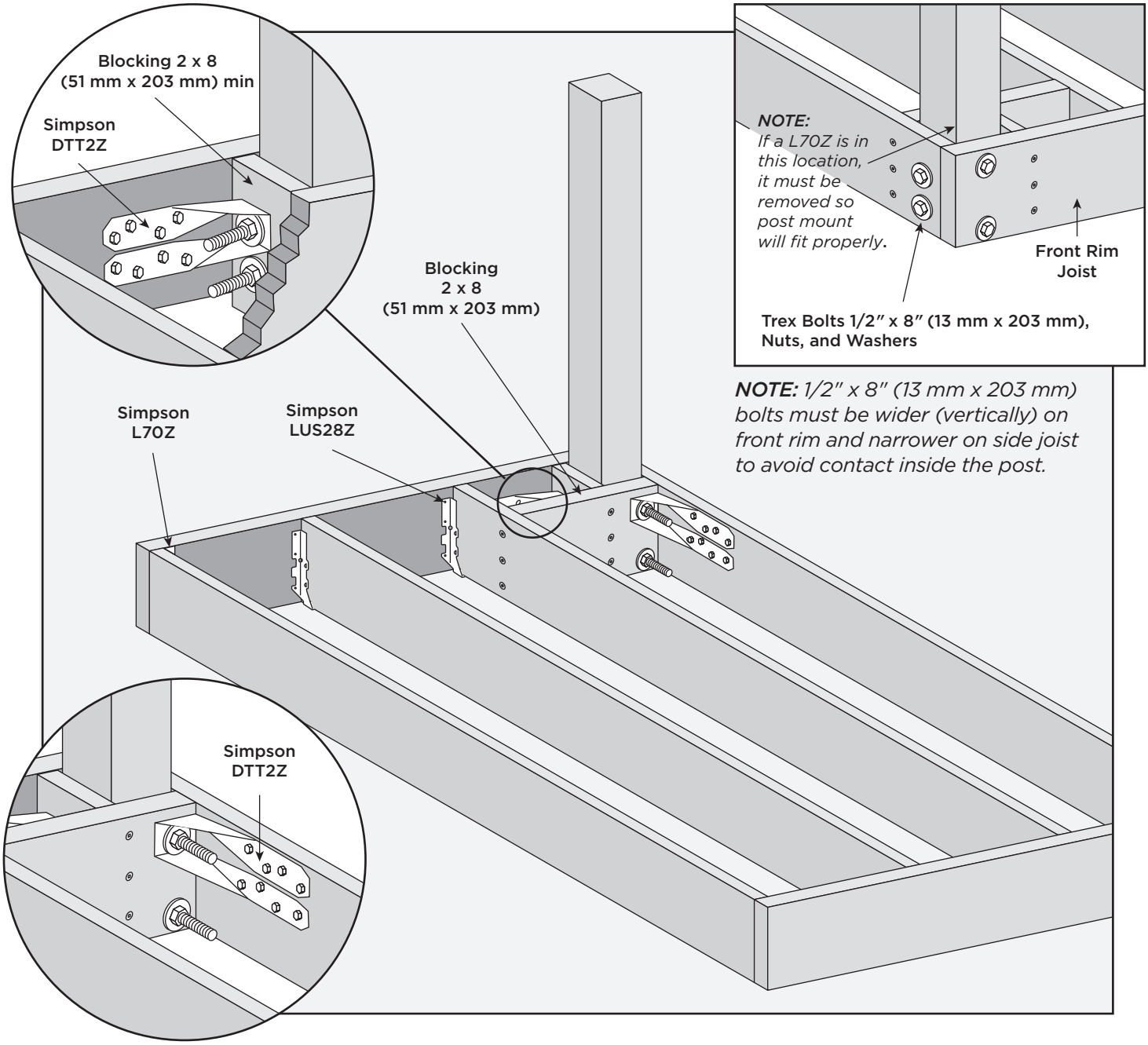
- *TREX SUPPLIES (2) HG 1/2" X 8" (13 MM X 203 MM) BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS.*
- *CUSTOMER MUST SUPPLY ADDITIONAL HG 1/2" X 8" (13 MM X 203 MM) BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS.*



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

INSIDE MOUNT (CORNER)

- *TREX SUPPLIES (2) HG 1/2" X 8" (13 MM X 203 MM) BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS.*
- *CUSTOMER MUST SUPPLY ADDITIONAL HG 1/2" X 8" (13 MM X 203 MM) BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS.*



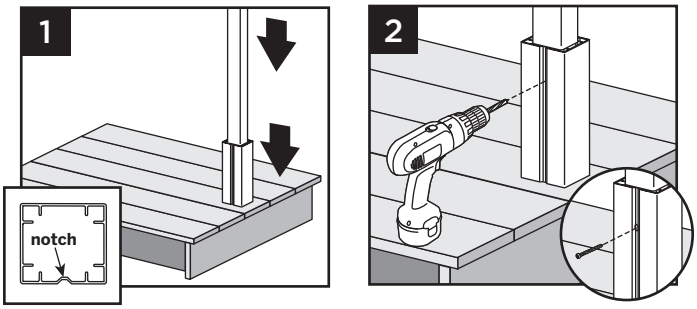
NOTE: *1/2" x 8" (13 mm x 203 mm) bolts must be wider (vertically) on front rim and narrower on side joist to avoid contact inside the post.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

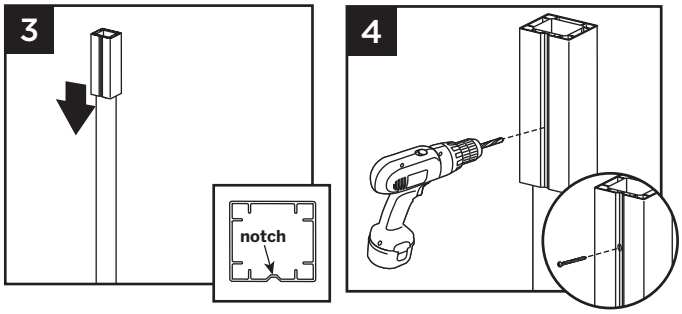
COMPOSITE POST SLEEVE APPLICATIONS

Installation of Guide Blocks and Railing

NOTE: *Pre-drilling is not required but is optional for attachment of guide blocks to post. Use a drill bit slightly smaller in size than that of screw being installed.*



1. Place or rest bottom aluminum guide block on bottom of post. Place guide on post so that notch is on a side that does not require railing to be attached.
2. Attach bottom guide block using one 10 x 1" self-tapping screw *(provided)* in notch to lock guide block onto post.

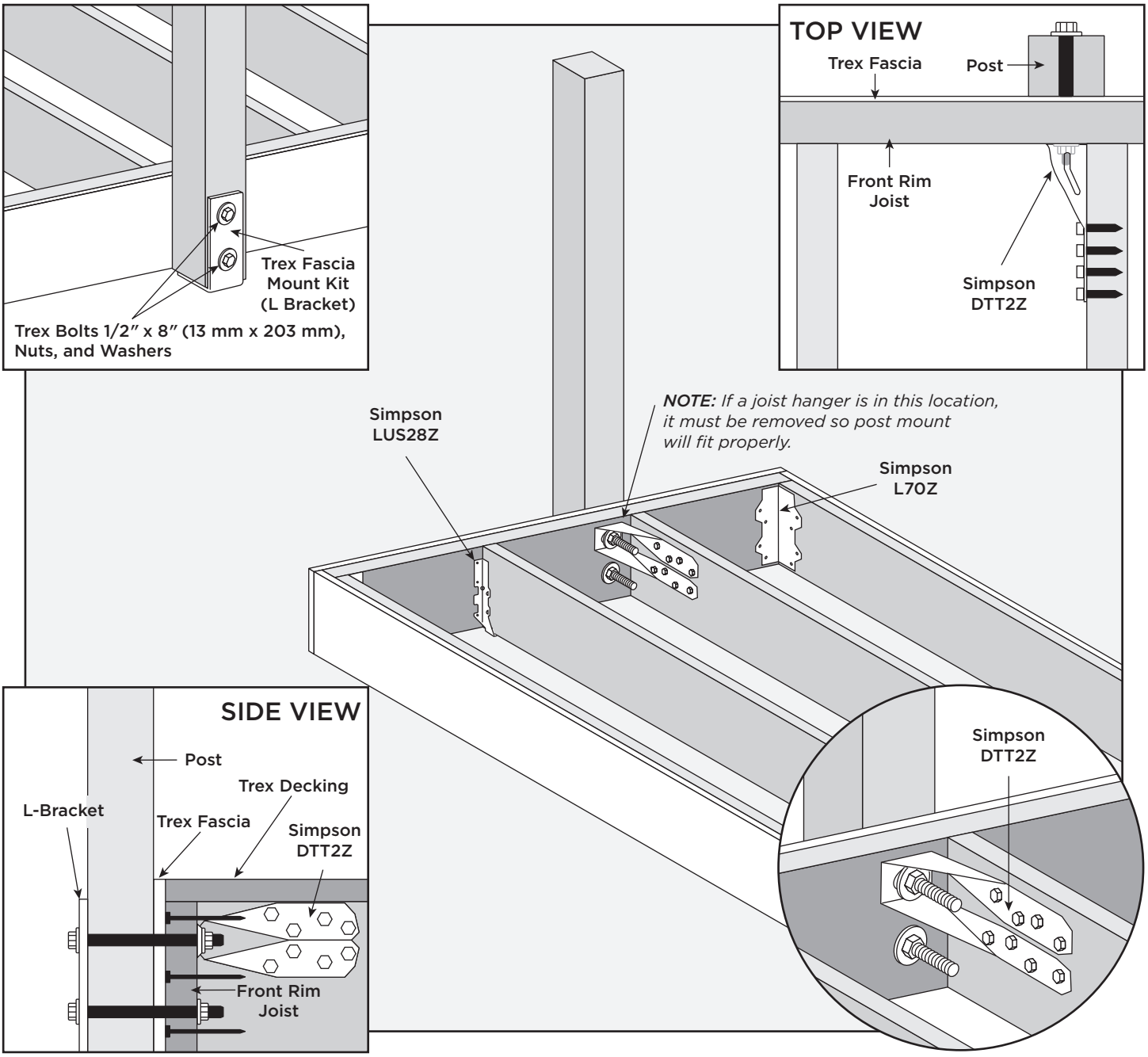


3. Location of top guide block will vary slightly based on type and height of railing being installed. Determine this measurement and place top guide block in location where top bracket for desired railing would be approximately on center of the top railing bracket location.
4. Attach top guide block using one 10 x 1" self-tapping screw *(provided)* in notch to lock guide block onto post.

- *If using the joist mount post with composite post sleeve, a quantity of 18 #8-15 x 1-1/4" screws are provided to cover all types of Trex railing bracket installations (Trex Signature, Transcend and Select). Therefore, depending on the type railing being installed, you may have screws that are not used.*
- *If using 6x6 post sleeves, attach designated railing brackets using #8-15 x 1-3/4" (4.4 cm) 316 stainless steel screws (not provided).*
- ***Pre-drilling IS REQUIRED when attaching brackets to designated posts. Use a 9/64" (3.6 mm) drill bit to predrill at specified locations according to instructions provided with railing kits.***

FASCIA MOUNT (FRONT RIM PLATE - NEXT TO JOIST)

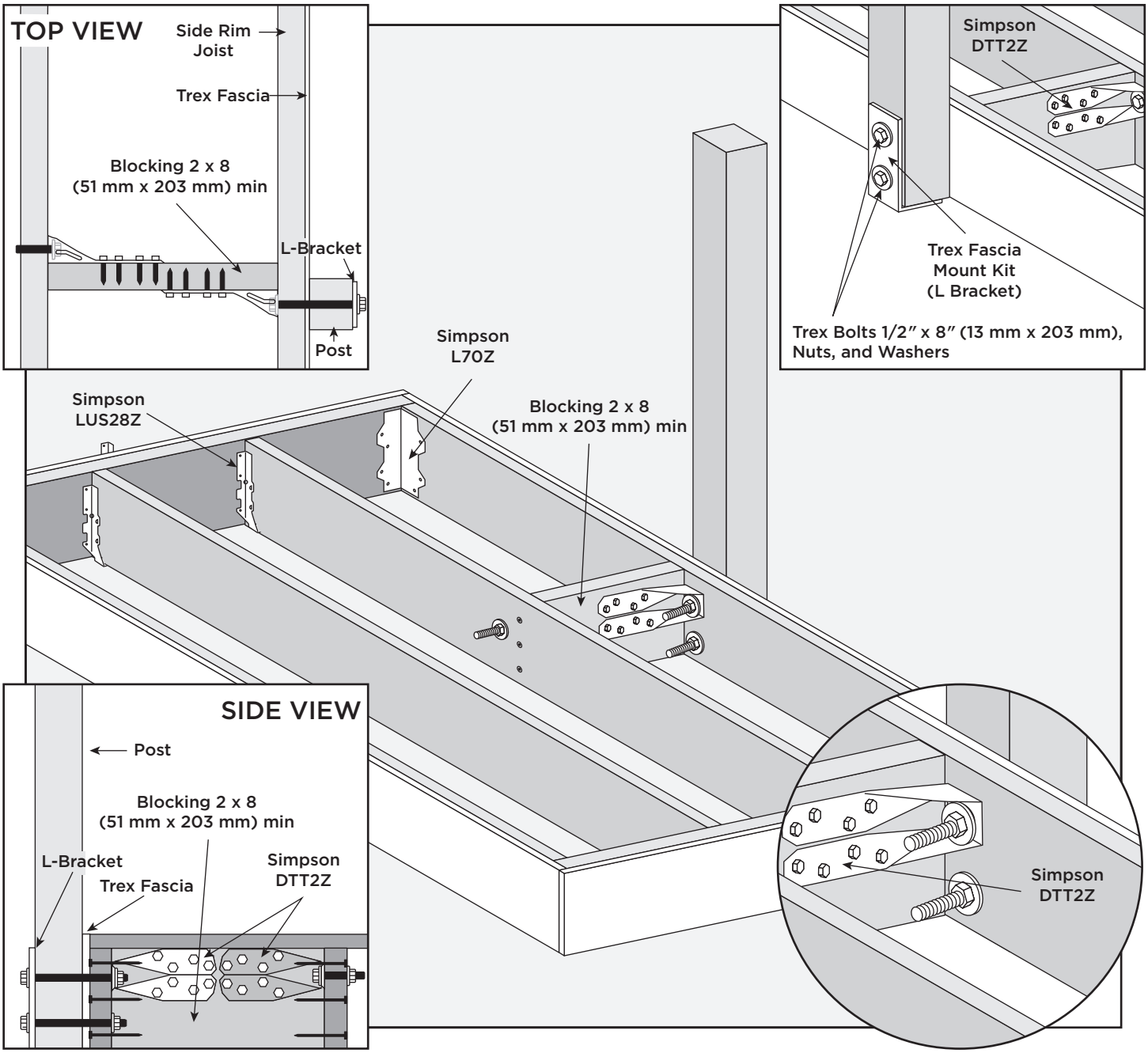
- *FOR USE WITH TREX SIGNATURE 6′ RAILING SECTIONS ONLY.*
- *TREX SUPPLIES (2) HG 1/2″ X 8″ (13 mm x 203 mm) BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS.*



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

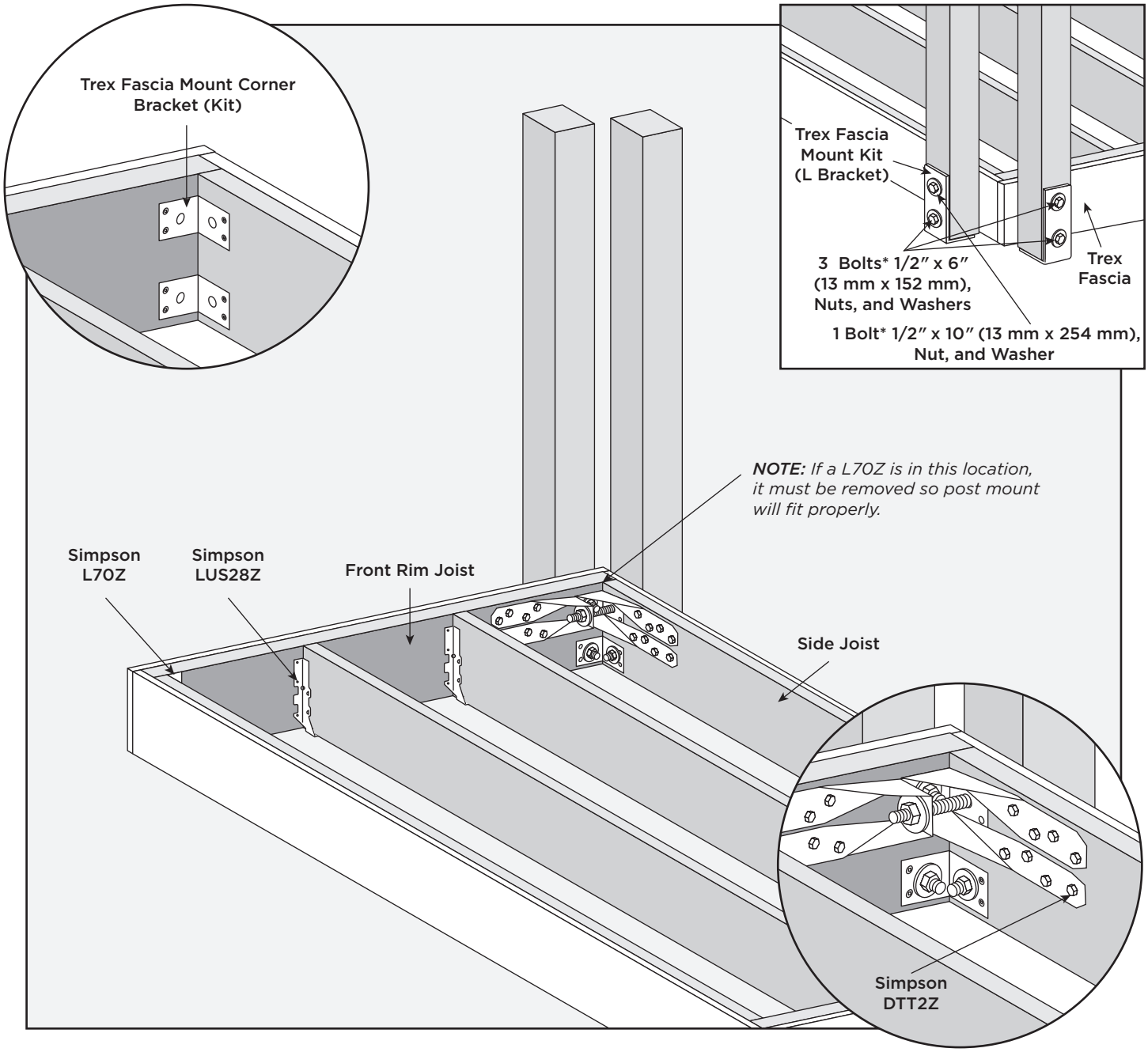
FASCIA MOUNT (SIDE JOIST - WITH BLOCKING)

- *TREX SUPPLIES (2) HG 1/2" X 8" (13 mm x 203 mm) BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS.*
- *CUSTOMER MUST SUPPLY ADDITIONAL HG 1/2" X 8" (13 mm x 203 mm) BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS.*



FASCIA MOUNT (OUTSIDE FRAME CORNER)

- *» BOLTS MUST BE CUT DOWN*.*
- *» INSTALL POST TIGHTLY ON RIM JOIST FIRST – NUTS WILL BE INACCESSIBLE LATER.*
- *» MUST USE TREX FASCIA MOUNT CORNER BRACKET KIT.*



1. Install post on rim joist and fully tighten using Simpson DTT2Z on top bolt.
2. Run 10" (254 mm) bolt through gap in existing Simpson DTT2Z and tighten into second DTT2Z.
3. Install bottom bolt.

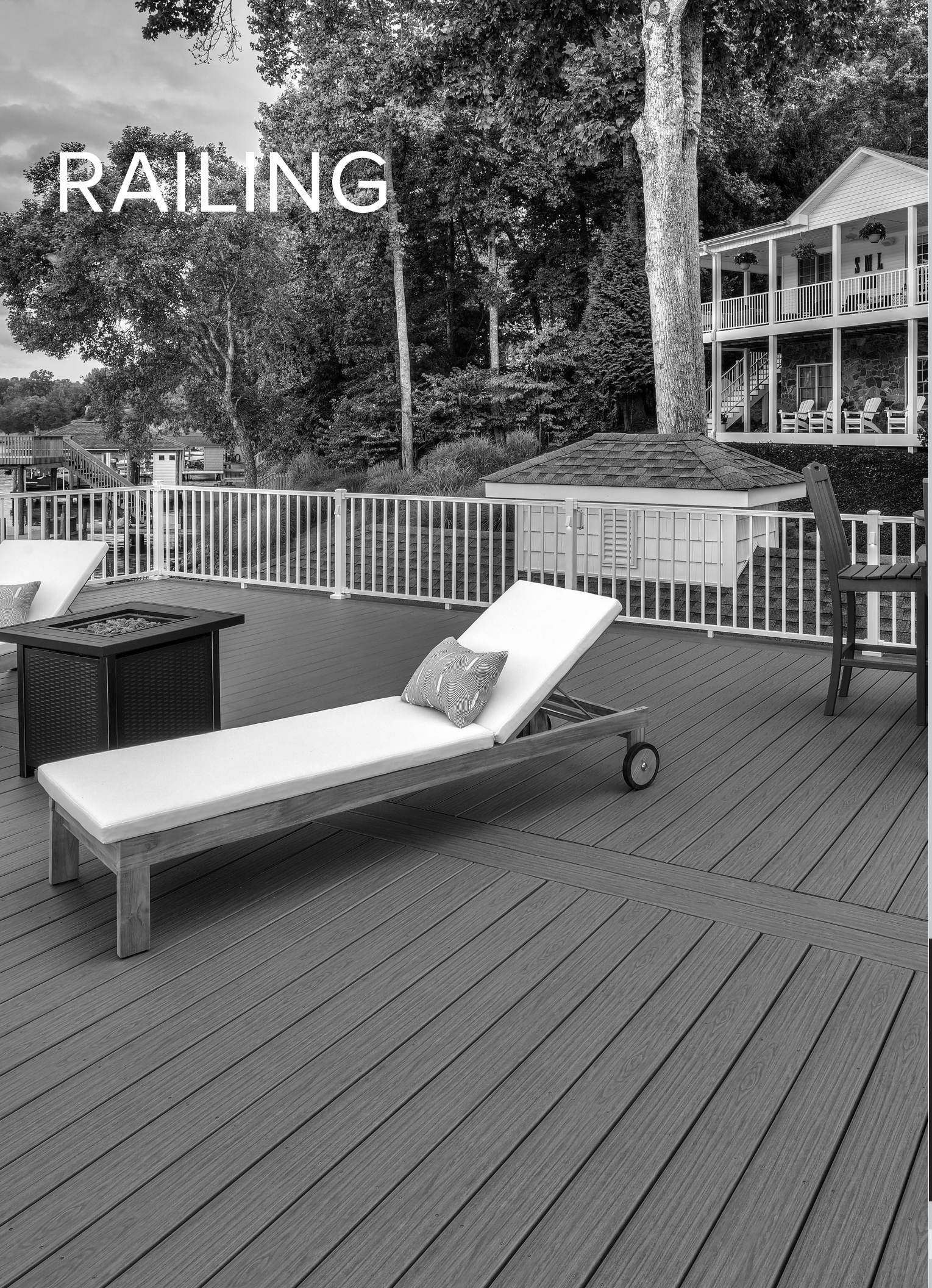
TREX SIGNATURE RAILING APPLICATIONS

Installation of Railing

1. All required hardware is included with Trex Signature railing, follow Trex Signature railing instructions for complete installation requirements.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

RAILING



TREX® RAILING—ENDLESS POSSIBILITIES

Please read the system descriptions at the top of each product section so you can choose exactly which railing components you need to complete your design. For additional guidance, the chart below depicts each railing system's component.

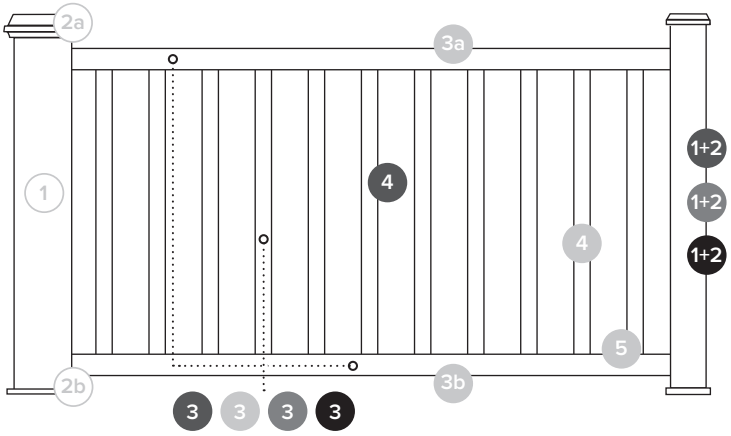
TREX POST COMPONENTS

TREX SIGNATURE® RAILING

TREX TRANSCEND® RAILING

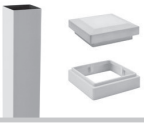
TREX SELECT® RAILING | TREX SELECT™ ALUMINUM RAILING

TREX ENHANCE™ STEEL RAILING



TREX® POST SLEEVES, CAPS & SKIRTS

These components can be used as steps 1 & 2 for all Trex railing lines.

STEP	COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLORS
1	**Post Sleeve** Each 4x4 and 6x6 post sleeve fits over a 4x4 pressure treated post or equivalent post mount. *Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [4.45 in x 4.45 in x 40 in (113 mm x 113 mm x 101 cm) external dimensions] [4.45 in x 4.45 in x 108 in (113 mm x 113 mm x 274 cm) external dimensions] [5.5 in x 5.5 in x 39 in (139 mm x 139 mm x 990 mm) external dimensions] [5.5 in x 5.5 in x 108 in (139 mm x 139 mm x 274 cm) external dimensions]		4" x 4" x 39" Post Sleeve 4" x 4" x 108" Post Sleeve	XX040439APS XX0404108APS	WT, BK, RS, VL
			6" x 6" x 39" Post Sleeve 6" x 6" x 108" Post Sleeve	WT060639APS WT0606108APS	WT
1	**Aluminum Post Sleeve** With post cap and skirt		4" x 4" x 37" Aluminum Post Sleeve 4" x 4" x 43" Aluminum Post Sleeve 4" x 4" x 53" Aluminum Post Sleeve—Stair	XXSAL040437PS XXSAL040443PS XXSAL040453PS	BK, BB
2a	**Post Sleeve Cap** Also available with LED lighting. *Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [4.55 in x 4.55 in (115 mm x 115 mm) internal dimensions] [5.55 in x 5.55 in (140 mm x 140 mm) internal dimensions]		Flat 4" x 4" Post Sleeve Cap Flat 6" x 6" Post Sleeve Cap	PXXSQCAP4X4 PWTSQCAP6X6	WT, BK, RS, VL
2a	**Solar Post Cap Light** *Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [4.55 in x 4.55 in (115 mm x 115 mm) internal dimensions]		Flat 4" x 4" Solar Post Cap Light	XXSOLAR4X4CAP	WT, BK, VL
2b	**Post Sleeve Skirt** *Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [4.55 in x 4.55 in (115 mm x 115 mm) internal dimensions] [5.55 in x 5.55 in (140 mm x 140 mm) internal dimensions]		4" x 4" Post Sleeve Skirt 6" x 6" Post Sleeve Skirt	PXXSKIRT4X4 PWTSKIRT6X6	WT BK, RS, VL
1 2a 2b	**All-In-One Post Kit** With low-profile post sleeve, post cap and skirt		40" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit 48" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit 54" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit	WT040440NTPS WT040448NTPS WT040454NTPS	WT

ACCESSORIES

COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #
Surface Mount Post For use with 4x4 composite post sleeve. *Actual external dimensions of insert:* 3.75 in x 3.75 in x 7 in (95 mm x 95 mm x 177 mm) 3.75 in x 3.75 in x 7 in (95 mm x 95 mm x 177 mm)		Aluminum Surface Mount Post for 36" (914 mm) Rail Height (1/box)	ALPOSTMOUNT36
		Aluminum Surface Mount Post for 42" (1066 mm) Rail Height (1/box)	ALPOSTMOUNT42
		Surface Mount Post Hardware—Wood (10 kits/box)	ALPOSTHWDECK

COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #
Joist Mount Post For use with 4x4 composite post sleeve. *Actual external dimensions of insert:* 3.75 in x 3.75 in x 7 in (95 mm x 95 mm x 177 mm)		Aluminum Joist Mount Post for use with all Trex railing heights (1/box)	CPJMNTPOST63

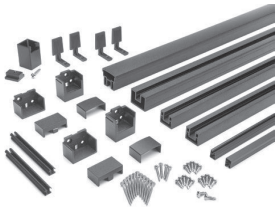
XX = COLOR PREFIX

BK Charcoal Black
RS Rope Swing
VL Vintage Lantern
WT Classic White

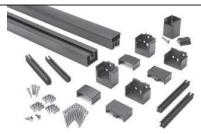
RAILING

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Choose either aluminum posts or composite post sleeves, caps and skirts for steps 1 & 2.
Pair with a rail kit (step 3) and infill panel (step 4) if needed.

STEP	DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	DESCRIPTION	ITEM #
1+2	**Aluminum Posts** Can only be used within the Trex Signature® line. Mounting hardware for post sold separately. Trex Signature® aluminum posts fulfill steps 1 & 2. If using composite post sleeves, refer to previous page.			
	2.5" x 2.5" x 37" Aluminum Post—Horizontal 2.5" x 2.5" x 43" Aluminum Post—Horizontal 2.5" x 2.5" x 53" Aluminum Post—Stair *Comes with cap and skirt.*	XXAL252537RCAP XXAL252543RCAP XXAL252553RCAP	IRC Aluminum Mounting Plate & Hardware *For use with all Trex 2.5" Surface Mount Aluminum Posts.* Concrete Post Mount Kit	ALPOSTHWDECK ALPOSTHWCONC
	2.5" x 2.5" x 36" Crossover Post—Horizontal 2.5" x 2.5" x 42" Crossover Post—Horizontal *Comes with skirt.*	XXAL252536RCCP XXAL252542RCCP	2.5" x 2.5" x 63" Aluminum Joist Mount Post *Comes with cap and skirt.* Fascia Mount Kit - Wood Framing *For use with Joist Mount Post only.*	XXJMNTPOST63 XXFMNTWOOD
	2.5" x 2.5" x 37" Line Post with Premounted Brackets 2.5" x 2.5" x 37" End Post with Premounted Brackets 2.5" x 2.5" x 37" Corner Post with Premounted Brackets 2.5" x 2.5" x 43" Line Post with Premounted Brackets 2.5" x 2.5" x 43" End Post with Premounted Brackets 2.5" x 2.5" x 43" Corner Post with Premounted Brackets *Comes with cap and skirt.*	BKAL252537RCAPLINE BKAL252537RCAPEND BKAL252537RCAPCNR BKAL252543RCAPLINE BKAL252543RCAPEND BKAL252543RCAPCNR	*Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [2.5 in x 2.5 in x 36 in (63 mm x 63 mm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [2.5 in x 2.5 in x 37 in (63 mm x 63 mm x 939 mm) actual dimensions] [2.5 in x 2.5 in x 42 in (63 mm x 63 mm x 106 cm) actual dimensions] [2.5 in x 2.5 in x 43 in (63 mm x 63 mm x 109 cm) actual dimensions] [2.5 in x 2.5 in x 53 in (63 mm x 63 mm x 134 cm) actual dimensions] [2.5 in x 2.5 in x 63 in (63 mm x 63 mm x 160 cm) actual dimensions]	
3	**Rail & Baluster Kit** *(includes top rail, bottom rail, balusters and mounting and support hardware)* *Round kits available in BK. Square kits available in BK, BZ and WT.*			
	6' x 36" Rail Kit w/ Round Balusters—Horizontal 6' x 36" Rail Kit w/ Round Balusters—Stair 8' x 36" Rail Kit w/ Round Balusters—Horizontal 8' x 36" Rail Kit w/ Round Balusters—Stair	BKAR0636HRK BKAR0636SRK BKAR0836HRK BKAR0836SRK	6' x 42" Rail Kit w/ Square Balusters—Horizontal 6' x 42" Rail Kit w/ Square Balusters—Stair 8' x 42" Rail Kit w/ Square Balusters—Horizontal 8' x 42" Rail Kit w/ Square Balusters—Stair	XXAS0642HRK XXAS0642SRK XXAS0842HRK XXAS0842SRK
	6' x 42" Rail Kit w/ Round Balusters—Horizontal 6' x 42" Rail Kit w/ Round Balusters—Stair 8' x 42" Rail Kit w/ Round Balusters—Horizontal 8' x 42" Rail Kit w/ Round Balusters—Stair	BKAR0642HRK BKAR0642SRK BKAR0842HRK BKAR0842SRK	4' x 36" Assembled Panel (Square)—Horizontal 6' x 36" Assembled Panel (Square)—Horizontal 6' x 36" Assembled Panel (Square)—Stair 8' x 36" Assembled Panel (Square)—Horizontal 8' x 36" Assembled Panel (Square)—Stair 4' x 42" Assembled Panel (Square)—Horizontal 6' x 42" Assembled Panel (Square)—Horizontal 6' x 42" Assembled Panel (Square)—Stair 8' x 42" Assembled Panel (Square)—Horizontal 8' x 42" Assembled Panel (Square)—Stair *Does not include hardware. Assembled Panels available in BK.*	BKAS0436HRPNL BKAS0636HRPNL BKAS0636SRPNL BKAS0836HRPNL BKAS0836SRPNL BKAS0442HRPNL BKAS0642HRPNL BKAS0642SRPNL BKAS0842HRPNL BKAS0842SRPNL
	6' x 36" Rail Kit w/ Square Balusters—Horizontal 6' x 36" Rail Kit w/ Square Balusters—Stair 8' x 36" Rail Kit w/ Square Balusters—Horizontal 8' x 36" Rail Kit w/ Square Balusters—Stair	XXAS0636HRK XXAS0636SRK XXAS0836HRK XXAS0836SRK		
3	**Rod Rail Kit** *(includes top rail, bottom rail, rods and mounting and support hardware)* *Available in BKBK.*			
	6' x 36" Rod Rail Kit—Horizontal 6' x 36" Rod Rail Kit—Stair 8' x 36" Rod Rail Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" Rod Rail Kit—Stair	BKBKROD0636HRK BKBKROD0636SRK BKBKROD0836HRK BKBKROD0836SRK	6' x 42" Rod Rail Kit—Horizontal 6' x 42" Rod Rail Kit—Stair 8' x 42" Rod Rail Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" Rod Rail Kit—Stair	BKBKROD0642HRK BKBKROD0642SRK BKBKROD0842HRK BKBKROD0842SRK
	36" Rod Rail Vertical Kit—Horizontal 36" Rod Rail Vertical Kit—Stair 42" Rod Rail Vertical Kit—Horizontal 42" Rod Rail Vertical Kit—Stair *Use as an accessory for cut Rod Rail sections. Available in BK.*	BK36RODHVERTK BK36RODSVERTK BK42RODHVERTK BK42RODSVERTK	*Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [4' x 36": 48 in x 36 in (122 cm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [4' x 42": 48 in x 42 in (122 cm x 106 cm) actual dimensions] [6' x 36": 72 in x 36 in (182 cm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [8' x 36": 96 in x 36 in (243 cm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [6' x 42": 72 in x 42 in (182 cm x 106 cm) actual dimensions] [8' x 42": 96 in x 42 in (243 cm x 106 cm) actual dimensions]	
3	**Mesh Rail Kit** *(includes top rail, bottom rail, verticals and mounting and support hardware)* *Available in BK and BZ.* *Mesh infill sold separately.* *Dimensions are nominals.* *See below for actuals and metrics.* [6' x 36": 72 in x 36 in (182 cm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [8' x 36": 96 in x 36 in (243 cm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [6' x 42": 72 in x 42 in (182 cm x 106 cm) actual dimensions] [8' x 42": 96 in x 42 in (243 cm x 106 cm) actual dimensions]		6' x 36" Mesh Rail Kit—Horizontal 6' x 36" Mesh Rail Kit—Stair 8' x 36" Mesh Rail Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" Mesh Rail Kit—Stair	XXA0636PNLHRK XXA0636PNLSRK XXA0836PNLHRK XXA0836PNLSRK
			6' x 42" Mesh Rail Kit—Horizontal 6' x 42" Mesh Rail Kit—Stair 8' x 42" Mesh Rail Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" Mesh Rail Kit—Stair	XXA0642PNLHRK XXA0642PNLSRK XXA0842PNLHRK XXA0842PNLSRK
			36" Mesh Rail Vertical Kit—Horizontal 36" Mesh Rail Vertical Kit—Stair 42" Mesh Rail Vertical Kit—Horizontal 42" Mesh Rail Vertical Kit—Stair *Use as an accessory for cut mesh railing sections.*	XX36MSHHVERTK XX36MSHSVERTK XX42MSHHVERTK XX42MSHSVERTK

XX = COLOR PREFIX BZ Bronze BK Charcoal Black WT Classic White

STEP	COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #
4	**Mesh Panel** For use with Trex Signature® Mesh Rail Kit. *Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [6' x 36": 64 in x 32.375 in (162 cm x 822 mm) actual dimensions] [8' x 36": 88 in x 32.375 in (223 cm x 822 mm) actual dimensions] [8' x 42": 88 in x 38.375 in (223 cm x 974 mm) actual dimensions] [Universal: 108.1875 in x 36.1875 in (274 cm x 919 mm) actual dimensions]		6' x 36" Stainless Steel Mesh Panel—Horizontal 8' x 36" Stainless Steel Mesh Panel—Horizontal 8' x 42" Stainless Steel Mesh Panel—Horizontal Universal Stainless Steel Mesh Panel—Stair	SSMESH0636HZ SSMESH0836HZ SSMESH0842HZ SSMESHUNIVST
3	**Glass Rail Kit** *(includes top rail, bottom rail, and mounting and support hardware)* *Available in BK and WT.* *Glass infill sold separately.*		6' Glass Rail Kit—Horizontal *Dimension above is nominal. See below for actual and metric.* [6': 72 in (182 cm) actual dimension]	XXA06HGLRK
4	**Glass Panel** For use with Trex Signature® Glass Rail Kit.		for 36" Rail Height—Horizontal for 42" Rail Height—Horizontal	*Visit **glass.trex.com** to order custom glass panels to complete your build.*

ACCESSORIES	COMPONENT	ITEM #	COMPONENT	ITEM #
	Trex Signature® Bracket Template—Horizontal (36" and 42") - 4x4 Composite Sleeve	SIGTEMP4X4SLEEVE	Cocktail Rail Bracket (10/pack) Fixed Bracket—Horizontal (4/pack) Fixed Bracket—Stair (4/pack) Swivel Bracket—Horizontal (2/pack–1 top, 1 bottom) Swivel Bracket—Stair (2/pack–1 top, 1 bottom) Compound Swivel Bracket (2/pack–1 top, 1 bottom)	XXCTBKTAL10PK XXFHBKTALPNL XXFSBKTAL XXSWHBKTAL XXSWSBKTAL XXCPDSWBKTAL
	Trex Signature® Bracket Template—Horizontal (36" and 42") - 2.5" Aluminum Post	SIGTEMPIRCPOST	2.5" Crossover Bracket—Horizontal (1/pack) 90° Crossover Bracket—Horizontal (1/pack) Crossover Rail End Cap 2.5" Swivel Crossover Bracket—Stair (1/pack)	XX25FHCBKTAL XX90FHCBKTAL XXXOVERENDCAP XX25RCSWSCBKTAL
	Aluminum Foot Block Extended Aluminum Foot Block	XXALFTBLK XXAL08FTBLK	Touch-up Pen	XXTOUCHUPPEN

TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™ RAILING

Choose your X-Series Post for step 1. Pair with either a Cable Rail Kit or Frameless Glass Infill Kit and Laminated Glass Panel for steps 2 & 3.

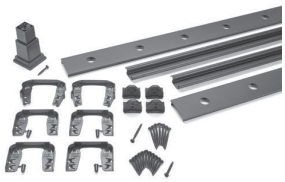
STEP	COMPONENT	DESCRIPTION		ITEM #
1	X-Series Posts	*Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [3.5 in x 3.5 in x 36.9 in (88 mm x 88 mm x 937 mm) actual dimensions] [3.5 in x 3.5 in x 42.9 in (88 mm x 88 mm x 108 cm) actual dimensions] [3.5 in x 3.5 in x 52.9 in (88 mm x 88 mm x 134 cm) actual dimensions]	3.5" x 3.5" x 37" Anchor Post–Horizontal 3.5" x 3.5" x 43" Anchor Post–Horizontal 3.5" x 3.5" x 53" Anchor Post–Stair	BKAX353537RCAP BKAX353543RCAP BKAX353553RCAP
2	Cable Rail Kit	*Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* [6' x 36": 72 in x 36 in (182 cm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [12' x 36": 144 in x 36 in (365 cm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [18' x 36": 216 in x 36 in (548 cm x 914 mm) actual dimensions] [6' x 42": 72 in x 42 in (182 cm x 106 cm) actual dimensions] [12' x 42": 144 in x 42 in (365 cm x 106 cm) actual dimensions] [18' x 42": 216 in x 42 in (548 cm x 106 cm) actual dimensions]	6' x 36" Cable Rail Kit–Horizontal 12' x 36" Cable Rail Kit–Horizontal 18' x 36" Cable Rail Kit–Horizontal 6' x 36" Cable Rail Kit–Stair 6' x 42" Cable Rail Kit–Horizontal 12' x 42" Cable Rail Kit–Horizontal 18' x 42" Cable Rail Kit–Horizontal 6' x 42" Cable Rail Kit–Stair	BKAX0636CBLHRK BKAX1236CBLHRK BKAX1836CBLHRK BKAX0636CBLSRK BKAX0642CBLHRK BKAX1242CBLHRK BKAX1842CBLHRK BKAX0642CBLSRK
2	Frameless Glass Infill Kit	Infill Kit–Horizontal (One Size)		BKAXGLIK
3	**Laminated Glass Panel** For use with Trex Signature® X-Series™ Frameless Glass Infill Kit.		for 36" Rail Height–Horizontal for 42" Rail Height–Horizontal	*Visit **glass.trex.com** to order custom glass panels to complete your build.*
Compound Swivel Bracket			1 per pack (top rail only). For horizontal or stair.	BKAXCPDSWBKT

XX = COLOR PREFIX BZ Bronze BK Charcoal Black WT Classic White

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX TRANSCEND® RAILING

Transcend is either a 3-step or 5-step process. Choose Trex post sleeves, caps and skirts (steps 1 & 2), then choose a rail kit (step 3).
OR choose each component individually for a custom design (steps 3a, 3b, 4 & 5).

STEP	COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLORS
3	Rail & Square Composite Baluster Kit *(includes Crown top rail, Universal bottom rail, square composite balusters, baluster spacers, adjustable foot block and mounting hardware)* *Color option indicates rails and balusters.*		6' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 6' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair 8' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair	XX0636HRKFS WT0636SRKFS XX0836HRKFS XX0836SRKFS	WT, BK, VL
			6' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair	XX0642HRKFS XX0842HRKFS XX0842SRKFS	WT, BK, VL
3	Rail & Round Aluminum Baluster Kit *(includes Crown top rail, Universal bottom rail, round aluminum balusters, baluster spacers, adjustable foot block and mounting hardware)* *Color option indicates rails. Round aluminum balusters come in BK.*		6' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair	XXRD0636HRKFS XXRD0836HRKFS XXRD0836SRKFS	WT, BK, VL
			6' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair	XXRD0642HRKFS XXRD0842HRKFS XXRD0842SRKFS	WT, BK, VL
3	Cocktail Rail & Round Aluminum Baluster Kit *(includes Universal top/bottom rails, round aluminum balusters, baluster spacers, adjustable foot block and mounting hardware)* *Round aluminum balusters come in BK.* *Only Trex Signature,® Trex Transcend® and Trex Select® deck boards can be used for cocktail rail and Transcend 2x4 applications.*		6' x 36" Cocktail Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" Cocktail Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" Cocktail Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair	WTRD0636HRKCKTLFS WTRD0836HRKCKTLFS WTRD0836SRKCKTLFS	WT
			Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics. 6' x 36": 72 in x 36 in (182 cm x 914 mm) 6' x 42": 72 in x 42 in (182 cm x 106 cm) 8' x 36": 96 in x 36 in (243 cm x 914 mm) 8' x 42": 96 in x 42 in (243 cm x 106 cm)		
3a	Top Rail Universal top rail is used for cocktail rail applications.		6' Crown Top Rail 8' Crown Top Rail	XXCROWNTR06FS XXCROWNTR08FS	WT, BK, RS, VL
			6' Universal Top/Bottom Rail 8' Universal Top/Bottom Rail	XXUNIVTBR06FS XXUNIVTBR08FS	
3b	Bottom Rail		6' Universal Top/Bottom Rail 8' Universal Top/Bottom Rail	XXUNIVTBR06FS XXUNIVTBR08FS	WT, BK, RS, VL
4	Balusters See chart below for number of balusters needed to complete each railing section. *Composite balusters are available in WT, BK, RS, and VL.* *Aluminum balusters are available in WT, BZ and BK.*		Square Composite Balusters for 36" Rail Height (16/pack) Square Composite Balusters for 42" Rail Height (16/pack)	XX020230SBK XX020236SBK	WT, BK, RS, VL
			Round Aluminum Balusters for 36" Rail Height (20/pack) Round Aluminum Balusters for 42" Rail Height (20/pack)	XXTA30RBK XXTA36RBK	WT, BZ, BK
			Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics. 6' Full Span Rail: 72 in (182 cm), 8' Full Span Rail: 96 in (243 cm) Composite 36" Baluster: 1.418 in x 1.418 in x 30.375 in (36 mm x 36 mm x 771 mm) Composite 42" Baluster: 1.418 in x 1.418 in x 36.375 in (36 mm x 36 mm x 923 mm) Aluminum 36" Baluster: .75 in x 30.25 in (19 mm x 768 mm) Aluminum 42" Baluster: .75 in x 36.25 in (19 mm x 920 mm)		
5	Accessory Infill Kit *(includes, baluster spacers, adjustable foot block and mounting hardware)* *Dimensions are nominals. See below for actuals and metrics.* 6': 72 in (182 cm) 8': 96 in (243 cm)		6' Accessory Infill Kit for Square Composite Balusters—Horizontal 6' Accessory Infill Kit for Square Composite Balusters—Stair 8' Accessory Infill Kit for Square Composite Balusters—Horizontal 8' Accessory Infill Kit for Square Composite Balusters—Stair	XXSQHIK06FS XXSQSIK06FS XXSQHIK08FS XXSQSIK08FS	WT, BK, RS, VL
			6' Accessory Infill Kit for Round Aluminum Balusters—Horizontal 6' Accessory Infill Kit for Round Aluminum Balusters—Stair 8' Accessory Infill Kit for Round Aluminum Balusters—Horizontal 8' Accessory Infill Kit for Round Aluminum Balusters—Stair	XXRDHIK06FS XXRDSIK06FS XXRDHIK08FS XXRDSIK08FS	WT, BK, RS, VL

BALUSTER	ORIENTATION	6' SECTION	8' SECTION
Square composite	Horizontal	14	19
	Stair	11	15
Round aluminum	Horizontal	16	21
	Stair	13	17

XX = COLOR PREFIX

COMPOSITE COLORS

BK Charcoal Black
RS Rope Swing
VL Vintage Lantern
WT Classic White

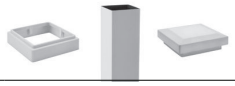
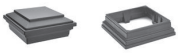
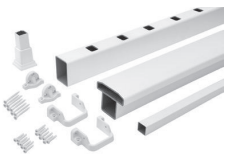
ALUMINUM COLORS

BK Charcoal Black
BZ Bronze
WT Classic White

ACCESSORIES	COMPONENT	ITEM #	COMPONENT	ITEM #
	Transcend Bracket Template—Horizontal (36" and 42")—Composite Sleeve	TSCTEMP4X4SLEEVE	Mounting Hardware for Cut Rails—Horizontal Mounting Hardware for Cut Rails—Stair Transcend RSB Bracket Pack—Horizontal (24/box) Transcend RSB Bracket Pack—Stair (24/box)	XXHZACCYKIT XXSTACCYKIT TSHBRACKET TSSBRACKET
	Foot Block	XXFTBLKPC	0 Degree Rail Gasket Pack—Horizontal 0 Degree Rail Gasket Pack—Stair 22.5 Degree Gasket Pack 45 Degree Birdsmouth Gasket Pack *(for 4x4)* 45 Degree Gasket Pack *(for 6x6)*	XX00HGASK XX00SGASK XX22HGASK XX45RSBADAPK WT45HGASK

TREX SELECT® RAILING

Trex Select® is a 3-step process. Choose Trex post sleeves, caps and skirts (steps 1 & 2) and a rail kit (step 3).

STEP	COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLORS
1 2a 2b	All-In-One Post Kit *(with low-profile post sleeve, post cap and skirt)* *Available in WT.*		40" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit 48" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit 54" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit	WT040440NTPS WT040448NTPS WT040454NTPS	WT
1	Post Sleeve		4" x 4" x 39" Post Sleeve 4" x 4" x 108" Post Sleeve	XX040439APS XX0404108APS	WT, BK
2a 2b	Post Cap & Skirt		Flat 4" x 4" Post Sleeve Cap 4" x 4" Post Sleeve Skirt	PXXSQCAP4X4 PXXSKIRT4X4	WT, BK
3	Classic Rail & Round Aluminum Baluster Kit *(includes top rail, bottom rail, round aluminum balusters, adjustable foot block and hardware pack)* *Available in WT or BK rails with aluminum balusters in BK.*		6' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 6' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 6' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair 8' x 36" Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair 8' x 42" Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair	XXRD0636HSELKFS XXRD0836HSELKFS XXRD0642HSELKFS XXRD0842HSELKFS XXRD0636SSELKFS XXRD0836SSELKFS XXRD0842SSELKFS	WT, BK
3	T-Rail & Round Aluminum Baluster Kit *(includes top rail, bottom rail, round aluminum balusters, adjustable foot block and hardware pack)* *Available in WT rails with aluminum balusters in BK.*		6' x 36" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 6' x 42" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 6' x 36" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair 8' x 36" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair 8' x 42" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair	WTRD0636HSELTRK WTRD0836HSELTRK WTRD0642HSELTRK WTRD0842HSELTRK WTRD0636SSELTRK WTRD0836SSELTRK WTRD0842SSELTRK	WT
3	T-Rail & Square Composite Baluster Kit *(includes top rail, bottom rail, square composite balusters, adjustable foot block and hardware pack)* *Available in WT rails with square balusters in WT. See below for actuals and metrics.*		6' x 36" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 6' x 42" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 8' x 42" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Horizontal 6' x 36" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair 8' x 36" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair 8' x 42" T-Rail & Baluster Kit—Stair	WTSQ0636HSELTRK WTSQ0836HSELTRK WTSQ0642HSELTRK WTSQ0842HSELTRK WTSQ0636SSELTRK WTSQ0836SSELTRK WTSQ0842SSELTRK	WT

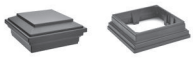
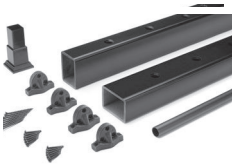
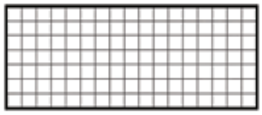
See below for actuals and metrics. 6' x 36": 72 in x 36 in (182 cm x 914 mm) 8' x 36": 96 in x 36 in (243 cm x 914 mm) 6' x 42": 72 in x 42 in (182 cm x 106 cm) 8' x 42": 96 in x 42 in (243 cm x 106 cm)

ACCESSORIES	COMPONENT	ITEM #
	Mounting Hardware for Cut Classic Rails—Horizontal (10 kits/box) Mounting Hardware for Cut Classic Rails—Stair (10 kits/box) Mounting Hardware for Cut T-Rails—Horizontal Mounting Hardware for Cut T-Rails—Stair	PBKENHZBKT PBKENSTBKT PTRLHBKTKIT PTRLSTBKTKIT
	Trex Select® 8' Aluminum Classic Rail Stiffener Trex Select® 8' Aluminum T-Rail Stiffener (IRC)	SELALRAILSTIFFENER SELALTRAILSTIFFNR
	T-Rail 22.5˚ Left Angle Bracket Pack T-Rail 22.5˚ Right Angle Bracket Pack T-Rail 45˚ Birdsmouth Bracket Kit (when using 4x4 post sleeve) T-Rail 45˚ Birdsmouth Bracket Pack (when using All-In-One Post Kit)	TRL22LBKTKIT TRL22RBKTKIT TRLBMBKTKIT TRLBMBKTKITNT

XX = COLOR PREFIX BK Charcoal Black WT Classic White

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

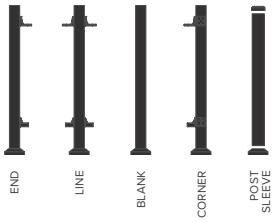
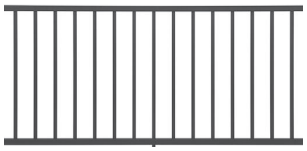
TREX SELECT™ MESH RAIL

STEP	COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLORS
1 2a 2b	All-In-One Post Kit *(with low-profile post sleeve, post cap and skirt) Available in WT.*		40" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit 48" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit 54" Trex Select All-In-One Post Kit	WT040440NTPS WT040448NTPS WT040454NTPS	WT
1	Post Sleeve		4" x 4" x 39" Post Sleeve 4" x 4" x 108" Post Sleeve	XX040439APS XX0404108APS	WT, BK
2a 2b	Post Cap & Skirt		Flat 4" x 4" Post Sleeve Cap 4" x 4" Post Sleeve Skirt	PXXSQCAP4X4 PXXSKIRT4X4	WT, BK
3	Select Mesh Kits *See below for actuals and metrics.* *6' x 36": 72 in x 36 in (182 cm x 914 mm)* *8' x 36": 96 in x 36 in (243 cm x 914 mm)* *6' x 44": 72 in x 44 in (182 cm x 111 cm)* *8' x 44": 96 in x 44 in (243 cm x 111 cm)*		6' x 36"/44" Select Mesh Kit—Horizontal 8' x 36"/44" Select Mesh Kit—Horizontal 6' x 36"/44" Select Mesh Kit—Stair 8' x 36"/44" Select Mesh Kit—Stair	BKMESH06HSELK BKMESH08HSELK BKMESH06SSELK BKMESH08SSELK	BK
4	Select Mesh Panels		6' x 36" Select Mesh Panel–Carbon Steel 8' x 36" Select Mesh Panel–Carbon Steel 6' x 60" Select Mesh Panel–Carbon Steel	CSMESH0636HZ CSMESH0836HZ CSMESH0660UNIV	BK

ACCESSORIES	DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLOR
Select Mesh Cut Kits	Trex Select Mesh Accessory Kit–Horizontal Trex Select Mesh Accessory Kit–Stair Mesh Accessory Kit–Universal Channel	MESHACCYHSELK MESHACCYSSELK MESHUNIVSELK	BK

XX = COLOR PREFIX BK Charcoal Black WT Classic White

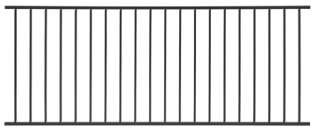
TREX SELECT™ ALUMINUM RAILING

STEP	COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLORS
1+2	Select Aluminum Posts & Sleeves *Brackets sold separately*		2.5" x 2.5" x 37" Aluminum End Post 2.5" x 2.5" x 37" Aluminum Line Post 2.5" x 2.5" x 37" Aluminum Corner Post 2.5" x 2.5" x 43" Aluminum End Post 2.5" x 2.5" x 43" Aluminum Line Post 2.5" x 2.5" x 43" Aluminum Corner Post	XXSAL2537PEND XXSAL2537PLINE XXSAL2537PCNR XXSAL2543PEND XXSAL2543PLINE XXSAL2543PCNR	BK, BB
			2.5" x 2.5" x 37" Aluminum Blank Post 2.5" x 2.5" x 43" Aluminum Blank Post 2.5" x 2.5" x 53" Aluminum Blank Post—Stair	XXSAL2537PB XXSAL2543PB XXSAL2553PB	BK, BB
			4" x 4" x 37" Aluminum Post Sleeve 4" x 4" x 43" Aluminum Post Sleeve 4" x 4" x 53" Aluminum Post Sleeve—Stair	XXSAL040437PS XXSAL040443PS XXSAL040453PS	BK, BB
3	Select Aluminum Panels *See below for actuals and metrics.* *6' x 36": 72 in x 36 in (182 cm x 914 mm)* *8' x 36": 96 in x 36 in (243 cm x 914 mm)* *6' x 42": 72 in x 42 in (182 cm x 106 cm)* *8' x 42": 96 in x 42 in (243 cm x 106 cm)*		6' x 36" Aluminum Panel—Horizontal 8' x 36" Aluminum Panel—Horizontal 6' x 36" Aluminum Panel—Stair 8' x 36" Aluminum Panel—Stair	XXSALSQ636HPNL XXSALSQ836HPNL XXSALSQ636SPNL XXSALSQ836SPNL	BK, BB
			6' x 42" Aluminum Panel—Horizontal 8' x 42" Aluminum Panel—Horizontal 6' x 42" Aluminum Panel—Stair 8' x 42" Aluminum Panel—Stair	XXSALSQ642HPNL XXSALSQ842HPNL XXSALSQ642SPNL XXSALSQ842SPNL	BK, BB

ACCESSORIES	DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLORS
Aluminum Bracket Packs	Horizontal Fixed Bracket Pack—4/pack Horizontal Swivel Bracket Pack—4/pack Stair Swivel Bracket Pack—4 /pack Cocktail Bracket—10/pack	XXSALFHBKT XXSALHSWBKT XXSALSSWBKT XXSALCTBKT	BK, BB

XX = COLOR PREFIX BB Burnished Bronze BK Charcoal Black WT Classic White

TREX ENHANCE™ STEEL RAILING

STEP	COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLOR
1+2	Enhance Steel Post/Cap/Skirt **Brackets sold separately*	 BLANK END LINE CORNER	2" x 2" x 37" Steel End Post 2" x 2" x 37" Steel Line Post 2" x 2" x 37" Steel Corner Post 2" x 2" x 43" Steel End Post 2" x 2" x 43" Steel Line Post 2" x 2" x 43" Steel Corner Post 2" x 2" x 37" Steel Blank Post* 2" x 2" x 43" Steel Blank Post* 2" x 2" x 53" Steel Blank Post*—Stair	BKSTL202037ENPEND BKSTL202037ENPLINE BKSTL202037ENPCNR BKSTL202043ENPEND BKSTL202043ENPLINE BKSTL202043ENPCNR BKSTL202037ENP BKSTL202043ENP BKSTL202053ENP	BK
3	Enhance Steel Panels *See below for actuals and metrics.* *6' x 36": 72 in x 36 in (182 cm x 914 mm)* *8' x 36": 96 in x 36 in (243 cm x 914 mm)* *6' x 42": 72 in x 42 in (182 cm x 106 cm)* *8' x 42": 96 in x 42 in (243 cm x 106 cm)*		6' x 36" Steel Panel—Horizontal 6' x 36" Steel Panel—Stair 8' x 36" Steel Panel—Horizontal 8' x 36" Steel Panel—Stair 6' x 42" Steel Panel—Horizontal 6' x 42" Steel Panel—Stair 8' x 42" Steel Panel—Horizontal 8' x 42" Steel Panel—Stair	BKSTLSQ0636HENPNL BKSTLSQ0636SENPNL BKSTLSQ0836HENPNL BKSTLSQ0836SENPNL BKSTLSQ0642HENPNL BKSTLSQ0642SENPNL BKSTLSQ0842HENPNL BKSTLSQ0842SENPNL	BK

ACCESSORIES		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #	COLOR
Enhance Steel Bracket Pack	 FIXED BRACKET · SWIVEL BRACKET–HORIZONTAL · SWIVEL BRACKET–STAIR · COCKTAIL RAIL BRACKET	Fixed Bracket 4-pk—Horizontal Swivel Bracket 2/pack-Top & Bottom—Horizontal Swivel Bracket 4/pack-Top & Bottom—Stair Cocktail Rail Bracket 10-pk (w/ fasteners)	BKSTLENFHBKT BKSTLENSWHBKT BKSTLENSWSBKT BKSTLENCTBKT	BK

Additional items are available in retail.

XX = COLOR PREFIX BK Charcoal Black

TREX ALUMINUM ADA HANDRAIL

COMPONENT			ITEM #
 1 2 3 4 5	**1** 36° Elbow **2** Wall Mount **3** Collar **4** Wall Return 90° **5** Handrail	1.375-in x 8-ft (34 mm x 243 cm) Handrail Wall Return 90° Wall Mount Inside Corner Mount 180° Elbow ("Candy Cane") 5° Elbow 31° Elbow 34° Elbow 36° Elbow 90° Elbow Adjustable Elbow Straight 4-in (101 mm) Internal Connector Inline Termination Bracket Rail End Cap Collar	XXALADARAIL8 XXALADA90WR2G XXALADAWMNT2G XXALADAICORNER2G XXALADA180CCANE XXALADA05ELB XXALADA31ELB XXALADA34ELB XXALADA36ELB XXALADA90ELB2G XXALADAADJELB XXALINTCONN XXALADAINLINE XXALADACAP XXALADACLR

TREX ALUMINUM GATES

COMPONENT		DESCRIPTION	ITEM #
	Trex Signature® Adjustable Gate *Hardware sold separately. Available in BK, BZ and WT.*	36" Rail Height, Square Balusters, Adjustable up to 48" wide opening 36" Rail Height, Round Balusters, Adjustable up to 48" wide opening 42" Rail Height, Square Balusters, Adjustable up to 48" wide opening 42" Rail Height, Round Balusters, Adjustable up to 48" wide opening [Actual height 36" Rail: 36 in (914 mm); 42" Rail: 42 in (106 cm). Actual width is 47.5 in (120 cm) but can be cut to fit any width.]	XX36SQADJGATE XX36RDADJGATE XX42SQADJGATE XX42RDADJGATE
	Hardware Pack Hardware for attachment to wood post with composite sleeve or aluminum posts	2 Adjustable Self-Closing Hinges 1 Locking Hasp With Keys 	BKGATEHW

RAILING

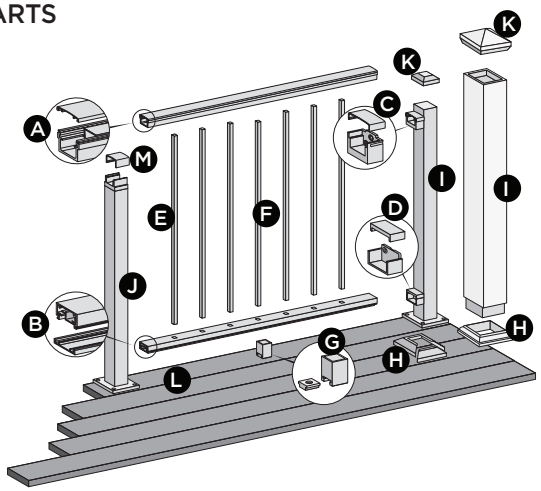
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SIGNATURE® RAILING

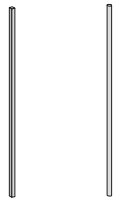
NOTES:

- *TREX SIGNATURE POSTS CANNOT BE USED WITH TRADITIONAL OR COCKTAIL DESIGNS. ONLY PRESSURE TREATED POSTS/POST SLEEVES CAN BE USED. REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR MORE INFORMATION.*
- *TREX SIGNATURE RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A CLEAR SPAN OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M).*
- *IF INSTALLING AT EXACT SPAN LENGTHS OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M), AND USING POST-TO-POST CONFIGURATION, THE BOTTOM RAIL WILL NOT NEED TO BE CUT, BUT THE TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT.*
- *IF INSTALLING AT EXACT SPAN LENGTHS OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M), AND USING CROSSOVER POST CONFIGURATION (SPANS FROM ONE CROSSOVER POST TO ANOTHER CROSSOVER POST), BOTH THE BOTTOM RAIL AND TOP RAIL WILL NOT NEED TO BE CUT.*
- *IN ADDITION, AT ALL FINAL END POST CONFIGURATIONS, TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT.*
- *ALL TREX SIGNATURE SPANS OVER 6′ WILL REQUIRE THE USE OF A FOOT BLOCK. THUS THESE RAILING SPANS MUST BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST.*
- *SEE INFORMATION WITHIN DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR MORE INFORMATION.*
- *SEE PAGE 68-74 FOR SKU NUMBERS.*

PARTS



BALUSTER OPTIONS



DETERMINING BALUSTERS NEEDED				
Baluster Type	Per 6′ Section	Per 8′ Section	Per 6′ Stair Section	Per 8′ Stair Section
Square	15	20	13	17
Round	15	20	13	17

NOTE: THIS IS AN OVERVIEW OF ALL RAILING COMPONENTS FOR TREX SIGNATURE HORIZONTAL APPLICATIONS – REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR SPECIFIC RAILING CONFIGURATIONS.

A. Trex Signature top rail and crowned cover
   - 6′ (actual length 73.5″ [186.7 cm])
   - 8′ (actual length 97.5″ [247.7 cm])

B. Trex Signature bottom rail and flat cover
   - 6′ (actual length 71.5″ [181.6 cm])
   - 8′ (actual length 95.5″ [242.6 cm])

C. Trex Signature upper rail bracket and cover

D. Trex Signature lower rail bracket and cover

E. Trex Signature balusters (square or round)

F. Trex Signature center baluster (square or round)

G. Trex Signature Foot Block**

H. Trex Signature post skirt or post sleeve skirt*

I. Trex Signature post*
   - 36″ (actual length 37″ [94.0 cm])
   - 42″ (actual length 43″ [109.2 cm])

   or Trex post sleeve***
   - 36″ (actual length 40″ [102 cm])
   - 42″ (actual length 46″ [117 cm])

NOTE: MUST USE TREX DECK MOUNT POST HARDWARE AND METAL PLATE WHEN ATTACHING TREX SIGNATURE POSTS.

J. Trex Signature crossover post*
   - 36″ (actual length 34.5″ [87.6 cm])
   - 42″ (actual length 40.5″ [102.9 cm])

K. Trex Signature post cap or post sleeve cap*

L. Trex decking

M. Crossover bracket cover *(supplied with crossover post)*

* *Item not included in Trex Signature Railing kits.*

** *Required ONLY for All Clear Span Applications over 6′ (1.83 m) when smaller fixed baluster is fully centered, or unsupported spans greater than 5′ (1.52 m) (example: 8′ (2.44 m) span cut into one 5′ (1.52 m) span and one 3′ (0.91 m) span would require Foot Block under 5′ (1.52 m) span since smaller fixed baluster is no longer centered). Included with 8′ (2.44 m) railing kits.*

*** *Both 4″ x 4″ (10.2 cm x 10.2 cm) and 6″ x 6″ (15.2 cm x 15.2 cm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4″ x 4″ pressure-treated post.*

NOTE: *If installing 42″ (106.7 cm) railing, and using pressure-treated posts with Trex post sleeves, ensure that a longer pressure-treated post is used along with longer post sleeve, both cut to a height of 46″ (116.8 cm) from decking surface.*

INSTALLING TREX SIGNATURE POSTS AND/OR TREX SIGNATURE CROSSOVER POSTS ON WOOD OR CONCRETE

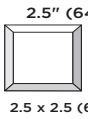
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *EACH POST MUST BE ATTACHED AS SHOWN TO ENSURE A CODE COMPLIANT AND SAFE INSTALLATION.*
- *TREX SIGNATURE POSTS CANNOT BE USED WITH TRADITIONAL OR COCKTAIL DESIGNS, ONLY PRESSURE TREATED POST/POST SLEEVES CAN BE USED. REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR MORE INFORMATION.*
- *ALWAYS refer to your local building code official prior to installing any railing system to ensure all code and safety requirements are met. Trex cannot be held responsible for improper or non-recommended installations.*
- *When installing Trex Signature posts on ACQ, CCA or concrete surfaces, use an appropriate isolation barrier between post and surface (contact local building code official if needed).*
- *All Trex Signature stair installations require the use of a 53" (1346 mm) stair post, measured and cut to appropriate length if necessary.*
- *If crossover stair post is required, use stair post (again cut to appropriate length if necessary) and use swivel crossover bracket.*
- *If installing on concrete, make sure all surfaces are level.*
- *In areas of extreme cold/cold weather conditions (ex. ice/snow) its recommended to drill a small weephole at the base of the post (can be hidden under post skirt) to allow for water drainage.*

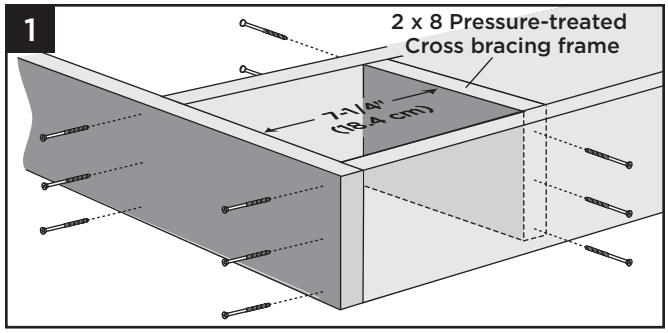
TOOLS AND MATERIALS NEEDED

- Drill and/or screw gun (hammer drill for concrete)
- 1/2" (13 mm) drill bit for wood, 3/8" (10 mm) drill bit for concrete
- Blocking – 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) pressure-treated Southern Yellow Pine or equivalent
- Qty: 36 (per post) – 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws

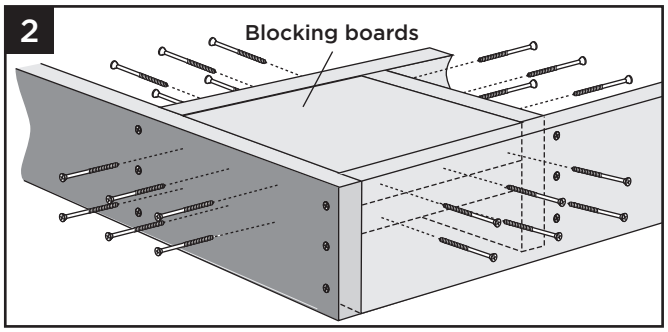
Code Approved Post Applications

POST SIZE	 2.5 x 2.5 (64 mm x 64 mm) Post (IRC)
< 30" height decking	Acceptable (Code Approval not Applicable)
IRC Compliant	Yes
IBC Compliant	No

Installing Signature Posts and/or Signature Crossover Posts on Pressure-treated Wood Framing (Corner Post Installation)



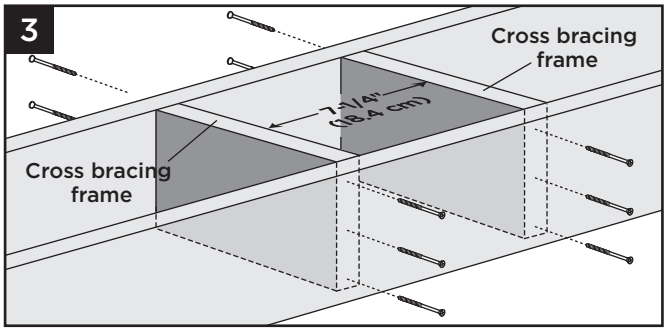
1. Install 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) cross bracing frame in between joists at 7-1/4" (184 mm). Attach a total of twelve 3" (76 mm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.



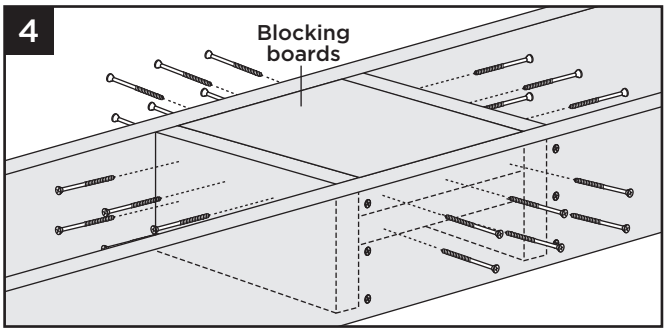
2. Install two 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of twenty-four 3" (76 mm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

NOTE: *TO ENSURE THE BLOCKING IS FULLY SECURE, USE THE AMOUNT OF SCREWS indicated ABOVE.*
TIP: Use two additional screws to "sandwich" blocking boards together for easier attachment to framing.

Line Post Installation



3. Install two 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) cross bracing frames in between joists at 7-1/4" (184 mm). Attach a total of twelve 3" (76 mm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

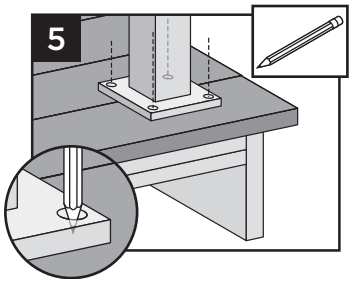


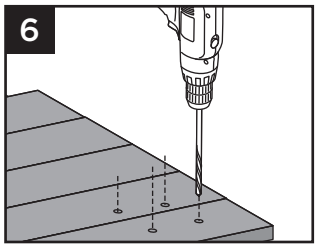
4. Install two 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of twenty-four 3" (76 mm) pressure- treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

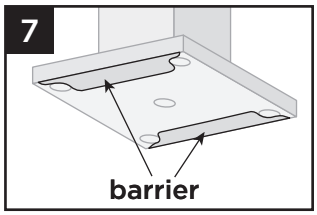
INSTALLING TREX SIGNATURE POSTS AND/OR TREX SIGNATURE CROSSOVER POSTS ON WOOD OR CONCRETE/CONTINUED

» ***Metal backplate is only required for 2.5" (64 mm) post in IRC installations.*** *(Consult local code official for more information.)*

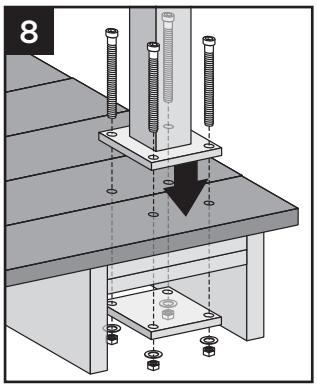




5. Using post a template, mark locations of holes.
6. Drill through decking and blocking boards using 5/8" diameter bit (long drill bit will be required).



7. Insert (2) stainless steel barrier strips (not provided) under the mounting bolt holes. BARRIER STRIPS ARE REQUIRED ONLY IF ATTACHING POST DIRECTLY TO PRESSURE-TREATED FRAMING.

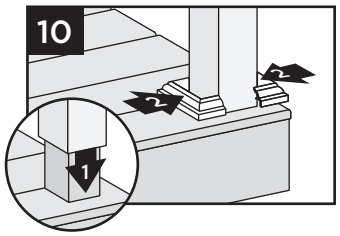


8. Attach posts using four 3/8" x 6" (10 mm x 152 mm) hex cap bolts, washers, and nuts, along with aluminum back plate on underside of blocking. If the project requires IRC compliance, this back plate MUST be installed under the decking to ensure this will meet code compliance. Reference SKU part number ALPOSTHWDECK for required hardware and aluminum plate. (Consult local code official for more information on IRC Compliance.)

INSTALLING PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS, POST SLEEVES, AND SKIRTS TO USE WITH TREX SIGNATURE RAILING

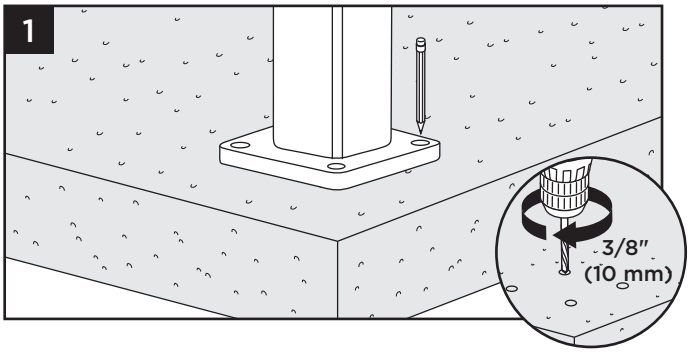
9. ***NOTE: PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.***

10. Slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.



NOTE: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

INSTALLING TREX SIGNATURE POSTS ON CONCRETE

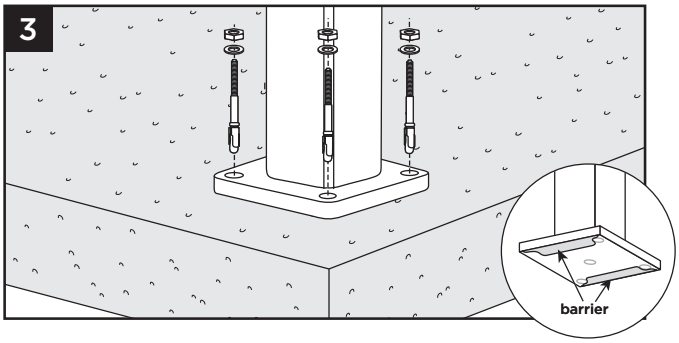


Pre-drill Hole

1. Using post as a template, mark locations of the four holes and drill into concrete at least 2-5/8" (67 mm) using a 3/8" (10 mm) masonry bit.

NOTE: *You can either set drill bit to correct depth on drill or mark drill bit with tape at required dimension to ensure all holes are drilled at correct depth.*

2. Clean out holes to remove all concrete dust using a shop vacuum or other appropriate tool.



3. Insert (2) stainless steel barrier strips (not provided) under mounting bolt holes (these can be purchased on ShopTrex.com). Use appropriate shims if posts are not plumb. Secure posts using four TREX SUPPLIED 3/8" x 3-3/4" (10 mm x 95 mm) wedge anchors. Reference SKU part number ALPOSTHWCONC for required hardware (wedge anchors, washers, and nuts).

NOTES:

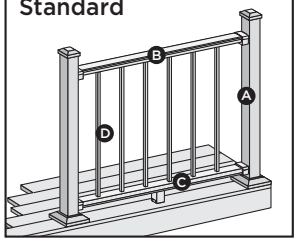
» *When using hammer to tap anchors in place, keep threaded nut at top of anchor in order to not damage threads.*

» *Recommended torque for anchors is 30 ft-lbs.*

TREX SIGNATURE®
RAILING CONFIGURATIONS

Note: See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex post mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.

Standard

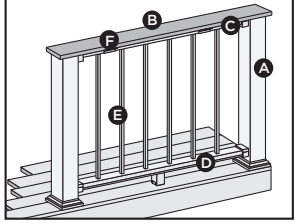


Cutting posts/post sleeves is **NOT** required.

A. Trex Signature post, pressure-treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 post sleeve, or Composite Joist Mount Post/Trex 4x4 post sleeve (Inside mount), or Signature Joist Mount Post (Span of 6′ or less only)*
B. Trex Signature top rail
C. Trex Signature bottom rail
D. Trex Signature balusters

See page 83 for "How to Install Standard Horizontal Railing".

Cocktail



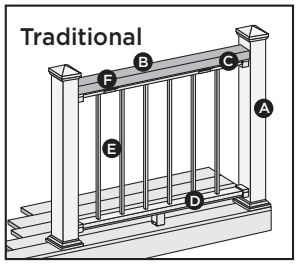
Post sleeves will need to be cut.

A. Pressure-Treated post with Trex post sleeve
   NOTE: *» Only for use with 4x4 (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve.*
   » Trex Signature Posts, Trex Post Mounts or Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Cocktail design.
B. Deck board top rail. ***NOTE:*** *Enhance cannot be used.*
C. Trex Signature top rail
D. Trex Signature bottom rail
E. Trex Signature balusters
F. Trex Signature Cocktail Rail Bracket**

POST SLEEVES WILL NEED TO BE CUT

See page 94 for "How to Install Signature Horizontal Cocktail Railing.

Traditional



Cutting posts/post sleeves is Not required.

A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 post sleeve, or Joist Mount Post/Trex 4x4 post sleeve*
   NOTE: *» Trex Signature Posts or Trex Signature Joist Mount Posts cannot be used.*
B. 2 x 4 lateral top rail
C. Trex Signature top rail
D. Trex Signature bottom rail
E. Trex Signature balusters
F. Trex Signature Cocktail Rail Bracket**

See page 95 for "How to Install Trex Signature Horizontal Traditional Railing".

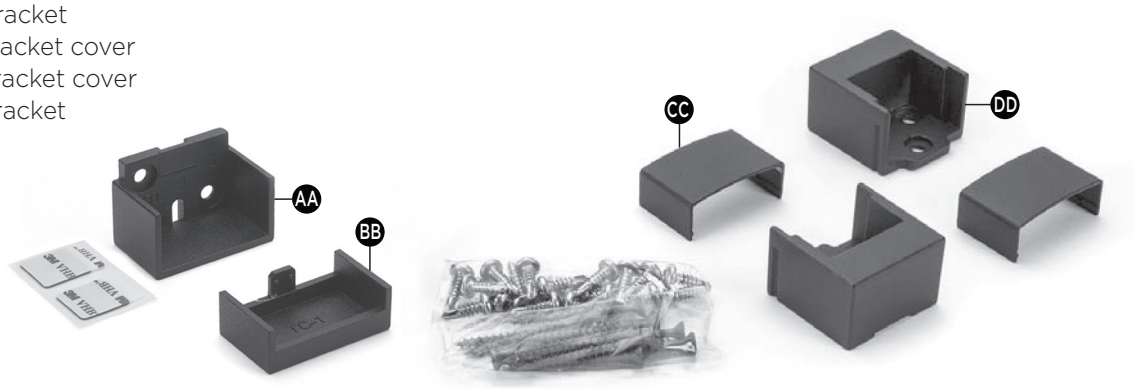
** *Trex Signature Cocktail Rail brackets (sold separately) are for use with either Trex Signature Traditional or Trex Signature Cocktail designs. For a 6′ section, use 4 brackets and screws provided, for 8′ section, use 5 brackets and screws provided.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

BRACKET HARDWARE – HORIZONTAL APPLICATIONS (INCLUDING HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS)
TREX SIGNATURE®

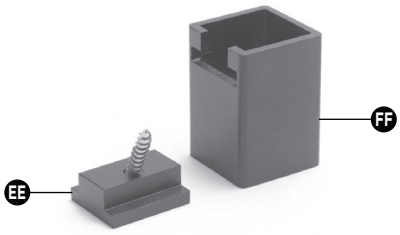
HORIZONTAL RAILING HARDWARE

AA. Lower rail bracket
BB. Lower rail bracket cover
CC. Upper rail bracket cover
DD. Upper rail bracket



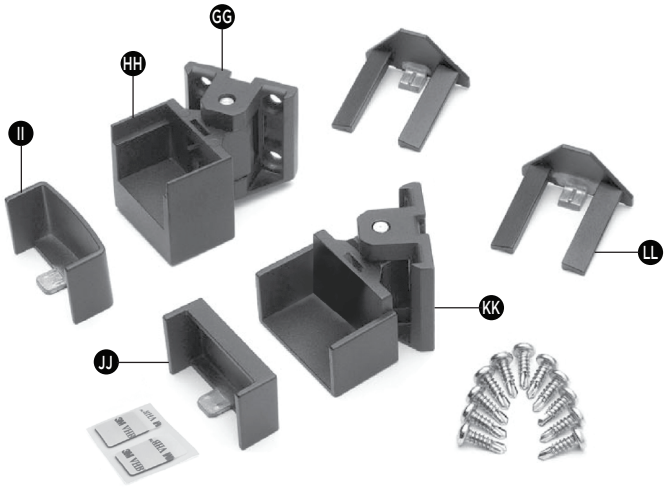
FOOT BLOCK COMPONENTS

EE. Foot Block base
FF. Foot Block support



HORIZONTAL SWIVEL HARDWARE

GG. Swivel base
HH. Horizontal swivel bracket top rail
II. Horizontal swivel bracket top rail cover
JJ. Horizontal swivel bracket bottom rail cover
KK. Horizontal swivel bracket bottom rail
LL. Swivel base cover



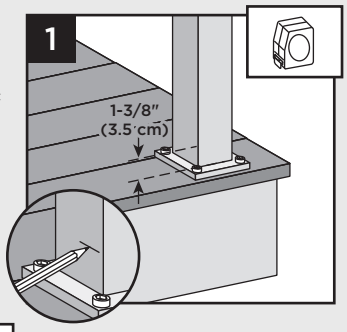
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

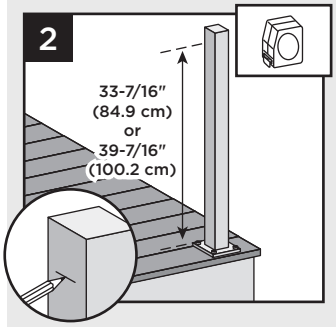
NOTES:
- » *FOR EASE OF INSTALLATION, IT IS RECOMMENDED THAT YOU USE THE TREX SIGNATURE RAIL TEMPLATES TO ATTACH BRACKETS (SOLD SEPARATELY).*
- » *Do not use impact driver when installing Signature Railing, only use standard drill for screw attachment of bracket to posts and rails.*

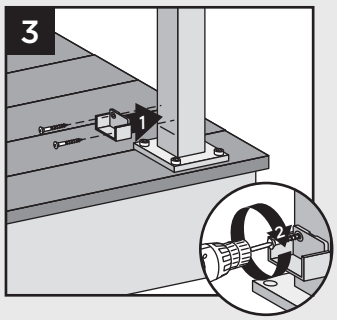
Attach Brackets Using Trex Signature Posts

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-3/8" (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.



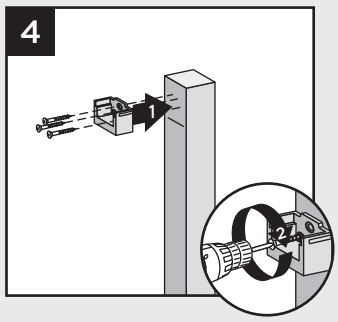




2. Measure up from post base plate 33-7/16" (84.9 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-7/16" (100.2 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

NOTE: If measuring from decking surface, measure up 33-15/16" (86.2 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16" (101.4 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height.

3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using (3) self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

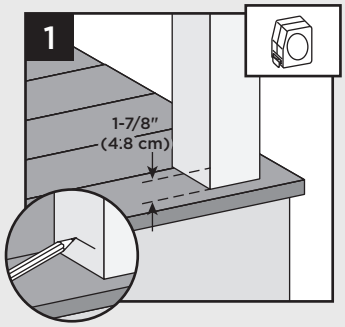


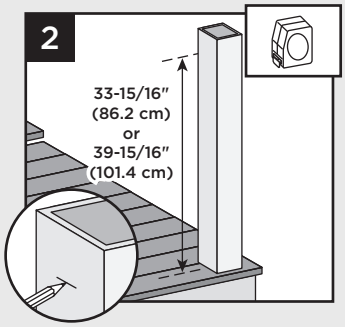
NOTE: *Upper bracket is not required on crossover post configuration.*

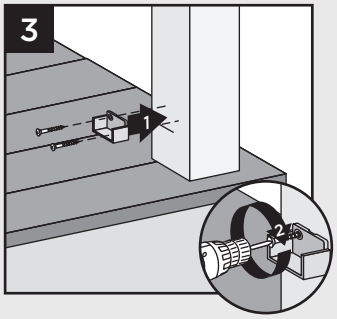
Attach Brackets Using Pressure-Treated Posts and Post Sleeves

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.

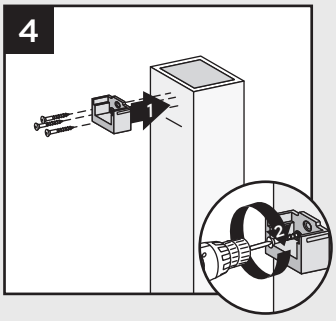






2. Measure up from decking surface 33-15/16" (862 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16" (101.4 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

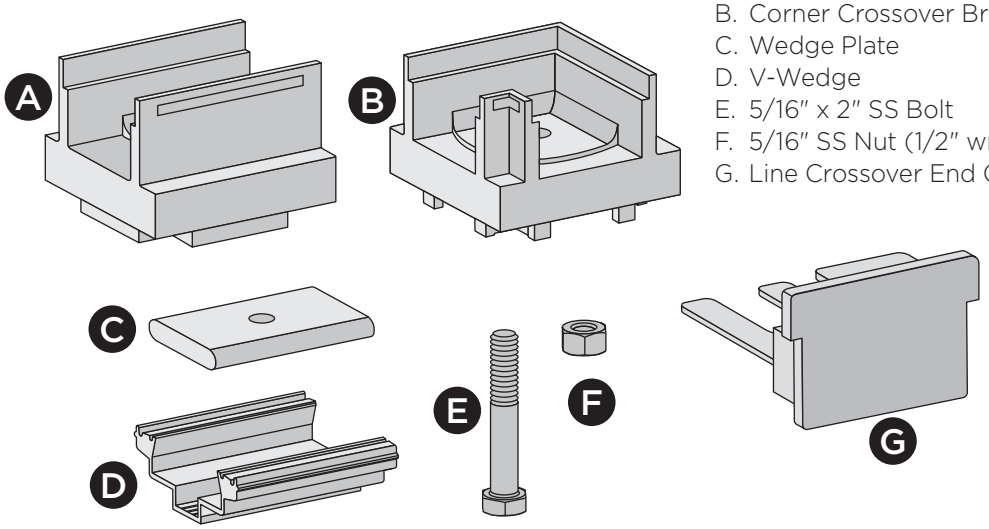
3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two 2" (51 mm) wood screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using three 2" (51 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.



HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL LINE AND CORNER CROSSOVER BRACKETS

TREX SIGNATURE®

PARTS

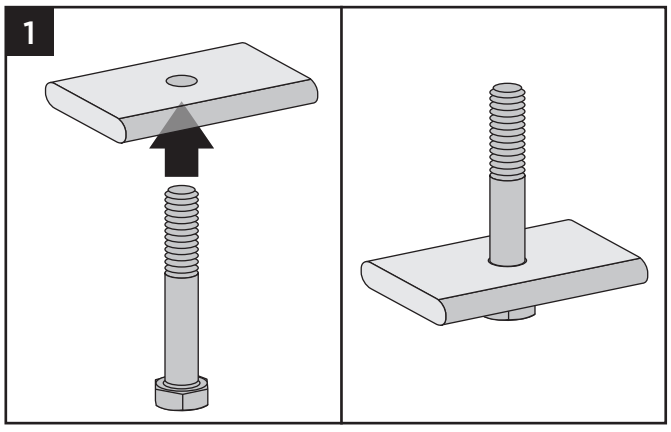


A. Line Crossover Bracket
B. Corner Crossover Bracket
C. Wedge Plate
D. V-Wedge
E. 5/16" x 2" SS Bolt
F. 5/16" SS Nut (1/2" wrench size)
G. Line Crossover End Cap

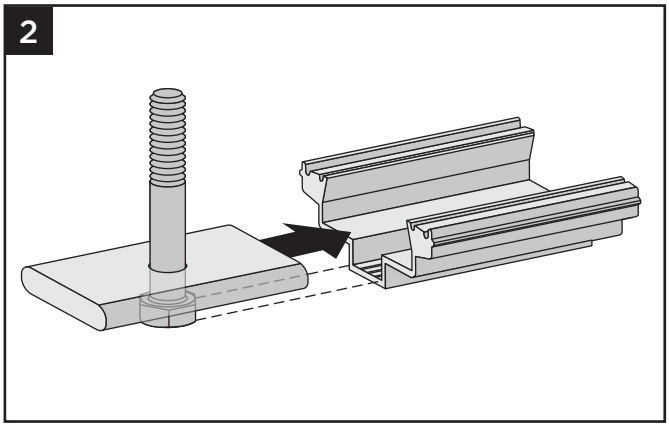
IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING CUTTING SIGNATURE POSTS:

» Signature posts must be cut to proper length when using crossover brackets:
36" rail height – cut post to 34" height (measured from deck surface)
42" rail height – cut post to 40" height (measured from deck surface)

Wedge Plate Assembly



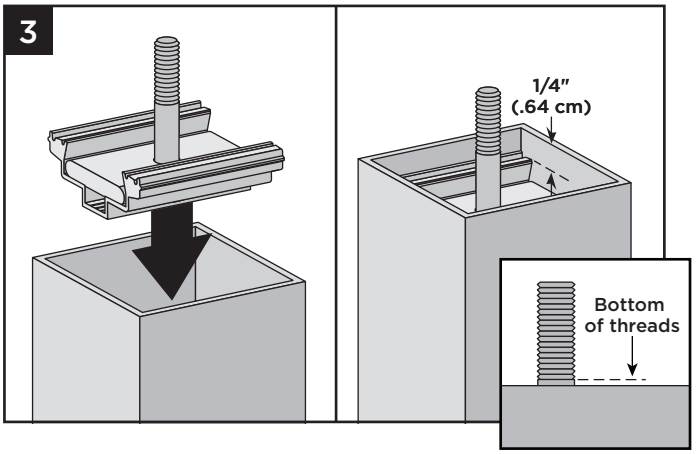
1. Insert the bolt through the hole in wedge plate.



2. Align and insert the wedge plate with bolt into the v-wedge. Slide the wedge plate in until the ends are flush with the ends of the v-wedge.

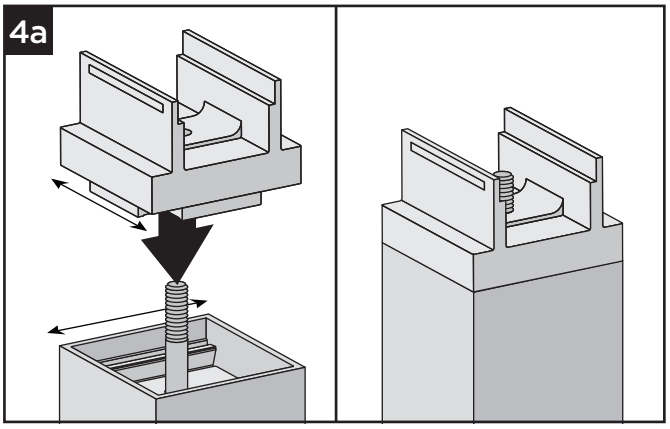
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL LINE AND CORNER CROSSOVER BRACKETS/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Installing Wedge Plate Assembly Into Top of Post



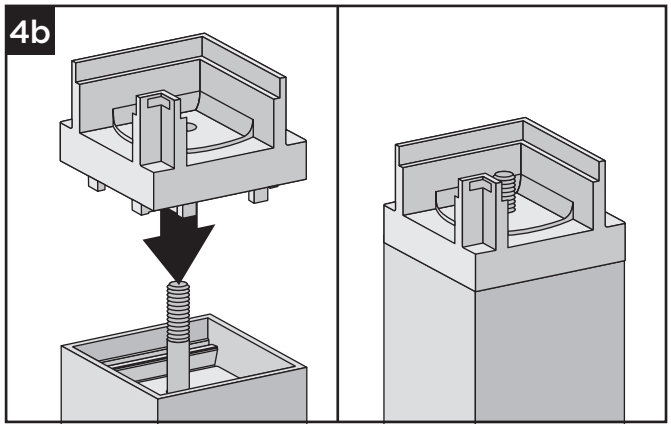
3. Insert assembly (from step 2) into the top of post. Stop when top of v-wedge is about 1/4" into top of post.

Note: *Threads of bolt will be slightly above the end of the post.*

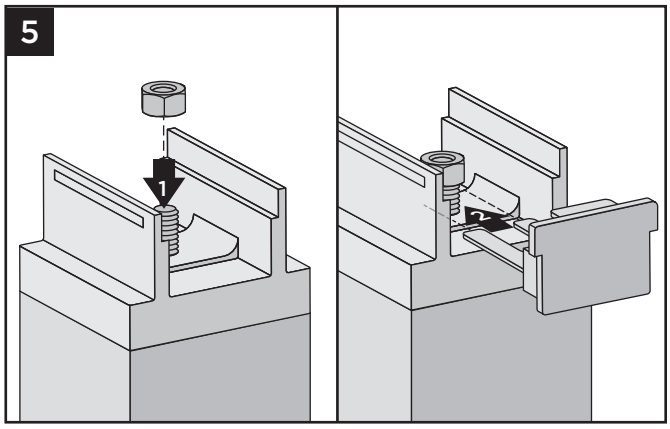


4a. Place the line crossover bracket over the bolt onto the end of the post.

IMPORTANT NOTE: *For Line Crossover Bracket: Align the bracket such that the rail channel is perpendicular (90°) to the length of the wedge plate assembly.*

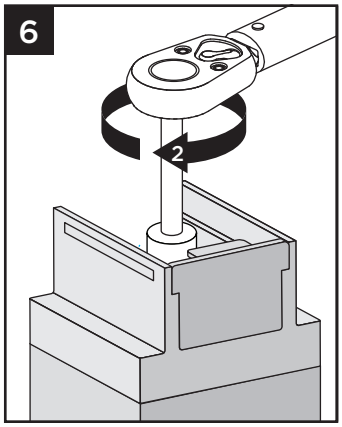


4b. Place the corner crossover bracket over the bolt onto the end of the post.



5. Thread the nut onto the bolt. When attaching crossover end cap, slide u-channel on end cap under the nut until cap is flush with the end of the bracket. End cap is for use with the line crossover bracket only (when terminating a rail at a line crossover post).

6. Tighten the nut to **10 ft·lbs** with a torque wrench with 1/2" socket adapter.

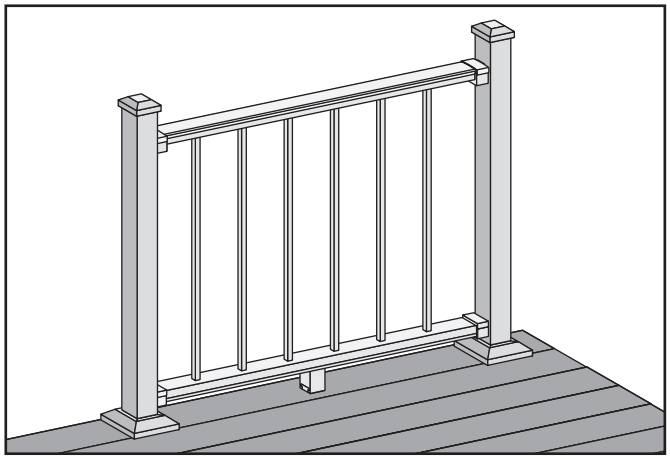


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

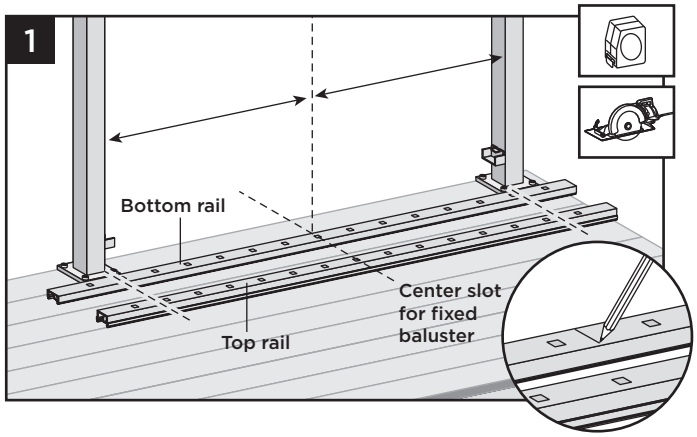
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING POST TO POST
TREX SIGNATURE®

NOTES:

- *TREX SIGNATURE RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A CLEAR SPAN OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M).*
- *IF INSTALLING AT EXACT SPAN LENGTHS OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M), AND USING POST-TO-POST CONFIGURATION, THE BOTTOM RAIL WILL NOT NEED TO BE CUT, BUT THE TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT.*
- *FOR ODD SPAN LENGTHS, BOTH TOP RAIL AND BOTTOM RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT. ENSURE THAT BALUSTERS ARE SPACED WITH AN EQUAL DISTANCE ON EACH SIDE OF THE POST.*
- *WHEN RAILINGS ARE CUT TO ODD SPANS, ALL SPANS GREATER THAN 5′ (1.52 M) (EXAMPLE: 8′ (2.44 M) SPAN CUT INTO ONE 5′ (1.52 M) SPAN AND ONE 3′ (0.91 M) SPAN) WOULD REQUIRE FOOT BLOCK UNDER 5′ (1.52 M) SPAN SINCE SMALLER FIXED BALUSTER IS NO LONGER CENTERED.*



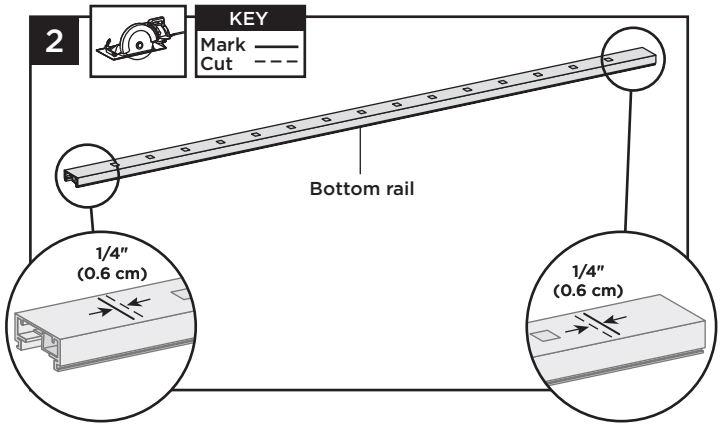
How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top Railings (When Required)



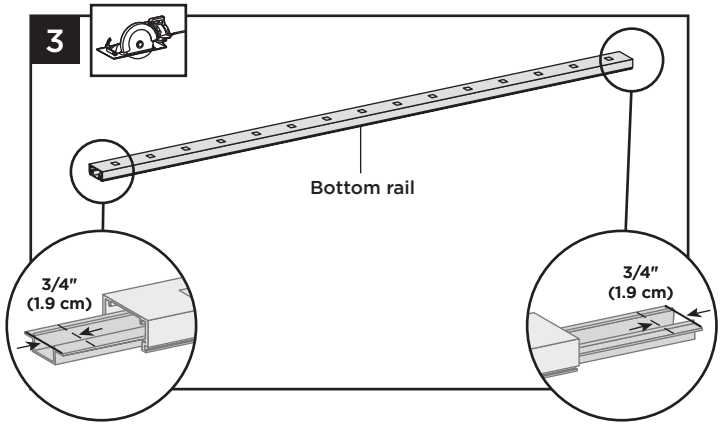
1. Position bottom and top rails between posts and align with bottom bracket. Align the center baluster slot in both rails with the middle of the span between posts.* This will allow an equal number of baluster holes on each side of center slot. Mark bottom rail and top rail at each end (ensure both rails are centered between posts).

* *In some cases, due to odd railing spans, the center baluster may need to be offset in one direction to ensure there is enough room at both post locations for balusters to be placed. Review this BEFORE cutting any railings to ensure all balusters are equally spaced.*

Cutting Bottom Rail and Bottom Rail Cover

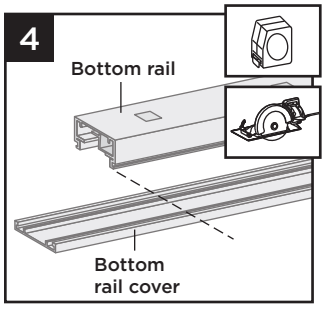


2. Cut each end of bottom rail 1/4″ (0.6 cm) shorter than mark on each end to allow for fit into bottom rail brackets.



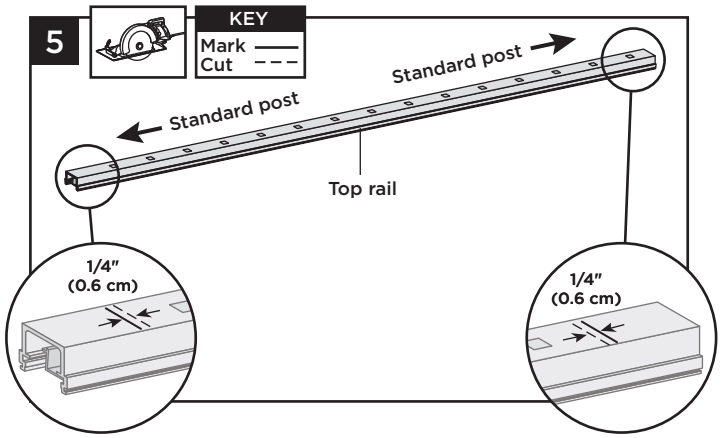
3. Slide rail insert out and cut 3/4″ (19 mm) FROM EACH SIDE of insert, then slide back inside rail and center.

4. Mark and cut bottom rail cover the same length as the bottom rail.



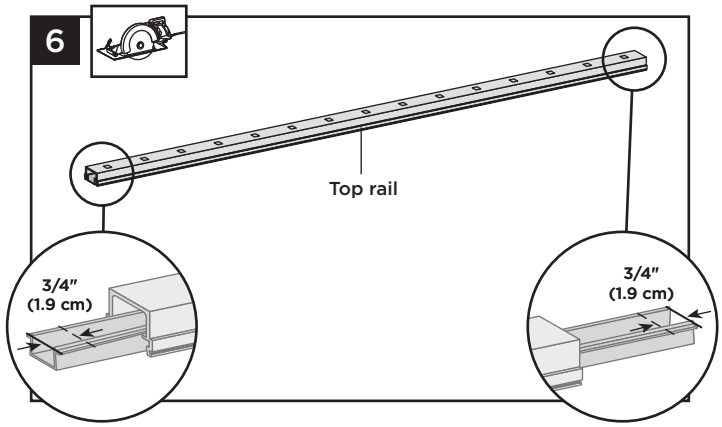
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING POST TO POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Cutting Top Rail

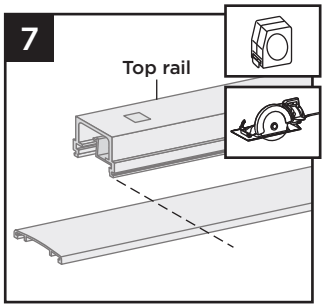


5. Cut each end of top rail 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than mark to allow for fit into top rail brackets.

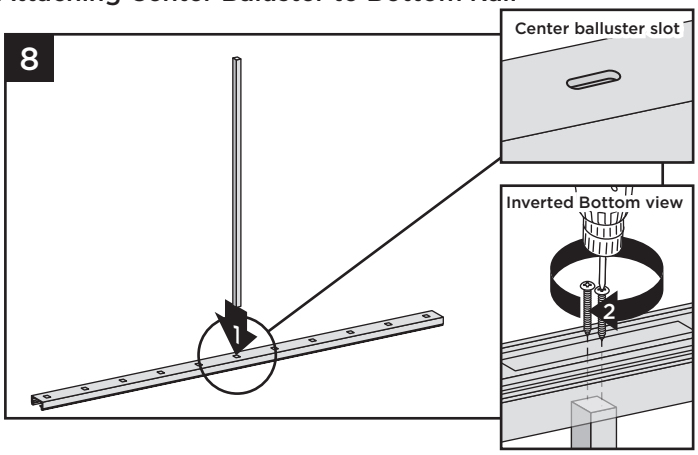
Cutting Top Rail Insert and Cover



6. Slide rail insert out and cut 3/4" (1.9 cm) **FROM EACH SIDE** of insert, then slide back inside rail and center.
7. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.

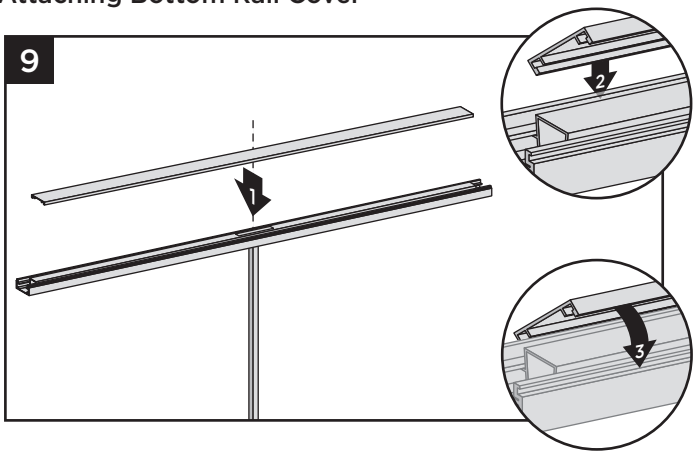


Attaching Center Baluster to Bottom Rail



8. Attach shorter, center baluster in center slot in bottom rail using two #8 x 1-1/4" (3.2 cm) screws *(provided).*

Attaching Bottom Rail Cover

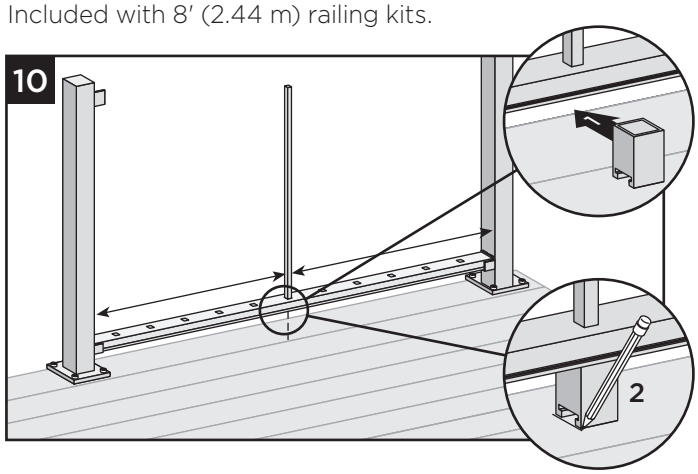


9. Align flat cover on one side of bottom rail in slot on side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail snap cover onto opposing slot working down the length of rail. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

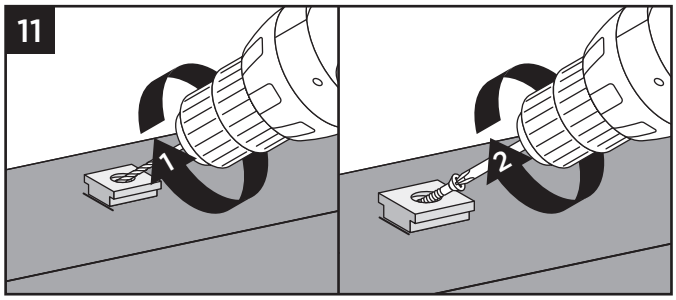
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING POST TO POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Attaching Foot Block (when required)

Required **ONLY** for All Clear Span Applications over 6′ (1.83 m) when shorter fixed baluster is centered, or unsupported spans greater than 5′ (1.52 m) (example: 8′ (2.44 m) span cut into one 5′ (1.52 m) span and one 3′ (0.91 m) span would require Foot Block under 5′ (1.52 m) span since shorter fixed baluster is no longer centered). Included with 8′ (2.44 m) railing kits.

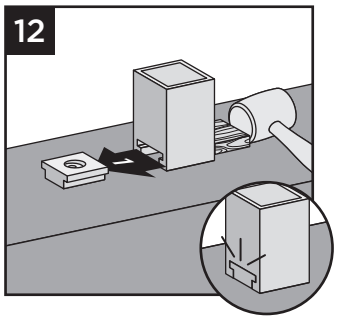


10. Temporarily set bottom rail into bottom brackets, and place Foot Block under center of bottom rail. Mark to provide placement location of base. Remove bottom rail.



11. Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16″ bit. Attach base of Foot Block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

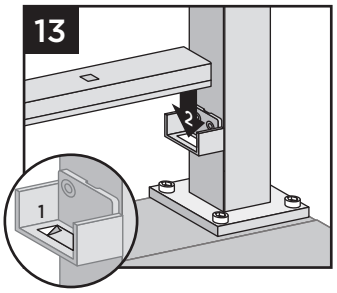
12. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap Foot Block until it locks into place.



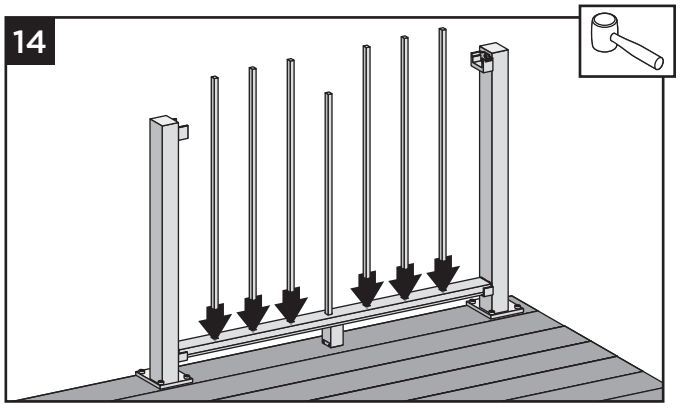
Installing Lower Rail to Brackets

13. Place adhesive strips (provided) into bottom rail brackets, and then place bottom rail into brackets.

NOTE: *Make sure surface is clean and dry.*

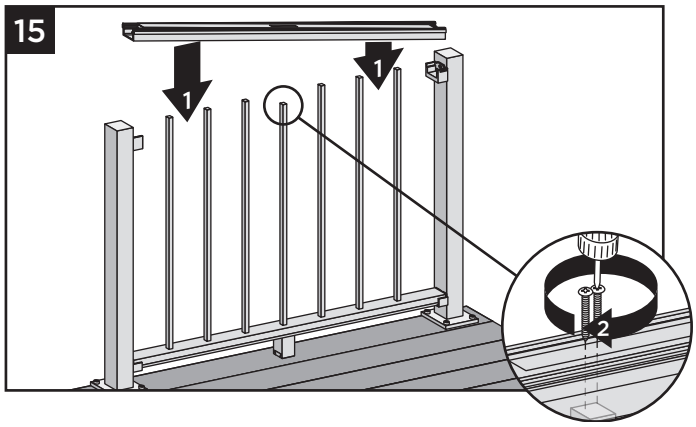


Installing Remaining Balusters into Bottom Rail



14. Place remaining balusters into holes in lower rail by snapping fully into place. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

Attach Upper Railings

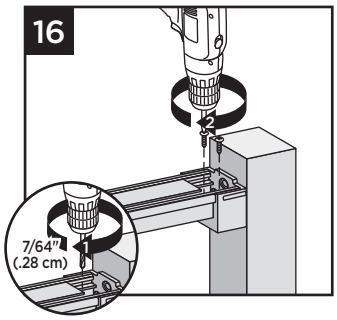


15. Working from one end of upper rail, snap balusters into upper rail working down length of rail. Fasten center baluster into center slot using two #8 x 1-1/4″ (3.2 cm) screws *(provided).*

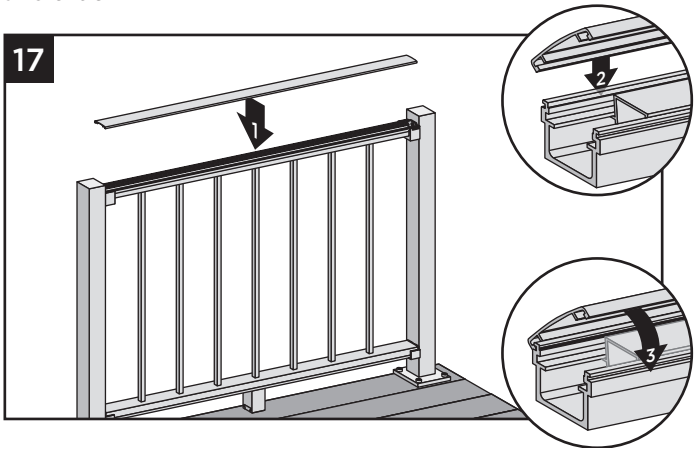
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING POST TO POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

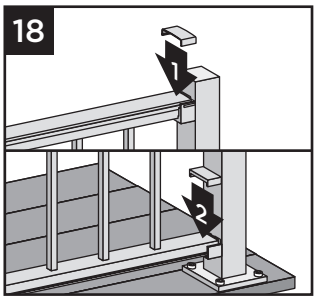
16. Using a 7/64" (0.28 cm) drill bit, pre-drill through railing into bracket as shown for attachment of railing to bracket. Attach upper rail to each bracket by installing screws diagonally through upper rail into bracket using two self-tapping screws each side *(provided)*.

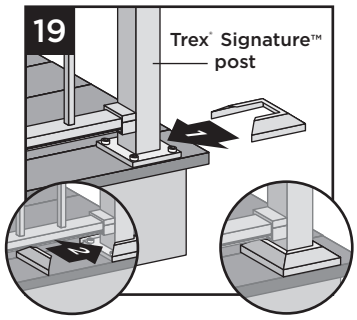


NOTE: *Pre-drilling is required. It's best practice to pre-drill a single hole, then attach screw, and continue in this order.*

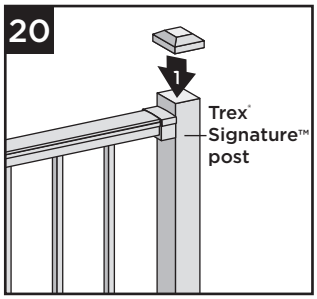


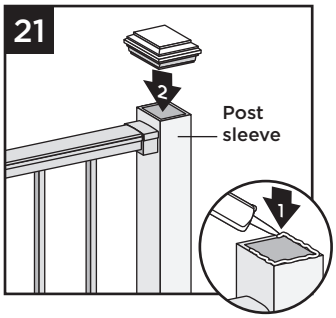
17. Attach "crowned" upper rail cover to upper rail by aligning cover on one side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail, snap cover onto opposing slot working down length of rail. **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.





18. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.
19. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.





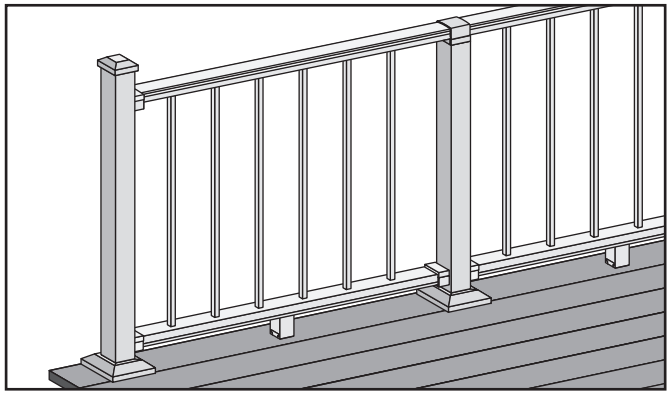
20. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts. (Use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment.)
21. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

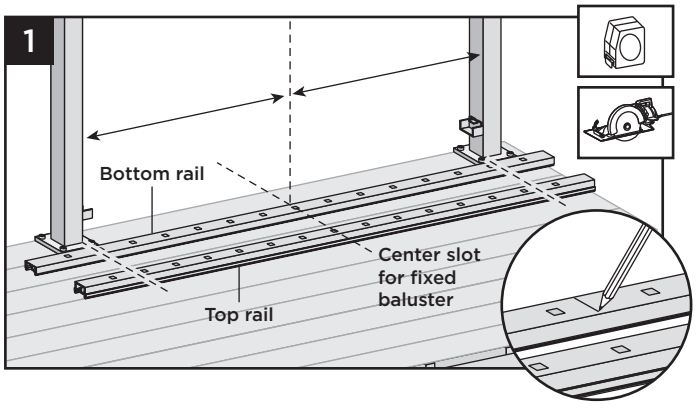
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING POST TO CROSSOVER POST
TREX SIGNATURE®

NOTES:

- *TREX SIGNATURE RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A CLEAR SPAN OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M).*
- *IF INSTALLING AT EXACT SPAN LENGTHS OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M), AND USING POST-TO-CROSSOVER POST CONFIGURATION, THE BOTTOM RAIL WILL NOT NEED TO BE CUT, BUT THE TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT.*
- *AT ALL FINAL END POST CONFIGURATIONS, TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT.*
- *FOR ODD SPAN LENGTHS, BOTH TOP RAIL AND BOTTOM RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT. ENSURE THAT BALUSTERS ARE SPACED WITH AN EQUAL DISTANCE ON EACH SIDE OF THE POST.*
- *WHEN RAILINGS ARE CUT TO ODD SPANS, ALL SPANS GREATER THAN 5′ (1.52 M) (EXAMPLE: 8′ (2.44 M) SPAN CUT INTO ONE 5′ (1.52 M) SPAN AND ONE 3′ (0.91 M) SPAN) WOULD REQUIRE FOOT BLOCK UNDER 5′ (1.52 M) SPAN SINCE SMALLER FIXED BALUSTER IS NO LONGER CENTERED.*



How to Measure, Mark and Cut Bottom and Top Railings (When Required)

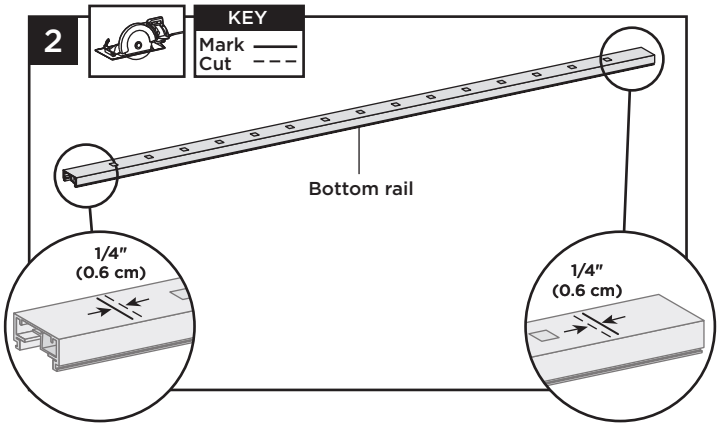


Important: DO NOT cut top rail the same length as bottom rail.

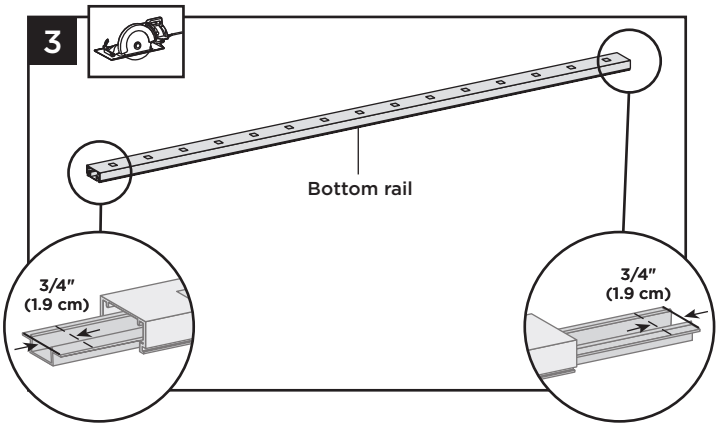
1. Position bottom and top rails between posts and align with bottom bracket. Align the center baluster slot in both rails with the middle of the span between posts.* This will allow an equal number of baluster holes on each side of center slot. Mark bottom rail and top rail at each end (ensure both rails are centered between posts).

* *In some cases, due to odd railing spans, the center baluster may need to be offset in one direction to ensure there is enough room at both post locations for balusters to be placed. Review this BEFORE cutting any railings to ensure all balusters are equally spaced.*

Cutting Bottom Rail and Bottom Rail Cover ONLY

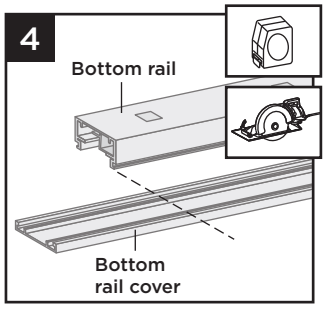


2. Cut each end of bottom rail 1/4″ (0.6 cm) shorter than mark on each end to allow for fit into bottom rail brackets.



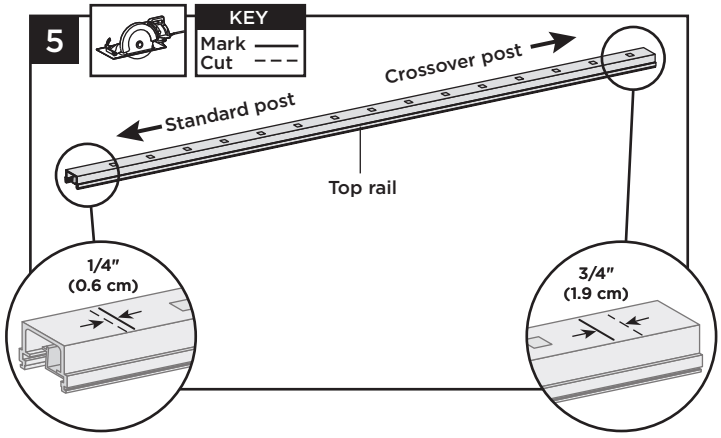
3. Slide rail insert out and cut 3/4″ (1.9 cm) FROM EACH SIDE of insert, then slide back inside rail and center.

4. Mark and cut bottom rail cover the same length as bottom rail.



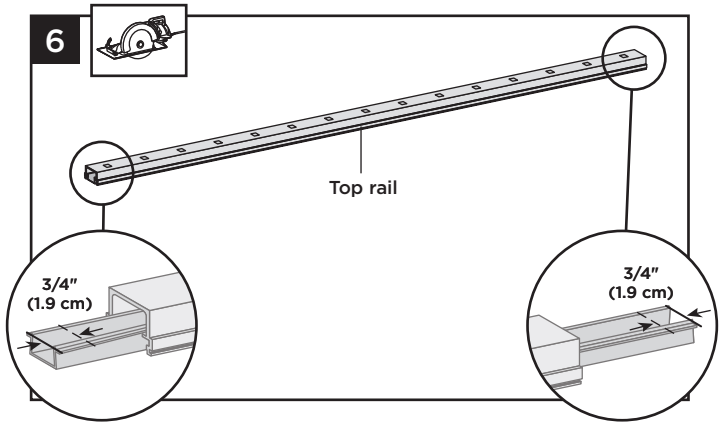
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING POST TO CROSSOVER POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Cutting Top Rail

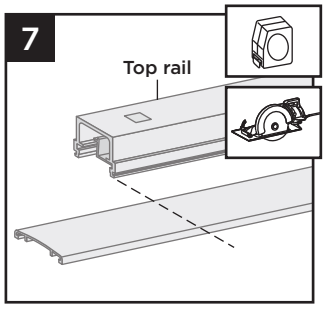


5. Top rail must be cut differently on each side of the rail. Railing side that attaches to standard post should be cut 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than the mark to allow for fit into top rail bracket. Railing side that attaches to the crossover post should be cut 3/4" (1.9 cm) **LONGER** than the mark to allow for fit into the crossover post bracket.

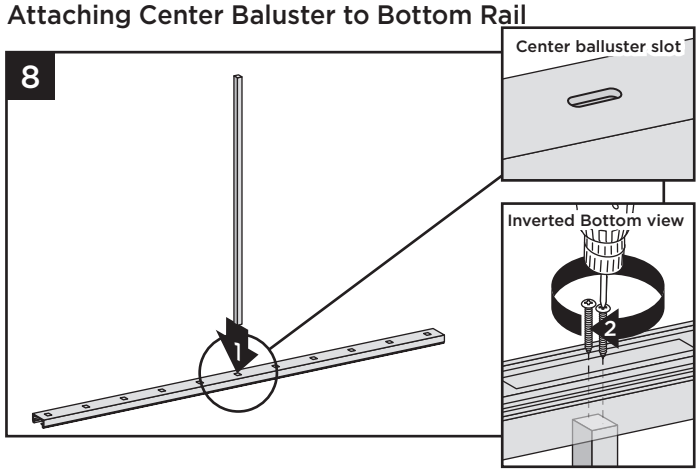
Cutting Top Rail Insert and Cover



6. Slide rail insert out and cut 3/4" (1.9 cm) **FROM EACH SIDE** of insert, then slide back inside rail and center.
7. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.

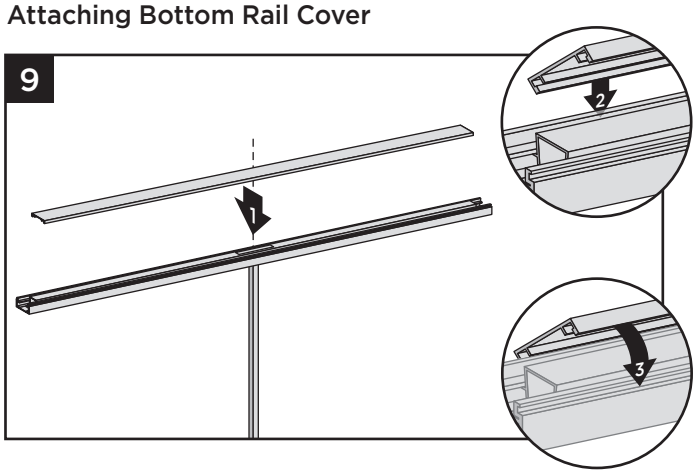


Attaching Center Baluster to Bottom Rail



8. Attach shorter, center baluster in center slot in bottom rail using two #8 x 1-1/4" (3.2 cm) screws *(provided).*

Attaching Bottom Rail Cover



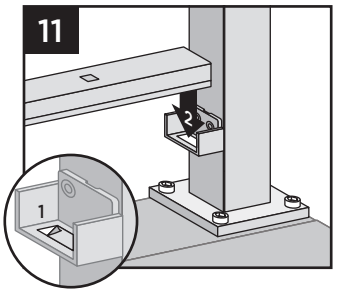
9. Align flat cover on one side of bottom rail in slot on side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail snap cover onto opposing slot working down the length of rail. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

10. **Attaching Foot Block (when required)**
See instructions on page 85.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING POST TO CROSSOVER POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

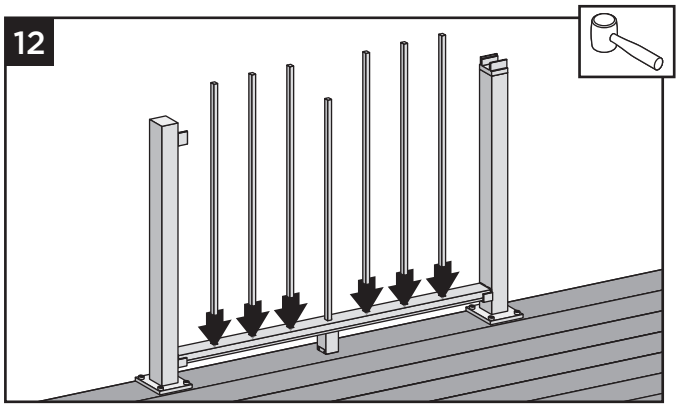
Installing Lower Rail to Brackets

11. Place adhesive strips (provided) into bottom rail brackets, and then place bottom rail into brackets.



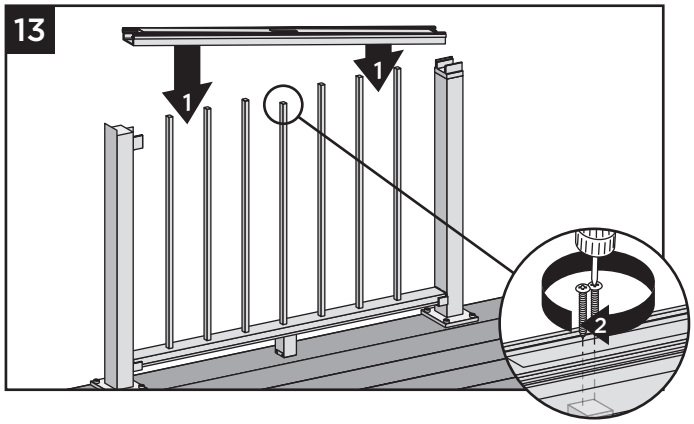
NOTE: *Make sure surface is clean and dry.*

Installing Remaining Balusters into Bottom Rail

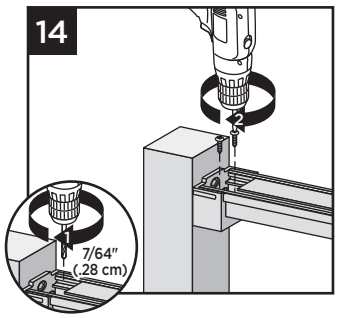


12. Place remaining balusters into holes in lower rail by snapping fully into place. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

Attach Upper Railings

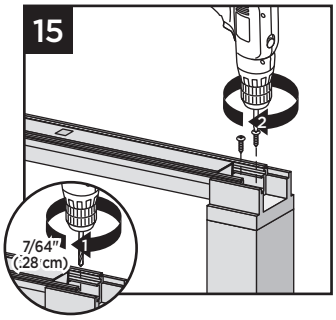


13. Working from one end of upper rail, snap balusters into upper rail working down length of rail. Fasten center baluster into center slot using two #8 x 1-1/4" (3.2 cm) screws *(provided).*



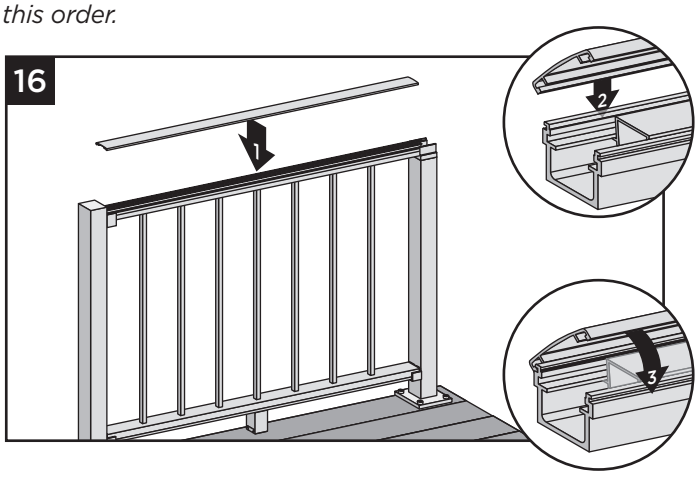
14. At post location, using a 7/64" (0.28 cm) drill bit, pre-drill through railing into bracket as shown for attachment of railing to bracket. Attach fasten upper rail to each bracket by installing screws diagonally through upper rail into bracket using two self-tapping screws each side *(provided)*.

NOTE: *Pre-drilling required. It's best practice to pre-drill a single hole, then attach screw, and continue in this order.*



15. At crossover post location, using a 7/64" (0.28 cm) drill bit, pre-drill through railing into bracket as shown for attachment of railing to crossover post bracket. Attach fasten upper rail to crossover post bracket by installing screws diagonally through upper rail into post using two self-tapping screws each side *(provided)*.

NOTE: *Pre-drilling is required. It's best practice to pre-drill a single hole, then attach screw, and continue in this order.*

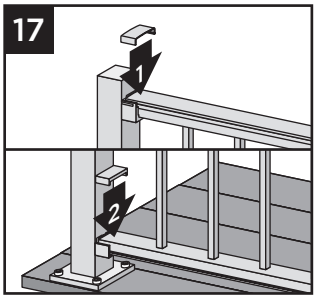


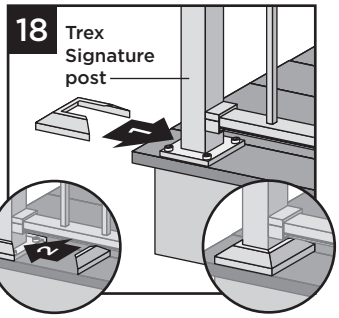
16. Attach "crowned" upper rail cover to upper rail by aligning cover on one side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail, snap cover onto opposing slot working down length of rail. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

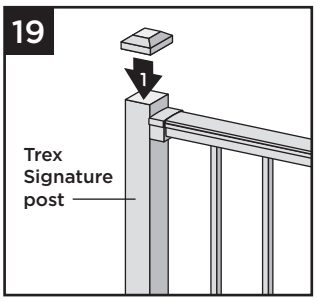
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING POST TO CROSSOVER POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

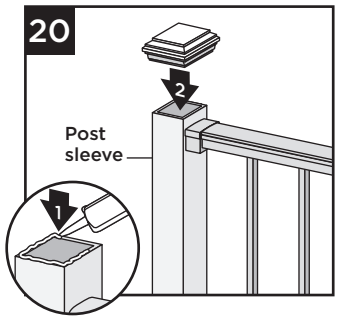
Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps



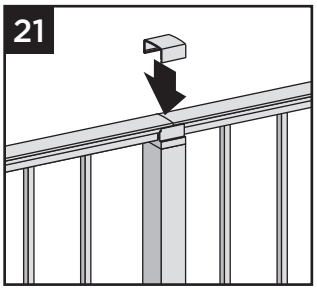


17. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.
18. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.





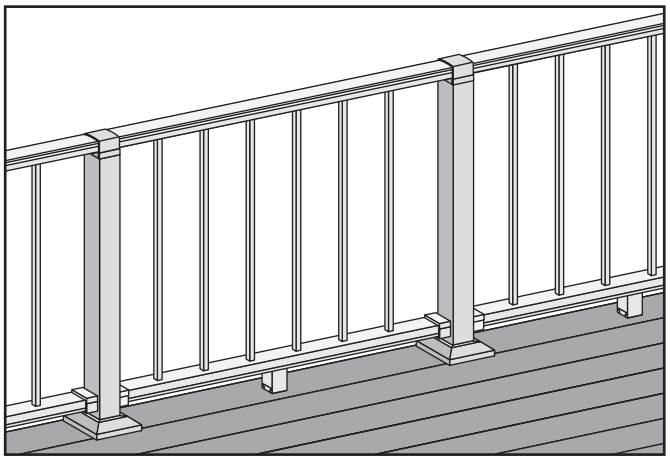
19. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts. (Use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment.)
20. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).
21. For crossover post configuration, attach crossover post cap to crossover post.



HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING CROSSOVER POST TO CROSSOVER POST
TREX SIGNATURE®

NOTES:

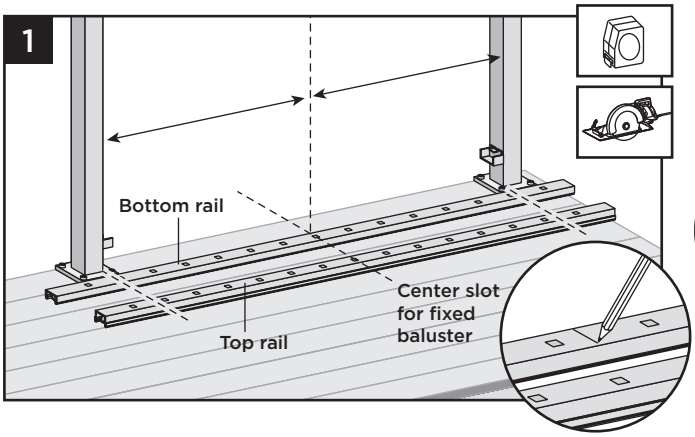
- *TREX SIGNATURE RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A CLEAR SPAN OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M).*
- *IF INSTALLING AT EXACT SPAN LENGTHS OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M), AND USING POST-TO-CROSSOVER POST CONFIGURATION, THE BOTTOM RAIL WILL NOT NEED TO BE CUT, BUT THE TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT.*
- *FOR ODD SPAN LENGTHS, BOTH TOP RAIL AND BOTTOM RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED (MAKING SURE BALUSTERS LINE UP VERTICALLY) AND CUT. ENSURE THAT BALUSTERS ARE SPACED WITH AN EQUAL DISTANCE ON EACH SIDE OF THE POST.*
- *WHEN RAILINGS ARE CUT TO ODD SPANS, ALL SPANS GREATER THAN 5′ (1.52 M) (EXAMPLE: 8′ (2.44 M) SPAN CUT INTO ONE 5′ (1.52 M) SPAN AND ONE 3′ (0.91 M) SPAN) WOULD REQUIRE FOOT BLOCK UNDER 5′ (1.52 M) SPAN SINCE SMALLER FIXED BALUSTER IS NO LONGER CENTERED.*



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING CROSSOVER POST TO CROSSOVER POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

How to Measure, Mark and Cut Bottom and Top Railings (When Required)

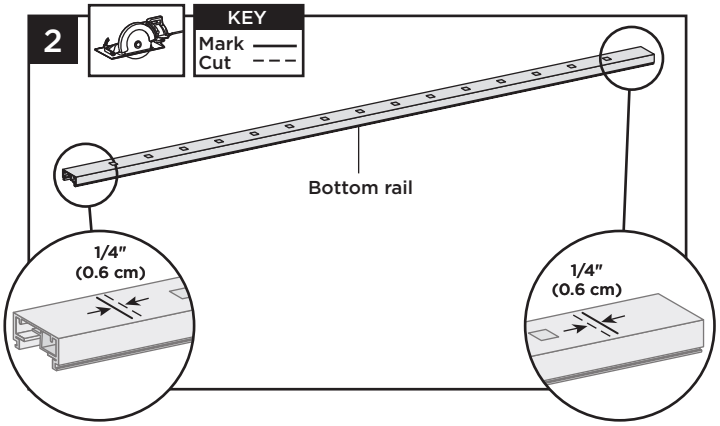


Important: DO NOT cut top rail the same length as bottom rail.

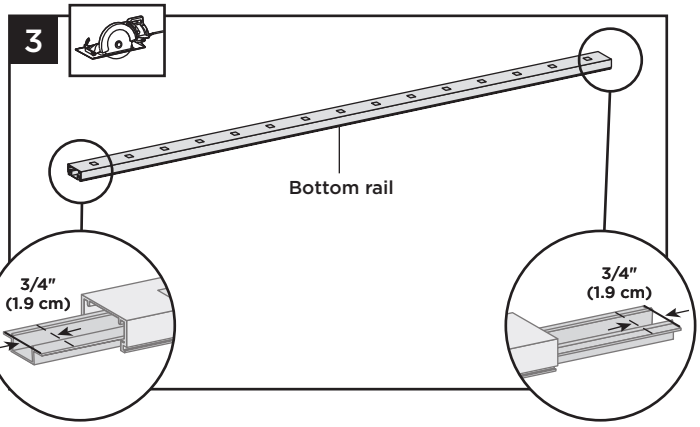
1. Position bottom and top rails between posts and align with bottom bracket. Align the center baluster slot in both rails with the middle of the span between posts.* This will allow an equal number of baluster holes on each side of center slot. Mark bottom rail and top rail at each end (ensure both rails are centered between posts).

* *In some cases, due to odd railing spans, the center baluster may need to be offset in one direction to ensure there is enough room at both post locations for balusters to be placed. Review this **BEFORE** cutting any railings to ensure all balusters are equally spaced.*

Cutting Bottom Rail and Bottom Rail Cover ONLY

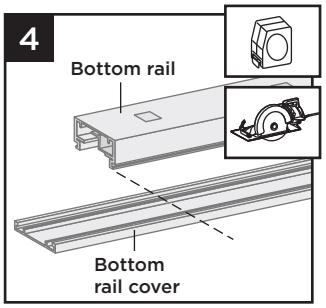


2. Cut each end of bottom rail 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than mark on each end to allow for fit into bottom rail brackets.

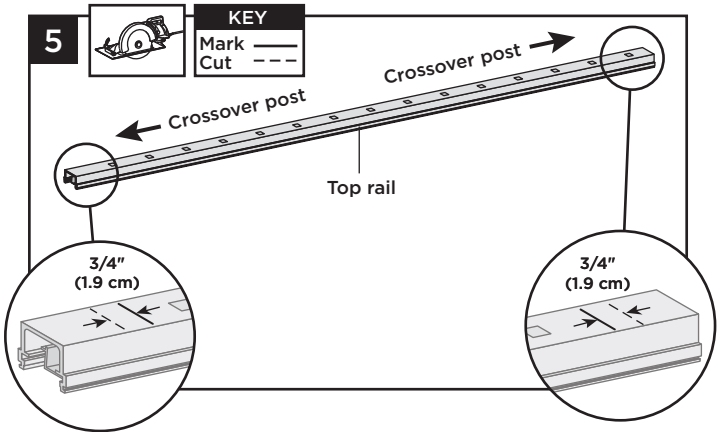


3. Slide rail insert out and cut 3/4" (1.9 cm) **FROM EACH SIDE** of insert, then slide back inside rail and center.

4. Mark and cut bottom rail cover same length as bottom rail.



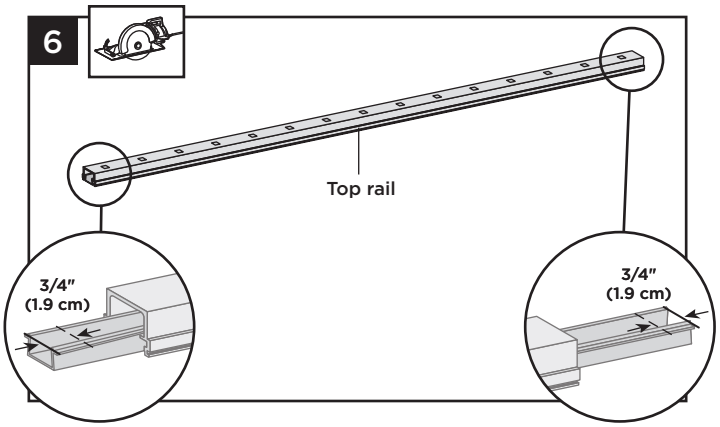
Cutting Top Rail



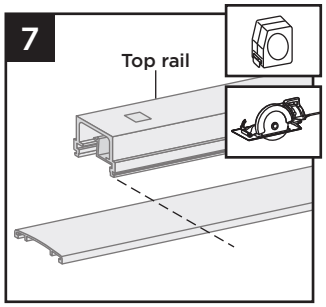
5. Cut each end of top rail 3/4" (1.9 cm) **LONGER** than the mark to allow for fit into the crossover post bracket on each side.

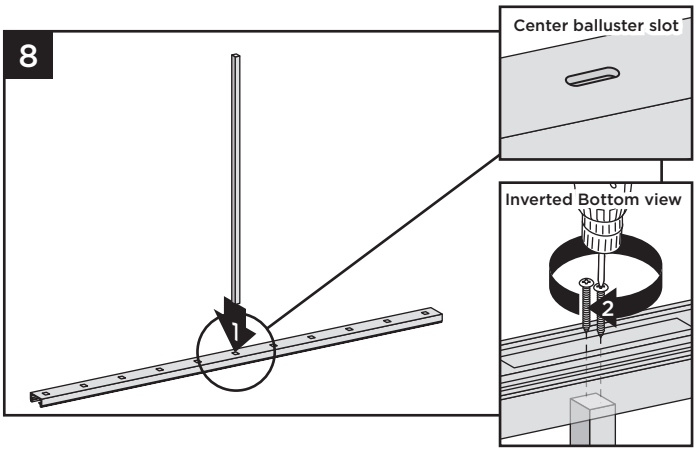
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING CROSSOVER POST TO CROSSOVER POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Cutting Top Rail Insert and Cover



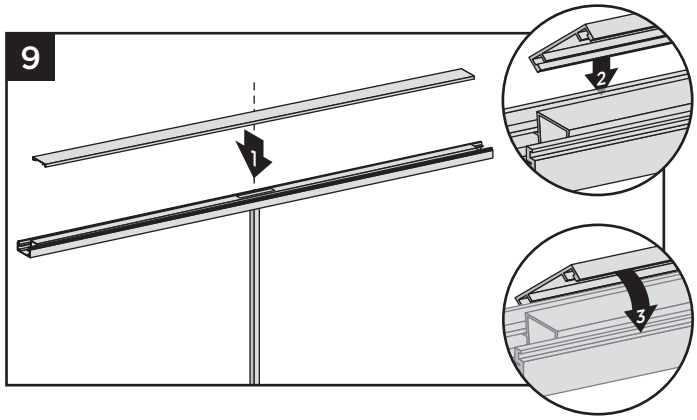
6. Slide rail insert out and cut 3/4" (1.9 cm) **FROM EACH SIDE** of insert, then slide back inside rail and center.
7. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.





8. Attach shorter, center baluster in center slot in bottom rail using two #8 x 1-1/4" (3.2 cm) screws *(provided).*

Attaching Bottom Rail Cover and Bottom Rail to Brackets



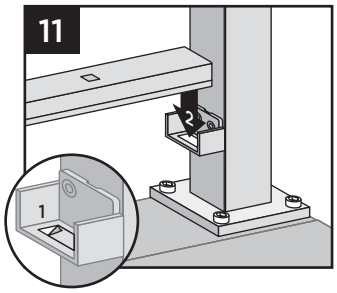
9. Align flat cover on one side of bottom rail in slot on side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail snap cover onto opposing slot working down the length of rail. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

10. **Attaching Foot Block (when required)**
See instructions on page 85.

Installing Lower Rail to Brackets

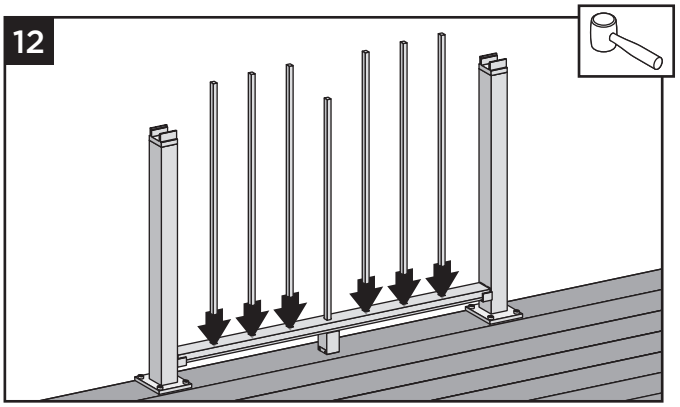
11. Place adhesive strips (provided) into bottom rail brackets, and then place bottom rail into brackets.

NOTE: *Make sure surface is clean and dry.*



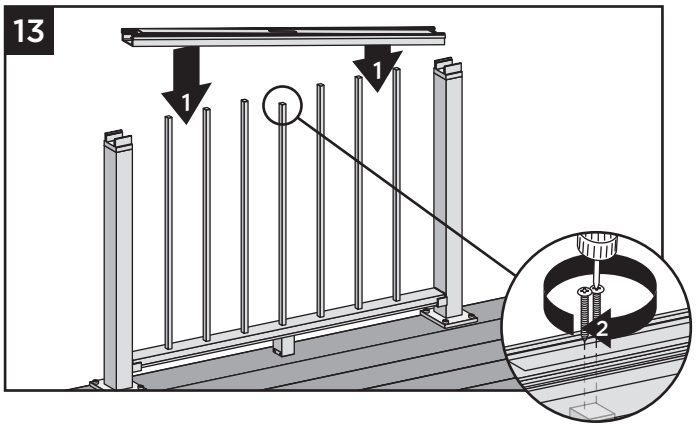
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING CROSSOVER POST TO CROSSOVER POST/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Installing Remaining Balusters into Bottom Rail



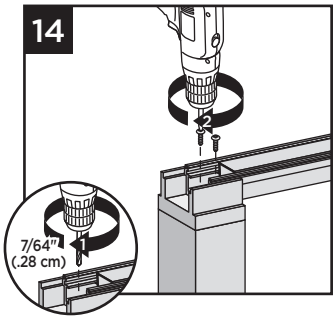
12. Place remaining balusters into holes in lower rail by snapping fully into place. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

Attach Upper Railings

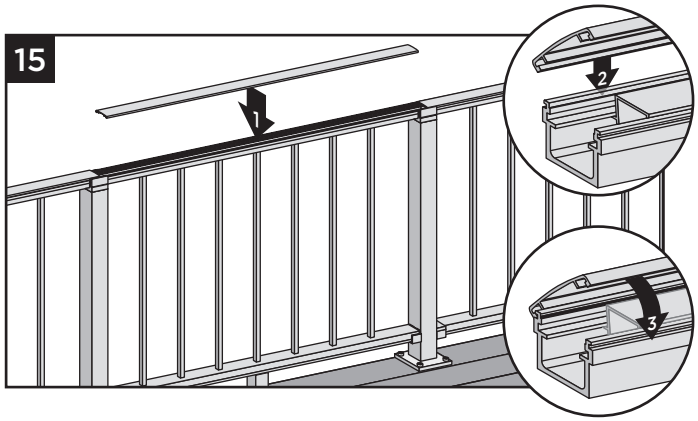


13. Working from one end of upper rail, snap balusters into upper rail working down length of rail. Fasten center baluster into center slot using two #8 x 1-1/4" (3.2 cm) screws *(provided).*

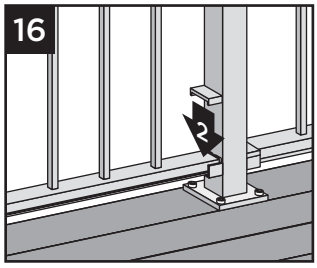
14. At crossover post locations using a 7/64" (0.28 cm) drill bit, pre-drill through railing into bracket as shown for attachment of railing to crossover post bracket. Attach fasten upper rail to crossover post by installing screws diagonally through upper rail into post using two self-tapping screws each side *(provided)*.

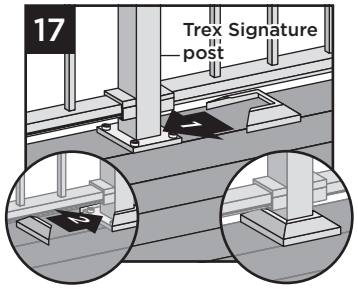


NOTE: *Pre-drilling is required. It's best practice to pre-drill a single hole, then attach screw, and continue in this order.*



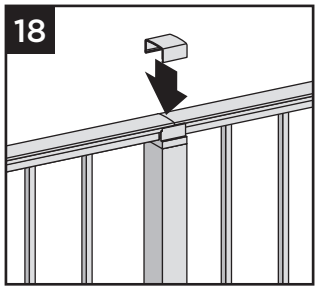
15. Attach "crowned" upper rail cover to upper rail by aligning cover on one side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail, snap cover onto opposing slot working down length of rail. **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.





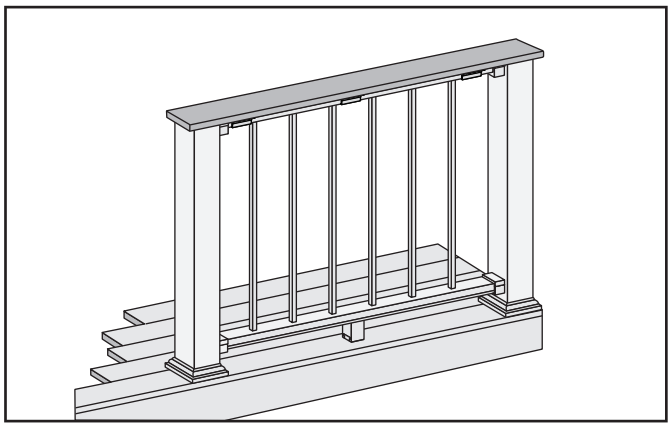
Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps

16. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in bottom rails.
17. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.
18. Attach crossover post cap to crossover post.



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® COCKTAIL RAILING



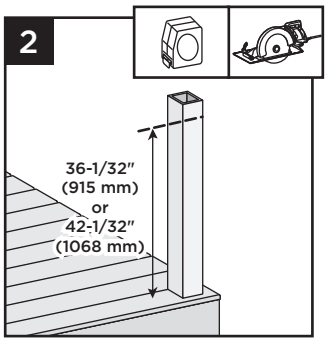
IMPORTANT NOTE:

» ***ONLY for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4x4(102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve. Trex Signature posts, Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Cocktail railing. Cutting post and post sleeve only apply to the Cocktail style railing.***

1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeves,and Skirts to Use with Trex Signature Railing**
   See instructions on page 77.

Cutting Post and Post Sleeve

2. Mark and cut post and post sleeve measuring from deck surface:
   » 36-1/32" (915 mm) for 36" (914 mm) height.
   » 42-1/32" (1068 mm) for 42" (1067 mm) height.



3. **Installing Horizontal Fixed Brackets**
   See instructions on page 80.

4. **Installing Horizontal Swivel Brackets**
   See instructions on page 97.

5. **Cutting Railings for Horizontal Fixed Brackets**
   See instructions on page 83 - Post-to-Post, page 87 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 90 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

6. **Cutting Railings for Horizontal Swivel Brackets**
   See instructions on page 98.

7. **Attaching Center Baluster to Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 84 - Post-to-Post, page 88 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 92 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

8. **Attaching Foot Block (when required)**
   See instructions on page 85.

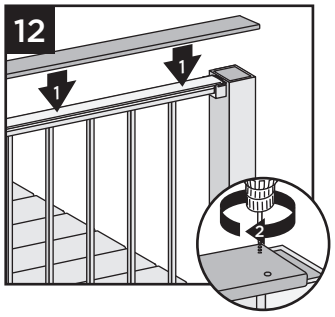
9. **Attaching Bottom Rail Cover and Bottom Rail to Brackets**
   See instructions on page 84 - Post-to-Post, page 88 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 92 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

10. **Installing Remaining Balusters into Bottom Rail**
    See instructions on page 85 - Post-to-Post, page 89 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 93 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

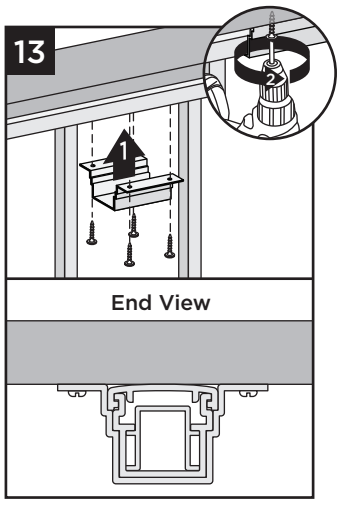
11. **Attaching Top Rail and Top Rail Cover**
    See instructions on page 86 - Post-to-Post, page 89 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 93 - Crossover Post to-Crossover Post.

NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

12. **Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail**
    Place deck boards (***DO NOT*** use Enhance deck boards for top rail) over top rails. Attach boards on each post with Trex-recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per each board end).



13. Secure boards to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.

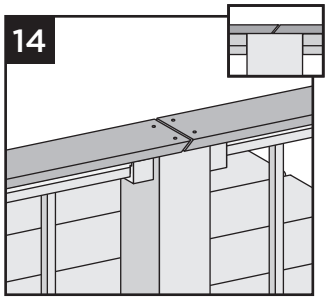


NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® COCKTAIL RAILING/CONTINUED

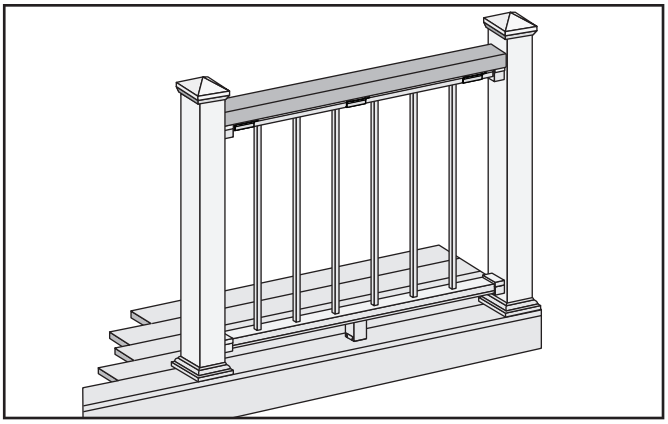
14. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.

NOTES:
- *Leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*
- *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*



15. **Attachment of Bottom Bracket Covers and Skirts**
See instructions on page 86.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® TRADITIONAL RAILING



Important: Only use for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5" nominal square), Trex Post Mounts or Joist Mount Posts and 4x4 (102 mm x 102 mm) or 6x6 post sleeve. Trex Signature Posts and Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Traditional railing.

1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts to Use with Trex Signature Railing**
See instructions on page 77.

2. **Installing Horizontal Fixed Brackets**
See instructions on page 80.

3. **Installing Horizontal Swivel Brackets**
See instructions on page 97.

4. **Cutting Railings for Horizontal Fixed Brackets**
See instructions on page 83 - Post-to-Post, page 87 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 90 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

5. **Cutting Railings for Horizontal Swivel Brackets**
See instructions on page 98.

6. **Attaching Center Baluster to Bottom Rail**
See instructions on page 84 - Post-to-Post, page 88- Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 92 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

7. **Attaching Foot Block (when required)**
See instructions on page 85.

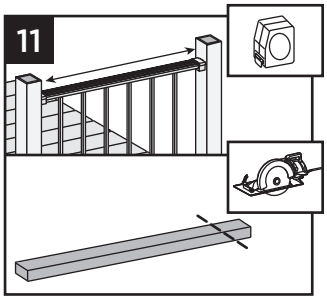
8. **Attaching Bottom Rail Cover and Bottom Rail to Brackets**
See instructions on page 84 - Post-to-Post, page 88 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 92 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

9. **Installing Remaining Balusters into Bottom Rail**
See instructions on page 85 - Post-to-Post, page 89 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 93 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

10. **Attaching Top Rail and Top Rail Cover**
See instructions on page 86 - Post-to-Post, page 89 - Post-to-Crossover Post, or page 93 - Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post.

NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

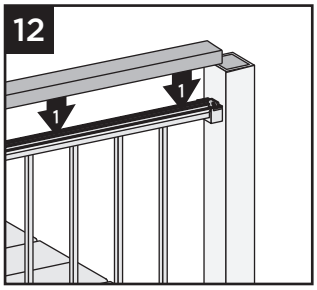
11. **Attaching 2x4 to Top Rail**
Measure between posts and cut 2x4 to length.



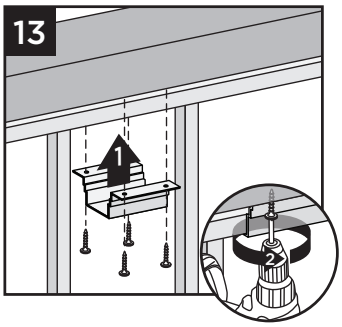
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® TRADITIONAL RAILING/CONTINUED

12. Place 2 x 4 on Trex Signature top rail.

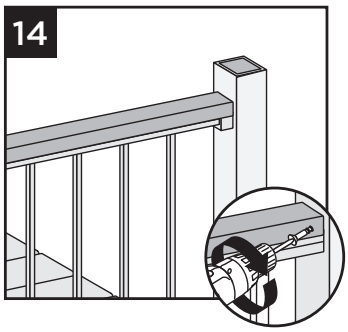


13. Secure 2 x 4 (to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

14. Pre-drill and toenail 2-1/2" (6.4 cm) approved deck screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



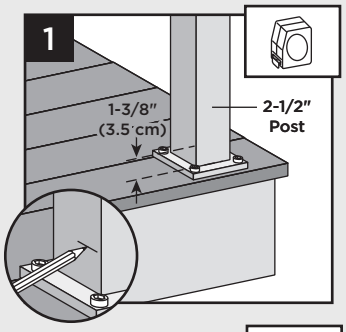
15. **Attachment of Bottom Rail Bracket Covers and Caps**
See instructions on page 86.

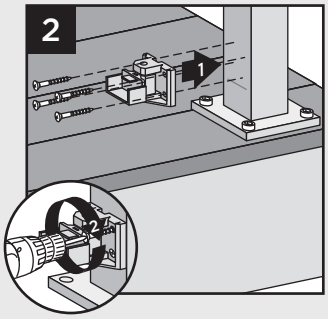
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS
TREX SIGNATURE® STANDARD

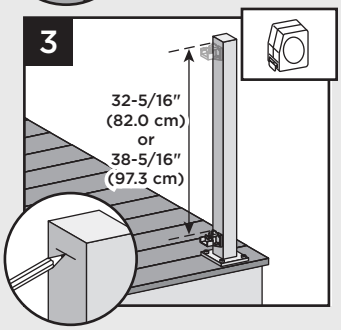
Attach Swivel Brackets Base Using Trex Signature Posts

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

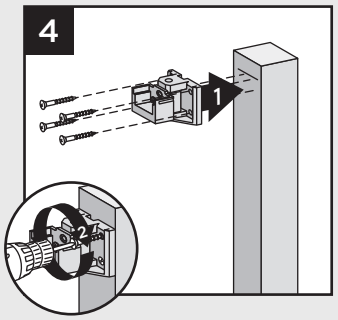
1. Measure 1-3/8" (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.







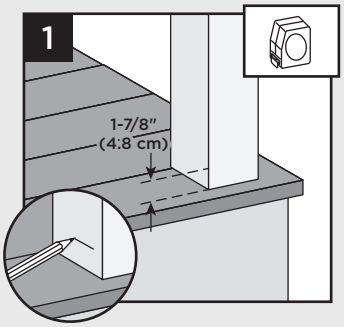
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.
3. Measure up 32-5/16" (82.0 cm) for 36" (91.4 cm) tall railing or 38-5/16" (97.3 cm) for 42" (106.7 cm) tall railing from top of lower rail bracket. Mark with a light line.
4. Center upper bracket on post **below** marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

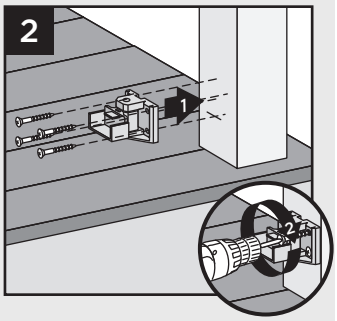


***NOTE:** Upper bracket is not required on crossover post configuration.*

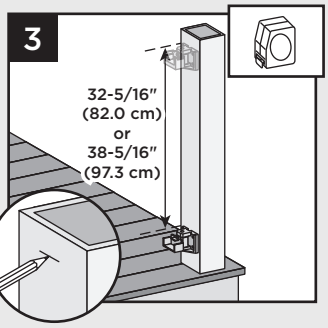
Attach Swivel Brackets Using Pressure-Treated Posts and Post Sleeves

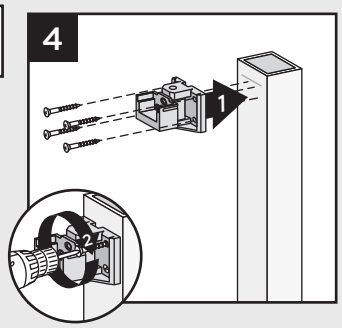
TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.





1. Measure 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four 2" (5.1 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.





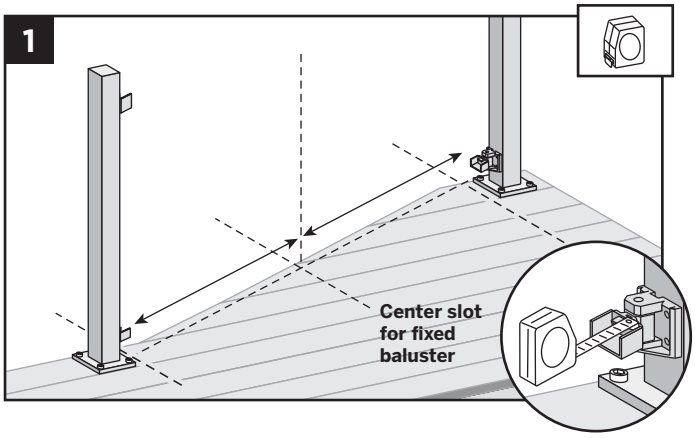
3. Measure up 32-5/16" (82.0 cm) for 36" (91.4 cm) tall railing or 38-5/16" (97.3 cm) for 42" (106.7 cm) tall railing from top of lower rail bracket. Mark with a light line.
4. Center upper bracket on post **below** marked line and attach using four 2" (5.1 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL SWIVEL RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE® STANDARD

NOTES:

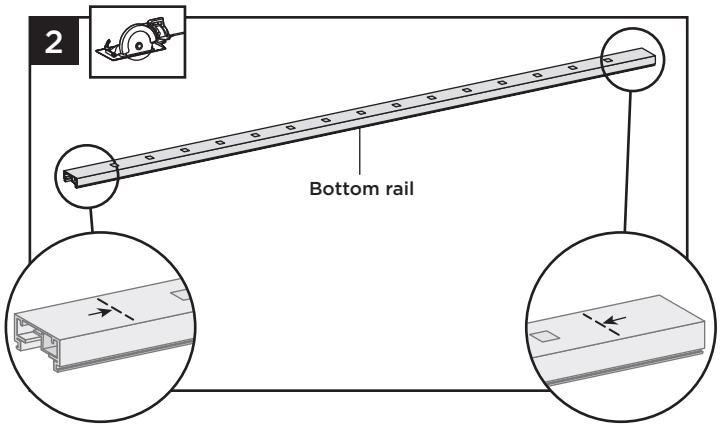
- *WHEN USING TREX SIGNATURE HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS, BOTH BOTTOM AND TOP RAILS WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED AND CUT TO APPROPRIATE LENGTHS.*
- *HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS CAN BE USED UP TO A 50° ANGLE FOR TREX SIGNATURE RAILINGS.*
- *WHEN USING HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS VERY IMPORTANT TO LAY OUT LOCATION AND ORIENTATION OF POSTS AND SWIVEL BRACKETS BEFORE INSTALLING SWIVEL BRACKETS.*
- *WHEN RAILINGS ARE CUT TO ODD SPANS, ALL SPANS GREATER THAN 5′ (1.52 M) (EXAMPLE: 8′ (2.44 M) SPAN CUT INTO ONE 5′ (1.52 M) SPAN AND ONE 3′ (0.91 M) SPAN) WOULD REQUIRE FOOT BLOCK UNDER 5′ (1.52 M) SPAN SINCE SMALLER FIXED BALUSTER IS NO LONGER CENTERED.*



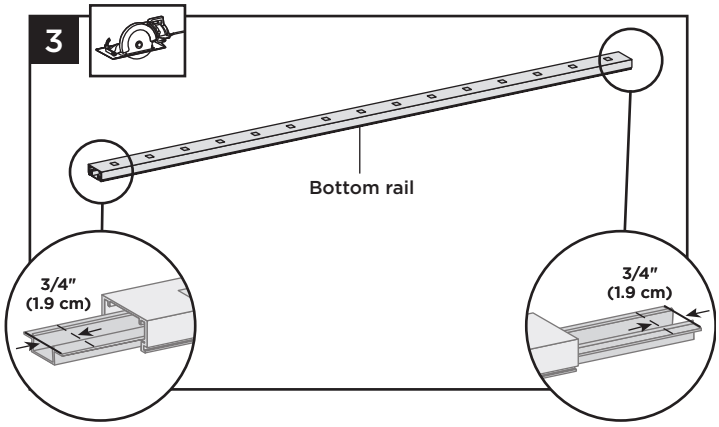
How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top Railings

1. With brackets in correct swivel location, measure distance from inside of bracket to inside of bracket. ENSURE THAT BEFORE CUTTING, BALUSTERS HOLES ON BOTH BOTTOM AND TOP RAIL LINE UP. ALSO MAKE SURE CENTER BALUSTER SLOT IS AS CLOSE TO THE MIDDLE OF THE SPAN AS POSSIBLE. In some cases, due to odd railing spans, the center baluster may need to be offset in one or the other direction to ensure there is enough room at both post locations for balusters to be placed.

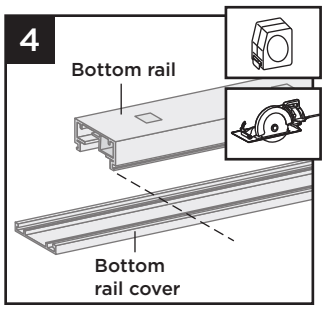
Cutting Bottom Rail and Bottom Rail Cover



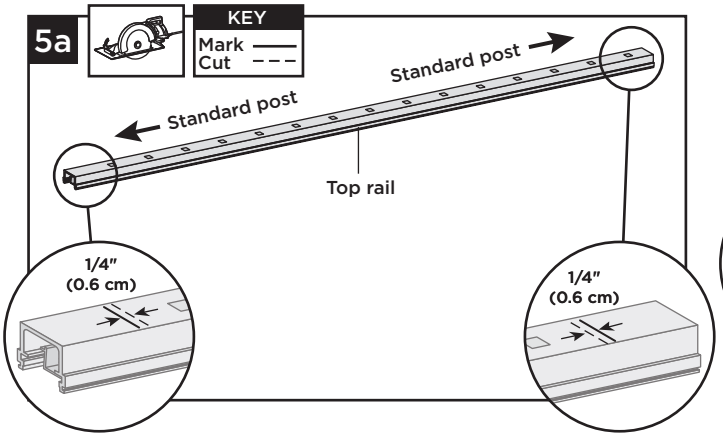
2. Cut bottom rail to the measurement between the bottom swivel brackets.



3. Slide rail insert out and cut 3/4″ (1.9 cm) **FROM EACH SIDE** of insert, then slide back inside rail and center.
4. Mark and cut bottom rail covers same length as bottom rail.

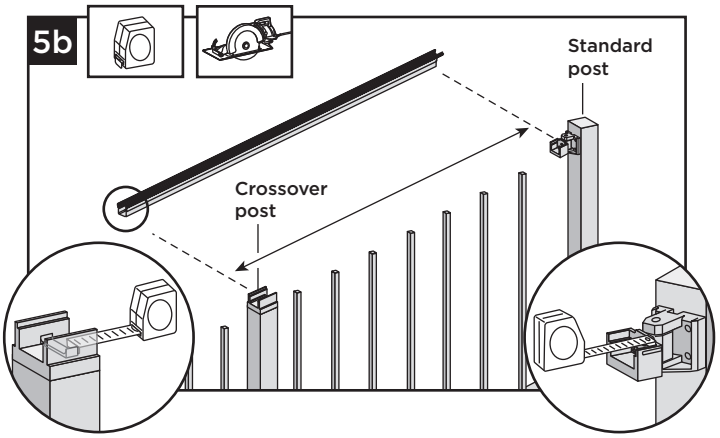


Cutting Top Rail
Option 1:
For Post-to-Post Configuration



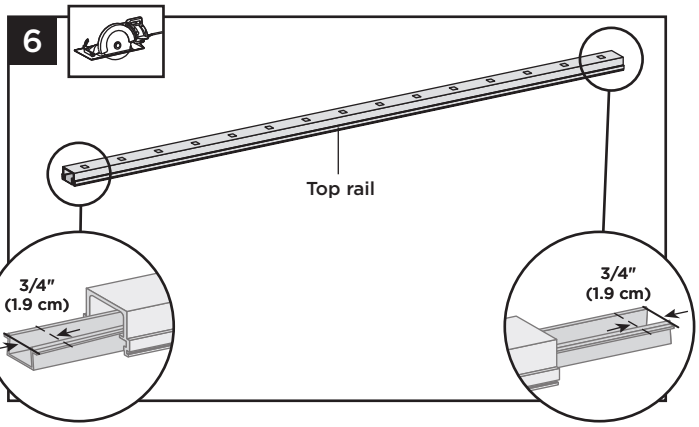
5a. Cut top rail to the measurement between the top swivel brackets. For standard post-to-standard post configurations this would be same dimensions as that of the bottom rail.

Cutting Top Rail
Option 2:
For Post-to-Crossover Post Configuration

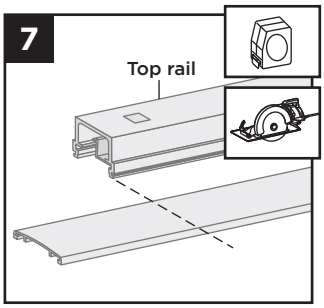


5b. When going from standard-post to crossover post, measurement must be taken from inside of top horizontal swivel bracket to inside lip of crossover bracket (which is attached to top of crossover post).

Cutting Top Rail Insert and Cover



6. Slide rail insert out and cut 3/4" (1.9 cm) **FROM EACH SIDE** of insert, then slide back inside rail and center.
7. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.



8. **Attaching Center Baluster to Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 84 Post-to-Post or 88 Post-to-Crossover Post.
9. **Attaching Foot Block (when required)**
   See instructions on page 85.
10. **Attaching Bottom Rail Cover and Bottom Rail to Brackets**
    See instructions on page 84 Post-to-Post or 88 Post-to-Crossover Post.
11. **Installing Remaining Balusters into Bottom Rail**
    See instructions on page 85 Post-to-Post or 89 Post-to-Crossover Post.
12. **Attach Upper Railings**
    See instructions on page 85 Post-to-Post or 89 Post-to-Crossover Post.
13. **Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps**
    See instructions on page 86 Post-to-Post or 90 Post-to- Crossover Post.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

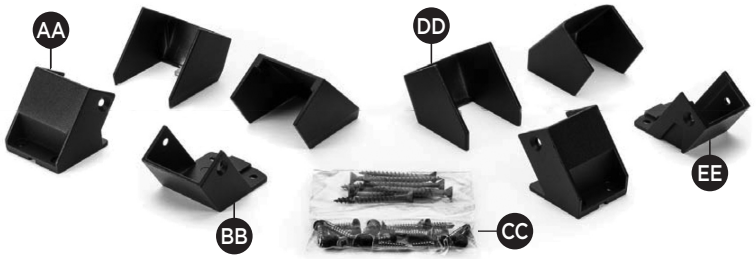
TREX SIGNATURE® STAIR RAILING

BRACKET HARDWARE (INCLUDING STAIR SWIVEL BRACKETS, STAIR CROSSOVER BRACKET, AND COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS)

TREX SIGNATURE®

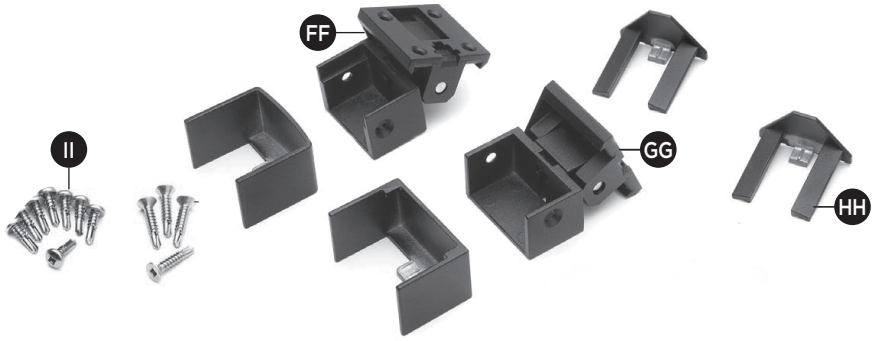
FIXED BRACKET – STAIR HARDWARE

AA. Bottom Stair Bracket and Cover – Lower Rail
BB. Top Stair Bracket and Cover – Lower Rail
CC. Fastener Pack
DD. Bottom Stair Bracket and Cover – Upper Rail
EE. Top Stair Bracket and Cover – Upper Rail



SWIVEL BRACKET – STAIR HARDWARE

FF. Swivel Top Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
GG. Swivel Bottom Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
HH. Fastener Covers
II. Fastener Pack

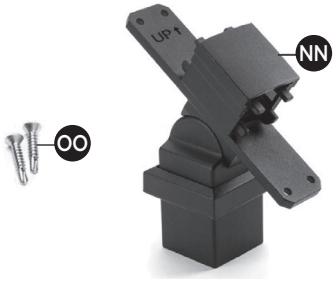


COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKET – STAIR HARDWARE

JJ. Compound Swivel Top Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
KK. Compound Swivel Bottom Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
LL. Fastener Covers
MM. Fastener Pack

SWIVEL CROSSOVER BRACKET KIT – STAIR HARDWARE

NN. Swivel Crossover Bracket – Stair
OO. Post-to-Bracket Fasteners



HOW TO INSTALL STAIR POSTS AND STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

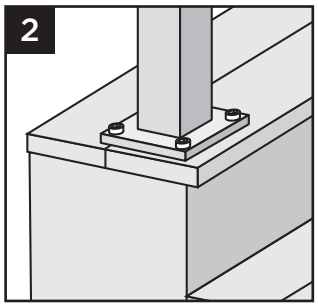
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *FOR A 6′ OR 8′ STAIR RAIL, POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING STAIR POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM STAIR RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE STAIR RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *TREX SIGNATURE POSTS CANNOT BE USED WITH TREX SIGNATURE TRADITIONAL OR TREX SIGNATURE COCKTAIL STAIR DESIGNS, ONLY PRESSURE-TREATED POST/POST SLEEVES CAN BE USED. REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR MORE INFORMATION.*
- *All Trex Signature stair installations require the use of 53″ (134.6 CM) stair post, measured and cut to appropriate length if required.*
- *If crossover stair post is required, use stair post (again cut to appropriate length if required) and use swivel crossover bracket.*
- *Trex Signature Stair fixed brackets are designed to work only with stair slopes of 32°-37°.*
- *For smaller (less than 32°) or larger angles (greater than 37°), use the Trex Signature Stair Swivel brackets.*
- *Trex Signature Compound swivel stair brackets are designed for flared stair designs.*
- *At all final end post configurations, top stair rail will need to be measured (making sure balusters line up vertically) and cut.*
- *For odd span lengths, both bottom and top stair rails will need to be measured (making sure balusters line up vertically) and cut. Also, ensure that balusters are spaced with equal distance on each side of the post.*
- *Rails that do not require cutting must be oriented in the correct direction to ensure balusters are spaced properly when installed in brackets. On both bottom and top stair railings, baluster hole closest to the end of each stair rail is to be installed at the top of the stair section. Ensure that both bottom and top rails are correct and balusters line up vertically before INSTALLING.*
- *Foot Blocks for stairs are sold separately and recommended for use in Signature Cocktail and Signature Traditional applications.*

Installing Standard Trex Signature Stair Posts, Trex Signature Stair Crossover Posts, or Pressure-Treated Post, Post Sleeves and Skirts

1. **Make sure 53″ (135.6 cm) posts are used for all stair posts.**

2. If Trex Signature stair posts are used, install at nose of stair tread directly under required blocking. *See Trex Signature horizontal post instructions.*



Installing Pressure-Treated Posts

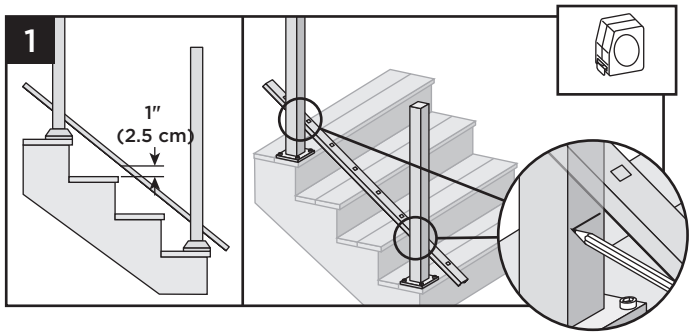
- *PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.*
- *PRESSURE TREATED POSTS MUST BE INSTALLED ON INSIDE OF STAIR STRINGER AND AT NOSE OF STAIR TREAD.*
- *POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *In most cases, a post and post sleeve longer than 39″ (991 mm) will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

ATTACHING FIXED STAIR BRACKETS AND RAILS TO POSTS AND PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVES
TREX SIGNATURE®

NOTES:
- ***» All Trex Signature fixed stair brackets work ONLY with stair slopes of 32°-37°.***
- ***» Illustrations shown are representations when using Trex Signature post, but same rules apply if using pressure-treated posts and post sleeves.***
- ***» Use a clamp to help hold stair brackets in place while fastening with screws.***

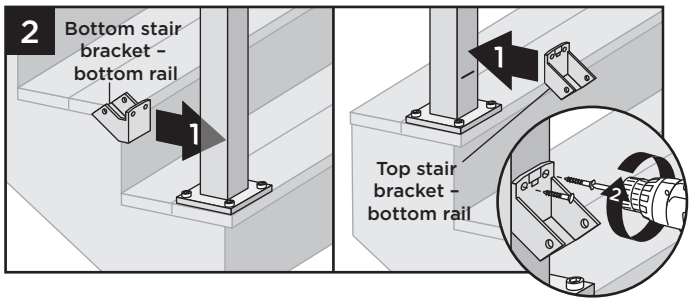
IMPORTANT NOTE:
» BEFORE ATTACHING ANY UPPER BRACKETS MAKE SURE PROPER RAILING HEIGHTS ARE ACHIEVED. RAILING HEIGHTS AND UPPER BRACKET HEIGHTS MAY NEED TO BE ADJUSTED, HOWEVER, DO NOT REDUCE HEIGHTS BASED ON YOUR RAILING CODE REQUIREMENTS. MEASURE CAREFULLY AS DIMENSION HEIGHTS MAY NEED TO BE ADJUSTED!



1. Lay bottom stair rail on steps beside posts. **Position bottom rail at least 1" (2.5 cm) above nose of stair tread**.

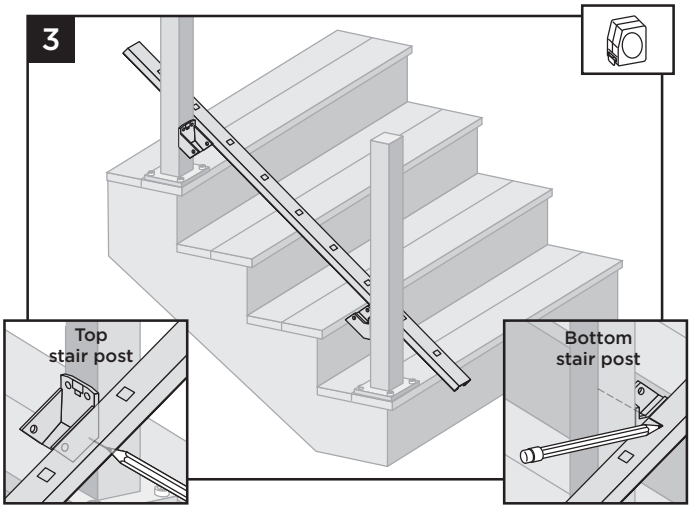
Tip: Use a 1" (2.5 cm) deck board as a spacer board and clamp rails to post. Mark where lower brackets are to be attached to both posts. Mark at underside of railing location.

Installing Lower Fixed Stair Brackets

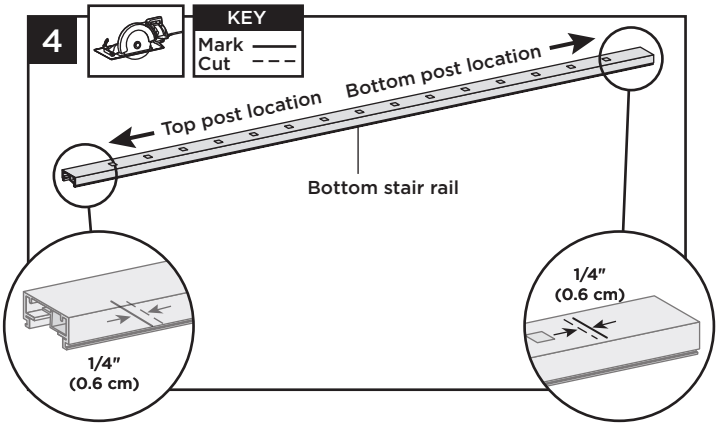


2. Center lower stair bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*. In some cases it may be difficult to attach the stair bracket on the lower stair post. **A 90° cordless drill is recommended to attach screws in this area.**

How to Measure Bottom Stair Railing (WHEN REQUIRED)



3. Position bottom stair rail along the nose of the stair treads. Ensure that before cutting, balusters holes are centered in between the posts and also allow for clearance for attachment to brackets. On top stair post location, mark **UNDERSIDE** of lower rail. On bottom stair post location mark **TOPSIDE** of lower rail at angled intersection of the bracket.

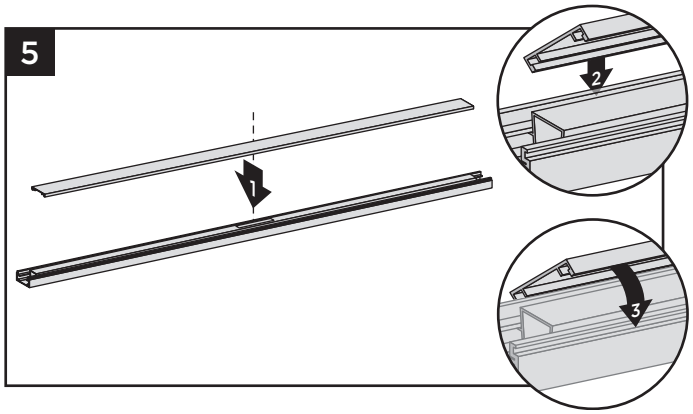


4. Cut each end of the bottom stair rail, rail insert, and bottom rail cover 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than the mark on each end to allow for fit into bottom stair rail brackets.

NOTE: Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut.

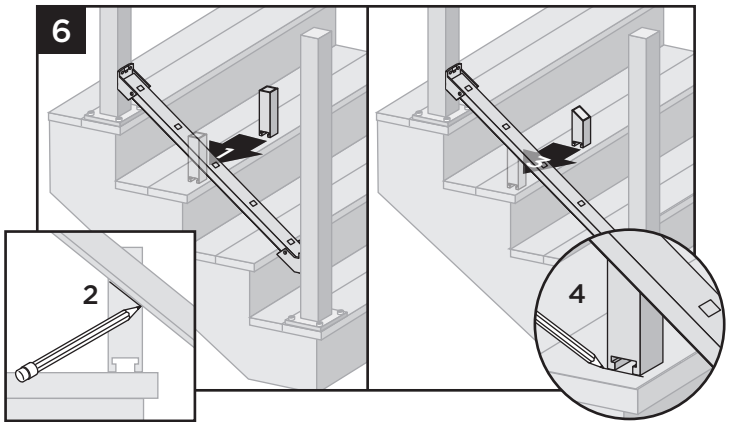
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

ATTACHING FIXED STAIR BRACKETS AND RAILS TO POSTS AND PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVES/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

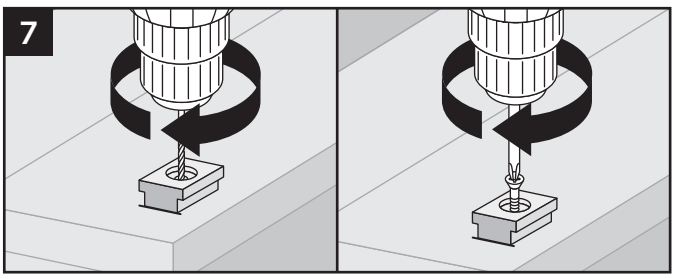


5. Attach "flat" bottom stair rail cover to bottom stair rail. Align cover on one side of the bottom rail in slot on side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail snap cover onto opposing slot working down the length of the rail. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

Attaching Foot Block (where recommended)
Recommended for all spans over 6′ for Signature Cocktail and Signature Traditional applications)

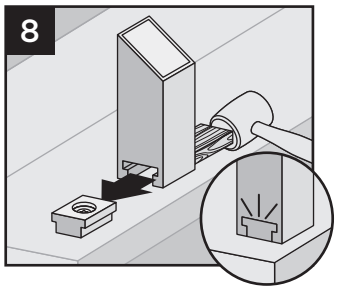


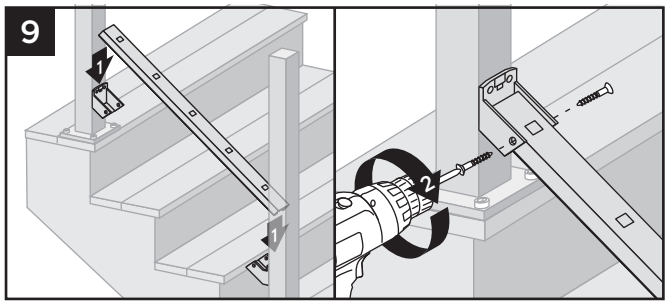
6. Temporarily set bottom rail in bottom brackets, and place Foot Block towards the nose of the stair tread along the side of the bottom rail. Mark location of angle on Foot Block and cut on mark. Then place Foot Block under the center of the bottom rail. Mark placement location of the base. Remove lower rail.



7. Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16" bit. Attach base of Foot Block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

8. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap Foot Block until it locks into place.



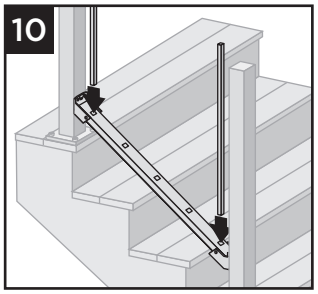


9. Set bottom stair rail into bottom stair rail brackets. Attach bottom stair rail to bottom stair bracket using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of bracket.

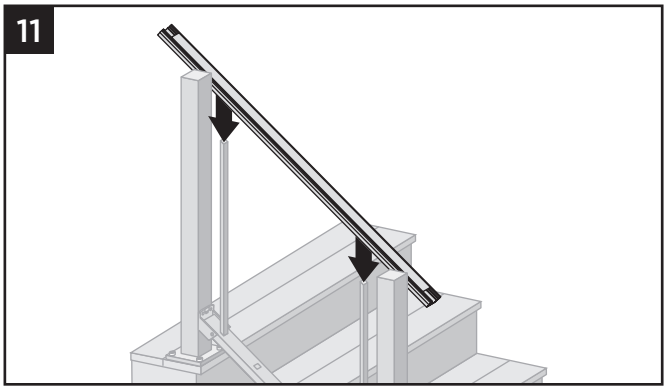
Installing Upper Fixed Stair Brackets and Measuring Upper Rail

IMPORTANT NOTE: BEFORE CUTTING ANY TOP RAILS, MAKE SURE THAT ALL BALUSTER HOLES LINE UP PARALLEL WHEN MEASURING!

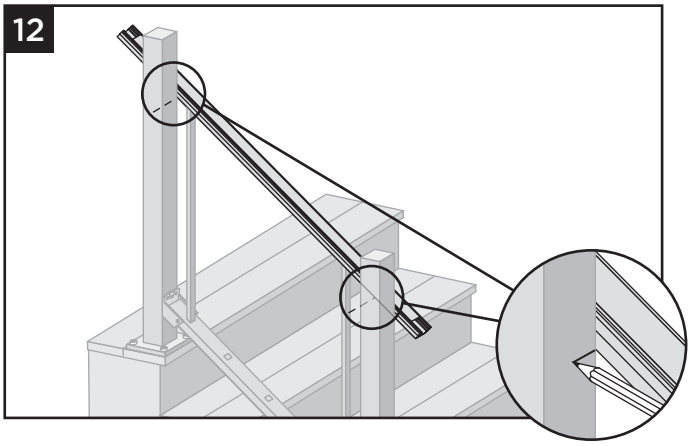
10. Place two balusters into lower rail at each end closest to post.



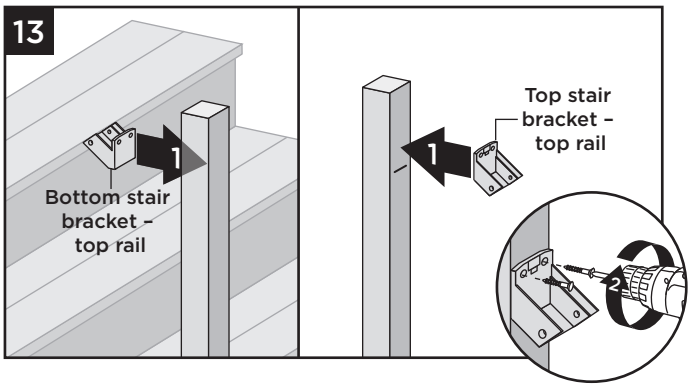
ATTACHING FIXED STAIR BRACKETS AND RAILS TO POSTS AND PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVES/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®



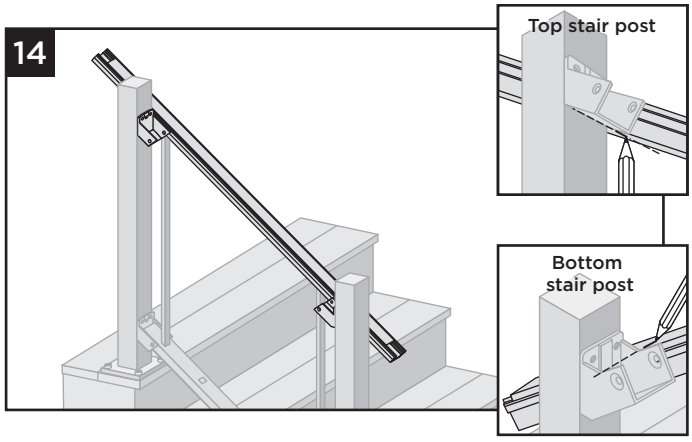
11. Position top stair rail onto balusters ensuring balusters are fully seated in top rail (position to side of post) and **ENSURE** that balusters are parallel with post.



12. Mark a light line on posts at UNDERSIDE of rail to show the location of the fixed stair brackets.

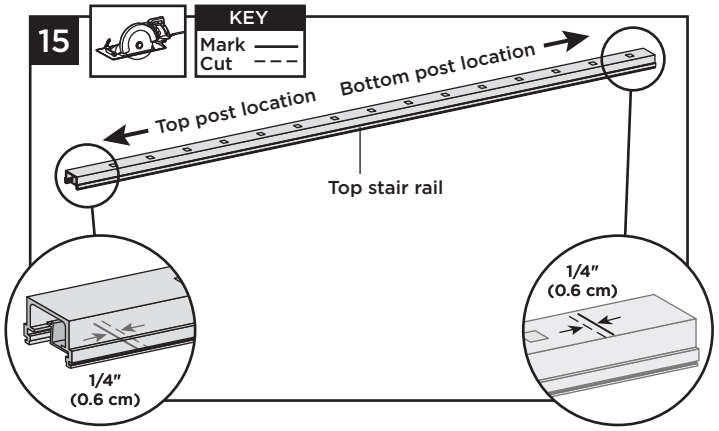


13. Remove upper stair rail and center upper stair fixed bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*.



14. On top stair post location, mark **UNDERSIDE** of upper rail. On bottom stair post location mark **TOPSIDE** of upper rail at angled intersection inside the bracket.

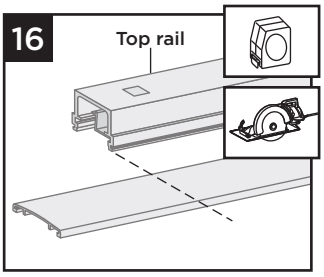
Cutting Top Stair Rail Cover, and Attachment of Top Stair Rail Cover



15. Cut each end of top stair rail along with rail insert 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than mark to allow for fit into top stair rail bracket.

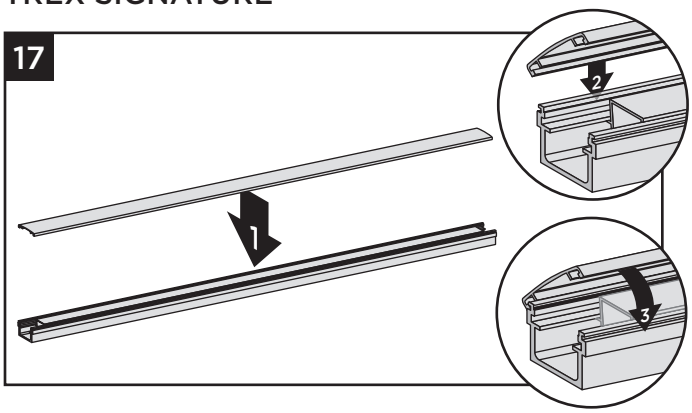
NOTE: Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut.

16. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.



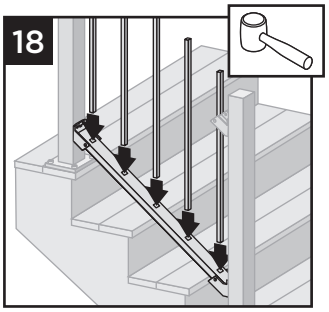
ATTACHING FIXED STAIR BRACKETS AND RAILS TO POSTS AND PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVES/CONTINUED

TREX SIGNATURE®



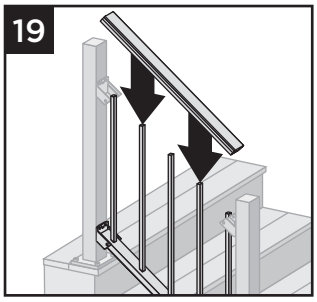
17. Attach "crowned" upper stair rail cover to upper stair rail by aligning cover on one side of rail. Then starting from one end of stair rail, snap cover onto opposing slot working down length of stair rail. **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate the fastening.

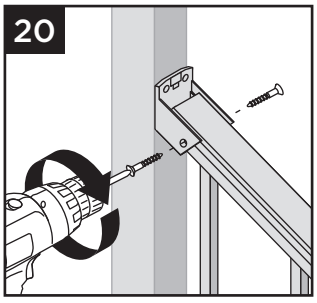
Installing Balusters into Bottom Stair Rail



18. Place balusters into holes in lower stair rail by snapping fully into place. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

Attaching Upper Stair Rails

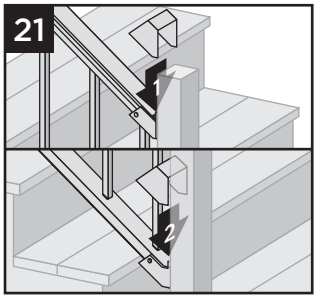




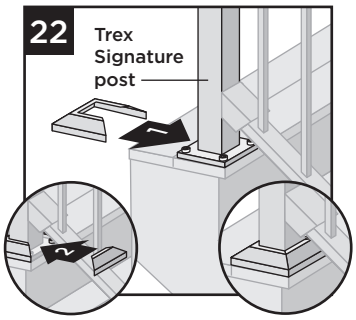
19. Working from one end of upper stair rail, snap balusters into upper stair rail working down length of rail.
20. Attach top stair rail to top stair bracket (all types) using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of stair bracket.

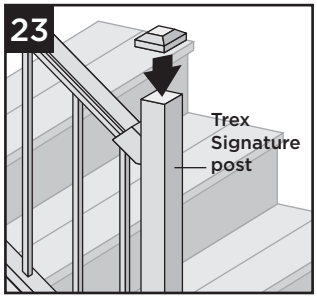
Attachment of Stair Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps

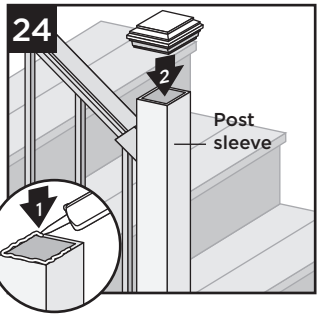
21. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.



22. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.







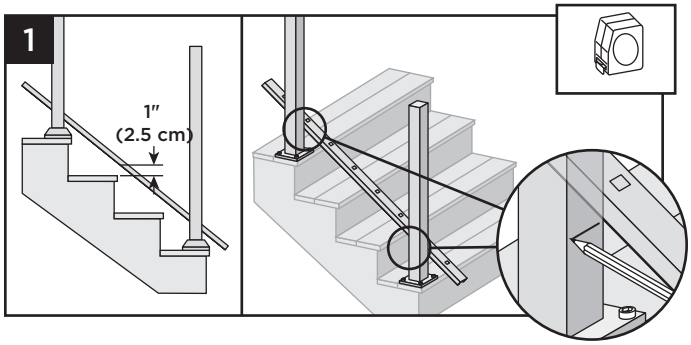
23. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts (use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment).
24. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

ATTACHING STAIR SWIVEL/COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS AND RAILS TO POSTS AND PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVES
TREX SIGNATURE®

NOTES:
- *» Illustrations shown are representations when using Trex Signature posts, but same rules apply if using pressure-treated posts and post sleeves.*
- *» Use a clamp to help hold stair brackets in place while fastening with screws.*

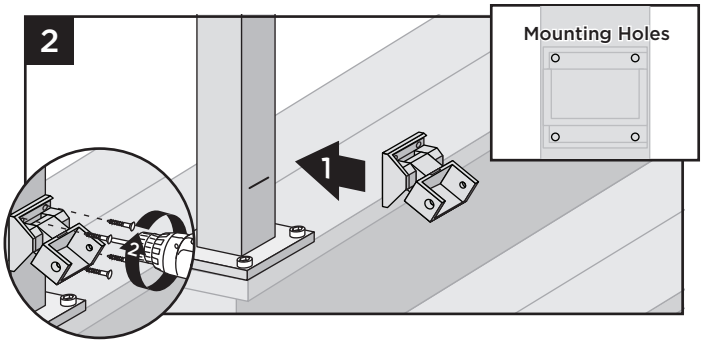
IMPORTANT NOTE:
- *» BEFORE ATTACHING ANY UPPER BRACKETS, MAKE SURE PROPER RAILING HEIGHTS ARE ACHIEVED. RAILING HEIGHTS AND UPPER BRACKET HEIGHTS MAY NEED TO BE ADJUSTED, HOWEVER, DO NOT REDUCE HEIGHTS BASED ON YOUR RAILING CODE REQUIREMENTS. MEASURE CAREFULLY AS DIMENSION HEIGHTS MAY NEED TO BE ADJUSTED!*



1. Lay bottom stair rail on steps beside posts. **Position bottom rail at least 1" (2.5 cm) above nose of stair tread**.

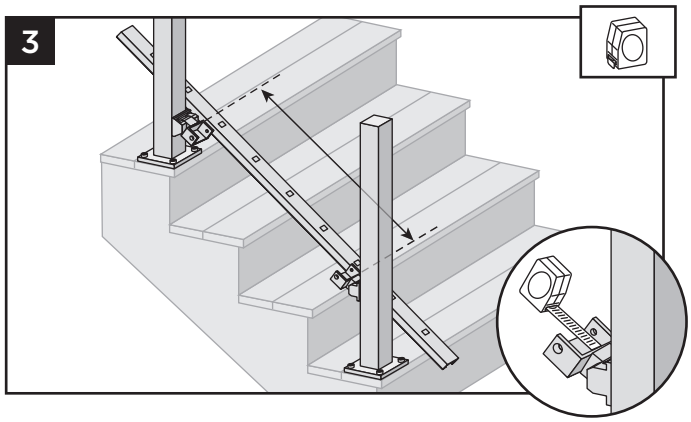
Tip: Use a 1" (2.5 cm) deck board as a spacer board and clamp rails to post. Mark where lower brackets are to be attached to both posts. Mark at underside of railing location.

Installing Lower Stair Swivel and Compound Swivel Brackets



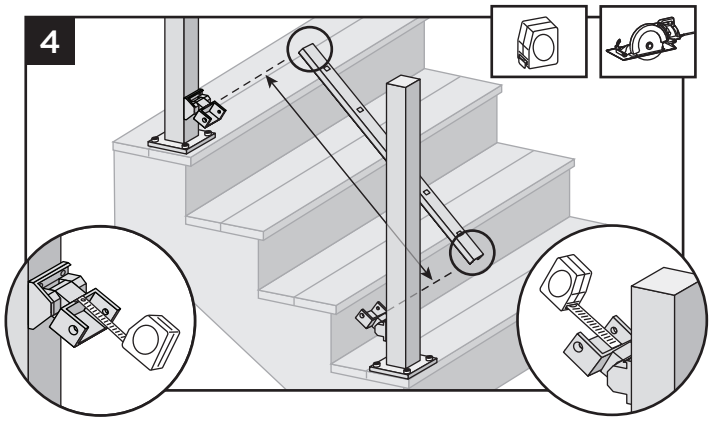
2. Center lower stair swivel bracket on post above the marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided).* In some cases it may be difficult to attach the stair bracket on the lower stair post. **A 90° cordless drill is recommended to attach screws in this area.**

How to Measure Bottom Stair Railings (WHEN REQUIRED)



3. With brackets in correct swivel locations, measure distance from inside of swivel bracket to inside of swivel bracket. Ensure that before cutting, balusters holes are parallel and centered in between the posts and also allow for clearance for attachment to brackets. Mark bottom stair rail at each intersection.

Cutting Bottom Stair Rail, Bottom Stair Rail Cover, and Attachment of Bottom Stair Rail Cover

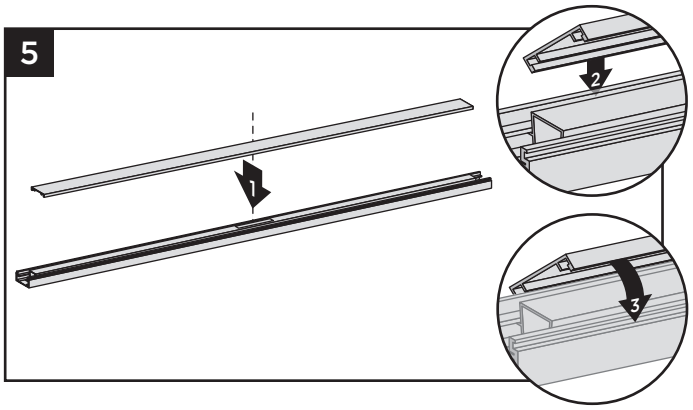


4. Cut each end of the bottom rail, rail insert, and bottom rail cover at the mark on each end to allow for fit into bottom stair rail brackets.

NOTE: Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut.

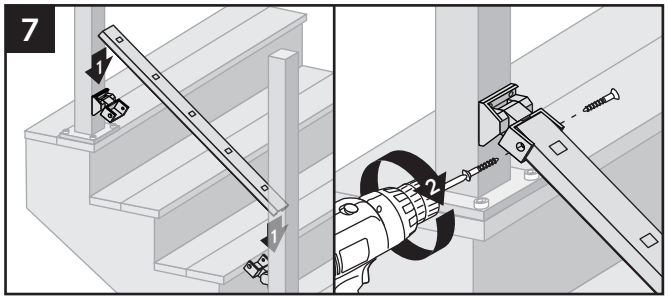
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

ATTACHING STAIR SWIVEL/COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS AND RAILS TO POSTS AND PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVES/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®



5. Attach "flat" bottom stair rail cover to bottom stair rail. Align cover on one side of the bottom rail in slot on side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail snap cover onto opposing slot working down the length of the rail. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

6. **Attaching Foot Block (where recommended)**
See instructions on page 103.

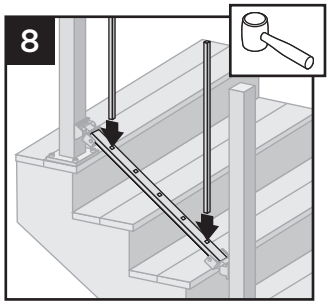


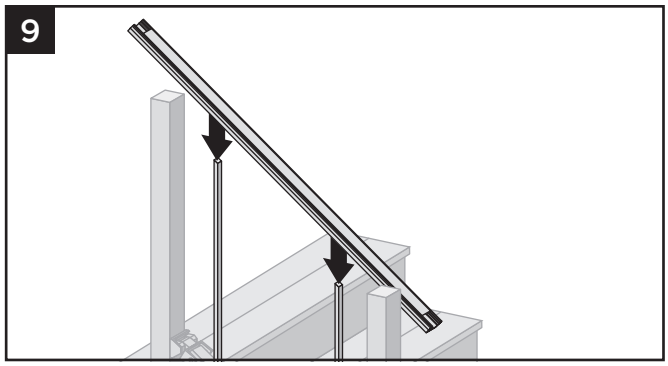
7. Set bottom stair rail into bottom stair rail brackets. Attach bottom stair rail to bottom stair bracket using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of bracket.

Installing Upper Brackets and Measuring Upper Stair Rail–Stair Swivel and Compound Swivel

IMPORTANT NOTE: BEFORE CUTTING ANY TOP RAILS MAKE SURE THAT WHEN MEASURING, ALL BALUSTER HOLES LINE UP PARALLEL!

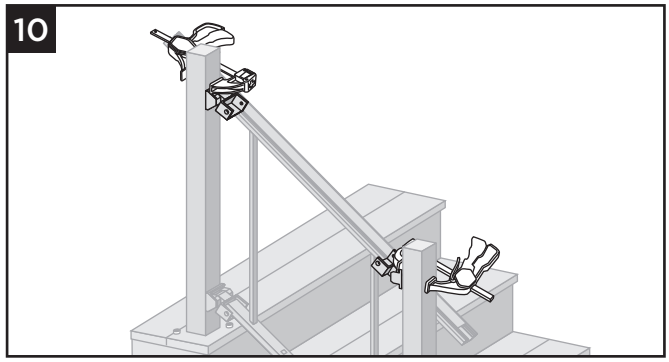
8. Place two balusters into lower rail at each end closest to post.



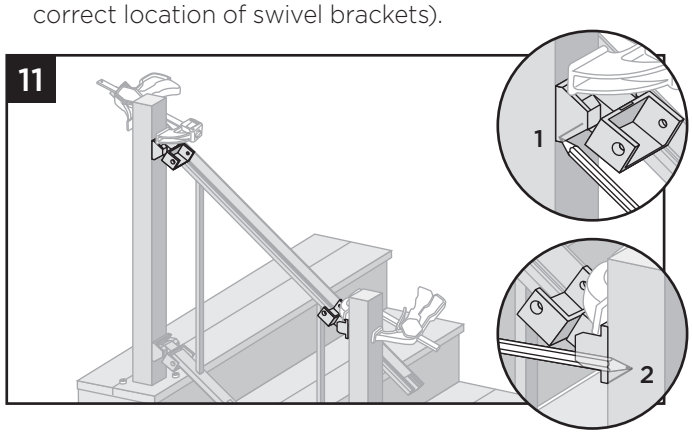


9. Position top stair rail onto balusters ensuring balusters are fully seated in top rail (position to side of post) and **ENSURE** that balusters are parallel with post.

Installing Upper Stair Swivel and Compound Swivel Brackets

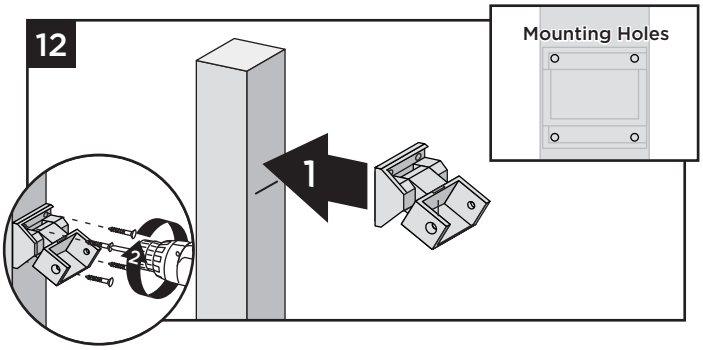


10. Clamp brackets to side of rail with brackets in correct swivel location/angle (this is important to ensure correct location of swivel brackets).

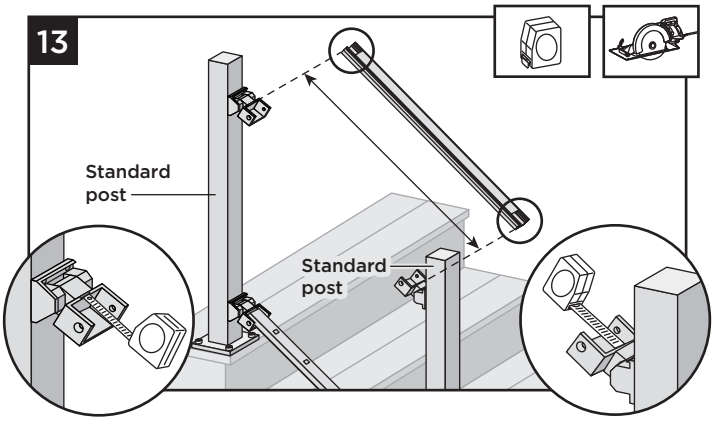


11. Mark a light line on posts at **UNDERSIDE** of where swivel bases (positioned correctly) meets the posts.

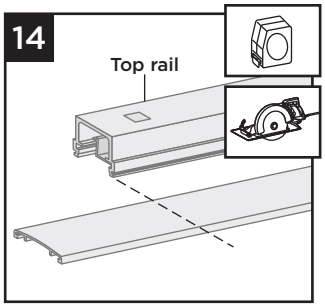
ATTACHING STAIR SWIVEL/COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS AND RAILS TO POSTS AND PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVES/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

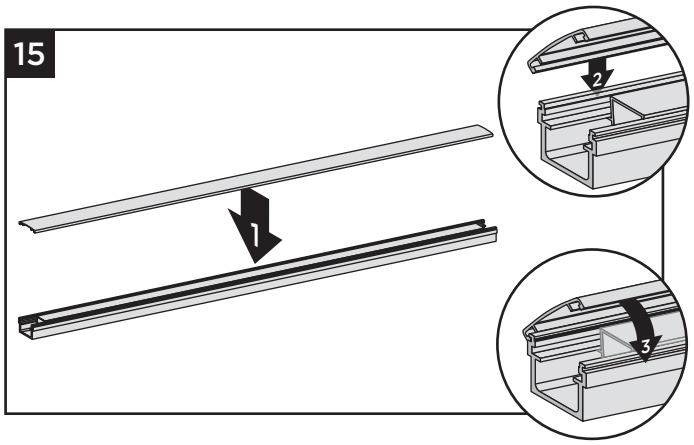


12. Remove upper stair rail from balusters and center upper stair swivel bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.



13. Cut top rail along with rail insert to the measurement between the top stair swivel brackets. For standard post to standard post configurations this would be same dimensions as that of the bottom stair rail.
14. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.

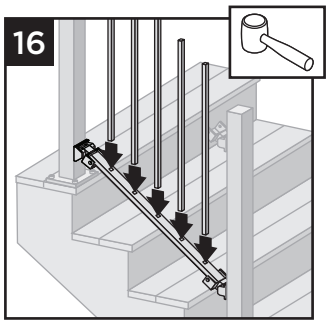




15. Attach "crowned" upper stair rail cover to upper stair rail by aligning cover on one side of rail. Then starting from one end of stair rail, snap cover onto opposing slot working down length of stair rail. **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

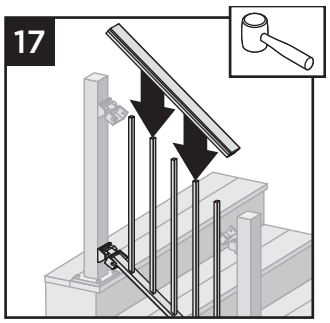
Installing Balusters into Bottom Stair Rail

16. Place balusters into holes in lower stair rail by snapping fully into place. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

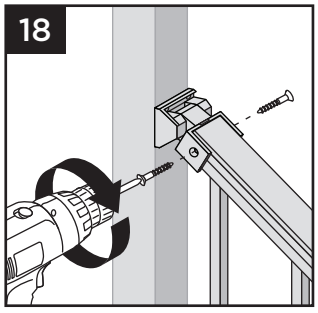


Attaching Upper Stair Rails

17. Working from one end of upper stair rail, snap balusters into upper stair rail working down length of rail.

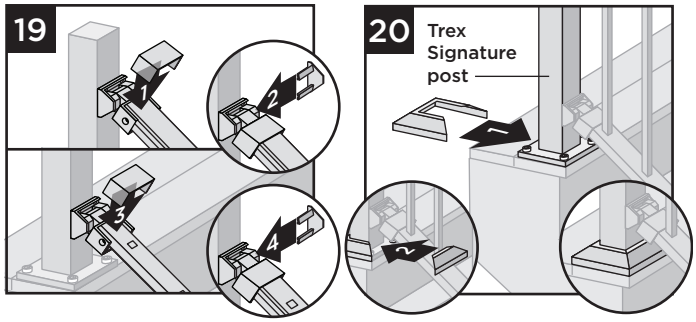


18. Attach top stair rail to top stair bracket (all types) using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of stair bracket.

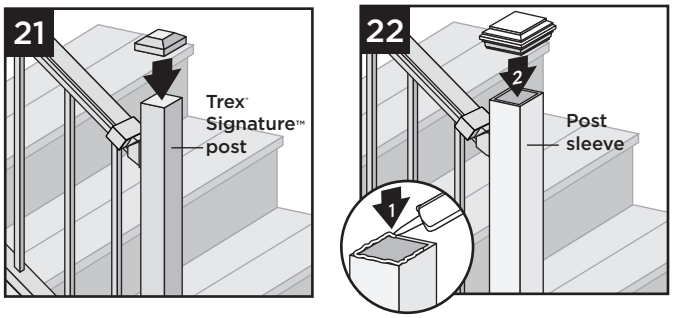


ATTACHING STAIR SWIVEL/COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS AND RAILS TO POSTS AND PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVES/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Attachment of Stair Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps



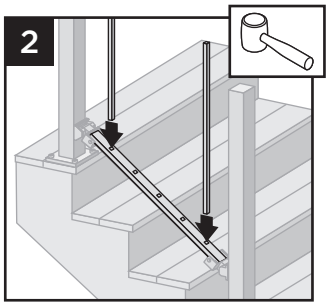
19. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.
20. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.

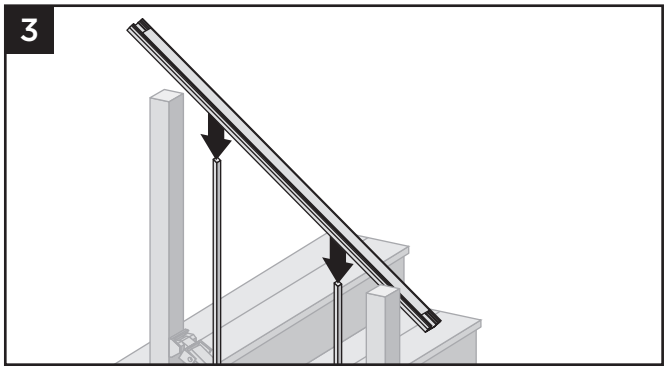


21. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts (use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment).
22. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).

ATTACHING CROSSOVER SWIVEL BRACKETS ON SIGNATURE POSTS
TREX SIGNATURE®

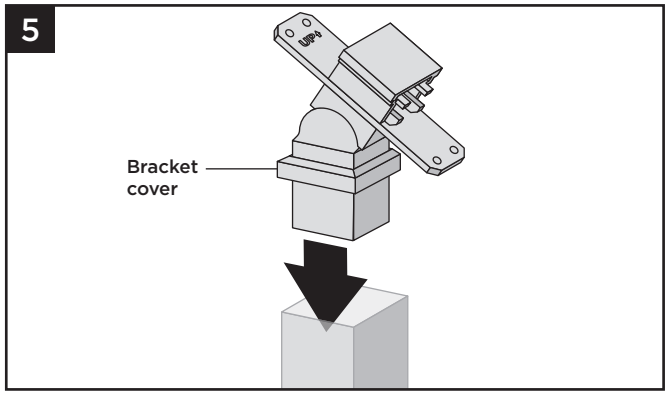
1. Follow previous instructions for installation of lower stair rail into either fixed or swivel brackets.
2. Place two balusters into lower stair rail at each end of post.





3. Position top stair rail onto balusters ensuring balusters are fully seated in top rail (position to side of post) and **ENSURE** that balusters are parallel with post.
4. Follow previous instructions marking and installation of either fixed or swivel bracket where this is required.

Attaching Stair Crossover Swivel Bracket to Post

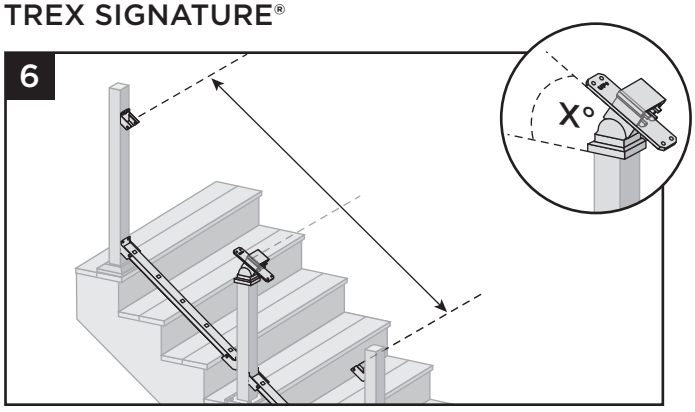


5. Insert stair crossover swivel bracket into post.

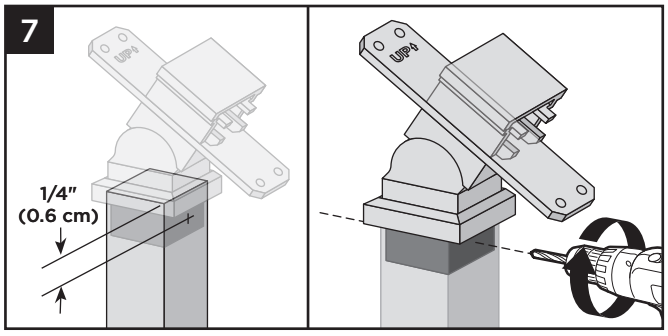
NOTE: Keep the bracket cover on when inserting this into post, this will cover the screw attachment area.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

ATTACHING CROSSOVER SWIVEL BRACKETS TO POSTS/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

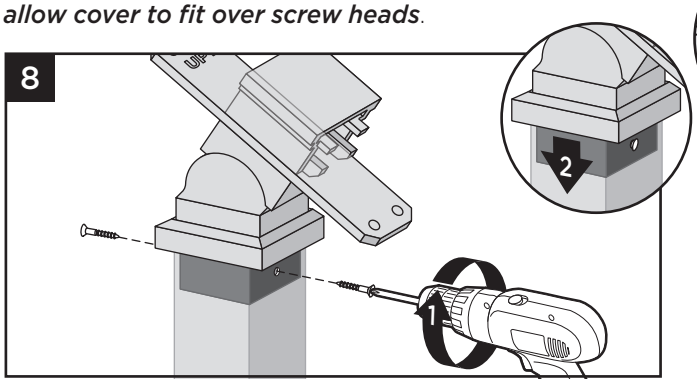


6. Determine location/height of the stair crossover swivel bracket by aligning the angle of this with the fixed brackets (or compound swivel brackets) already installed (posts can be cut if necessary).



7. Once location/height is determined, center and pre-drill two holes (using a drill bit slightly smaller than that of self-tapping screw diameter) on opposite sides of post, approx. 1/4" (0.6 cm) from top of post. Drill through the post and into the stair crossover swivel bracket on each side.

NOTE: Slightly countersink pre-drilled holes to allow for flat head screw to seat flush on the post. This will allow cover to fit over screw heads.

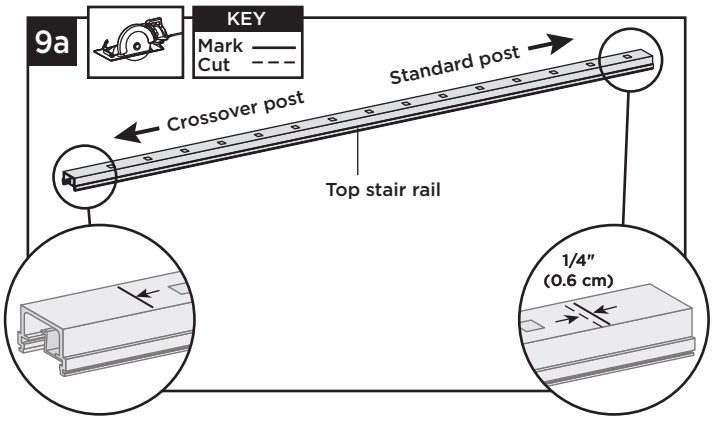


8. Attach stair crossover swivel bracket to post with two self-tapping screws *(provided)*. Slide cover over post to hide screws.

ATTACHING RAILS IN CROSSOVER POST APPLICATIONS
TREX SIGNATURE®

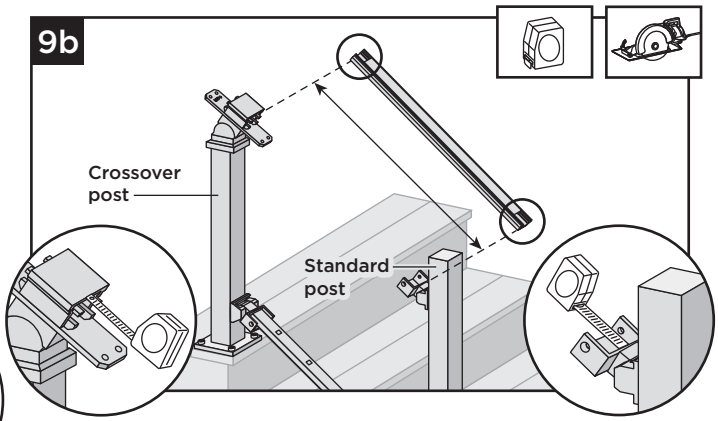
Cutting Top Stair Rail and Insert For Stair Post-to-Stair Crossover Post Configuration

When Using Fixed Stair Brackets:



9a. Top stair rail along with rail insert must be cut differently on each side of the rail. Railing side that attaches to standard post should be cut 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than the mark to allow for fit into top rail bracket. Railing side that attaches to the crossover post should be cut directly on the mark to allow for fit into the crossover post bracket.

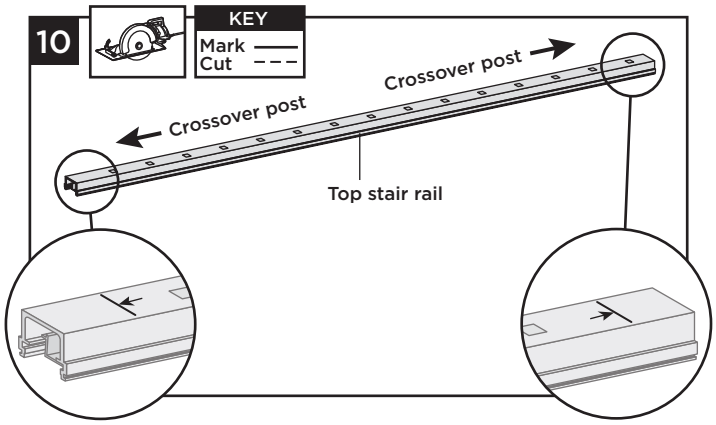
When using Upper Stair Swivel and Stair Crossover Swivel Brackets:



9b. When going from standard stair post to stair crossover post, measurement must be taken from inside of top horizontal stair swivel bracket to inside lip of stair crossover bracket. Crossover post will need to be modified to have swivel crossover bracket installed.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

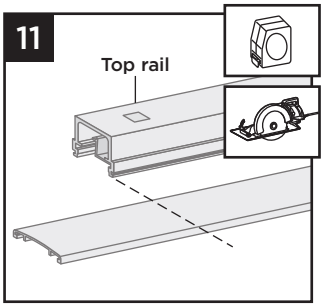
Cutting Top Stair Rail and Rail Insert For Stair Crossover Post-to-Stair Crossover Post Configuration

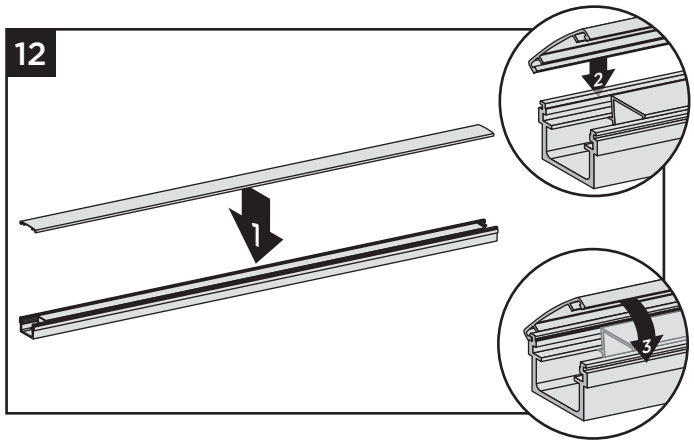


10. Cut each end of the top stair rail along with rail insert on the mark line to allow for fit into the crossover post bracket on each side.

Cutting Top Stair Rail Cover, and Attachment of Top Stair Rail Cover

11. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.

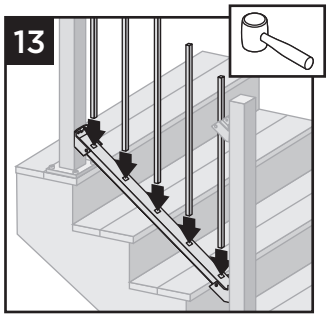




12. Attach "crowned" upper stair rail cover to upper stair rail by aligning cover on one side of rail. Then, starting from one end of stair rail, snap cover onto opposing slot working down length of stair rail. **GENTLY** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

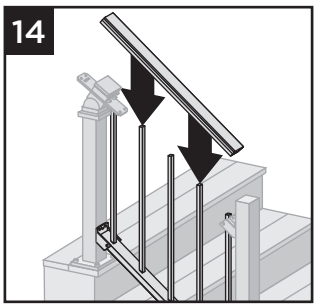
Installing Balusters into Bottom Stair Rail

13. Place balusters into holes in lower stair rail by snapping fully into place. In some cases, **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

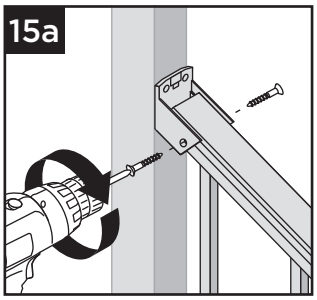


Attaching Upper Stair Rails

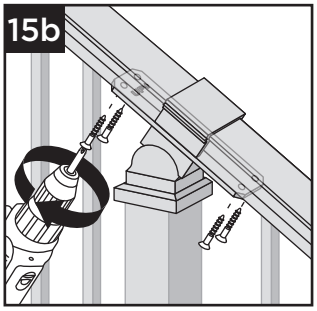
14. Working from one end of upper stair rail, snap balusters into upper stair rail working down length of rail.



15a. For stair post-to-post configuration, attach top stair rail to top stair bracket (all types) using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of stair bracket.



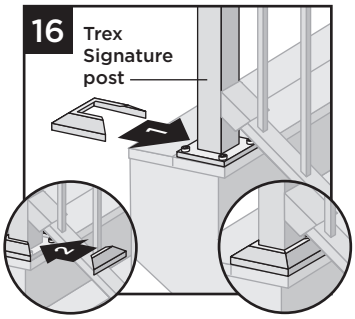
15b. For stair crossover post configuration, fasten upper stair rail to swivel crossover post bracket by installing screws diagonally through crossover stair bracket into upper rail using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side.

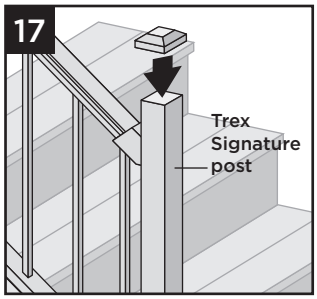


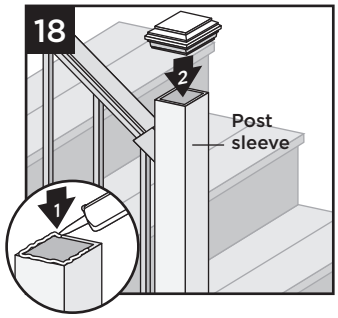
ATTACHING RAILS IN CROSSOVER POST APPLICATIONS/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Attachment of Skirts and Caps

16. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.

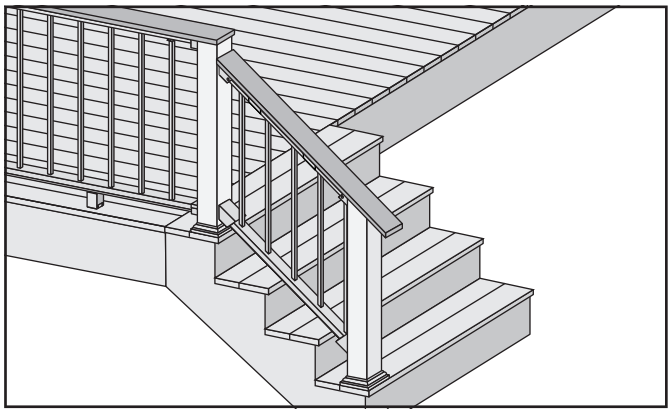






17. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts (use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment).
18. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



IMPORTANT NOTES:

- ***» Only for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4x4 (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve. Trex Signature posts, Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Cocktail stair railing. Cutting post and post sleeve only apply to the Cocktail style railing.***
- ***» DO NOT CUT POST/POST SLEEVES UNTIL TOP RAILING AND COVER IS FULLY INSTALLED.***
- ***» When referring to previous instructions referenced, disregard all crossover post instructions as these cannot be used with Cocktail railing.***
- ***» THE DECK BOARD USED IN TREX SIGNATURE COCKTAIL RAILING WILL NEED TO TERMINATE AT THE TOP OF THE POST AS SHOWN ABOVE. THE DECK BOARD WILL HAVE TO BE TOENAILED INTO THE SIDE OF THE POST IN THESE AREAS USING 2 APPROPRIATE COMPOSITE DECKING SCREWS – PRE-DRILLING IS RECOMMENDED.***
- ***» Do Not use Enhance for top board.***

Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeves,and Skirts to Use with Trex Signature Railing

1. *See instructions on page 101.*

Installing Brackets

2. Follow previous stair instructions for the installation of desired brackets, making sure that all dimensions are calculated before installation, and ensuring deck board is placed in correct location.

Cutting Bottom Stair Rail and Cover

3. *See instructions on page 102 for fixed stair brackets and pages 106 for swivel stair brackets.*

Installing Foot Block (when recommended)

4. *See instructions on page 103.*

Attachment of Bottom Stair Rail

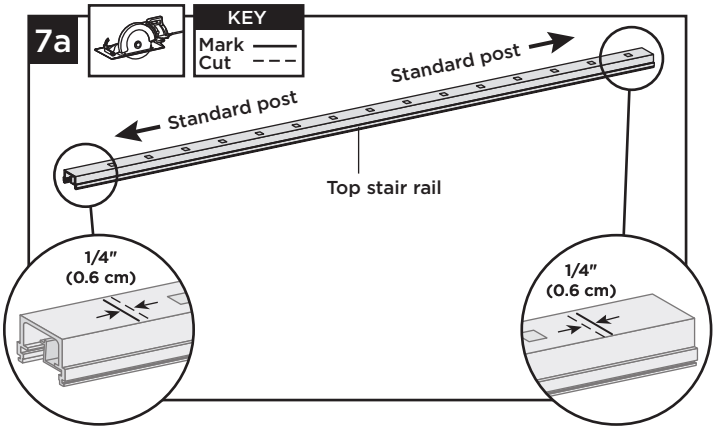
5. *See instructions on page 103 for fixed stair brackets and page 107 for swivel stair brackets.*

How to Measure Top Stair Railings (WHEN REQUIRED)

6. *See instructions on page 104 for fixed stair brackets and page 107 for swivel stair brackets.*

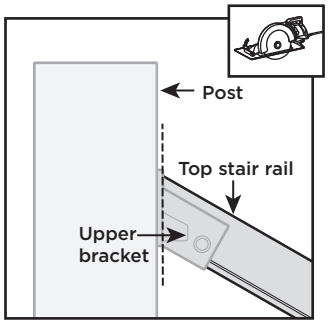
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Cutting Top Stair Rail and Rail Insert When using Fixed Stair Brackets



7a. Cut each end of top stair rail along with rail insert 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than mark to allow for fit into top stair rail bracket.

NOTE: THE TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE CUT AT APPROPRIATE ANGLE ON THE END OF THE RAIL THAT CONNECTS TO THE UPPER FIXED BRACKET, SO THAT WHEN THE RAIL IS INSTALLED IT SITS FLUSH WITH THE END OF THE BRACKET AS SHOWN.



Cutting Top Stair Rail and Rail Insert When using Upper Stair Swivel and Compound Swivel Brackets

7b. *See instructions on page 111.*

Cutting Top Stair Rail Cover, and Attachment of Top Stair Rail Cover

8. *See instructions on page 105.*

Installing Balusters into Bottom Stair Rail

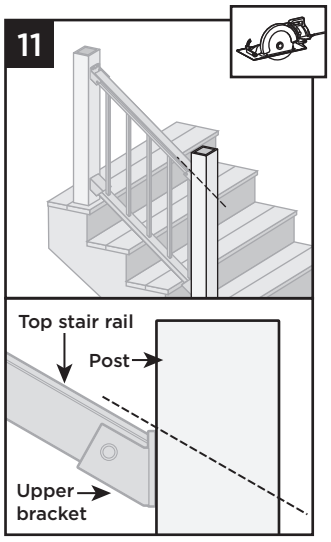
9. *See instructions on page 105.*

Attaching Upper Stair Rails

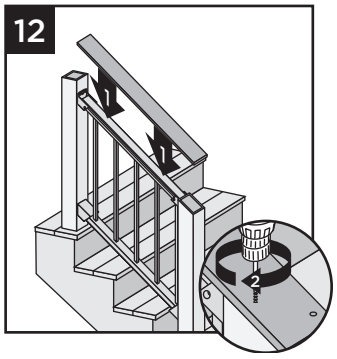
10. *See instructions on page 105.*

Cutting Post and Post Sleeve and Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

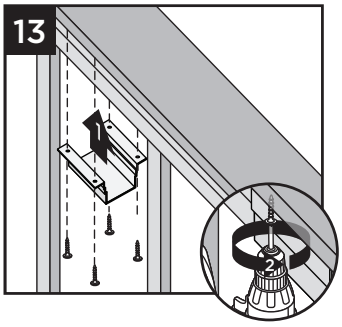
11. Cut post and post sleeves at proper angle so these are flush with the top of the top brackets and/or top rail cover. BE CAREFUL **NOT** to CUT brackets.



12. Place deck boards over top rails. PLACE DECK BOARD ON TOP RAIL TO CHECK FOR PROPER FIT AND RAIL CLEARANCE AT BRACKET LOCATIONS. DECK BOARD MAY REQUIRE EITHER A NOTCH CUT ON THE UNDERSIDE OR SLIGHT PLANING ON THE UNDERSIDE TO ALLOW DECK BOARD TO CLEAR TOPS OF BRACKETS AND SIT FLUSH ON TOP OF POSTS AND RAILS. Attach boards on each post with Trex-recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per each board end).



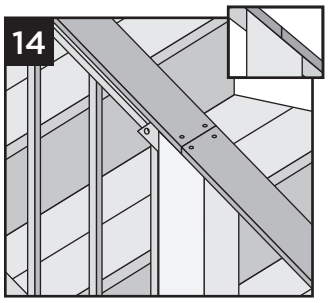
13. Secure boards to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the stair railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

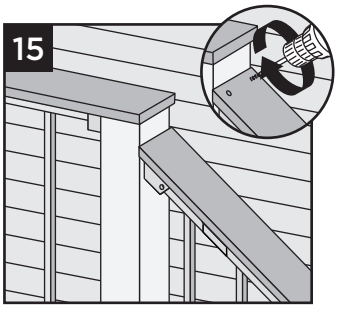
HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

14. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.



NOTES:
- *Leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*
- *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*

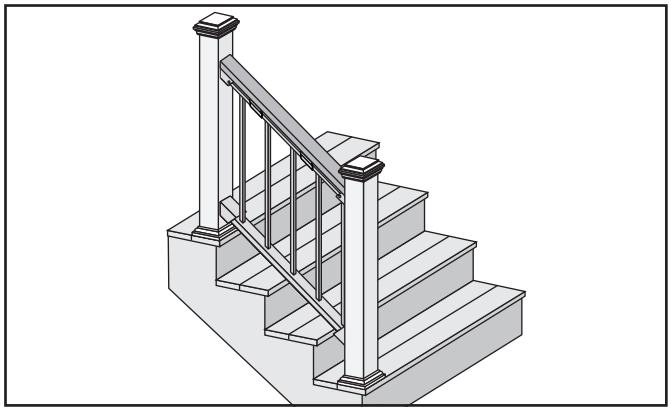
15. Where deck board terminates at top of post horizontal deck board, PREDRILL and toenail two approved composite deck screws as shown into post, being careful to avoid hitting stair bracket.



Attachment of Bracket Covers and Skirts
16. See instructions on page 105.

NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

HOW TO INSTALL TRADITIONAL STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



IMPORTANT NOTE:
- ***Only for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4x4 (102 mm x 102 mm) or 6x6 post sleeve. Trex Signature Posts, Trex Post Mounts or Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Traditional railing.***

Installing Standard Trex Signature Stair Posts, or Pressure-Treated Post
1. *See instructions on page 101.*

Installing Lower Fixed Stair Brackets
2a. *See instructions on pages 102.*

Installing Lower Stair Swivel and Compound Swivel Brackets
2b. *See instructions on page 106.*

How to Measure Bottom Stair Railings Fixed Stair Brackets
3a. *See instructions on page 102.*

How to Measure Bottom Stair Railings When using Stair Swivel and Compound Swivel Brackets
3b. *See instructions on page 106.*

Cutting Bottom Stair Rail, Bottom Stair Rail Cover When Using Fixed Stair Brackets
4a. *See instructions on page 103.*

Cutting Bottom Stair Rail, Bottom Stair Rail Cover When Using Stair Swivel and Compound Swivel Brackets
4b. *See instructions on page 106.*

Attaching Foot Block (when recommended)
5. *See instructions on page 103.*

Attachment of Bottom Stair Rail Cover and Bottom Stair Rail to Fixed Brackets
6a. *See instructions on page 103.*

Attachment of Bottom Stair Rail Cover and Bottom Stair Rail to Swivel and Compound Swivel Brackets
6b. *See instructions on page 107.*

Installing Upper Fixed Stair Brackets and Measuring Upper Rail
7a. *See instructions on pages 104.*

Installing Upper Swivel and Swivel Compound Stair Brackets and Measuring Upper Rail
7b. *See instructions on pages 107.*

HOW TO INSTALL TRADITIONAL STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Cutting Top Stair Rail and Rail Insert When Using Fixed Stair Brackets
8a. *See instructions on page 104.*

Cutting Top Stair Rail and Rail Insert When Using Swivel Compound Stair Brackets and Measuring Upper Rail
8b. *See instructions on page 108.*

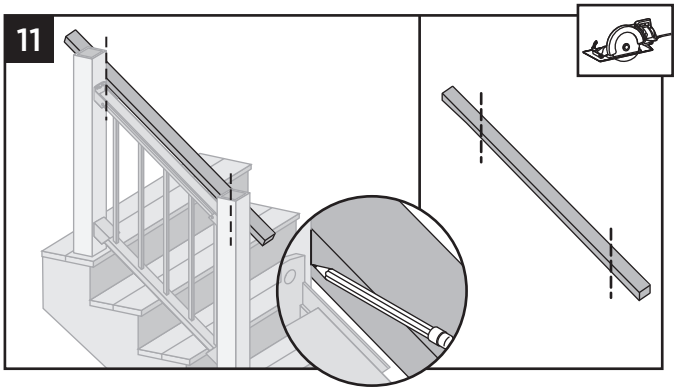
Installing Balusters into Bottom Stair Rail When Using Fixed Stair
9a. *See instructions on page 105.*

Installing Balusters into Bottom Stair Rail When Using Swivel and Compound Swivel Brackets
9b. *See instructions on page 108.*

Attaching Upper Stair Rails When Using Fixed Stair Brackets
10a. *See instructions on page 105.*

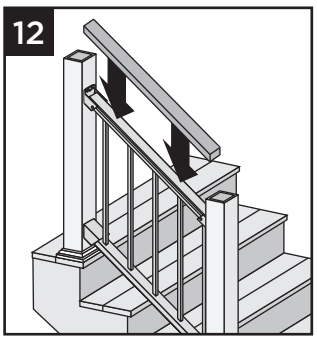
Attaching Upper Stair Rails When Using Swivel Compound Stair Brackets
10b. *See instructions on page 108.*

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail

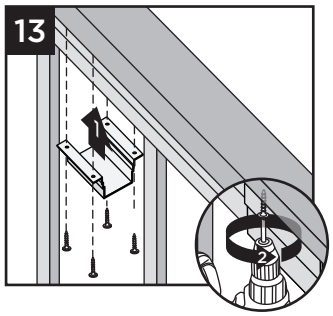


11. Place 2 x 4 beside top rail. Mark and cut (both ends need to be cut on an angle for proper fit).

12. Place 2 x 4 on Trex Signature top stair rail.

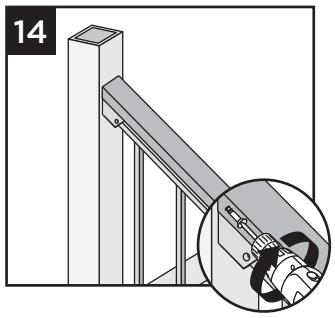


13. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



***NOTE:** Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

14. Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2" (6.4 cm) screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



Attachment of Lower Stair Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps Fixed Bracket
15a. *See instructions on page 105.*

Attachment of Lower Stair Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps Swivel or Compound Swivel Bracket
15b. *See instructions on page 109.*

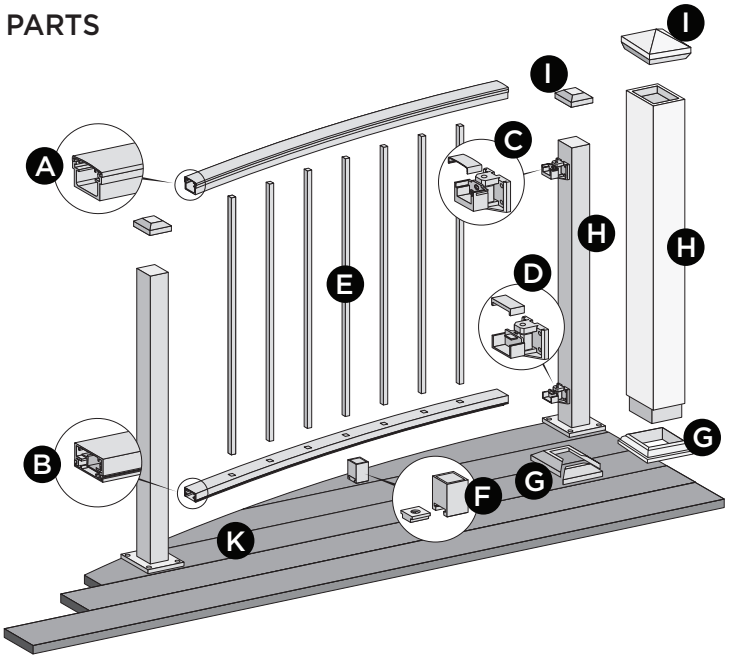
***NOTE:** Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

HORIZONTAL CURVED RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

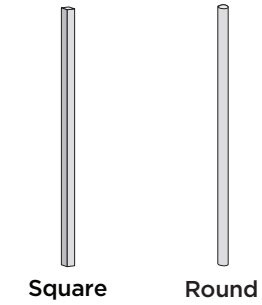
NOTES:

- *DESIGN AND FABRICATION WILL BE HANDLED BETWEEN SIGHTLINE COMMERCIAL SOLUTIONS AND THE CONTRACTOR/ CUSTOMER. FOR MORE INFORMATION VISIT TREX.COM OR CALL 1-800 BUY TREX.*
- *EVERY SECTION IS CUSTOM FABRICATED FOR EACH SPECIFIC JOB. CURVED RAILS ARE DESIGNED WITH 8' LENGTH RAILS, BUT DUE TO MANUFACTURING PROCESS THIS WILL ALLOW 6' USABLE SECTIONS. THUS, WHEN DESIGNING CURVED RAILING, SPANNING IS 6' MAXIMUM CURVED SPAN.*
- *SIGNATURE CURVED RAILINGS CAN ONLY BE USED WITH HORIZONTAL RAILINGS. STAIR RAILINGS CANNOT BE CURVED.*
- *WHEN INSTALLING SIGNATURE CURVED RAILING, ONLY HORIZONTAL SWIVEL TABLESS BRACKETS CAN BE USED.*
- *FOOTBLOCKS ARE REQUIRED FOR EVERY SIGNATURE CURVED RAIL SECTION. THUS THESE RAILING SPANS MUST BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST.*
- *CANNOT BE USED WITH TREX JOIST MOUNT POSTS THAT ARE ATTACHED OUTSIDE OF THE RIM JOIST.*

PARTS



BALUSTER OPTIONS



***NOTES**: This is an overview of CURVED railing components for Signature Horizontal applications.*

A. Trex Signature curved top rail
B. Trex Signature bottom rail and flat cover
C. Trex Signature top rail bracket and cover
D. Trex Signature bottom rail bracket and cover
E. Trex Signature balusters (square)
F. Trex Signature Foot Block**
G. Trex Signature post skirt or post sleeve skirt*
H. Trex Signature post*
   - 36" (actual length 37" [94.0 cm])
   - 42" (actual length 43" [109.2 cm])
   or Trex post sleeve***
   - 36" (actual length 40" [102 cm])
   - 42" (actual length 46" [117 cm])

NOTE: MUST USE TREX DECK MOUNT POST HARDWARE AND METAL PLATE WHEN ATTACHING TREX SIGNATURE POSTS.

I. Trex Signature post cap or post sleeve cap*

* *Item not included in Trex Signature Railing kits.*
** *One required per each curved railing section.*
*** *Both 4x4 (10.2 cm x 10.2 cm) and 6x6 (15.2 cm x 15.2 cm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post.*

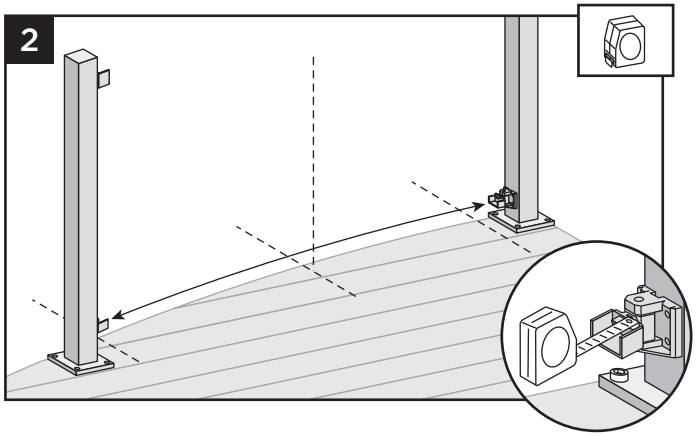
***NOTE:** If installing 42" (106.7 cm) railing, and using pressure-treated posts with Trex post sleeves, ensure that a longer pressure-treated post is used along with longer post sleeve, both cut to a height of 46" (116.8 cm) from decking surface.*

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL CURVED RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Installing Posts and Swivel Brackets

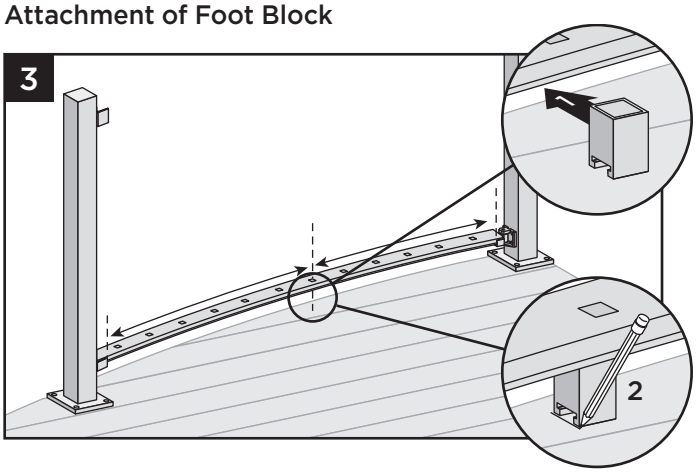
1. Install posts and horizontal swivel brackets as stated within Trex Signature Post and Horizontal Swivel Bracket Instructions.

How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top Rails

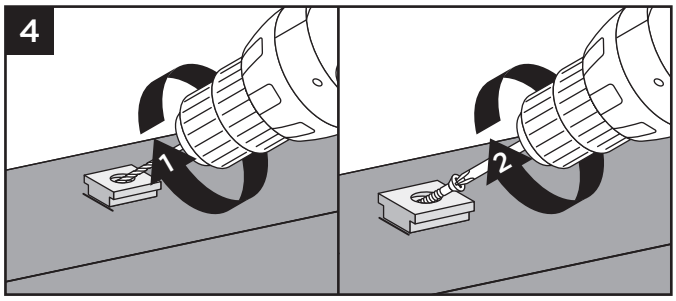


2. With brackets in correct swivel location, measure distance from inside of bracket to inside of bracket. BEFORE CUTTING, ENSURE THAT BALUSTER HOLES ON BOTH BOTTOM AND TOP RAIL LINE UP.

Attachment of Foot Block

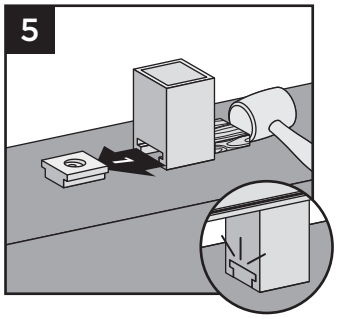


3. Temporarily set bottom rail into bottom brackets, and place Foot Block under bottom rail centered between bottom brackets. Mark to provide placement location of base. Remove bottom rail.



4 Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16" bit. Attach base of Foot Block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

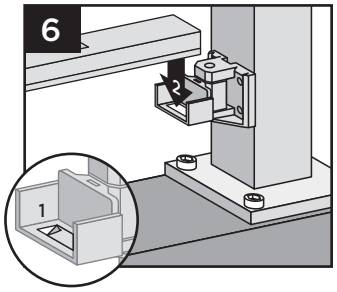
5. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap Foot Block until it locks into place.



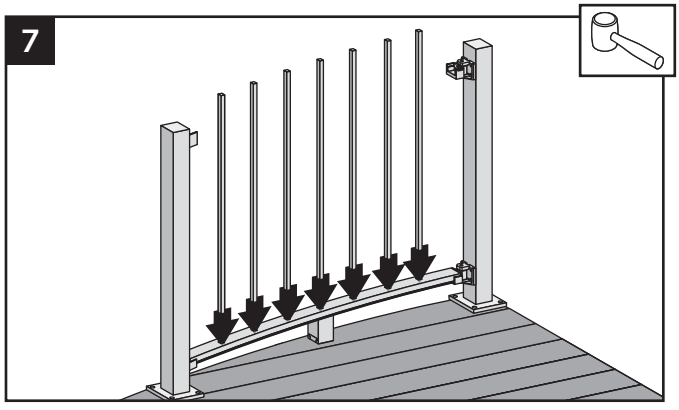
Installing Lower Rail to Brackets

6. Place adhesive strips (provided) into bottom rail brackets, and then place bottom rail into brackets.

***NOTE:** Make sure surface is clean and dry.*



Installing Balusters into Bottom Rail

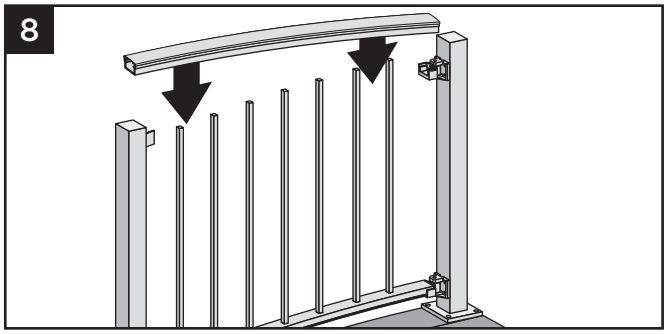


7. Place balusters into holes in lower rail by snapping fully into place.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

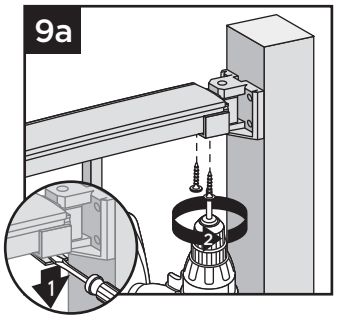
HOW TO INSTALL CURVED RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNAURE® STANDARD

Attach Upper Railings



8. Working from one end of upper rail, snap balusters into upper rail, working down length of curved rail.

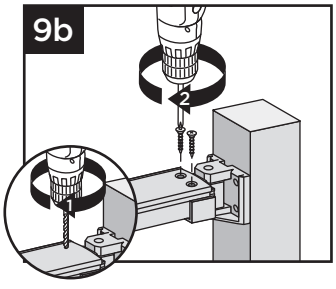
9a. If there is room to get drill in between last baluster and post, pop out access panel on underside of top bracket, and using a 7/64" (0.28 cm) drill bit, pre-drill through railing into bracket as shown for attachment of railing to bracket. Attach attach top rail to bracket using two self-tapping screws each side (provided). Screw from the bottom up into the top rail.



***NOTE:** Pre-drilling is required. It's best practice to pre-drill a single hole, then attach screw, and continue in this order.*

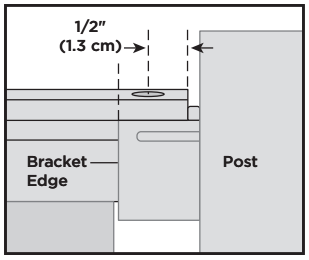
If there is no room to get drill in between last baluster and post:

9b. Drill two 1/2" holes approximately 1/2" from end of top rail. Repeat this on opposite side of top rail. Using a 7/64" (0.28 cm) drill bit, pre-drill through railing into bracket as shown for attachment of railing to bracket. Attach top rail to bracket using two self-tapping screws on each side (provided).



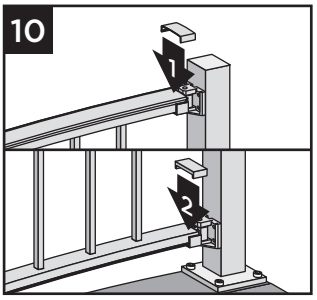
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *HOLES CANNOT EXTEND PAST BRACKET, OTHERWISE BRACKET COVER WILL NOT COVER HOLES.*
- *ONLY DRILL 1/2" HOLES THRU TOP WALL OF TOP RAIL. DO NOT USE A STEP BIT.*



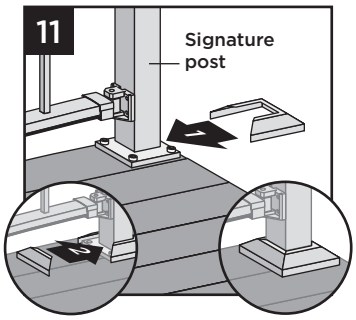
***NOTE:** Pre-drilling is required. It's best practice to pre-drill a single hole, then attach screw, and continue in this order.*

10. Install upper and lower bracket covers. If self-tapping screws were installed from above on top rail, bracket cover will hide the screw hole locations.

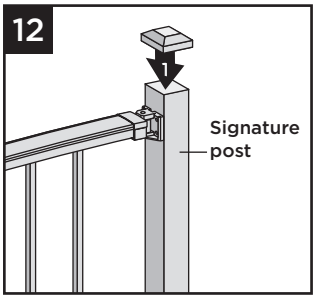


Attachment of Skirts and Caps

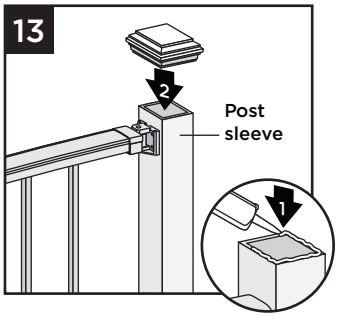
11. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Signature posts.



12. Attach post caps to Signature posts. (A **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment.)



13. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external-grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs).



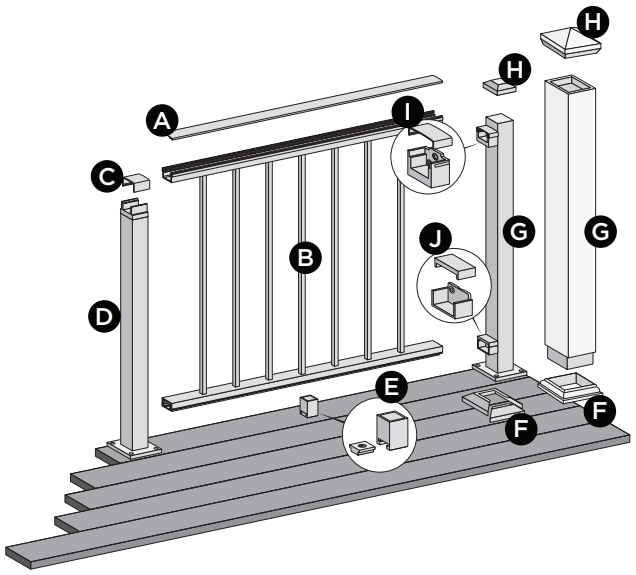
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SIGNATURE® HORIZONTAL PANELS

NOTES:

- *TREX SIGNATURE RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A CLEAR SPAN OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M). THUS THESE RAILING SPANS MUST BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST.*
- *IF INSTALLING AT EXACT SPAN LENGTHS OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M), AND USING POST-TO-POST CONFIGURATION, THE BOTTOM RAIL WILL NOT NEED TO BE CUT, BUT THE TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED AND CUT.*
- *IF INSTALLING AT EXACT SPAN LENGTHS OF 6′ (1.83 M) OR 8′ (2.44 M), AND USING CROSSOVER POST CONFIGURATION (SPANS FROM ONE CROSSOVER POST TO ANOTHER CROSSOVER POST), BOTH THE BOTTOM RAIL AND TOP RAIL WILL NOT NEED TO BE CUT.*
- *IN ADDITION, AT ALL FINAL END POST CONFIGURATIONS, TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE MEASURED AND CUT.*
- *SEE INFORMATION WITHIN DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR MORE INFORMATION.*
- *SEE PAGE 70 FOR SKU NUMBERS.*

PARTS

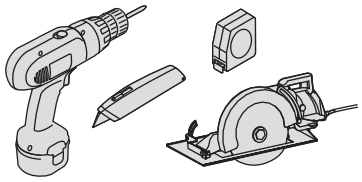


A. Trex Signature upper rail cover*
   - 6′ (actual length 73-1/2″ [1867 mm])
   - 8′ (actual length 97-1/2″ [2477 mm])
B. Trex Signature Panel (includes top and bottom railings and square balusters)
C. Crossover bracket cover *(supplied with crossover post)*
D. Trex Signature crossover post**
   - 36″ (actual length 34-1/2″ [876 mm])
   - 42″ (actual length 40-1/2″ [1029 mm])
E. Trex Signature Foot Block***
F. Trex Signature post skirt or post sleeve skirt**
G. Trex Signature post**
   2-1/2″
   - 36″ (actual length 37″ [940 mm])
   - 42″ (actual length 43″ [1092 mm])
   or Trex 4x4 post sleeve**
   - 36″ (actual length 40″ [102 cm])
   - 42″ (actual length 46″ [117 cm])
H. Trex Signature post cap or post sleeve cap**
I. Trex Signature upper rail bracket and cover
J. Trex Signature lower rail tabless bracket and cover

* *Covers are slightly longer to accommodate crossover post applications.*
** *Item not included in Trex Signature Panel kits. Both 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) and 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4″ x 4″ pressure-treated post.*
*** *Required ONLY for all clear span applications over 6′ (1.83 m) when fixed baluster is centered or unsupported spans greater than 5′ (1.52 m). For example, if an 8′ (2.44 m) panel is cut into a 5-1/2′ (1.68 m) section, it would require a Foot Block due to the off-center placement of the fixed baluster.*

NOTE: If installing 42″ (1067 mm) railing, and using pressure-treated posts with Trex post sleeves, ensure that a longer pressure-treated post is used along with longer post sleeve, both cut to a height of 46″ (1168 mm) from decking surface.

TOOLS NEEDED



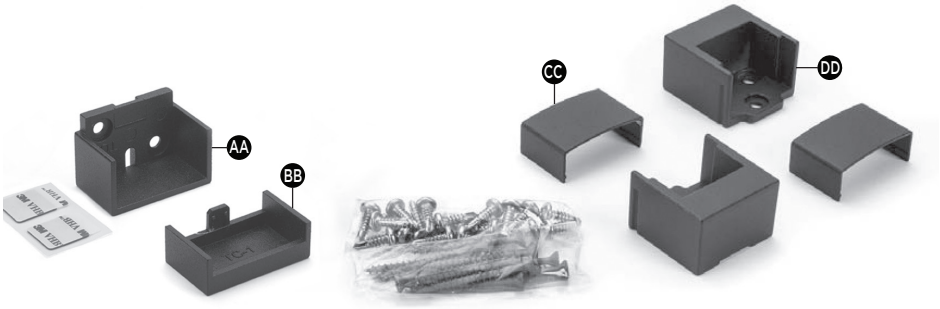
NOTES:

- *Assembled Trex Signature Panels DO NOT come with Foot Blocks. You must purchase Foot Blocks separately. SKU – BKALFTBLK (one per panel required on spans greater than 6′, see note below***).*
- *Assembled Trex Signature Panels DO NOT come with brackets and screws. You must purchase the horizontal rail hardware separately. SKU – BKFHBKTALPNL (one per panel).*

BRACKET HARDWARE – HORIZONTAL APPLICATIONS
(INCLUDING HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS)
TREX SIGNATURE®

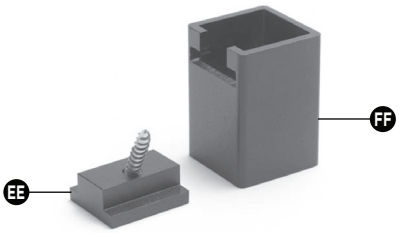
HORIZONTAL RAILING HARDWARE

AA. Tabless Lower rail bracket
BB. Lower rail bracket cover
CC. Upper rail bracket cover
DD. Upper rail bracket



FOOT BLOCK COMPONENTS

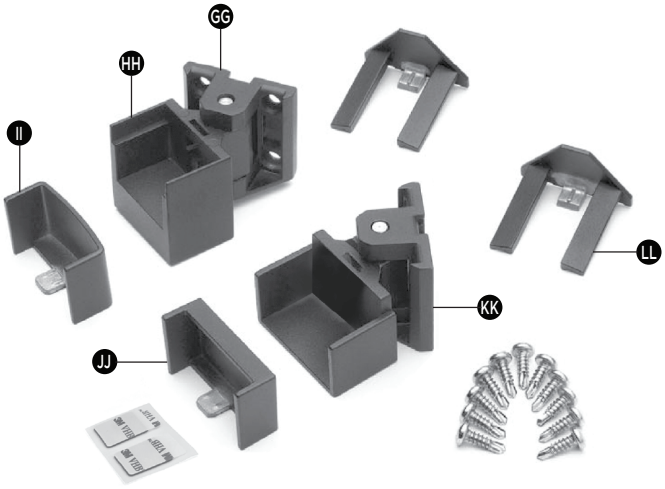
EE. Foot Block base
FF. Foot Block support



HORIZONTAL SWIVEL HARDWARE

GG. Swivel base
HH. Horizontal swivel bracket top rail
II. Horizontal swivel bracket top rail cover
JJ. Horizontal swivel bracket bottom rail cover
KK. Horizontal swivel bracket bottom rail bracket
LL. Swivel base cover

NOTE: *For measurements and detailed horizontal swivel hardware installation instructions, please see the complete Trex Signature installation section.*



HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL PANELS
TREX SIGNATURE®

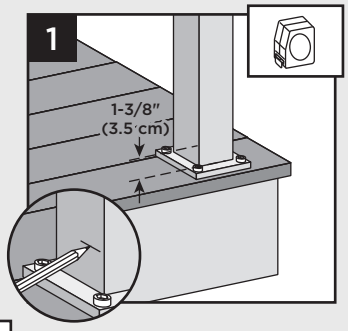
NOTE:
» FOR POST INSTALLATIONS, SEE PAGES 76-77 FOR DETAILS

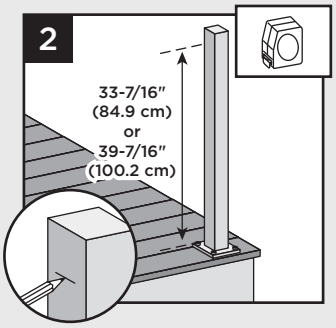
» FOR EASE OF INSTALLATION, IT IS RECOMMENDED THAT YOU USE THE Trex Signature RAIL TEMPLATES TO ATTACH BRACKETS (SOLD SEPARATELY).

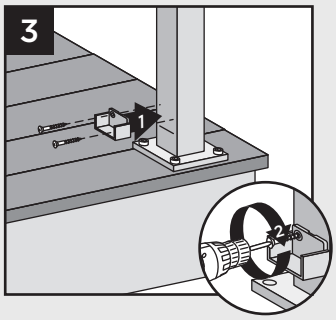
Attach Brackets Using Trex Signature Posts

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-3/8" (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.



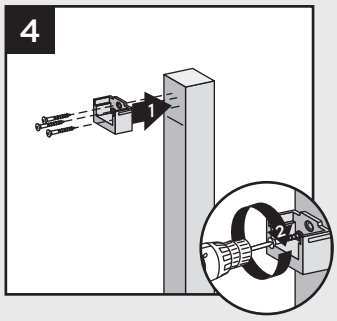




2. Measure up from post base plate 33-7/16" (84.9 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-7/16" (100.2 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

NOTE: *If measuring from decking surface, measure up 33-15/16" (86.2 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16" (101.4 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height.*

3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using (3) self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

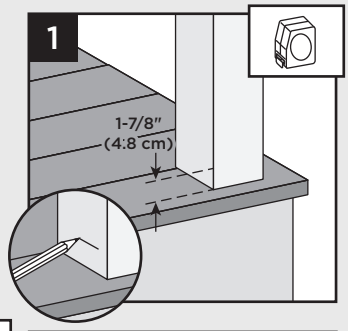


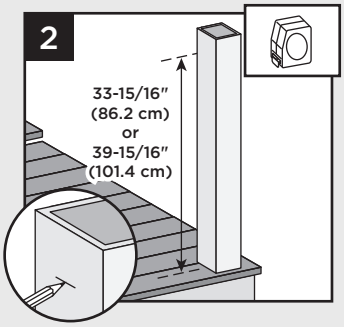
NOTE: *Upper bracket is not required on crossover post configuration.*

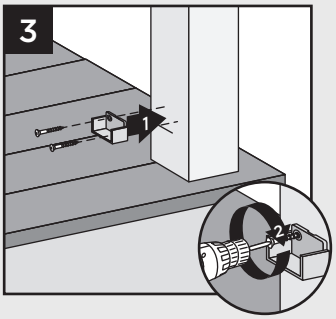
Attach Brackets Using Pressure-Treated Posts and Post Sleeves

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.

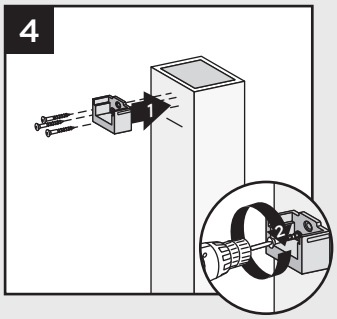






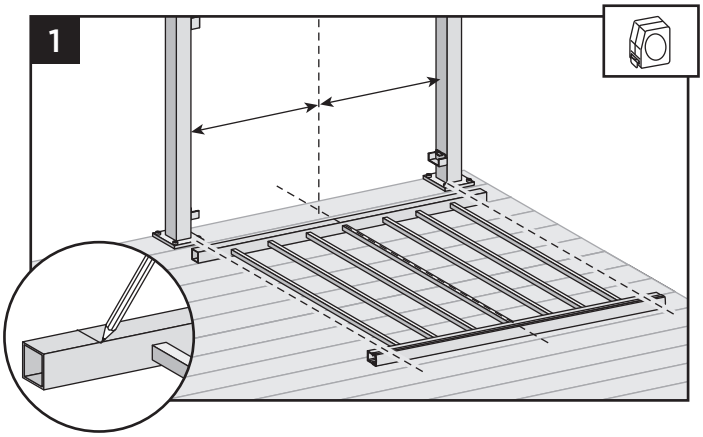
2. Measure up from decking surface 33-15/16" (86.2 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16" (101.4 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two 2" (51 mm) wood screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using three 2" (51 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

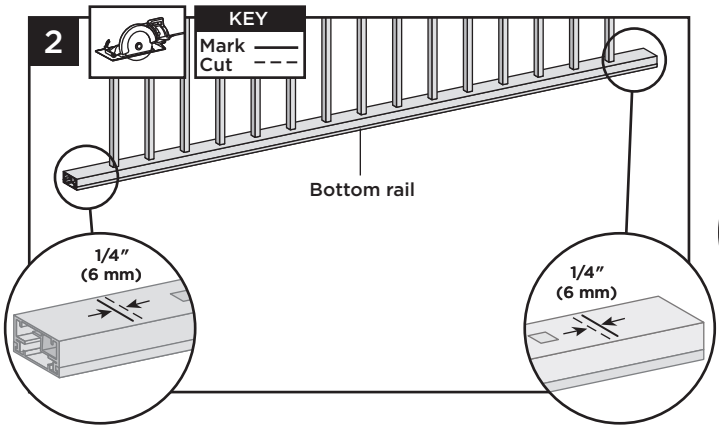
How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top Railings of Trex Signature Panel (When REQUIRED)



1. Position panel between posts and align with bottom bracket. Align center baluster with middle of span between posts (this will allow for equal spacing between end balusters and each post). Mark bottom and top rail at each end.

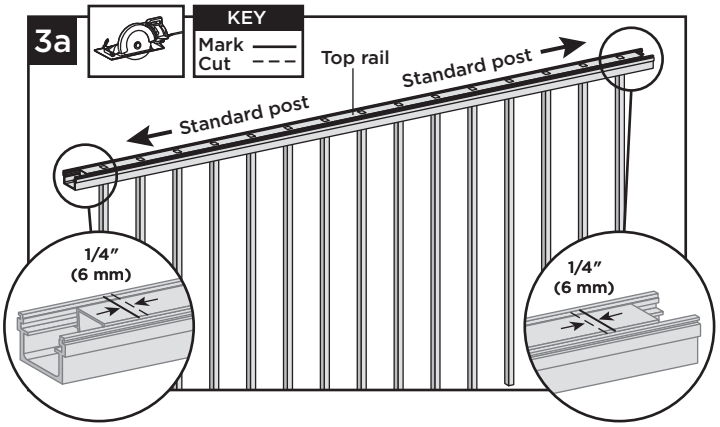
NOTE: *If the end balusters fall too close to the brackets, the center point can be adjusted one baluster to the left or right to allow more room.*

Cutting Bottom Rail



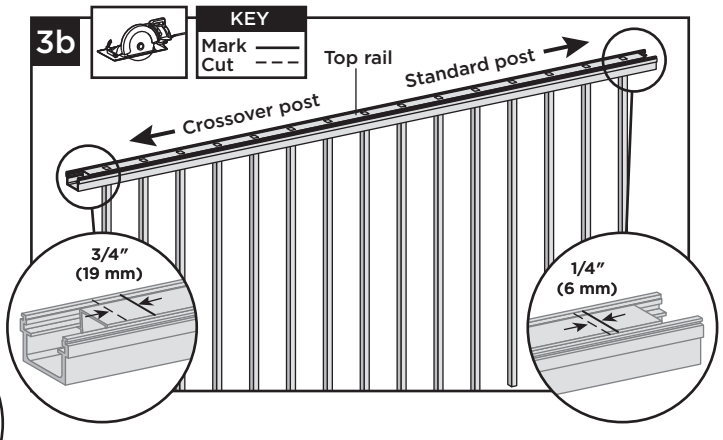
2. Using a saw equipped with a non-ferrous metal blade, cut each end of bottom rail and bottom rail insert 1/4" (6 mm) shorter than mark on each end to allow for fit into bottom rail brackets.

Cutting Top Rail
Option 1:
For Post-to-Post Configuration



3a. Using a saw equipped with a non-ferrous metal blade, cut each end of top rail 1/4" (6 mm) shorter than mark to allow for fit into top rail brackets.

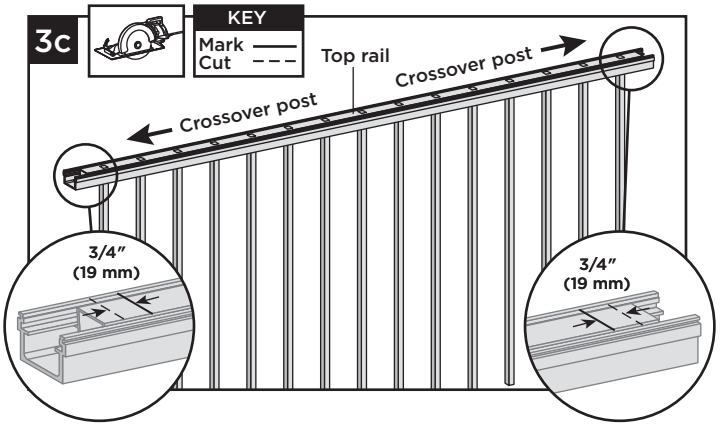
Cutting Top Rail
Option 2:
For Post-to-Crossover Post Configuration



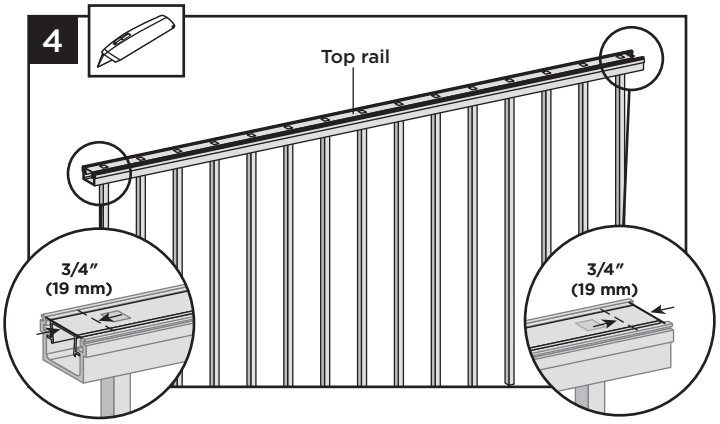
3b. Top rail must be cut differently on each side of the rail. Railing side that attaches to standard post should be cut 1/4" (6 mm) shorter than the mark to allow for fit into top rail bracket. Railing side that attaches to the crossover post should be cut 3/4" (19 mm) **LONGER** than the mark to allow for fit into the crossover post bracket.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Cutting Top Rail
Option 3:
For Crossover Post-to-Crossover Post Configuration

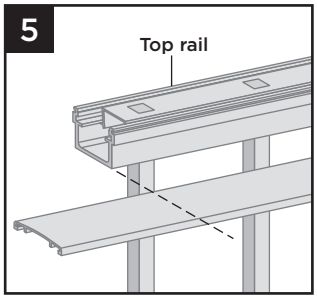


3c. Cut each end of top rail 3/4″ (19 mm) **LONGER** than the mark to allow for fitting into the crossover post bracket on each side.

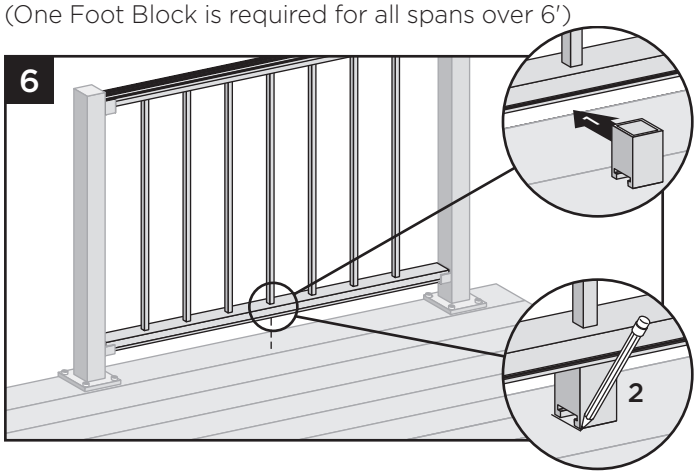


4. Using razor knife or other cutting tool, cut rail insert 3/4″ (19 mm) **FROM EACH SIDE**.

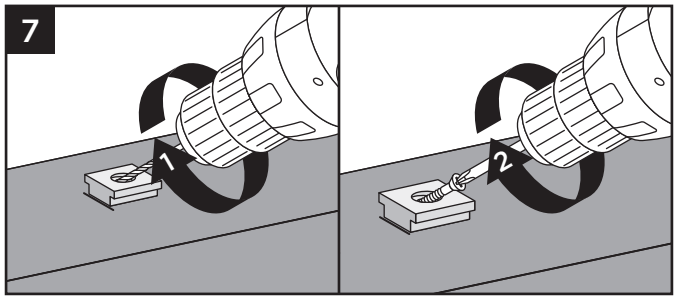
5. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.



Attaching Foot Block (when required)
(One Foot Block is required for all spans over 6′)

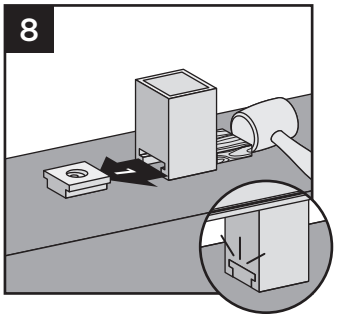


6. Temporarily place panel onto brackets. To ensure correct location, place Foot Block under center of bottom panel rail. Mark to provide placement location of base.



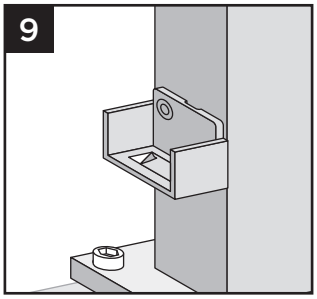
7. Remove railing panel and place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16″ bit. Attach base of Foot Block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

8. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap Foot Block until it locks into place.



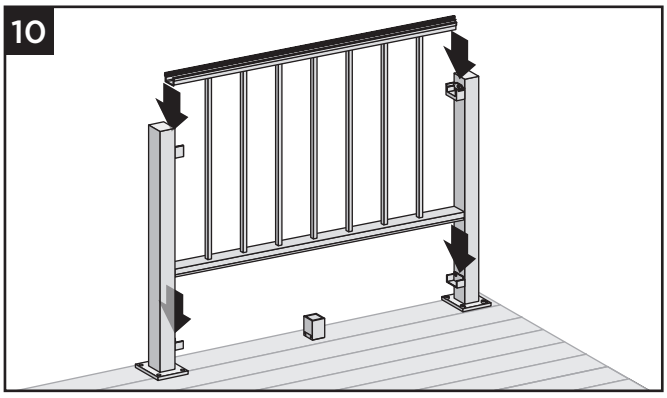
Installing Trex Signature Panel Using Lower Rail Tabless Bracket

9. Peel backings from adhesive strip provided and place inside the bottom bracket.



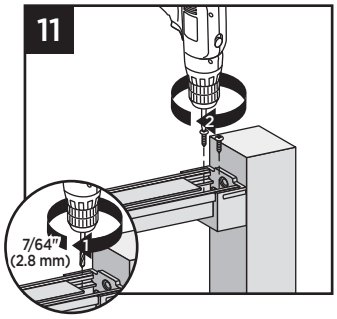
NOTE: *Make sure surface is clean and dry.*

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL PANELS/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

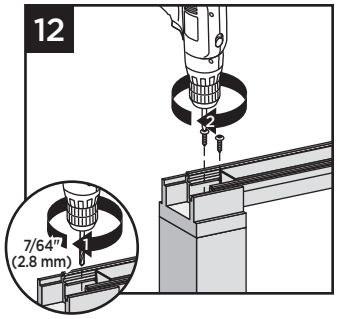


10. Place panel in bottom and top brackets.

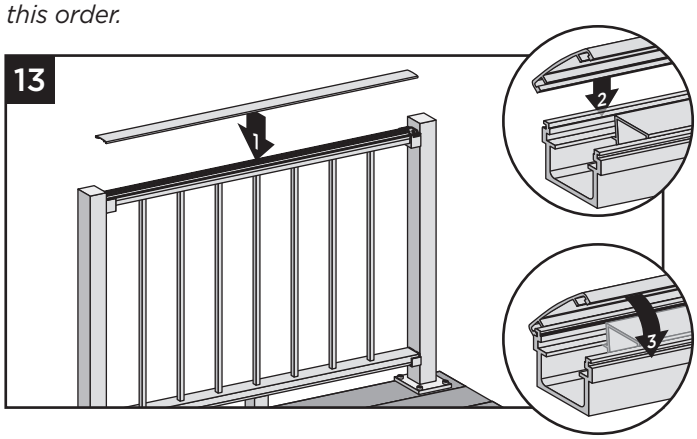
11. For post-to-post configuration, pre-drill using a 7/64" (0.28 cm) drill bit, and fasten upper rail to each bracket by installing screws diagonally through upper rail into bracket using two self-tapping screws each side *(provided with bracket kit)*.



12. For crossover post configuration, fasten upper rail to crossover post by installing screws diagonally through upper rail into post using two self-tapping screws each side *(provided with bracket kit)*.

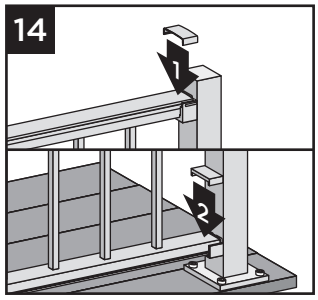


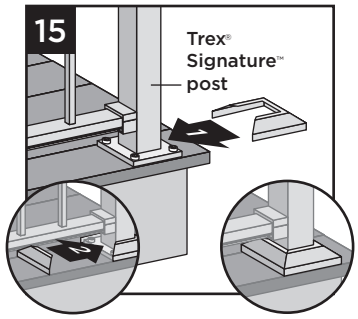
NOTE: *Pre-drilling is required. It's best practice to pre-drill a single hole, then attach screw, and continue in this order.*



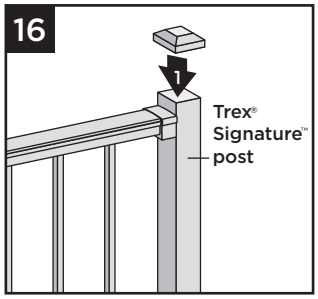
13. Attach upper rail cover to upper rail by aligning cover on one side of rail. Then, starting from one end of rail, snap cover onto opposing slot working down length of rail. **GENTLE** tapping with a **rubber mallet** may facilitate fastening.

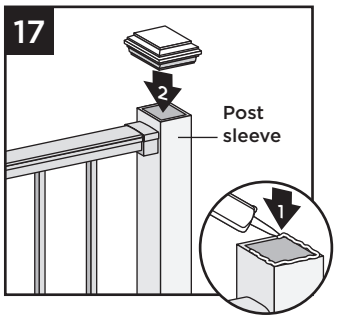
Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps





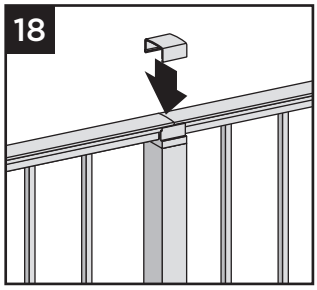
14. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.
15. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.





16. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts (use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment).
17. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).

18. For crossover post configuration, attach crossover post cap to crossover post.

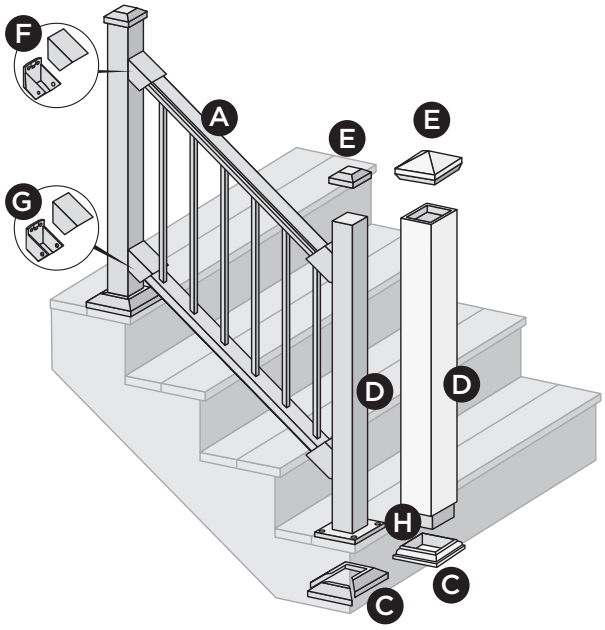


TREX SIGNATURE® STAIR PANELS

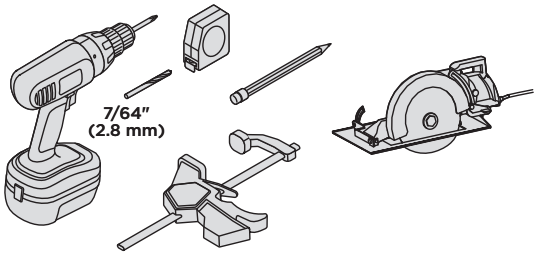
NOTES:

- *FOR A 6′ OR 8′ STAIR RAIL, POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING STAIR POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM STAIR RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE STAIR RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *TREX SIGNATURE POSTS CANNOT BE USED WITH TREX SIGNATURE TRADITIONAL OR TREX SIGNATURE COCKTAIL STAIR DESIGNS, ONLY PRESSURE-TREATED POST/POST SLEEVES CAN BE USED. REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR MORE INFORMATION.*
- *Assembled Trex Signature Stair Panels DO NOT come with brackets and screws. You must purchase the stair rail hardware separately (sku BKFSBKTAL) (one per panel).*
- *All Trex Signature stair installations require the use of 53″ (134.6 CM) stair post, measured and cut to appropriate length if required.*
- *If crossover stair post is required, use stair post (again cut to appropriate length if required) and use swivel crossover bracket.*
- *Trex Signature Stair fixed brackets are designed to work only with stair slopes of 32°-37°. For smaller (less than 32°) or larger angles (greater than 37°), use the Trex Signature Stair Swivel brackets.*
- *At all final end post configurations, top stair rail will need to be measured (making sure balusters line up vertically) and cut.*
- *SEE PAGE 70 FOR SKU NUMBERS.*

PARTS



TOOLS NEEDED



A. Trex Signature Stair Panel (includes top and bottom railings and square balusters)
B. Trex Signature Foot Block (not shown)***
C. Trex Signature post skirt or post sleeve skirt**
D. Trex Signature post**
   - 36″ (actual length 37″ [940 mm])
   - 42″ (actual length 43″ [1092 mm])
   or Trex 4x4 post sleeve**
   - 36″ (actual length 40″ [102 cm])
   - 42″ (actual length 46″ [117 cm])
E. Trex Signature post cap or post sleeve cap**
F. Trex Signature upper stair rail fixed bracket and cover
G. Trex Signature lower stair rail fixed bracket and cover

* *Covers are slightly longer to accommodate crossover post applications.*
** *Item not included in Trex Signature Stair Panel kits. Both 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) and 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4″ x 4″ pressure-treated post.*
*** *Foot Blocks for stairs are sold separately and recommended for use in Signature Cocktail and Signature Traditional stair applications over 6′.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

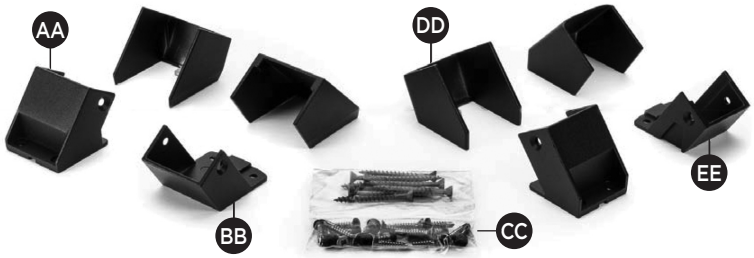
TREX SIGNATURE® STAIR PANELS

BRACKET HARDWARE (INCLUDING STAIR SWIVEL BRACKETS, STAIR CROSSOVER BRACKET, AND COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS)

TREX SIGNATURE

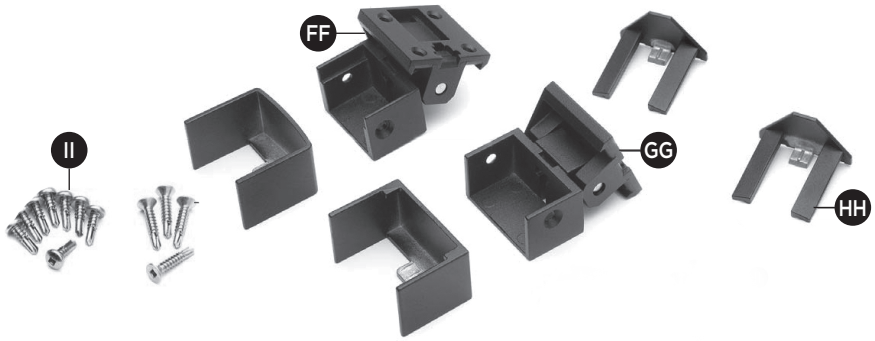
FIXED BRACKET – STAIR HARDWARE

AA. Bottom Stair Bracket and Cover – Lower Rail
BB. Top Stair Bracket and Cover – Lower Rail
CC. Fastener Pack
DD. Bottom Stair Bracket and Cover – Upper Rail
EE. Top Stair Bracket and Cover – Upper Rail



SWIVEL BRACKET – STAIR HARDWARE

FF. Swivel Top Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
GG. Swivel Bottom Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
HH. Fastener Covers
II. Fastener Pack

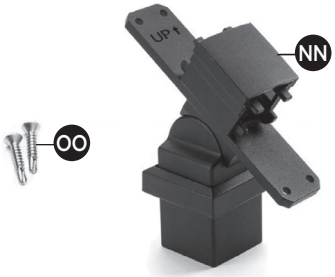


COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKET – STAIR HARDWARE

JJ. Compound Swivel Top Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
KK. Compound Swivel Bottom Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
LL. Fastener Covers
MM. Fastener Pack

SWIVEL CROSSOVER BRACKET KIT – STAIR HARDWARE

NN. Swivel Crossover Bracket – Stair
OO. Post-to-Bracket Fasteners

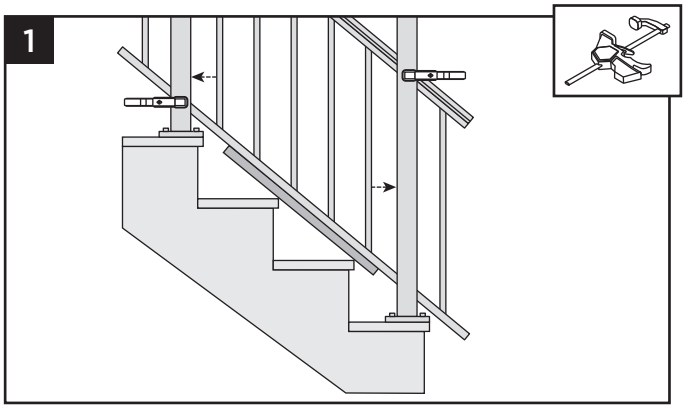


HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® STAIR PANELS
TREX SIGNATURE®

Post Installation:

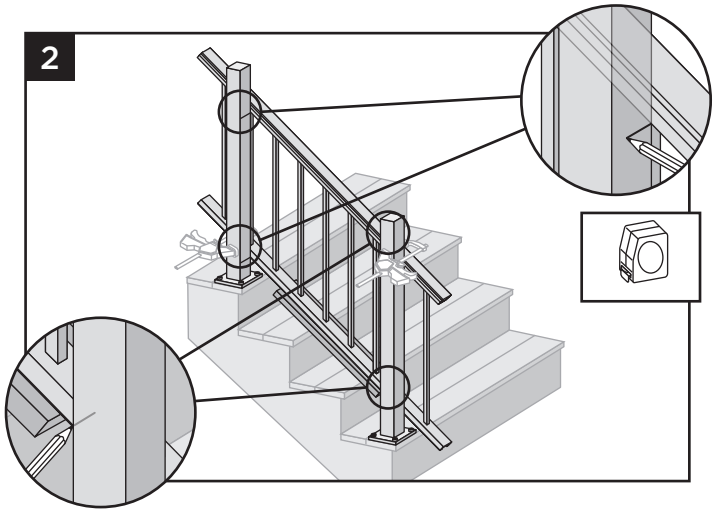
- *If Trex Signature Stair posts are used, install at nose of stair tread directly under required blocking. See Trex Signature horizontal post instructions for details.*
- *If installing pressure-treated posts, please refer to local building code requirements prior to attaching pressure treaded posts. Pressure treated posts must be installed on the inside of the stair stringer and at the nose of the stair tread. In most cases, a pressure-treated post and post sleeve longer than 39" will be needed for stair applications.*

Attaching Signature Stair Panel using Fixed Stair Brackets

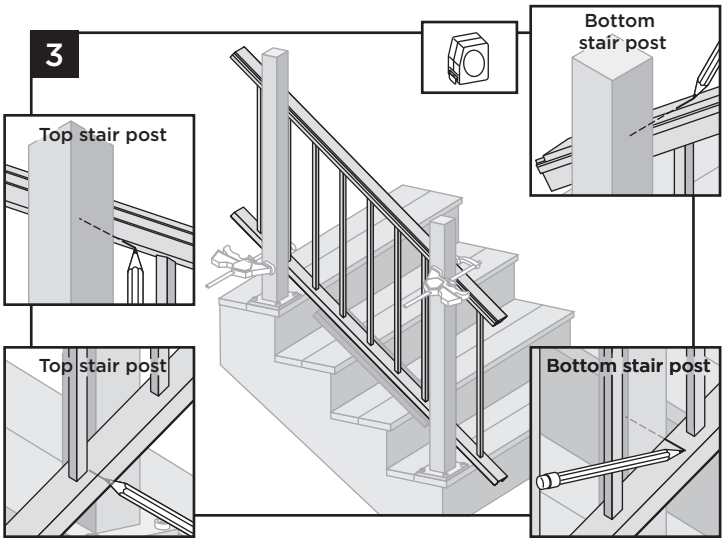


1. Use a 1" deck board as a spacer board and lay this on the stair treads between the posts. Place stair panel on top of the deck board and clamp stair panel to posts. Ensure that balusters are straight and positioned with equal spacing at post locations.

Mark for Bracket Locations and Rail Cuts

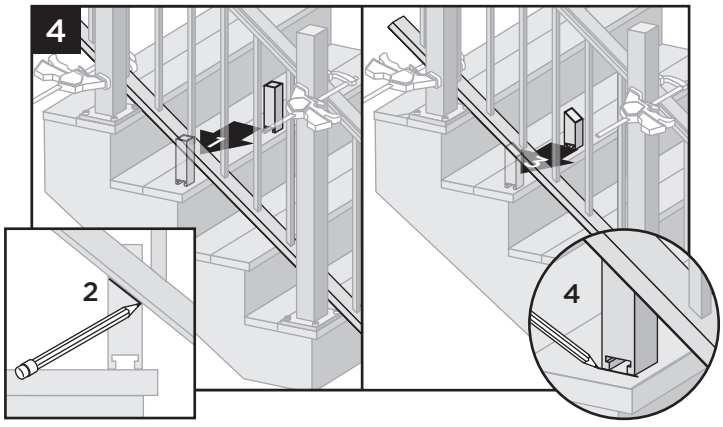


2. Mark posts for bracket locations. Mark at the underside of both top and bottom stair railing locations.



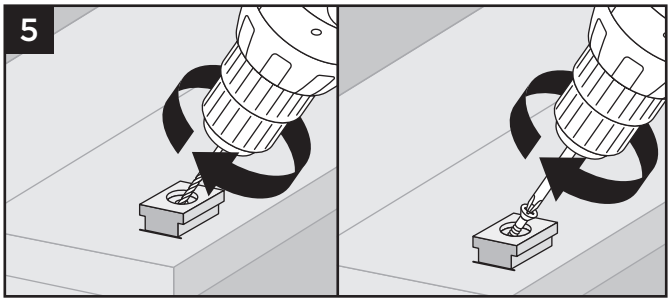
3. Mark stair rails to cut. At top stair post location, mark UNDERSIDE of lower and upper stair rails. At bottom stair post location, mark TOPSIDE of lower and upper stair rails.

Attaching Foot Block (where recommended)



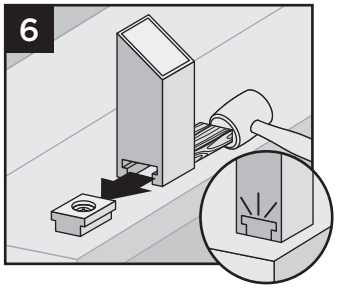
4. Mark location of angle on foot block and cut on mark. Then place foot block under the center of the bottom stair rail. Mark placement location of the base.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

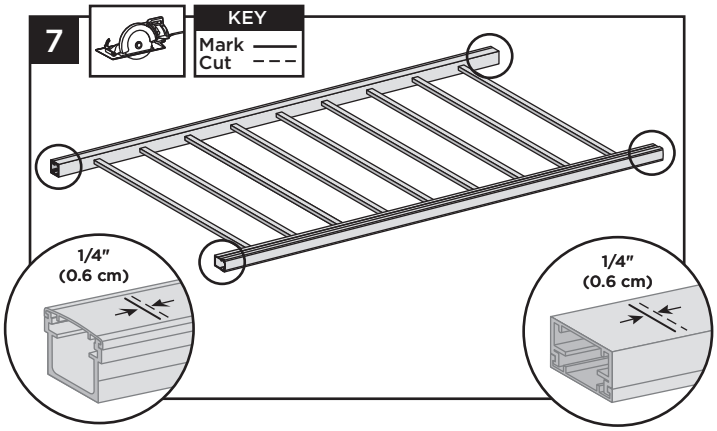


5. Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16″ bit. Attach base of foot block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

6. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap foot block until it locks into place.



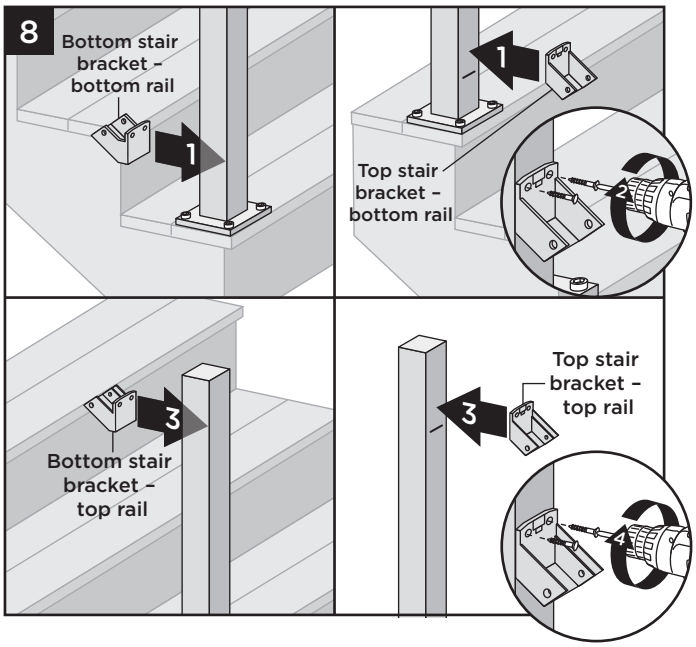
Cutting Stair Panel Rails:



7. Remove panel and place on flat surface. Cut each end of the bottom and top stair rails 1/4″ (0.6 cm) shorter than the mark on each end to allow for fit into stair rail brackets.

NOTES:

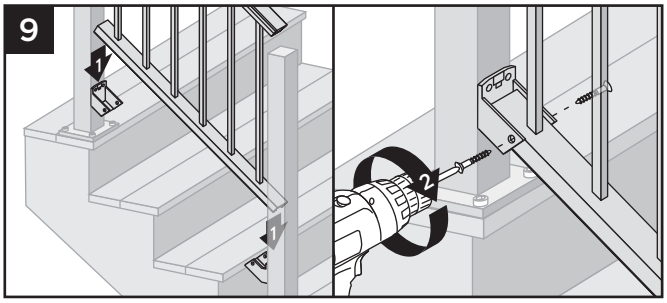
» *Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut.*



Attaching Upper and Lower Stair Brackets

8. Center stair brackets on posts above the marked line and attach using two self-tapping screws (provided). In some cases it may be difficult to attach the stair bracket on the lower stair post. **A 90˚cordless drill is recommended to attach screws in this area.**

Attaching Stair Panel to Brackets



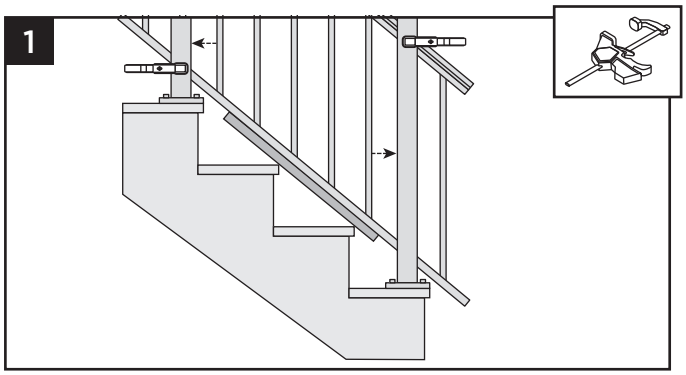
9. Attach stair panel to brackets using two self-tapping screws (provided) on each side of stair bracket.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® STAIR PANEL USING STAIR SWIVEL/COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS

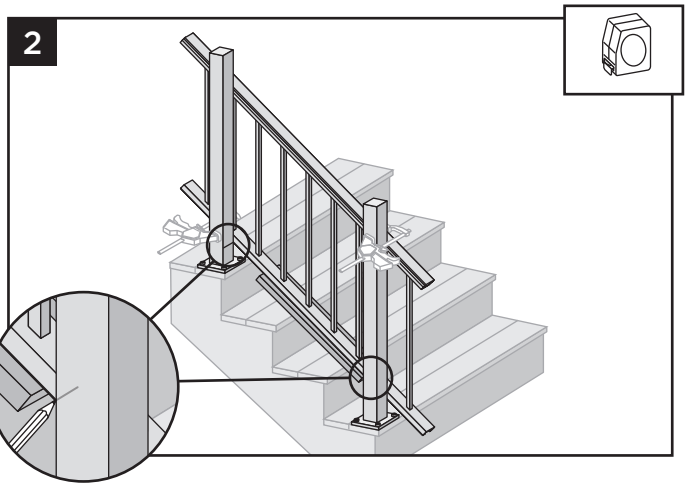
TREX SIGNATURE®

Attaching Signature Stair Panel using Fixed Stair Brackets

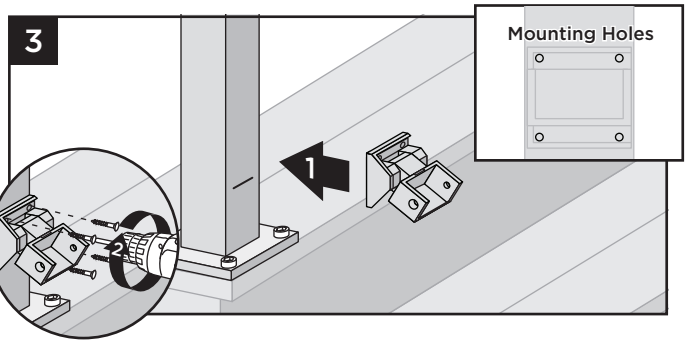


1. Use a 1" deck board as a spacer board and lay this on the stair treads between the posts. Place stair panel on top of the deck board and clamp stair panel to posts. Ensure that balusters are straight and positioned with equal spacing at post locations.

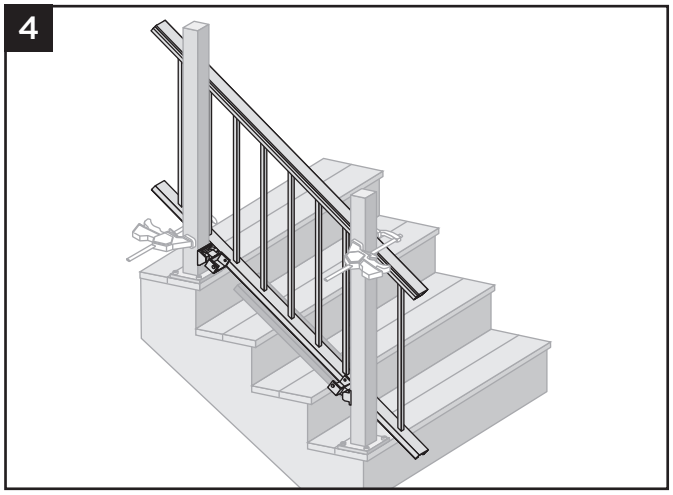
Installing Lower Stair Swivel or Compound Brackets



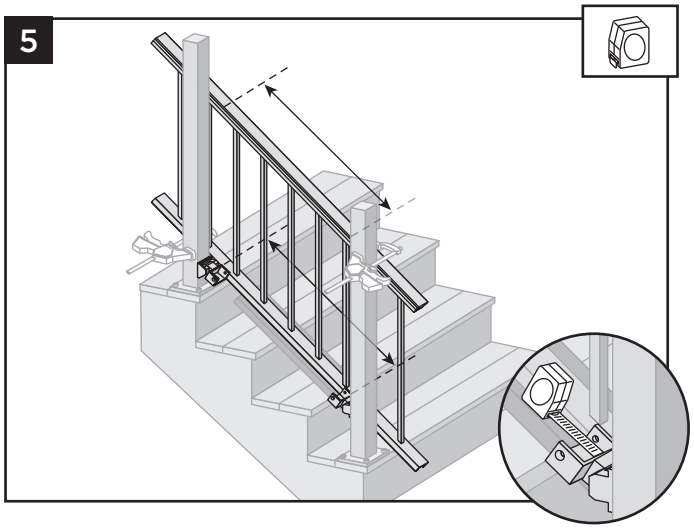
2. Mark where lower swivel brackets are to be attached to both posts. Mark posts at underside of railing.



3. Center lower stair swivel brackets on posts above the marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws (provided). In some cases it may be difficult to attach the stair bracket on the lower stair post. **A 90° cordless drill is recommended to attach screws in this area.**



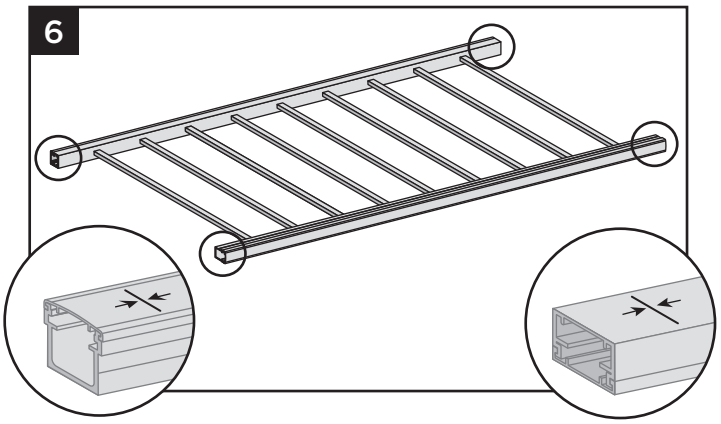
4. After lower swivel brackets are installed clamp panel to posts in same location as before, again ensuring balusters are parallel and evenly spaced between posts.



5. With lower swivel brackets in correct locations, measure distance from inside of swivel bracket to inside of swivel bracket. Ensure balusters are parallel and centered in between the posts and also allow for clearance for attachment of brackets. Mark both lower and upper rail at this distance.

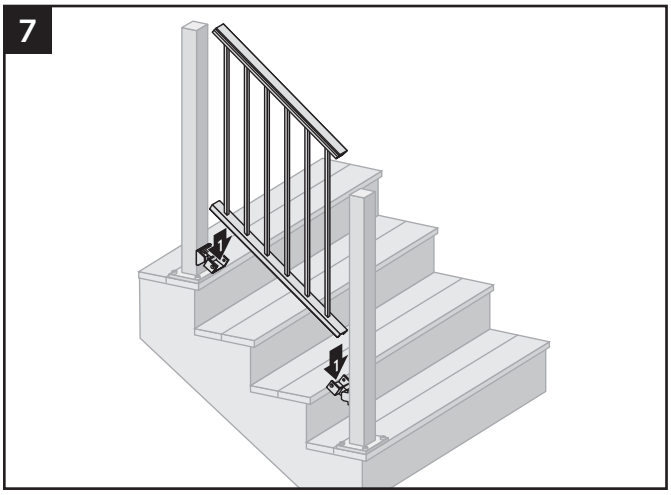
HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® STAIR PANEL USING STAIR SWIVEL/COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Cutting Stair Panel Rails:

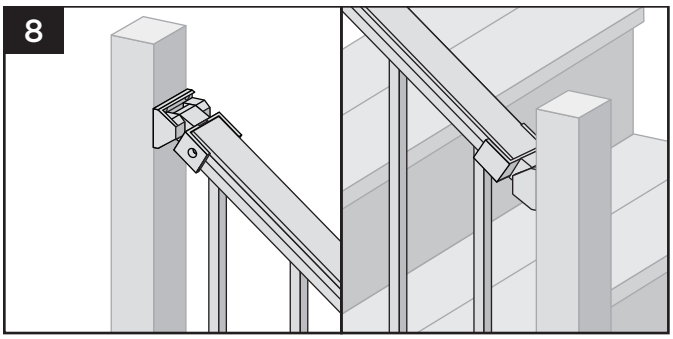


6. Remove panel and place on flat surface. Cut each end of the bottom and top stair rails on marked location.

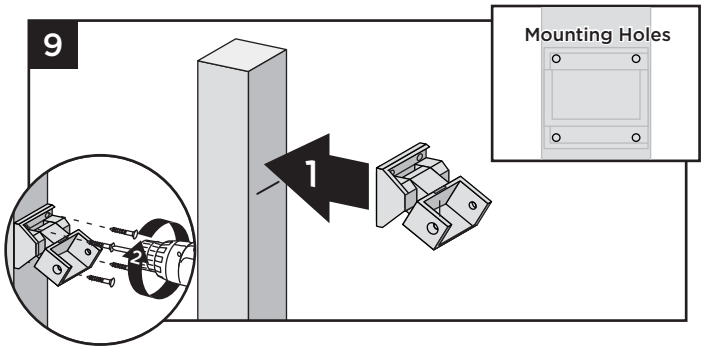
NOTE: Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut.



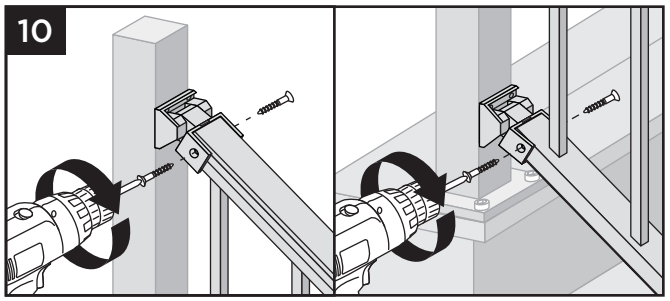
7. Set stair panel into lower swivel brackets.



8. Temporarily place upper swivel brackets on top rail and mark location on posts at underside of the brackets.

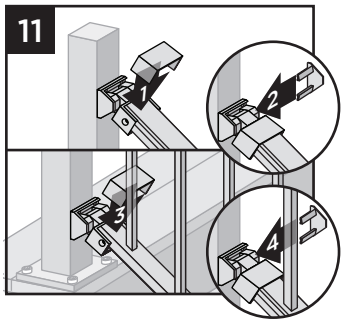


9. Remove stair panel and center upper swivel brackets on post above marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws (provided).



10. Set stair panel into lower and upper swivel brackets. Attach stair panel to brackets using two self-tapping screws (provided) on each side of stair bracket.

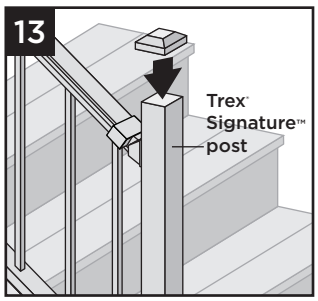
Attachment of Stair Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps



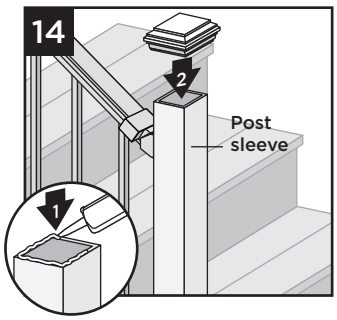
11. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.
12. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® STAIR PANEL USING STAIR SWIVEL/COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

13. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts (use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment).



14. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs).



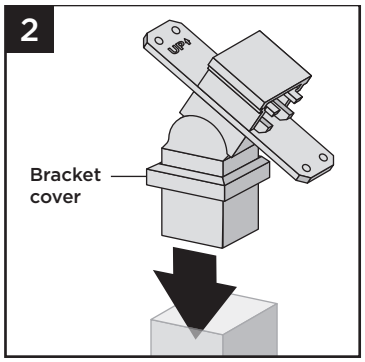
ATTACHING CROSSOVER SWIVEL BRACKETS ON SIGNATURE POSTS
TREX SIGNATURE®

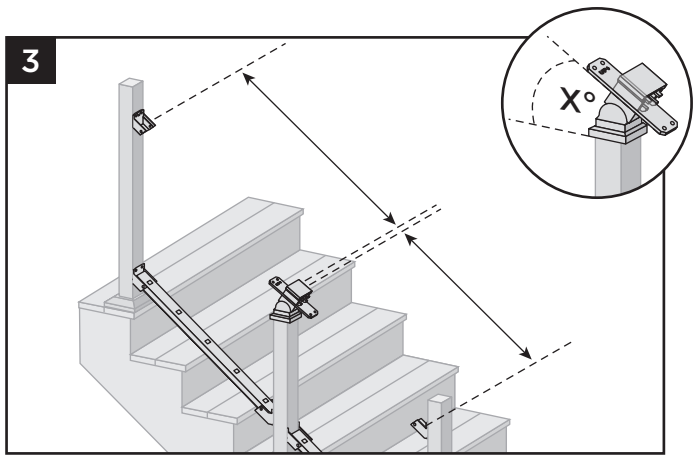
1. Follow previous instructions for installation of stair panel using fixed or swivel brackets but **DO NOT CUT TOP RAIL.**

Determining Placement of Stair Crossover Swivel Bracket

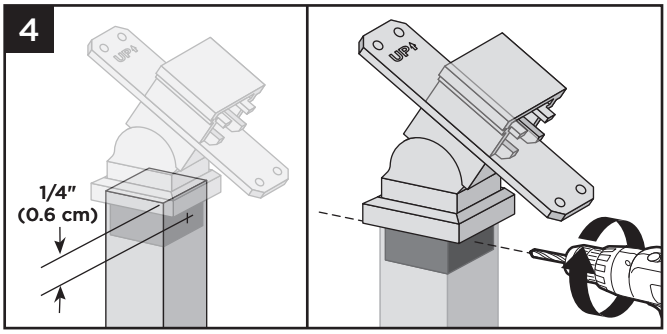
2. Insert stair crossover swivel bracket into post.

NOTE: Keep the bracket cover on when inserting this into post, this will cover the screw attachment area.





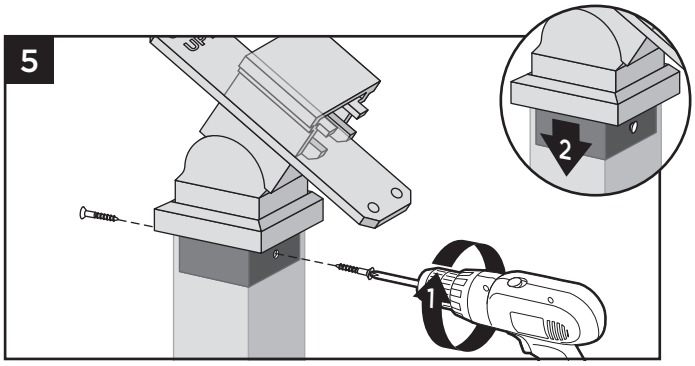
3. Determine location/height of the stair crossover swivel bracket by aligning the angle of this with the fixed brackets already installed. Note that the crossover post may need to be cut to ensure the top stair rail is parallel to the bottom stair rail.



Attaching Stair Crossover Swivel Bracket to Post

4. Once location/height is determined, center and predrill two holes (using a drill bit slightly smaller than that of self-tapping screw diameter) on opposite sides of post, approximately. 1/4" (0.6 cm) from top of post. Drill through the post and into the stair crossover swivel bracket on each side.

NOTE: *Slightly countersink pre-drilled holes to allow for flat head screws to seat flush on the post. This will allow cover to fit over screw heads.*

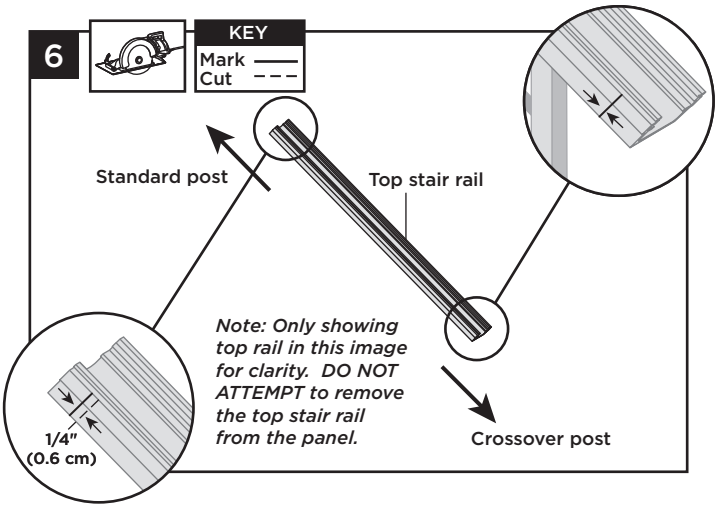


5. Attach stair crossover swivel bracket to post with two self-tapping screws (provided). Slide cover over post to hide screws.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

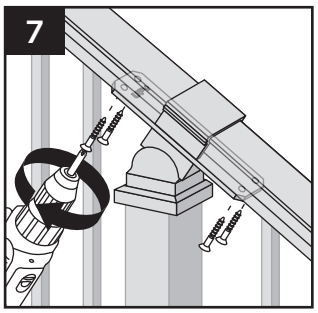
ATTACHING CROSSOVER SWIVEL BRACKETS ON SIGNATURE POSTS
TREX SIGNATURE®

Cutting Top Stair Rail
For Stair Post-to-Stair Crossover Post Configuration



6. Top stair rail must be cut differently on each side of the rail. Railing side that attaches to standard post and if using a fixed bracket, should be cut 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than the mark to allow for fit into top rail bracket. Railing side that attaches using a stair swivel bracket should cut on the mark . Railing side that attaches to the crossover post should be cut directly on the mark to allow for fit into the crossover post bracket.

NOTE: *Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut.*



7. For stair crossover post 7 configuration, fasten upper stair rail to swivel crossover post bracket by installing screws diagonally through crossover stair bracket into upper rail using two self-tapping screws (provided) on each side.

Attachment of Brackets

8. *See previous instructions based on bracket type installed.*

Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps

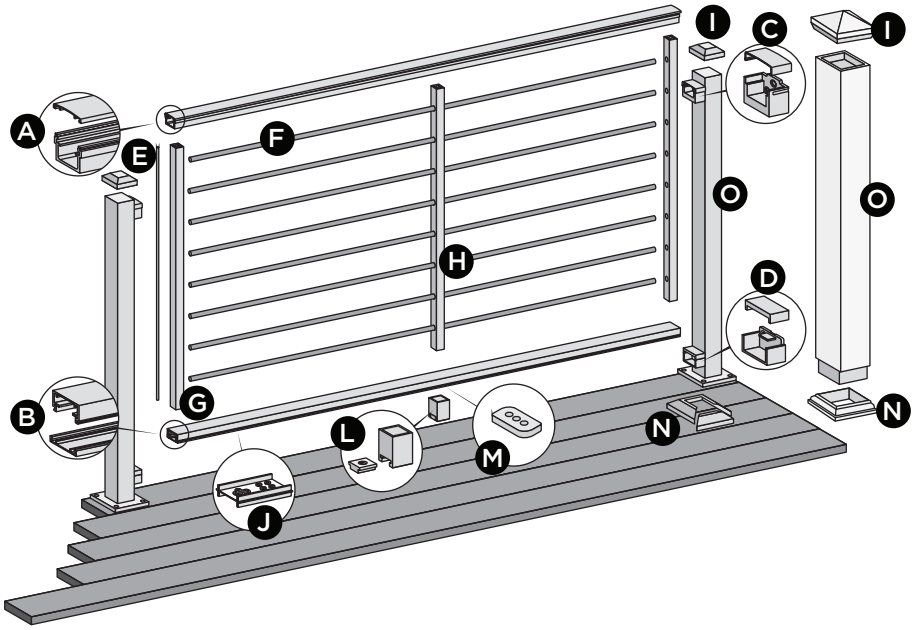
9. *See previous instructions.*

HORIZONTAL ROD RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

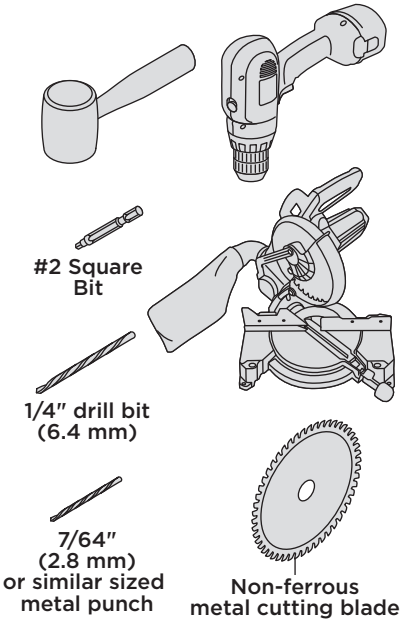
NOTES:

- *Adjust drill power to lowest setting that will drive screw.* ***DO NOT OVER TORQUE 316 STAINLESS STEEL STAINLESS FASTENERS.***
- ***NEVER*** *use impact tools on 316 Stainless Steel Fasteners.*
- *Be careful inserting rods through intermediate vertical supports. Lay pieces on a flat, solid surface and insert as straight as possible to prevent scratching.*
- *When marking lines on bottom rail, do not make a mark wider than 1" or it will be visible after installation.*
- ***TOP AND BOTTOM RAILS ARE DIFFERENT LENGTHS, TO ACCOMMODATE THE INSTALLATION OF CROSSOVER POST APPLICATIONS.***
- ***ALL ROD RAILS OVER 6' WILL REQUIRE THE USE OF A FOOT BLOCK, THUS THESE RAILING SPANS MUST BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST.***

PARTS



TOOLS NEEDED



A. Trex Signature top rail and crowned cover
   - 6' (actual length 73-1/2" [1867 mm])
   - 8' (actual length 97-1/2" [2477 mm])
B. Trex Signature bottom rail and flat cover
   - 6' (actual length 71-1/2" [181.6 cm])
   - 8' (actual length 95-1/2" [242.6 cm])
C. Trex Signature upper rail bracket and cover
D. Trex Signature lower rail bracket and cover
E. Anti-rattle strip
F. Rod
G. End vertical support
H. Intermediate vertical support
   Note: *1 for 6' span/2 for 8' span*
I. Trex Signature post cap or post sleeve cap**
J. Template
L. Trex Signature Foot Block****
M. HZ spacer
N. Trex Signature post skirt or post sleeve skirt**
O. Trex Signature post
   - 36" (actual length 37" [94.0 cm])
   - 42" (actual length 43" [109.2 cm])
   or Trex 4" x 4" post sleeve**
   - 36" (actual length 40" [102 cm])
   - 42" (actual length 46" [117 cm])

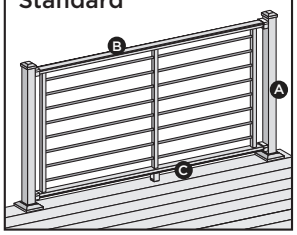
** *Item not included in Trex Signature Railing kits. Both 4" x 4" (10.2 cm x 10.2 cm) and 6" x 6" (15.2 cm x 15.2 cm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4" x 4" pressure-treated post.*
*** *For 8' Rail Sections only - RODRAILSTIFFENER (included with kit), not shown above*
****Foot Block required for all spans greater than 6'*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SIGNATURE® HORIZONTAL ROD RAILING
RAILING CONFIGURATIONS

Note: See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex post mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.

Standard

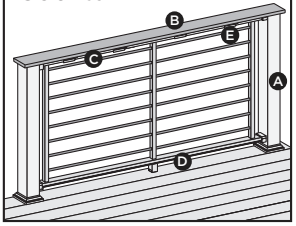


Cutting posts/post sleeves is **NOT** required.

A. Trex Signature post, pressure-treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 post sleeve, or Composite Joist Mount Post/Trex 4 x 4 post sleeve (Inside mount), or Signature Joist Mount Post(Span of 6′ or less only)*
B. Trex Signature top rail
C. Trex Signature bottom rail

See page 138 for "How to Install Standard Rod Railing".

Cocktail



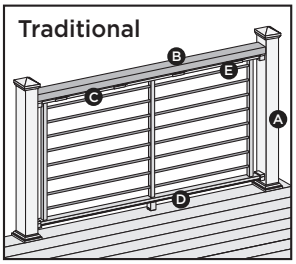
Post sleeves will need to be cut.

A. Pressure-Treated post with Trex post sleeve
   NOTE: » *Only for use with 4x 4 (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve.*
   » *Trex Signature Posts, Trex Post Mounts or Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Cocktail design.*
B. Deck board top rail. ***NOTE:*** *Enhance cannot be used.*
C. Trex Signature top rail
D. Trex Signature bottom rail
E. Trex Signature Cocktail Rail Bracket**

POST SLEEVES WILL NEED TO BE CUT

See page 142 for "How to Install Rod Rail Cocktail Railing".

Traditional



Cutting posts/post sleeves is Not required.

A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 post sleeve, or Joist Mount Post/Trex 4x4 post sleeve*
   NOTE: » *Trex Signature Posts or Trex Signature Joist Mount Posts cannot be used.*
B. 2 x 4 lateral top rail
C. Trex Signature top rail
D. Trex Signature bottom rail
E. Trex Signature Cocktail Rail Bracket**

See page 144 for "How to Install Rod Rail Traditional Railing".

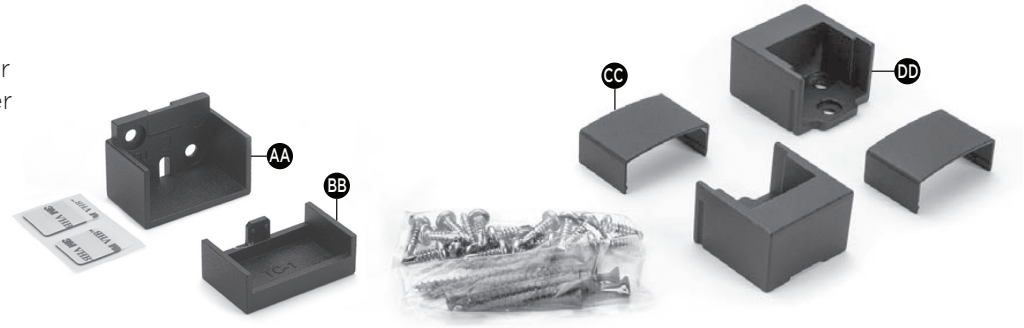
» ***NOTES: For post installations refer to page 77-78.***

*** Trex Signature Cocktail Rail brackets (sold separately) are for use with either Trex Rod Rail Traditional or Trex Rod Rail Cocktail designs. For a 6′ section, use 4 brackets and screws provided, for 8′ section, use 5 brackets and screws provided.*

BRACKET HARDWARE – HORIZONTAL APPLICATIONS (INCLUDING HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS)
TREX SIGNATURE®

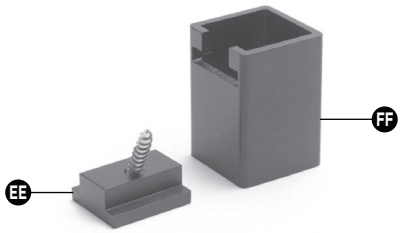
HORIZONTAL RAILING HARDWARE

AA. Lower rail bracket
BB. Lower rail bracket cover
CC. Upper rail bracket cover
DD. Upper rail bracket



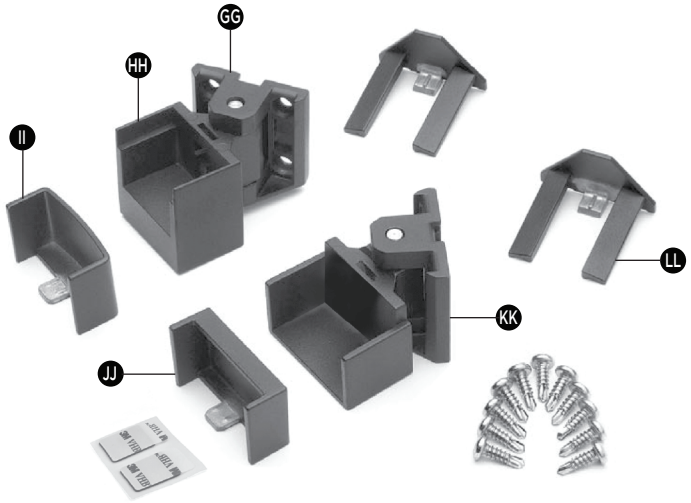
FOOT BLOCK COMPONENTS

EE. Foot Block base
FF. Foot Block support



HORIZONTAL SWIVEL HARDWARE

GG. Swivel base
HH. Horizontal swivel bracket top rail
II. Horizontal swivel bracket top rail cover
JJ. Horizontal swivel bracket bottom rail cover
KK. Horizontal swivel bracket bottom rail
LL. Swivel base cover



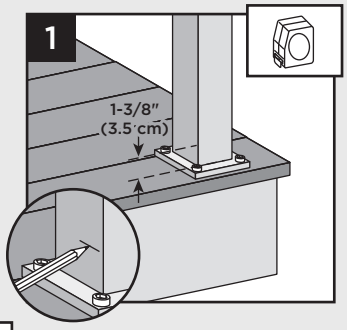
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL ROD RAILING BRACKETS
TREX SIGNATURE®

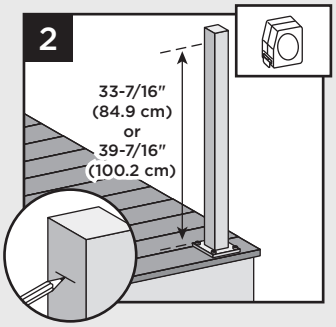
NOTE:
» FOR POST INSTALLATIONS, SEE PAGE 76-77 FOR DETAILS.

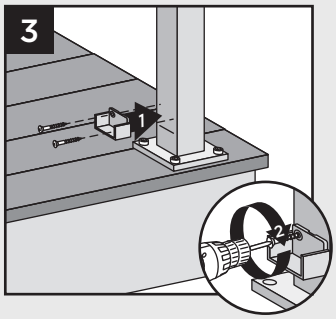
Attach Brackets Using Trex Signature Posts

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-3/8" (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.



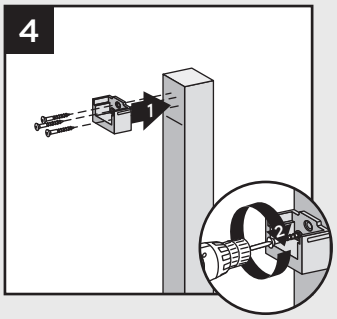




2. Measure up from post base plate 33-7/16" (84.9 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-7/16" (100.2 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

NOTE: *If measuring from decking surface, measure up 33-15/16" (86.2 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16" (101.4 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height.*

3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using (3) self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

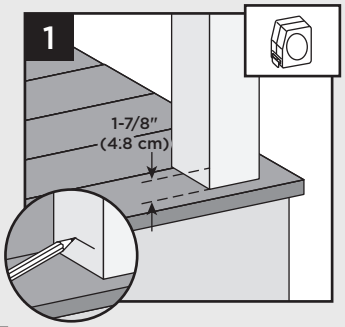


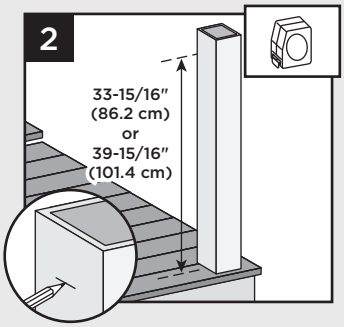
NOTE: *Upper bracket is not required on crossover post configuration.*

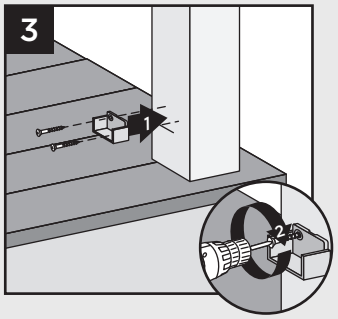
Attach Brackets Using Pressure-Treated Posts and Post Sleeves

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.

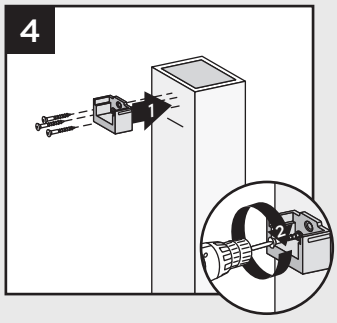






2. Measure up from decking surface 33-15/16" (86.2 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16" (101.4 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two 2" (51 mm) wood screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using three 2" (51 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

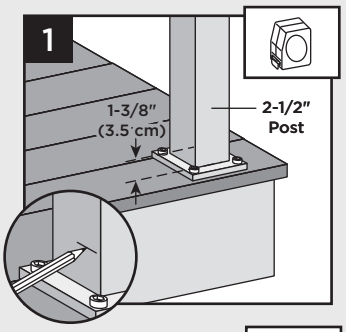
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL ROD RAILING SWIVEL BRACKETS
TREX SIGNATURE®

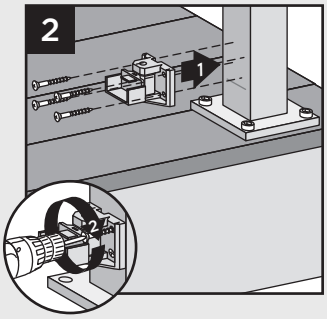
NOTE:
» FOR POST INSTALLATIONS, SEE PAGES 76-77 FOR DETAILS.

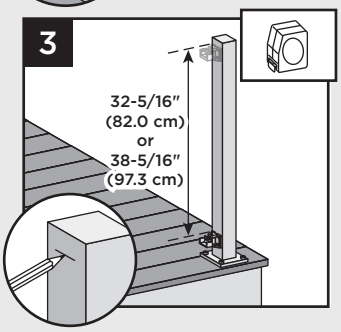
Attach Swivel Brackets Base Using Trex Signature Posts

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

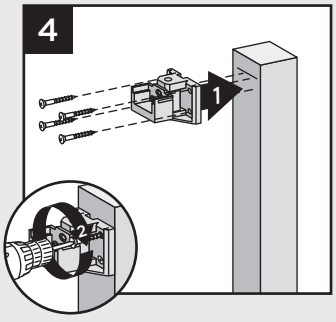
1. Measure 1-3/8" (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.







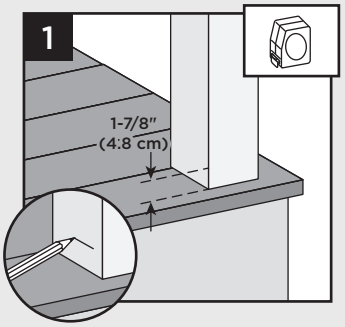
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.
3. Measure up 32-5/16" (82.0 cm) for 36" (91.4 cm) tall railing or 38-5/16" (97.3 cm) for 42" (106.7 cm) tall railing from top of lower rail bracket. Mark with a light line.
4. Center upper bracket on post **below** marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

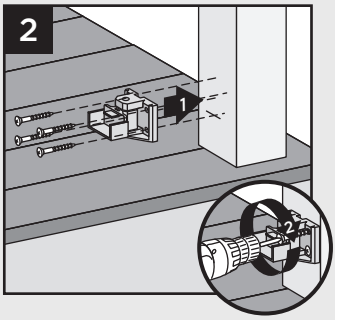


NOTE: *Upper bracket is not required on crossover post configuration.*

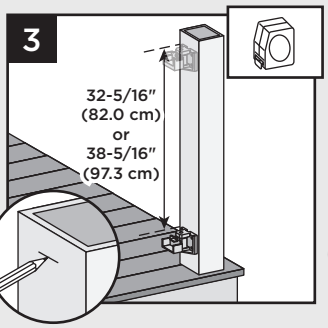
Attach Swivel Brackets Using Pressure-Treated Posts and Post Sleeves

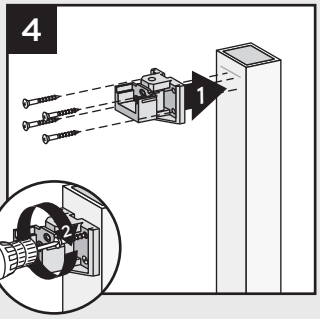
TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.





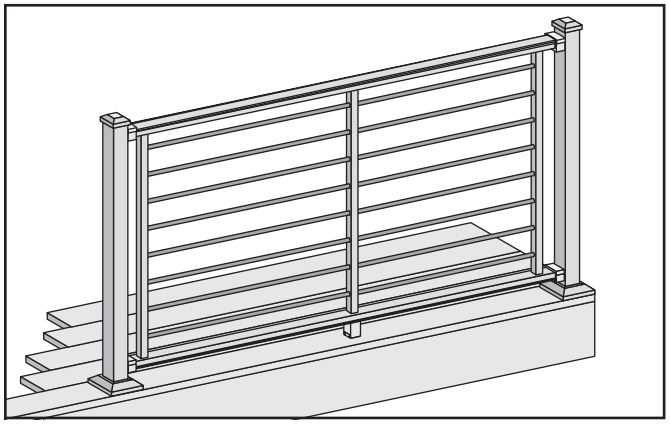
1. Measure 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four 2" (5.1 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.





3. Measure up 32-5/16" (82.0 cm) for 36" (91.4 cm) tall railing or 38-5/16" (97.3 cm) for 42" (106.7 cm) tall railing from top of lower rail bracket. Mark with a light line.
4. Center upper bracket on post **below** marked line and attach using four 2" (5.1 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STANDARD RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

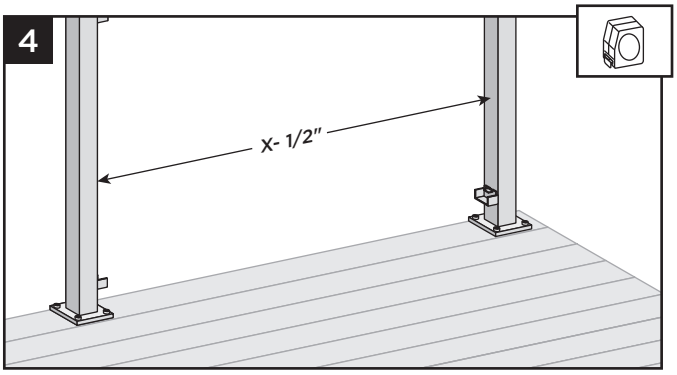


1. Prepare a solid work surface area (plywood, deck surface, etc.).

How to Measure Bottom and Top Railings (When Required)

2. **For Full Span Post to Post Applications** – only top rail will need to be cut.

3. **For Full Span Crossover to Crossover post Applications** – no rails have to be cut, HOWEVER the location of the HZ Template on the top rail will need to be adjusted in 3/4" on each side of top rail to allow for proper placement of vertical supports.

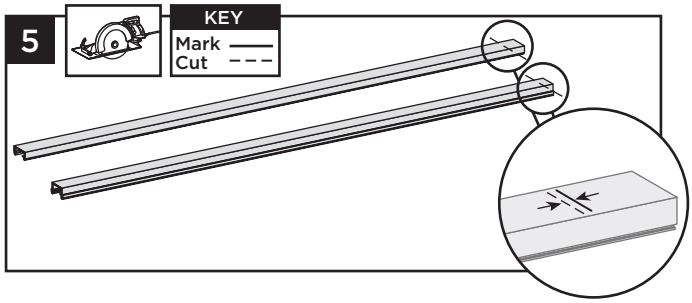


4. Measure distance between posts (X), and subtract 1/2" for bracket clearance.

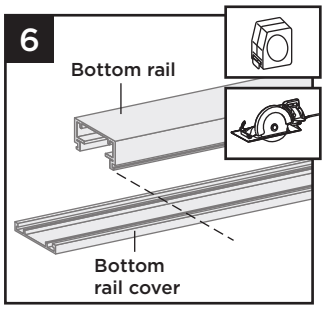
   If installing crossover post configurations adjust top rail length: X + 3/4" if using one crossover post, or X + 1-1/2" if using two crossover posts.

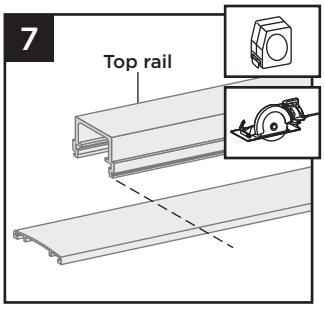
   If using swivel brackets, measure distance between brackets and cut railings to this distance.

Cutting Railings and Covers



5. Cut both bottom and top rail to length as determined in previous step.

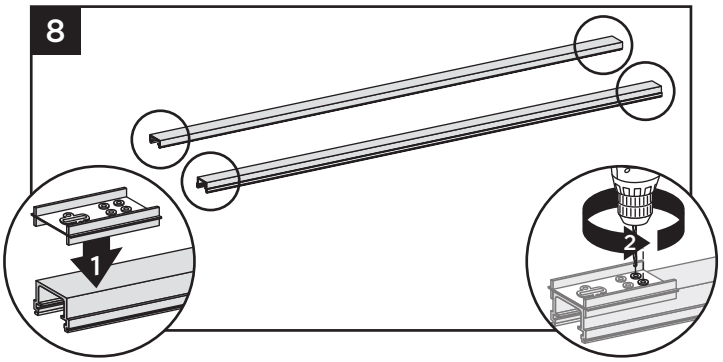




6. Mark and cut bottom rail cover same length as bottom rail for all bottom rail configurations.

7. Mark and cut top rail cover same length as top rail for all top rail configurations.

Locating Vertical Holes on Bottom and Top Rails



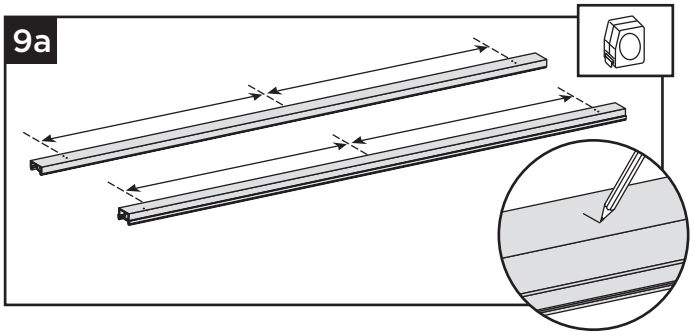
8. Place HZ template at end of top and bottom rails. Pre-drill pilot holes (using a 7/64" bit or small punch) at locations. Ensure that template is oriented correctly before drilling holes.

NOTES:

- *Template is labeled for the type of bracket used.*
- *Pilot holes will be drilled out larger in a later step.*
- *For Compound Swivel Brackets, set the rail in the bracket and mark 3.75" from the post.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

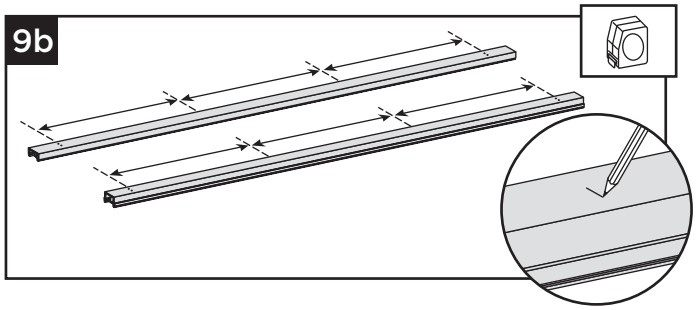
6′ Rail Spans or Shorter



9a. Measure the distance between the vertical end holes on **both top and bottom rails**. Mark the center.

***IMPORTANT NOTE: DO NOT** mark the line across the entire width of the bottom rail, as it will be visible after install. Maximum recommended line width is 1".*

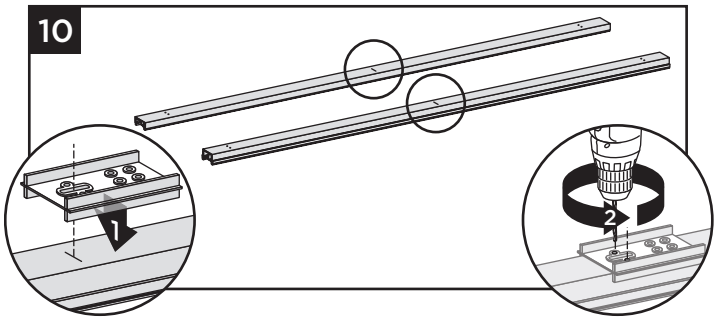
Over 6′ Rail Spans



9b. Measure the distance between the vertical end holes on **both top and bottom rails**. Divide the distance into thirds and make two marks on top and bottom rails.

***NOTE:** Maximum unsupported rod span is 32.25".*

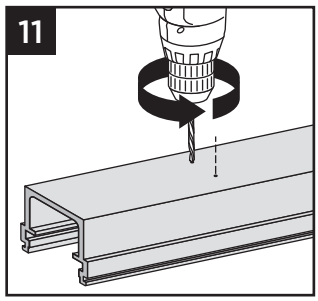
Locating and Drilling Midspan Holes



10. Using the slot on the HZ template, locate marked line and drill two 7/64" pilot holes (or mark with a punch).

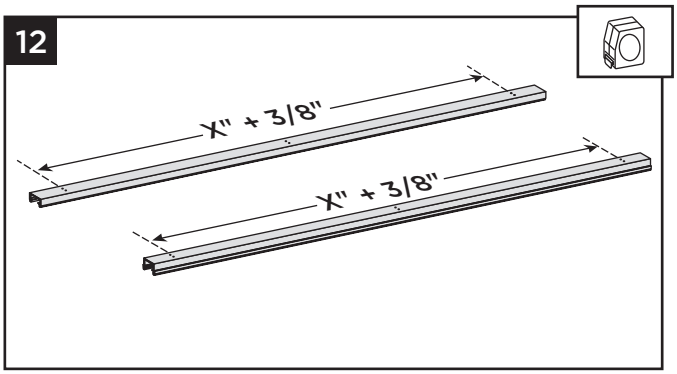
***NOTE:** Pilot holes will be drilled out larger in next step.*

11. Using pilot holes (or marks), drill 1/4" holes for all vertical supports in both top and bottom rails.



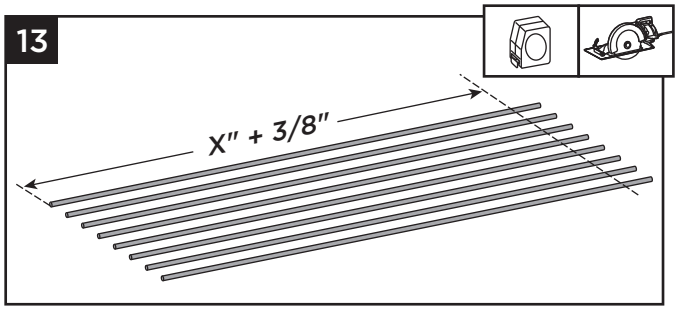
***NOTE:** Clean any burrs from edges of holes to ensure good fit on both sides.*

Cutting Rods to Length (When Required)



12. Measure the distance between the end (outer) holes (X") on top or bottom rail and add 3/8" to this measurement.

***NOTE:** If installed at exact spans, rods do not have to be cut.*



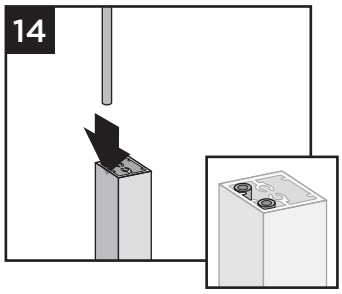
13. Cut rods to the length measured in previous step.

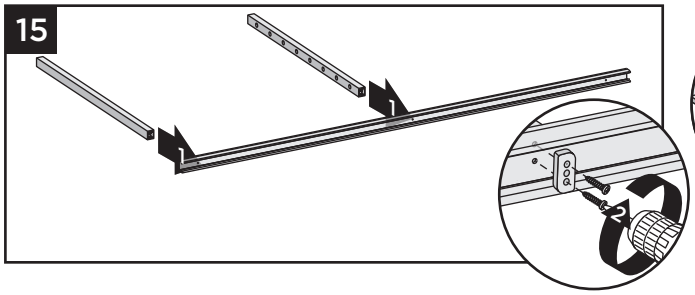
HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STANDARD RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Vertical and Rod Assembly

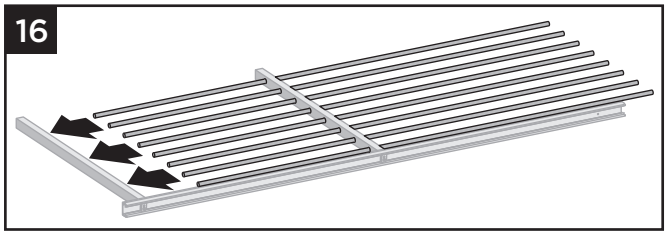
14. Insert anti-rattle strips into the vertical supports.

NOTE: *There are two anti-rattle strips for each support which can only be inserted in one side.*



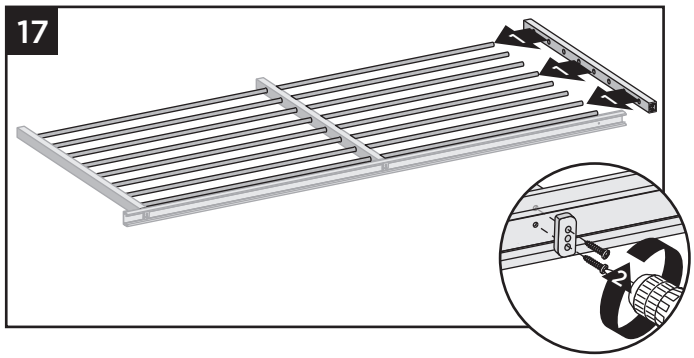


15. Attach **one** end vertical and **all** intermediate verticals to bottom rail using HZ spacer and screws provided. HZ spacer should be oriented so the ribbed side of the spacer is not showing.



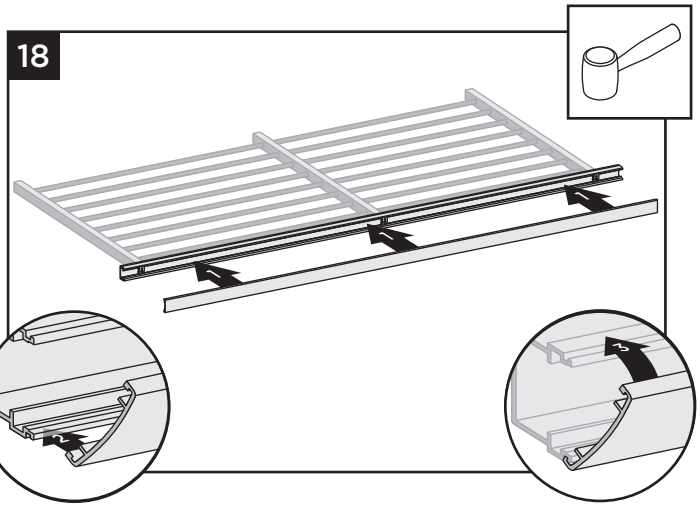
16. Slide all rods through intermediate supports and into end vertical support.

NOTE: *When inserting rods through intermediate supports, keep rods straight to avoid scratching*

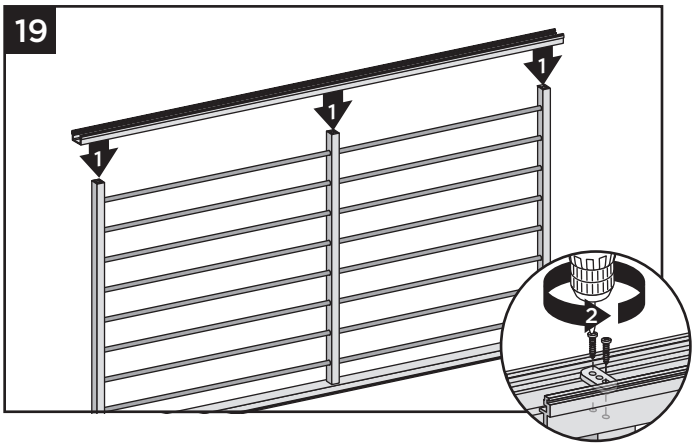


17. Slide end vertical onto rods and attach to bottom rail using HZ spacer and screws provided. HZ spacer should be oriented so the ribbed side of the spacer is not showing.

Installing Bottom Rail Cover and Top Rail to Verticals



18. Align flat cover on one side of bottom rail in slot on side of rail. Then starting from one end of rail snap cover onto opposing slot working down the length of rail. In some cases, GENTLE tapping with a rubber mallet may facilitate fastening.

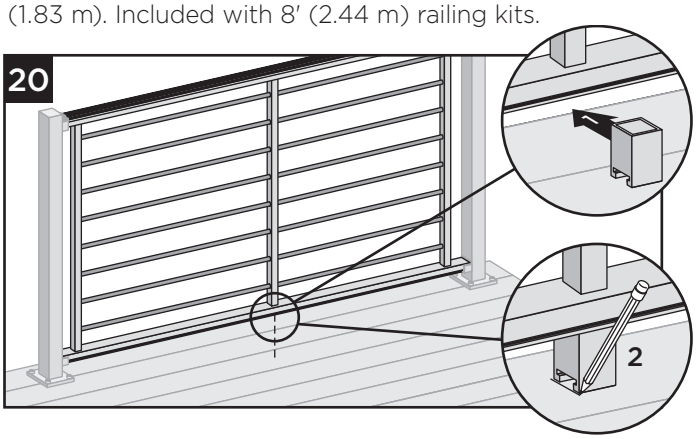


19. Install top rail to all vertical and end supports using HZ spacer and screws provided. HZ spacer should be oriented so the ribbed side of the spacer is not showing.

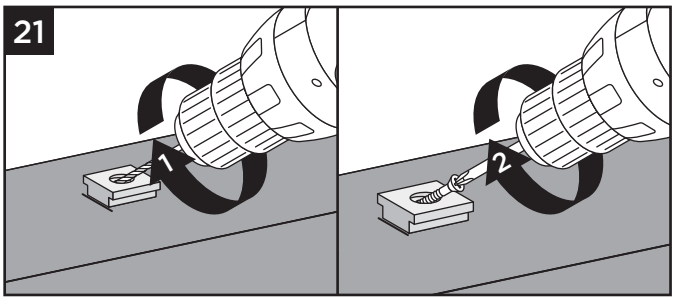
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Attaching Foot Block (when required)

Required ONLY for All Clear Span Applications over 6′ (1.83 m). Included with 8′ (2.44 m) railing kits.

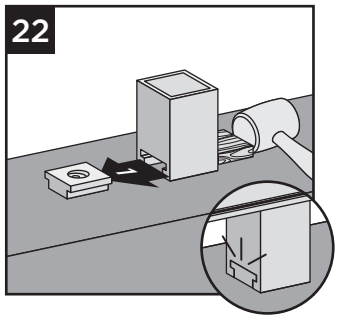


20. Temporarily drop rod rail panel into brackets. To ensure correct location, place Foot Block under center of bottom panel. Mark to provide placement location of base. Once marked remove panel.



21. Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16″ bit. Attach base of Foot Block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

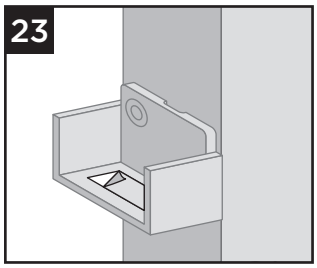
22. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap Foot Block until it locks into place.

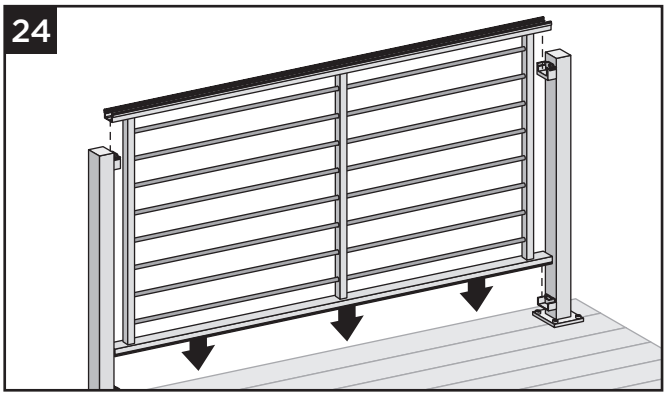


Installing Lower Rail to Brackets

23. Place adhesive strips (provided) into bottom rail brackets.

NOTE: *Make sure surface is clean and dry.*

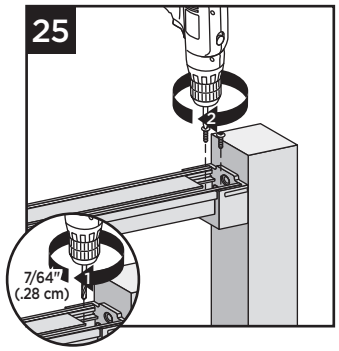




24. Drop assembled rod rail panel into brackets.

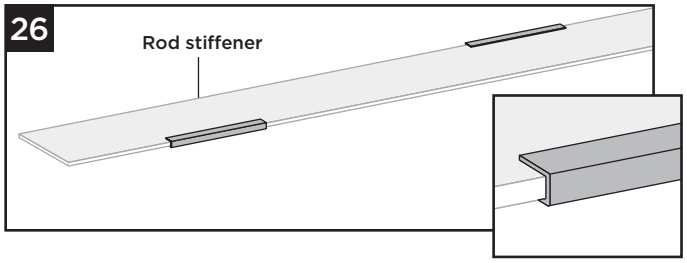
Attaching Panel to Brackets

25. Using a 7/64″ (0.28 cm) drill bit, pre-drill through railing into bracket as shown for attachment of railing to bracket. Attach top rail to top brackets by using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* for each bracket.

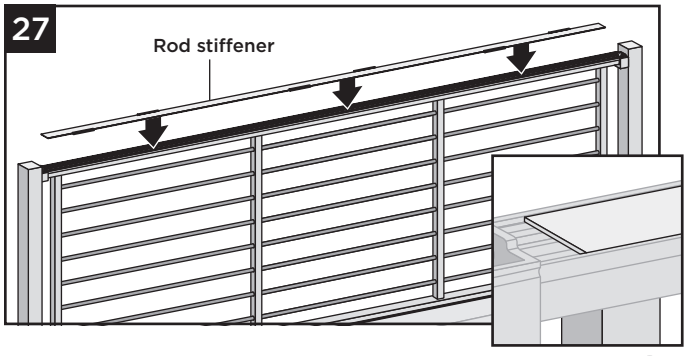


NOTE: *Pre-drilling is required. Its best practice to pre-drill a single hole, then attach screw, and continue in this order.*

Inserting Rod Rail Stiffener – For Rail Sections Over 6′



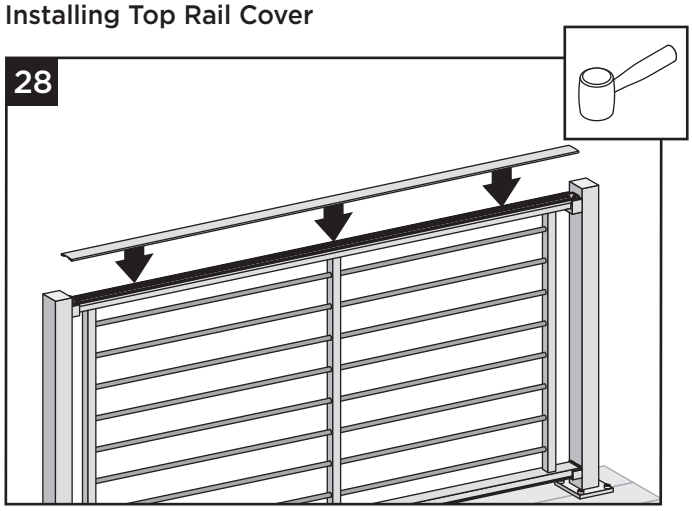
26. Attach tape (qty 6 provided) to alternating sides of the rod stiffener as shown.



27. Place rod stiffener inside rail channel.

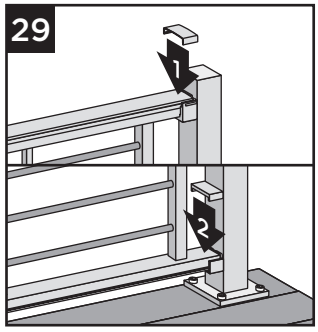
HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STANDARD RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

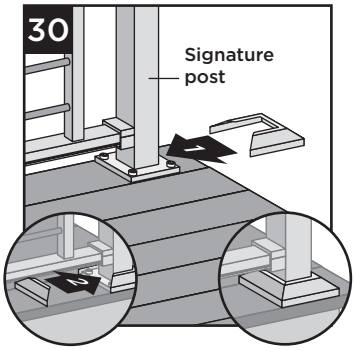
Installing Top Rail Cover



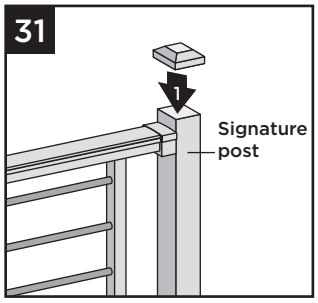
28. Using a mallet, install top rail cover.

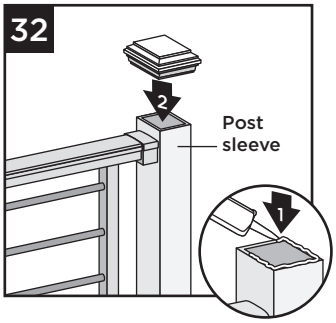
Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps





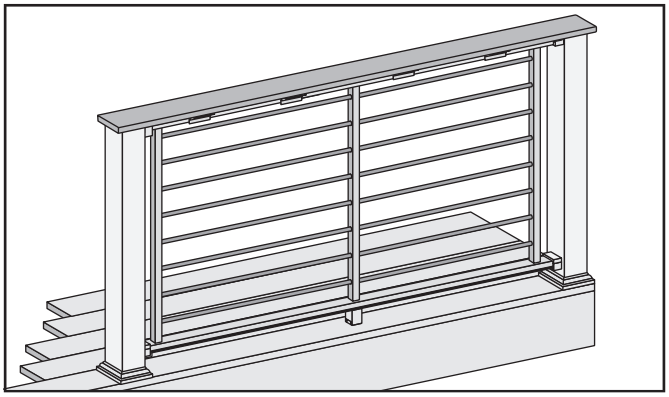
29. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in top and bottom rails.
30. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.





31. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts. (Use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment.)
32. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL COCKTAIL RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



IMPORTANT NOTE:

» ***ONLY for use with pressure treated 4 x 4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve. Trex Signature posts, Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Trex® Rod Rail Cocktail railing. Cutting post and post sleeve ONLY applies to the Cocktail railing.***

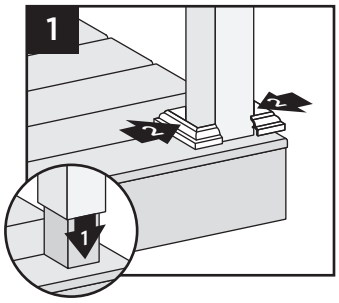
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL COCKTAIL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts to Use with Rod Rail Cocktail Railing

NOTE: PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS. BELOW INSTRUCTIONS ARE GUIDELINES FOR GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

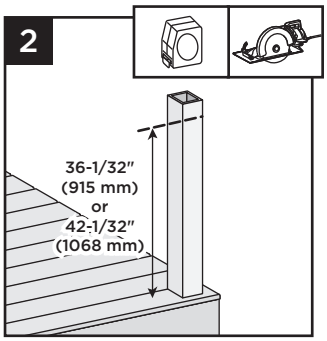
1. Slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.



NOTE: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

Cutting Post and Post Sleeve

2. Mark and cut post and post sleeve measuring from deck surface:
   - » 36-1/32" (915 mm) for 36" (914 mm) height.
   - » 42-1/32" (1068 mm) for 42" (1067 mm) height.



3. **Measuring and Cutting Rails and Covers**
   See instructions on page 138.

4. **Locating Vertical Holes on Bottom and Top Rails**
   See instructions on page 138.

5. **Locating and Drilling Midspan Holes**
   See instructions on page 139.

6. **Cutting Rods to Length (when required)**
   See instructions on page 139.

7. **Vertical and Rod Assembly**
   See instructions on page 140.

8. **Installing Bottom Rail Cover and Top Rail to Verticals**
   See instructions on page 140.

9. **Installing Foot Blocks (when required)**
   See instructions on page 141.

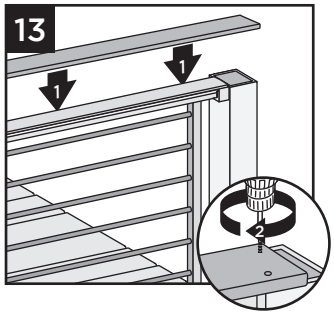
10. **Installing Railing to Brackets**
    See instructions on page 141.

11. **Installing Rod Rail Stiffener (when required)**
    See instructions on page 141.

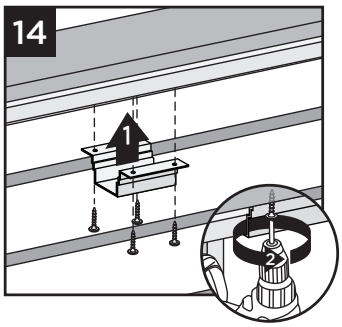
12. **Installing Top Rail Cover**
    See instructions on page 142.

NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

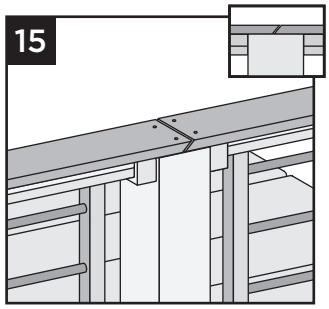


13. Place deck boards (***DO NOT*** use Enhance deck boards for top rail) over top rails. Attach boards on each post with Trex-recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per each post/board end).



14. Secure boards to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.

NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

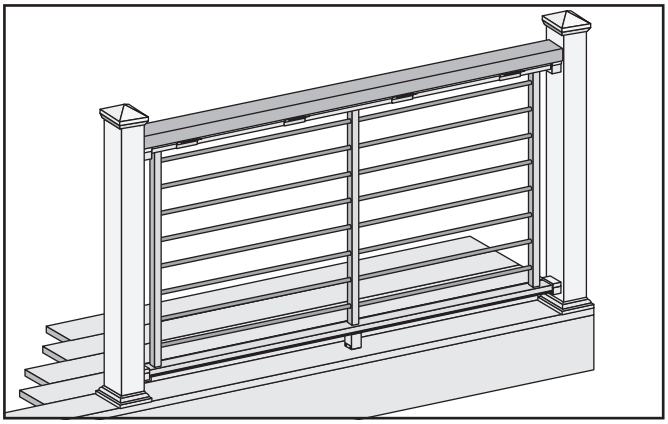


15. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.

NOTES:
- » *Leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*
- » *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*

16. **Attachment of Bottom Bracket Covers**
    See instructions on page 142.

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL TRADITIONAL RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



Important: ONLY use with Pressure-Treated post, Trex Post Mounts or Trex Joist Mount Post WITH Trex post sleeves. Trex Signature Posts and Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Rod Rail Traditional.

1. **Installing Posts, Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves**
   *See instructions on page 77 for pressure treated posts. Refer to detailed Trex Post Mount instructions if using these. Post and Post Sleeves are **NOT CUT** in this installation.*

2. **Measuring and Cutting Rails and Covers**
   See instructions on page 138.

3. **Locating Vertical Holes on Bottom and Top Rails**
   See instructions on page 138.

4. **Locating and Drilling Midspan Holes**
   See instructions on page 139.

5. **Cutting Rods to Length (when required)**
   See instructions on page 139.

6. **Vertical and Rod Assembly**
   See instructions on page 140.

7. **Installing Bottom Rail Cover and Top Rail to Verticals**
   See instructions on page 140.

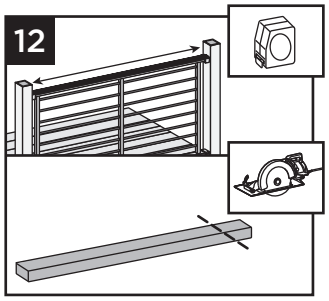
8. **Installing Foot Blocks (when required)**
   See instructions on page 141.

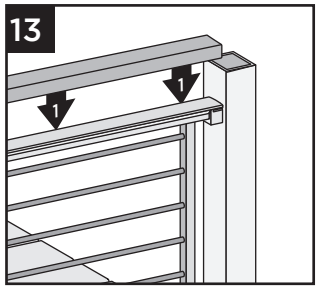
9. **Installing Railing Panel to Brackets**
   See instructions on page 141.

10. **Installing Rod Rail Stiffener (when required)**
    See instructions on page 141.

11. **Installing Top Rail Cover**
    See instructions on page 142.

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail

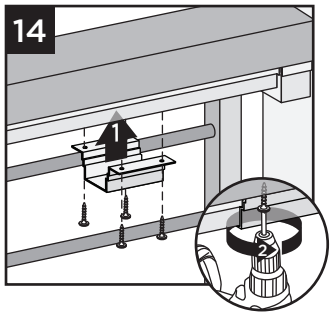




12. Measure between posts and cut 2 x 4 to length.

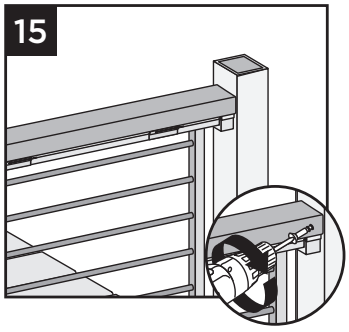
13. Place 2 x 4 on Trex® Signature top rail.

14. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using Trex® Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



***NOTE:** Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

15. Pre-drill and toenail 2-1/2" (6.4 cm) approved deck screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



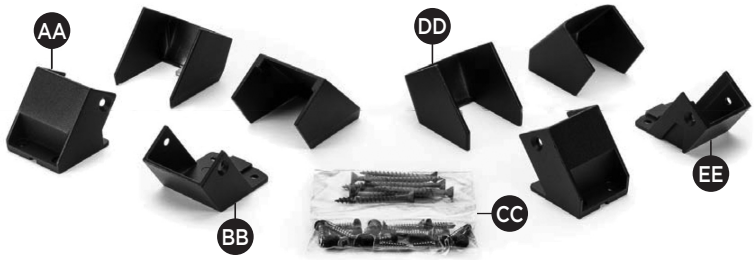
16. **Attachment of Bottom Rail Bracket Covers and Caps**
    See instructions on page 142.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

ROD RAIL STAIR RAILING
BRACKET HARDWARE
(INCLUDING STAIR SWIVEL BRACKETS AND STAIR CROSSOVER BRACKET)
TREX SIGNATURE®

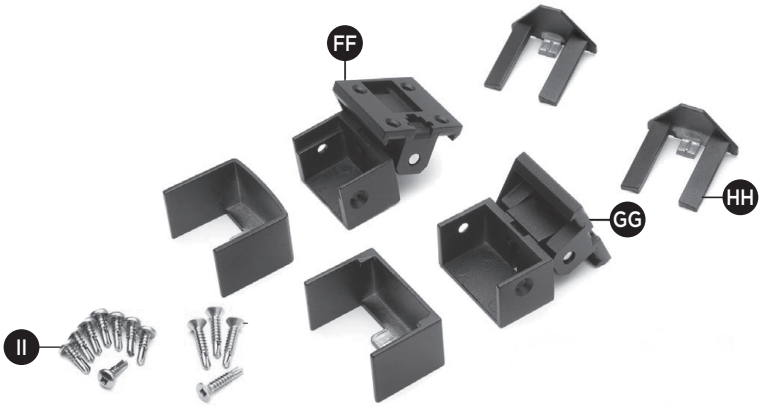
FIXED BRACKET – STAIR HARDWARE

AA. Bottom Stair Bracket and Cover – Lower Rail
BB. Top Stair Bracket and Cover – Lower Rail
CC. Fastener Pack
DD. Bottom Stair Bracket and Cover – Upper Rail
EE. Top Stair Bracket and Cover – Upper Rail



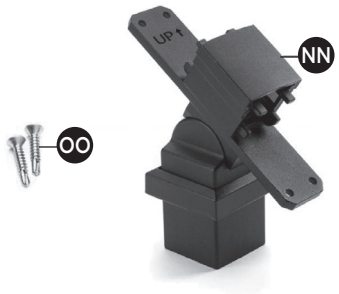
SWIVEL BRACKET – STAIR HARDWARE

FF. Swivel Top Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
GG. Swivel Bottom Rail Bracket and Cover – Stair
HH. Fastener Covers
II. Fastener Pack



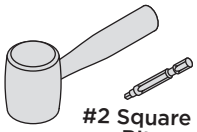
SWIVEL CROSSOVER BRACKET KIT – STAIR HARDWARE

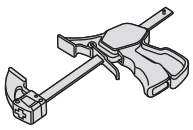
NN. Swivel Crossover Bracket – Stair
OO. Post-to-Bracket Fasteners

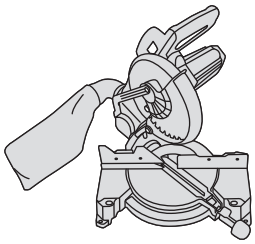


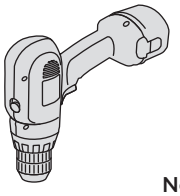
HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STAIR POSTS
TREX SIGNATURE®

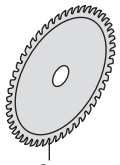
TOOLS NEEDED

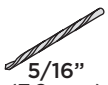












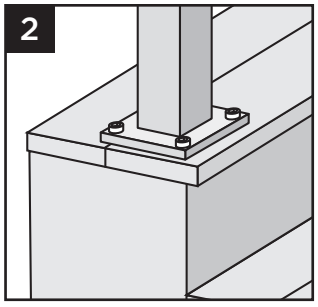
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *FOR A 6′ OR 8′ STAIR RAIL, POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING STAIR POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM STAIR RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE STAIR RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *TREX SIGNATURE POSTS CANNOT BE USED WITH TREX ROD RAIL TRADITIONAL OR TREX ROD RAIL COCKTAIL STAIR DESIGNS, ONLY PRESSURE-TREATED POST/ POST SLEEVES CAN BE USED. REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR MORE INFORMATION.*
- *All Trex Rod Rail stair installations require the use of 53" (134.6 CM) stair post, measured and cut to appropriate length if required.*
- *If crossover stair post is required, use stair post (again cut to appropriate length if required) and use swivel crossover bracket.*
- *Trex Signature Stair fixed brackets are designed to work only with stair slopes of 32°-37°.*
- *Foot Blocks are sold separately and recommended for all spans over 6′ for Rod Rail Cocktail and Rod Rail Traditional stair applications)*

Installing Standard Trex Signature Stair Posts, Trex Signature Stair Crossover Posts, or Pressure-Treated Post, Post Sleeves and Skirts

1. **Make sure 53″ (135.6 cm) posts are used for all stair posts.**

2. If Trex Signature stair posts are used, install at nose of stair tread directly under required blocking. *See Trex Signature horizontal post instructions for blocking requirements.*



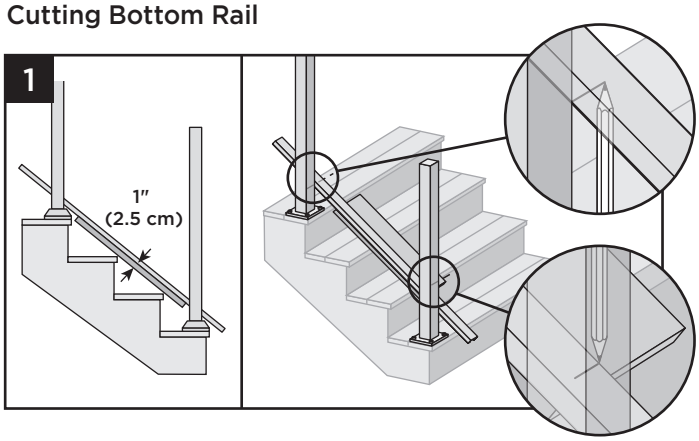
Installing Pressure-Treated Posts

- *PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.*
- *PRESSURE TREATED POSTS MUST BE INSTALLED ON INSIDE OF STAIR STRINGER AND AT NOSE OF STAIR TREAD.*
- *POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *In most cases, a post and post sleeve longer than 39″ (991 mm) will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.*

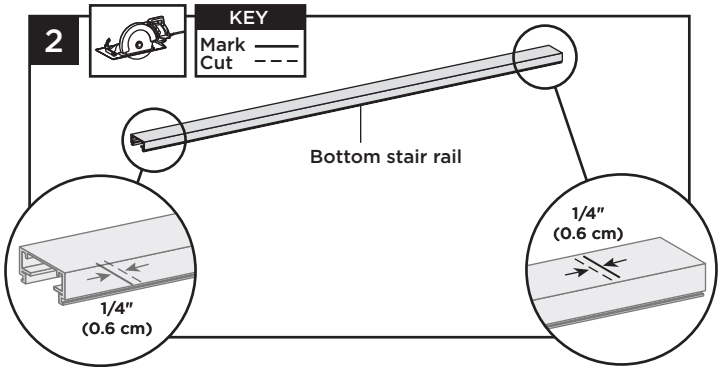
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STANDARD STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

Cutting Bottom Rail

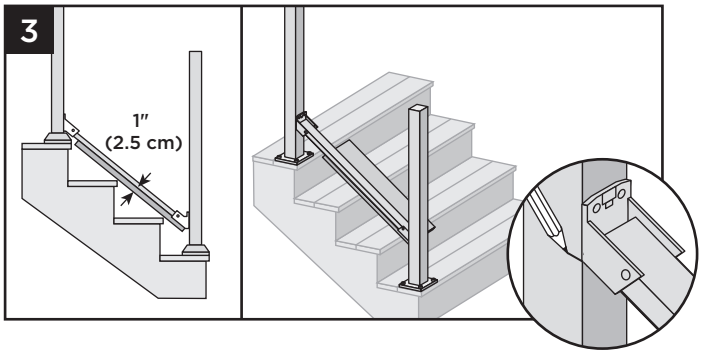


1. Place a 1" deck board on the nose of the stair tread, then lay the bottom stair rail on top of the deck board. Use the lower and upper stair post to set the size of the lower stair rail. On **UPPER STAIR POST**, mark from underside of bottom rail. **ON LOWER STAIR POST**, mark from top side of bottom rail.



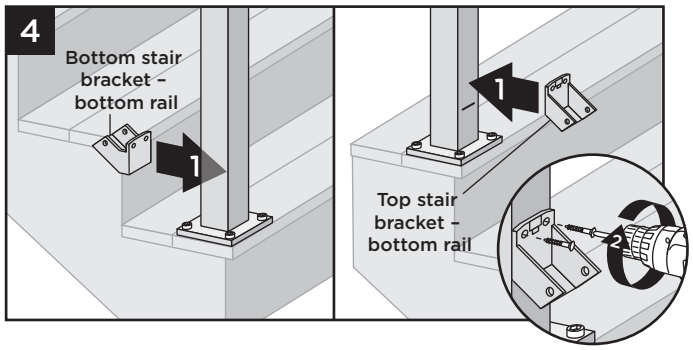
2. Cut each end of the bottom stair rail and bottom rail cover 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than the mark on each end to allow for fit into bottom stair rail brackets.

***NOTE:** Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut.*



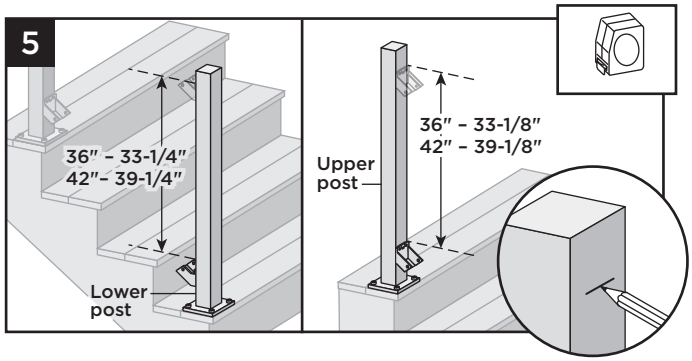
3. With deck board still on nose of stair tread, place brackets on end of bottom stair rail (DO NOT attach brackets to rail) and mark posts for bracket locations.

Installing Lower Fixed Stair Brackets

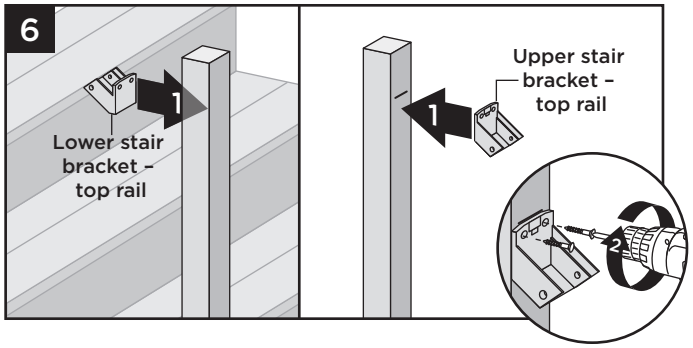


4. Center lower stair bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*. In some cases it may be difficult to attach the stair bracket on the lower stair post. Recommend using a 90° drill adapter or loosen the post to get access to the lower bracket screw holes.

Installing Upper Fixed Stair Brackets



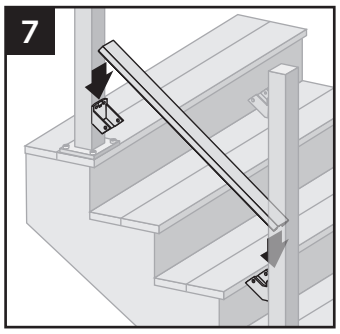
5. **On Lower Post** – From top of lower bracket, measure up and mark with light line (33-1/4" for 36" rail; 39-1/4" for 42" rail).
   On Upper Post – From top of lower (upper) bracket, measure up and mark with light line (33-1/8" for 36"rail; 39-1/8" for 42" rail).



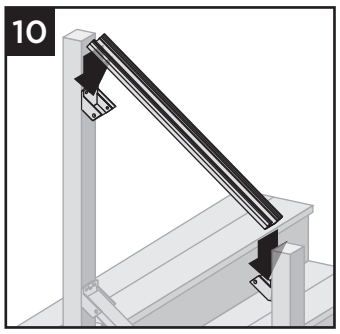
6. Center upper stair brackets on posts **below** the marked lines and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STANDARD STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

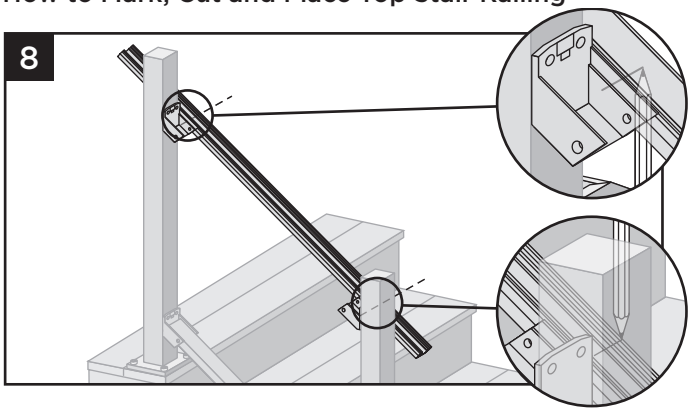
7. Set bottom stair rail into bottom stair rail brackets.



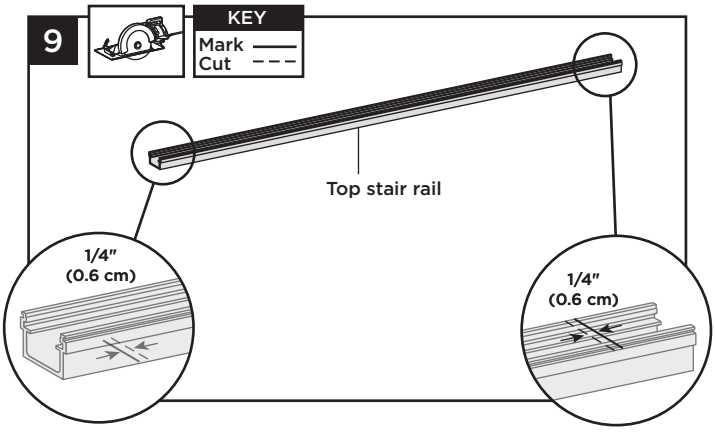
10. Set top stair rail into top stair rail brackets.



How to Mark, Cut and Place Top Stair Railing



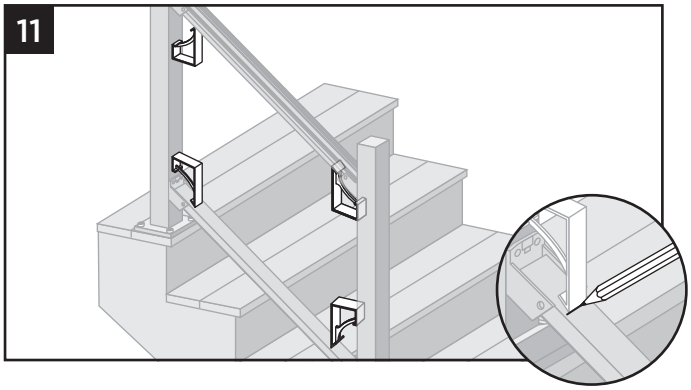
8. Position top rail to side of post. Mark top stair rail at each location stated. On **UPPER STAIR POST**, mark from underside of bottom rail. On **LOWER STAIR POST**, mark from topside of bottom rail.



9. Cut each end of top stair rail and top rail cover 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than mark to allow for fit into top stair rail bracket.

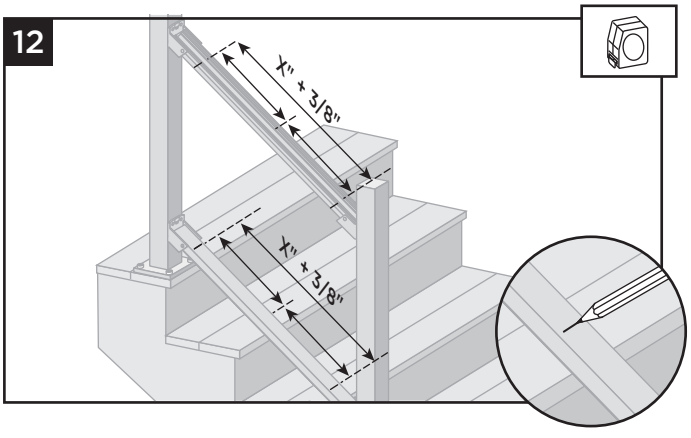
NOTE: Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut. HOWEVER IF INSTALLING ROD RAIL WITH EITHER COCKTAIL OR TRADITIONAL DESIGN, THE TOP RAIL WILL NEED TO BE CUT ON AN ANGLE.

Measuring and Cutting Rods



11. Using the long edge of the stair template, mark the location of the end verticals on the upper and lower rails.

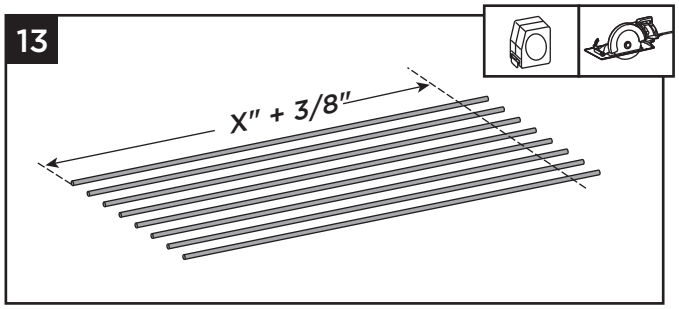
***NOTE:** Mark should only be 1" max length or it will be visible after installation of verticals.*



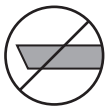
12. Measure and mark the mid-line (6' sections) of the two end marks of the top and bottom rail. Take that measurement and add 3/8" for rod length in next step.

***NOTE:** For 8' sections divide the distance into thirds and make two marks for the two verticals.*

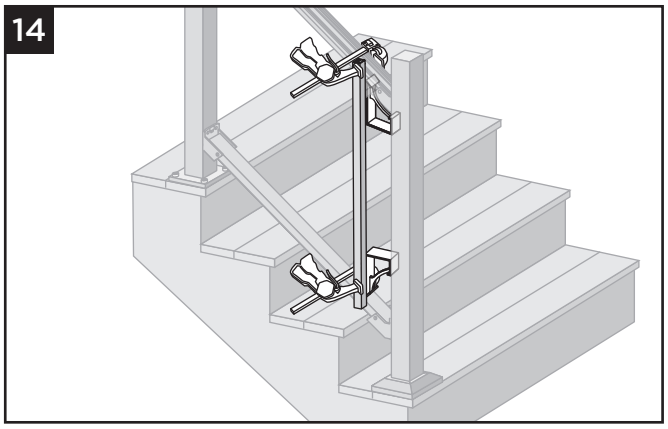
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.



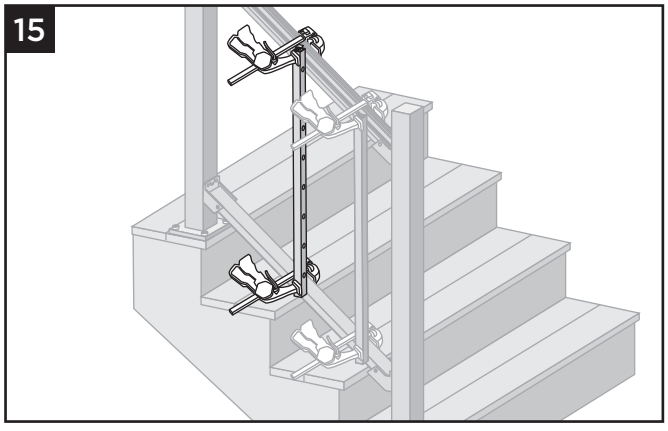
13. Cut rods to the length measured in previous step.



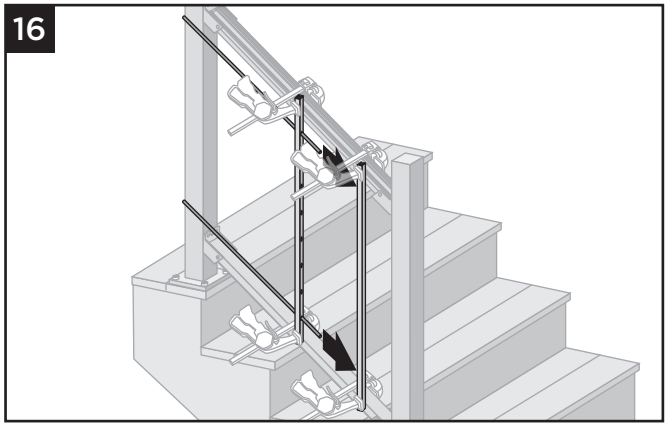
IMPORTANT: DO NOT CUT RODS AT RAIL ANGLE; MAKE 90˚ CUTS ONLY!



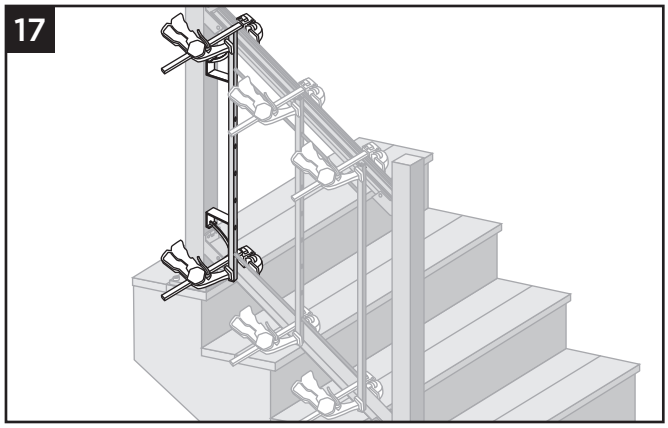
14. Clamp first vertical (lower part of stairs) in place, using width of stair template to position.



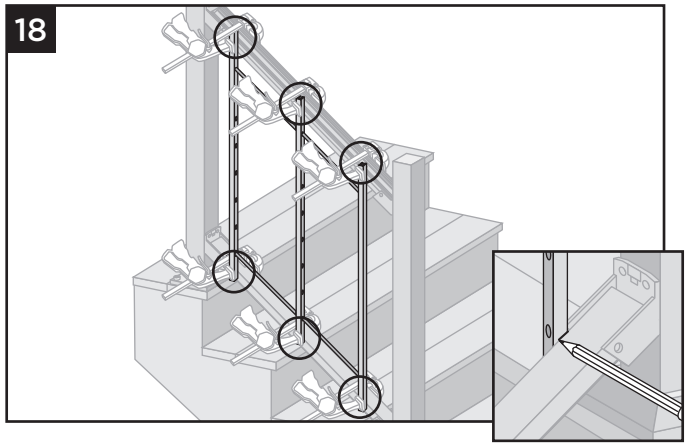
15. Clamp middle vertical(s) in place.



16. Slide a rod into top and bottom of all verticals. Ensure that distance of top rod to top rail and bottom rod to bottom rail are equal.

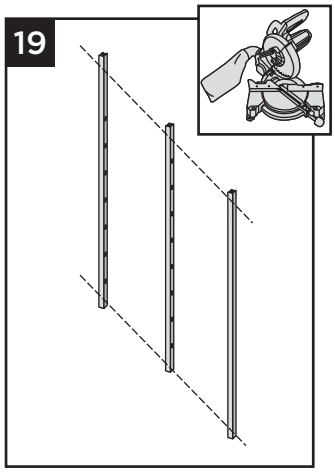


17. Clamp top vertical (upper part of stairs) in place, using width of stair template to position.



18. Mark angle cuts at top and bottom on all verticals.

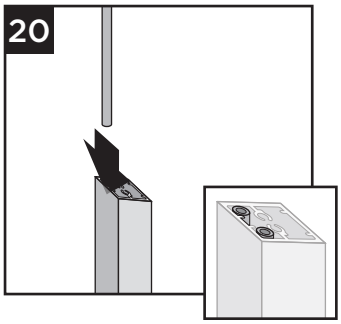
19. After removing rods and verticals, make angle cuts on top and bottom of verticals following marks from previous step.

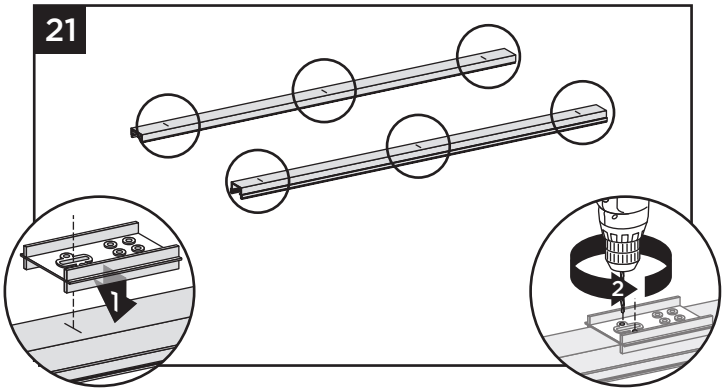


Vertical and Rod Assembly

20. Insert anti-rattle strips into the vertical supports.

NOTE: *There are two anti-rattle strips for each support which can only be inserted in one side.*

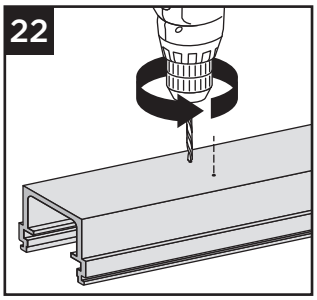




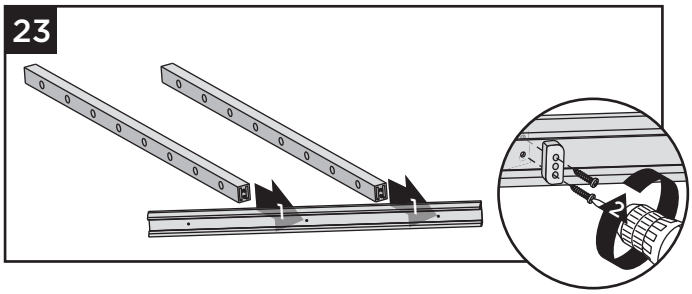
21. Using the slot on the HZ template, locate marked line and drill two 7/64" pilot holes at each mark (or mark with a punch).

NOTE: *Pilot holes will be drilled out larger in next step.*

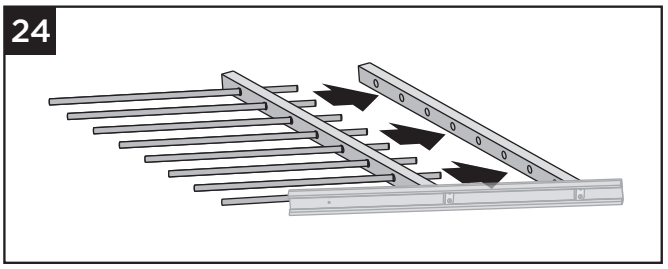
22. Using pilot holes (or marks), drill 5/16" holes for all vertical supports in both top and bottom rails.



Installing Top and Bottom Rails

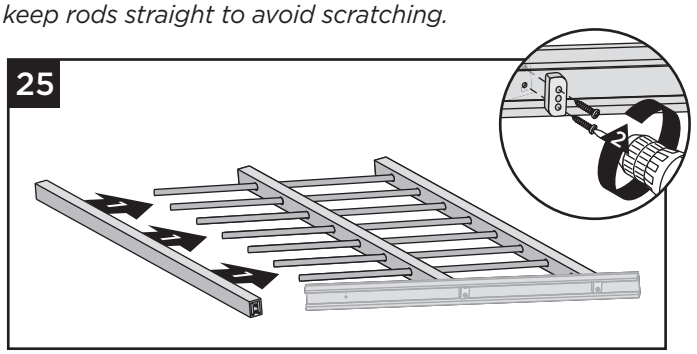


23. Install lowest end vertical and all intermediate verticals to bottom rail using ST Wedge Spacer and screws provided.

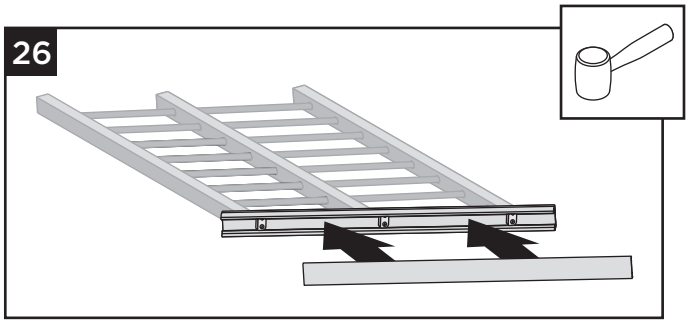


24. Slide rods into lower end and all intermediate verticals.

NOTE: *When inserting rods into intermediate supports, keep rods straight to avoid scratching.*

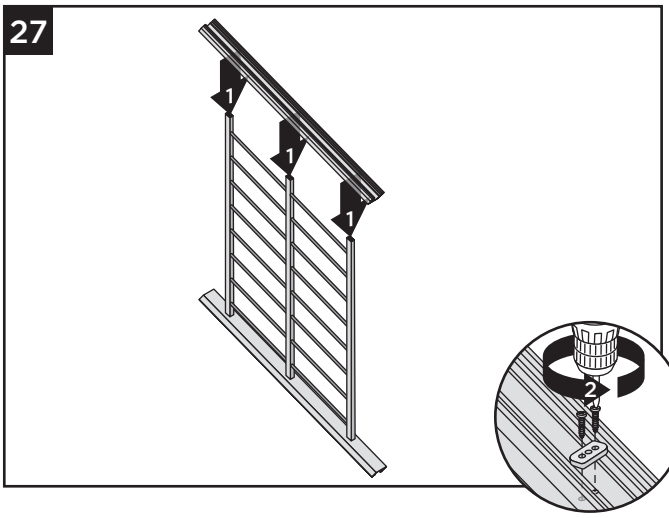


25. Slide upper end vertical onto rods and attach to bottom rail using ST Wedge Spacer and screws provided.



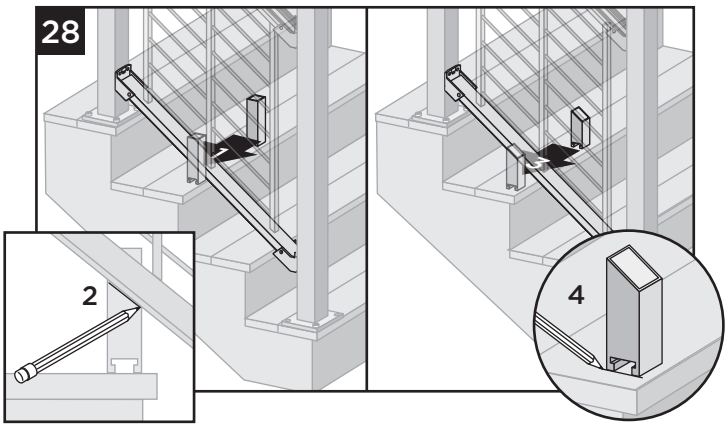
26. Using a mallet, install bottom rail cover onto bottom rail.

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STANDARD STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

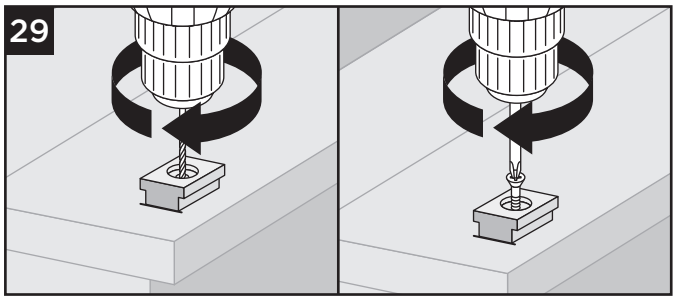


27. Install top rail to all vertical and end supports using ST Wedge Spacer and screws provided.

Attachment of Foot Block (where recommended)

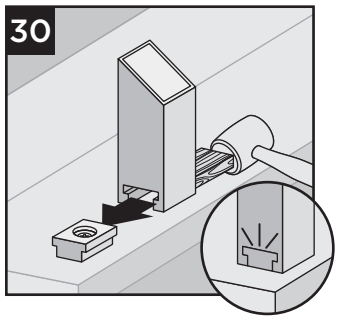


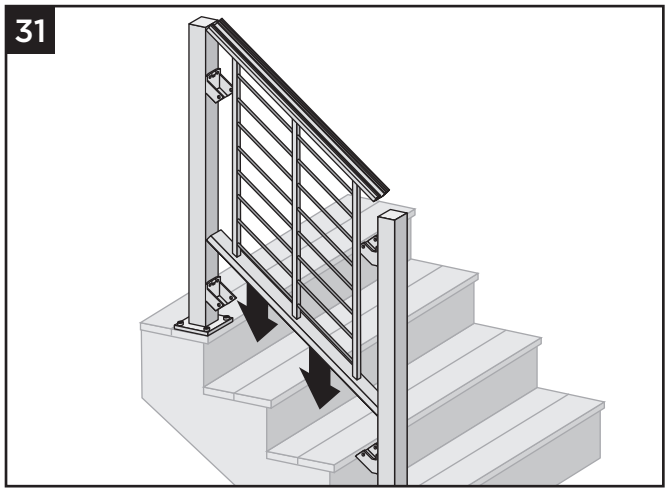
28. Temporarily drop assembled stair rod rail panel into brackets. To ensure proper location place Foot Block towards the nose of the stair tread along the side of the bottom rail. Mark location of angle on Foot Block and cut on mark. Then place Foot Block under the center of the bottom rail. Mark placement location of the base.



29. Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16" bit. Attach base of Foot Block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

30. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap Foot Block until it locks into place.

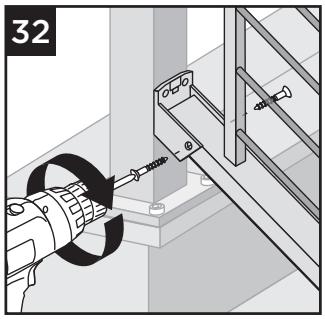




31. Drop assembled stair rod rail panel into brackets.

Attaching Stair Panel to Brackets

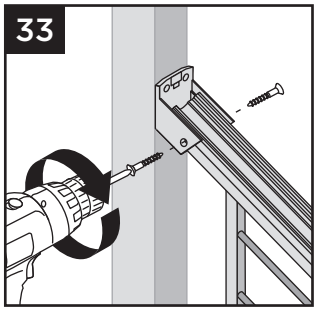
32. Attach bottom stair rail to bottom stair bracket using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of bracket.

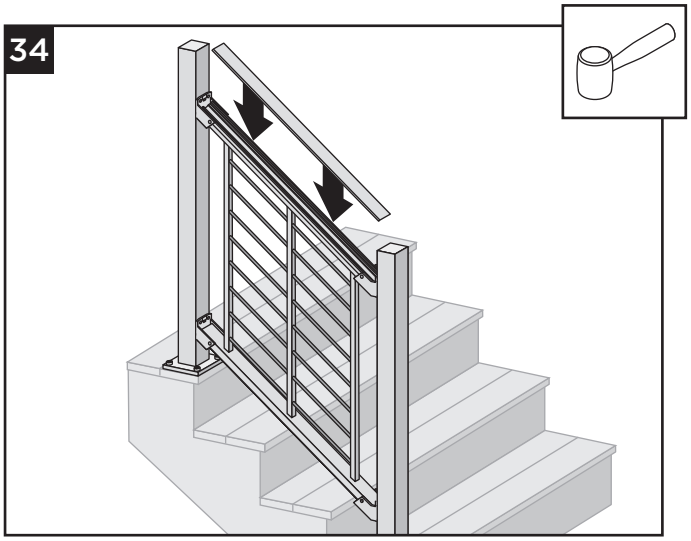


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STANDARD STAIR RAILING CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

33. Attach top stair rail to top stair bracket (all types) using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of stair bracket.

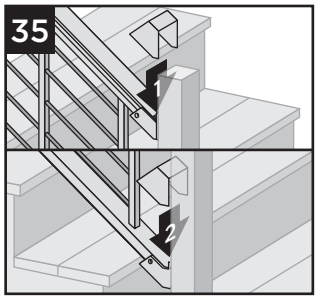




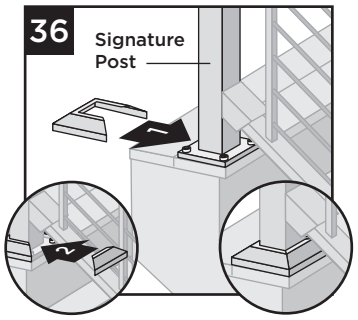
34. Using a mallet, install top rail cover.

Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps

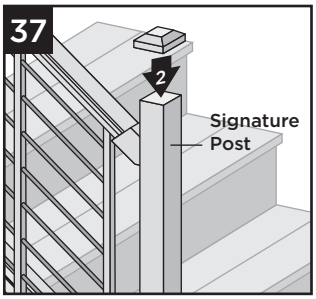
35. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.



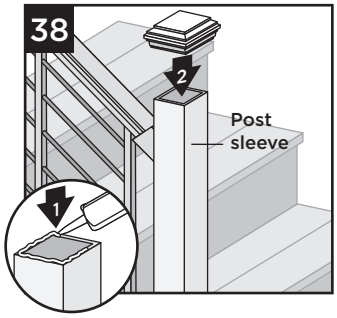
36. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.



37. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts. (Use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment.)



38. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs).

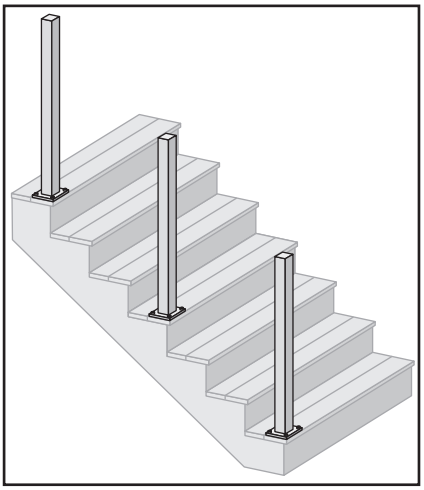


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STAIR CROSSOVER SWIVEL BRACKETS
TREX SIGNATURE®

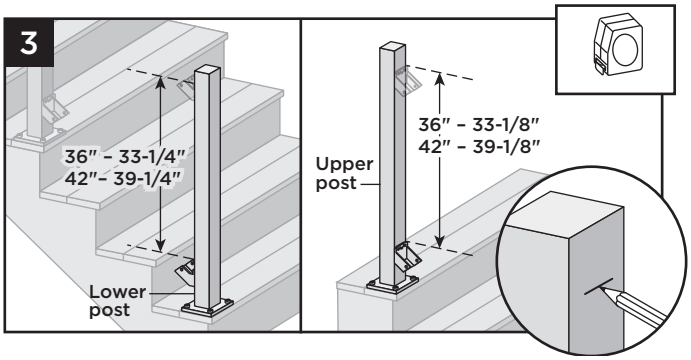
1. **Cutting Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 147.

2. **Install Lower Fixed Stair Brackets**
   See instructions on page 147.
   ***NOTE:** These are installed on all posts, including the center crossover post.*

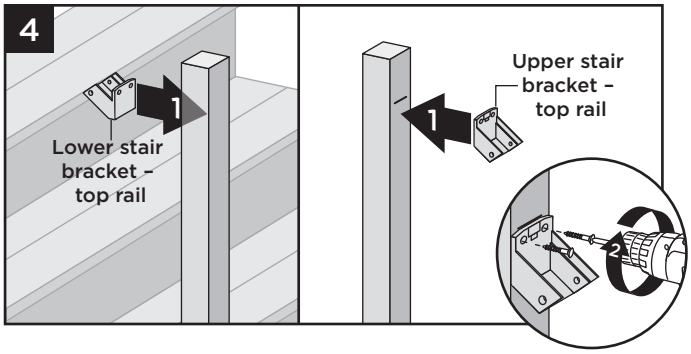


Install Upper Fixed Stair Brackets

***NOTE:** When using a center crossover post the, upper fixed stair brackets will only be installed at the terminating upper and lower post, and not the center crossover post.*

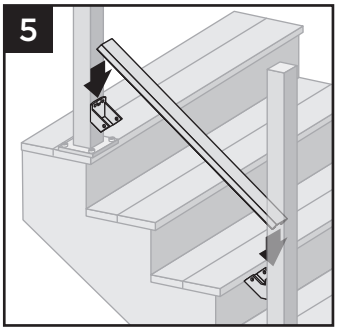


3. **On Lower Post** – From top of lower bracket, measure up and mark with light line (33-1/4" for 36" rail; 39-1/4" for 42" rail).
   On Upper Post – From top of lower (upper) bracket, measure up and mark with light line (33-1/8" for 36"rail; 39-1/8" for 42" rail).



4. Center upper stair brackets on posts **below** the marked lines and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

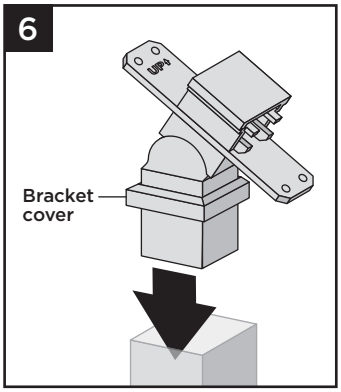
5. Set bottom stair rail into bottom stair rail fixed brackets.

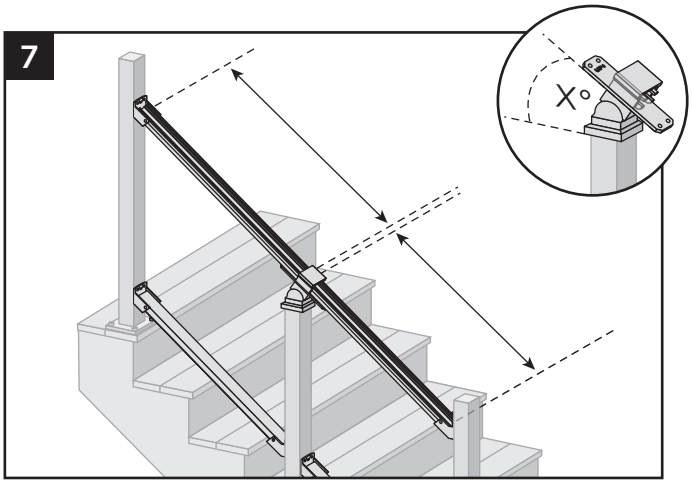


Determining Placement of Stair Crossover Swivel Bracket

6. Insert stair crossover swivel bracket into post.

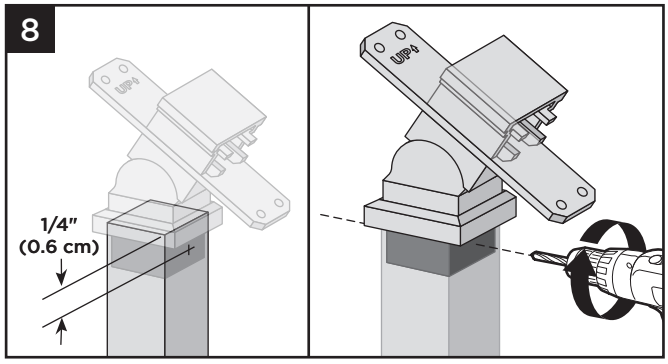
NOTE: Keep the bracket cover on when inserting this into post, this will cover the screw attachment area.





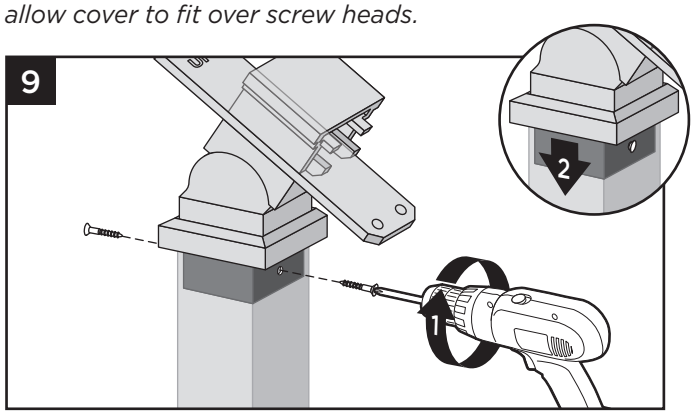
7. Determine location/height of the stair crossover swivel bracket by aligning the angle of this with the fixed brackets already installed. Note that the crossover post may need to be cut to ensure the top stair rail is parallel to the bottom stair rail.

Attaching Stair Crossover Swivel Bracket to Post



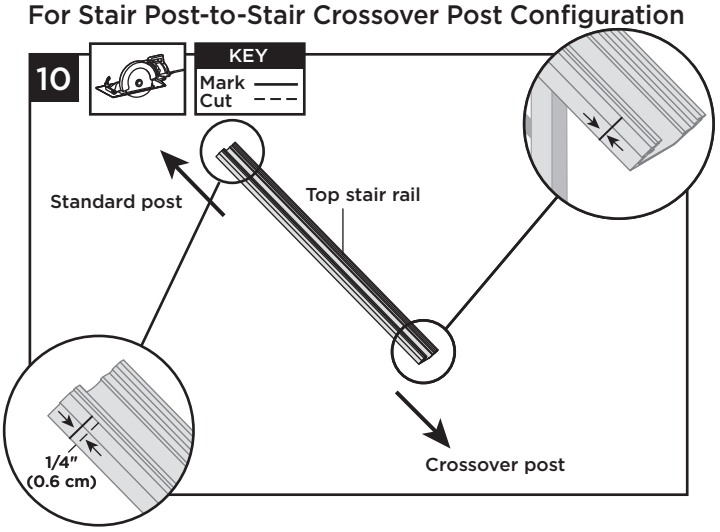
8. Once location/height is determined, center and predrill two holes (using a drill bit slightly smaller than that of self-tapping screw diameter) on opposite sides of post, approximately. 1/4" (0.6 cm) from top of post. Drill through the post and into the stair crossover swivel bracket on each side.

NOTE: *Slightly countersink pre-drilled holes to allow for flat head screws to seat flush on the post. This will allow cover to fit over screw heads.*



9. Attach stair crossover swivel bracket to post with two self-tapping screws (provided). Slide cover over post to hide screws.

Cutting Top Stair Rail For Stair Post-to-Stair Crossover Post Configuration



10. Top stair rail must be cut differently on each side of the rail. Railing side that attaches to standard post should be cut 1/4" (0.6 cm) shorter than the mark to allow for fit into top rail bracket. Railing side that attaches to the crossover post should be cut directly on the mark to allow for fit into the crossover post bracket.

NOTE: *Railing does not need to be cut at angle. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with standard straight cut.*

11. **Measuring and Cutting Rods**
See instructions on page 148.

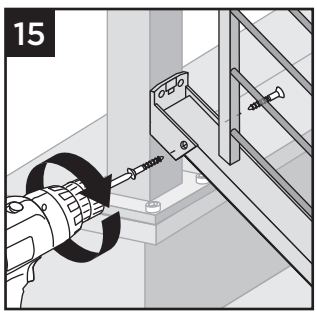
12. **Vertical and Rod Assembly**
See instructions on page 150.

13. **Installing Top and Bottom Rails**
See instructions on page 150.

14. **Attachment of Foot Block (where recommended)**
See instructions on page 151.

Attachment of Stair Panel to Stair Brackets

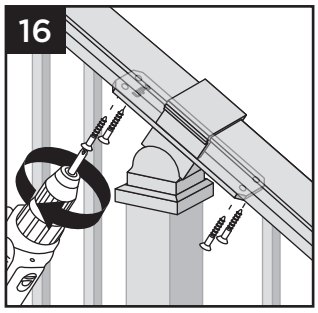
15. Attach bottom stair rail to bottom stair bracket using two self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of bracket.



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

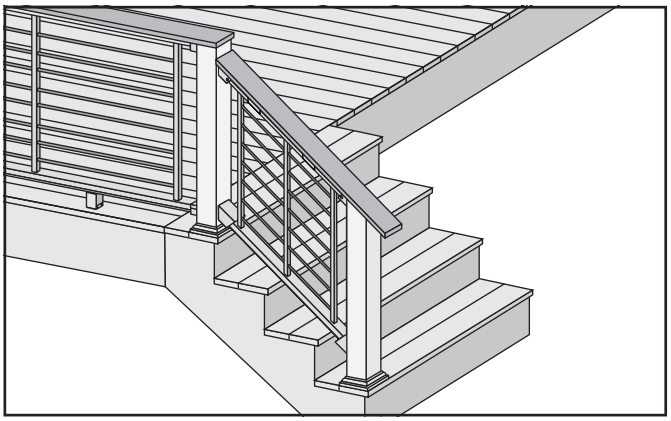
HOW TO INSTALL ROD RAIL STAIR CROSSOVER SWIVEL BRACKETS/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

16. For stair crossover post configuration, fasten upper stair rail to swivel crossover post bracket by installing screws diagonally through crossover stair bracket into upper rail using two self-tapping screws (provided) on each side.



17. **Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps**
See instructions on page 152.

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL ROD RAIL STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



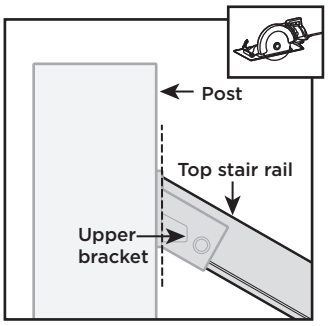
IMPORTANT NOTES:
- *Only for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4x4 (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve. Trex Signature posts, Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Cocktail Rod Rail stair railing. Cutting post and post sleeve only applies to the Cocktail style railing.*
- *DO NOT CUT LOWER POST/POST SLEEVES UNTIL ROD RAIL STAIR PANEL IS FULLY INSTALLED.*
- *When referring to previous instructions referenced, disregard all crossover post instructions as these cannot be used with Cocktail railing.*
- *THE DECK BOARD USED IN COCKTAIL ROD RAIL STAIR WILL NEED TO TERMINATE AT THE UPPER STAIR POST AS SHOWN ABOVE. THE DECK BOARD WILL HAVE TO BE TOENAILED INTO THE SIDE OF THE POST IN THESE AREAS USING 2 APPROPRIATE COMPOSITE DECKING SCREWS – PRE-DRILLING IS RECOMMENDED.*
- *Do Not use Enhance for top board.*

1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeves and Skirts to Use with Trex Signature Railing**
See instructions on page 101.

2. **Installing Brackets**
Follow previous stair instructions for the installation of desired brackets, making sure that all dimensions are calculated before installation, and ensuring deck board is placed in correct location.

Cutting Top Stair Rail

NOTE: THE TOP RAIL AND TOP RAIL COVER WILL NEED TO BE CUT AT APPROPRIATE ANGLE ON THE END OF THE RAIL THAT CONNECTS TO THE UPPER FIXED BRACKET, SO THAT WHEN THE RAIL IS INSTALLED IT SITS FLUSH WITH THE END OF THE BRACKET AS SHOWN.

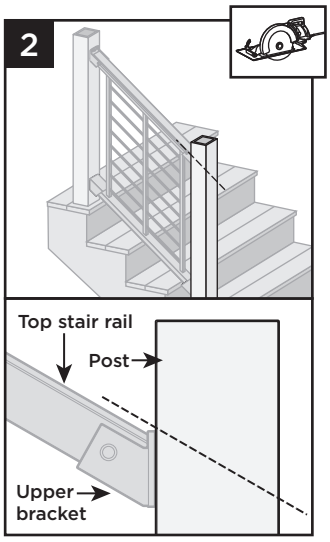


1. Follow all Rod Rail Stair instructions for the assembly of the rod rail stair panel.

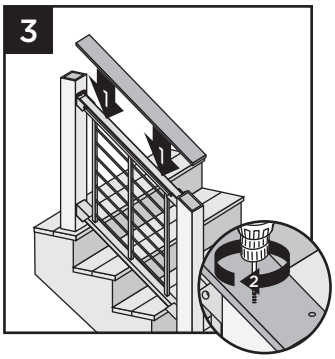
HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL ROD RAIL STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Cutting Post and Post Sleeve and Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

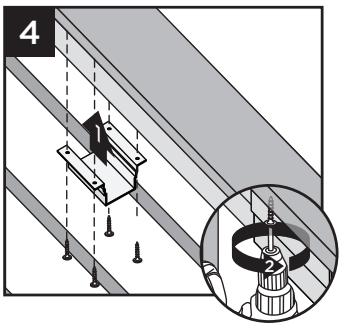
2. Cut post and post sleeves at proper angle so these are flush with the top of the top brackets and/or top rail cover. BE CAREFUL **NOT** to CUT brackets.



3. Place deck boards over top rails. ***DO NOT*** use Enhance deck boards for top rail. PLACE DECK BOARD ON TOP RAIL TO CHECK FOR PROPER FIT AND RAIL CLEARANCE AT BRACKET LOCATIONS. DECK BOARD MAY REQUIRE EITHER A NOTCH CUT ON THE UNDERSIDE OR SLIGHT PLANING ON THE UNDERSIDE TO ALLOW DECK BOARD TO CLEAR TOPS OF BRACKETS AND SIT FLUSH ON TOP OF POSTS AND RAILS. Attach boards on each post with Trex-recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per each post/board end).

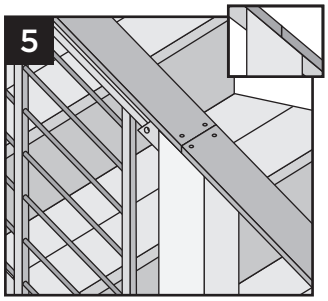


4. Secure boards to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the stair railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

5. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.

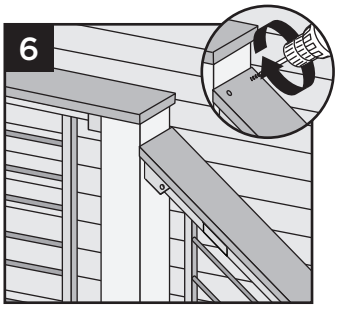


NOTES:

» *Leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*

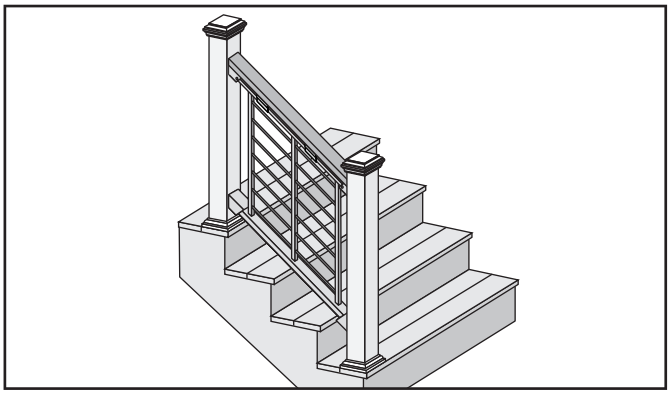
» *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*

6. Where deck board terminates at upper post, PREDRILL and toenail two approved composite deck screws as shown into post, being careful to avoid hitting stair bracket.



NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

HOW TO INSTALL TRADITIONAL ROD RAIL STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



IMPORTANT NOTES:

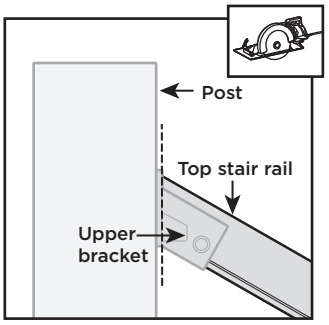
- ***Only for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4x4 (102 mm x 102 mm) or 6x6 post sleeves, Trex Post Mounts or Trex Joist Mount Post WITH Trex post sleeves. Signature Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Traditional railing.***
- ***THE TOP RAIL AND TOP RAIL COVER WILL NEED TO BE CUT AT APPROPRIATE ANGLE ON THE END OF THE RAIL THAT CONNECTS TO THE UPPER FIXED BRACKET, SO THAT WHEN THE RAIL IS INSTALLED IT SITS FLUSH WITH THE END OF THE BRACKET AS SHOWN.***

1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts to Use with Trex Signature Railing**
   See instructions on page 101.

2. **Installing Brackets**
   Follow previous stair instructions for the installation of desired brackets, making sure that all dimensions are calculated before installation, and ensuring railing is placed in correct location.

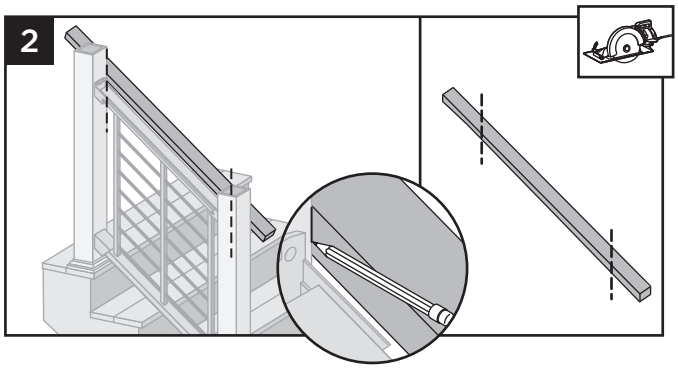
Cutting Top Stair Rail

NOTE: THE TOP RAIL AND TOP RAIL COVER WILL NEED TO BE CUT AT APPROPRIATE ANGLE ON THE END OF THE RAIL THAT CONNECTS TO THE UPPER FIXED BRACKET, SO THAT WHEN THE RAIL IS INSTALLED IT SITS FLUSH WITH THE END OF THE BRACKET AS SHOWN.



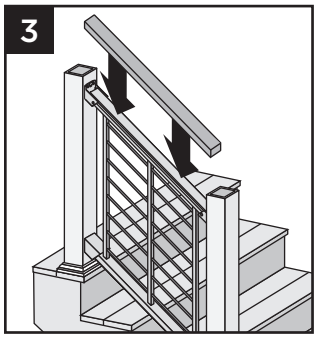
1. Follow all Rod Rail Stair instructions for the assembly of the rod rail stair panel.

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail

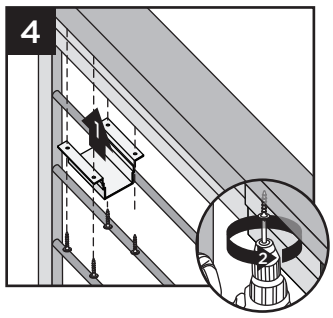


2. Place 2 x 4 beside top rail. Mark and cut (both ends need to be cut on an angle for proper fit).

3. Place 2 x 4 on top stair rail.

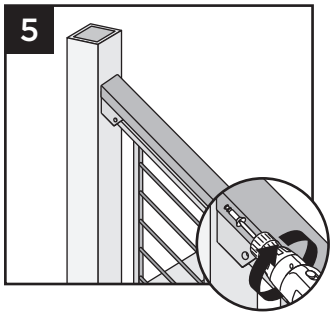


4. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using Trex Signature™ Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

5. Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2" (6.4 cm) screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

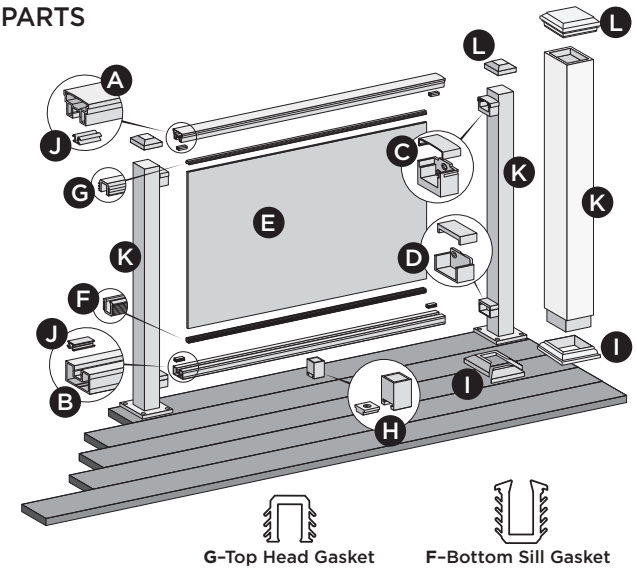
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HORIZONTAL GLASS RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

NOTES:

- *FOR ORDERING STANDARD OR CUSTOMIZED GLASS PANEL SIZES, GO TO GLASS.TREX.COM. FOR MORE INFORMATION CALL 1-800 BUY TREX.*
- *TREX SIGNATURE GLASS RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A MAXIMUM CLEAR SPAN OF 6' (1.83M).*
- *NOTE: MUST USE TREX DECK MOUNT POST HARDWARE AND METAL PLATE WHEN ATTACHING TREX SIGNATURE POSTS.*
- *NOT RECOMMENDED FOR STAIR APPLICATIONS.*
- *SEE BELOW FOR SPECIFIC GLASS DIMENSIONS.*
- *ALWAYS REFER TO YOUR LOCAL BUILDING CODE OFFICIAL PRIOR TO INSTALLING ANY RAILING SYSTEM TO ENSURE ALL CODE AND SAFETY REQUIREMENTS ARE MET. TREX® CANNOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR IMPROPER OR NON-RECOMMENDED INSTALLATIONS.*
- *ONE FOOT BLOCK IS REQUIRED FOR ALL GLASS PANEL INSTALLATION, THUS THESE RAILING SPANS MUST BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST.*

PARTS



NOTE: IMAGE SHOWN HERE IS POST TO POST CONFIGURATION.

TEMPERED GLASS PANEL DIMENSIONS

- **36" (914 mm) high rail:**
  1/4" x 32-5/16" x 67" max.
  (6 mm x 821 mm x 1702 mm)
- **42" (1067 mm) high rail:**
  1/4" x 38-5/16" x 67" max.
  (6 mm x 973 mm x 1702 mm)

NOTE: IF NOT INSTALLING GLASS AT FULL RAILING SPAN, GLASS MUST BE CUT TO ALLOW FOR 2 1/2" CLEARANCE ON EACH SIDE OF POST (DO NOT EXCEED 4").

Screws Supplied

#8 x 1-1/4" Rail to Bracket Screw

#10 x 5/8" Bracket to Post Screw

A. Trex Signature Glass top rail - 6' (actual length 73.5" [186.7 cm])
B. Trex Signature Glass bottom rail - 6' (actual length 71.5" [181.6 cm])
C. Trex Signature upper rail bracket and cover
D. Trex Signature lower rail tabless bracket and cover
E. Tempered glass panel* (NOT included in kit)
F. Bottom Sill Gasket
G. Top Head Gasket
H. Trex Signature foot block (REQUIRED FOR ALL TREX SIGNATURE GLASS INSTALLATIONS)
I. Trex Signature post skirt or post sleeve skirt*
J. Snap-in Channel Filler
K. Trex Signature post*
   - 36" (actual length 37" [94.0 cm])
   - 42" (actual length 43" [109.2 cm])
   or Trex 4" x 4" post sleeve**
   - 36" (actual length 40" [102 cm])
   - 42" (actual length 46" [117 cm])
L. Trex Signature post cap or post sleeve cap*

* *Item not included in Trex Signature Railing kits. Trex Signature Posts (black only) can also be purchased with brackets installed, eliminating steps 1-4 in instructions below. Sku numbers are as follows:*

SKU number	*Description*
BKAL252537RCAPCNR	*Signature Post 37" Corner Post*
BKAL252537RCAPEND	*Signature Post 37" End Post*
BKAL252537RCAPLINE	*Signature Post 37" Inline Post*
BKAL252543RCAPCNR	*Signature Post 43" Corner Post*
BKAL252543RCAPEND	*Signature Post 43" End Post*
BKAL252543RCAPLINE	*Signature Post 43" Inline Post*

** *Both 4x4 (10.2cm x 10.2cm) and 6x6 (15.2cm x 15.2 cm) post sleeves are designed to fit over a 4x4 pressure treated post.*

Installing Posts

REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS ON HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE POSTS OR PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL GLASS RAILING FIXED BRACKETS
TREX SIGNATURE®

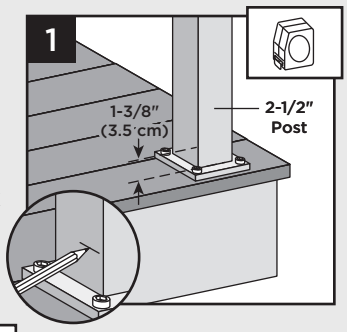
NOTES:

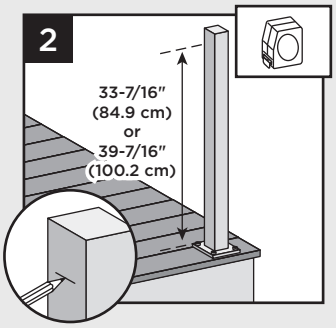
- *FOR EASE OF INSTALLATION, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO USE THE TREX SIGNATURE RAIL TEMPLATES TO ATTACH BRACKETS (SOLD SEPARATELY).*
- *TREX SIGNATURE POSTS CAN ALSO BE PURCHASED SEPARATELY WHICH HAVE BRACKETS PRE-INSTALLED, THUS SKIPPING STEPS 1-4.*

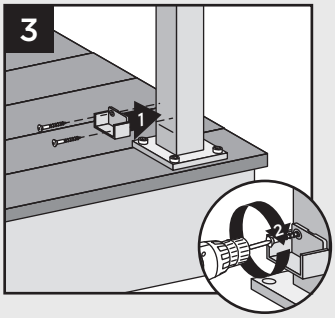
Attach Brackets Using Trex Signature Posts

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-3/8" (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.



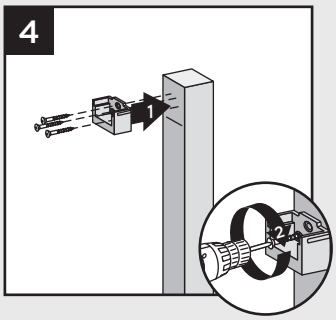




2. Measure up from post base plate 33-7/16" (84.9 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-7/16" (100.2 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

NOTE: If measuring from decking surface, measure up 33-15/16" (86.2 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16" (101.4 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height.

3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using (2) self-tapping screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using (3) self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

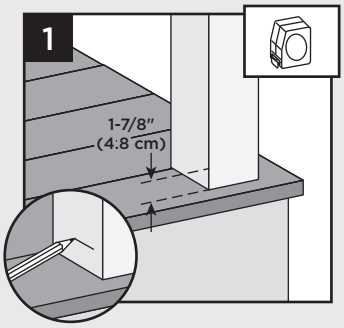


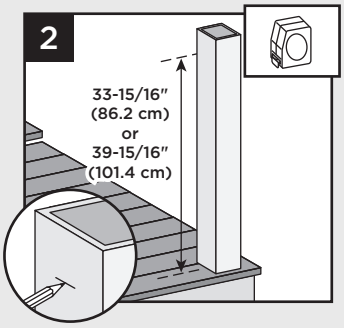
NOTE: *Upper bracket is not required on crossover post configuration.*

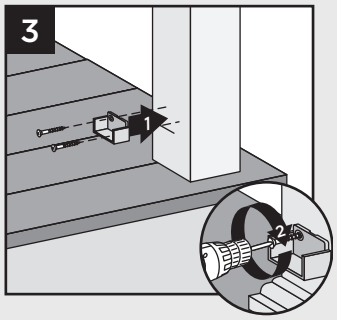
Attach Brackets Using Pressure-Treated Posts and Post Sleeves

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

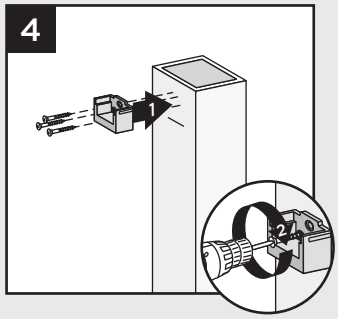
1. Measure 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.







2. Measure up from decking surface 33-15/16" (86.2 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16" (101.4 cm) for 42" (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.
3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two 2" (51 mm) wood screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using three 2" (51 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.



HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL GLASS RAILING SWIVEL BRACKETS

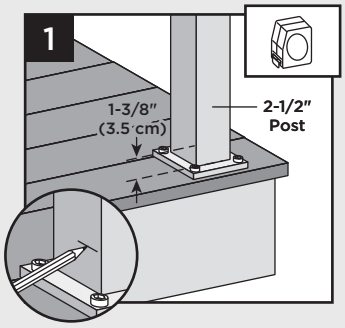
TREX SIGNATURE®

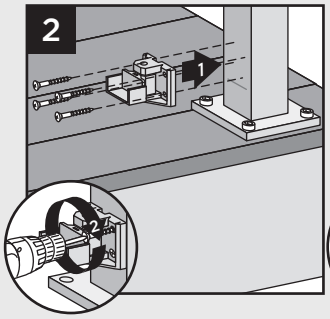
Attach Swivel Brackets Base Using Trex Signature Posts

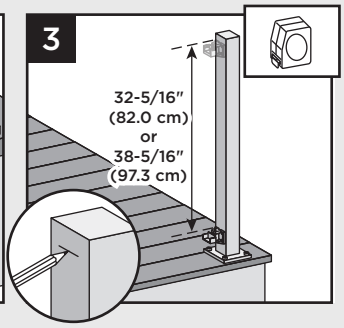
NOTE: *For bottom rail installation, use the Signature Horizonal Bottom Swivel Tabless Bracket.*

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

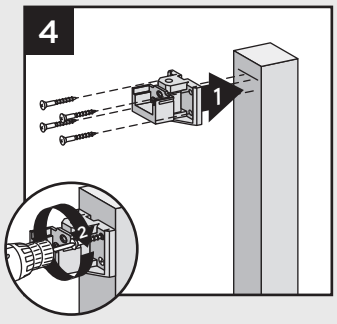
1. Measure 1-3/8" (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.







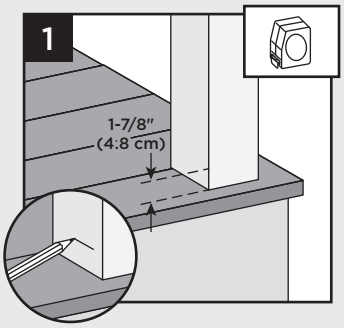
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.
3. Measure up 32-5/16" (82.0 cm) for 36" (91.4 cm) tall railing or 38-5/16" (97.3 cm) for 42" (106.7 cm) tall railing from top of lower rail bracket. Mark with a light line.
4. Center upper bracket on post **below** marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

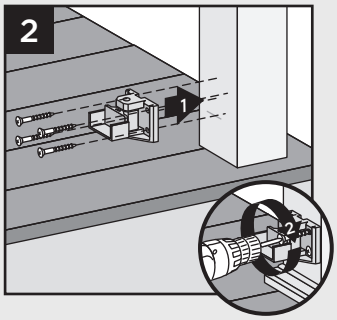


NOTE: *Upper bracket is not required on crossover post configuration.*

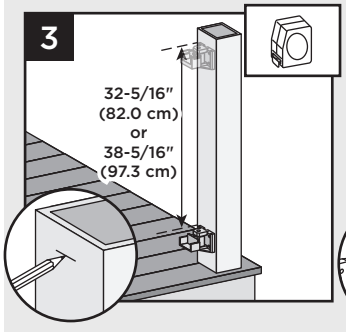
Attach Swivel Brackets Using Pressure-treated Posts and Post Sleeves

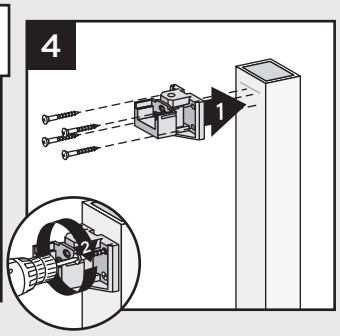
TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.





1. Measure 1-7/8" (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four 2" (5.1 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.





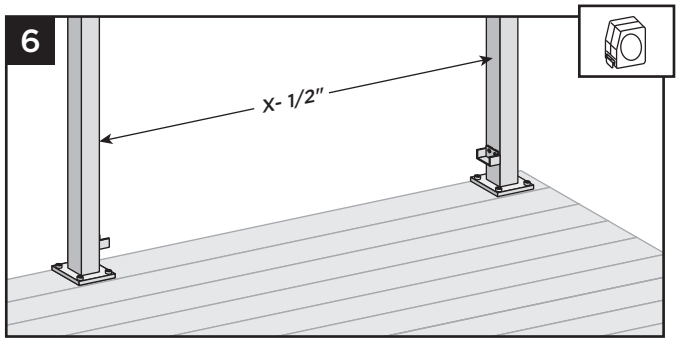
3. Measure up 32-5/16" (82.0 cm) for 36" (91.4 cm) tall railing or 38-5/16" (97.3 cm) for 42" (106.7 cm) tall railing from top of lower rail bracket. Mark with a light line.
4. Center upper bracket on post **below** marked line and attach using four 2" (5.1 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

5. Prepare a clean, soft, solid work surface area for glass (cardboard, blanket, etc.).

How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top Rails

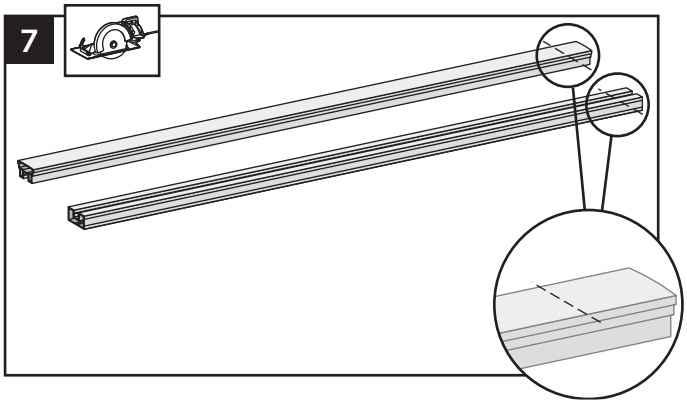
For Full Span Post to Post Applications – only top rail will need to be cut. For Full Span Crossover to Crossover post Applications – no rails have to be cut.



6. Measure distance between posts (X), and subtract 1/2" for bracket clearance.

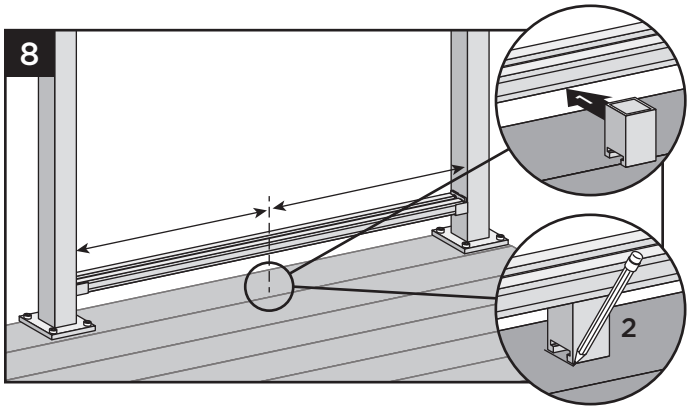
   If installing crossover post configurations, adjust top rail length: X + 3/4" if using one crossover post, or X + 1 1/2" if using two crossover posts.
   If using swivel brackets, measure distance between brackets and cut railings to this distance. In addition, if tabbed bottom swivel brackets are installed the tab must be removed from bottom swivel brackets.

Cutting Railings

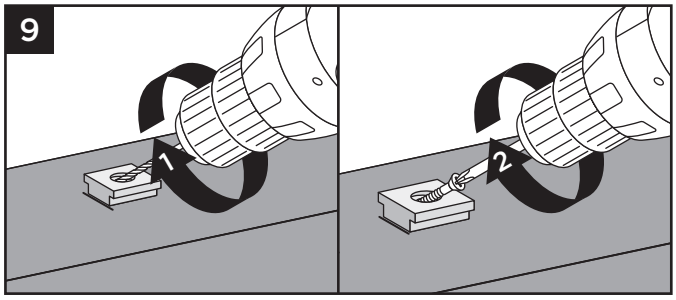


7. Cut both bottom and top rails to length as determined above.

Attachment of Foot Block (One Foot Block is Required for Any Length Glass Railing Span)

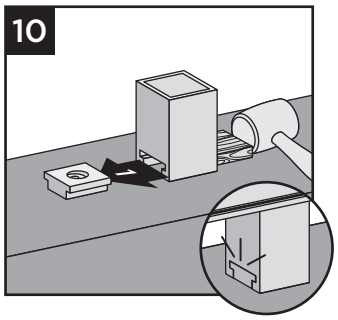


8. Temporarily place bottom rail into lower bracket. To ensure correct location, place foot block under center of bottom rail. Mark to provide placement location of base.



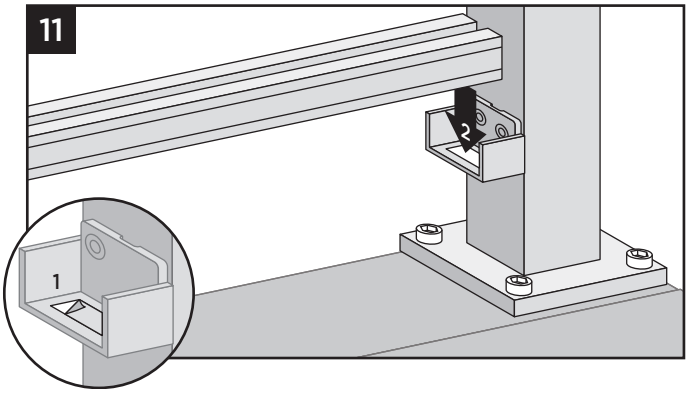
9. Remove bottom rail from lower brackets. Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16" bit. Attach base of foot block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

10. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap foot block until it locks into place.



HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL GLASS RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

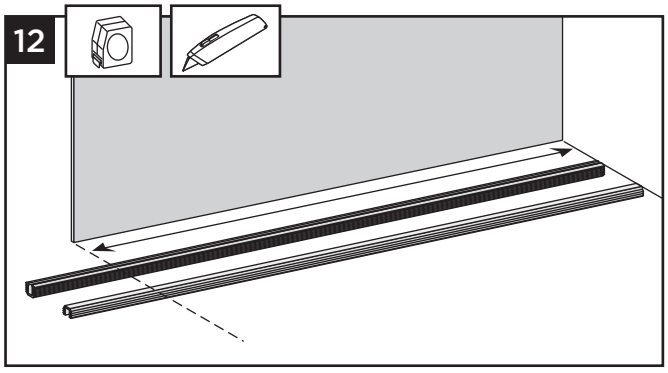
Installing Bottom Rail



11. Place adhesive strips (provided) into bottom rail brackets, and then place bottom rail into brackets.

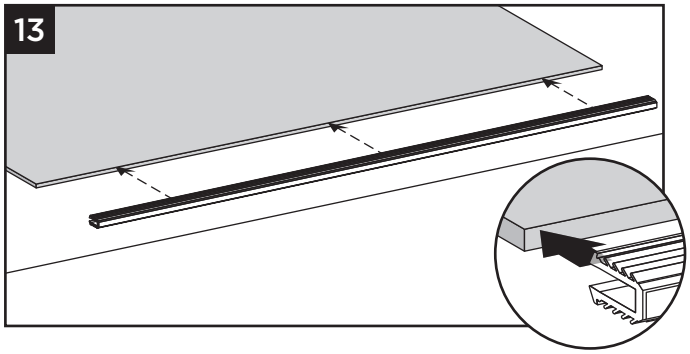
NOTE: *Make sure surface is clean and dry.*

Cutting Gaskets



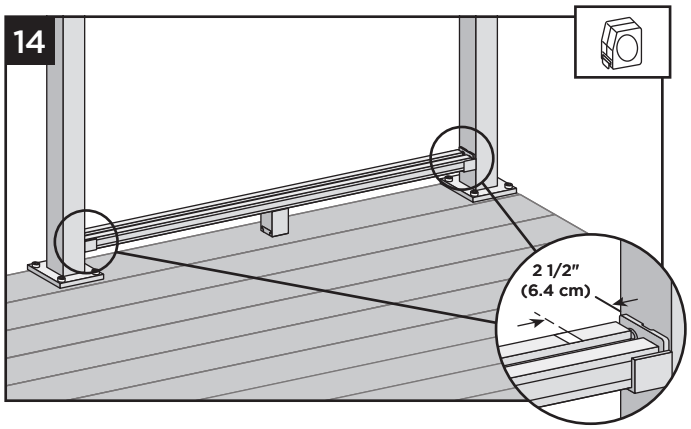
12. Cut both bottom sill gasket and top head gasket to the same length of glass panel.

Installing Bottom Sill Gasket



13. Lay glass on clean soft surface and install the bottom sill gasket onto the bottom edge of the glass panel.

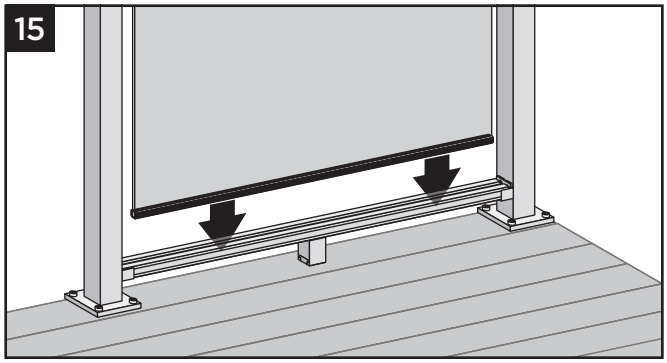
Centering the Glass and Installing into Bottom Rail



14. For full span installation, make a temporary mark on the bottom rail (example: use removable tape) 2-1/2" from each post. This will allow for glass to be centered between posts on bottom rail.

    For all other spans, make sure glass is centered **BEFORE** installing into bottom rail. **WARNING**: DO NOT exceed 4" between glass and post.

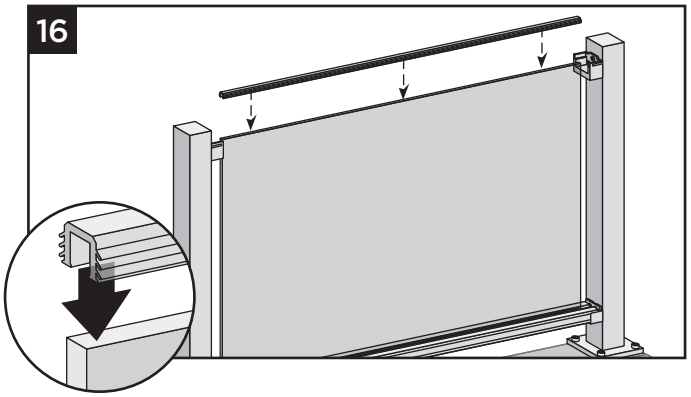
    THIS IS IMPORTANT AS THE GLASS MUST BE CENTERED ON THE BOTTOM RAIL BEFORE INSTALLATION, AS THIS IS VERY DIFFICULT TO REMOVE IF PLACED INCORRECTLY.



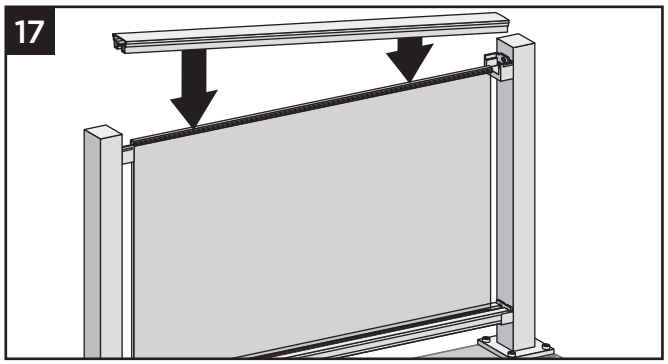
15. Press glass panel (with bottom sill gasket on glass) firmly into the bottom rail.

NOTE: *Make sure glass is being secured by hand until final assembly of the top rail.*

Installing Top Head Gasket and Top Rail

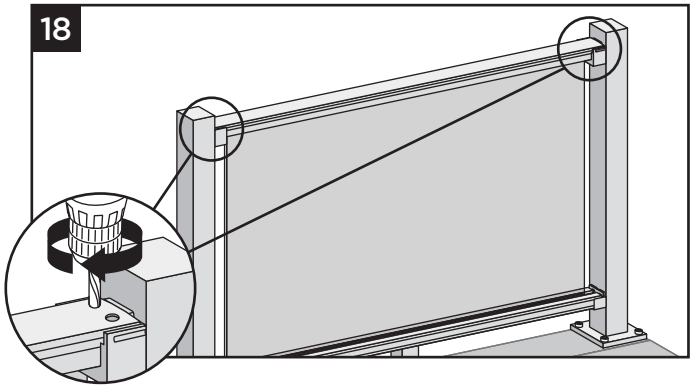


16. Install top head gasket onto the top of the glass panel. Note that the gasket may be loose at this stage.

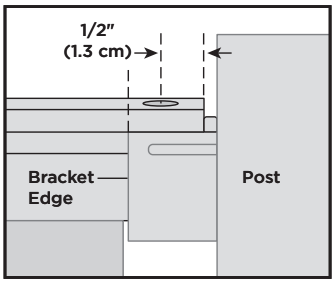


17. Starting at one end and working down, press the top rail firmly onto the top of the glass panel (with top head gasket on glass). Ensure the top rail is centered properly and top rail will seat into brackets when finished.

Attaching Top Rail to Brackets



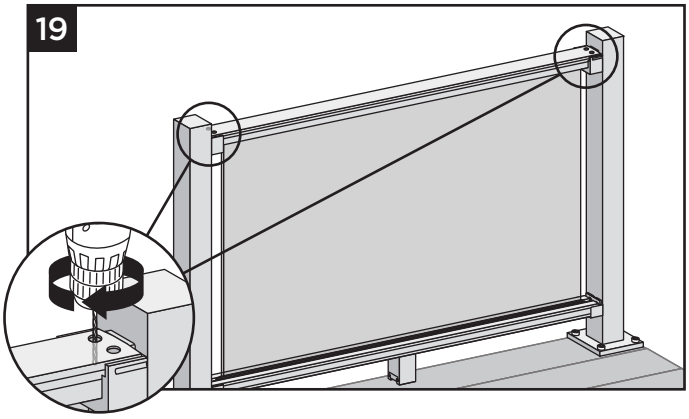
18. Drill two 1/2" holes approximately 1/2" from end of top rail. Repeat this on opposite side of top rail.



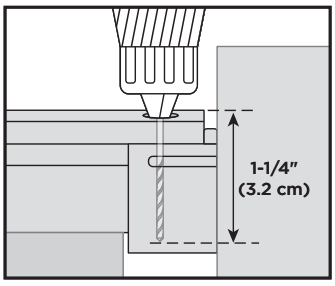
IMPORTANT NOTES:

» *HOLES CANNOT EXTEND PAST BRACKET, OTHERWISE BRACKET COVER WILL NOT COVER HOLES.*

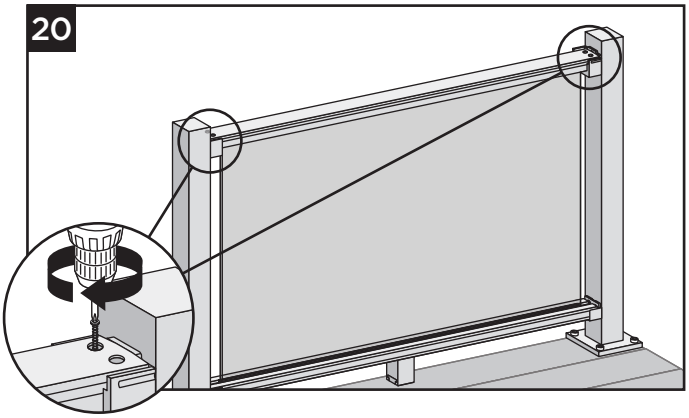
» *ONLY DRILL 1/2" HOLES THRU TOP WALL OF TOP RAIL. DO NOT USE A STEP BIT.*



19. Using 9/64" bit provided, center into above holes and **PREDRILL** into top rail bracket at a depth of approximately 1-1/4". Use care to not drill through underside of top bracket.

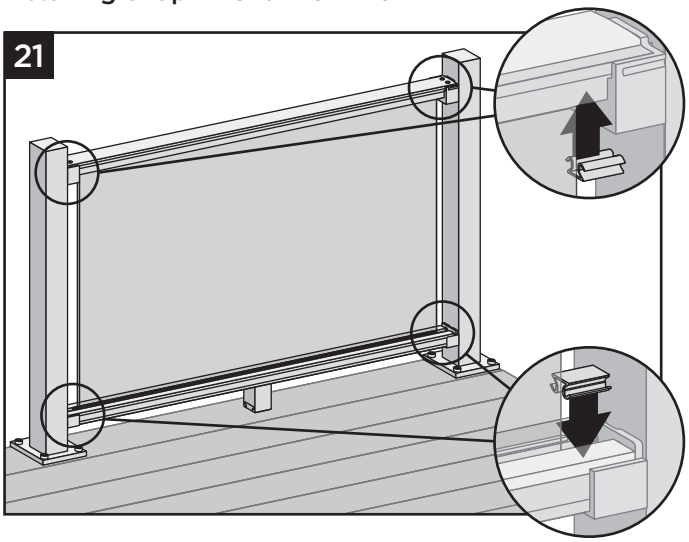


HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL GLASS RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®



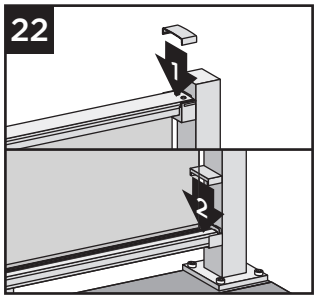
20. Install two #8 x 1-1/4" screws provided into top rail and top bracket on each end of top rail.

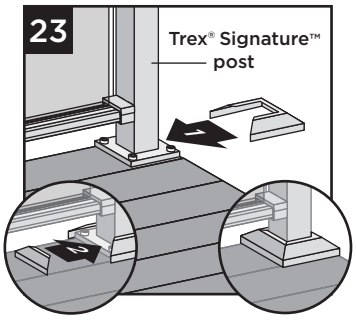
Installing Snap-in Channel Filler



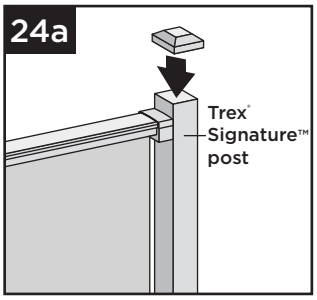
21. Cut snap-in channel filler to correct length and install into channels of bottom and top rails. Use of a rubber mallet may assist with this step. **DO NOT** attempt to cut short snap-in pieces with a miter saw. Use an angle grinder or hack saw only.

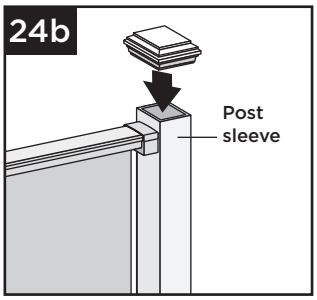
Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps





22. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in top and bottom rails.
23. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.





24a. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts. (Use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment.)
24b. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

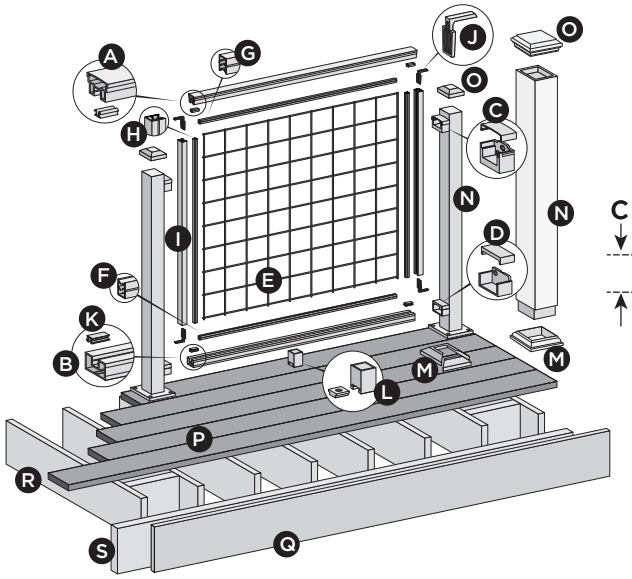
HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

NOTES:

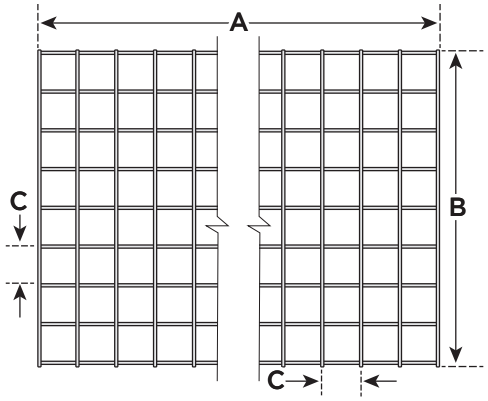
- *» TREX SIGNATURE MESH RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A MAXIMUM CLEAR SPAN OF 6′ (1.83M) OR 8′ (2.44M).*
- *» MUST USE TREX DECK MOUNT POST HARDWARE AND METAL PLATE WHEN ATTACHING SIGNATURE POSTS IN GUARDRAIL APPLICATIONS.*
- *» FOR FULL SPAN INSTALLATIONS, MESH WILL NOT NEED TO BE CUT WITH THE EXCEPTION OF 6′ X 42″. IF INSTALLING AT THIS SIZE, PURCHASE 8′ X 42″ MESH AND CUT TO THE PROPER LENGTH.*
- *» ALWAYS REFER TO YOUR LOCAL BUILDING CODE OFFICIAL PRIOR TO INSTALLING ANY RAILING SYSTEM TO ENSURE ALL CODE AND SAFETY REQUIREMENTS ARE MET. TREX CANNOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR IMPROPER OR NON-RECOMMENDED INSTALLATIONS.*
- *» A FOOTBLOCK IS REQUIRED FOR ALL SPANS OF TREX SIGNATURE MESH RAIL. THUS THESE RAILING SPANS MUST BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST.*
- *» ENSURE THAT EACH MESH PANEL IS ORIENTED IN SAME DIRECTION FOR EACH SECTION PRIOR TO BEING INSTALLED.*

CURVED MESH INSTALLATION NOTES:

- *» DESIGN AND FABRICATION FOR CURVED MESH RAILINGS MUST BE HANDLED BETWEEN SIGHTLINE COMMERCIAL SOLUTIONS AND THE CONTRACTOR/CUSTOMER. FOR MORE INFORMATION VISIT TREX.COM OR CALL 1-800-BUY-TREX.*
- *» CURVED MESH RAILING MUST BE INSTALLED USING HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS.*
- *» FOLLOW ALL INSTRUCTIONS AS LISTED BELOW (WITH THE USE OF SWIVEL BRACKETS) FOR INSTALLATION OF CURVED MESH.*

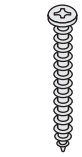


NOTE: IMAGE SHOWN HERE IS POST TO POST CONFIGURATION



MESH DIMENSIONS CHART			
	A	B	C
6′ x 36″ HZ	64″	32 3/8″	4″
8′ x 36″ HZ	88″	32 3/8″	4″
8′ x 42″ HZ	88″	38 3/8″	4″
8′ x 42″ ST	108 3/16″	36 3/16″	4″

NOTE: *Mesh panel sizes listed in above table are stainless steel. Mesh is also available in black carbon steel in the following sizes: 36″ x 72″, 36″ x 96″, 72″ x 60″.*



#8 x 1 1/4″ Top Rail to Bracket Screw

#8 x 5/8″ L-Bracket to Rail Screw

#8–10 x 2″ Bracket to Wood/Post Sleeve Screw

#10 x 5/8″ Bracket to Signature Post Screw

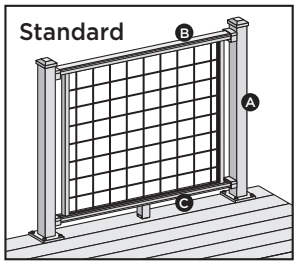
A. Trex Signature Mesh top rail
   - 6′ (actual length 73.5″ [186.7 cm])
   - 8′ (actual length 97.3” [247.7 cm])
B. Trex Signature Mesh bottom rail
   - 6′ (actual length 71.5″ [181.6 cm])
   - 8′ (actual length 95.5” [242.6cm])
C. Trex Signature upper rail bracket and cover
D. Trex Signature lower rail tabless bracket and cover
E. Mesh Panel – see chart above for dimensions
F. Horizontal PVC Gasket
G. Horizontal PVC Gasket
H. Vertical PVC Gaskets
I. Vertical Supports
J. L-Brackets
K. Snap-in Channel Filler
L. Trex Signature foot block (REQUIRED FOR ALL SPANS – MESH INSTALLATIONS)
M. Trex Signature post skirt or post sleeve skirt*
N. Trex Signature post*
   - 36″ (actual length 37″ [94.0 cm])
   - 42″ (actual length 43″ [109.2 cm])
   or Trex 4″ x 4″ post sleeve**
   - 36″ (actual length 39″ [99.1 cm])
   - 42″ (actual length 45″ [114.3 cm])
O. Trex Signature post cap or post sleeve cap*
P. Trex decking
Q. Trex Fascia
R. Code-approved wood joist 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) or larger
S. Code-approved wood rim joist 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) or larger

* *Item not included in Trex Signature Railing kits.*
** *Both 4″ x 4″ (10.2cm x 10.2cm) and 6″ x 6″ (15.2cm x 15.2 cm) post sleeves are designed to fit over a 4″ x 4″ pressure treated post.*

NOTE: *If installing 42″ (106.7 cm) railing, and using pressure-treated posts with Trex post sleeves, ensure that a longer pressure-treated post is used along with longer post sleeve, both cut to a height of 46″ (116.8 cm) from decking surface.*

RAILING CONFIGURATIONS

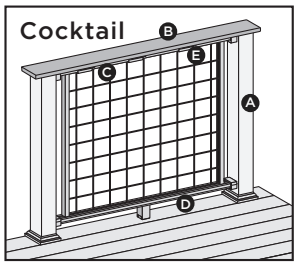
Note: See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex post mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.



Cutting posts/post sleeves is **NOT** required.

A. Trex Signature post, pressure-treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x 4 post sleeve, or Composite Joist Mount Post/Trex 4x4 post sleeve (Inside mount)
B. Trex Signature top rail
C. Trex Signature bottom rail

See page 169 for "How to Install Standard Mesh Railing."

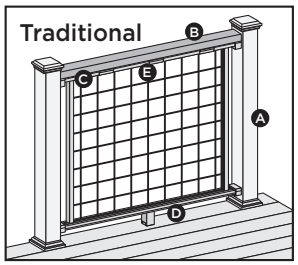


Post sleeves will need to be cut.

A. Pressure-treated post with Trex post sleeve
   NOTE: » *Only for use with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve.*
   » *Trex Signature Posts, Trex Post Mounts or Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Cocktail design.*
B. Deck board top rail. ***NOTE:*** *Enhance cannot be used.*
C. Trex Signature top rail
D. Trex Signature bottom rail
E. Trex Signature Cocktail Rail Bracket**

POST SLEEVES WILL NEED TO BE CUT

See page 174 for "How to Install Mesh Cocktail Railing."



Cutting posts/post sleeves is Not required.

A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 post asleeve, or Composite Joist Mount Post/Trex 4 x 4 post sleeve (Inside mount).
   NOTE: » *Trex Signature Posts or Trex Signature Joist Mount Posts cannot be used.*
B. 2 x 4 lateral top rail
C. Trex Signature top rail
D. Trex Signature bottom rail
E. Trex Signature Cocktail Rail Bracket**

See page 176 for "How to Install Mesh Traditional Railing."

» ***NOTES:*** **For Signature post or pressure-treated post with post sleeve installations refer To Signature Post Installation Instructions.**

*** Trex Signature Cocktail Rail brackets (sold separately) are for use with either Trex Mesh Rail Traditional or Trex Mesh Rail Cocktail designs. For a 6′ section, use 4 brackets and screws provided, for 8′ section, use 5 brackets and screws provided.*

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING BRACKETS
TREX SIGNATURE®

Installing Posts
REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS ON HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE POSTS OR PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.

NOTES:

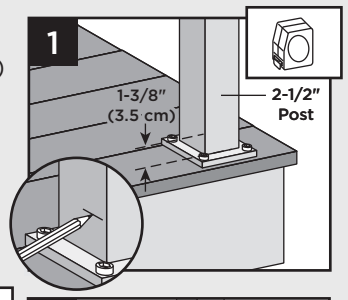
- ***FOR EASE OF INSTALLATION, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO USE THE TREX SIGNATURE RAIL TEMPLATES TO ATTACH BRACKETS (SOLD SEPARATELY).***
- ***TREX SIGNATURE POSTS (BLACK ONLY) CAN ALSO BE PURCHASED SEPARATELY WHICH HAVE BRACKETS PREINSTALLED, THUS SKIPPING STEPS 1-4 BELOW.***

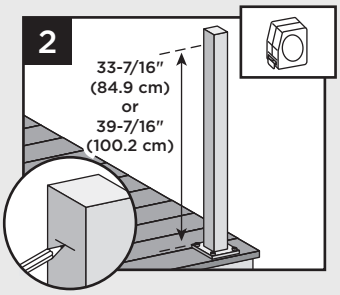
SKU NUMBER	*DESCRIPTION*
BKAL252537RCAPCNR	Signature Post 37″ Corner Post
BKAL252537RCAPLINE	Signature Post 37″ Inline Post
BKAL252543RCAPEND	Signature Post 43″ End Post

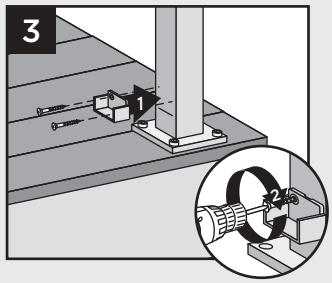
SKU NUMBER	*DESCRIPTION*
BKAL252537RCAPEND	Signature Post 37″ End Post
BKAL252543RCAPCNR	Signature Post 43″ Corner Post
BKAL252543RCAPLINE	Signature Post 43″ Inline Post

Attach Brackets Using Trex Signature Posts
TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-3/8″ (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8″ (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.





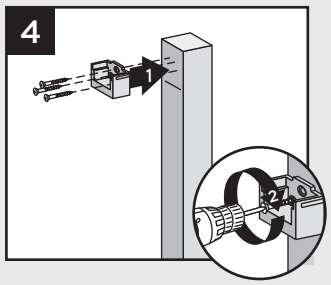


2. Measure up from post base plate 33-7/16″ (84.9 cm) for 36″ (92 cm) rail height or 39-7/16″ (100.2 cm) for 42″ (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

NOTE: If measuring from decking surface, measure up 33-15/16″ (86.2 cm) for 36″ (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16″ (101.4 cm) for 42″ (107 cm) rail height.

3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

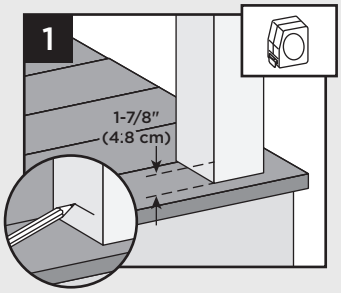
4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using (3) self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

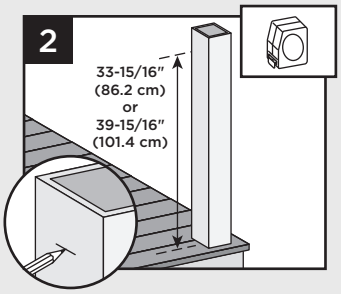


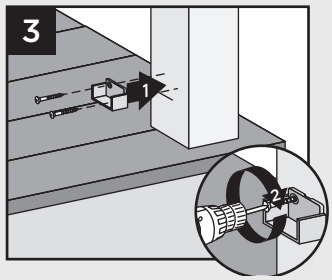
NOTE: *Upper bracket is not required on crossover post configuration.*

Attach Brackets Using Pressure-Treated Posts and Post Sleeves
TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

1. Measure 1-7/8″ (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.



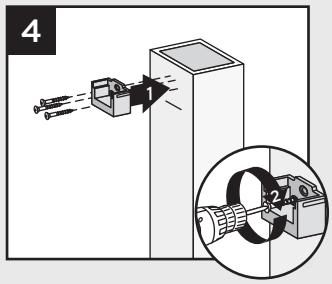




2. Measure up from decking surface 33-15/16″ (862 cm) for 36″ (92 cm) rail height or 39-15/16″ (101.4 cm) for 42″ (107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.

3. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two 2″ (51 mm) wood screws *(provided)*.

4. Center upper bracket on post **above** marked line and attach using three 2″ (51 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.

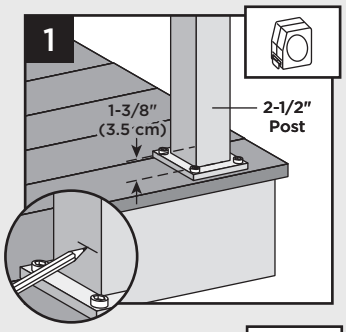


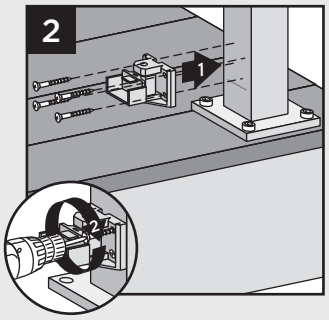
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING SWIVEL BRACKETS
TREX SIGNATURE®

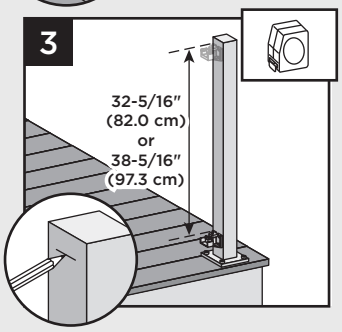
Attach Swivel Brackets Using Trex Signature Posts

TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.

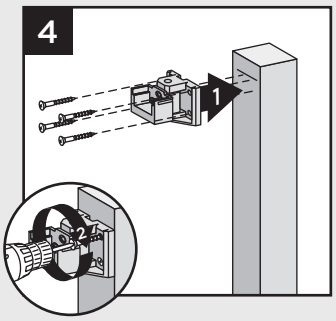
1. Measure 1-3/8″ (3.5 cm) from top of post base plate or 1-7/8″ (4.8 cm) from decking surface. Mark with light line.





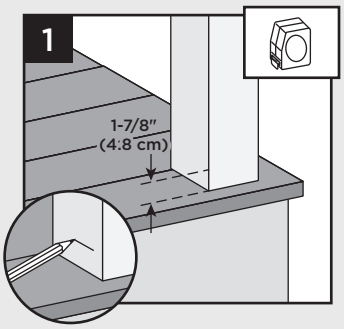


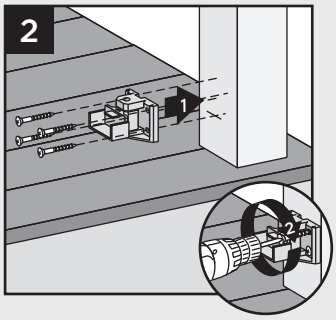
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.
3. Measure up 32-5/16″ (82.0 cm) for 36″ (91.4 cm) tall railing or 38-5/16″ (97.3 cm) for 42″ (106.7 cm) tall railing from top of lower rail bracket. Mark with a light line.
4. Center upper bracket on post **below** marked line and attach using four self-tapping screws *(provided)*.



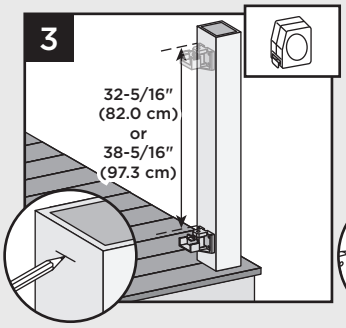
Attach Swivel Brackets Using Pressure-treated Posts and Post Sleeves

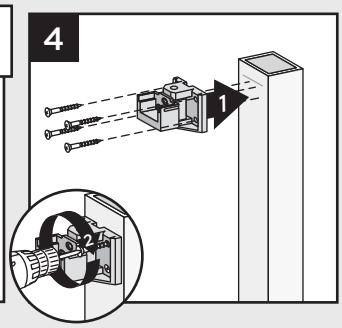
TIP: Use a clamp to help hold brackets in place while fastening with screws.





1. Measure 1-7/8″ (4.8 cm) up from deck surface to bottom of bracket. Mark with light line.
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four 2″ (5.1 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.



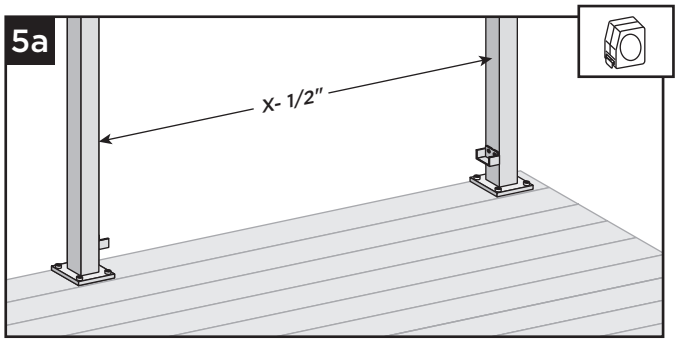


3. Measure up 32-5/16″ (82.0 cm) for 36″ (91.4 cm) tall railing or 38-5/16″ (97.3 cm) for 42″ (106.7 cm) tall railing from top of lower rail bracket. Mark with a light line.
4. Center upper bracket on post **below** marked line and attach using four 2″ (5.1 cm) wood screws *(provided)*.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top Rails

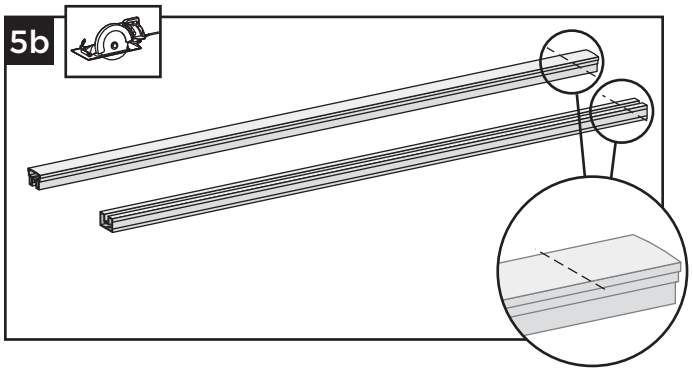
For Full Span Post to Post Applications – only top rail will need to be cut. For Full Span Crossover to Crossover post Applications – no rails have to be cut.



5a. Measure distance between posts (X), and subtract 1/2" for bracket clearance.

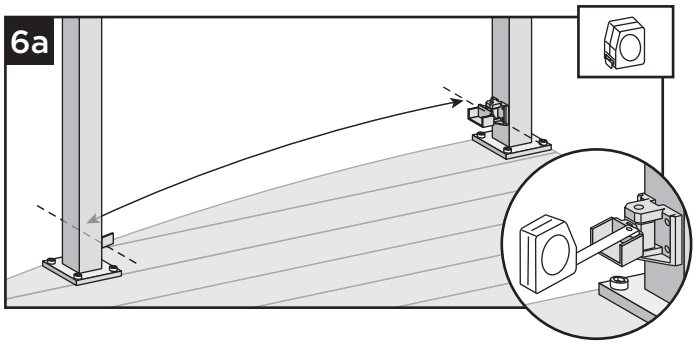
If installing crossover post configurations, adjust top rail length: X + 3/4" if using one crossover post, or X + 1 1/2" if using two crossover posts.

If using swivel brackets, measure distance between brackets and cut railings to this distance.



5b. Cut both bottom and top rail to length as determined above.

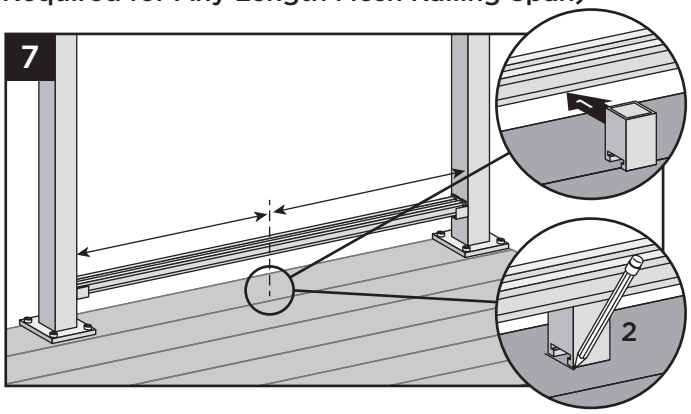
How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top CURVED Rails.



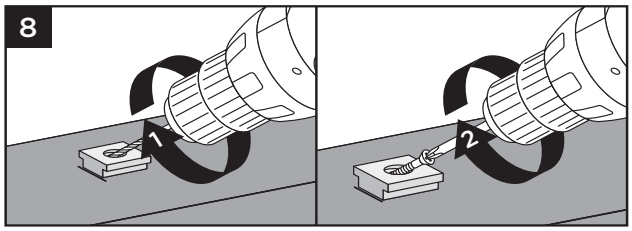
6a. With brackets in correct swivel location, measure distance from inside of bracket to inside of bracket. In addition, if tabbed bottom swivel brackets are installed the tab must be removed.

6b. Cut both curved bottom and top rails to length as determined above.

Attachment of Foot Block (One Footblock is Required for Any Length Mesh Railing Span)



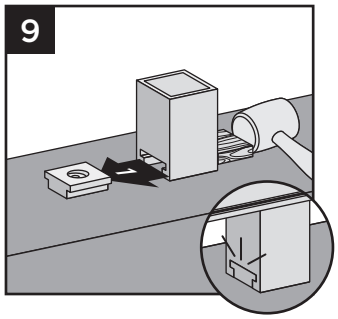
7. Temporarily place bottom rail into lower bracket. To ensure correct location, place foot block under center of bottom rail. Mark to provide placement location of base.



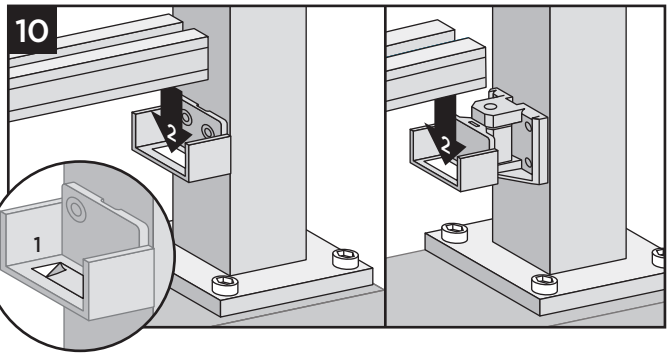
8. Remove bottom rail from lower brackets. Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16" bit. Attach base of foot block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

9. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap foot block until it locks into place.



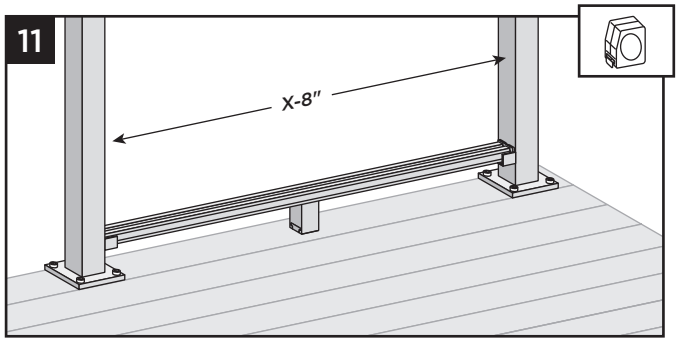
Installing Bottom Rail and Adding Weep Holes to Bottom Rail



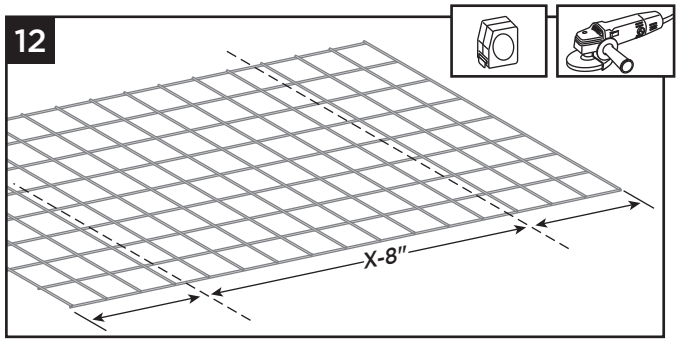
10. Place adhesive strips (provided) into bottom rail brackets, and then place bottom rail into brackets. Using a 3/8" drill bit, drill weep holes through center of bottom rail channel at 4 evenly spanned locations to allow for water drainage.

NOTES:
- *Make sure surface is clean and dry.*
- *Place a scrap board under rail when drilling weep holes to avoid damage to the deck boards.*

Cutting Mesh
(Required if installing rails at odd span lengths)



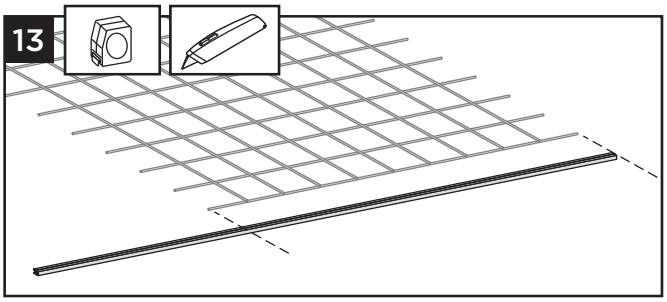
11. If not installing full span, mesh will require cutting from equal distance on each side. Measure distance between posts and subtract 8.



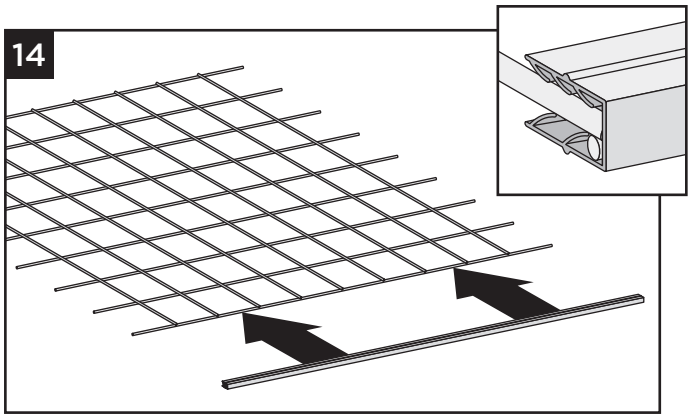
12. Cut mesh panel to this measurement, again cutting equal distances from each side so mesh is centered.

NOTE: *An angle grinder (with proper blade) is recommended for cutting wire mesh. (ALWAYS USE PROPER SAFETY GEAR WHEN CUTTING WITH ANGLE GRINDER.) Note that heavy duty bolt cutters can also be used.*

Cutting Top and Bottom PVC Gasket & Installing Bottom Gasket



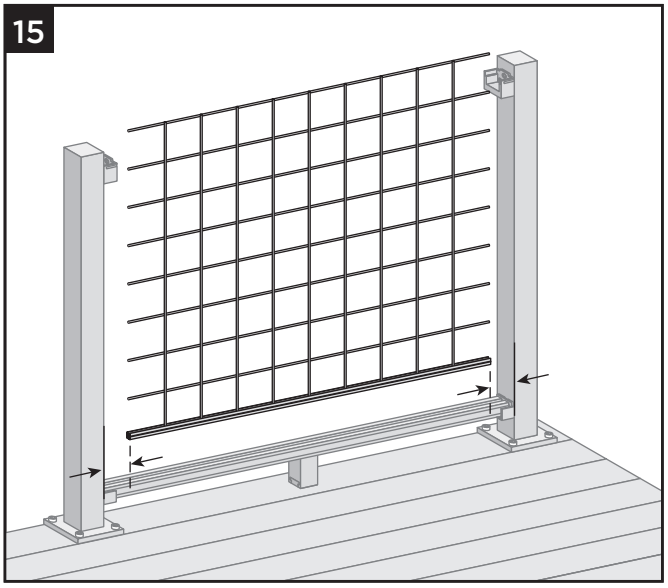
13. Cut bottom and top PVC gasket the same length as mesh.



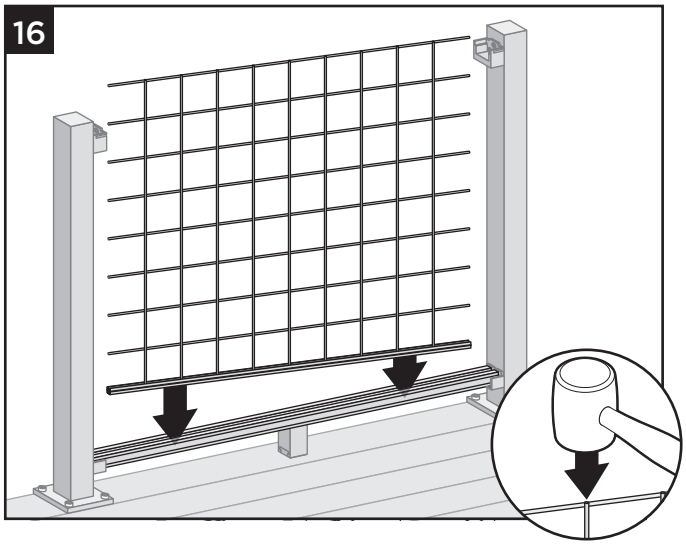
14. Install bottom PVC gasket onto bottom of mesh panel. Make sure gasket is fully seated onto mesh.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Centering the Mesh and Installing into Bottom Rail



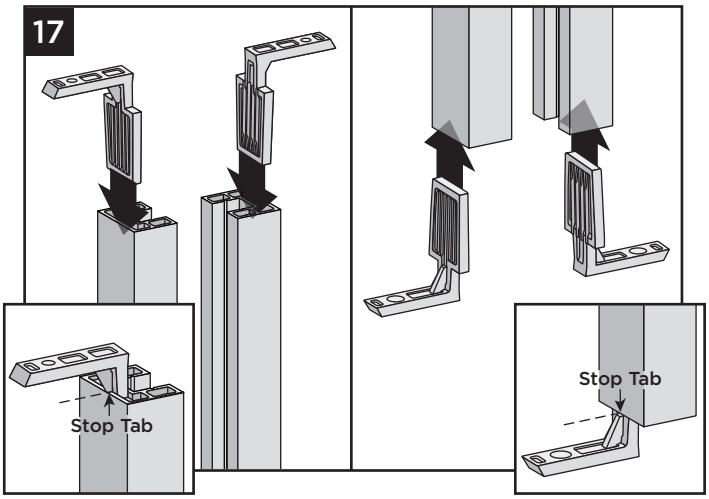
15. Center mesh (with bottom PVC gasket installed) so there is equal distance between sides of mesh and posts.



16. Starting at one end, push mesh (with bottom PVC gasket installed) firmly into the bottom rail. GENTLE tapping with rubber mallet on mesh CROSS-SECTIONS will help prevent mesh from bending.

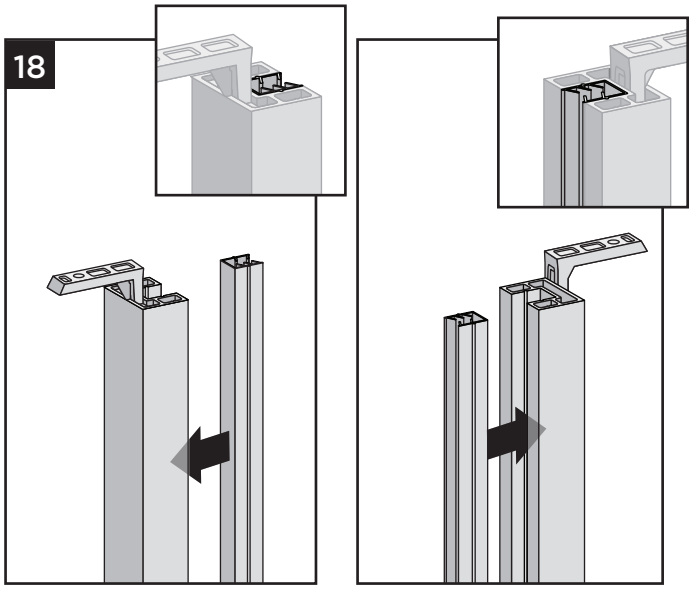
NOTE: *Make sure mesh is being secured by hand until final assembly of the top rail.*

Installing L-Brackets into Vertical Supports



17. Install L-brackets into both top and bottom slots of vertical supports as shown. L-brackets will require light tapping until stop lip of bracket is resting on vertical support.

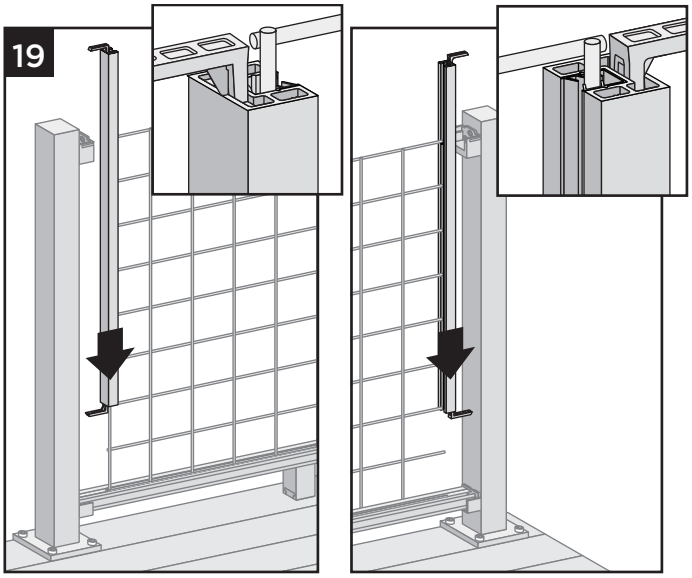
Installing Vertical PVC Gaskets onto Vertical Supports (No cutting required these come standard size.)



18. Align and install vertical PVC gaskets into the vertical supports.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

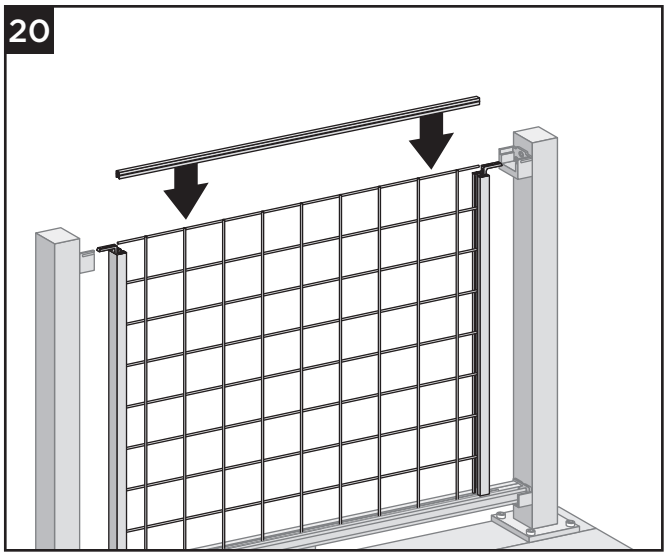
Installing Vertical Supports



19. Install vertical supports onto mesh panel, also ensuring that L-bracket is fully seated into bottom rail channel.

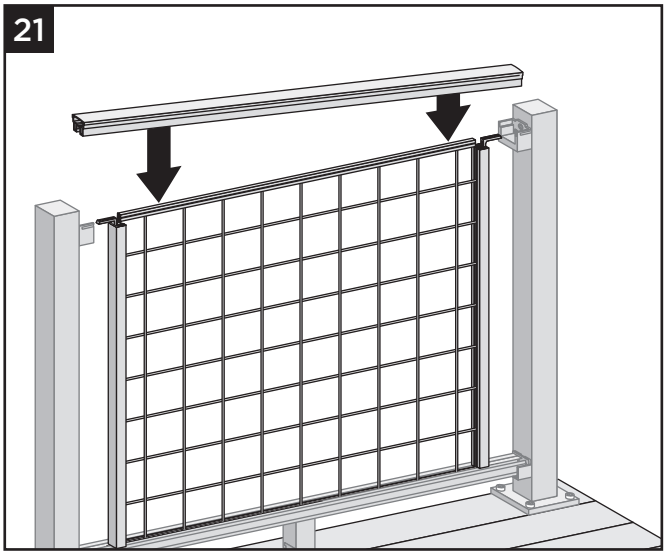
    IMPORTANT NOTE: *USE SOAPY WATER ON THE VERTICAL SUPPORTS/PVC GASKETS TO ALLOW THIS TO SLIDE DOWN THE MESH PANEL*

Installing Top PVC Gasket onto Mesh Panel

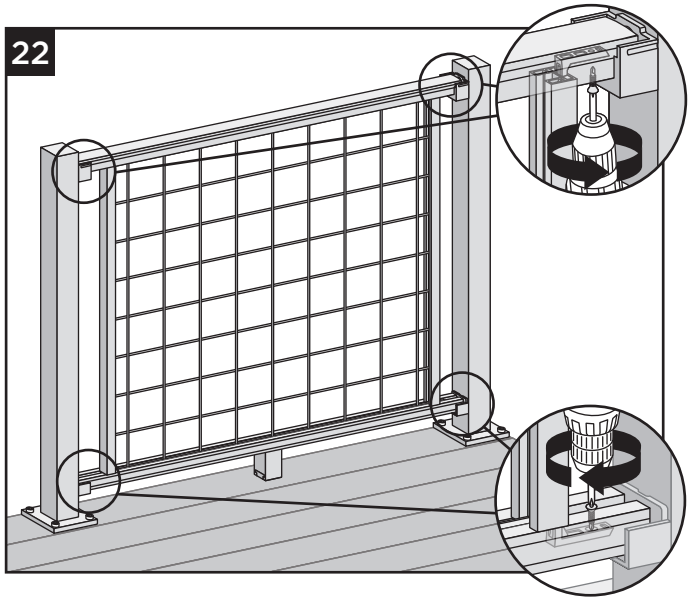


20. Install cut gasket onto top of mesh panel. Make sure gasket is fully seated onto mesh.

Installing Top Rail onto Mesh Panel



21. Starting at one end and working down, press the top rail firmly onto the top of the mesh panel (with top PVC gasket on mesh). Ensure the top rail is centered properly so top rail will seat into brackets when finished.

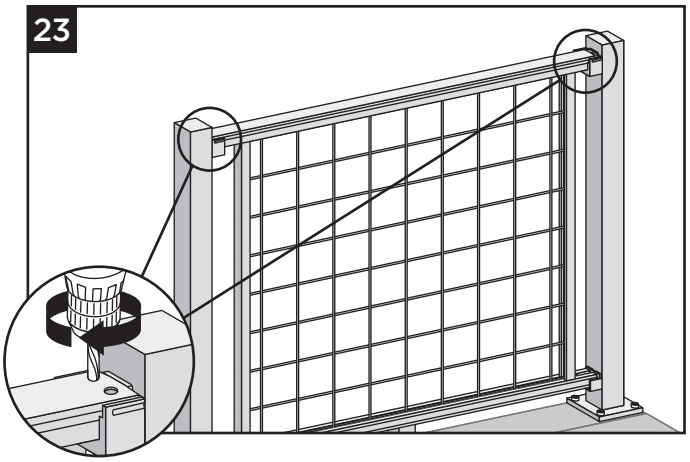


Attaching L-Brackets to Top and Bottom Rails

22. Attach L-Brackets to both top and bottom rails using one #8 x 5/8 flat head screw (provided).

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

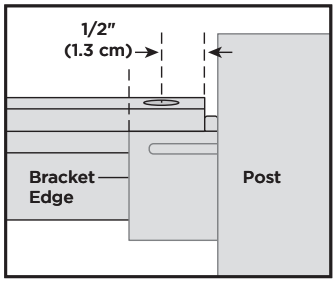
Attaching Top Rail to Brackets

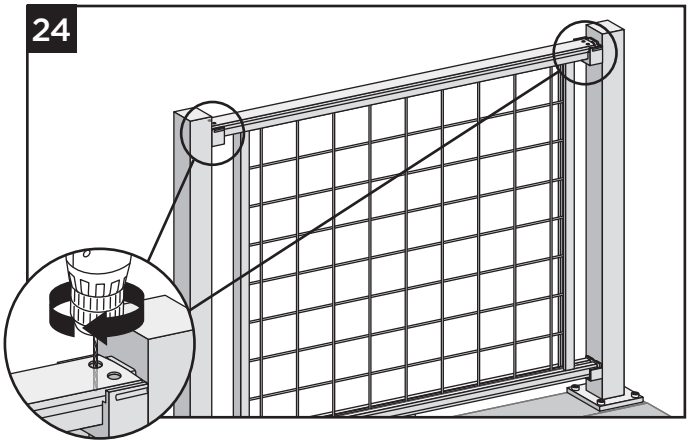


23. Drill two 1/2" holes approximately 1/2" from end of top rail. Repeat this on opposite side of top rail.

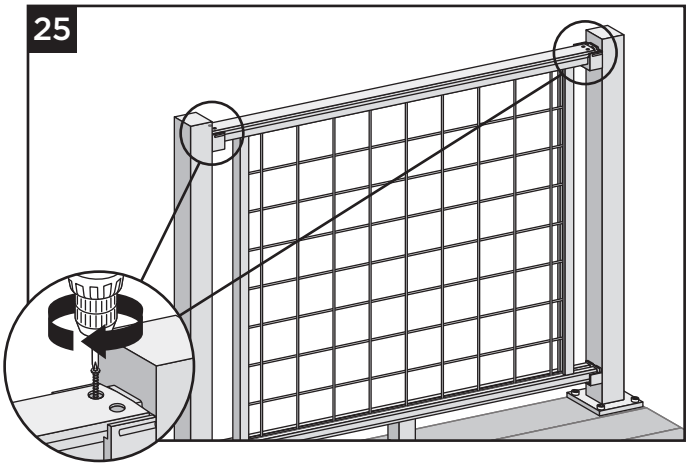
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *HOLES CANNOT EXTEND PAST BRACKET, OTHERWISE BRACKET COVER WILL NOT COVER HOLES.*
- *ONLY DRILL 1/2" HOLES THRU TOP WALL OF TOP RAIL. DO NOT USE A STEP BIT.*

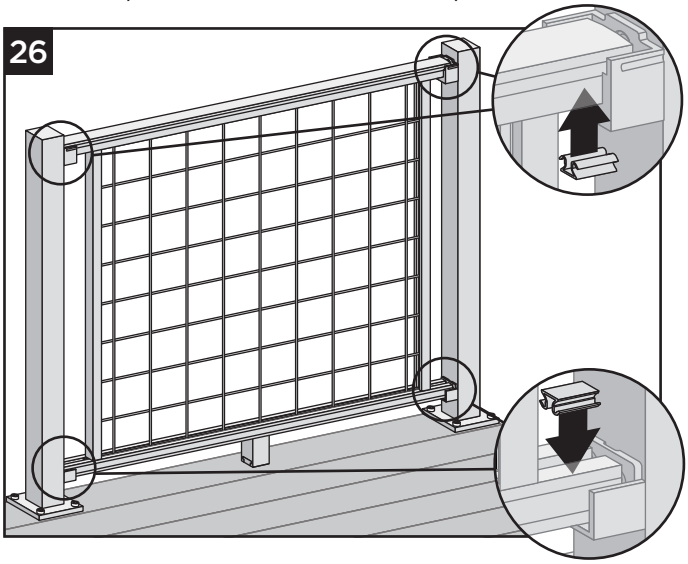




24. Using 9/64" bit provided, center into above holes and **PREDRILL** into top rail bracket at a depth of approximately 1-1/4". Use care to not drill through underside of top bracket.



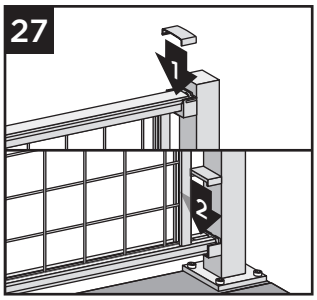
25. Install two #8 x 1-1/4" screws provided into top rail and top bracket on each end of top rail.

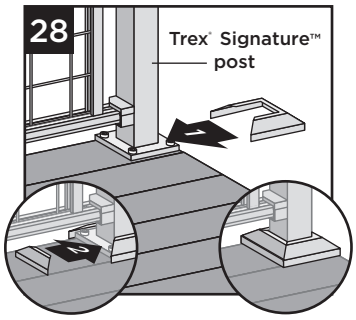


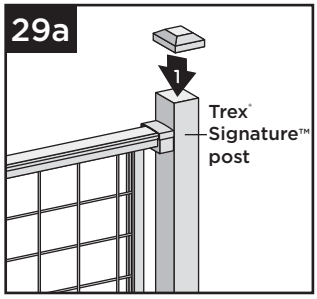
26. Cut snap-in channel filler to correct length and install into channels of bottom and top rails. Use of a rubber mallet may assist with this step. **DO NOT** attempt to cut short snap in pieces with a miter saw. Use an angle grinder or hack saw only.

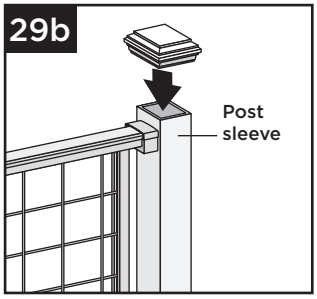
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps





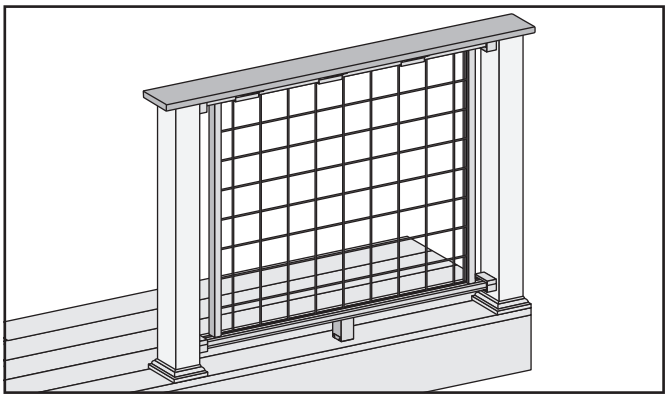




27. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.
28 Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.

29a. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts. (Use of **rubber mallet** may be required for secure attachment).
29b. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs).

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH COCKTAIL RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



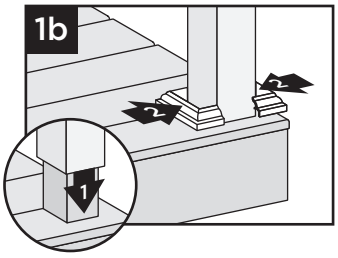
IMPORTANT NOTE:

» ***ONLY for use with pressure treated 4 x 4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve. Trex Signature® posts, Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Trex Mesh Cocktail railing. Cutting post and post sleeve ONLY applies to the Cocktail style railing.***

Installing Pressure-treated Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts to Use with Mesh Cocktail Railing

1a. ***PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.***

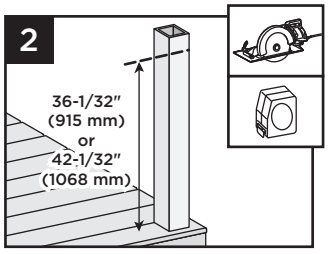
1b. Slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.



NOTE: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

Cutting Post and Post Sleeve

2. Mark and cut post and post sleeve measuring from deck surface:
   » 36-1/32" (915 mm) for 36" (914 mm) height.
   » 42-1/32" (1068 mm) for 42" (1067 mm) height.



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH COCKTAIL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

3. **How to Measure Bottom and Top Rails**
   See instructions on page 169.

4. **Cutting Rails**
   See instructions on page 169.

5. **Attachment of Foot Block (REQUIRED)**
   See instructions on page 169.

6. **Installing Bottom Rail and Adding Weep Holes to Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 170.

7. **Cutting Mesh (if required)**
   See instructions on page 170.

8. **Cutting Bottom PVC Gasket and Installing onto Mesh**
   See instructions on page 170.

9. **Centering Mesh and Installing into Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 171.

10. **Installing Vertical PVC Gaskets onto Mesh**
    See instructions on page 171.

11. **Installing L-Brackets into Vertical Supports**
    See instructions on page 171.

12. **Installing Vertical Supports**
    See instructions on page 172.

13. **Cutting Top PVC Gasket and Installing onto Mesh**
    See instructions on page 172.

14. **Installing Top Rail onto Mesh Panel**
    See instructions on page 172.

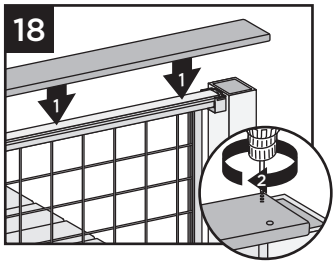
15. **Attaching L-Brackets to Top and Bottom Rails**
    See Instruction on page 172.

16. **Attaching Top Rail to Brackets**
    See instructions on page 173.

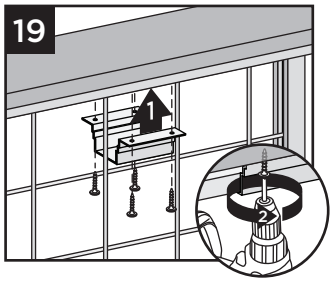
17. **Installing Snap-in Channel Filler**
    See instructions on page 173.

NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

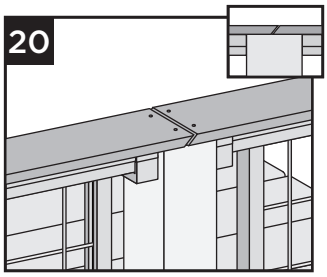


18. Place deck boards (***DO NOT*** use Enhance deck boards for top rail) over top rails. Attach boards on each post with Trex-recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per each post/board end).



19. Secure boards to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.

NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

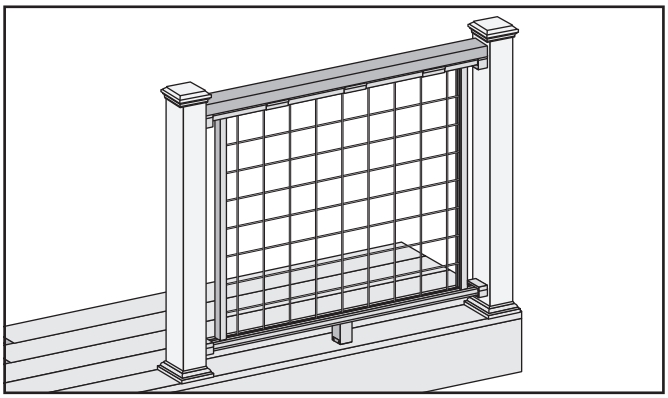


20. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.

NOTES:
- *Leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*
- *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*

21. **Attachment of Bottom Bracket Covers**
    See instructions on page 174.

HOW TO INSTALL MESH TRADITIONAL RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

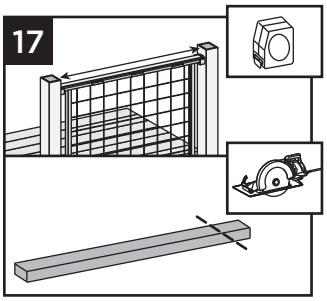


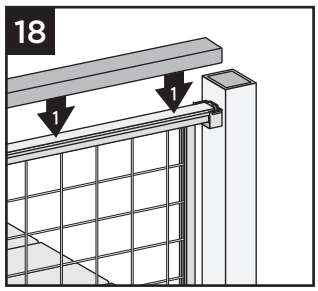
Important: Only use with Pressure-treated post, Trex Post Mounts or Trex Joist Mount Post WITH Trex post sleeves. Trex Signature Posts and Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Mesh Traditional.

1. **Installing Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts**
   *See instructions on page 175 for pressure treated posts. Refer to detailed Trex Post Mount instructions if using these. Post and Post Sleeves are **NOT CUT** in this installation.*
2. **How to Measure Bottom and Top Rails**
   See instructions on page 169.
3. **Cutting Rails**
   See instructions on page 169.
4. **Attachment of Foot Block (REQUIRED)**
   See instructions on page 169.
5. **Installing Bottom Rail and Adding Weep Holes to Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 170.
6. **Cutting Mesh (if required)**
   See instructions on page 170.
7. **Cutting Bottom PVC Gasket and Installing onto Mesh**
   See instructions on page 170.
8. **Centering Mesh and Installing into Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 171.
9. **Installing Vertical PVC Gaskets into Mesh**
   See instructions on page 171.
10. **Installing L-Brackets into Vertical Supports**
    See instructions on page 171.
11. **Installing Vertical Supports**
    See instructions on page 172.
12. **Cutting Top PVC Gasket and Installing onto Mesh**
    See instructions on page 172.
13. **Installing Top Rail onto Mesh Panel**
    See instructions on page 172.
14. **Attaching L-Brackets to Top and Bottom Rails**
    See instructions on page 172.
15. **Attaching Top Rail to Brackets**
    See instructions on page 173.
16. **Installing Snap-in Channel Filler**
    See instructions on page 173.

***NOTE:** Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail

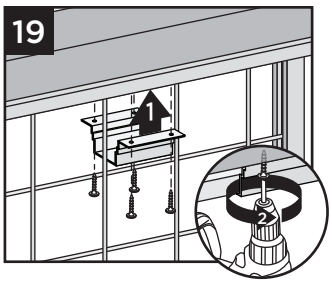




17. Measure between posts and cut 2 x 4 to length.

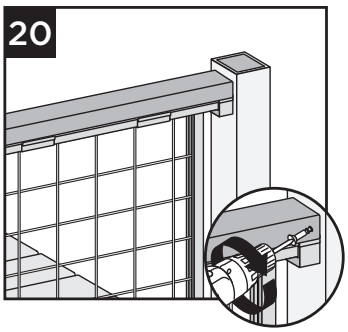
18. Place 2 x 4 on Trex Signature top rail.

19. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



***NOTE:** Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

20. Pre-drill and toenail 2-1/2" (6.4 cm) approved deck screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



21. **Attachment of Bottom Bracket Covers and Caps**
    See instructions on page 174.

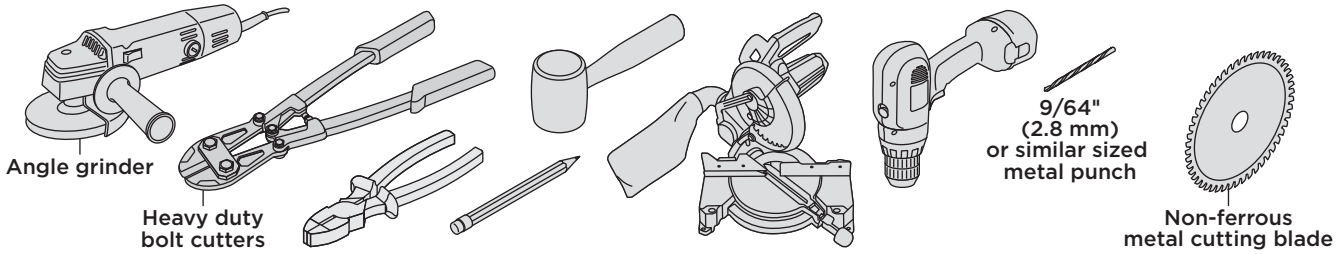
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

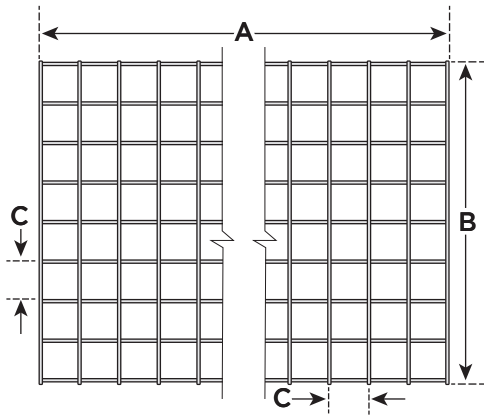
MESH STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

DUE TO THE COMPLEXITY OF THIS PRODUCT, INSTALLATION OF SIGNATURE MESH STAIR RAIL WILL REQUIRE THE USE OF QUALIFIED AND KNOWLEDGABLE CONTRACTORS IN MOST CASES.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE STAIR POSTS AND STAIR RAILING

TOOLS NEEDED





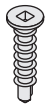
MESH DIMENSIONS CHART			
Panel Size	**A**	**B**	**C**
6' x 36" HZ	64"	32 3/8"	4"
8' x 36" HZ	88"	32 3/8"	4"
8' x 42" HZ	88"	38 3/8"	4"
8' x 42" ST	108 3/16"	36 3/16"	4"

***NOTE:** Mesh panel sizes listed in above table are stainless steel. Mesh is also available in black carbon steel in the following sizes: 36" x 72", 36" x 96", 72" x 60".*

Stair Post Spanning and Angle Placement Charts

42" STAIR GUARDRAIL					
Use HZ Panel Size	**Max Post Spacing Based on Stair Angle**				
	30˚	**32˚**	**34˚**	**37˚**	**38˚**
6' x 36" HZ	NA	NA	42"	40"	39"
8' x 36" HZ	NA	NA	62"	59"	58"
8' x 42" HZ	66"	65"	62"	59"	58"
Use Stair Panel Size	**Max Post Spacing**				
	30˚	**32˚**	**34˚**	**37˚**	**38˚**
36 3/16" x 108 3/16" ST	72"	72"	72"	72"	72"

36" STAIR GUARDRAIL					
Use HZ Panel Size	**Max Post Spacing Based on Stair Angle**				
	30˚	**32˚**	**34˚**	**37˚**	**38˚**
6' x 36" HZ	46"	45"	42"	40"	39"
8' x 36" HZ	67"	65"	62"	59"	58"
8' x 42" HZ	67"	65"	62"	59"	58"
Use Stair Panel Size	**Max Post Spacing**				
	30˚	**32˚**	**34˚**	**37˚**	**38˚**
36 3/16" x 108 3/16" ST	72"	72"	72"	72"	72"



#10 x 1" Rail to Bracket Screw

#8 x 5/8" L-Bracket to Rail Screw

#8–10 x 2" Bracket to Wood/Post Sleeve Screw

#10 x 5/8" Bracket to Signature Post Screw

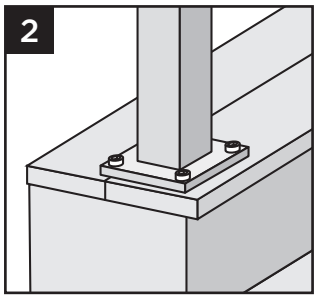
HOW TO INSTALL MESH STAIR RAILING POSTS
TREX SIGNATURE®

IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *FOR A 6′ OR 8′ STAIR RAIL, POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING STAIR POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM STAIR RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE STAIR RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *TREX SIGNATURE POSTS CANNOT BE USED WITH TREX SIGNATURE COCKTAIL STAIR MESH OR TRADITIONAL STAIR MESH DESIGNS, ONLY PRESSURE-TREATED POST/POST SLEEVES CAN BE USED. REFER TO DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS FOR MORE INFORMATION.*
- *All stair installations require the use of 53" (134.6 CM) stair post, measured and cut to appropriate length if required.*
- *All Trex Signature fixed stair brackets ONLY work with stair slopes of 32°-37°.*
- *Foot Blocks are sold seperately and recommended for all spans over 6′ for Signature Mesh Cocktail and Signature Mesh Traditional stair applications.*

Installing Standard Trex Signature Stair Posts, or Pressure-Treated Post, Post Sleeves and Skirts

1. **Make sure 53" (135.6 cm) posts are used for all stair posts.**
2. If Trex Signature stair posts are used, install at nose of stair tread directly under required blocking. *See Trex Signature horizontal post instructions.*

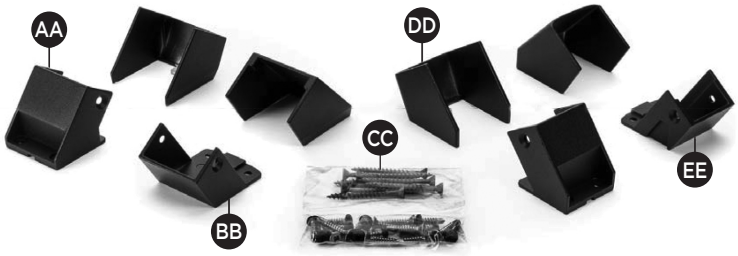


Installing Pressure-Treated Posts

- *PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.*
- *PRESSURE TREATED POSTS MUST BE INSTALLED ON INSIDE OF STAIR STRINGER AND AT NOSE OF STAIR TREAD.*
- *POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *In most cases, a post and post sleeve longer than 39" will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.*

BRACKET HARDWARE – STAIR APPLICATIONS
TREX SIGNATURE®

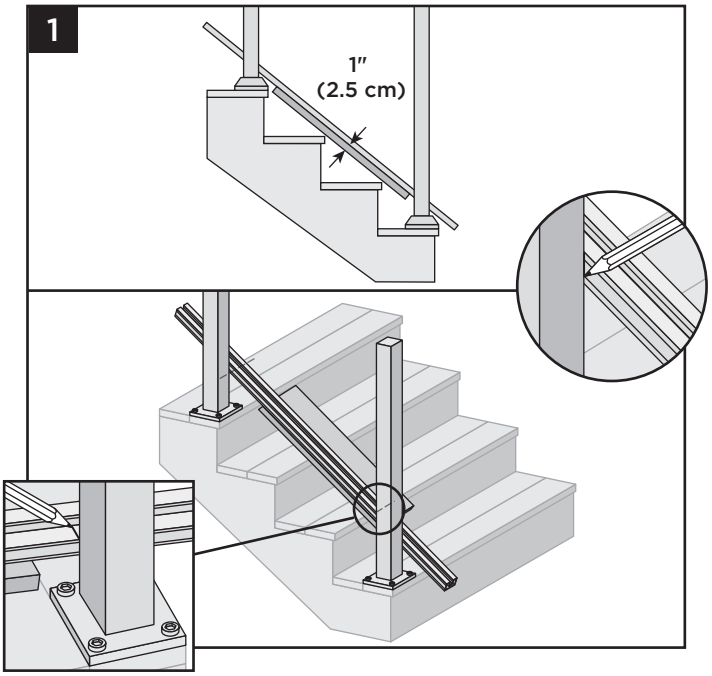
AA. Bottom Stair Bracket and Cover – Lower Rail
BB. Top Stair Bracket and Cover – Lower Rail
CC. Fastener Pack
DD. Bottom Stair Bracket and Cover – Upper Rail
EE. Top Stair Bracket and Cover – Upper Rail



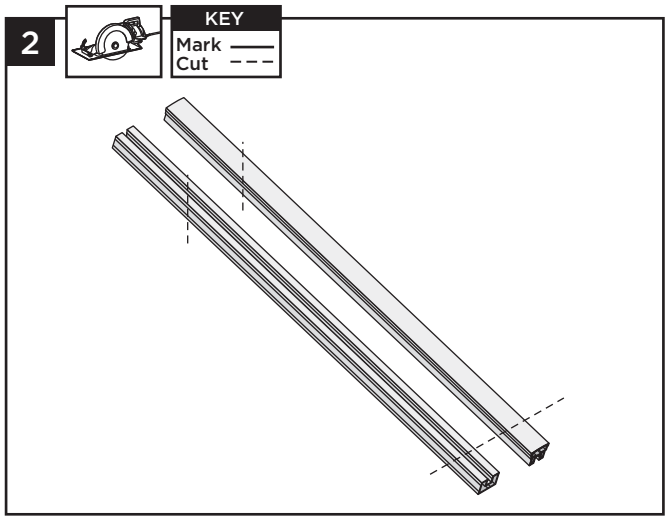
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD MESH STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®

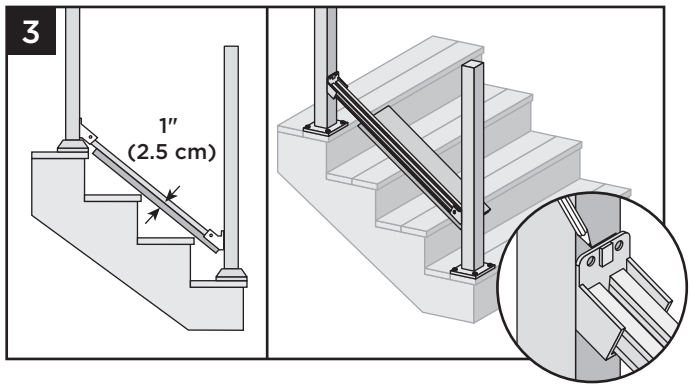
Measuring and Cutting Rails



1. Place a 1" deck board along the nose of the stair tread, then lay the bottom stair rail on top of the deck board. Use the lower and upper stair post to determine the length of the bottom stair rail. At **LOWER STAIR POST**, mark on topside of rail and cut PERPENDICULAR to the rail. At **UPPER STAIR POST,** mark on INTERSECTION/SIDE OF RAIL AND CUT RAIL TO THIS ANGLE.

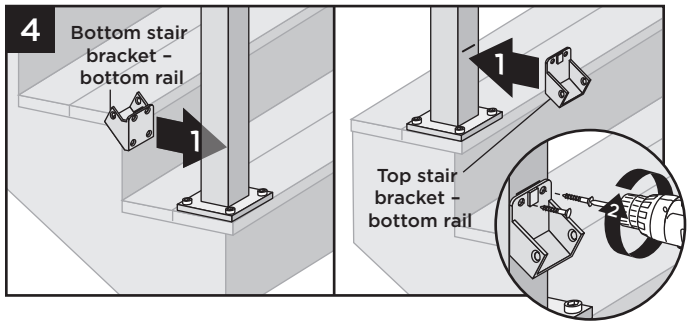


2. Cut both bottom and top rails to same length. ENSURE POSTS ARE PLUMB before cutting.



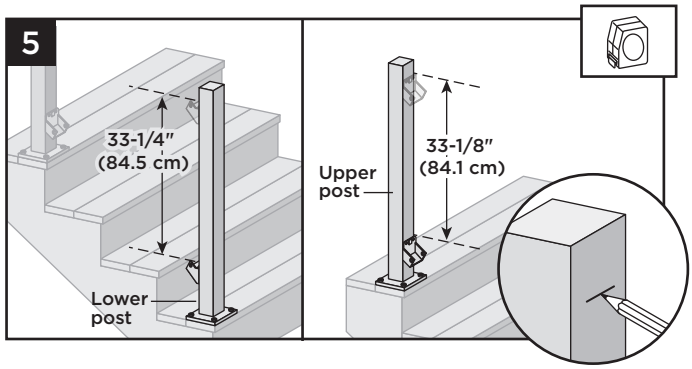
3. With deck board still on nose of stair tread, place brackets on ends of bottom stair rail (but do not attach) and mark posts for bracket locations.

Installing Lower Stair Brackets

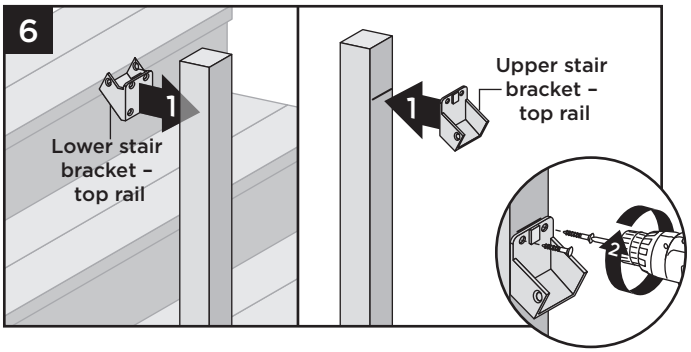


4. Center lower stair bracket on post below the marked line and attach using two #10 x 5/8" self-tapping screws *(provided)*. In some cases it may be difficult to attach the stair bracket on the lower stair post. Recommend using a 90° drill adapter or loosen the post to get access to the lower bracket screw holes.

Installing Upper Stair Brackets

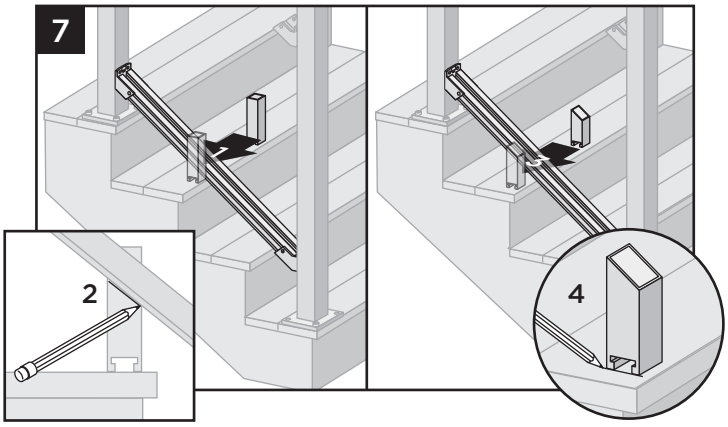


5. On Lower Post: From top of lower bracket, measure up and mark with light line (33-1/4" for 36" rail; 39-1/4" for 42" rail). On Upper Post: From top of lower (upper) bracket, measure up and mark with light line (33-1/8" for 36" rail; 39-1/8" for 42" rail).

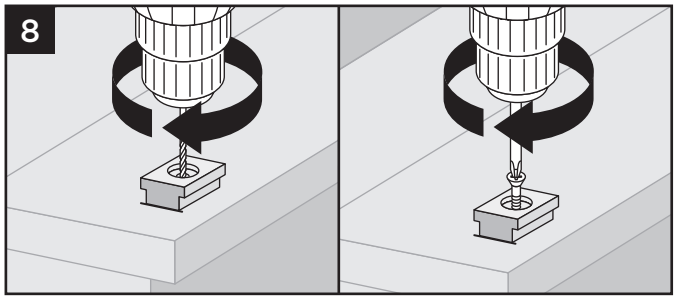


6. Center upper stair brackets on posts **below** the marked lines and attach using two #10 x 5/8" self-tapping screws *(provided)*.

Attachment of Foot Block (where recommended)

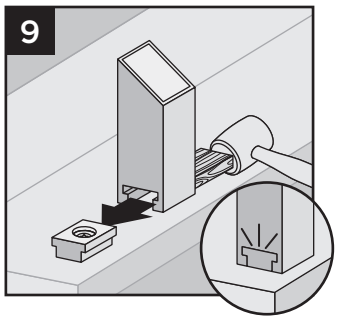


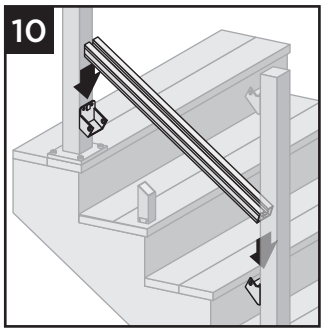
7. Temporarily set bottom stair rail into brackets. To ensure proper location place Foot Block towards the nose of the stair tread along the side of the bottom rail. Mark location of angle on Foot Block and cut on mark. Then place Foot Block under the center of the bottom rail. Mark placement location of the base.

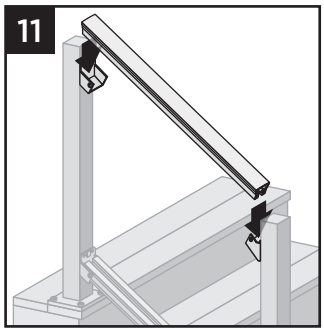


8. Place base (smaller side facing down) on decking surface. Pre-drill using a 3/16" bit. Attach base of Foot Block using one screw at an angle through base and into decking.

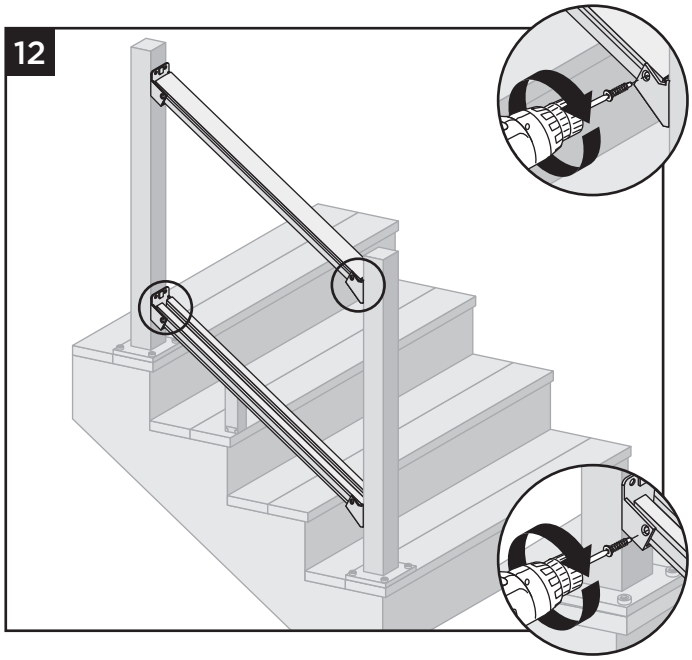
9. After attached, use a **rubber mallet along with scrap piece of wood** to tap Foot Block until it locks into place.





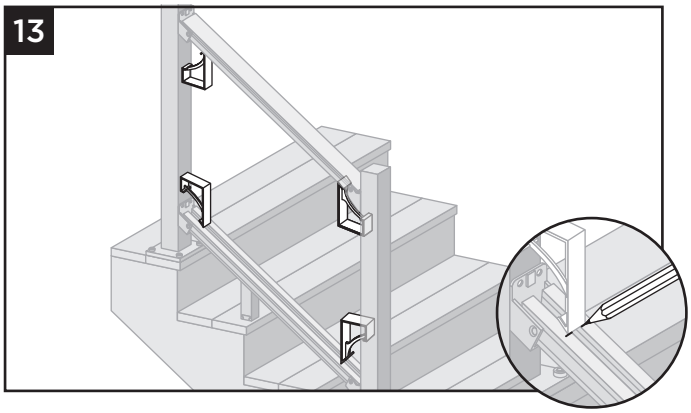


10. Set bottom stair rail into bottom stair rail brackets.
11. Set top stair rail into top stair rail brackets.



12. **TEMPORARILY ATTACH BOTH BOTTOM AND TOP RAIL (IN ONE LOCATION ONLY TO ENSURE RAILS DO NOT MOVE) USING ONE #10 X 1" SELF-TAPPING SCREW (PROVIDED) ON SIDE OF BRACKET. YOU MUST PREDRILL THIS LOCATION FIRST USING 9/64" BIT THAT WAS *PROVIDED* IN HORIZONTAL MOUNTING KITS.**

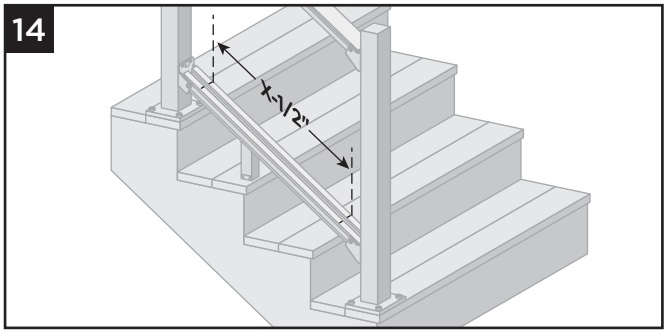
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.



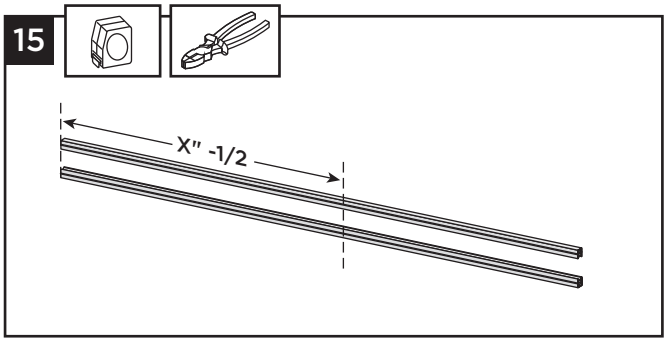
13. Using the long edge of the stair template, mark the location of the end verticals on the upper and lower rails.

NOTE: Mark should only be 1" max length or it will be visible after installation of vertical.

Measuring and Cutting Rail Gaskets

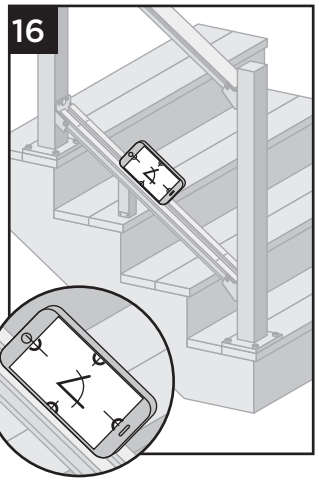


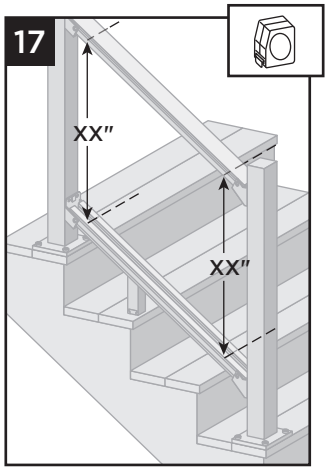
14. Measure distance between marked lines on bottom rail and subtract 1/2" from this measurement.



15. Cut both bottom and top rail gaskets to length from previous step.

Measuring Verticals

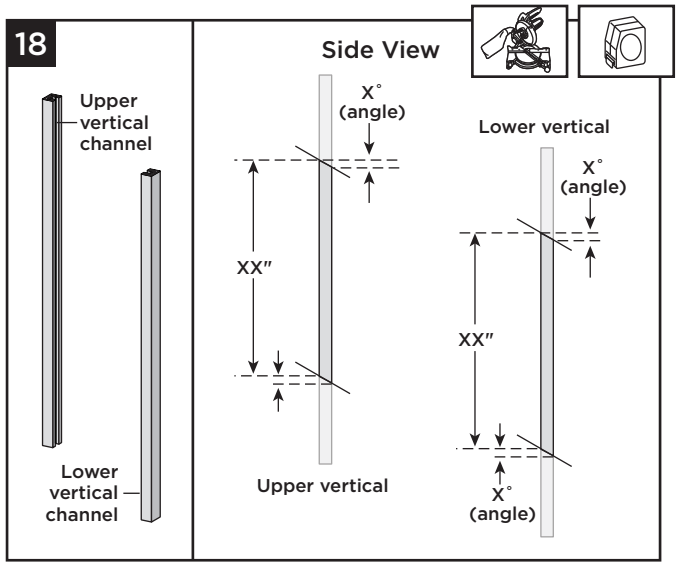




16. Determine the angle of the railing (angle should be between 32-37 degrees).

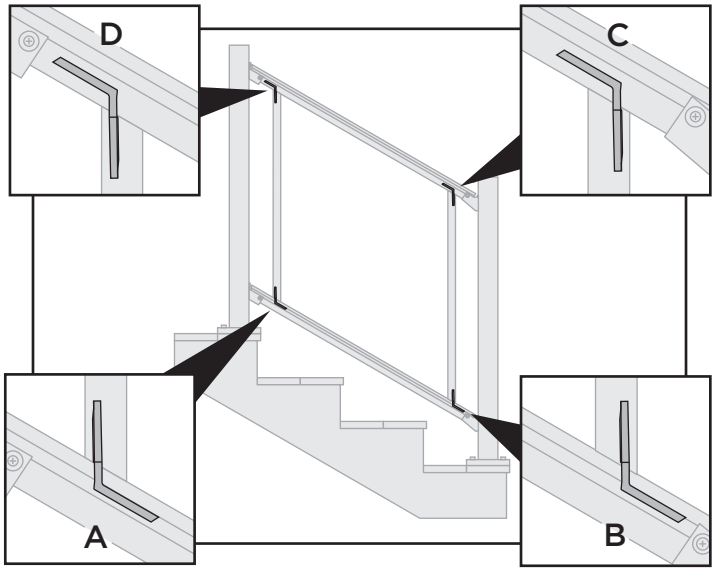
NOTE: *This can easily be done with using an angle measurement app on cellular phone or using a speed square.*

17. Measure distance between marks from bottom to top rail.



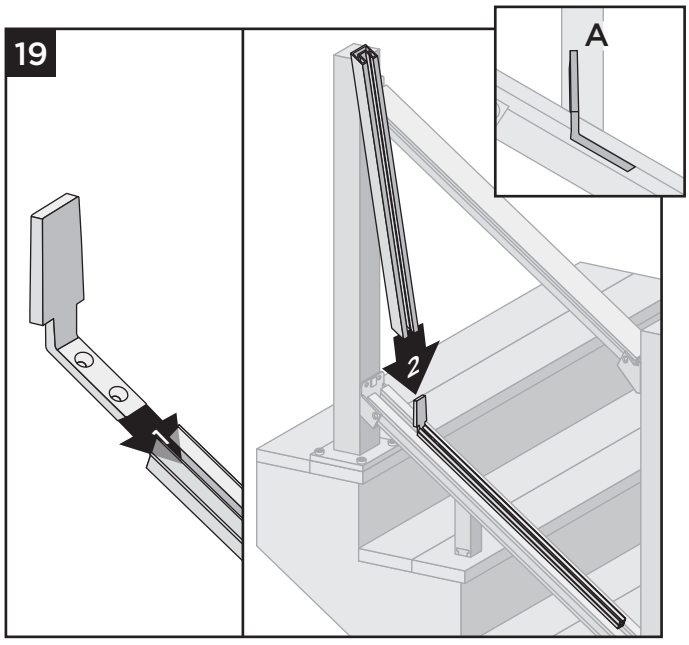
18. Ensure the verticals are oriented in the correct location, with the channels facing toward each other. Cut verticals to the dimension and at the angle provided above.

L-BRACKET ORIENTATION



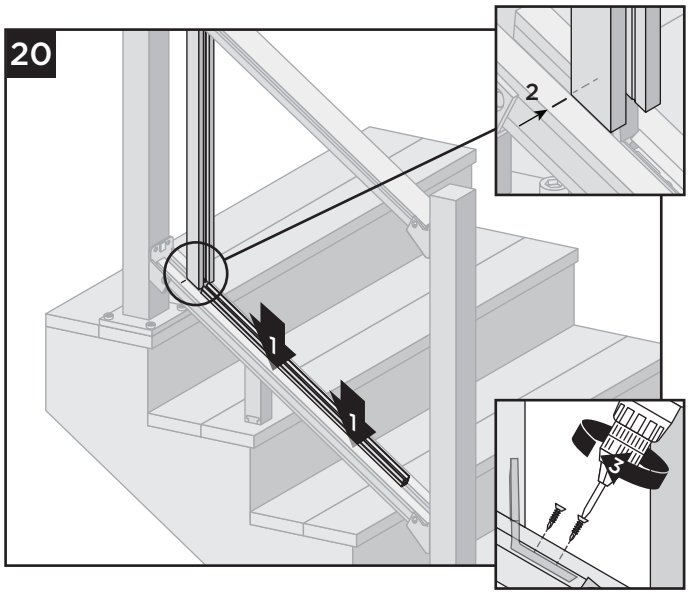
Above is an overall image showing bracket orientation. The next steps will show in detail how to attach them. Refer to corresponding letters in the following steps.

A–Bottom Rail
TOP POST LOCATION



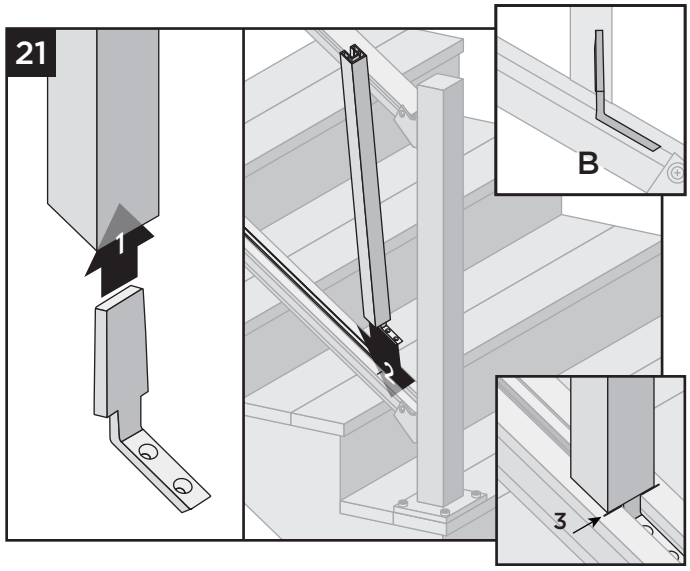
Installing Gaskets and L-Brackets

19. **At TOP POST LOCATION,** slide L-bracket into end of gasket. Place gasket so it's resting on the top of the channel (do not insert gasket fully into channel). Slide vertical onto L-bracket.



20. Gently tap gasket into channel of bottom rail. Make sure that upper vertical is properly aligned with mark on bottom rail to ensure this is seated in correct location **BEFORE** attaching L-bracket. Attach L-bracket to bottom rail with two #8 x 5/8" flat head screws *(provided).*

B–Bottom Rail
BOTTOM POST LOCATION

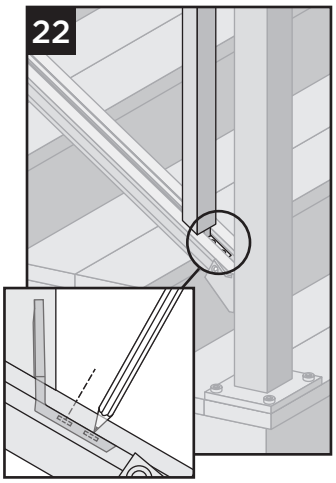


Measuring for L-Brackets

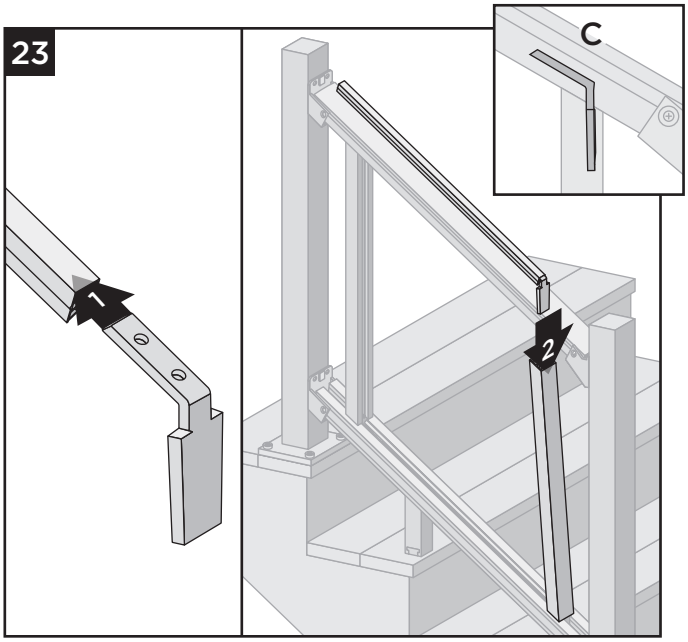
21. **AT BOTTOM POST LOCATION**, place L-bracket into vertical and into channel of bottom rail (L-bracket should be oriented in same direction as previous L-bracket.) Ensure that vertical is seated fully flush with bottom rail, bracket is in the channel, and vertical is aligned with mark on rail.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

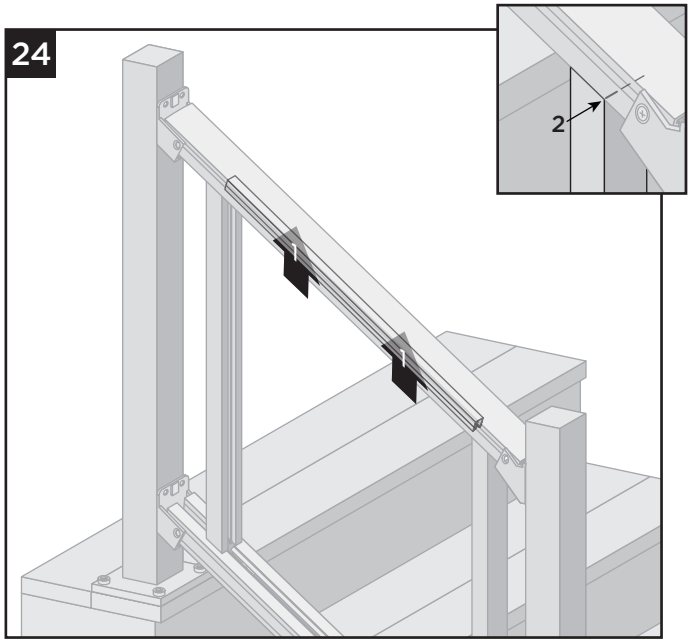
22. Mark location for screw attachments in channel of bottom rail. Make sure to mark the placement of the screw holes. **DO NOT** attach L-bracket at this point.



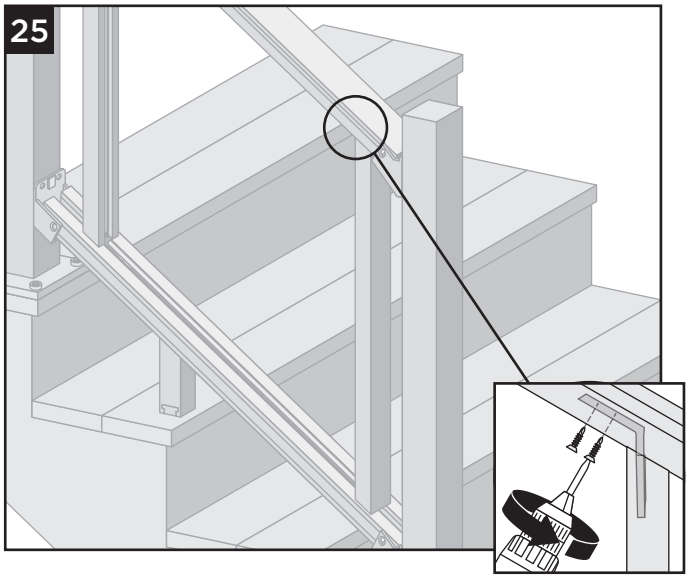
C-TOP Rail
BOTTOM POST LOCATION
Installing Gaskets and L-Brackets



23. **At BOTTOM POST LOCATION**, slide L-bracket into end of gasket. Slide L-bracket (with gasket attached) into top of vertical.

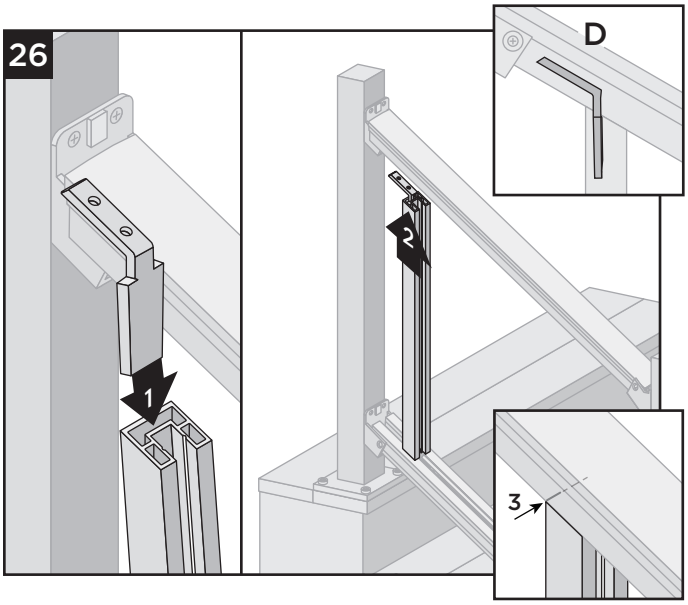


24. Gently tap gasket into channel of top rail. Make sure that vertical is properly aligned with mark on top rail to ensure this is seated in correct location **BEFORE** attaching L-bracket.



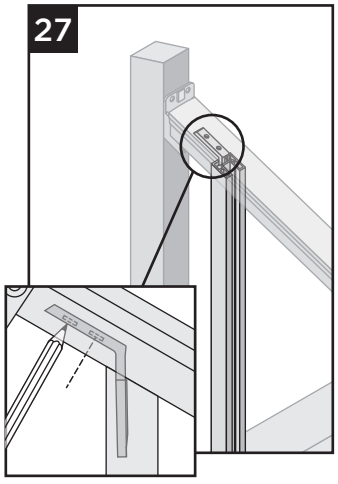
25. Attach L-bracket to top rail using two #8 x 5/8" flat head screws *(provided)*.

D - Top Rail
TOP POST LOCATION
Measuring for L-Brackets

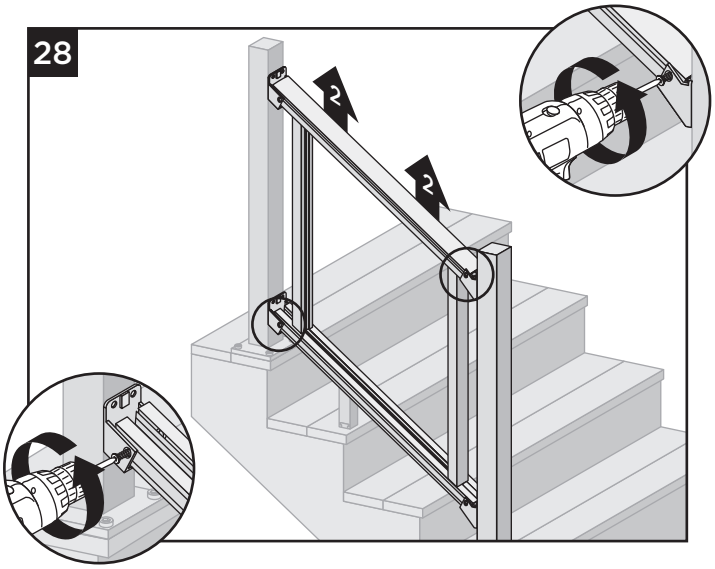


26. Insert L-bracket into vertical and place bracket into channel of top rail. Ensure that vertical is seated fully flush with top rail, bracket is in the channel, and vertical is aligned with mark on rail.

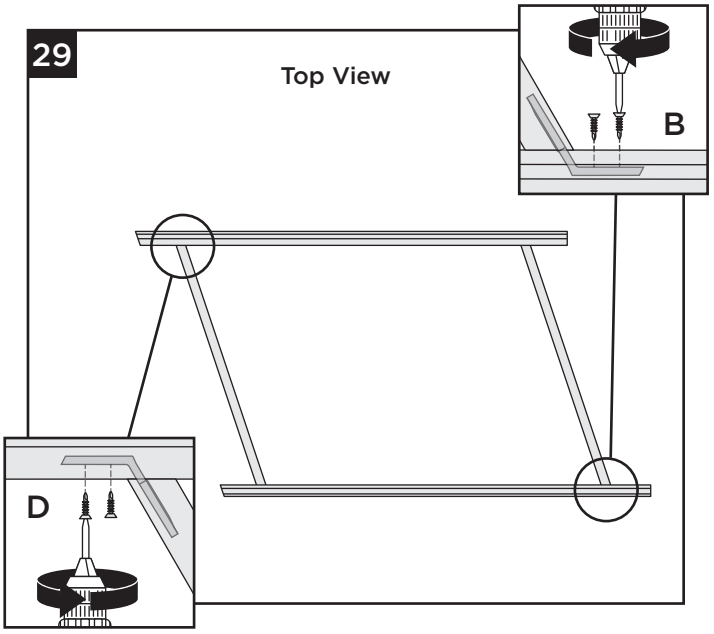
27. Mark location for screw attachments in channel of top rail. Make sure to mark the placement of the screw holes. **DO NOT** attach L-bracket at this point.



Completing L-Bracket Attachments

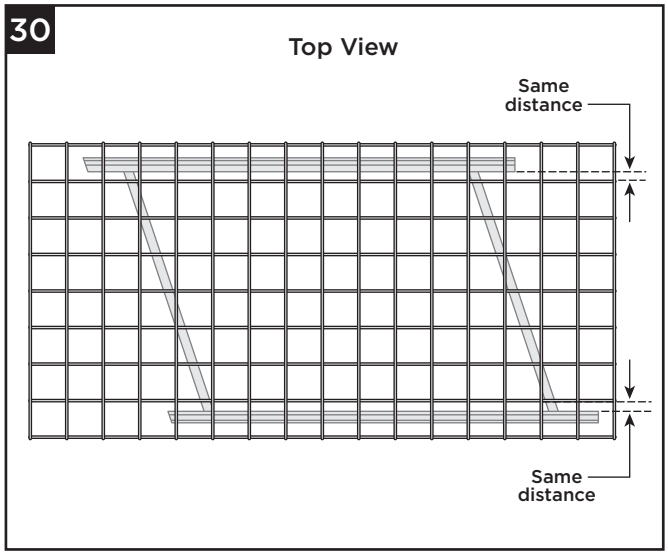


28. Remove the two screws from the brackets that were previously installed in step 9. Remove the railing assembly from the post brackets.

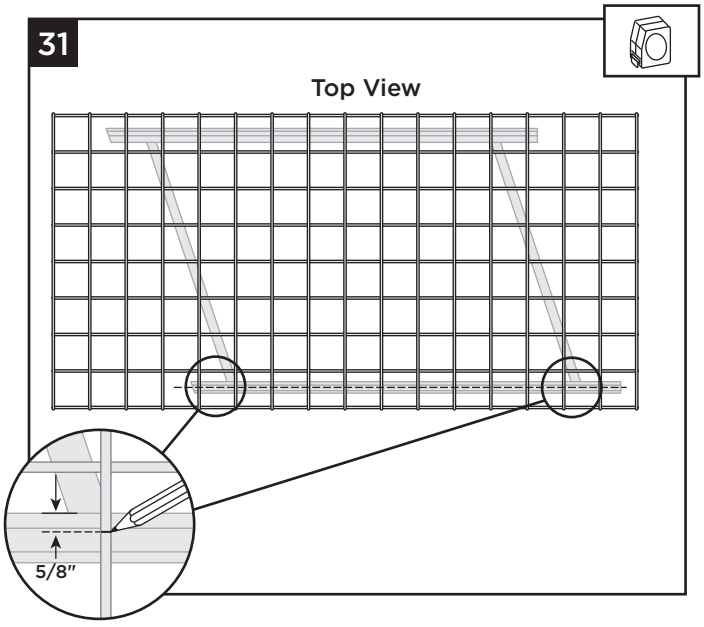


29. Lay railing assembly on large, flat, clean surface. Install remaining L-brackets for section **B** and section **D** into rails where marked using remaining #8 x 5/8" flat head screws *(provided)*. Before attachment, verify that verticals align properly with marks.

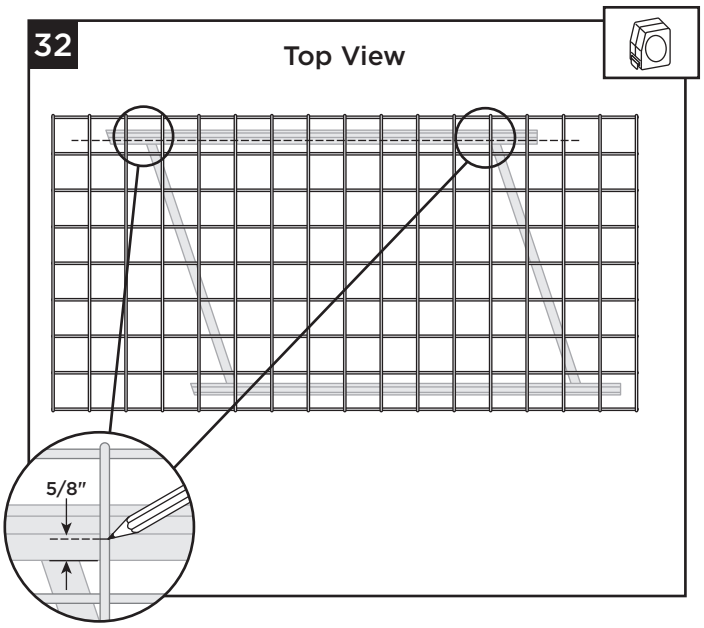
Measuring and Cutting Mesh



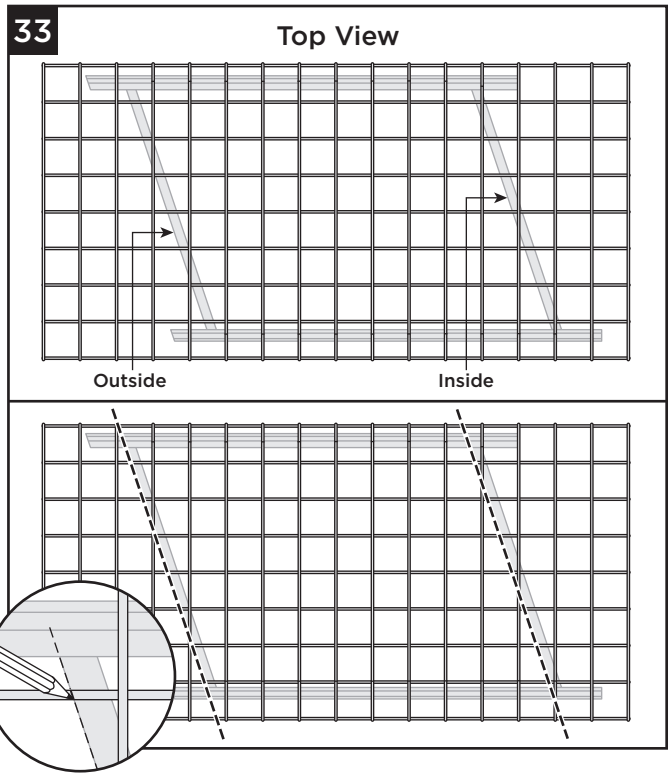
30. Lay mesh panel on top of stair rail assembly and measure so there is equal spacing between mesh panels at both top and bottom rails. Use clamp to hold mesh in place securely once dimensions are set.



31. At inside of bottom rail, measure **DOWN** 5/8" and mark mesh at this location. Do this at opposite end of mesh panel/bottom rail. Using straight edge, mark **MESH ONLY** at all intersection points.

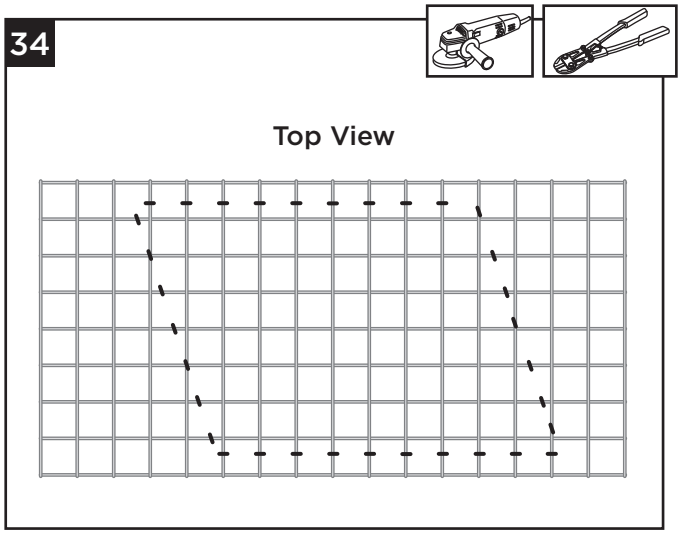


32. At inside of top rail measure **UP** 5/8" and mark mesh at this location. Do this at opposite end of mesh panel/top rail. Using straight edge, mark **MESH ONLY** at all intersection points.



33. For the vertical measurements, align straight edge with **OUTSIDE** of one vertical and mark mesh at all intersection points. Align straight edge with **INSIDE** of opposite vertical and mark mesh at all intersection points.

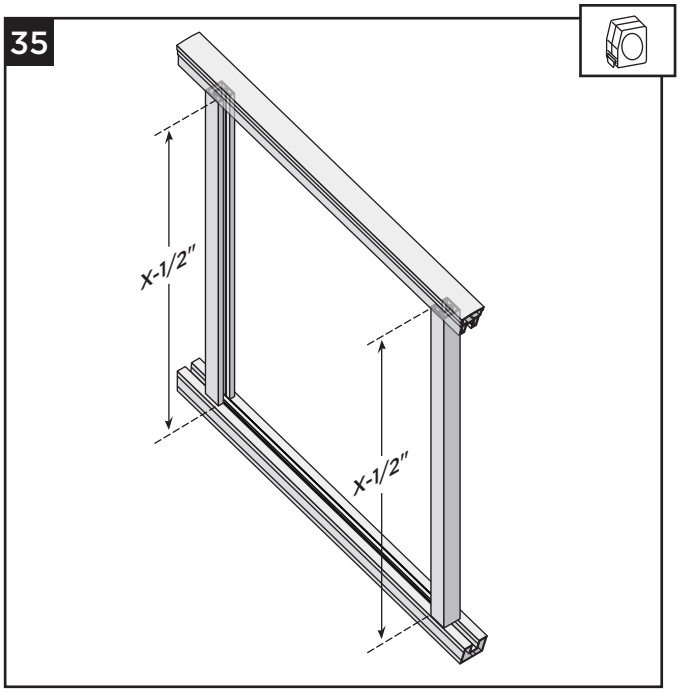
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.



34.Cut mesh at all marks using heavy-duty bolt cutters or angle grinder.

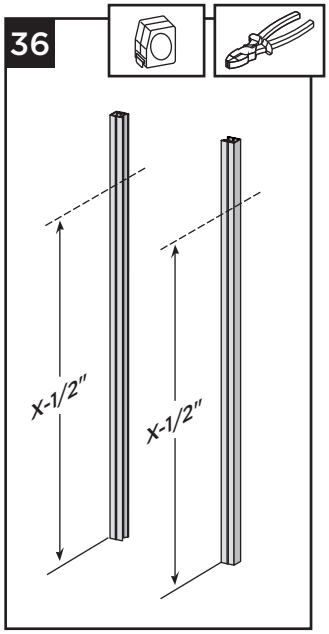
NOTE: *USE PROPER SAFETY GEAR IF CUTTING WITH ANGLE GRINDER.*

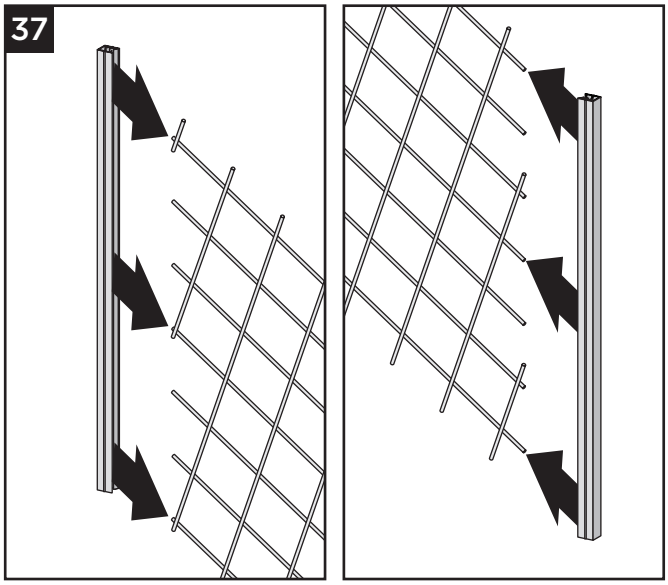
Measuring, Cutting, and Installing Gaskets on Sides of Mesh Panel



35.Measure distance within the channel of vertical and subtract 1/2".

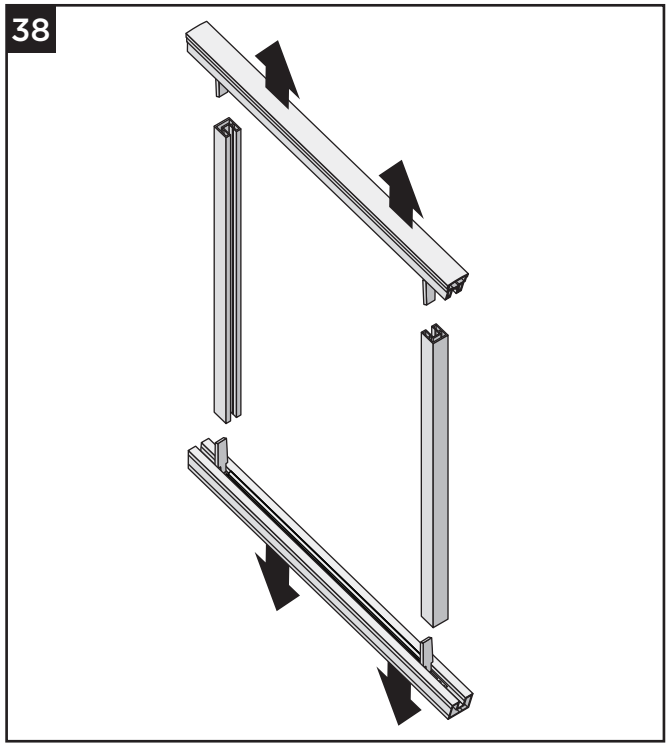
36.Using cutting pliers, cut both vertical gaskets to length determined above.





37.Attach vertical gaskets to each side of mesh panel. Make sure gaskets are fully seated onto mesh.

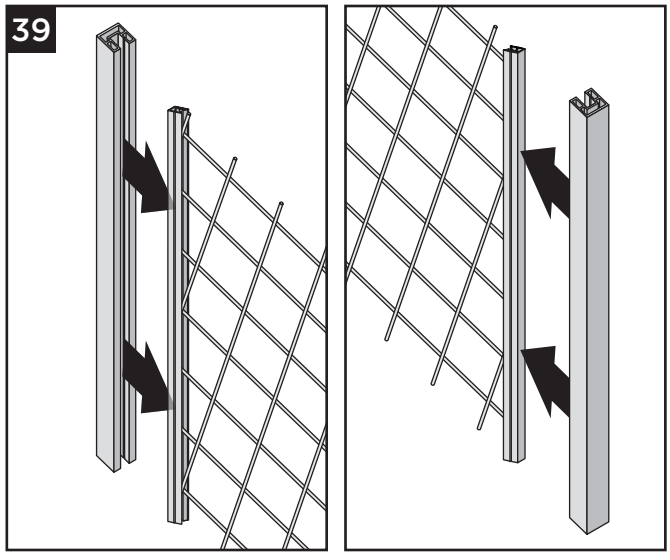
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.



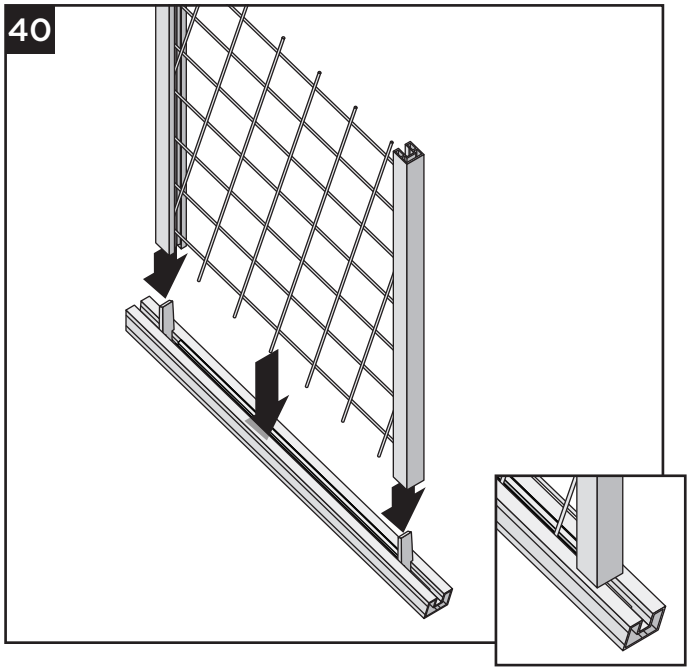
38.Disassemble stair rail panel.

NOTE: *No screws have to be removed; verticals will pull off of L-brackets.*

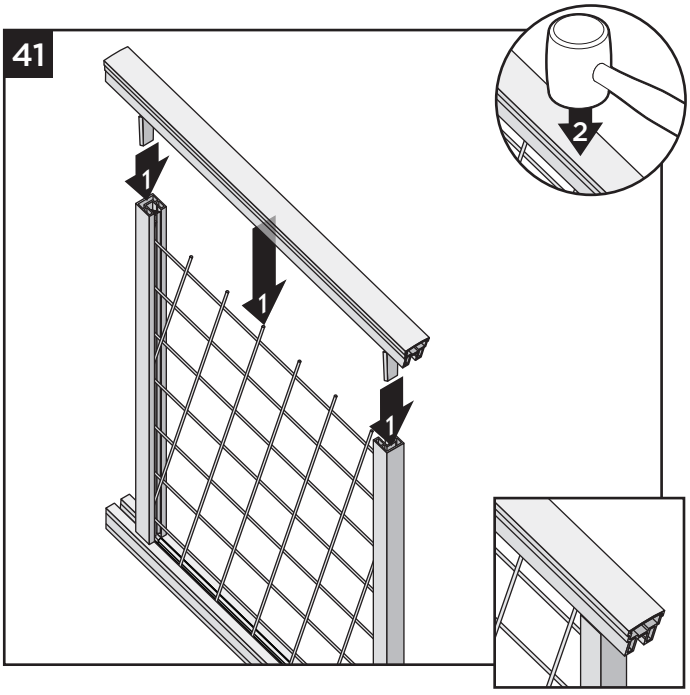
Installing Mesh into Verticals and Rails



39.Snap verticals onto each side of mesh panel (with vertical gaskets installed). Ensure that verticals are still oriented in correct direction and centered appropriately.

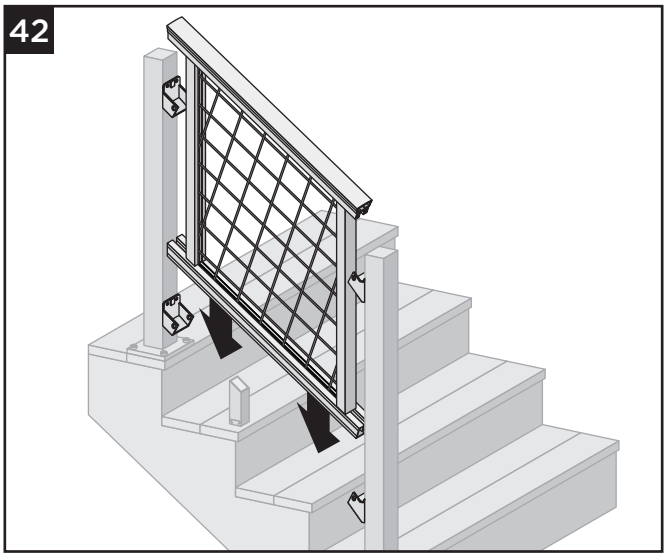


40.Holding verticals, align with L-brackets and press mesh panel into bottom rail gasket in channel. Seat verticals fully onto bottom rail.



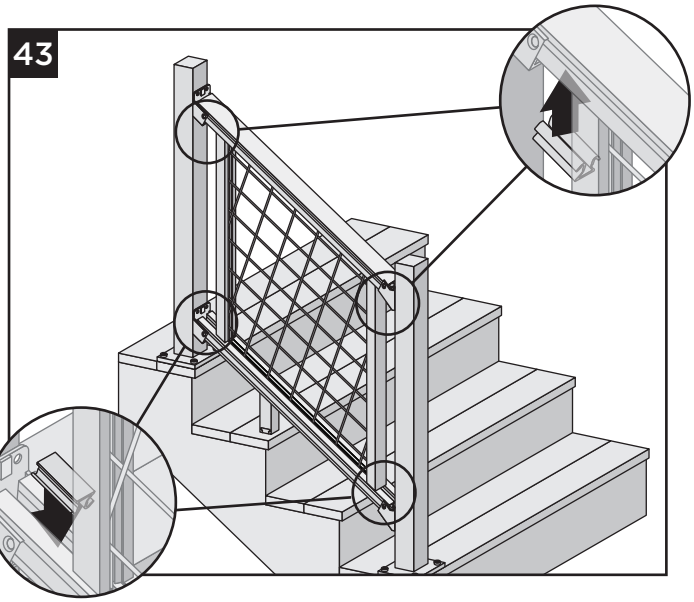
41.Align top rail with L-brackets, and press top rail down so that mesh panel is seated into gasket in channel and top rail is fully seated onto verticals. Use a rubber mallet to gently tap railing into place.

HOW TO INSTALL MESH STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®



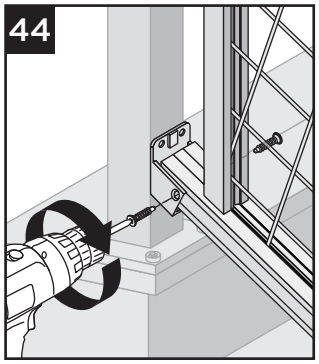
42. Drop assembled stair mesh rail panel into brackets. Ensure that rails are fully seated into brackets and verticals are completely seated on rails.

Installing Snap-in Channel Filler

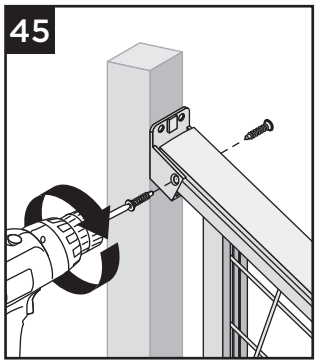


43. Cut snap-in channel filler to correct length and install into channels of bottom and top stair rails. Use of a rubber mallet may assist with this step. **DO NOT** attempt to cut short snap-in pieces with a miter saw. Use an angle grinder or hack saw only.

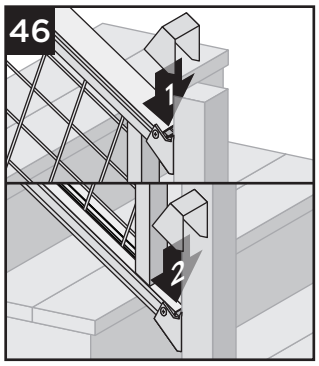
44. Attach bottom stair rail to bottom stair brackets using two #10 x 1" self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of bracket. **YOU MUST PREDRILL ALL EXISTING LOCATIONS FIRST USING 9/64" BIT THAT WAS PROVIDED IN HORIZONTAL MOUNTING KITS.**

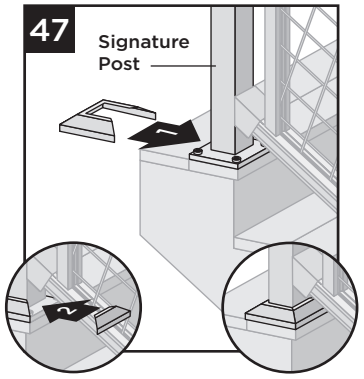


45. Attach top stair rail to top stair brackets using two #10 x 1" self-tapping screws *(provided)* on each side of bracket. **YOU MUST PREDRILL ALL EXISTING LOCATIONS FIRST USING 9/64" BIT THAT WAS PROVIDED IN HORIZONTAL MOUNTING KITS.**



Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps

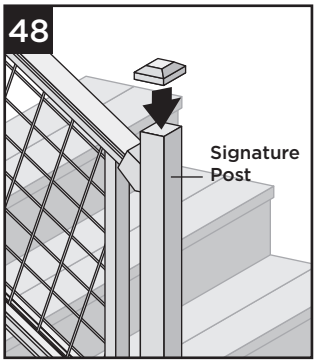




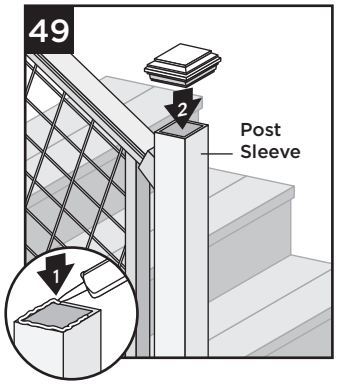
46. Attach corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.
47. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of posts when using Trex Signature posts.

HOW TO INSTALL MESH STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

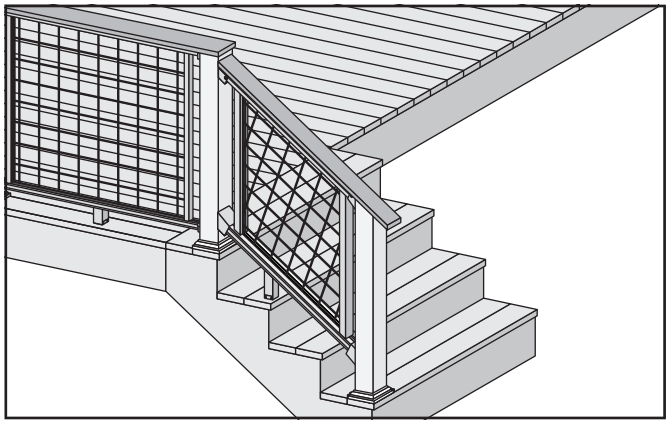
48. Attach post caps to Trex Signature posts. (Use of rubber mallet may be required for secure attachment.)



49. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external- grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs).



HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL MESH STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



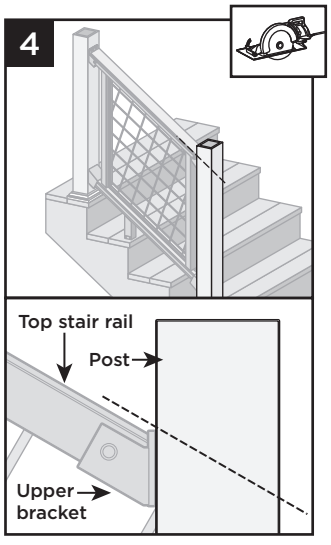
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *Only for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4x4 (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve. Trex Signature posts, Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Cocktail Mesh stair railing. Cutting post and post sleeve only applies to the Cocktail style railing.*
- *DO NOT CUT LOWER POST/POST SLEEVES UNTIL MESH RAIL STAIR PANEL IS FULLY INSTALLED.*
- *THE DECK BOARD USED IN COCKTAIL MESH STAIR WILL NEED TO TERMINATE AT THE UPPER STAIR POST AS SHOWN ABOVE. THE DECK BOARD WILL HAVE TO BE TOENAILED INTO THE SIDE OF THE POST IN THESE AREAS USING 2 APPROPRIATE COMPOSITE DECKING SCREWS – PRE-DRILLING IS RECOMMENDED.*
- *Do Not use Enhance for top board.*

1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts**
   See instructions on page 101.
2. **Installing Brackets**
   Follow previous stair instructions for the installation of desired brackets, making sure that all dimensions are calculated before installation, and ensuring deck board is placed in correct location.
3. Follow all Stair Mesh instructions for the assembly of the stair mesh panel.

Cutting Post and Post Sleeve and Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

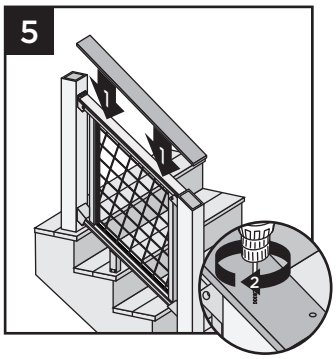
4. Cut post and post sleeves at proper angle so these are flush with the top of the top brackets and/or top rail. BE CAREFUL **NOT** to CUT brackets.



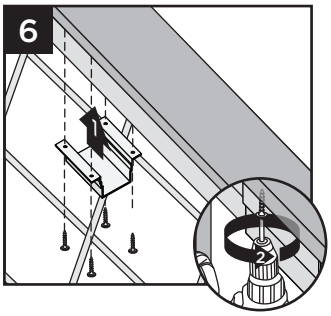
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL MESH STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE®

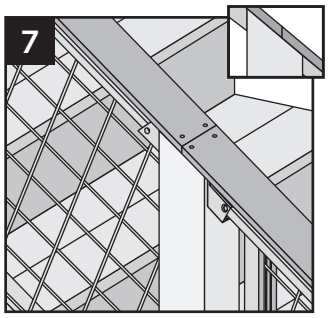
5. Place deck boards over top rails. ***DO NOT*** use Enhance deck boards for top rail. PLACE DECK BOARD ON TOP RAIL TO CHECK FOR PROPER FIT AND RAIL CLEARANCE AT BRACKET LOCATIONS. DECK BOARD MAY REQUIRE EITHER A NOTCH CUT ON THE UNDERSIDE OR SLIGHT PLANING ON THE UNDERSIDE TO ALLOW DECK BOARD TO CLEAR TOPS OF BRACKETS AND SIT FLUSH ON TOP OF POSTS AND RAILS. Attach boards on each post with Trex-recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per each post/board end).

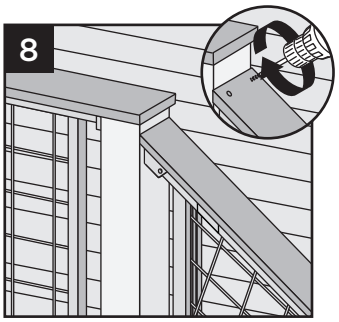


6. Secure boards to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the stair railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*





7. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.

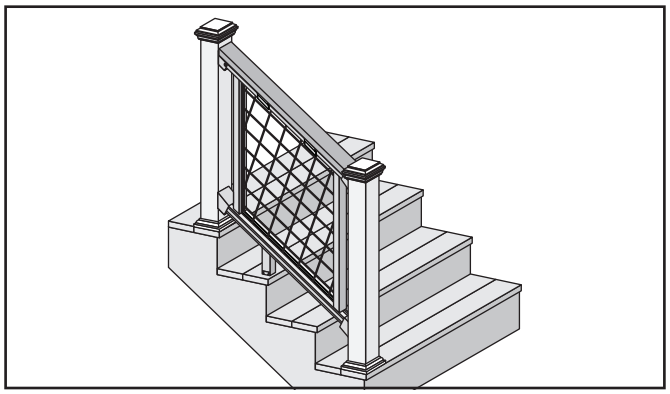
NOTES:
- *Leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*
- *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*

8. Where deck board terminates at upper post, PREDRILL and toenail two approved composite deck screws as shown into post, being careful to avoid hitting stair bracket.

NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL TRADITIONAL MESH STAIR RAILING
TREX SIGNATURE®



IMPORTANT NOTES:

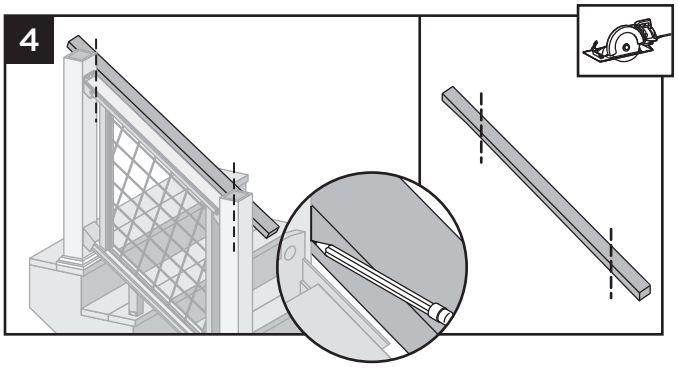
» ***Only for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5" nominal square) and 4x4 (102 mm x 102 mm) or 6x6 post sleeves, Trex Post Mounts or Trex Joist Mount Post WITH Trex post sleeves. Signature Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Trex Signature Traditional railing.***

1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts**
   See instructions on page 102.

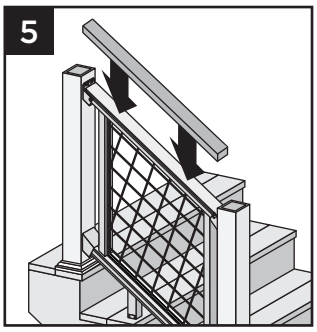
2. **Installing Brackets**
   Follow previous stair instructions for the installation of desired brackets, making sure that all dimensions are calculated before installation, and ensuring deck board is placed in correct location.

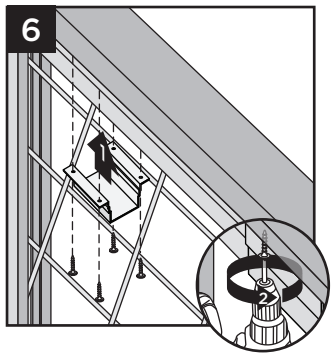
3. Follow all Stair Mesh instructions for the assembly of the stair mesh panel.

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail



4. Place 2 x 4 beside top rail. Mark and cut (both ends need to be cut on an angle for proper fit).

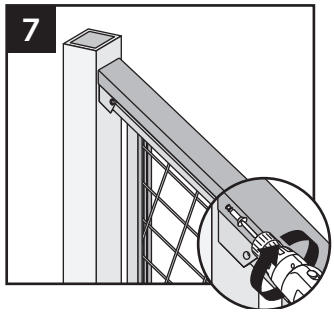




5. Place 2 x 4 on top stair rail.
6. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using Trex Signature Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 2 and attach with 4 screws provided.

NOTE: *Pre-drilling before attachment is recommended.*

7. Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2" (6.4 cm) screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



NOTE: *Top Bracket Covers are not attached in this configuration.*

HOW TO INSTALL TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™ POSTS
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

The Trex Signature X-Series Post is a highly configurable, modular post that can accommodate end, line, and corner configurations, and can be adapted to various infills in the Trex Signature X-Series product line.

IMPORTANT NOTES:

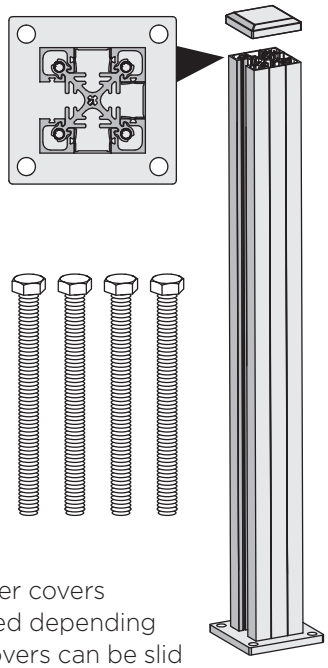
*» **EACH POST MUST BE ATTACHED AS SHOWN TO ENSURE A CODE COMPLIANT AND SAFE INSTALLATION.***

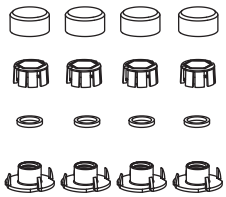
» ALWAYS refer to your local building code official prior to installing any railing system to ensure all code and safety requirements are met. Trex cannot be held responsible for improper or non-recommended installations.

» When installing Trex Signature X-Series Posts on ACQ or CCA surfaces, use an appropriate isolation barrier between post and surface (contact local building code official if needed).

PARTS

- (1) X-Series Anchor Post
  - (1) Post core
  - (4) Corner covers
  - (3) Side covers
- (1) Post cap
- (4) 1/2" x 6" SS hex bolts
- (4) SS washers
- (4) SS tee nuts
- (4) Bolt caps





Both side covers and corner covers are designed to be removed depending on the application. Side covers can be slid or snapped in/out; corner covers can only be slid in/out.

TOOLS NEEDED

- Minimum 18V impact driver
- Minimum 18V drill
- 9/16" drill bit
- Level
- Tape measure
- 3/4" socket
- Hammer

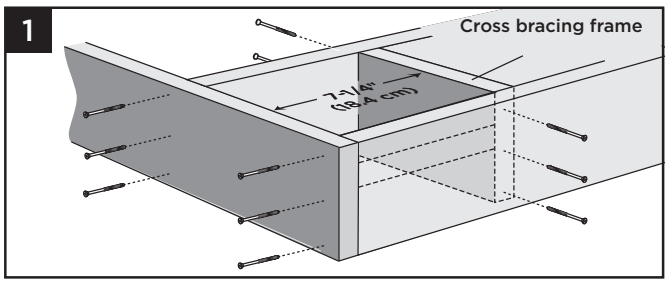
MATERIALS NEEDED

- Blocking – Min. 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) pressure-treated Southern Yellow Pine or equivalent
- Qty: 36 (per post) – 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws (not provided).

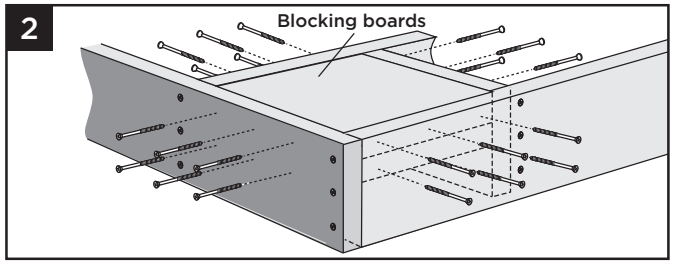
CODE APPROVED POST APPLICATIONS	
< 30" height decking	Acceptable (Code Approval not Applicable)
IRC Compliant	Yes
IBC Compliant	No

INSTALLING X-SERIES POSTS ON PRESSURE-TREATED WOOD FRAMING

Installing Blocking at Corners



1. Install 2 x 8 cross bracing frame in between joists at 7-1/4". Attach using a total of (12) 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws.



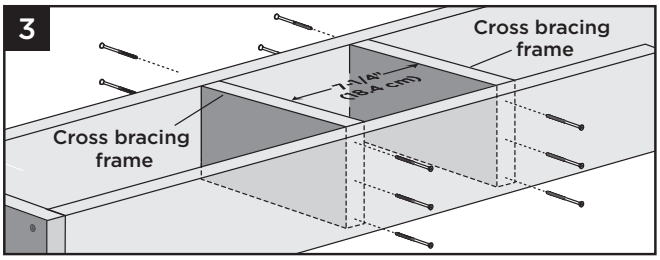
2. Install (2) 2 x 8 boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of (24) 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws.

***NOTE:** TO ENSURE BLOCKING IS FULLY SECURE, USE THE AMOUNT OF WOOD SCREWS INDICATED ABOVE.*

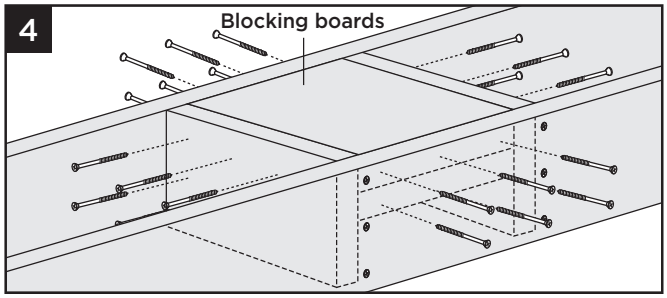
TIP: Use two additional wood screws to "sandwich" blocking boards together for easier attachment to framing.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Installing Blocking on Straight Runs

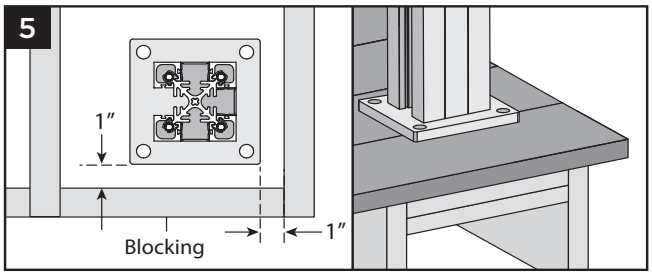


3. Install (2) 2 x 8 cross bracing frames in between joists at 7-1/4". Attach using a total of (12) 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws.

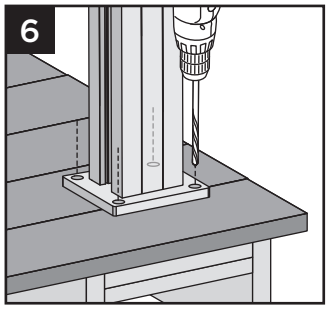


4. Install (2) 2 x 8 boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of (24) 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws.

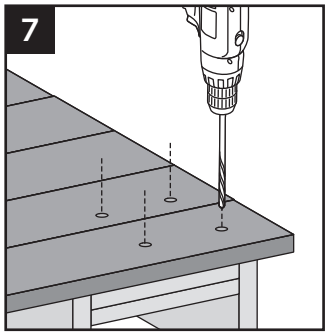
Mounting Posts to Blocking

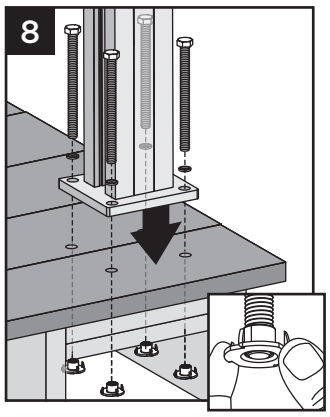


5. Determine edge of framing and measure in minimum 1" from this location. If measuring from corner, ensure 1" from each edge as shown (left image above: deck boards removed for clarity).

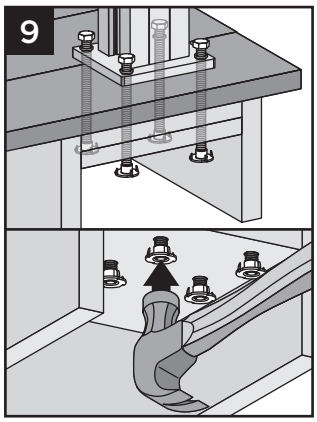


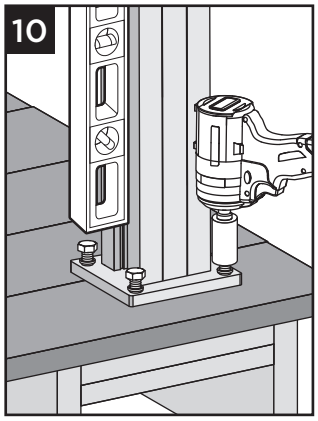
6. Using post as template, mark location of holes for mounting bolts using 9/16" drill bit (long bit will be required).





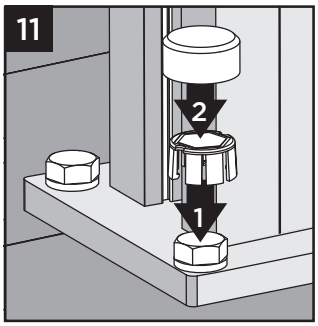
7. Set post aside and drill through decking and blocking using same 9/16" drill bit.
8. Attach posts using (4) 1/2" x 6" hex bolts, washers, and tee nuts. Be sure to place washers in correct location as shown. **IMPORTANT:** Thread tee nut onto bolt until flush with end of bolt as shown.





9. Hammer tee nut into blocking until teeth fully engage with blocking. Be sure to hammer the tee nut and not the bolt itself.
10. Using an impact driver with 3/4" socket, fully tighten bolts until post is secure. Do not push down on bolt while tightening. Use a level on sides of post to ensure post is plumb.

Tip: Slide corner covers up for easier access when installing bolts.



11. Install bolt caps. Align hex shadow line on inner cap with bolt head and snap into place; then push outer cap onto inner cap.

Note: *Post cap is to be installed after railing of choice is completed.*

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

NOTES:

» *PLEASE READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE BEGINNING INSTALLATION. USE ALL REQUIRED PARTS WHERE SPECIFIED.*

» *X-SERIES HORIZONTAL CABLE RAIL IS ONLY COMPATIBLE WITH X-SERIES ANCHOR POSTS. IT CANNOT BE USED WITH STANDARD SIGNATURE POSTS OR PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS/POST SLEEVES.*

» *X-SERIES HORIZONTAL CABLE RAIL IS DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED AT A MAXIMUM CLEAR SPAN OF 6', 12', OR 18' BETWEEN X-SERIES ANCHOR POSTS. TOP RAILS DO NOT HAVE TO BE CUT FOR FULL-SPAN INSTALLATIONS.*

» *X-SERIES ANCHOR POSTS MUST BE USED AT ALL CABLE TERMINATIONS.*

» *ONLY X-SERIES ANCHOR POSTS CAN BE USED AT CORNERS. DO NOT USE PASS-THROUGH POSTS AT CORNERS.*

» *USE COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS FOR HORIZONTAL ANGLE INSTALLATIONS. REFER TO INSTRUCTIONS FOR ADDITIONAL DETAILS.*

» *X-SERIES HORIZONTAL CABLE RAIL CANNOT BE USED WITH TRADITIONAL OR COCKTAIL DESIGNS.*

» *REFER TO TREX CARE AND CLEANING GUIDE FOR DETAILED CLEANING RECOMMENDATIONS.*

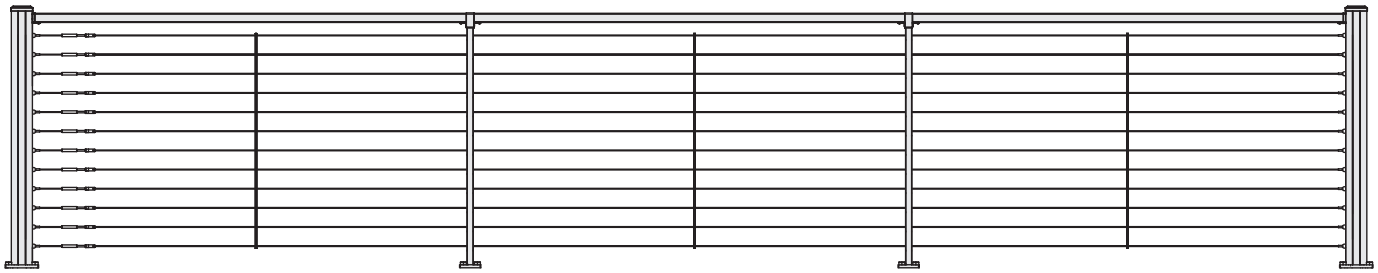
Tools Required:

- Please wear safety glasses during installation.
- Note that tools are NOT included unless otherwise specified.

– WD-40 Specialist® Corrosion Inhibitor *(**RECOMMENDED** for saltwater environments)*
– Min 18V drill
– Min 18V impact driver (post install only)
– Tape measure
– 3/4" socket
– Hammer
– Level
– 9/16" drill bit
– 9/64" drill bit (included)
– Cable cutters
– 5/32" Allen wrench
– 3/32" Allen wrench
– 1/8" Allen wrench
– T-20 drive bit
– Cable tension gauge
– Turnbuckle wrench (included)
– Adjustable wrench (if needed)

WD-40 Specialist® Corrosion Inhibitor is a registered trademark of WD-40 Company.

18' Horizontal Cable Rail Configuration

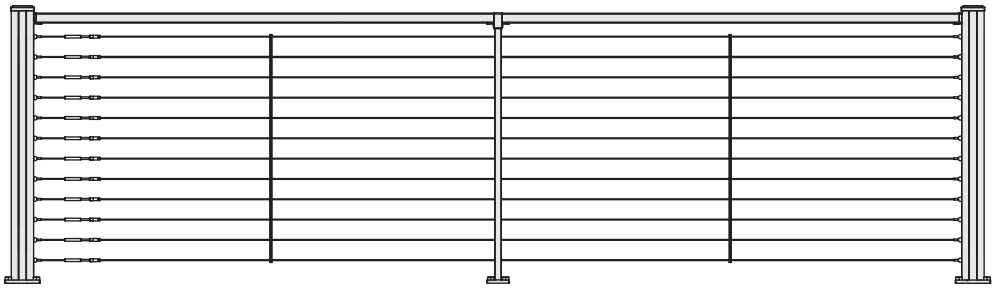


» (2) X-Series Anchor Posts (sold separately)
» (3) 6' Top Rails
» (1) Fixed Horizontal Bracket Pack
  (2) Top Rail Straight Brackets
  (1) Screw Pack
  (2) Top Rail Locking Assemblies
  (2) Top Inserts
  (1) 9/64" Drill Bit
» (2) Pass-Through Posts
» (2) Pass-Through Post Bracket Packs
  (1) Pass-Through Post Bracket
  (1) Barrel Bolt Pack
  (1) Screw Pack
» (2) Cable Infill Adapters
» (3) Cable Braces (w/ set screws included)
» (1) Turnbuckle Wrench
» (2) Post Mounting Hardware Packs
  (4) 1/2" x 6" SS Hex Bolts
  (4) SS Washers
  (4) SS Tee Nuts
» (2) Bolt Cap Packs
  (4) Inner Caps
  (4) Outer Caps
» 18' Cable Assemblies
  (Qty 10 for 36" height)
  (Qty 12 for 42" height)

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

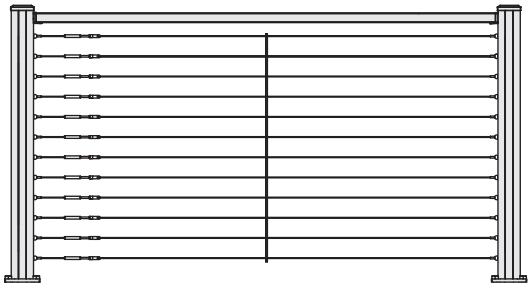
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL CABLE RAIL/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

12′ Horizontal Cable Rail Configuration



- (2) X-Series Anchor Posts (sold separately)
- (2) 6’ Top Rails
- (1) Fixed Horizontal Bracket Pack
  - (2) Top Rail Straight Brackets
  - (1) Screw Pack
  - (2) Top Rail Locking Assemblies
  - (2) Top Inserts
  - (1) 9/64″ Drill Bit
- (1) Pass-Through Post
- (1) Pass-Through Post Bracket Pack
  - (1) Pass-Through Post Bracket
  - (1) Barrel Bolt Pack
  - (1) Screw Pack
- (2) Cable Infill Adapters
- (2) Cable Braces (w/ set screws included)
- (1) Turnbuckle Wrench
- (1) Post Mounting Hardware Pack
  - (4) 1/2” x 6” SS Hex Bolts
  - (4) SS Washers
  - (4) SS Tee Nuts
- (1) Bolt Cap Pack
  - (4) Inner Caps
  - (4) Outer Caps
- 12′ Cable Assemblies
  - (Qty 10 for 36” height)
  - (Qty 12 for 42” height)

6′ Horizontal Cable Rail Configuration



- (2) X-Series Anchor Posts (sold separately)
- (1) 6′ Top Rail
- (1) Fixed Horizontal Bracket Pack
  - (2) Top Rail Straight Brackets
  - (1) Screw Pack
  - (2) Top Rail Locking Assemblies
  - (2) Top Inserts
  - (1) 9/64″ Drill Bit
- (2) Cable Infill Adapters
- (1) Cable Brace (w/ set screws included)
- (1) Turnbuckle Wrench
- 6′ Cable Assemblies
  - (Qty 10 for 36” height)
  - (Qty 12 for 42” height)

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL CABLE RAIL/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

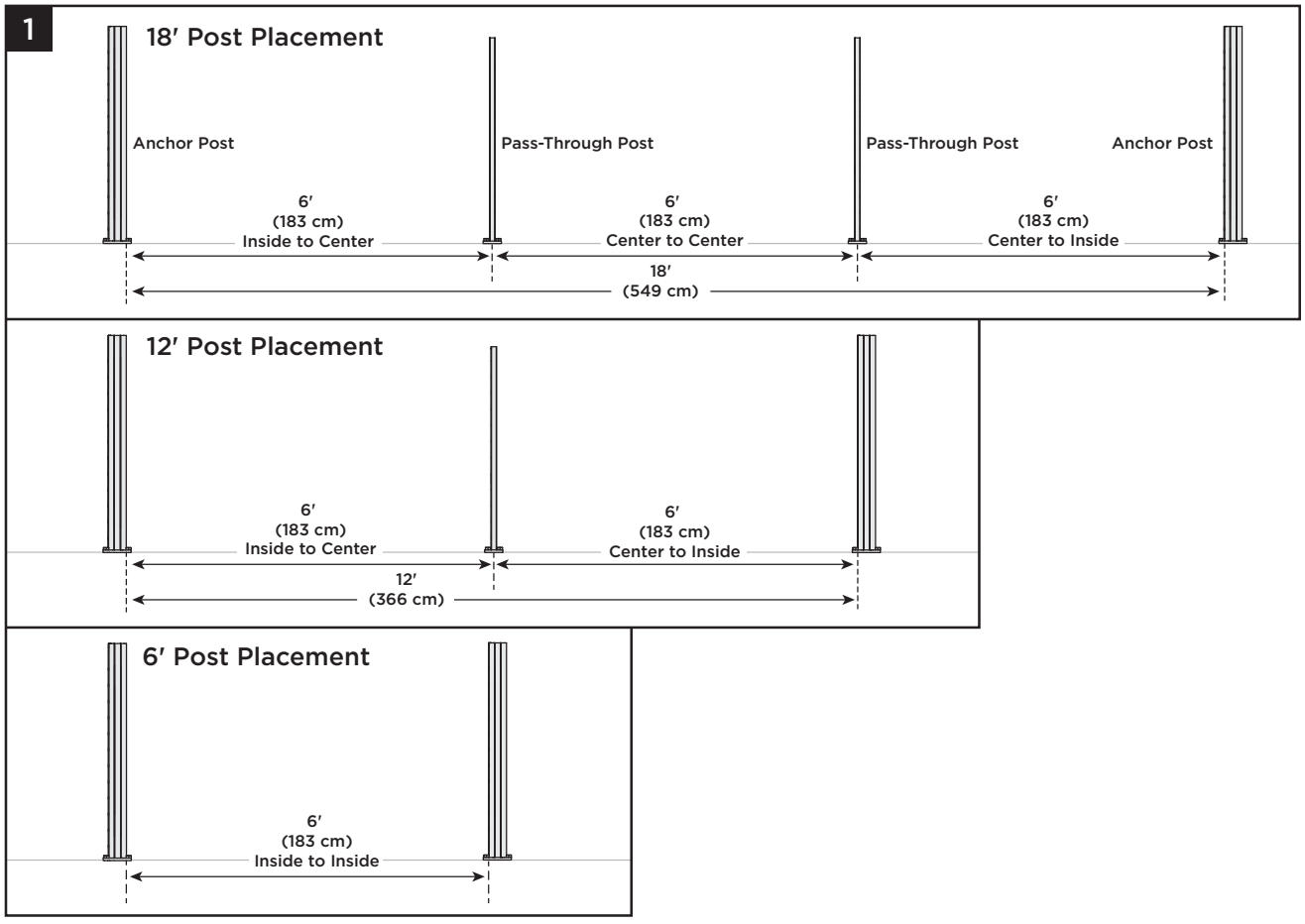
NOTE: Install X-Series Anchor Posts as per instructions provided with these posts. Then proceed to instructions below.

Installing Pass-Through Posts

» X-Series Horizontal Cable Rail is designed to be installed at a maximum clear span of 6′, 12′, or 18′ between X-Series Anchor Posts.

» If not installing standard clear spans as listed above, you must first calculate the clear span between X-Series Anchor Posts, then divide accordingly, depending on total overall span.
- Any span over 6’ will require the use of one Pass-Through Post.
- Any span over 12’ will require the use of two Pass-Through Posts.

Post Placement

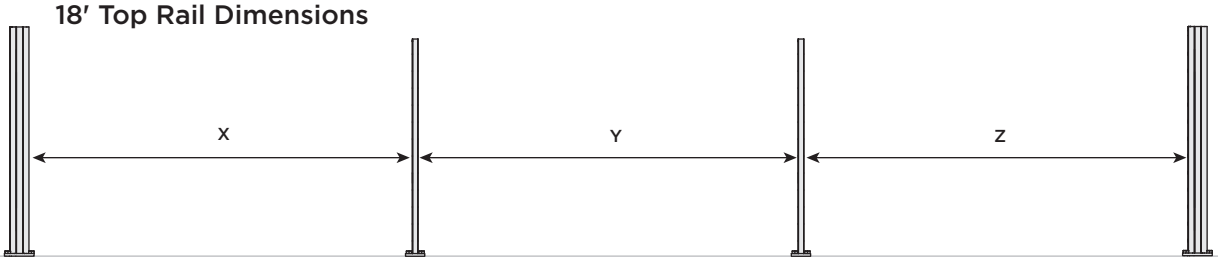


1. Install Pass-Through Posts using mounting hardware provided. When mounting Pass-Through Posts to pressure-treated wood framing, follow the same installation method and blocking details outlined in the Trex Signature X-Series Post installation instructions. Ensure Pass-Through Posts are plumb.

Measuring and Cutting Top Rails (When Required)

2

18′ Top Rail Dimensions

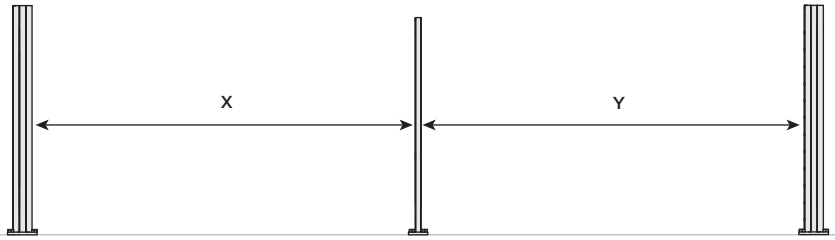


Cut Length = X + 5/16″ (7.93 mm)

Cut Length = Y + 13/16″ (20.83 mm)

Cut Length = Z + 5/16″ (7.93 mm)

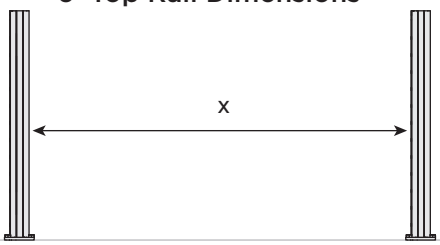
12′ Top Rail Dimensions



Cut Length = X + 5/16″ (7.93 mm)

Cut Length = Y + 5/16″ (7.93 mm)

6′ Top Rail Dimensions



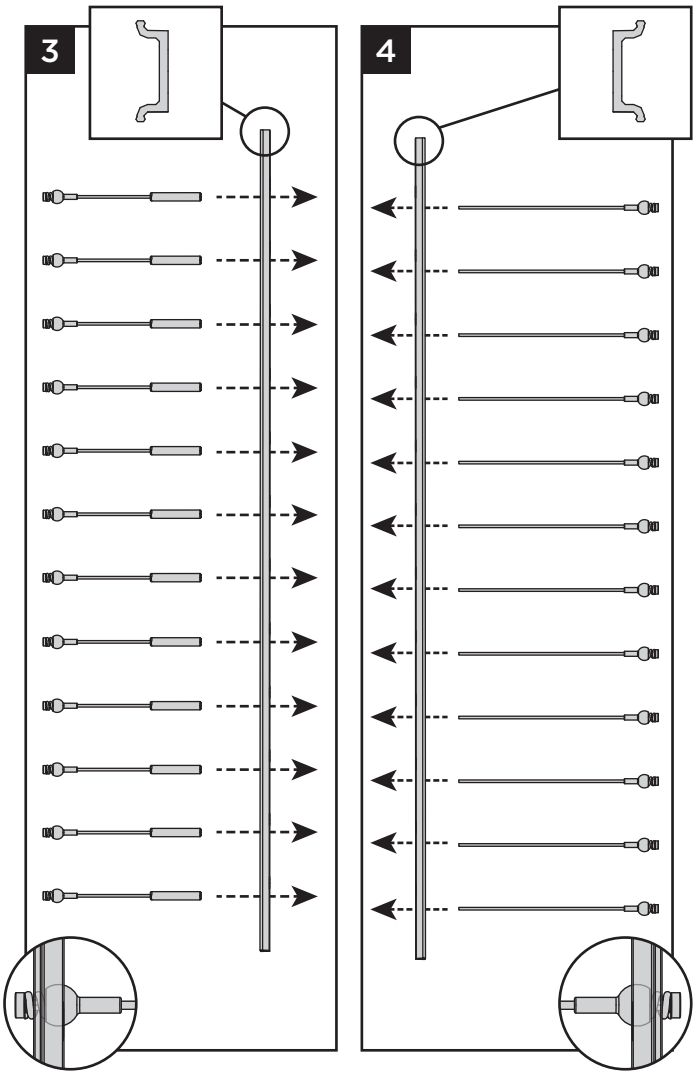
Cut Length = X – 1/4″ (6.35 mm)

2. Measure each span separately. Do not assume all top rails will be identical in length.

NOTE: IF INSTALLING HORIZONTAL RAILS AT AN ANGLE, USE COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS AND REFER TO INSTRUCTIONS AT THE END OF THIS DOCUMENT.

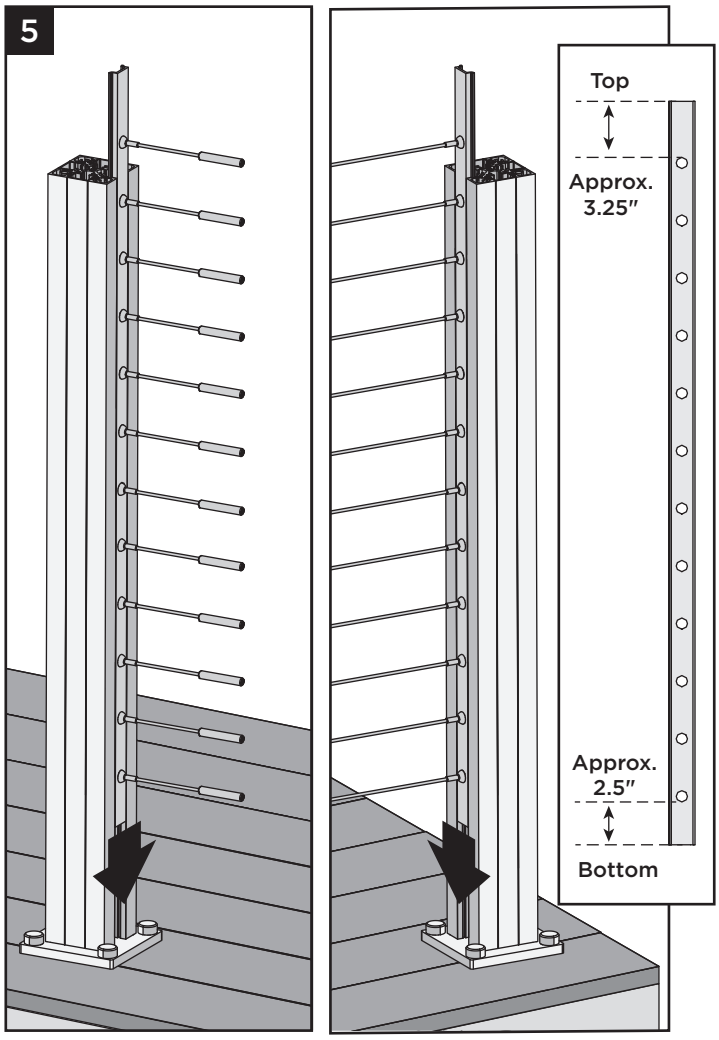
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL CABLE RAIL/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

Inserting Cables into Cable Infill Adapters



3. Insert short cables into cable infill adapter as shown.

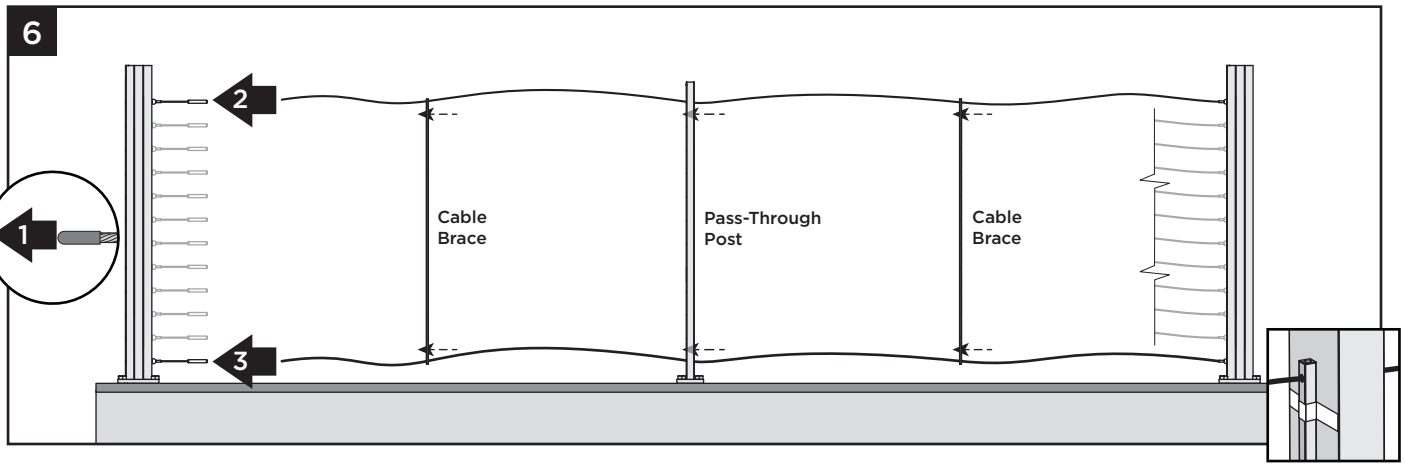
4. Insert long cables into opposite cable infill adapter as shown.



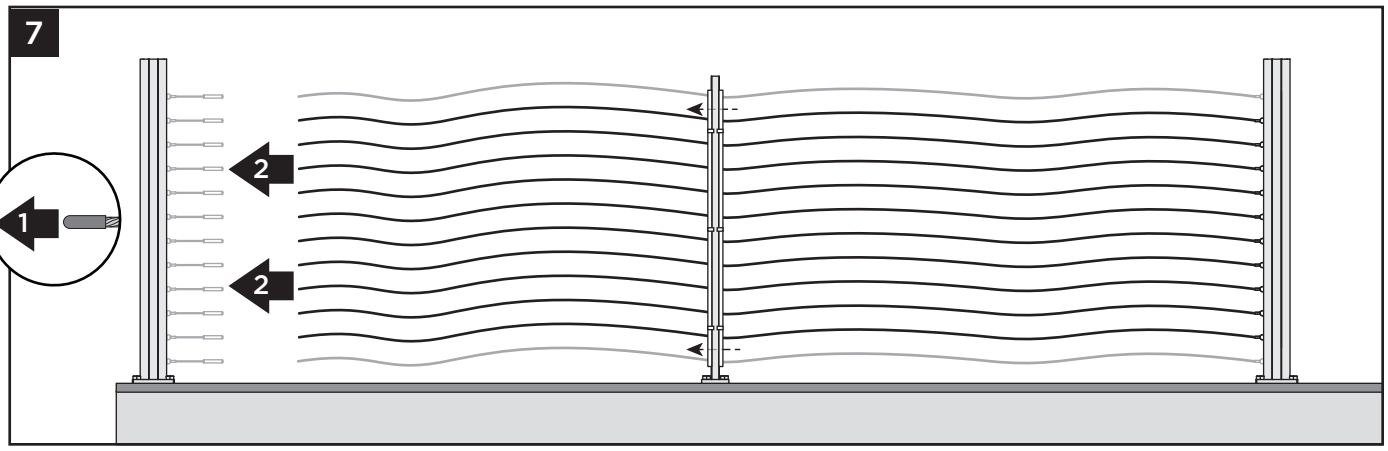
5. Slide cable infill adapters into X-Series Anchor Posts as shown.

IMPORTANT: Cable infill adapter should be inserted so that the hole closest to the end is at the bottom of the post. See dimensioned figure above to identify correct orientation of cable infill adapter.

Threading Long Cables Through Cable Brace(s) and Pass-Through Post(s)

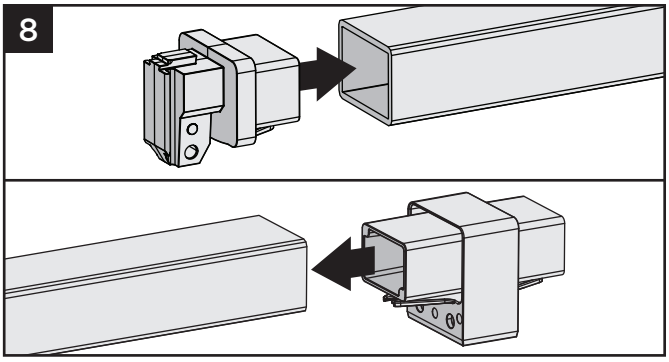


6. Remove cover on end of cable. Thread the top cable through the top hole in the cable brace. Continue to thread this same cable through the top hole in the Pass-Through Post (when required). If you have multiple spans, continue in this fashion. Next, thread the bottom cable in the same manner. After installing the top and bottom cables, slide the cable brace next to the Pass-Through Post. **Tip:** Tape cable brace to Pass-Through Post for easier installation of remaining cables.



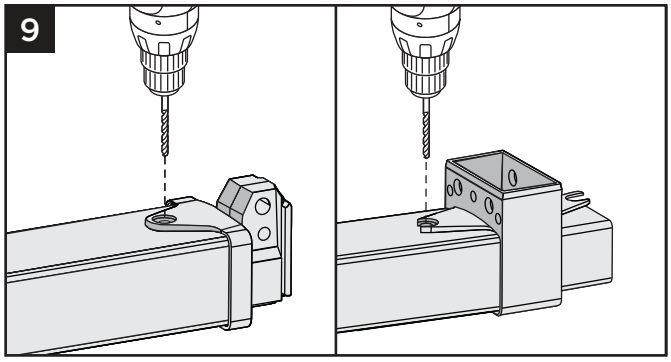
7. Remove remaining cable covers and thread remaining cables through cable brace(s) and Pass-Through Post(s).

Inserting Brackets onto Top Rails



8. Insert all brackets as per steps 10a through 10c. Ensure that all brackets are fully seated.

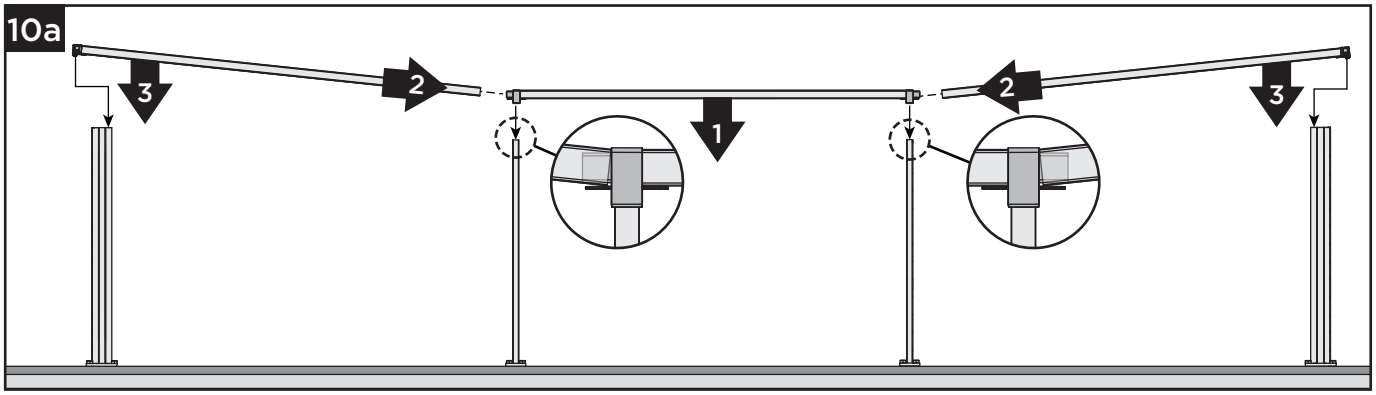
Pre-Drilling Top Rails at Bracket Locations



9. Using a 9/64" drill bit, pre-drill at all bracket locations as shown.

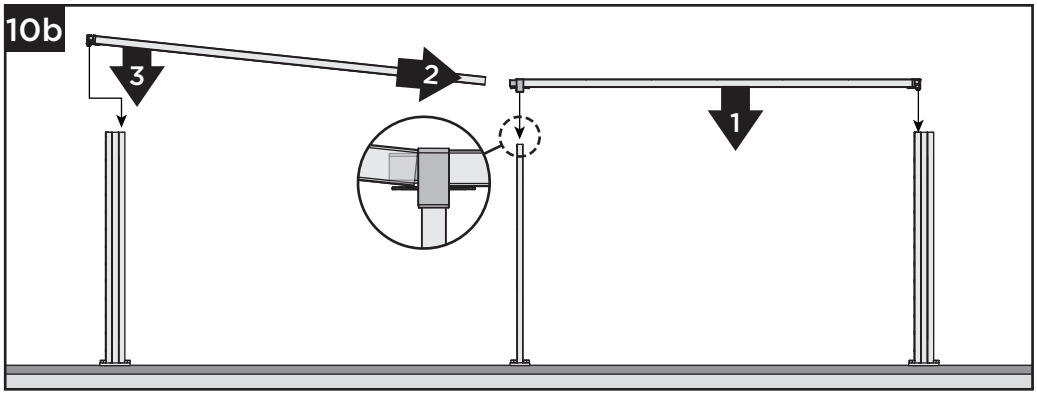
Note: *Only pre-drill through the first layer of the rail and bracket.*

Installing Top Rails and Brackets onto Posts



Note: Cables removed from image above for clarity.

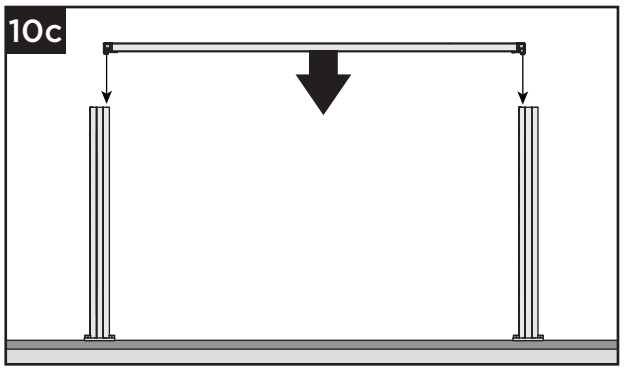
10a. **For 18′ spans** (or spans that have 3 top rails), install center rail onto Pass-Through Posts first, then install outer rails on each side.



Note: Cables removed from image above for clarity.

10b. **For 12′ spans** (or spans that have 2 top rails), install first rail onto X-Series Anchor Post and Pass-Through Post, then install remaining rail.

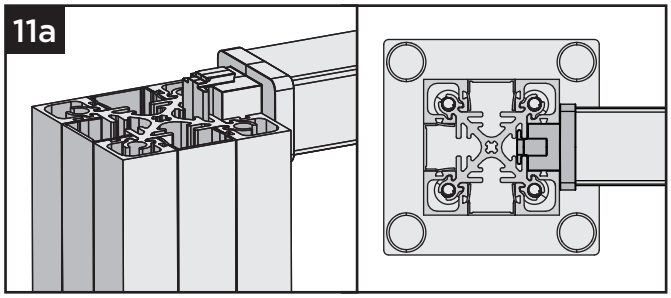
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.



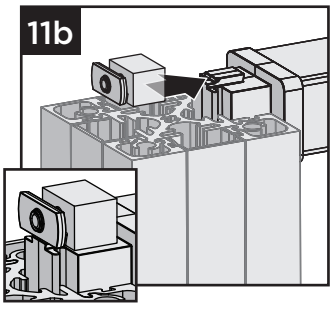
Note: Cables removed from image above for clarity

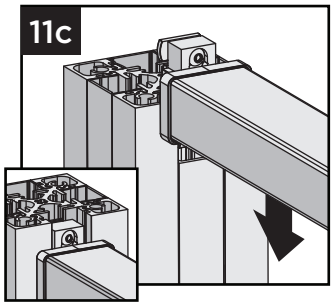
10c. **For 6′ spans** (or spans that have 1 top rail), install rail onto both X-Series Anchor Posts.

Installing Top Rail Straight Brackets in X-Series Anchor Posts



11a. Position the top rail straight bracket PARTIALLY into the X-Series Anchor Post as shown.

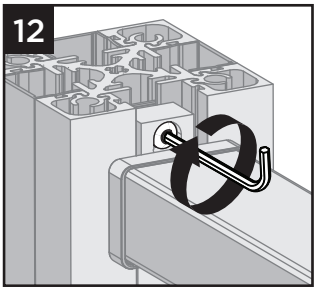




11b. Slide the top rail locking assembly onto the dovetail on the top of the bracket.

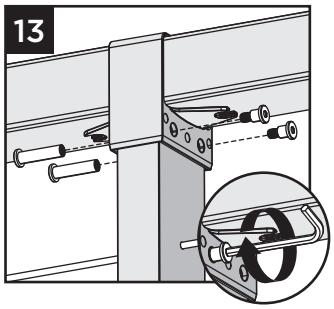
11c. Slide the bracket down until it sits on the cable infill adapter. Note that the screw in the locking assembly may need to be loosened to allow the locking assembly to fit properly in the X-Series Anchor Post.

12. Tighten screw in locking assembly using a 5/32" Allen wrench.

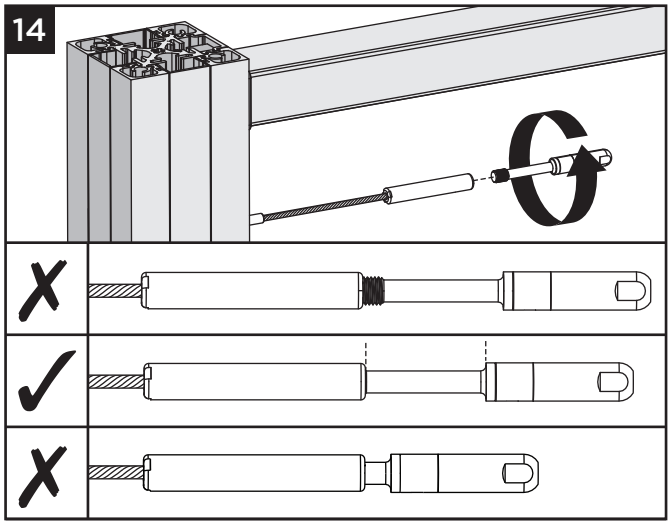


Fastening Pass-Through Post Bracket to Pass-Through Post (When Required)

13. Install two barrel bolts through Pass-Through Post as shown. Insert screw on opposite side and tighten using a 1/8" Allen wrench.

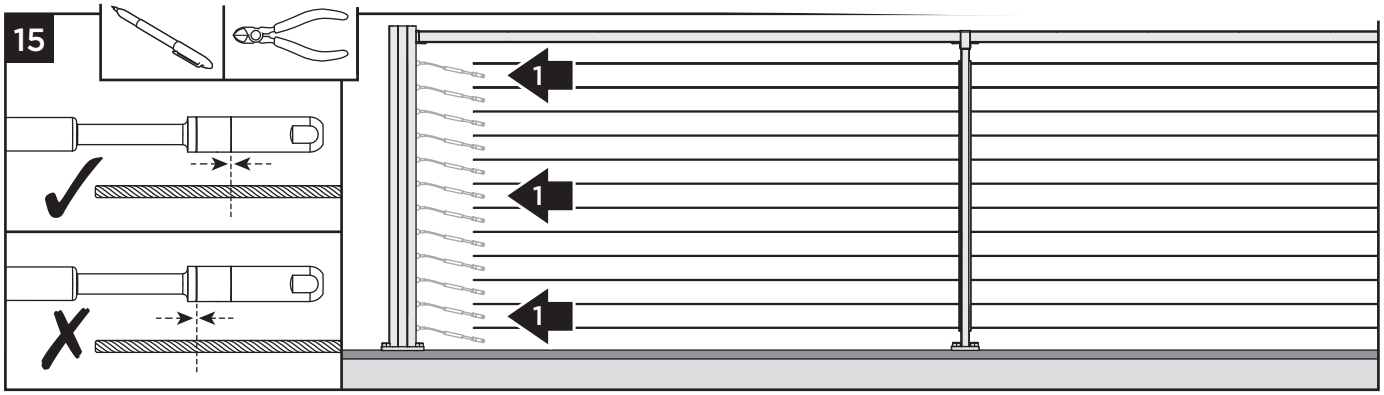


Threading Push-to-Connect Fittings into Turnbuckles



14. Thread each push-to-connect (PTC) fitting into the turnbuckle on each short cable until the threads just disappear in the turnbuckle. Ensure threads are flush with the end of the turnbuckle.

Cutting Long Cables (Safety Note: Wear safety glasses when cutting cables.)



15. Pull each long cable taut and straight by hand and mark cable at cut line on PTC fitting as shown. Cut each long cable on mark using cable cutters.

NOTES:

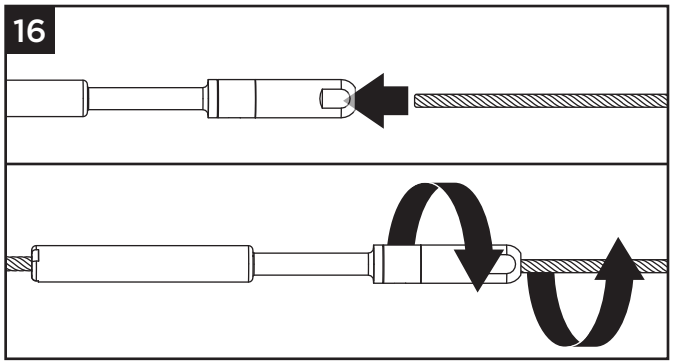
» *BE SURE TO USE GOOD CABLE CUTTERS. DO NOT FRAY CABLE ENDS.*

» *THIS APPLICATION MAY REQUIRE TWO PEOPLE IN ORDER TO PULL CABLE TAUT AND CUT.*

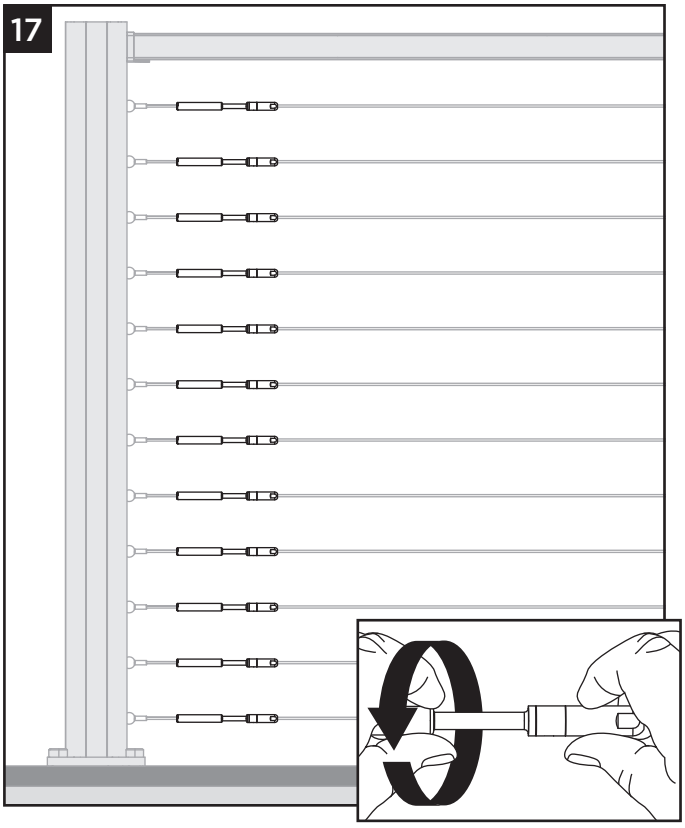
Installing Long Cables into Push-to-Connect Fittings and Tensioning Cables

IMPORTANT NOTE:

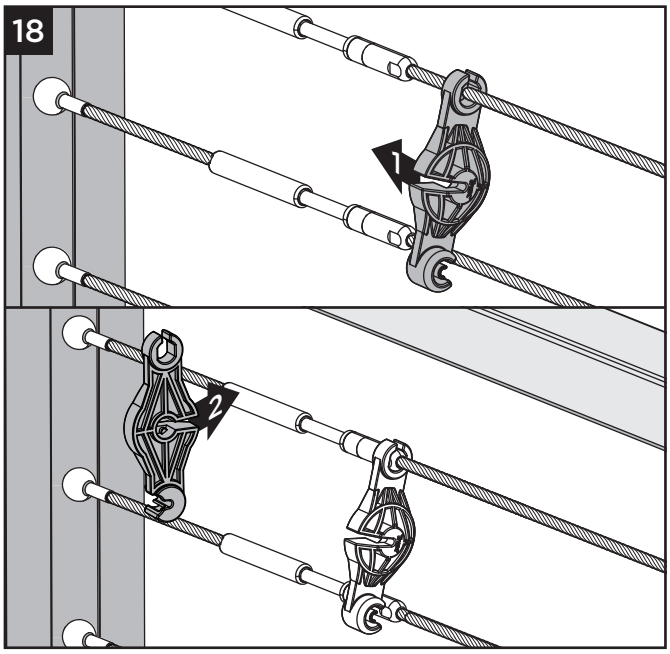
» *If installing X-Series Cable Rail near saltwater environments, spray a small amount of WD-40 Specialist® Corrosion Inhibitor in the open end of the PTC fitting before inserting the cable. Do this IMMEDIATELY before inserting the cable to prevent dirt and dust from collecting inside the fitting. Use caution not to get this on the decking surface! Protect decking from drips and runs.*



16. Push the end of each long cable into opposite PTC fitting, slightly rotating the PTC fitting counterclockwise and cable clockwise (approximately 1/4 turn) until cable is fully seated.



17. Hand-tighten all cables by holding the PTC fitting fixed and rotating the turnbuckle. Do NOT rotate PTC fitting when tightening cables.

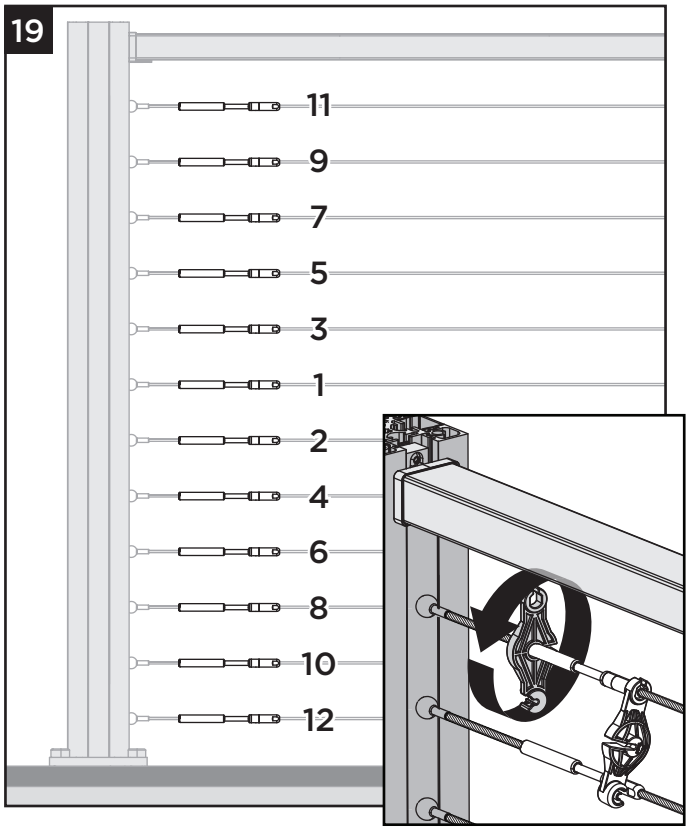


18. Using the turnbuckle wrench(es) provided (one per kit), place one wrench on the flat sides of the PTC fitting. Place a second wrench on the turnbuckle as shown so that it locks in place with the cutouts on the end of the turnbuckle.

Note:

» *An adjustable wrench can also be used on the flat sides of the PTC fitting.*

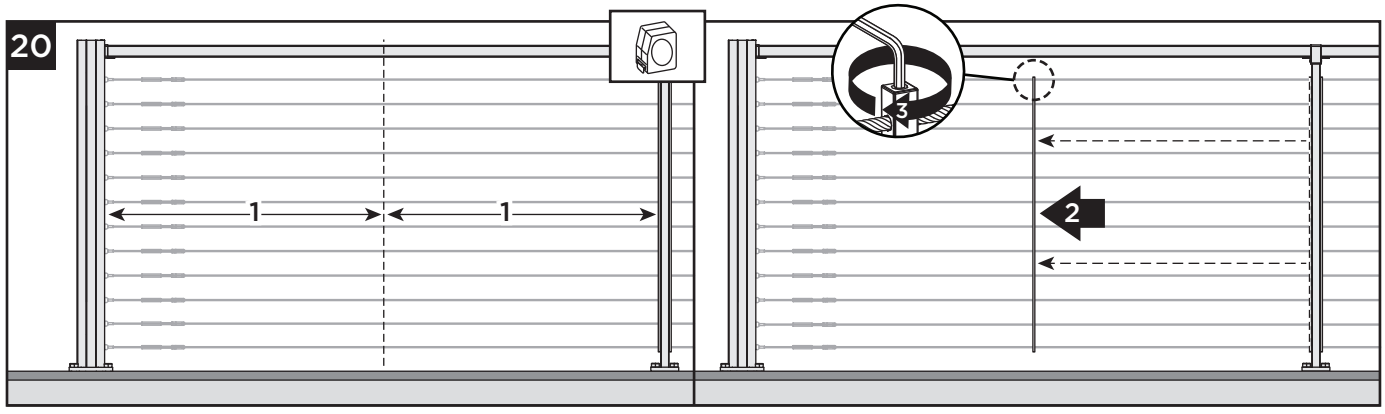
» *Use the release tool on the turnbuckle wrench to release the cable from the PTC fitting if needed. PTC fittings are intended to be single use after the cable has been tensioned. Do NOT reuse PTC fittings after tensioning.*



19. Tension each cable to 100 lbs by rotating the turnbuckle-side wrench. Do NOT rotate PTC fitting when tensioning cables. Tension cables from the center outward, following the sequence shown. Repeat sequence as necessary until all cables are fully tensioned.

Note: *42" rail height (with 12 cables) shown here.*

Centering Cable Brace(s)

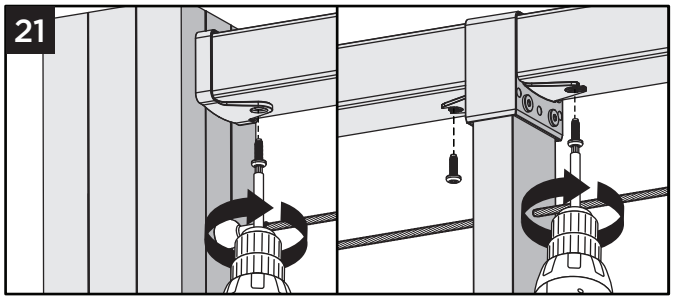


20. Locate the center of each span and slide all cable braces to their center positions. Ensure that cable braces are straight/vertical, and then tighten both top and bottom set screws using a 3/32" Allen wrench.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL CABLE RAIL/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

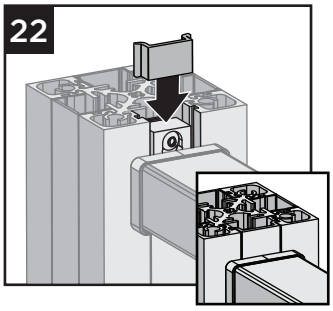
Fastening Top Rails to Brackets



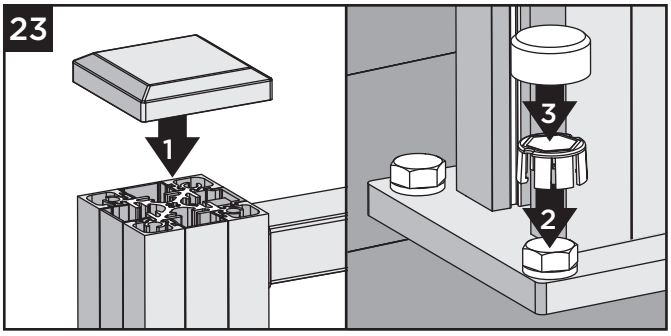
21. Install #8 x 1/2" screws into pre-drilled holes in top rails to fasten top rails to brackets at each Pass-Through Post and X-Series Anchor Post.

Installing Top Inserts

22. Install top inserts into the open channel above each bracket in all X-Series Anchor Posts.



Final Installation Steps



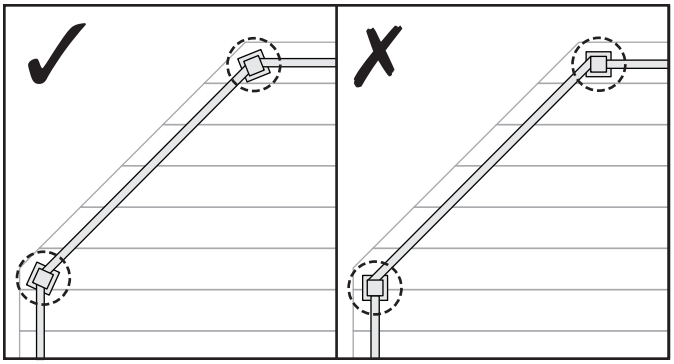
23. Install post caps and bolt caps to complete installation. For bolt caps, align hex shadow line on inner cap with bolt head before installing outer cap.

Installing Horizonal Cable Rail on an Angle

NOTES:

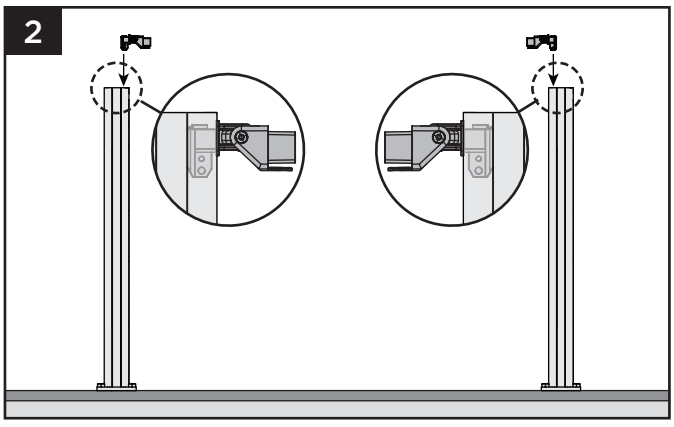
» *COMPOUND SWIVEL BRACKETS (SOLD SEPARATELY) AND CABLES CAN ACCOMMODATE UP TO A 22.5˚ ANGLE FOR HORIZONTAL APPLICATIONS.*

» *FOR LARGER ANGLES, POSTS MUST BE ANGLED ACCORDINGLY. EXAMPLE BELOW IS FOR A 45˚ ANGLE.*



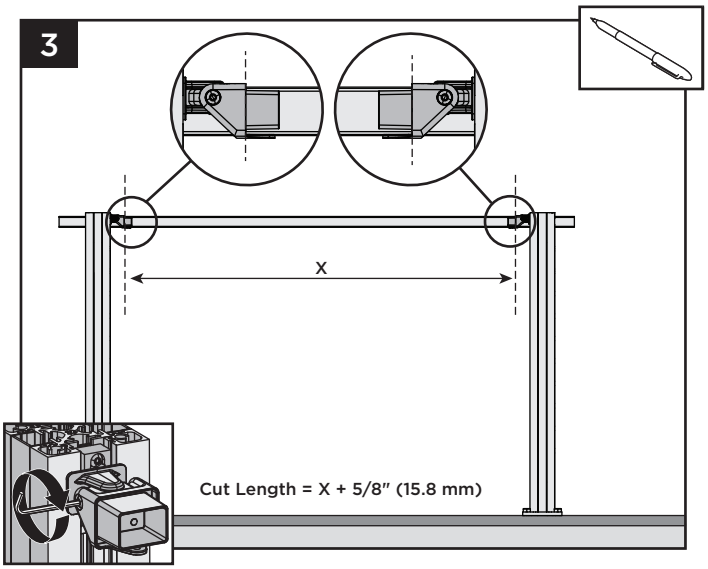
1. Follow all instructions as previously stated for standard horizontal installation EXCEPT for where noted below.

Measuring and Cutting Top Rails



2. Temporarily slide compound swivel bracket(s) into X-Series Anchor Posts.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.



3. Adjust each compound swivel bracket to align with direction of top rail and hand-tighten screws using a 5/32" Allen wrench to temporarily stabilize the swivel bracket. Measure between brackets at location shown, add 5/8" (15.8 mm) and cut top rail to this length.

4. Complete the remainder of the installation following the steps previously outlined. After installation is complete, tighten all screws in each compound swivel bracket using a 5/32" Allen wrench.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

NOTES:

» *PLEASE READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE BEGINNING INSTALLATION. USE ALL REQUIRED PARTS WHERE SPECIFIED. TWO PEOPLE ARE RECOMMENDED FOR THIS INSTALLATION.*

» *X-SERIES ANCHOR POSTS MUST BE USED AT ALL STAIR POST LOCATIONS. DO NOT USE PASS-THROUGH POSTS. FOR 36" RAIL HEIGHT, USE 43" X-SERIES POSTS; FOR 42" RAIL HEIGHT, USE 53" X-SERIES POSTS.*

» *FOR A 6′ STAIR RAIL, POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING STAIR POSTS, CALCULATE POST-TO-POST SPAN USING THE MAXIMUM STAIR RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE STAIR RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ HORIZONTAL SPAN, AS STAIR RAILS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*

» *X-SERIES STAIR CABLE RAIL IS ONLY COMPATIBLE WITH X-SERIES ANCHOR POSTS. IT CANNOT BE USED WITH STANDARD SIGNATURE POSTS OR PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS/POST SLEEVES.*

Tools Required:

- Please wear safety glasses during installation.
- Note that tools are NOT included unless otherwise specified.

– WD-40 Specialist® Corrosion Inhibitor *(**RECOMMENDED** for saltwater environments)*
– Min 18V drill
– Min 18V impact driver (post install only)
– Clamp
– Tape measure
– 3/4" socket
– Hammer
– Level
– 9/16" drill bit
– 9/64" drill bit
– Cable cutters
– 5/32" Allen wrench
– 3/32" Allen wrench
– T-20 drive bit
– Cable tension gauge
– Turnbuckle wrench (included)
– Adjustable wrench (if needed)

WD-40 Specialist® Corrosion Inhibitor is a registered trademark of WD-40 Company.

6′ Stair Cable Rail Configuration

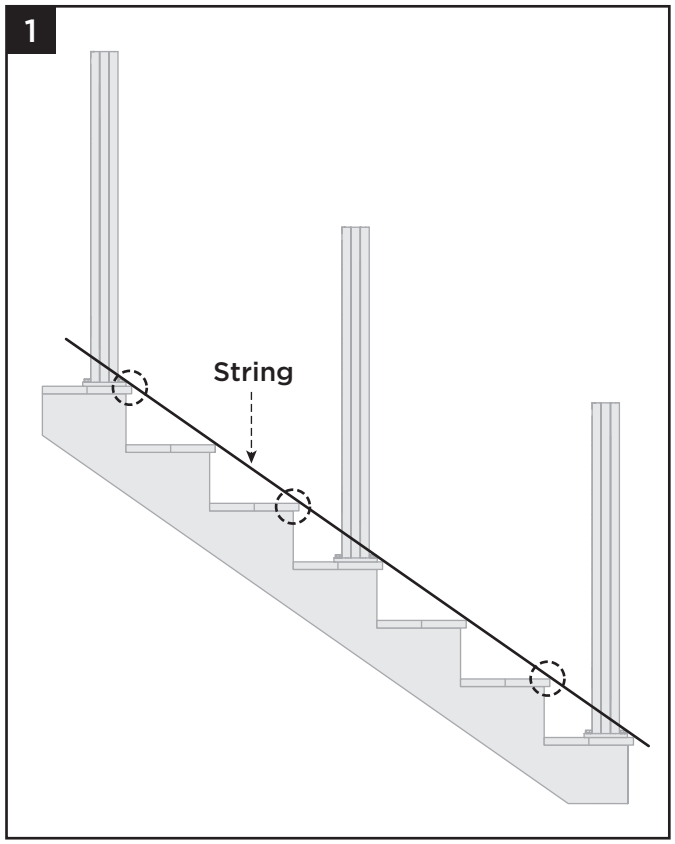
» (2) X-Series Anchor Posts (sold separately)
» (1) 6′ Top Rail
» (2) Compound Swivel Bracket Packs
  (1) Compound Swivel Bracket
  (1) Screw Pack
  (1) Top Rail Locking Assembly
» (2) Cable Infill Adapters
» (1) Cable Brace (w/ set screws included)
» (1) Turnbuckle Wrench
» 6′ Cable Assemblies
  (Qty 11 for 36” height)
  (Qty 13 for 42” height)

NOTE: Install X-Series™ Anchor Posts as per instructions provided with these posts, then proceed to instructions below. Ensure that the stair posts are installed close to the nose of the stair tread.

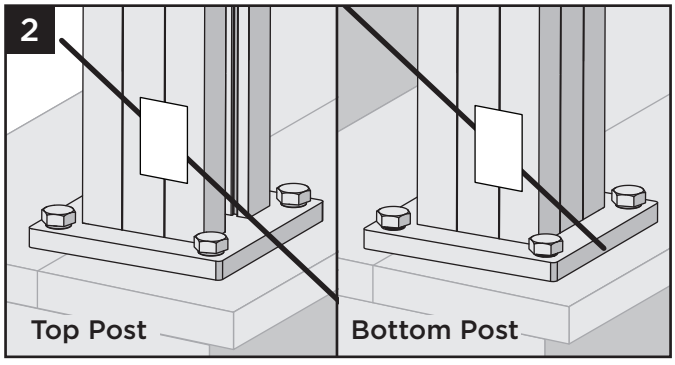
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

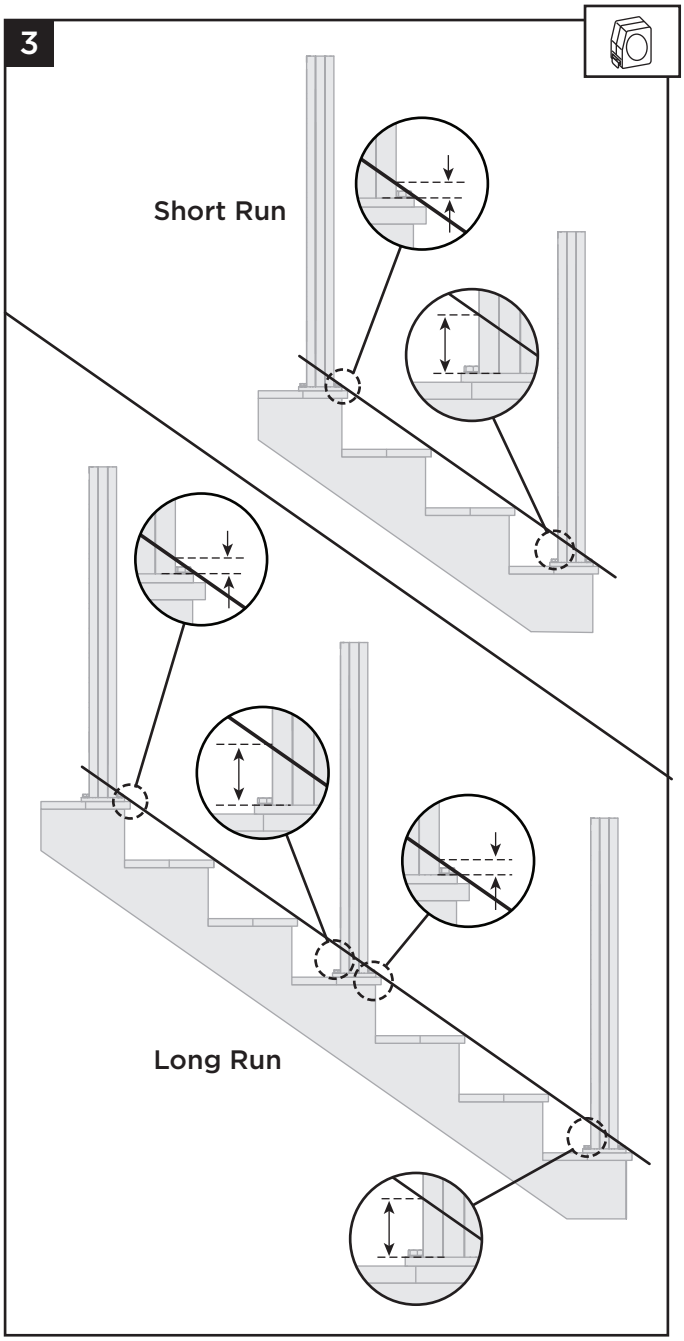
Measuring and Marking X-Series Anchor Posts



1. Run a string line from the front face of the bottom X-Series Anchor Post to the back face of the topmost X-Series Anchor Post, ensuring that the string line touches the stair tread nose closest to each post. If applicable, string line will run across multiple X-Series Anchor Posts for long stair runs.



2. Tape string line to top and bottom X-Series Anchor Posts. Ensure that string line is taut and straight.



3. Measure up from top of baseplate to stringline at each post location as shown.

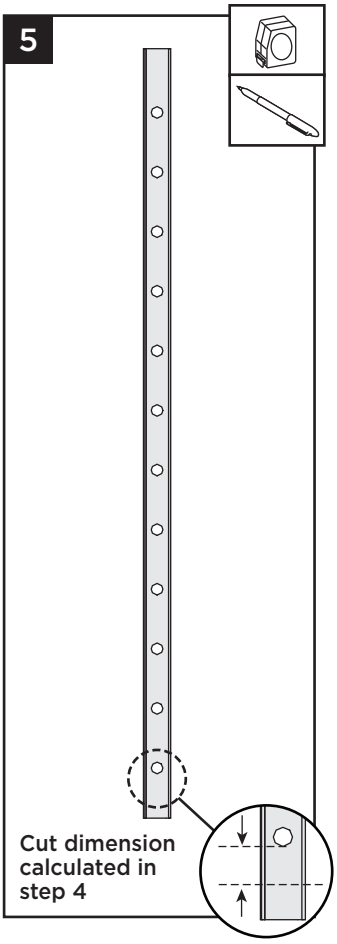
4. Add 7/8” to each measurement taken above and document this dimension at each post location to establish the bottom cut dimension for each cable infill adapter. Do not assume measurements will be the same at all post locations.

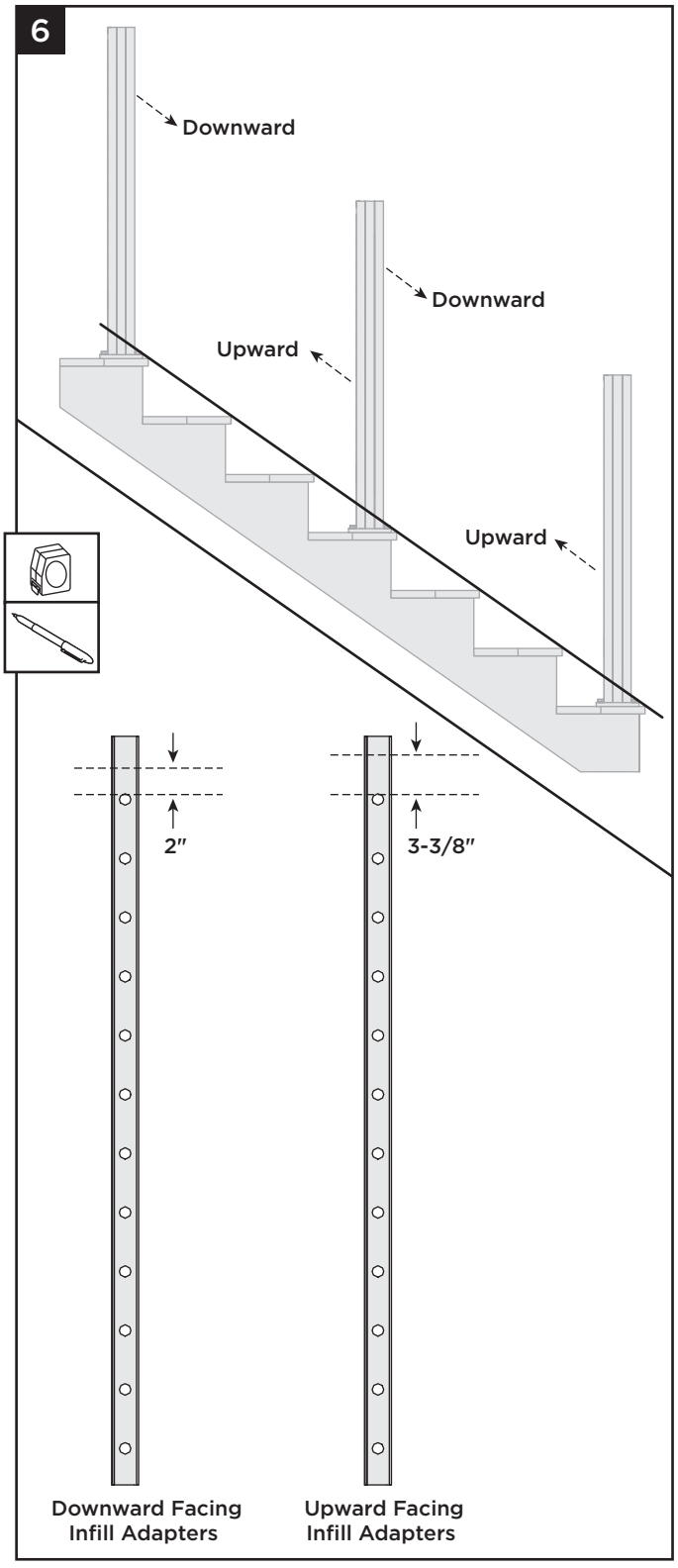
HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

Measuring and Cutting Cable Infill Adaptors

5. *Use the cut dimension calculated in step 4 to establish the bottom of each cable infill adapter. At one end of the cable infill adapter, measure from the edge of the hole closest to the end, and mark and cut at this location. Repeat for each cable infill adapter.*

Important Notes:
- » *Stair cable infill adapters are reversible and can be cut from either end for the first cut.*
- » *Be sure to designate which cable infill adapter goes with each post. Mark location and orientation of each cable infill adapter after cutting.*





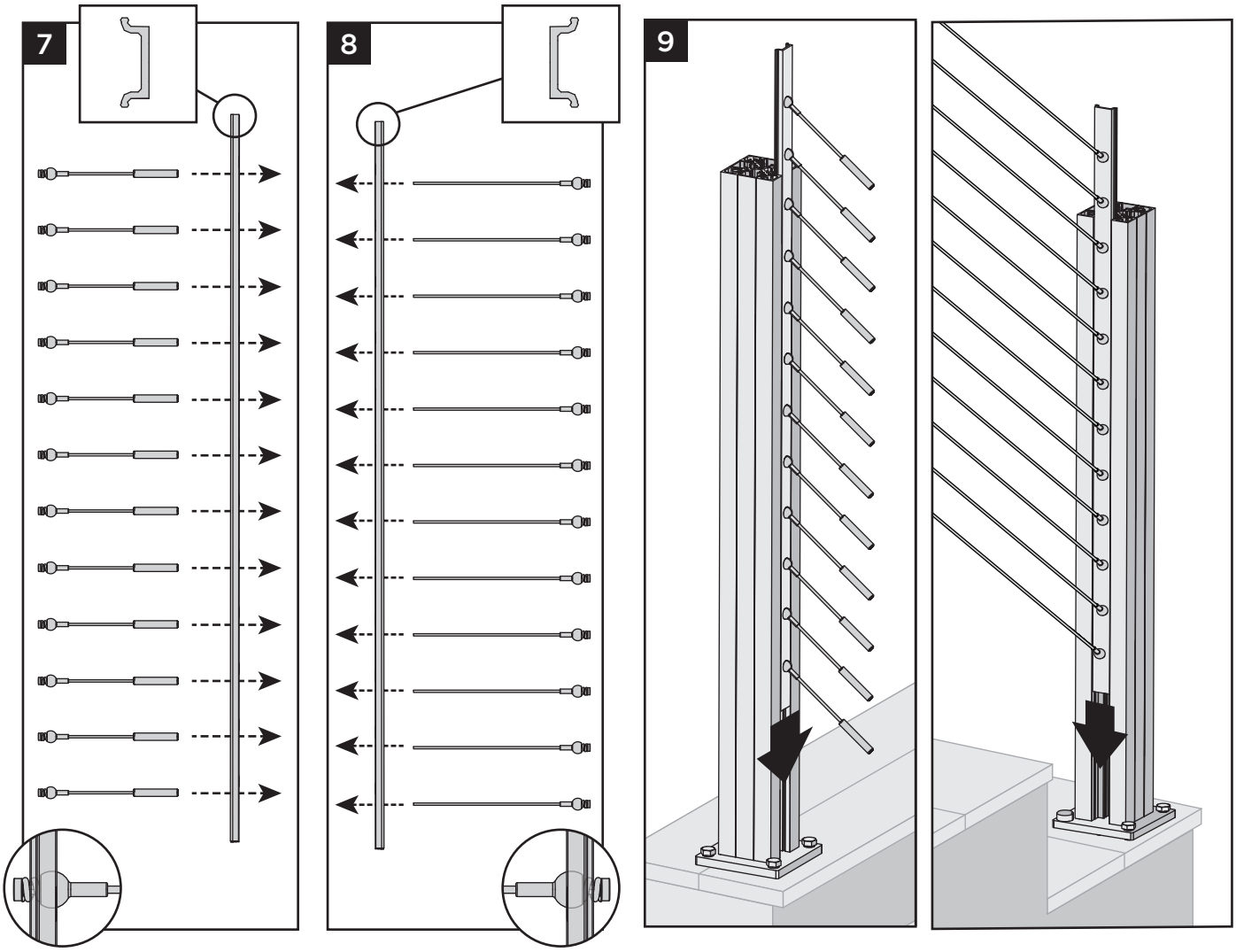
6. *Cut the opposite end of each cable infill adapter to establish the top.*
- » *For downward facing cable infill adapters, measure up 2" from top of top hole 2" and cut.*
- » *For upward facing cable infill adapters, measure up 3-3/8" from top of top hole and cut.*

Important Note: Do Not throw away these cut pieces as these will be used later.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

Inserting Cables into Cable Infill Adapters

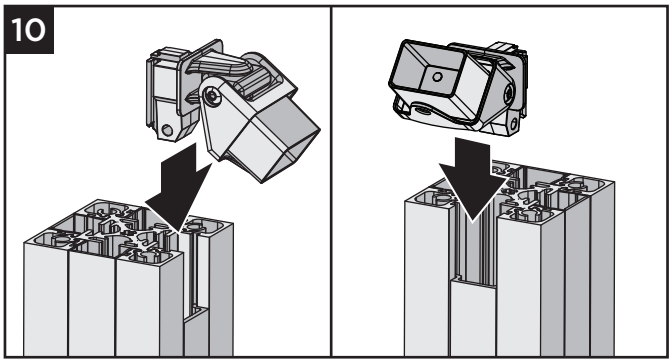


7. Insert short cables into cable infill adapter as shown.
8. Insert long cables into opposite cable infill adapter as shown.
9. Slide cable infill adapters into X-Series Anchor Posts as shown.

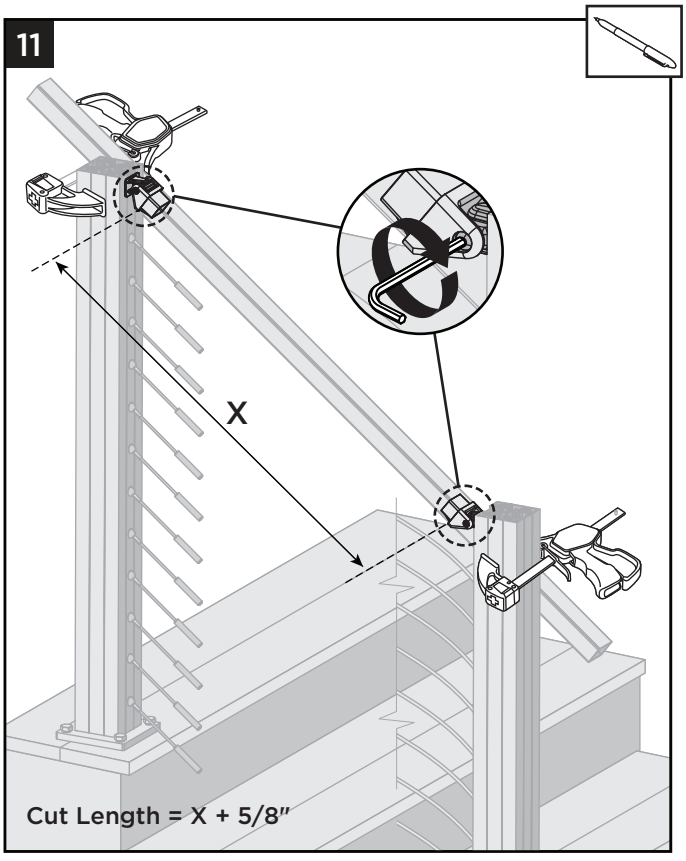
IMPORTANT: Ensure cable infill adapters are oriented correctly and installed into their designated post location as marked in step 5.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

Measuring and Cutting Top Rail

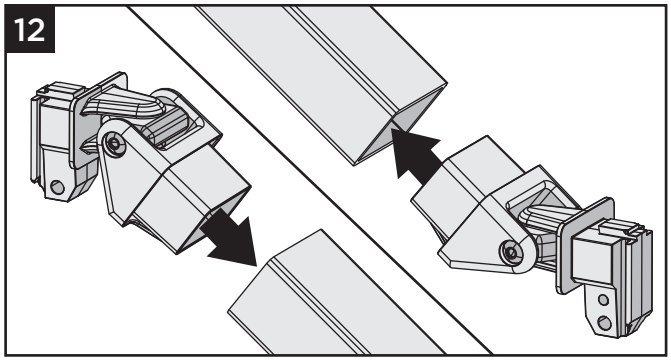


10. Slide compound swivel brackets into top and bottom X-Series Anchor Posts.



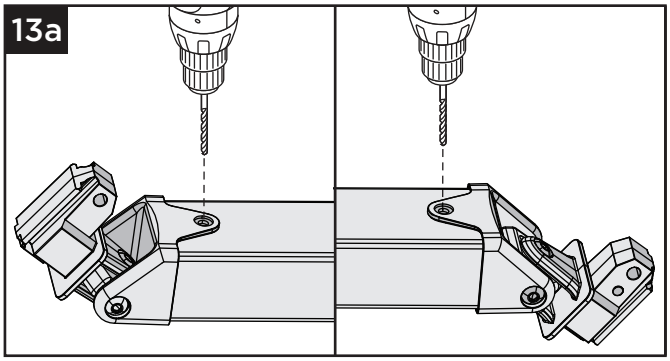
11. Clamp top rail to side of X-Series Anchor Posts, ensuring that top rail is running parallel to the stairs. Adjust each compound swivel bracket to align with direction of top rail and hand-tighten screws using a 5/32" Allen wrench to temporarily stabilize the brackets. Measure between the brackets as shown, add 5/8" and cut top rail to this length.

Inserting Brackets onto Top Rail



12. After removing compound swivel brackets from X-Series Anchor Posts, insert brackets onto top rails rail as shown. Ensure that all brackets are fully seated.

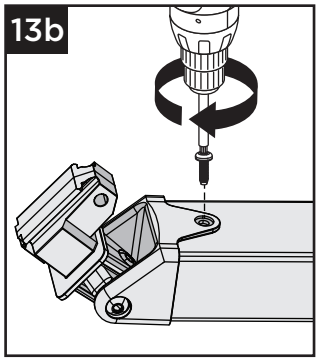
Pre-Drilling Top Rail at Bracket Locations



13a. Using a 9/64" drill bit, pre-drill at all bracket locations as shown.

Note: *Only pre-drill through the first layer of the rail and bracket.*

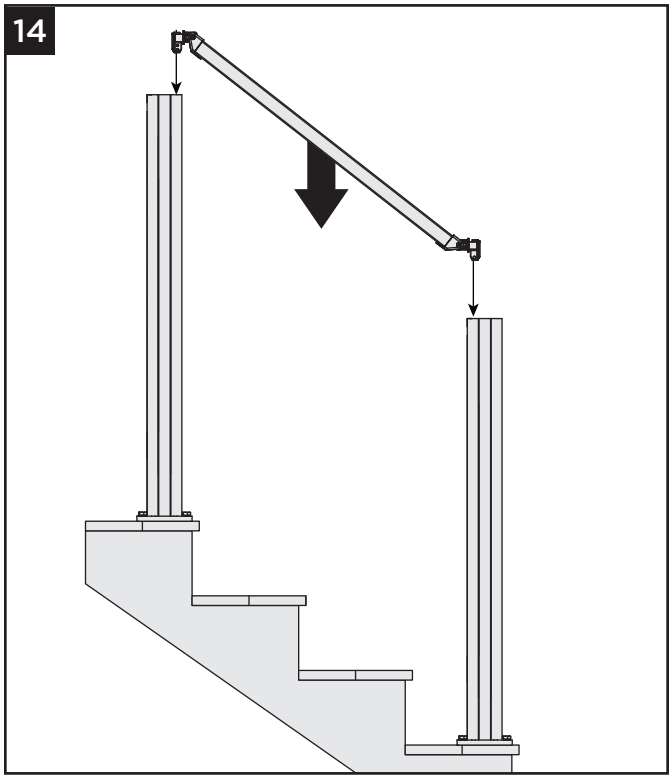
13b. Install #8 x 1/2" screw into compound swivel bracket **at top post location only.**



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

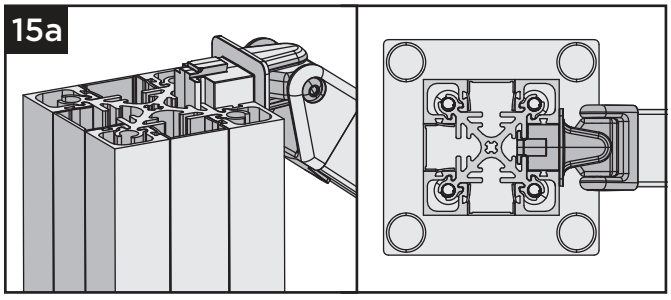
HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

Installing Compound Swivel Brackets in X-Series Anchor Posts



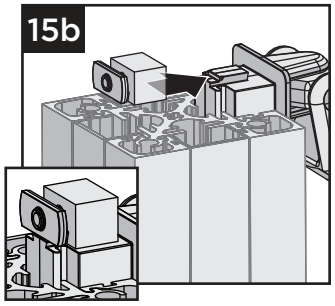
Note: Cables removed from image above for clarity.

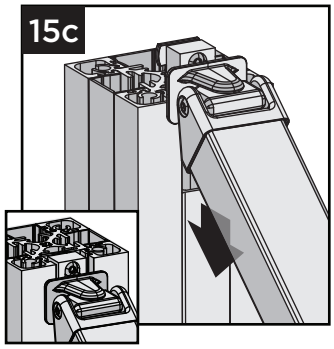
14. Install top rail onto X-Series Anchor Posts.

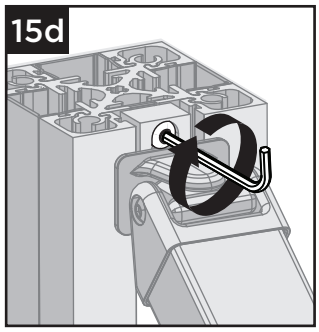


15a. Position the compound swivel bracket PARTIALLY into the X-Series Anchor Post as shown.

15b. Slide top rail locking assembly onto the dovetail on the top of both brackets.



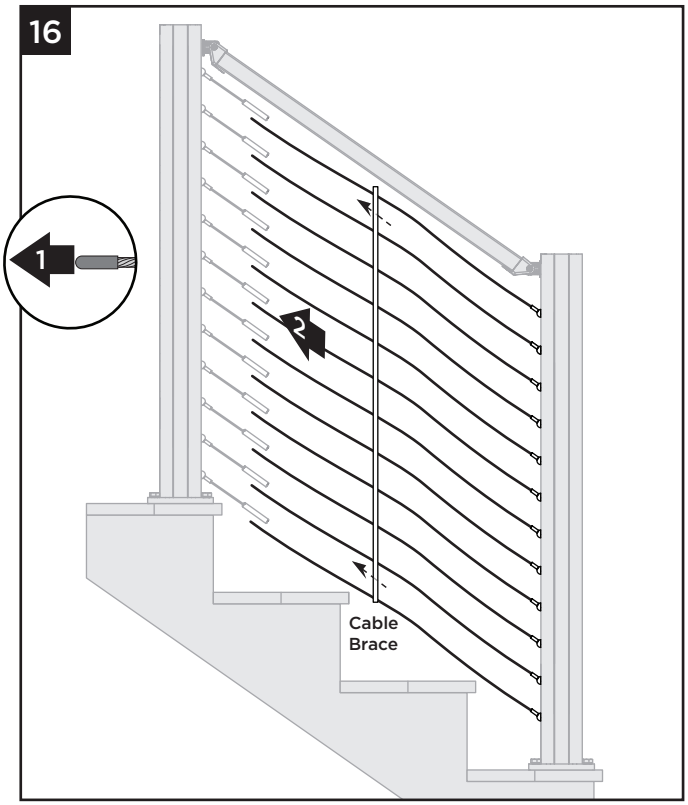




15c. Slide the bracket down until it sits on the cable infill adapter. Note that the screw in the locking assembly may need to be loosened to allow the locking assembly to fit properly in the X-Series Anchor Post.

15d. Tighten screw in locking assembly using a 5/32" Allen wrench.

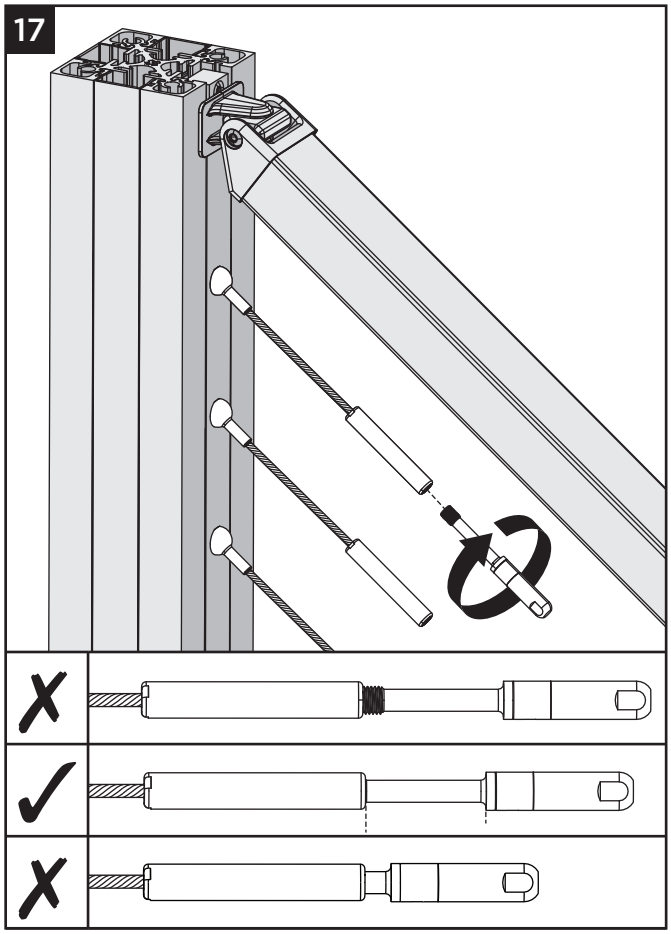
Threading Long Cables Through Cable Brace



16. Remove cover on end of each cable. Thread cables through the holes in the cable brace.

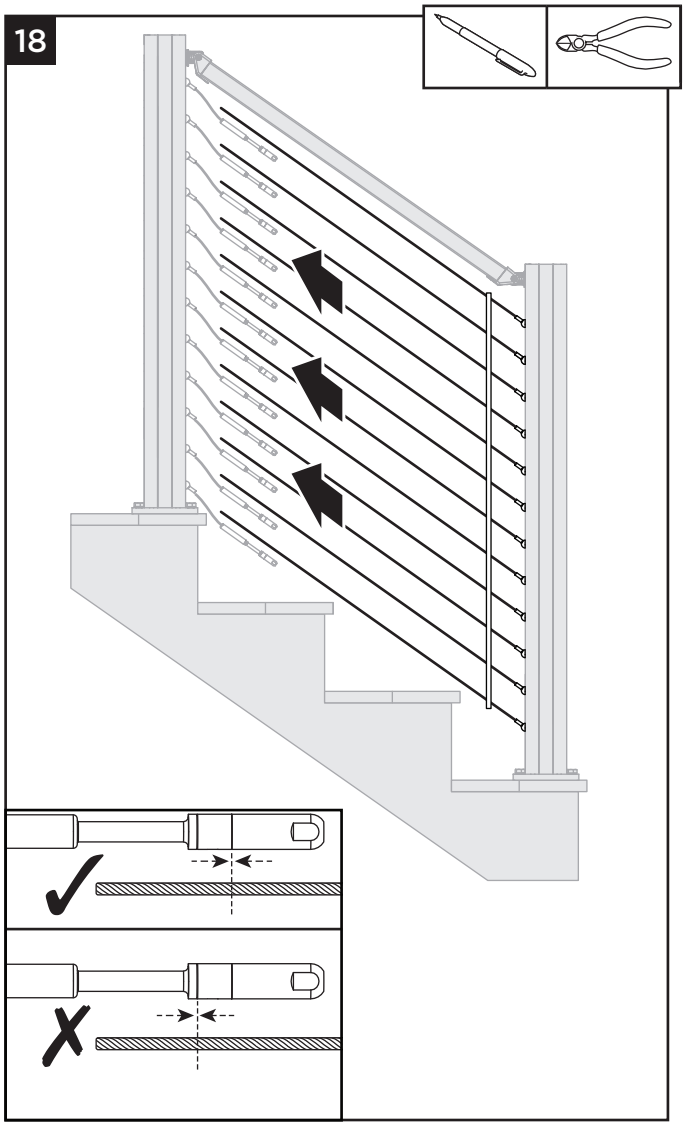
HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

Threading Push-to-Connect Fittings into Turnbuckles



17. Thread each push-to-connect (PTC) fitting into the turnbuckle on each short cable until the threads just disappear in the turnbuckle. Ensure threads are flush with the end of the turnbuckle.

Cutting Long Cables
(Safety Note–Wear safety glasses when cutting cables)



18. Pull each long cable taut and straight by hand and mark cable at cut line on PTC fitting as shown. Cut each long cable on mark using cable cutters.

Notes:

» *BE SURE TO USE GOOD CABLE CUTTERS. DO NOT FRAY CABLE ENDS.*

» *THIS APPLICATION MAY REQUIRE TWO PEOPLE IN ORDER TO PULL CABLE TAUT AND CUT.*

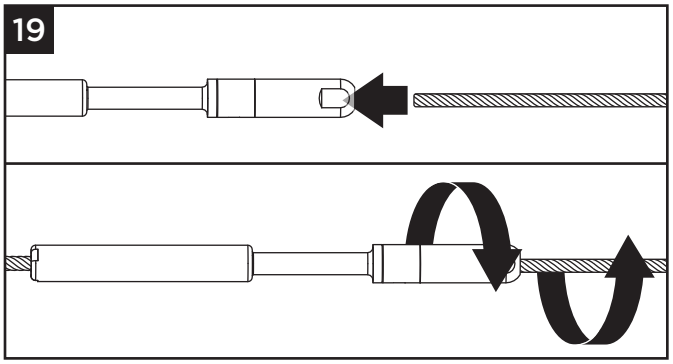
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

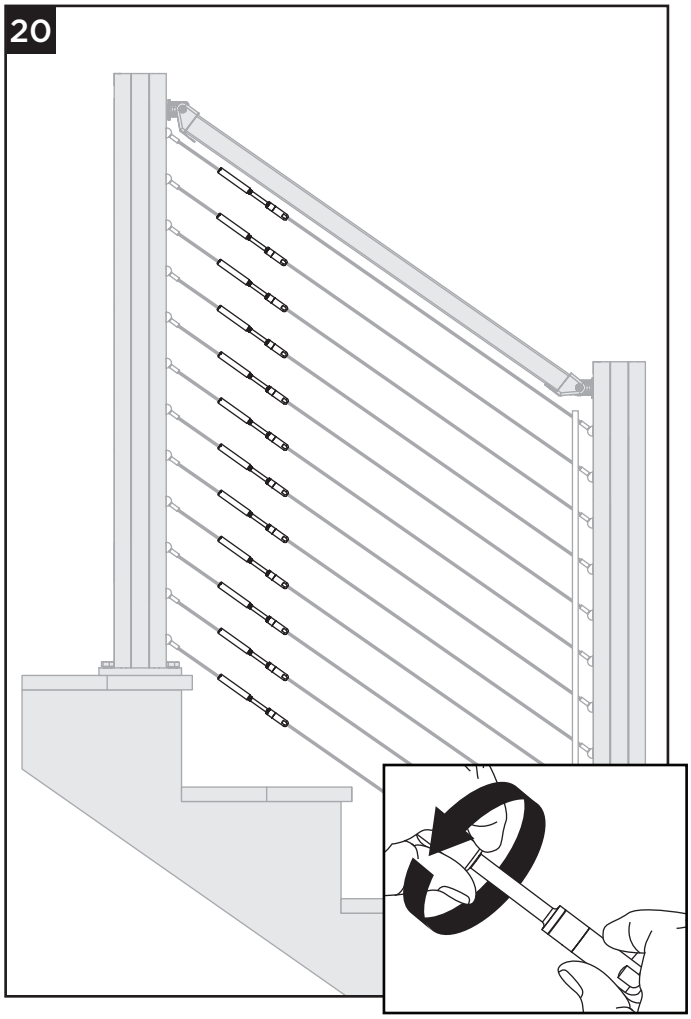
Installing Long Cables into Push-to-Connect Fittings and Tensioning Cables

IMPORTANT NOTE:

» *If installing X-Series Cable Rail near saltwater environments, spray a small amount of WD-40 Specialist® Corrosion Inhibitor in the open end of the PTC fitting before inserting the cable. Do this IMMEDIATELY before inserting the cable to prevent dirt and dust from collecting inside the fitting. Use caution not to get this on the decking surface! Protect decking from drips and rust.*

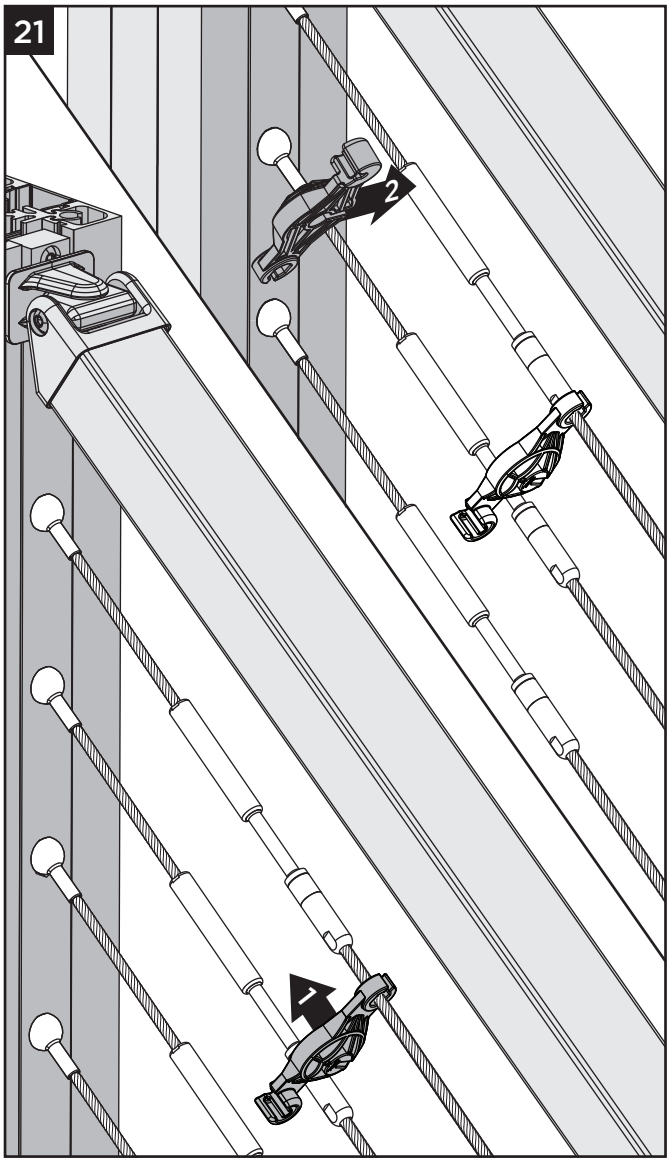


19. Push the end of each long cable into opposite PTC fitting, slightly rotating the PTC fitting counterclockwise and cable clockwise (approximately 1/4 turn) until cable is fully seated.



20. Hand-tighten all cables by holding the PTC fitting fixed and rotating the turnbuckle. Do NOT rotate PTC fitting when tightening cables.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

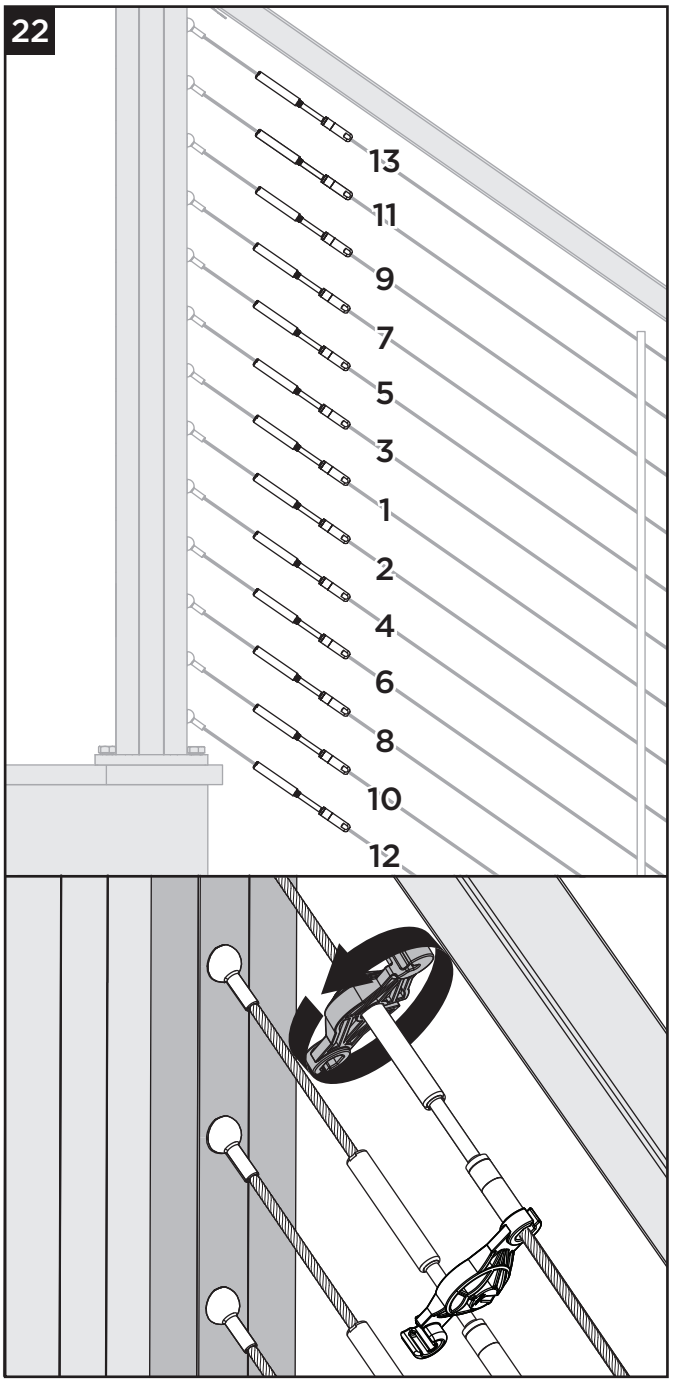


21. Using the turnbuckle wrench(es) provided (one per kit), place one wrench on the flat sides of the PTC fitting. Place a second wrench on the turnbuckle as shown so that it locks in place with the cutouts on the end of the turnbuckle.

Notes:

» *An adjustable wrench can also be used on the flat sides of the PTC fitting.*

» *Use the release tool on the turnbuckle wrench to release the cable from the PTC fitting if needed. PTC fittings are intended to be single use after the cable has been tensioned. Do NOT reuse PTC fittings after tensioning.*



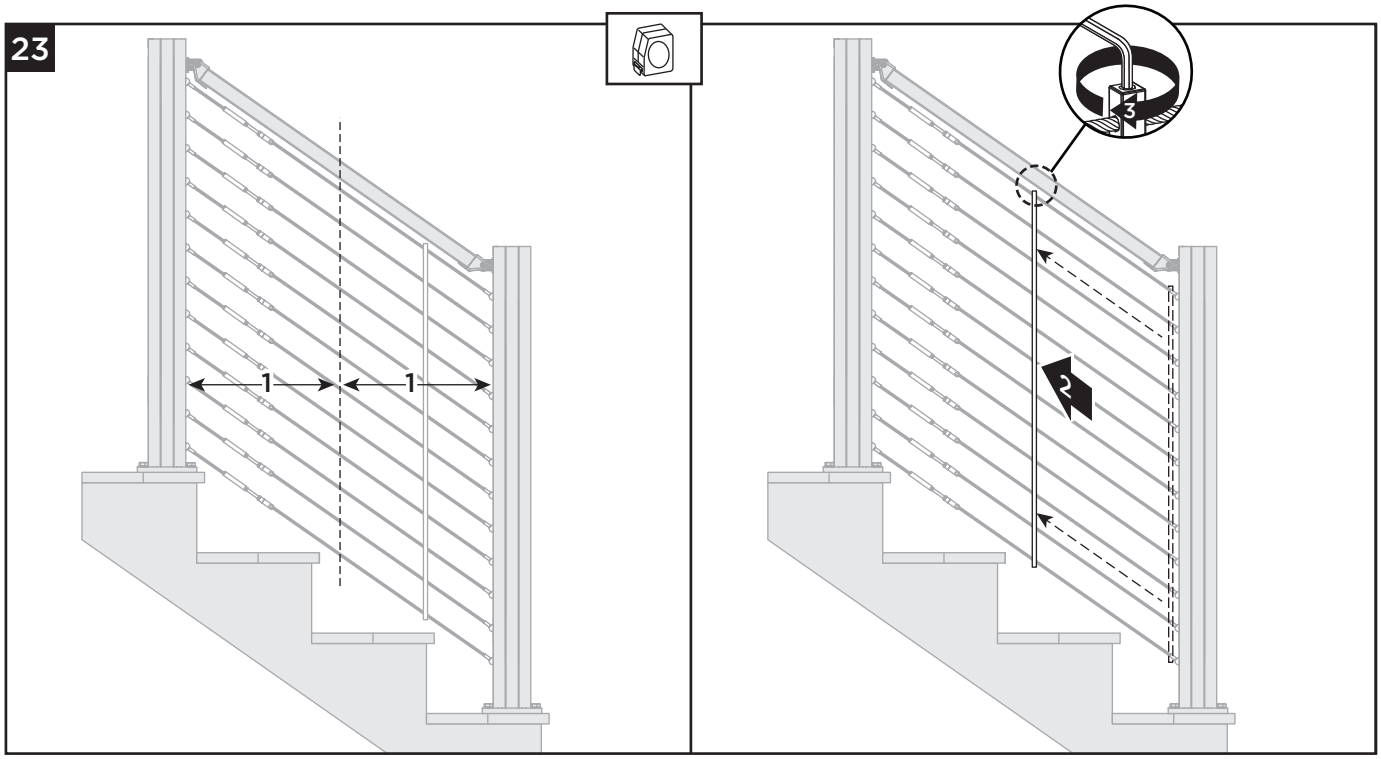
22. Tension each cable to 100 lbs by rotating the turnbuckle-side wrench. Do NOT rotate PTC fitting when tensioning cables. Tension cables from the center outward, following the sequence shown. Repeat sequence as necessary until all cables are fully tensioned.

» **NOTE:** 42″ rail height (with 13 cables) shown here.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

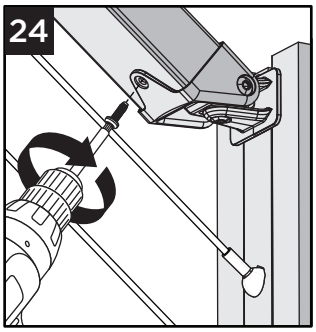
Centering Cable Brace



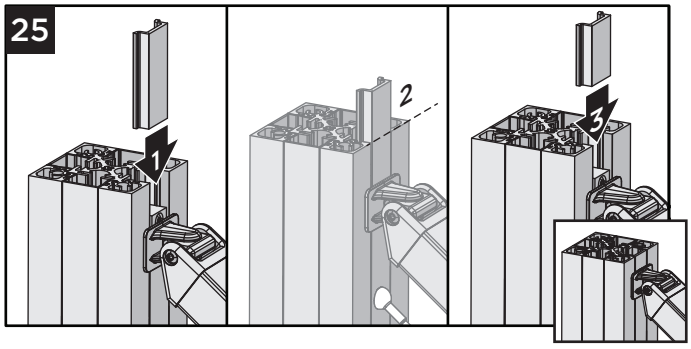
23 Locate the center of the span and slide cable brace to its center position. Ensure that cable brace is straight/ vertical, and then tighten both top and bottom set screws using a 3/32” Allen wrench.

Fastening Top Rail to Bracket at Bottom Post

24. Install #8 x 1/2" screw into compound swivel bracket at bottom post location.



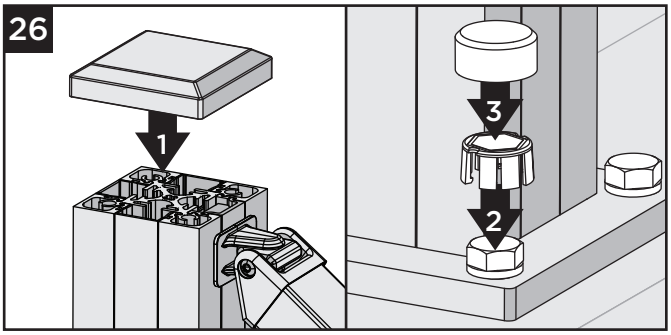
Cutting and Installing Top Inserts



25. Use the leftover cut pieces of the cable infill adapters to fill the open channel above each bracket in the X-Series Anchor Posts by trimming each piece to be flush with the top of the post as shown.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR CABLE RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

Final Installation Steps



26. Install post caps and bolt caps to complete installation. For bolt caps, align hex shadow line on inner cap with bolt head before installing outer cap.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL FRAMELESS GLASS RAIL
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™

NOTES:

» *PLEASE READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE BEGINNING INSTALLATION. USE ALL REQUIRED PARTS WHERE SPECIFIED.*

» **MUST USE 1/2" LAMINATED GLASS. SGP INTERLAYER IS RECOMMENDED.**

» *FOR ORDERING 1/2" LAMINATED GLASS PANELS, GO TO GLASS.TREX.COM. FOR MORE INFORMATION, CALL 1-800-BUY-TREX.*

» *X-SERIES FRAMELESS GLASS RAIL IS ONLY COMPATIBLE WITH X-SERIES ANCHOR POSTS. IT CANNOT BE USED WITH STANDARD SIGNATURE POSTS OR PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS/POST SLEEVES.*

» *X-SERIES FRAMELESS GLASS RAIL IS DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED AT A MAXIMUM CLEAR SPAN OF 6' BETWEEN X-SERIES ANCHOR POSTS.*

» *X-SERIES FRAMELESS GLASS RAIL CANNOT BE USED WITH TRADITIONAL OR COCKTAIL DESIGNS.*

» *NOT RECOMMENDED FOR STAIR APPLICATIONS.*

» *REFER TO TREX CARE AND CLEANING GUIDE FOR DETAILED CLEANING RECOMMENDATIONS.*

» *GLASS IS INTENDED TO BE INSTALLED FROM THE INSIDE OF THE DECK.*

Tools Required:

- Please wear safety glasses during installation.
- Note that tools are NOT included unless otherwise specified.

– Min 18V drill
– Min 18V impact driver (post install only)
– Tape measure
– 9/16" drill bit
– 3/4" socket
– Hammer
– Level
– Glass suction cups (for lifting and placing glass panel)

6' Horizontal Frameless Glass Rail Configuration

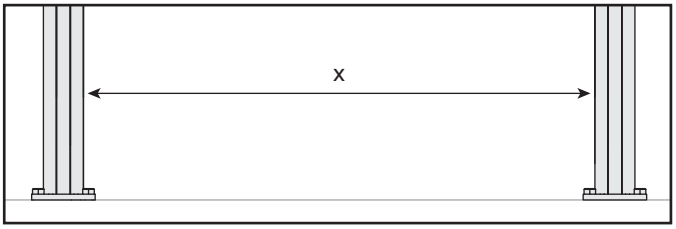
» (2) X-Series Anchor Posts (sold separately)
» (2) Rigid Gaskets
» (2) Flexible Gaskets
» (2) Glass Edge Pads
» (2) Bottom Glass Spacers
» (2) Top Inserts

LAMINATED GLASS PANEL DIMENSIONS

» **For 36" Height:**
1/2" thick x 33" x 73.125"
(12.7 mm x 838 mm x 1857 mm)

» **For 42" Height:**
1/2" thick x 39" x 73.125"
(12.7 mm x 991 mm x 1857 mm)

IMPORTANT NOTE: IF NOT INSTALLING GLASS AT FULL 6' SPAN, MEASURE DISTANCE BETWEEN POSTS AND ADD 1.125".

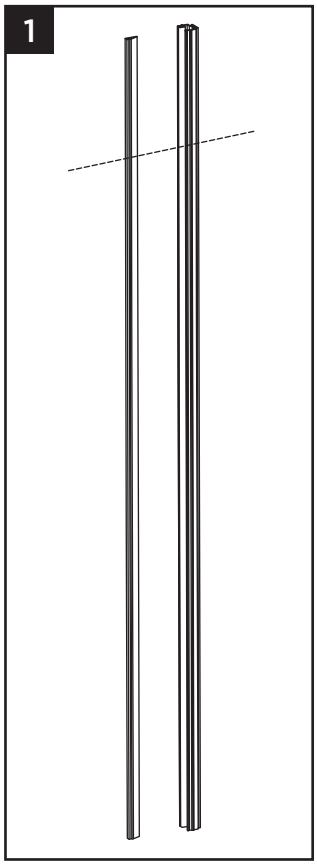


X + 1.125" (28.6 mm)

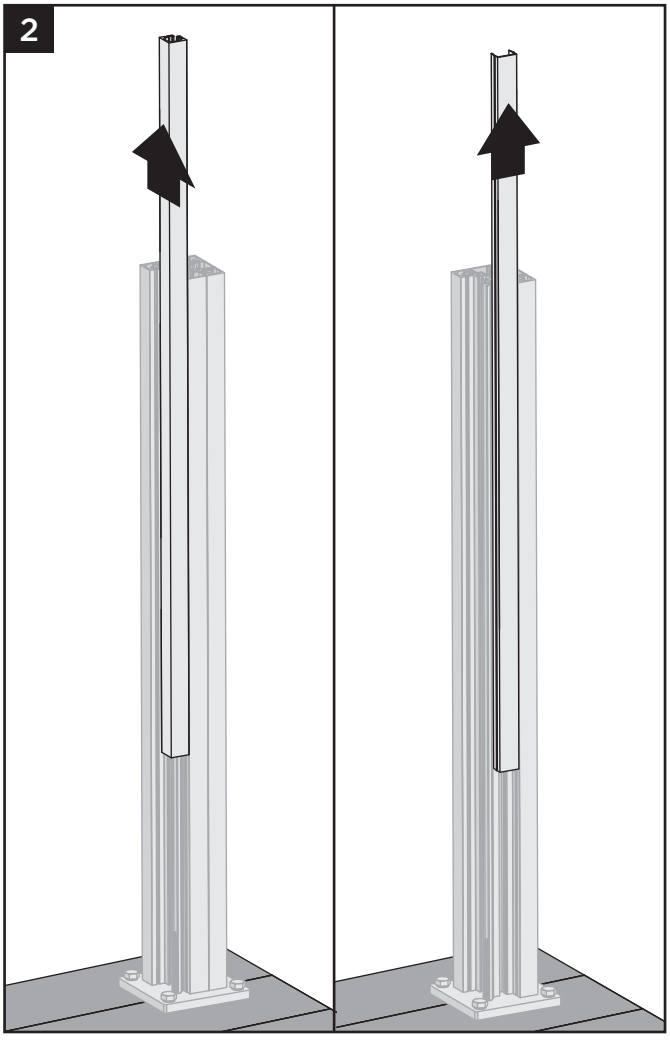
NOTE: Install X-Series Anchor Posts as per instructions provided with these posts. Then proceed to instructions below.

Cutting Rigid and Flexible Gaskets

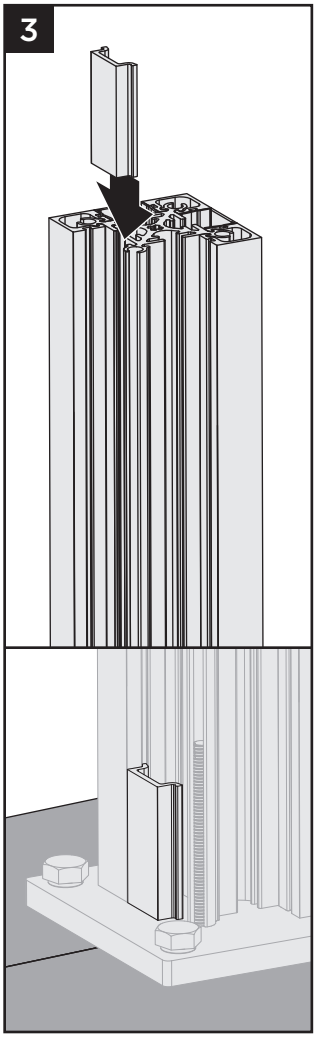
1. Cut rigid and flexible gaskets to the height of the glass being used.

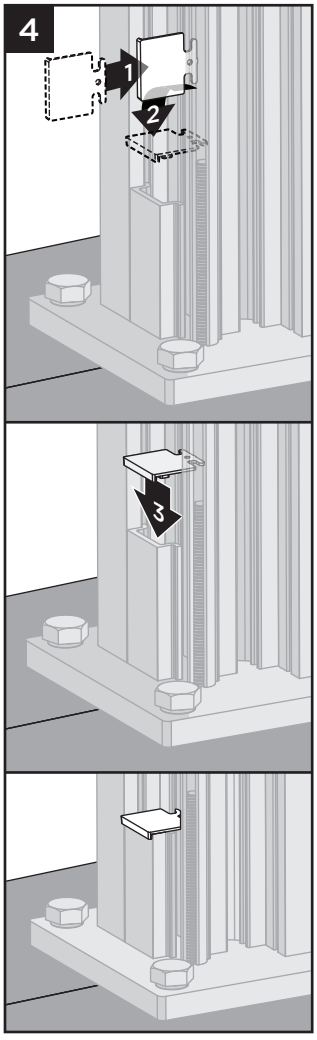


Preparing X-Series Anchor Posts for Glass Installation



2. Temporarily remove front inside corner cover and front side cover from both X-Series Anchor Posts.

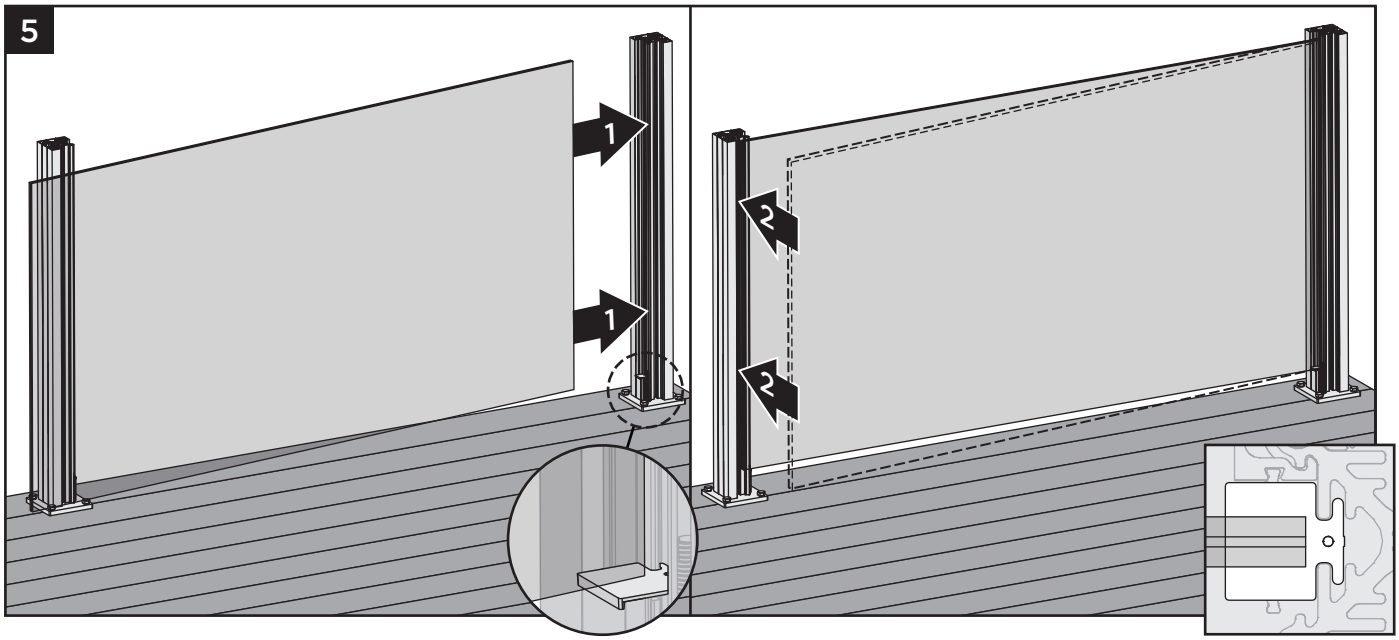




3. At both post locations, slide bottom glass spacer into X-Series Anchor Post as shown so that it sits on top of the post baseplate.
4. At both post locations, insert glass edge pad vertically into X-Series Anchor Post as shown, rotate so that flat side is facing up, and install on top of bottom glass spacer as shown.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

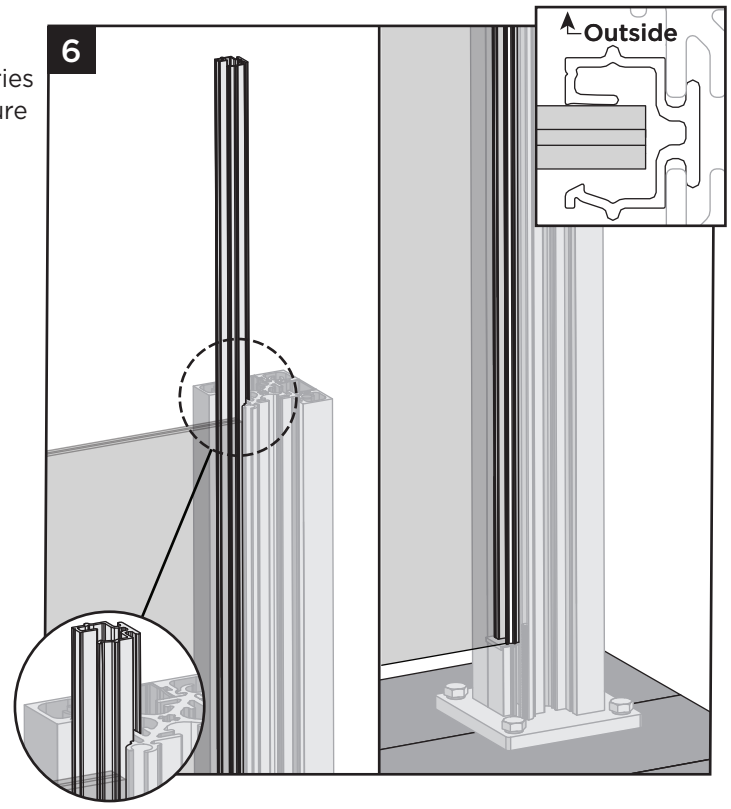
Installing Glass Panel



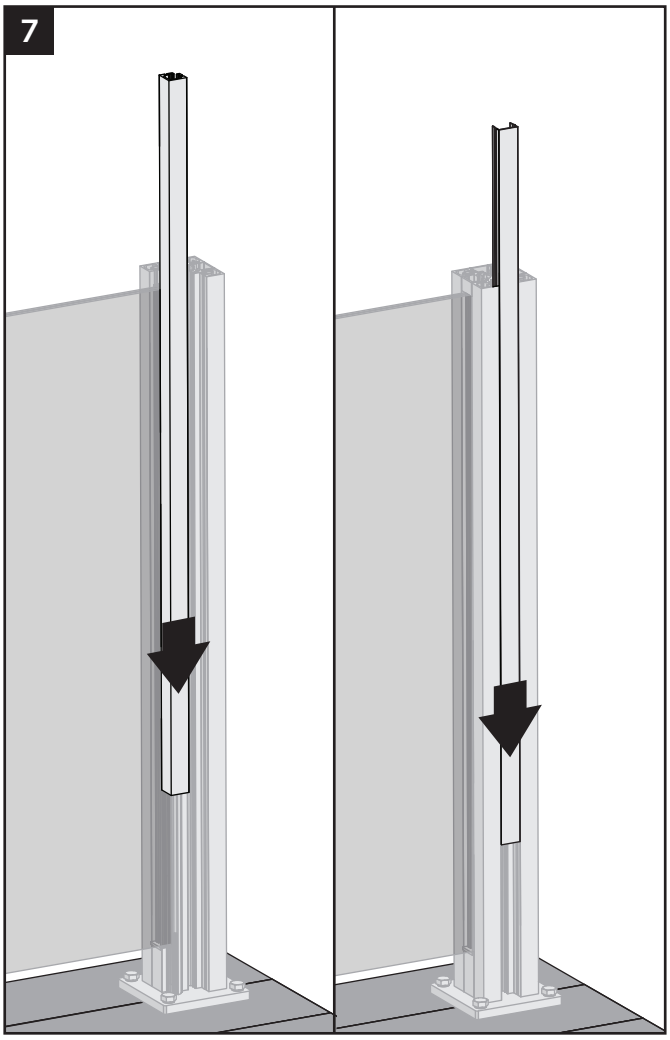
5. Using glass suction cups as per their instructions, pick up glass panel and install at an angle into the open channel of the first X-Series Anchor Post so that the glass rests on the glass edge pad. Then rotate glass panel into the opposite X-Series Anchor Post as shown. **DO NOT LET GO OF THE GLASS!**

   TIP: For aesthetics, if glass safety marking is visible, install glass in such a manner that the location of the safety marking is consistent.

6. At both post locations, slide rigid gasket into X-Series Anchor Post as shown (ensuring the "J-hook" feature of the gasket is facing the **OUTSIDE** of the deck) until the gasket rests on top of the glass edge pad.

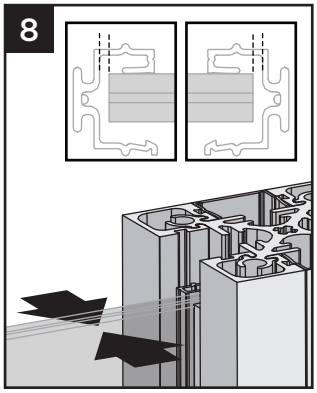


HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL FRAMELESS GLASS RAIL/CONTINUED
TREX SIGNATURE® X-SERIES™



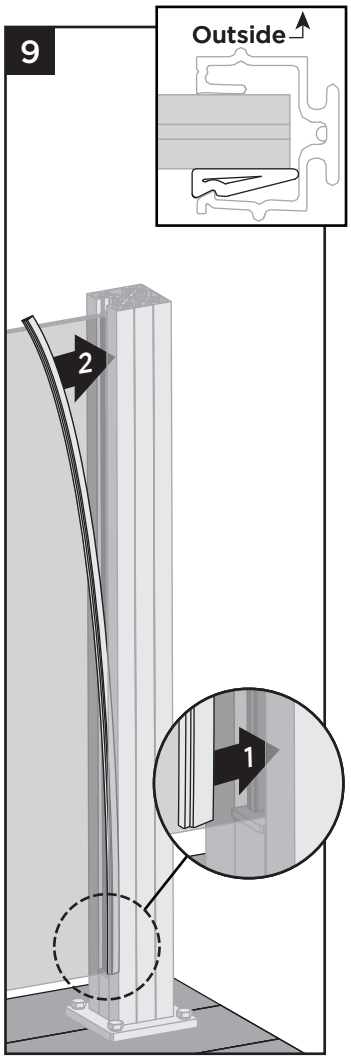
7. Slide corner covers back onto X-Series Anchor Posts, and then slide/snap side covers back onto posts.

8. Adjust glass so it is centered between posts as shown. Glass should be touching J-hook on both rigid gaskets.

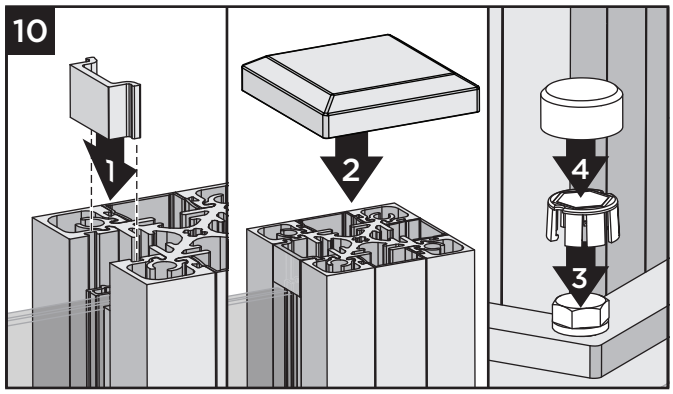


9. Orient flexible gasket as shown so that the flat side of the gasket is facing the glass. Starting at the bottom of the post, press the flexible gasket in between the glass and rigid gasket as shown until fully seated. If gasket extends above the top edge of the glass once installed, trim off excess.

TIP: Use warm soapy water if gasket is difficult to install. Clean off after use.



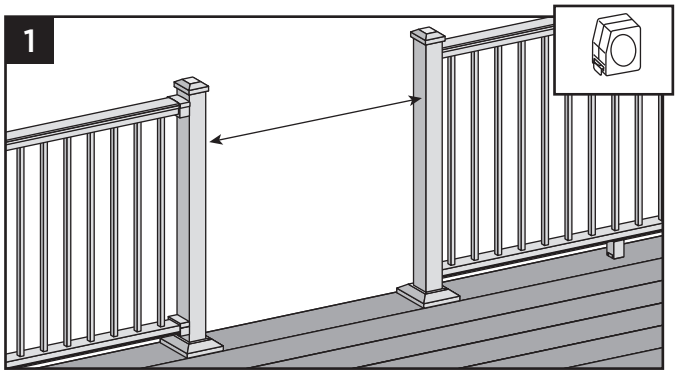
Final Installation Steps



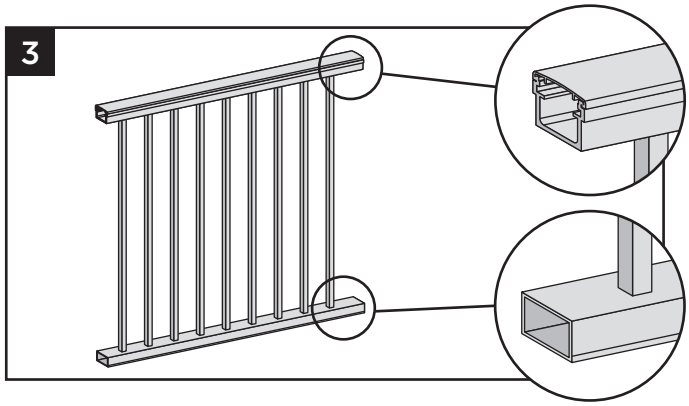
10. Install top inserts, post caps, and bolt caps to complete installation. For bolt caps, align hex shadow line on inner cap with bolt head before installing outer cap.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

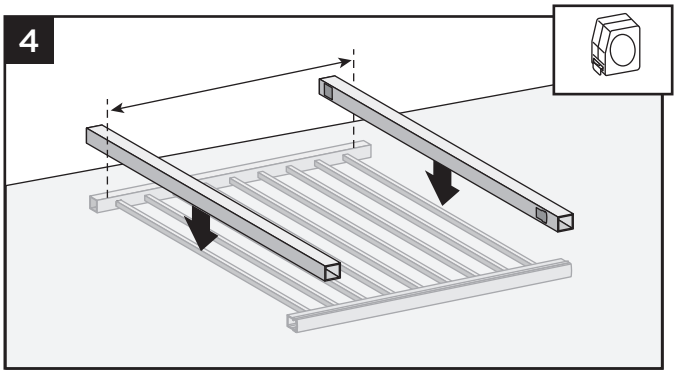
HOW TO INSTALL ALUMINUM GATE



1. Measure opening between posts (gates can be customized to fit nearly any opening up to 48″ [1219 mm] wide).
2. Subtract 1-7/8″ (48 mm) from above measurement. This will allow for proper gapping and location of gate.

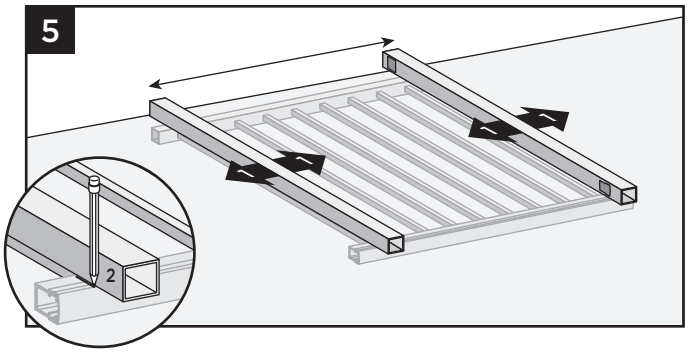


3. Identify top and bottom of panel.



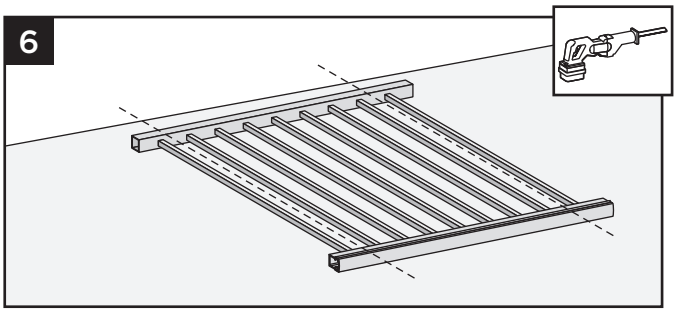
NOTE: The posts only fit in one direction.

4. Lay panel on a flat non-marring surface. Place posts on top of panel. Place posts so that width measurement from Step 2 is to the outside of each post.

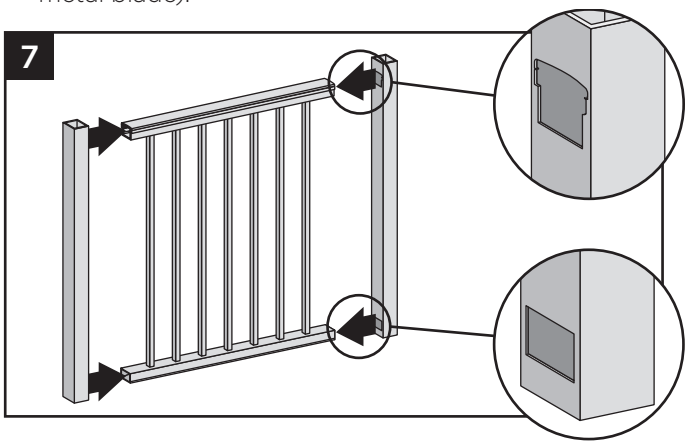


5. Adjust posts so that cut marks do not fall on a baluster. Make sure distance from first baluster to post is the same on both sides. Mark cut locations on panel.

NOTE: *If widths do fall on a baluster, cut baluster flush at top and bottom prior to cutting panel.*



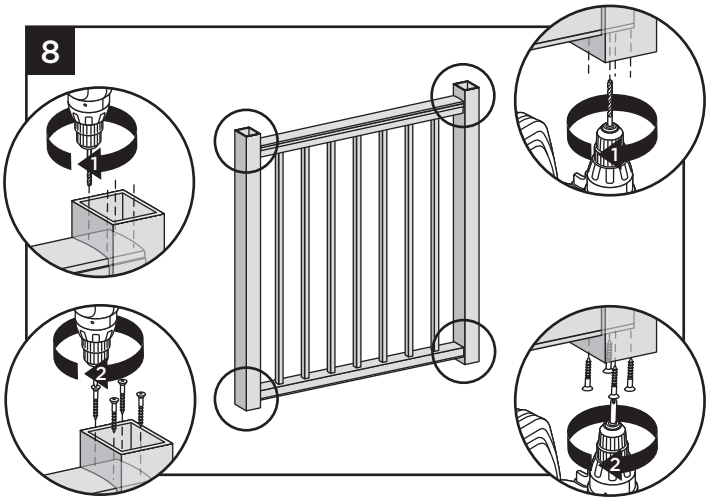
6. Cut panel using a reciprocating saw (equipped with a metal blade).



7. Insert posts into panel.

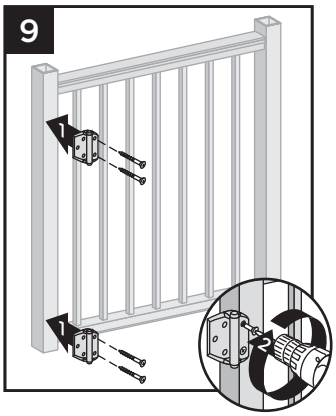
NOTE: *Make sure top and bottom of panel orientation is correct.*

HOW TO INSTALL ALUMINUM GATE/CONTINUED



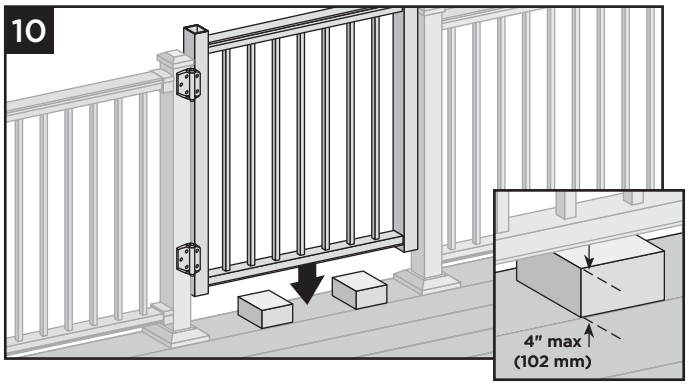
8. Using a 9/64" drill bit, pre-drill at location for attachment of railing to bracket. Secure posts to panel with four #8-18 short self-tapping screws (provided) in each location.
9. Attach shorter side of hinge to the gate.

NOTE: *Refer to instructions included in hardware package. Be sure to use correct fasteners for aluminum. See chart below.*

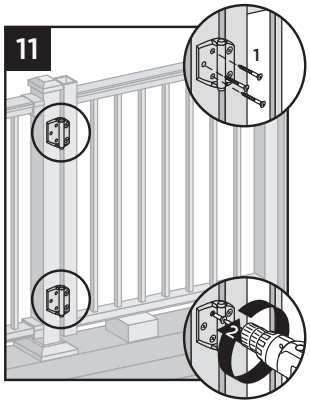


MINIMUM FASTENER SIZE		
SCREWS		
Type	**Length**	**No.**
Wood Screw	2-1/2" (64 mm)	#9
Metal Screw	2" (51 mm)	#8-18

NOTE: *Use of non-Trex hardware is not recommended and could result in serious injury or death.*



10. Place gate in opening on blocks. Sweep between bottom of gate and top of deck cannot exceed 4" (102 mm) per IRC/IBC code regulations. Ensure bottom gate posts will be high enough to clear skirts on bottom of deck posts.
11. Make sure posts are plumb and gate is level. Attach longer side of hinges to post using appropriate hardware for type of post installed. Install hinge cover.

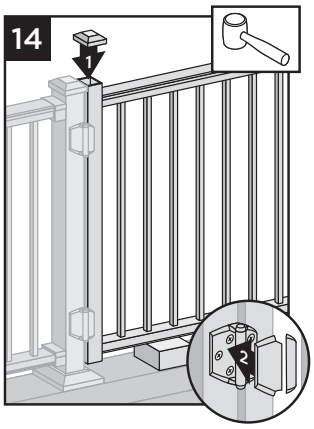


NOTES:

» *Both wood and aluminum screws are included in hardware kit. (Refer to chart under Step 9.)*

» *If using Trex Post Mounts with Post Sleeves, pre-drilling is required using 1/8" (3 mm) drill bit, as you must go through both aluminum sleeve and internal post.*

12. After determining location and height of hinge and hasp, install per instructions included with hardware kit.
13. Ensure proper operation of gate. Hinge tension is adjustable (check hardware kit instructions for more detail).
14. After gate installation, place blocks under gate for support. Use a rubber mallet to install cap onto gate post. Repeat for other gate post cap. Snap all hinge covers into place.



TREX TRANSCEND® HORIZONTAL RAILING

NOTES:

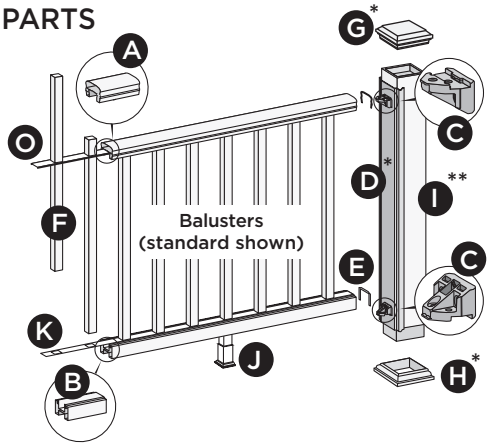
- *AS OF 2024 ALL TREX TRANSCEND RAILING LENGTHS ARE MANUFACTURED AT CLEAR SPAN DIMENSIONS. 72" FOR 6′ CLEAR SPAN AND 96" FOR 8′ CLEAR SPAN. ALL TREX SKUS THAT END IN "FS" ARE FULL SPAN RAILINGS (TOP/BOTTOM RAILS, INFILL KITS, COMPLETE KITS, BALUSTER SPACERS).*
- *ENSURE TO VERIFY THE LENGTH OF YOUR RAILING BEFORE POST INSTALLATION!!*
- *TREX TRANSCEND RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST. NOTCHING OF PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS OR POSTS INSTALLED ON OUTSIDE OF RIM JOIST IS NOT ALLOWED.*
- *Railings are designed to be slightly longer than required to allow for very slight play in post placement – some minimal trimming may be required. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO MEASURE FIRST.*
- *USE STANDARD DRILL WHEN INSTALLING BRACKETS TO POSTS AND BRACKETS TO RAILS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.*
- *Transcend Railings can be curved, however if curving Black or Vintage Lantern colors, different baluster spacers that are curvable must be purchased separately (not included in kits). NOTE: this does not apply for White or Rope Swing Colors. Call 1-800-BUY-TREX for more information.*

Care and Cleaning

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex Transcend railing is important. Occasional washing is recommended. Over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

- Clean railing with standard cleaning vinegar or mild soap and water.
- For more detailed cleaning recommendations, please refer to the Trex Railing Care and Cleaning guide found on www.trex.com.

PARTS



A. Crown or Universal Rail
B. Universal Rail
C. Railing Support Bracket (RSB)
D. TrexExpress™ Railing Assembly Template
   Cardboard template is attached to 4x4 x 39" post sleeve box. All other templates are included inside post sleeves
E. Rail gaskets
F. Balusters
G. Post sleeve cap*
H. Post sleeve skirt*
I. Post sleeve**
   - Transcend 4x4 post sleeve
   - Transcend 6x6 post sleeve

J. Adjustable foot block (quantity of one is required for all railing span lengths)***
K. Baluster spacer

**Item not included in the Transcend railing kits.*

***Both 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) and 6" x 6" (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post.*

**** For commercial applications, spans over 6′ will require two foot blocks. One will be included in kit, a second one will need to be purchased separately.*

BALUSTER OPTIONS

Standard | Round Aluminum

NOTE: Pictorial representations shown may only show one style of railing, while others may also be used. Review detailed instructions to determine what railing styles and combinations can be used.

DETERMINING BALUSTERS NEEDED

Baluster Type	Per 6′ CLEAR SPAN Section	Per 8′ CLEAR SPAN Section	Per 6′ OC Section	Per 8′ OC Section
Standard (Horizontal Application)	14	19	13	18
Round Aluminum (Horizontal Application)	16	21	15	20

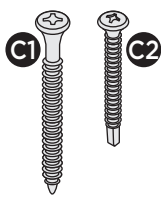
NOTES:

- *Basic installation for balusters is the same for all options. When using round aluminum balusters, use correct baluster spacers.*
- *If installing 42" (1067 mm) railing, use longer post sleeves and measure accordingly to ensure a proper cut. DO NOT CUT TO ACTUAL 42" LENGTH WITHOUT CONFIRMING WHAT STYLE OF RAILING YOU ARE INSTALLING.*
- *Ensure pressure-treated posts are installed at proper heights so when post sleeves are installed , both the PT post and post sleeve are flush at top.*
- *If using post mounts, refer to detailed instructions provided with post mounts for attaching these prior to installation of any railing type.*

Screws Supplied with RSB

C1. Wood screw for attachment of RSB to wood post/composite sleeve

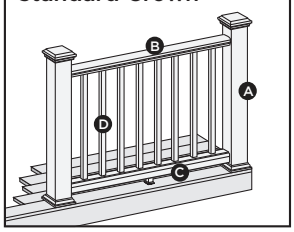
C2. Self-drilling screw for attachment of RSB to rail



TREX TRANSCEND® HORIZONTAL RAILING
RAILING CONFIGURATIONS

Note: See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex post mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.

Standard Crown

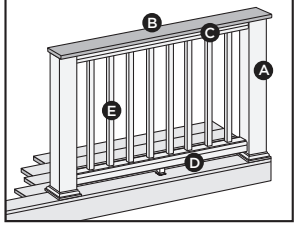


Cutting post sleeves is **NOT** required.

A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, or Joist Mount Post/4x4 or 6x6 Trex post sleeve (INSIDE MOUNT ONLY)
B. Crown rail
C. Universal bottom rail
D. Trex balusters

See page 225 for "How to Install Standard Railing".

Cocktail



Post sleeves **WILL NEED TO BE CUT.**

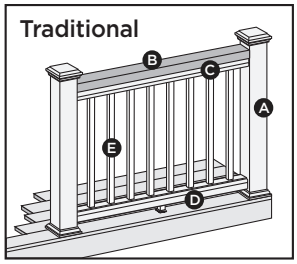
POST SLEEVES WILL NEED TO BE CUT

A. Pressure-treated post with Trex post sleeve
   NOTE: *» Only for use with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve.*
   » Trex post mounts cannot be used with Transcend cocktail design.
B. Deck board top rail (1 x 6 or 2 x 6). ***NOTE:*** *Enhance cannot be used.*
C. Universal top rail
D. Universal bottom rail
E. Trex balusters

See page 227 for "How to Install Cocktail Railing".

NOTE: *Additional pan head screws will need to be purchased - see detailed instructions.*

Traditional



Cutting post sleeves is **NOT** required.

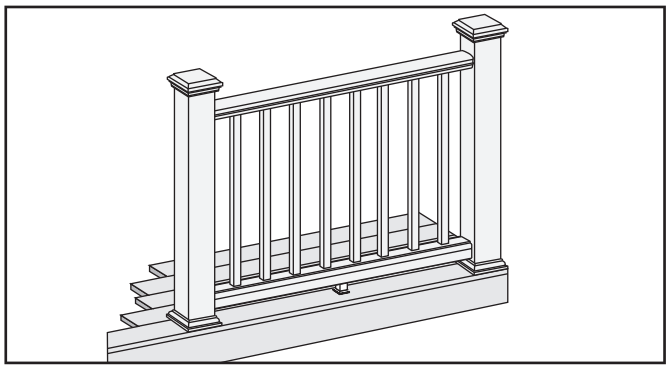
A. Pressure-treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, or Joist mount post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve (INSIDE MOUNT ONLY)
B. 2 x 4 top rail
C. Universal top rail
D. Universal bottom rail
E. Trex balusters

See page 229 for "How to Install Traditional Railing".

NOTE: *Additional pan head screws will need to be purchased - see detailed instructions.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL RAILING
TREX TRANSCEND®



Read all instructions BEFORE installation.

Important: Post sleeves are **NOT** to be cut for this design style.

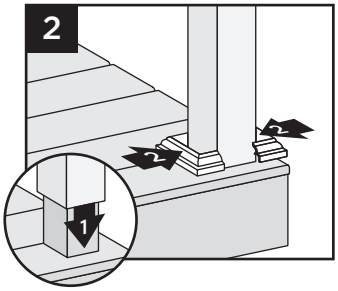
Installing Pressure-Treated Posts

1. **Please refer to local building code requirements prior to attaching pressure treated posts.**

» **Posts are to be installed 6′ (1.83 m) or 8′ (2.44 m) clear span to accommodate appropriate railing length.**

Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves

2. Slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.

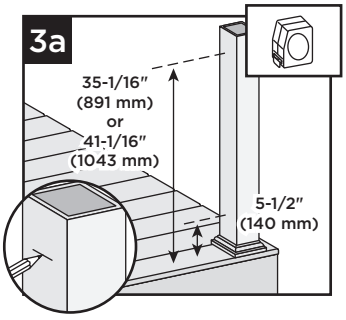


NOTE: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

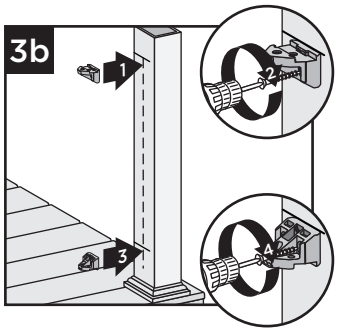
Installing Railing Support Brackets (RSBs)

Option 1: Without TrexExpress railing template:

3a. For 36″, mark 5-1/2″ (140 mm) and 35-1/16″ (891 mm) from deck surface **OR** for 42″ (1067 mm) height, mark 5-1/2″ (140 mm) and 41-1/16″ (1043 mm) from the deck surface.



3b. Place RSBs directly under marks, center on posts, and secure with 2″ (51 mm) wood screws (provided). **Place top RSBs flat side up, bottom RSBs flat side down.**



6 X 6 Post Sleeve Notes:

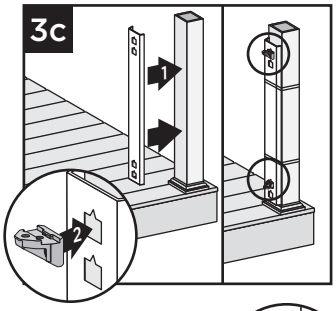
» *6 x 6 post sleeve is designed to fit over 4 x 4 pressure-treated post.*

» *When using a 6 x 6 post sleeve, secure RSB's to post with 2-1/2″ (64mm) wood screws provided with the 6 x 6 post sleeve.*

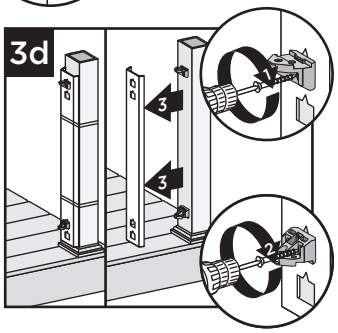
» *If using 6 x 6 post sleeve with surface mount or joist mount post, attach RSB's using #8-15 x 1-3/4″ (4.4cm) 316 stainless steel self-tapping screws (not provided). Pre-drilling IS REQUIRED when attaching brackets to designated posts. Use a 9/64″ (3.6 mm) drill bit.*

Option 2: With TrexExpress railing template:

3c. Secure template on post with tape or rubber band, with bottom of template resting on post skirt. Place RSBs in template. Place top RSBs flat side **UP**, bottom RSBs flat side **DOWN**.

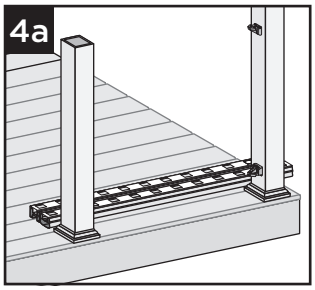


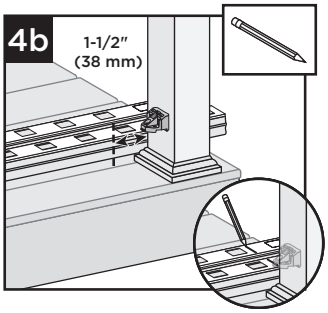
3d. Secure RSBs with 2″ (51 mm) wood screws *(provided in railing kit)* and remove template.



HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND®

Cutting Railings and Baluster Spacers (when required)





4a. Temporarily snap baluster spacers into both bottom and top rail. Position bottom and top rails between posts, ensuring baluster holes are lined up and spaced evenly.

4b. Also allow for a minimum of 1-1/2" (38mm) on each end of rail and baluster spacer for bracket placement AND baluster clearance. Mark rails baluster spacers at intersection of rail and post.

5. Keeping the baluster spacers in the rails, cut to specified length and then gently remove baluster spacers.

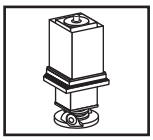
NOTES:

» If using optional rail gaskets, subtract 1/16" (1.6 mm) from each end.

» Cut slow to ensure baluster spacer does not break.

» In some cases, the gasket can be attached before tightening railing to RSB.

» If gaskets are tight, use a small flat head screwdriver to compress the tabs of the gasket if they are stuck outside the rail.

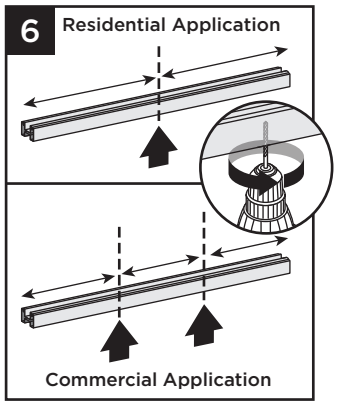


IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING FOOT BLOCK INSTALLATION:

» *One foot block is REQUIRED for all railing spans. For commercial applications, spans over 6′ will require two foot blocks.*

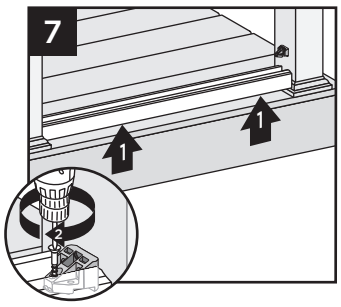
» *Refer to detailed instructions (Trex Transcend® rail instructions) included with foot block prior to installation of railing section as these include other required steps for proper installation.*

Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Rail



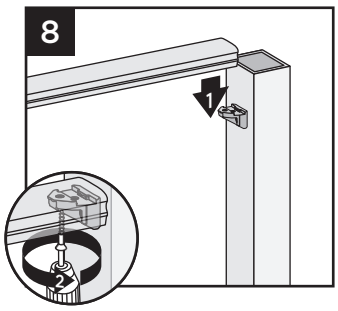
6. Invert the bottom rail. Center and drill a hole using a 3/16" drill bit. This will be location for foot block attachment to be installed last.
For spans over 6′ in commercial applications drill two holes spaced evenly apart for two foot blocks.

Attaching Bottom Rail (Universal Rail)



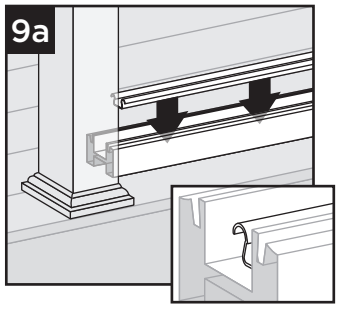
7. Lift bottom rail so RSBs are in the channel and attach with three self-drilling screws provided (use three outer holes; do not use hole in RSB that is closest to post).

Attaching Top Rail – (Crown Rail)



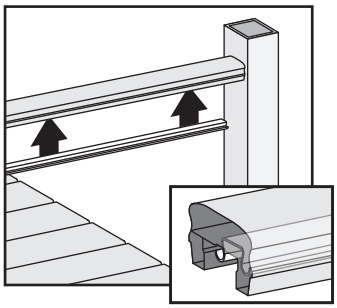
8. Place crown rail on RSBs. Attach top rail to RSB with three self-drilling screws provided (use three outer holes; do not use hole in RSB that is closest to post).

Installing Aluminum Baluster Adaptor Strips (for Aluminum Balusters Only)



9a. After bottom rail is fully installed, place aluminum baluster adaptor strip into channel of bottom rail, ensuring that it's fully seated into the channel. When rail lengths are non-standard, the baluster adaptor strip will need to be cut 2-1/2" (64 mm) shorter than the rail to allow clearance for the RSBs on each end.

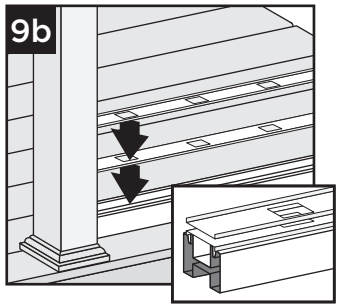
HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND®



After top rail is fully installed, place aluminum baluster adaptor strip into channel of top rail, ensuring that it's fully seated into the channel.
When rail lengths are non-standard, the adaptor strip will need to be cut 2 1/2" (64mm) shorter than the rail to allow clearance for the RBS's on each end.

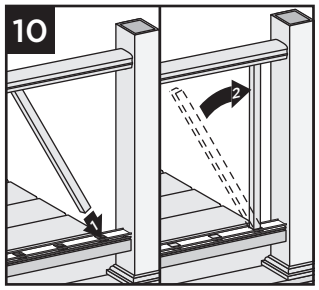
Placing Baluster Spacers

9b. Snap baluster spacer into bottom rail. Place inverted baluster spacer on top of first baluster spacer.



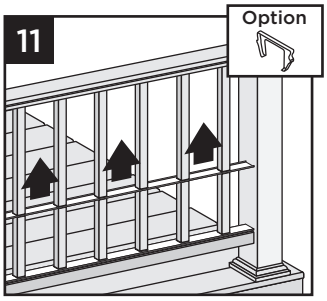
Attaching Balusters

10. Place baluster into both baluster spacers, ensuring that balusters are fully seated into the channel. Working at a slight angle, maneuver balusters into top rail.



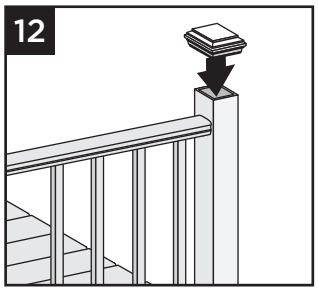
11. Slide baluster spacer up and snap into top rail. Place optional top rail gaskets on each end of rail.

TIP: Use soapy water on balusters when sliding baluster spacer up to avoid potential scratching of balusters.



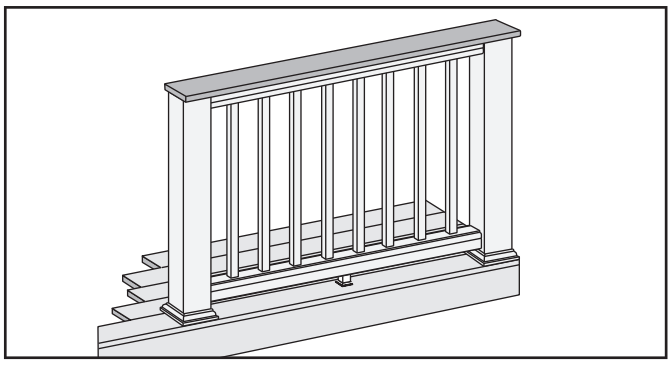
Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Blocks

12. Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs). Attach foot block per foot block instructions.



***NOTE:** Clean up any excess adhesive before it dries.*

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL RAILING
TREX TRANSCEND



IMPORTANT NOTES:

» **ONLY** use with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post and post sleeve. Cutting post and post sleeve **ONLY** applies to the Cocktail style railing.

» *Enhance cannot be used as top board for cocktail rail.*

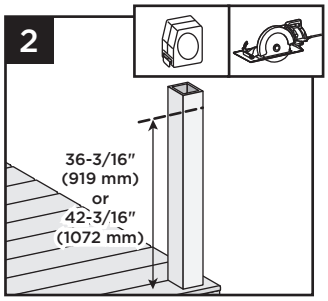
1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts**
See instructions on page 225.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND®

Cutting Post and Post Sleeve

2. Mark and cut post and post sleeve measuring from deck surface:
   - » 36-3/16" (919 mm) for 36" (914 mm) height.
   - » 42-3/16" (1072 mm) for 42" (1067 mm) height.



3. **Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves**
   See instructions on page 225.

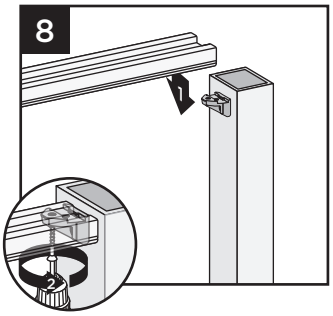
4. **Installing Railing Support Brackets (RSBs)**
   See instructions on page 225.

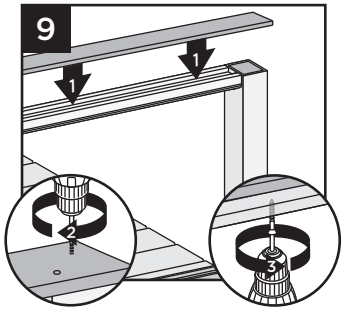
5. **Cutting Railings and Baluster Spacers**
   See instructions on page 226.

6. **Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 226.

7. **Attaching Bottom Rail (Universal Rail)**
   See instructions on page 226.

Attaching Inverted Universal Rail as Top Rail

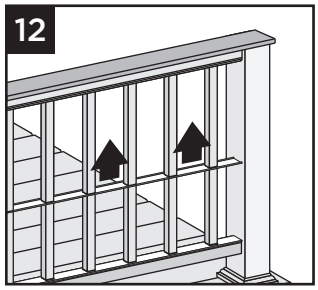


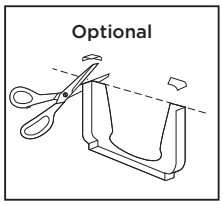


8. Place inverted universal rail onto RSBs. Attach universal rail to RSBs with three self-drilling screws provided (use three outer holes; do not use hole in RSB that is closest to post).
9. Place deck boards over universal rails ***(DO NOT** use Enhance deck boards for top rail)*. Attach boards on each post with Trex-recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per post as well as each board end). Secure boards to universal rails from underside of railing into bottom of decking board, with 1-5/8" (41 mm) pan-head screws *(not provided)* approximately every 16" (406 mm) on center.

10. **Placing Baluster Spacers**
    See instructions on page 227.

11. **Attaching Balusters**
    See instructions on page 227.

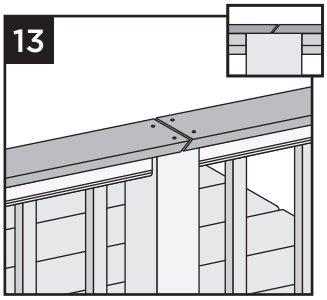




12. Slide baluster spacers up and snap into universal rails.

***NOTE:** If necessary, cut tips off rail gaskets prior to installation.*

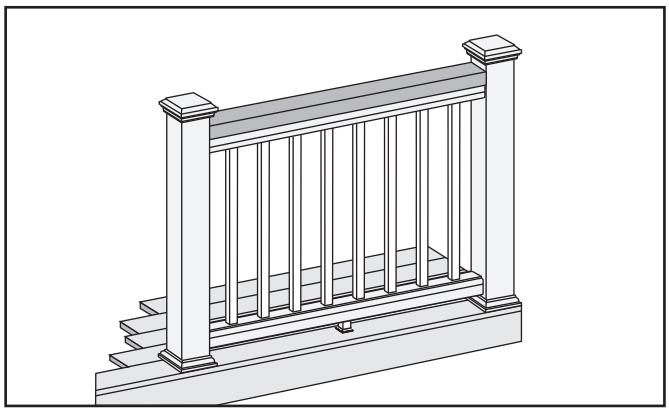
13. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.



14. **Installing Foot Block**
    Attach foot block per detailed instructions.

NOTES:
- » *Leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*
- » *Deck boards can overhang end of last post a maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*

HOW TO INSTALL TRADITIONAL HORIZONTAL RAILING
TREX TRANSCEND®



1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts**
   See instructions on page 225.

2. **Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves**
   See instructions on page 225.

3. **Installing Railing Support Brackets (RSBs)**
   See instructions on page 225.

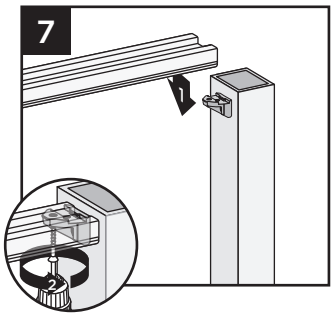
4. **Cutting Railings and Baluster Spacers**
   See instructions on page 226.

5. **Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 226.

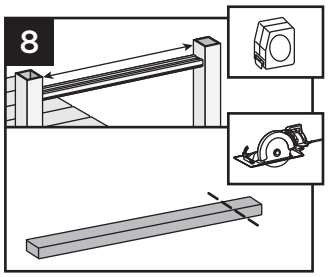
6. **Attaching Bottom Rail (Universal Rail)**
   See instructions on page 226.

Attaching Inverted Universal Rail as Top Rail

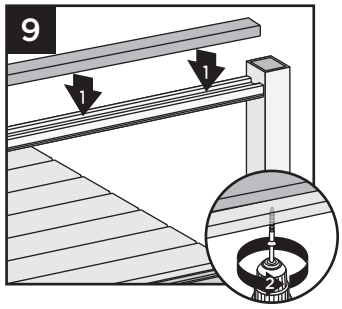
7. Place inverted universal rail onto RSBs. Attach universal rail with three self-drilling screws provided (use three outer holes; do not use hole in RSB that is closest to post).



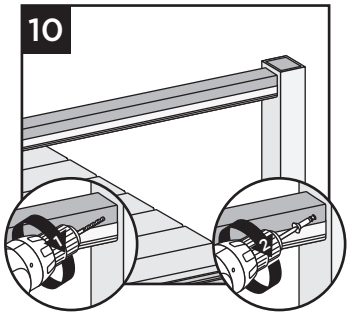
8. Measure between posts and cut 2 x 4 to length.



9. Place 2 x 4 on universal rail. Attach board to rail with 1-5/8" (41 mm) pan-head screws *(not provided)* approximately every 16" (406 mm) on center.

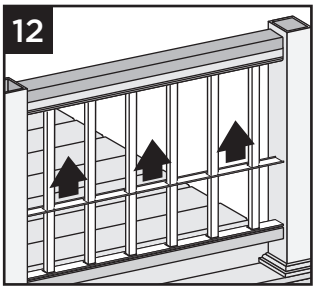


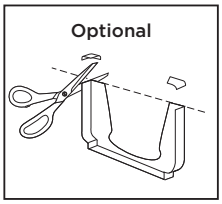
10. Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2" (64 mm) composite decking screw (not provided) at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



11. **Placing Baluster Spacers**
    See instructions on page 227.

12. **Attaching Balusters**
    See instructions on page 227.





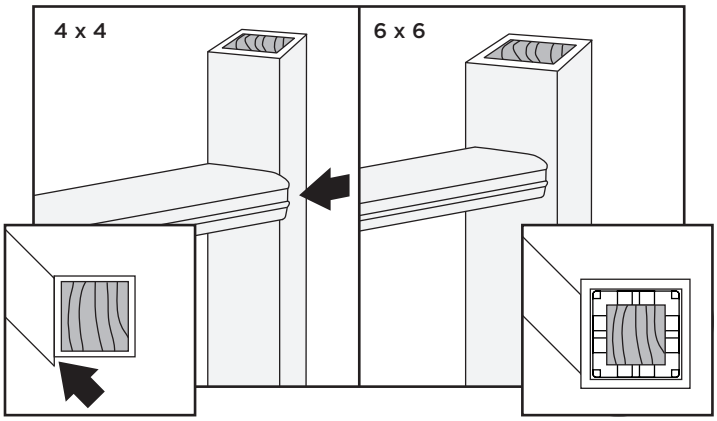
13. Slide baluster spacer up and snap into universal rail.

NOTE: *If necessary, cut tips off rail gaskets prior to installation.*

14. **Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block**
    Attach foot block per detailed instructions.

HOW TO INSTALL ON-AN-ANGLE RAILING
TREX TRANSCEND (CROWN AND UNIVERSAL RAILING)

NOTE: *Trex railing brackets are designed to be installed up to a 45° angle.*



- » **Small angles** (1° - 30°). Both 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) or 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves work well.
- » **Large angles** (31° - 45°). **Use only** 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves when installing on flat side.
- » **45° angles** using 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeves **must** use Transcend Bird's Mouth brackets.
- » Using 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves at 45° angles. Brackets are installed off-center and use 45° Transcend gaskets.
- » Railing gaskets are designed to fit at 0°, 22.5°, and 45° angles. Gaskets are labeled with appropriate angle dimension.

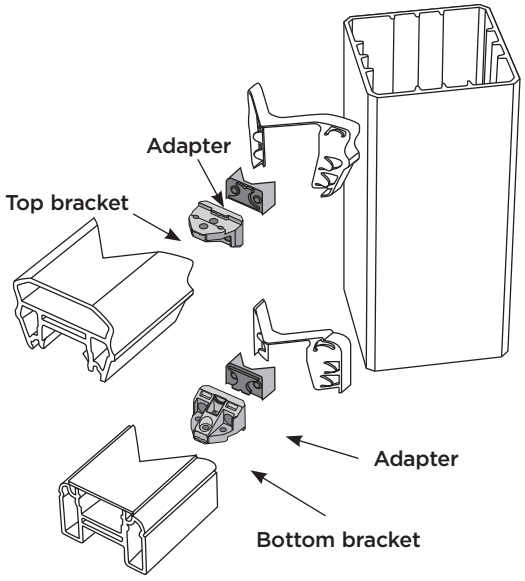
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL CROWN AND UNIVERSAL BIRDSMOUTH HORIZONTAL RAILING
TREX TRANSCEND®

NOTES:
- » **IMPORTANT - 6′ and 8′ rails cannot be installed at full spans when using Birdsmouth applications. Rail posts must be spanned less than 6′or 8′ OC.**
- » *Use with 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve **ONLY.***
- » *Gaskets are only designed for use with Transcend crown and universal railing.*

Read all instructions BEFORE installation.

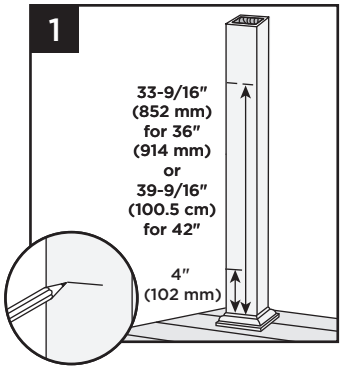
PARTS



Mark Posts

1. Measure and mark 4″ (102 mm) and 33-9/16″ (852 mm) up from top of post skirt. For a 42″(106.7 cm) rail, top mark is 39-9/16″ (100.5 cm) on post.

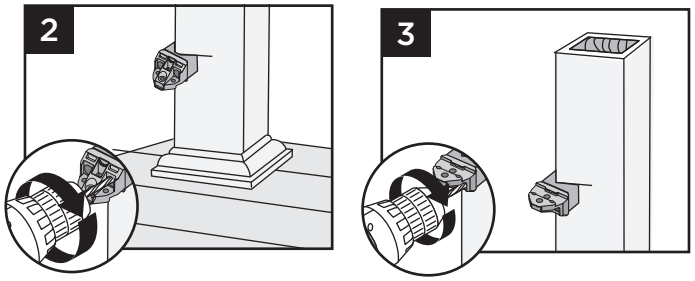
***NOTE:** Without skirt, add 1-1/2″ (38 mm) to measurements.*



Attaching Adapters

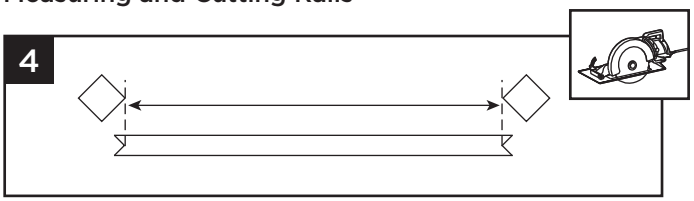
Snap adapters into RSBs.

Pre-drill Bottom and Top RSBs



2. Position RSBs with adapter (flat side DOWN) for lower rail, mark and pre-drill screw holes with 1/8″ (3 mm) drill bit on post.
3. Position RSBs with adapter (flat side UP) for top rail, mark and pre-drill screw holes with 1/8″ (3 mm) drill bit on post.

Measuring and Cutting Rails



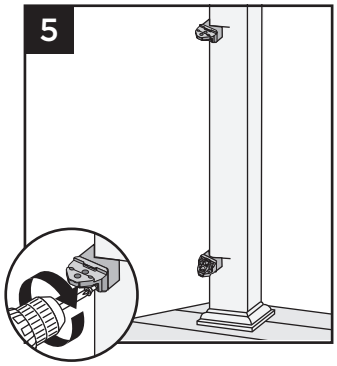
4. Measure from corner-to-corner between posts. Mark 45° cuts on rails with template on assembly tool. Center of “V’s” is the distance from corner-to-corner for posts.

***NOTE:** Subtract 1/16″ (1.6 mm) from each end to accommodate rail gaskets.*

HOW TO INSTALL CROWN AND UNIVERSAL BIRDSMOUTH HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND®

Attaching Top and Bottom RSBs

5. Attach RSBs with adapters to posts with wood screws (provided).



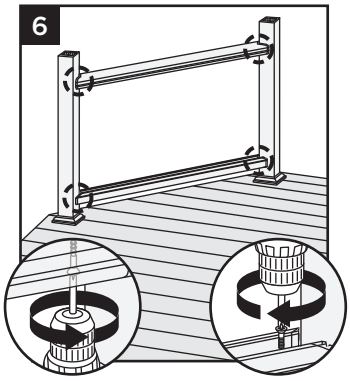
NOTES:

» *Drill at slight inward angle to drill holes on marks.*

» *Lay cut lower rail into position on decking surface between the posts before attaching the lower RSB. There may be some difficulty attaching the lower rail if you fail to do this.*

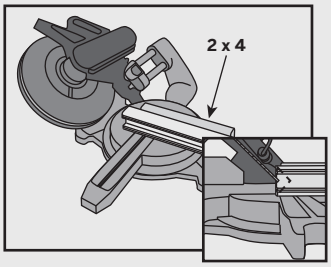
Installing Railings to RSB's

6. Attach with self-tapping screws *(provided)*.



Using Miter Box Saw to Cut Rails

1. Place 2 x 4 on edge behind the rail to allow for complete cut.
2. Angle blade to 45°.
3. Set stop on saw so blade travels half the depth of rails. Several test cuts can be made on scrap material to accurately set the stop.
4. "V" cut both sides of the rail.



NOTE: *Transcend's crown and universal rails will require different stop settings.*

TREX TRANSCEND® STAIR RAILING

IMPORTANT NOTES:

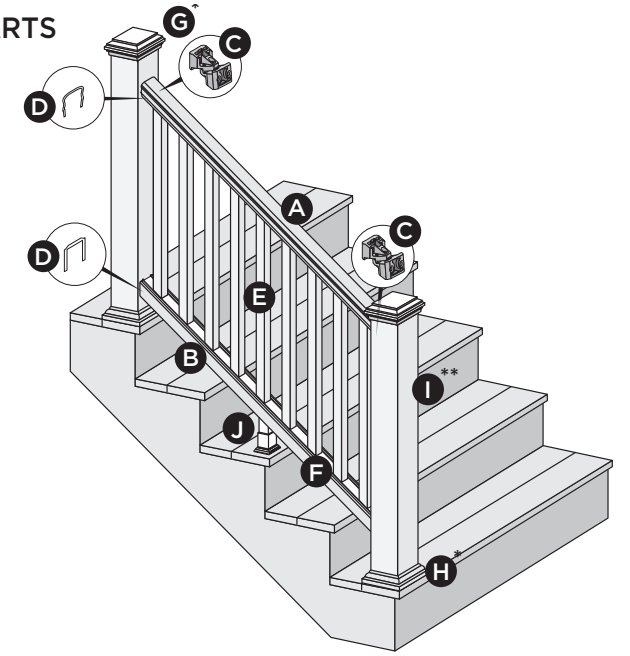
- *TREX TRANSCEND RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST. NOTCHING OF PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS OR POSTS INSTALLED ON OUTSIDE OF RIM JOIST IS NOT ALLOWED.*
- *POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *USE STANDARD DRILL WHEN INSTALLING BRACKETS TO POSTS AND BRACKETS TO RAILS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.*

Care and Cleaning

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex Transcend railing is important. The occasional wash is recommended as over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

- *Clean railing using a standard cleaning vinegar or mild soap and water.*
- *For more detailed cleaning recommendations please refer to the Trex Railing Care and Cleaning guide found on www.trex.com.*

PARTS



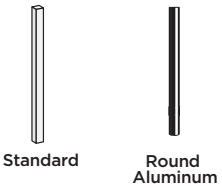
A. Crown or Universal rail
B. Universal rail
C. Railing Support Brackets (RSB)
D. Stair rail gaskets
E. Balusters
F. Stair baluster spacer
G. Post sleeve cap*
H. Post sleeve skirt*
I. Post sleeve – 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) or 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm)**
J. Adjustable foot block (quantity of one is required for all railing span lengths)***

* *Item not included in the Transcend railing kits.*

** *Both 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) and 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post.*

****For commercial applications, spans over 6′ will require two foot blocks. One will be included in kit, a second one will need to be purchased separately.*

BALUSTER OPTIONS



NOTE: *Pictorial representations shown may only show one style of railing, while others may also be used. Review detailed instructions to determine what railing styles and combinations can be used.*

DETERMINING BALUSTERS NEEDED (see note below)

Baluster Type	For 6′ Stair Rail	For 8′ Stair Rail
Standard (Stair Application)	11	15
Round Aluminum (Stair Application)	13	17

AS OF 2024 TREX TRANSCEND STAIR RAILINGS LENGTHS ARE MANUFACTURED AT CLEAR SPAN DIMENSIONS AND THE TABLE ABOVE REFLECTS THE CORRECT AMOUNT OF BALUSTERS FOR THESE APPLICATIONS. ENSURE TO FOLLOW PROPER POST PLACEMENT AS LISTED ABOVE FOR STAIR APPLICATIONS.

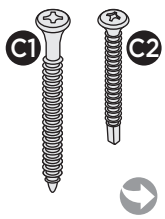
NOTES:

- ***Basic installation for balusters is the same for all options. When using round aluminum balusters, use correct baluster spacers.***
- ***If installing 42″ (1067 mm) railing, use longer post sleeves and measure accordingly to ensure a proper cut. DO NOT CUT TO ACTUAL 42″ LENGTH WITHOUT CONFIRMING WHAT STYLE OF RAILING YOU ARE INSTALLING.***
- ***Ensure pressure-treated posts are installed at proper heights so when post sleeves are installed , both the PT post and post sleeve are flush at top.***
- ***If using post mounts, refer to detailed instructions provided with post mounts for attaching these prior to installation of any railing type.***

Screws Supplied with RSB

C1. Wood screw for attachment of RSB to wood post/composite sleeve

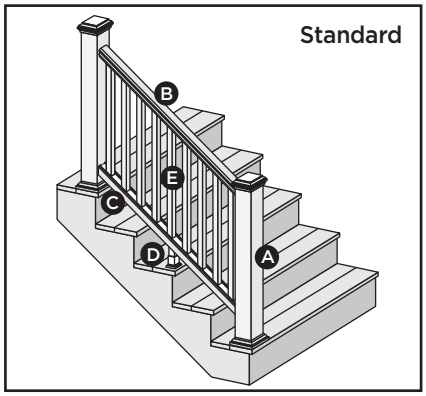
C2. Self-drilling screw for attachment of RSB to rail



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX TRANSCEND
STAIR RAILING CONFIGURATIONS

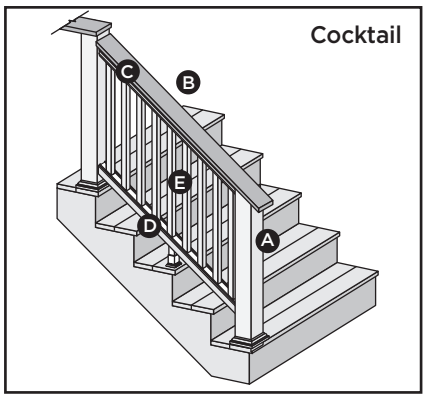
Note: See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex Post Mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.



Cutting post sleeves is **NOT** required.

A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, or Joist Mount Post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve (INSIDE MOUNT ONLY)
B. Crown rail
C. Universal bottom rail
D. Trex balusters (must also use appropriate stair baluster spacer)

See page 235 for "How to Install Standard Stair Railing".

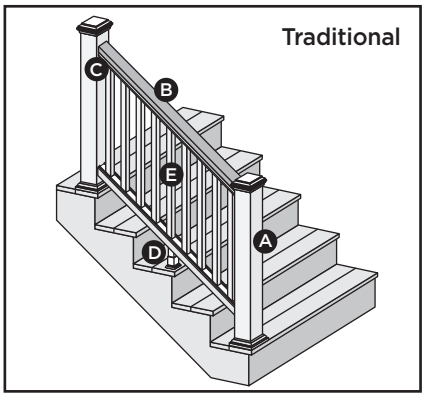


Post sleeves **WILL NEED TO BE CUT.**

POST SLEEVES WILL NEED TO BE CUT

A. Pressure-treated post with Trex post sleeve
   NOTE: *» Only for use with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve.*
   » Trex post mounts cannot be used with Transcend cocktail design.
B. Deck board top rail (1 x 6 or 2 x 6). ***NOTE:*** *Enhance cannot be used.*
C. Universal top rail
D. Universal bottom rail
E. Trex balusters (must also use appropriate stair baluster spacer)

See page 239 for "How to Install Cocktail Stair Railing".



Cutting post sleeves is **NOT** required. Ensure both top and bottom post/post sleeves are tall enough to accommodate top rail and 2 x 4.

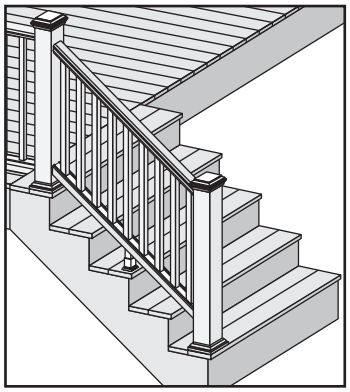
A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, or Joist mount post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve (INSIDE MOUNT ONLY)
B. 2 x 4 top rail
C. Universal top rail
D. Universal bottom rail
E. Trex balusters (must also use appropriate stair baluster spacer)

See page 240 for "How to Install Traditional Stair Railing".

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD STAIR RAILING
TREX TRANSCEND

1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts**



» **PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.**

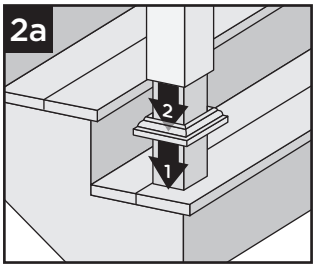
» **PRESSURE TREATED POSTS MUST BE INSTALLED ON INSIDE OF STAIR STRINGER AND AT NOSE OF STAIR TREAD.**

» **POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.**

» In most cases, a post and post sleeve longer than 39″ (991 mm) will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.

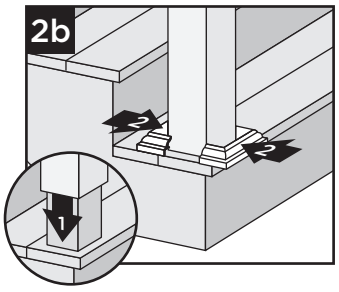
Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves

2a. If using a 1-piece skirt, slide post sleeve skirt over post and down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.

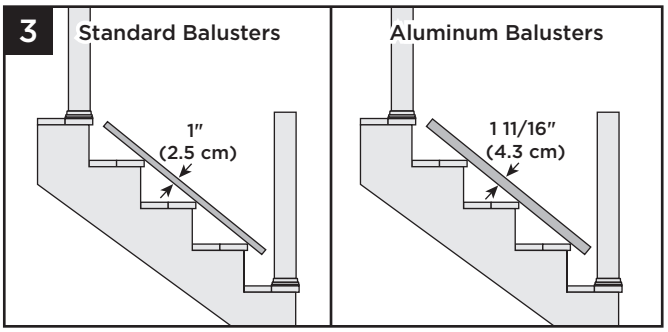


2b. If using a two-piece skirt Slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.

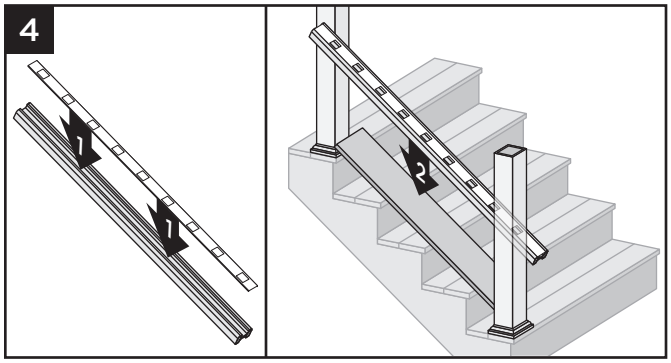
NOTE: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*



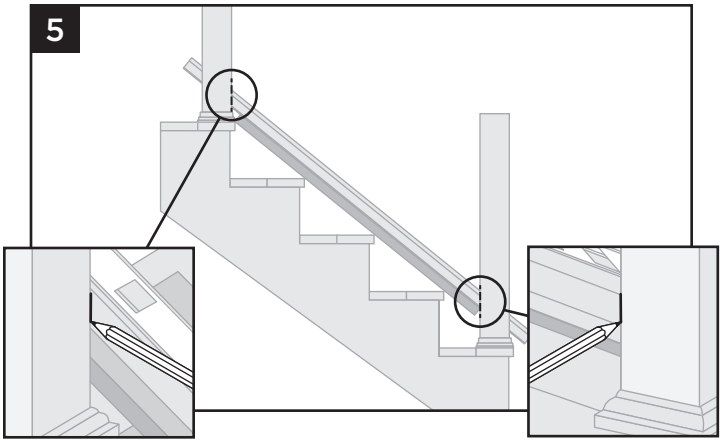
Measuring and Cutting Bottom Stair Rail



3. If using standard balusters, place a 1″ deckboard on the nose of the stair tread. If using aluminum balusters, use a scrap piece of wood measuring at least 1-11/16″ thick, and place on the nose of the stair tread.



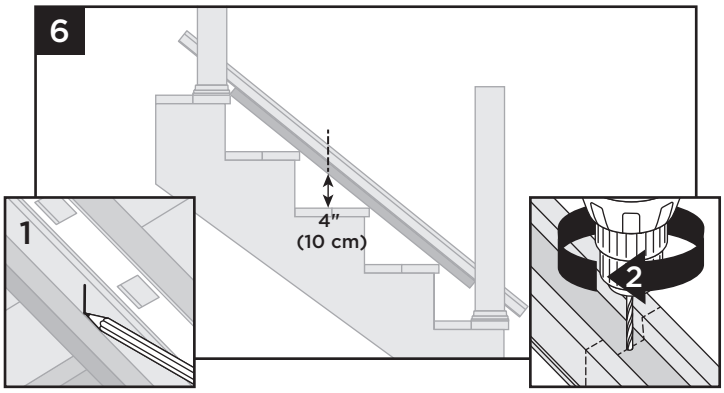
4. Snap baluster spacer into bottom stair rail and lay bottom stair rail on top of the deckboard.



5. Use the lower and upper stair post to set the length of the bottom stair rail. Ensure that baluster spacer holes are spaced evenly between posts. Also allow for a minimum of 1-1/2″ (292 mm) at each end of the stair rail for bracket placement and baluster clearance. Mark rail at post intersections.

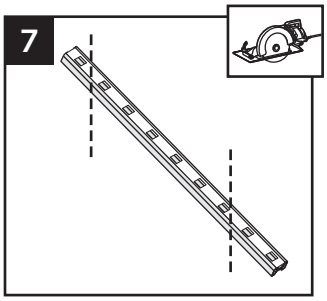
HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND

Marking Location for Foot Block to Bottom Rail



6. Mark approximate location for foot block, allowing a measurement of 4" maximum. Invert the bottom rail, and at marked location drill a hole using a 3/16" drill bit in the center of the channel. Foot block assembly will be installed last. For spans over 6' in commercial applications, mark and drill two locations spaced evenly apart for two foot blocks.

Cutting Bottom Stair Rail and Baluster Spacer



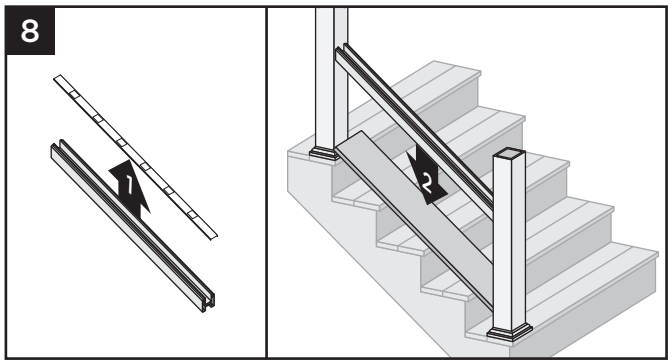
7. Keeping baluster spacer in rail, cut along marks.

NOTES:

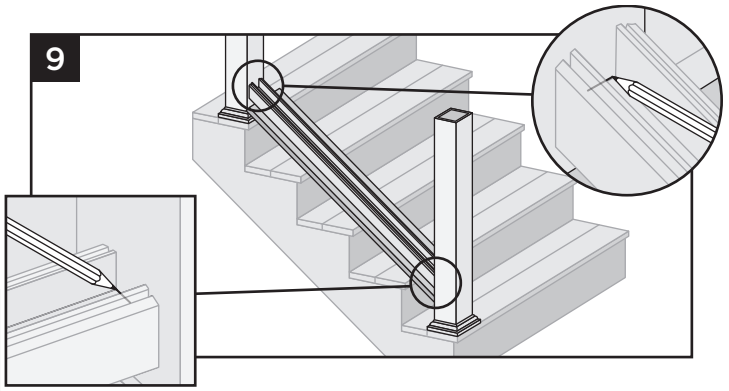
» *If using rail gaskets, subtract 1/16" from each end and cut.*

» *KEEP BALUSTER SPACER IN RAIL WHEN CUTTING. CUT VERY CAREFULLY TO NOT BREAK BALUSTER SPACER.*

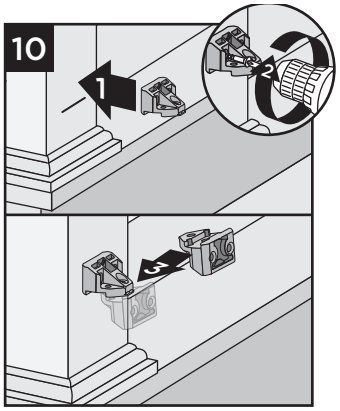
Attaching RSB's for Bottom Stair Rail



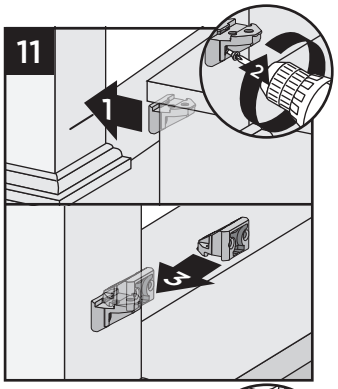
8. Remove baluster spacer from bottom rail and place rail in between posts, keeping rail on deckboard.



9. Mark both posts on inside channel of the bottom stair rail. Remove bottom stair rail.



10. For **UPPER** post – install **RSB FLAT SIDE DOWN, ABOVE MARKED LINE**, using two wood screws provided. Take second RSB, turn upside down and interlock into first RSB.

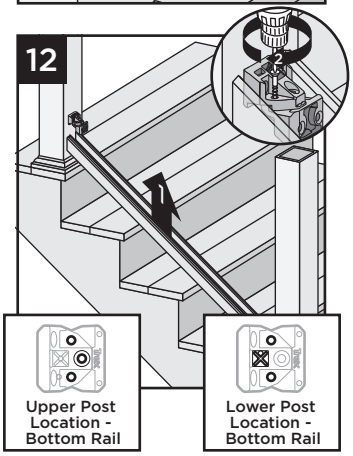


11. For **LOWER** post – install **RSB FLAT SIDE UP, ABOVE MARKED LINE**, using two wood screws provided. Take second RSB, turn upside down and interlock into first RSB.

Attaching Bottom (Universal) Stair Rail

12. Lift bottom stair rail so RSB's are in the channel and attach with 3 self-drilling screws provided. Use the three outer holes in RSB to attach screws.

Tip: Deckboard can be placed underneath bottom stair rail to help hold rail firmly in place while attaching.

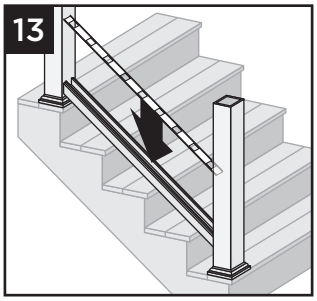


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND

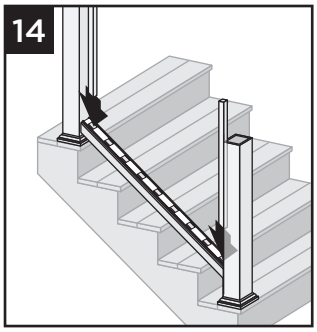
IMPORTANT NOTE IF INSTALLING ALUMINUM BALUSTERS: If necessary cut aluminum baluster adaptor strip at appropriate length to ensure this can be fully seated into the bottom stair rail without interfering with the RSBs.

13. Snap bottom baluster spacer into bottom stair rail.

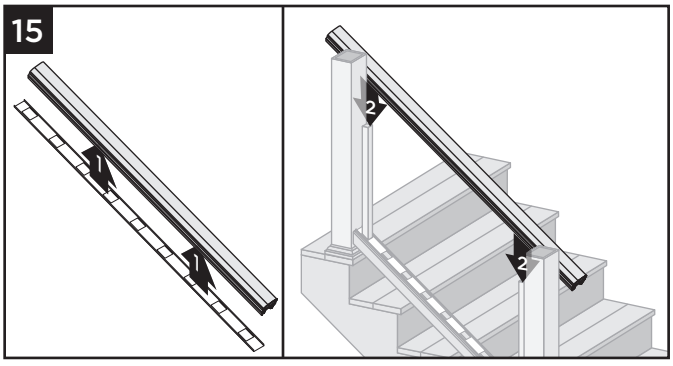


14. Place two balusters into bottom stair rail at each end closest to the post. and ensure these balusters are parallel to posts.

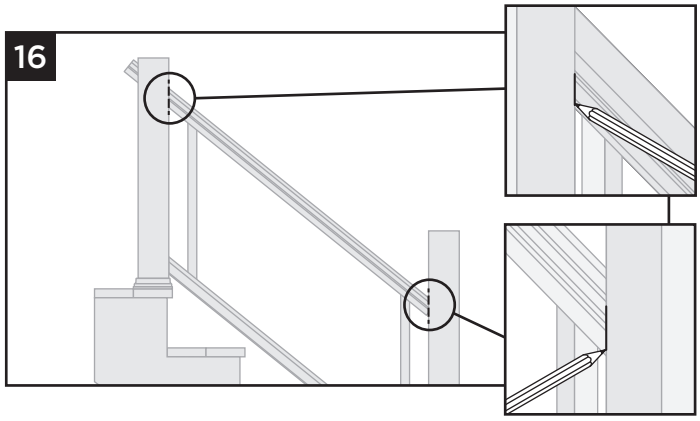
Tip: Use clamps to help hold balusters in place.



Measuring and Cutting Top Stair Rail and Baluster Spacer

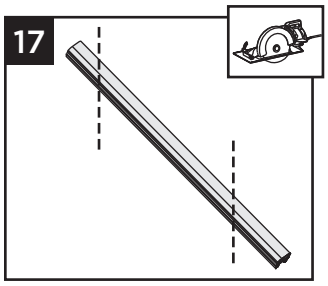


15. Snap baluster spacer into top stair rail. Position top stair rail onto balusters, ensuring balusters are fully seated in rail (position to side of post), and **ENSURE** that balusters are spaced evenly **AND** parallel with post. Also allow for a minimum of 1-1/2" (292 mm) at each end of the stair rail for bracket placement and baluster clearance.



16. Mark rail at post intersection.

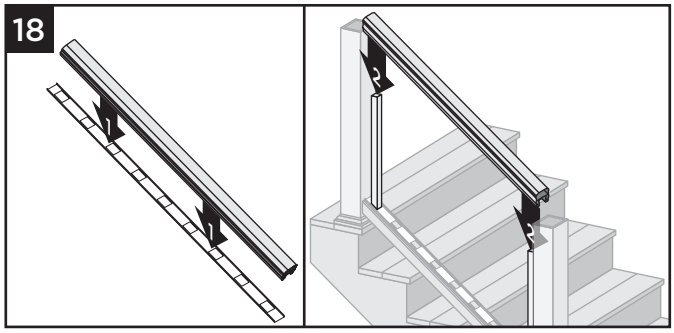
17. Remove top rail, keeping baluster spacer in rail, and cut along marks.



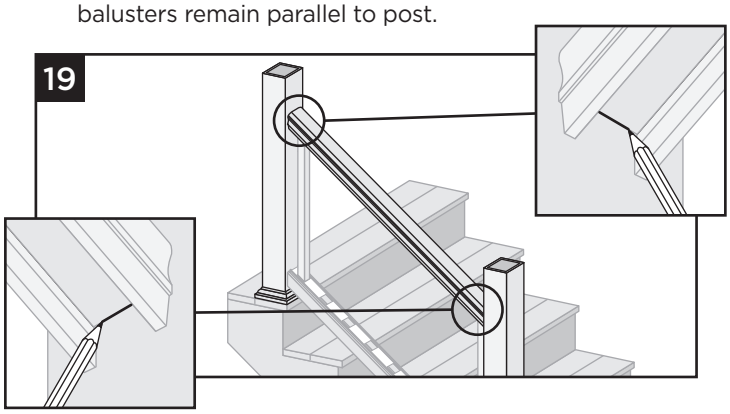
NOTES:

» *If using rail gaskets, subtract 1/16" from each end and cut.*

» *KEEP BALUSTER SPACER IN RAIL WHEN CUTTING. CUT VERY CAREFULLY IN ORDER TO NOT BREAK BALUSTER SPACER.*



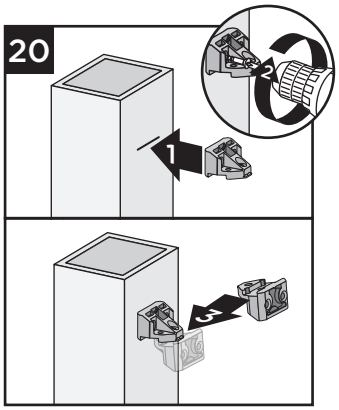
18. Remove baluster spacer from top stair rail and place rail in between posts on top of balusters, **ENSURING** that balusters remain parallel to post.



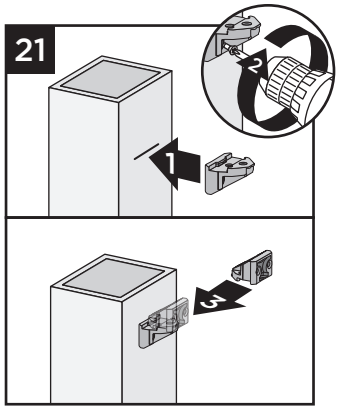
19. Mark both posts on inside channel of the top stair rail. Remove top stair rail.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND

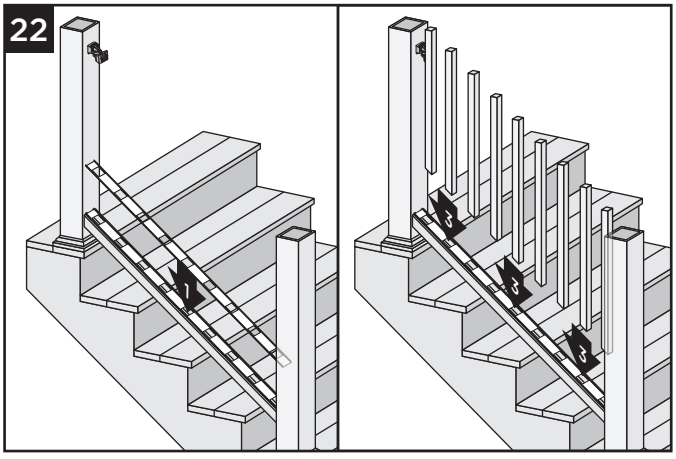
20. For **UPPER** post – install <u>RSB FLAT SIDE DOWN BELOW MARKED LINE</u>, using two wood screws provided. Take second RSB, turn upside down and interlock into first RSB.



21. For **LOWER** post - install <u>RSB FLAT SIDE UP BELOW MARKED LINE</u>, using two wood screws provided. Take second RSB, turn upside down and interlock into first RSB.



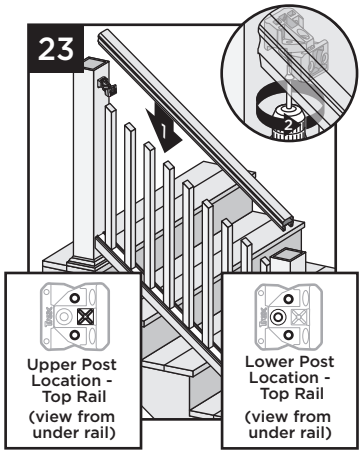
Installing Inverted Top Baluster Spacer and Placing Balusters



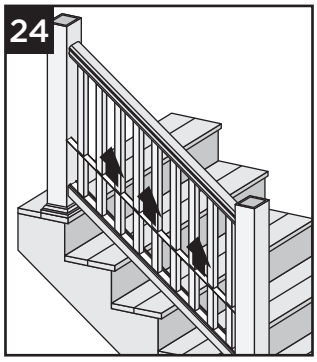
22. Place inverted top baluster spacer on bottom rail rail/ baluster spacer, ensuring that baluster holes line up. Install balusters into bottom stair rail.

Attaching Top Stair Rail

23. Place top stair rail on RSB's (ensuring balusters are also in channel of rail). Attach with 3 self-drilling screws provided. Use the three outer holes in RSB to attach screws.

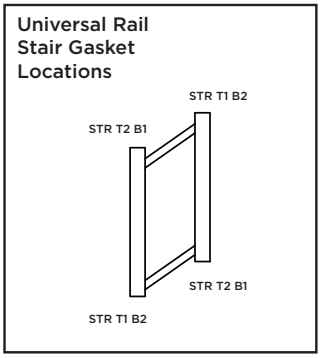


24. Slide baluster spacer up and snap into top rail.



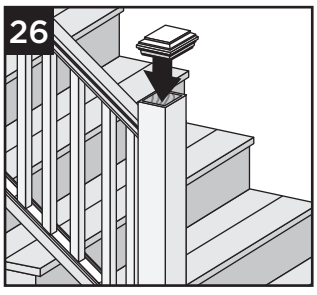
Installing Optional Gaskets

25. Stair rail gaskets are designed to fit at slopes of 32° to 37°. Gaskets are labeled in order to ensure correct location.



Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block

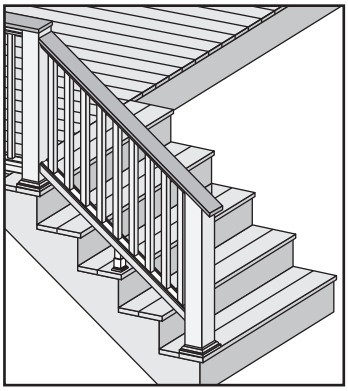
26. Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering corner tabs). Attach foot block per foot block instructions.



NOTE: *Clean-up any excess adhesive before it dries.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL STAIR RAILING
TREX TRANSCEND



IMPORTANT NOTES:

» Only for use with pressure-treated 4 x 4 post (3.5"nominal square) and 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve. Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Trex Transcend stair railing. Cutting post and post sleeve only applies to Cocktail style railing.

» **DO NOT CUT POST/POST SLEEVES UNTIL TOP RAIL IS FULLY INSTALLED. THE DECK BOARD USED IN TRANSCEND STAIR COCKTAIL RAILING WILL NEED TO TERMINATE AT THE TOP OF THE POST AS SHOWN ABOVE. THE DECK BOARD WILL HAVE TO BE INSTALLED INTO THE SIDE OF THE POST IN THESE AREAS USING 2 APPROPRIATE COMPOSITE DECKING SCREWS – PRE-DRILLING IS RECOMMENDED.**

Installing Pressure-treated Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts

1. *See instructions on page 235. See notes on page 7 regarding not cutting post/post sleeve.*

Measuring and Cutting Bottom Stair Rail

2. *See instructions on page 235.*

Marking Location for Foot Block on Bottom Rail

3. *See instructions on page 236.*

Attaching RSB's for Bottom Stair Rail

4. *See instructions on page 236.*

Attaching Bottom (Universal) Stair Rail

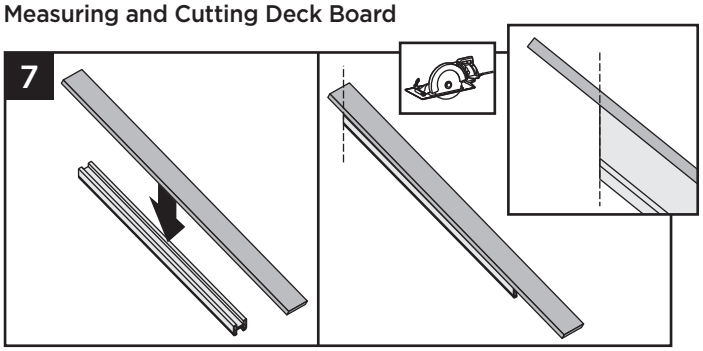
5. *See instructions on page 236.*

IMPORTANT NOTE: *REMEMBER TO INVERT UNIVERSAL TOP RAIL BEFORE MARKING AND CUTTING*

Measuring and cutting Top Stair Rail

6. *See instructions on page 237.*

Measuring and Cutting Deck Board



7. Using the cut top rail as template, cut deck board at upper post location at same angle as the top rail. Leave a generous amount of deck board material at lower post location as this will allow for overhang and can be cut later.

Attaching RSB's for Top Stair Rail

8. *See instructions on page 238.*

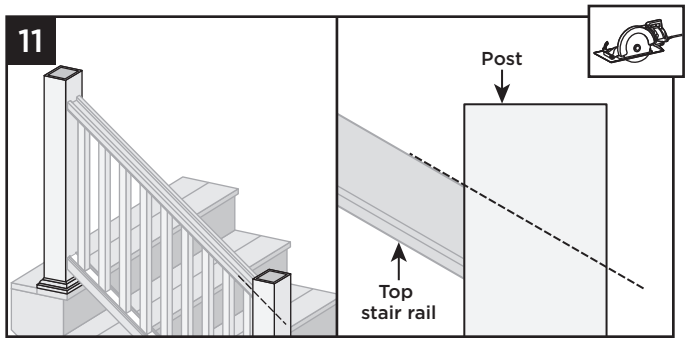
Installing Inverted Top Baluster Spacer and Placing balusters

9. *See instructions on page 238.*
   DO NOT SLIDE TOP BALUSTER SPACER INTO PLACE YET.

Attaching Top Stair Rail

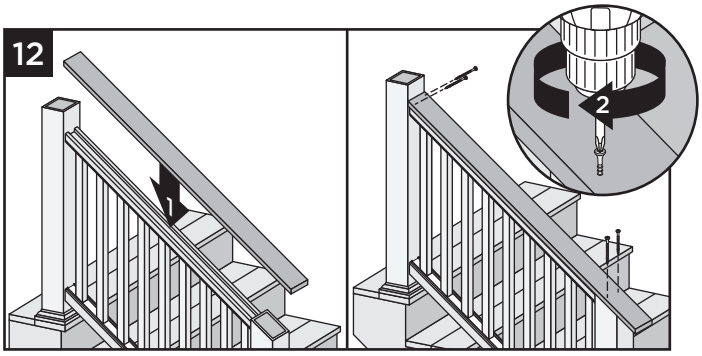
10. *See instructions on page 238.*

Cutting Lower Post/Post Sleeve



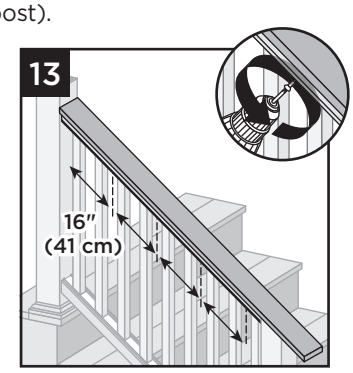
11. Cut post and post sleeves to proper angle so cut is flush with the top rail. Be careful to not cut top rail.

Attaching Deck Board to Top Stair Rail and Securing Balusters



12. Place deck board on top rail and attach board to posts using two Trex recommended composite decking screws (use two screws per each post).

NOTE: *At upper post location pre-drilling is recommended and install screws perpendicular to the post.*



13. Secure board to top (universal) rail from underside of rail into bottom of deck board with 1-5/8" (41 mm) pan-head screws *(not provided)* approximately every 16".

NOTE: *balusters can be shifted out of the way if necessary.*

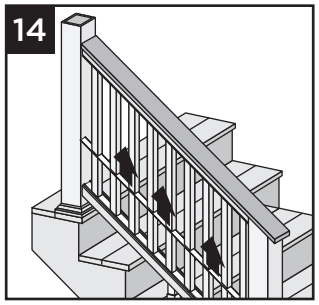
HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL STAIR RAILING CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND

14. Slide baluster spacer up and snap into top rail.

Installing Optional Gaskets

15. *See instructions on page 238.*

NOTE: *Top gaskets may have tobe trimmed to fit properly.*



Installing Foot Block

16. *See instructions on page 238.*

HOW TO INSTALL TRADITIONAL STAIR RAILING
TREX TRANSCEND

Installing Pressure-treated Posts, Post Sleeves, and Skirts

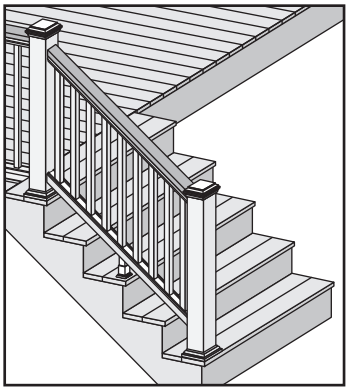
1. *See instructions on page 235.*

Measuring and Cutting Bottom Stair Rail

2. *See instructions on page 235.*

Marking Location for Foot Block on Bottom Rail

3. *See instructions on page 236.*



Attaching RSB's for Bottom Stair Rail

4. *See instructions on page 236.*

Attaching Bottom (Universal) Stair Rail

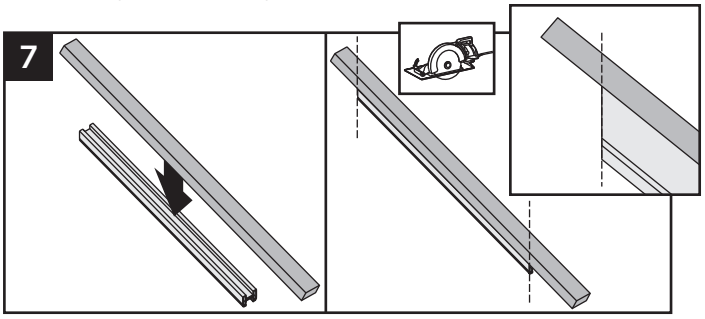
5. *See instructions on page 236.*

IMPORTANT NOTE: *REMEMBER TO INVERT UNIVERSAL TOP RAIL BEFORE MARKING AND CUTTING*

Measuring and cutting Top Stair Rail

6. *See instructions on page 237.*

Measuring and Cutting 2x4



7. Using the cut top rail as template, cut 2x4 at same angle and length of the top rail.

Attaching RSB's for Top Stair Rail

8. *See instructions on page 238.*

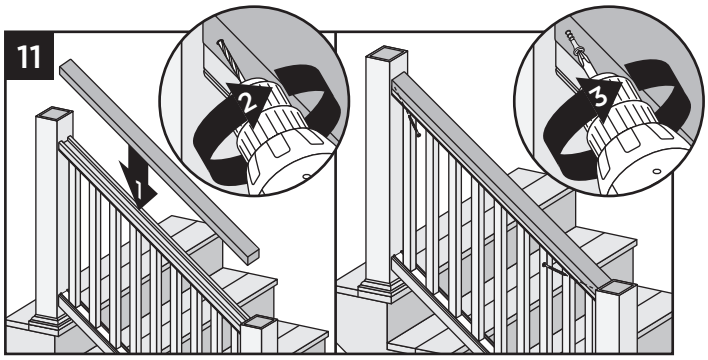
Installing Inverted Top Baluster Spacer and Placing Balusters

9. *See instructions on page 238.*
DO NOT SLIDE TOP BALUSTER INTO PLACE YET.

Attaching Top Stair Rail

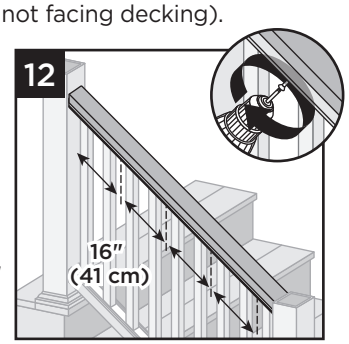
10. *See instructions on page 238.*

Attaching 2x4 to Top Stair Rail and Securing Balusters



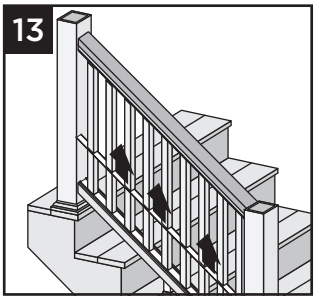
11. Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2" (6.4 cm) composite deck screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of stair rail (side not facing decking).

12. Secure 2x4 to top(universal) rail from underside of rail into bottom of 2x4 with 1-5/8" pan-head screws *(not provided)*approximately every 16".



NOTE: *Balusters can be shifted out of the way if necessary.*

13. Slide baluster spacer up and snap into top rail.



Installing Optional Gaskets

14. *See instructions on page 238.*

NOTE: *top gaskets may have to be trimmed to fit properly.*

Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block

15. *See instructions on page 238.*

TREX SELECT® CLASSIC HORIZONTAL RAILING

NOTES:

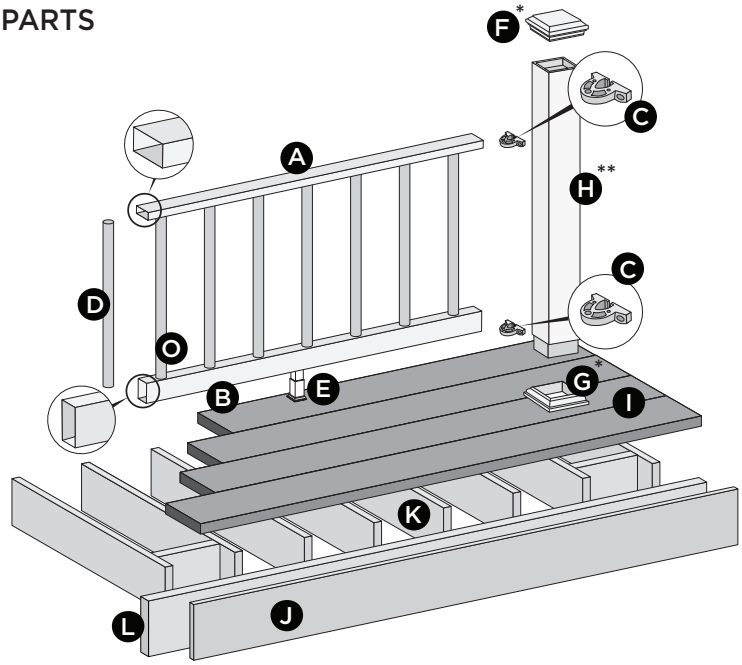
- *TREX SELECT CLASSIC RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST. NOTCHING OF PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS OR POSTS INSTALLED ON OUTSIDE OF RIM JOIST IS NOT ALLOWED.*
- *All Trex Select Classic Railing lengths are manufactured at CLEAR SPAN dimensions (spanning between space of posts): 72" for 6′ clear span and 96" for 8′ clear span. Note that railings are designed to be slightly longer that required to allow for very slight play in post placement – trimming may be required. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO MEASURE FIRST.*
- *IF INSTALLING RAILING OVER 6′, THE TREX ALUMINUM RAIL STIFFENER MUST BE USED TO MEET CODE REQUIREMENTS.*

Care and Cleaning

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex Select railing is important. Occasional washing is recommended. Over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

- **Clean railing with standard cleaning vinegar or mild soap and water.**
- **For more detailed cleaning recommendations, please refer to the Trex Railing Care and Cleaning guide found on www.trex.com.**

PARTS



DETERMINING BALUSTERS NEEDED		
Baluster Type	**Per 6′ Section**	**Per 8′ Section**
Round Aluminum Baluster (Horizontal Application)	15	20

CODE APPROVED APPLICATIONS		
	6′ Railing	**8′ Railing**
< 30" height decking	Yes	Yes
IRC Compliant	Yes	Yes*
IBC Compliant	No	No

**TREX SELECT 8′ ALUMINUM RAIL STIFFENER (sku SELALRAILSTIFFENER) MUST ALSO BE USED. Sold separately.*

A. Select Classic top rail
B. Select Classic bottom rail
C. Brackets
D. Balusters
E. Adjustable foot block
F. Post sleeve cap*
G. Post sleeve skirt*
H. Post sleeve**
   - » Select 4x4 post sleeve
   - » Transcend 4x4 post sleeve
   - » Transcend 6x6 post sleeve

I. Trex Decking
J. Trex Fascia
K. Code-approved Wood Joist - 2 x 8
L. Code-approved Wood Rim Joist - 2 x 8 or Larger

* *Item not included in the Select railing kits.*
** *All post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post.*

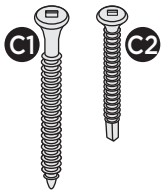
NOTES:

- *If installing 42" (1067 mm) railing, use longer post sleeves and measure accordingly to ensure a proper cut. DO NOT CUT TO ACTUAL 42" LENGTH WITHOUT CONFIRMING WHAT STYLE OF RAILING YOU ARE INSTALLING.*
- *Ensure pressure-treated posts are installed at proper heights so when post sleeves are installed , both the PT post and post sleeve are flush at top.*
- **See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex post mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.*

Screws Supplied with RSB

C1. Wood screw for attachment of RSB to wood post/composite sleeve

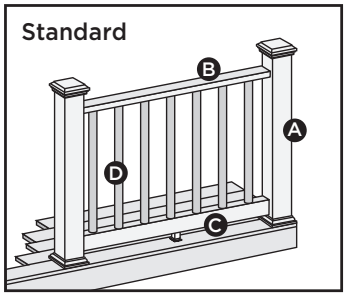
C2. Self-drilling screw for attachment of RSB to rail



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SELECT® CLASSIC HORIZONTAL RAILING
RAILING CONFIGURATIONS

Standard

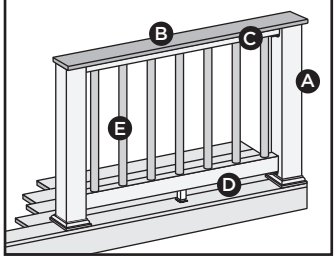


Cutting post sleeves is **NOT** required.

A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, or joist mount post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve (INSIDE MOUNT ONLY).
B. Select top rail
C. Select bottom rail
D. Select balusters

See page 243 for "How to Install Standard Horizontal Railing".

Cocktail



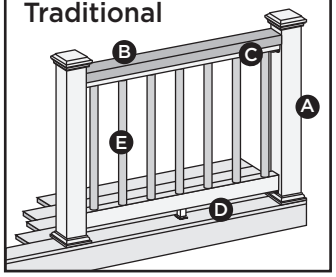
Post sleeves **WILL NEED TO BE CUT**.

A. Pressure-treated post with Trex post sleeve
   - ***NOTE:*** » *Only for use with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve.*
   - » *Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be Select cocktail design.*
B. Deck board top rail.
   - ***NOTES:*** » *Enhance cannot be used*
   - » *Deck boards will need to be cut to fit each rail span*
C. Select top rail
D. Select bottom rail
E. Select balusters

See page 245 for "How to Install Cocktail Horizontal Railing".

POST SLEEVES WILL NEED TO BE CUT

Traditional



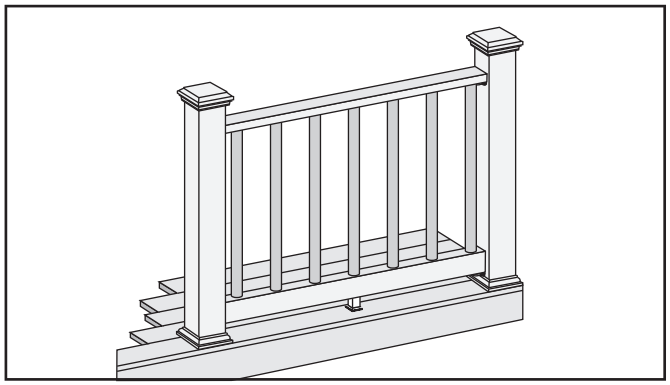
Cutting post sleeves is **NOT** required.

A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, or joist mount post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve (INSIDE MOUNT ONLY).
B. 2 x 4 lateral top rail
C. Select top rail
D. Select bottom rail
E. Select balusters

See page 247 for "How to Install Traditional Horizontal Railing".

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL RAILING
TREX SELECT®



Read all instructions BEFORE installation.

Important: Post sleeves are **NOT** to be cut for this design style.

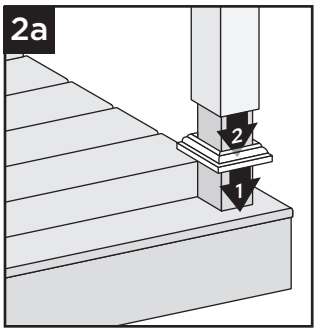
Installing Pressure-Treated Posts

1. ***PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.***

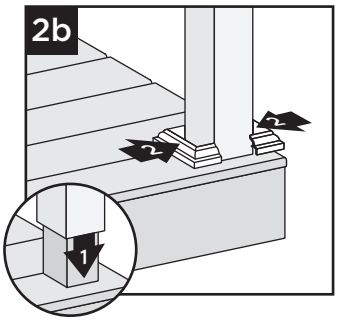
» *Posts are to be installed 6′ or 8′ clear span to accommodate appropriate railing length.* ***NOTE:*** *Smaller spans are allowed.*

Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves

2a. If using a 1-piece skirt, slide post sleeve skirt over post and down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.



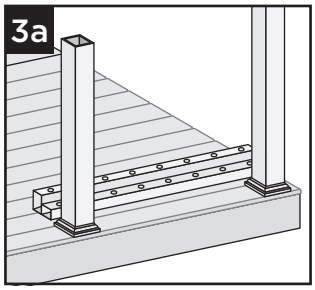
2b. If using a two-piece skirt, slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.



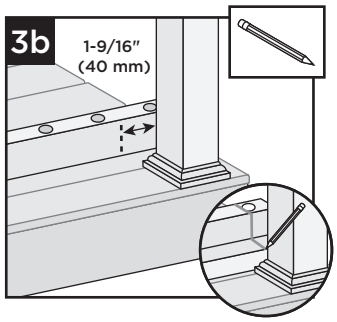
NOTE: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

Cutting Railings

3a. Position bottom and top rails between posts, ensuring baluster holes are lined up and spaced evenly.

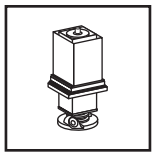


3b. Also allow for a minimum of 1-9/16″ (40 mm) on each end of rail for bracket placement AND baluster clearance. Mark rails at intersection of rail and post.



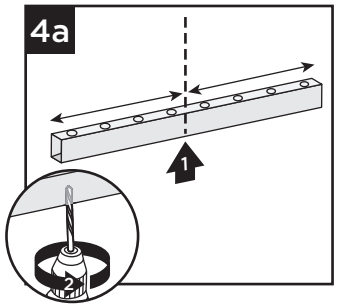
IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING FOOT BLOCK INSTALLATION:

» *Refer to detailed instructions (Trex Select rail instructions) included with foot block prior to installation of railing section as these include other required steps for proper installation.*



Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Rail and Adding Weep Holes

4a. Invert the bottom rail. Center and drill a hole using a 3/16″ (5 mm) drill bit. This will be location for foot block attachment (to be installed last).

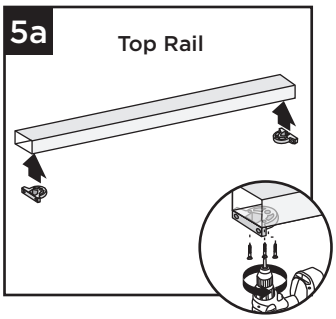


4b. Keeping bottom rail inverted, Use same drill bit, center and drill weep holes through bottom rail at 4 evenly spanned locations to allow for water drainage.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

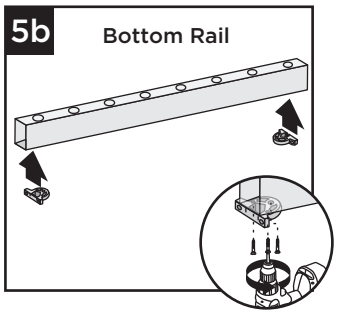
Attaching Brackets to Rails

5a. Position brackets on each end of TOP RAIL on the same side as baluster holes. Attach brackets using three #8-18 x 1" self-drilling screws *(provided)*.



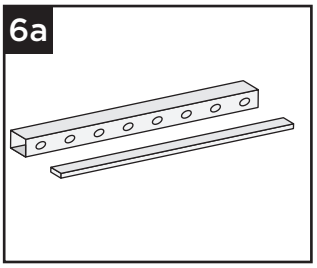
***NOTE:** For ease of bracket attachment place rail against stationary flat vertical surface along with bracket.*

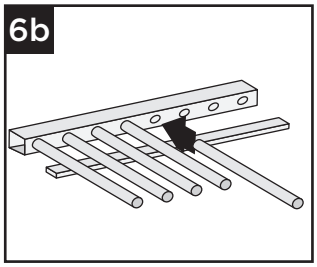
5b. Position brackets on each end of BOTTOM RAIL on the **OPPOSITE SIDE** of the baluster holes. Attach brackets using three #8-18 x 1" self-drilling screws *(provided).*



***NOTE:** For ease of bracket attachment place rail against stationary flat vertical surface along with bracket.*

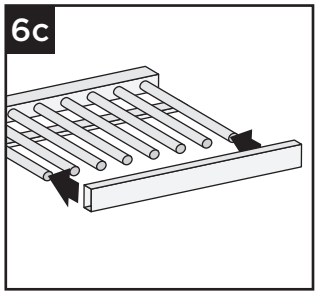
Assembling Railing Section

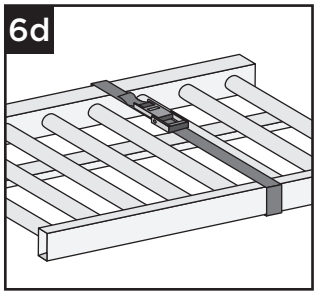




6a. On a clean flat surface, lay bottom railing on its side. Make sure to allow enough room for installation of balusters and top rail. Place a scrap piece of 1" (25 mm) decking board running parallel to bottom rail for support when installing balusters.

6b. Insert balusters into bottom rail slots until balusters are fully seated.

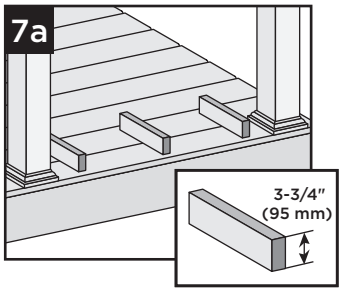


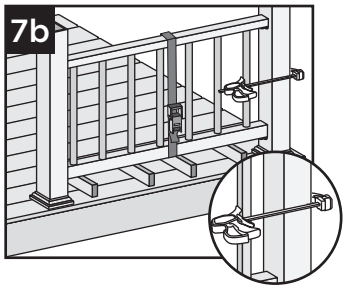


6c. Attach top rail to balusters, feeding each baluster into required slots. Start on one end and work towards the other.

6d. To help temporarily secure the railing section together, place a ratchet strap around the top and bottom rail and tighten until snug. **DO NOT OVERTIGHTEN AS YOU CAN BEND THE RAILING.**

Installing Railing Section to Posts





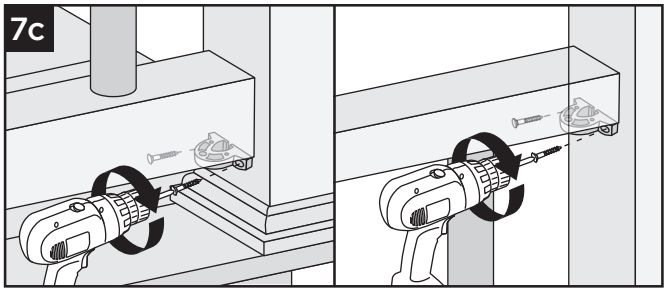
7a. Using scrap material (i.e. 2 x 4s, decking boards, etc.) cut at least three support blocks at 3-3/4" (95 mm) in height. Place one each on decking surface beside each post and one near center of span.

7b. Lift secured railing section up, and **CENTER** this section in between the spanned posts on pre-positioned support blocks.

NOTE:** To help stabilize railing section use a quick-grip clamp (or other type of clamp) and clamp the first baluster to post sleeve. **DO NOT OVERTIGHTEN CLAMP.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

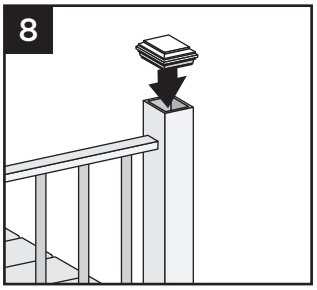
HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®



7c. Install both bottom and top brackets on each side to post using two #9-16 x 2″ wood screws *(provided)*. If using a 6x6 post sleeve use two #9-16 x 2 1/2″ screws *(not provided)*

NOTE: *screws go in at slight angle.*

IMPORTANT NOTE: SET DRILL TO LOW SPEED AND LOW CLUTCH SETTING WHEN INSTALLING THESE SCREWS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.



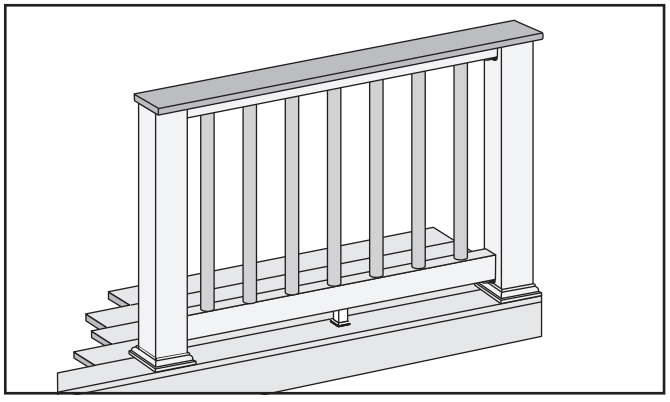
Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block

8. Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs). Attach Foot Block per Foot Block instructions.

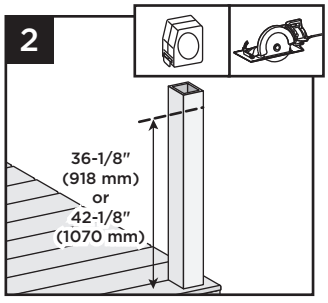
NOTE: *Clean up any excess adhesive before it dries.*

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL HORIZONTAL RAILING
TREX SELECT®

Important: ONLY use for use with pressure-treated 4x4 post (3.5″ nominal square) and 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve. Trex Post Mounts or Joist Mount Posts cannot be used with Select Cocktail railing.



1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves**
   See instructions on page 243.



Cutting Post and Post Sleeve

2. Mark and cut post and post sleeve measuring from deck surface:
   - » 36-1/8″ (918 mm) for 36″ (914 mm) height.
   - » 42-1/8″ (1070 mm) for 42″ (1067 mm) height.

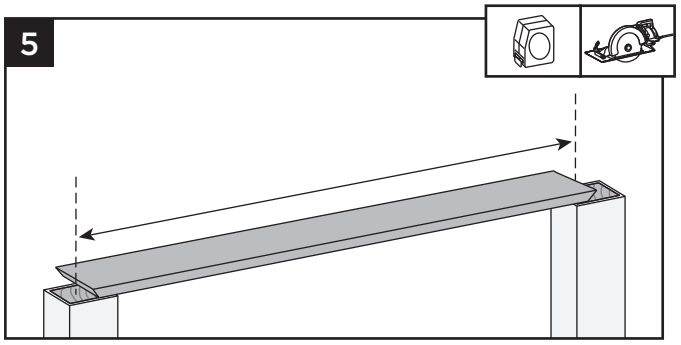
3. **Cutting Railings**
   See instructions on page 243.

4. **Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Railing**
   See instructions on page 243

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

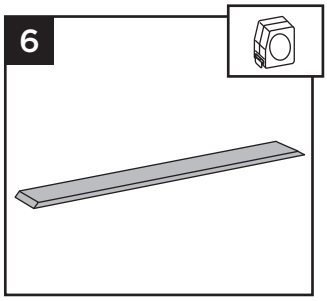
Cutting Deck Board

NOTES:
- » *If installing in weather below 40°F (4.5°C), leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*
- » *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*



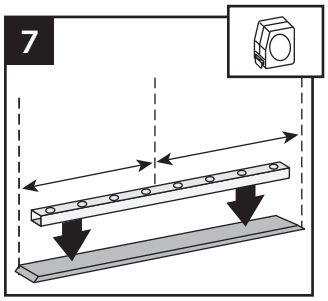
5. Cut deck boards to appropriate length of railing span, remembering to include extra space on each side of the deck board to allow for attachment to the post. Decking boards must cover 1/2 of the pressure-treated post to allow this to be fastened later.

6. Place inverted deck board (top side of deck board face down) on clean, flat surface. (**DO NOT** use Enhance or Escapes deck boards for top rail).

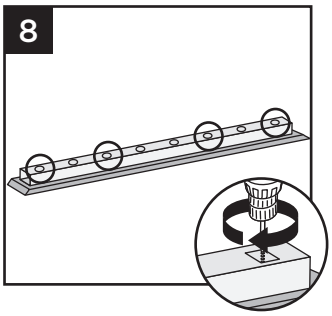


Attaching Deck Board to Select Top Rail

7. Place inverted Select top rail (orient properly so baluster holes are shown top side up), on the deck board, centered in both directions to allow final attachment to post.



8. Secure deck board to Select top rail with 3/4" screws provided approx. every 16" on center. Screws are to be installed inside of the baluster holes into the decking board. **DO NOT** overtighten.



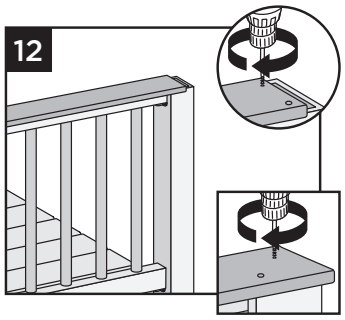
NOTES:
- » *A long drill bit will be required to fit inside the baluster holes.*
- » *If installing 8' rail section and using Aluminum Rail Stiffener, predrilling will be required through the stiffener.*

9. **Attaching Brackets to Rails**
See instructions on page 244.

10. **Assembling Railing Sections**
See instructions on page 244.

11. **Installing Railing Sections to Posts**
See instructions on page 244.

12. **Attaching Deck Board to Posts**
Attach boards on each post with Trex recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per each board end).

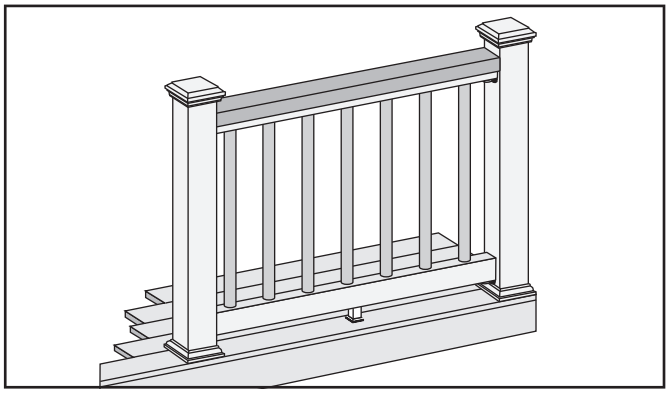


Deck Board Termination

13. **Installing Foot Block**
Install foot block per detailed instructions.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL TRADITIONAL HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

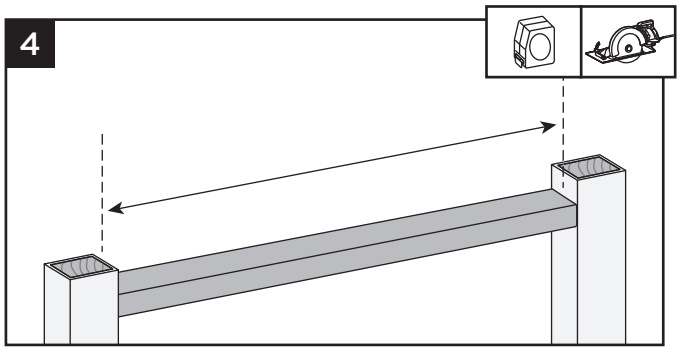


1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts, Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves**
   See instructions on page 243.

2. **Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Railing**
   See instructions on page 243.

3. **Cutting Railings**
   See instructions on page 243.

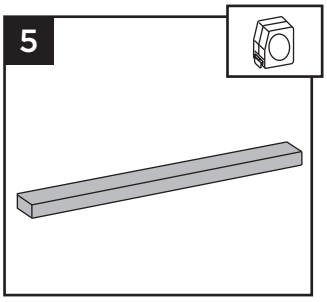
Cutting 2 x 4

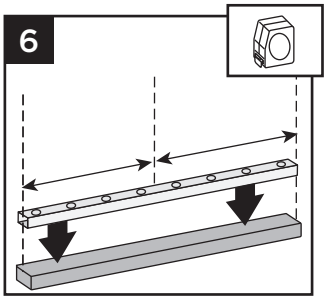


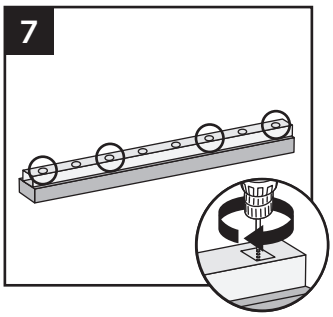
4. Cut 2 x 4 to same length of the inverted Select top rail.

Attaching 2 x 4 to Select Top Rail

5. Place inverted 2 x 4 (top side face down) on clean, flat surface.







6. Place inverted Select top (orient properly so baluster holes are shown top side up) on 2 x 4.
7. Secure 2 x 4 to Select top rail with 3/4" screw provided approximately every 16" on center. Screws are to be installed inside of the baluster holes into the decking board.

NOTES:

» ***DO NOT** overtighten. Note that a long drill bit will be required to fit inside the baluster holes.*

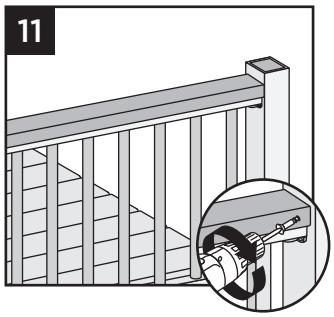
» *If installing 8' rail section and using Aluminum Rail Stiffener, predrilling will be required through the stiffener.*

8. **Attaching Brackets to Rails**
   See instructions on page 244.

9. **Assembling Railing Sections**
   See instructions on page 244.

10. **Installing Railing Sections to Posts**
    See instructions on page 244.

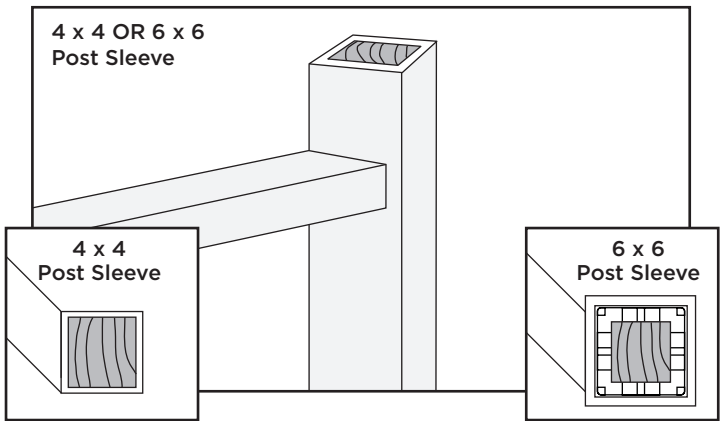
11. **Attaching 2x4 to Posts**
    Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2" (64 mm) composite screw *(not provided)* at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).

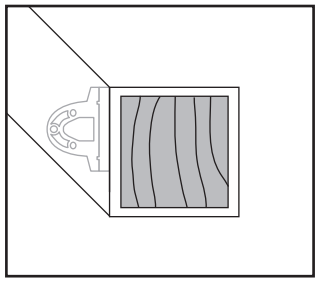


12. **Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block**
    Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive(apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs). Attach Foot Block per Foot Block instructions.

HOW TO INSTALL ON-AN-ANGLE RAILING
TREX SELECT®

NOTE: *Brackets are designed to be installed up to a 45° angle.*





Both 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) or 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves work well for angles up to 45 degrees. Bottom rail brackets may need to be slightly offset to one side in order to fit properly to hold rail in place. Before attaching bracket to rail, measure and mark to ensure bottom rail remains parallel to upper rail.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SELECT® CLASSIC STAIR RAILING

IMPORTANT NOTES:

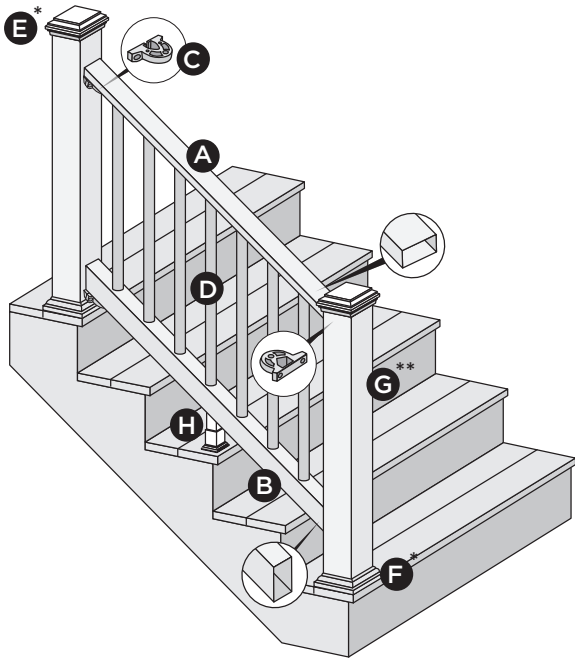
- *TREX SELECT CLASSIC RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST. NOTCHING OF PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS OR POSTS INSTALLED ON OUTSIDE OF RIM JOIST IS NOT ALLOWED.*
- *POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *IF INSTALLING STAIR RAILING OVER 6′, THE TREX ALUMINUM RAIL STIFFENER MUST BE USED TO MEET CODE REQUIREMENTS.*

Care and Cleaning

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex Select railing is important. The occasional wash is recommended as over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

- *Clean railing using a standard cleaning vinegar or mild soap and water.*
- *For more detailed cleaning recommendations please refer to the Trex Railing Care and Cleaning guide found on www.trex.com.*

PARTS



DETERMINING BALUSTERS NEEDED		
Baluster Type	**Per 6′ Section**	**Per 8′ Section**
Round Aluminum Baluster(Stair Application)	13	17

NOTES:

- *In most cases, a post and post sleeve longer than 39″ (991 mm) will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.*
- *Make sure top and bottom posts for stairs are installed at nose of each tread.*
- *Ensure pressure-treated posts are installed at proper heights so when post sleeves are installed , both the PT post and post sleeve are flush at top.*
- **See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex post mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.*
- *If installing stair railing over 6′, Trex Select 8′ ALUMINUM RAIL STIFFENER (sku SELALRAILSTIFFENER) MUST ALSO BE USED. Sold separately.*

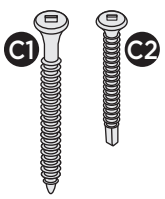
A. Select Classic Stair Top Rail
B. Select Classic Stair Bottom Rail
C. Brackets
D. Round Balusters
E. Post sleeve cap*
F. Post sleeve skirt*
G. Post sleeve – 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) or 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm)**
H. Adjustable foot block (quantity of one is required for all railing span lengths)

* *Item not included in the Select railing kits.*
** *Both 4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) and 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post.*

Screws Supplied with Brackets

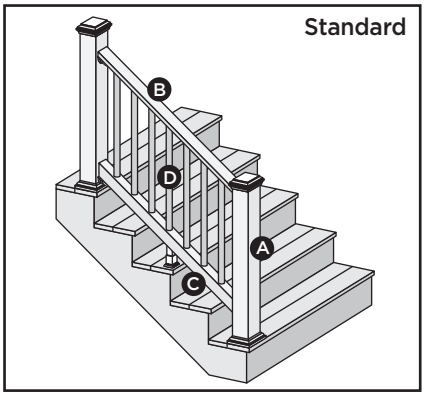
C1. Wood screw for attachment of bracket to wood post/composite sleeve

C2. Self-drilling rail screw for attachment of railing to bracket



TREX SELECT®
STAIR RAILING CONFIGURATIONS

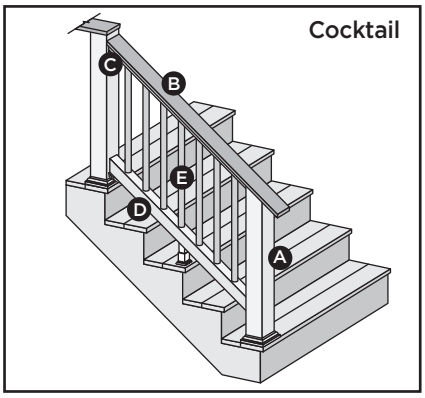
Note: See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex Post Mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.



Cutting post sleeves is **NOT** required.

A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/ Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, or joist mount post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve (INSIDE MOUNT ONLY).
B. Select Stair top rail
C. Select Stair bottom Rail
D. Round Aluminum Balusters

See page 251 for "How to Install Standard Stair Railing".



Post sleeves **WILL NEED TO BE CUT.**

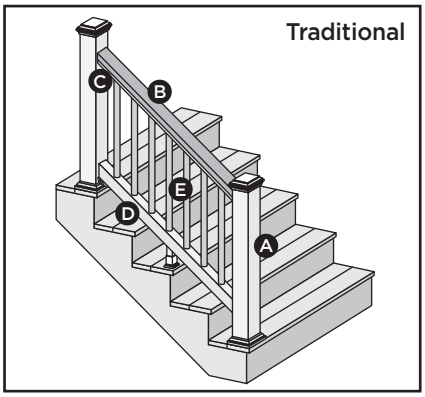
POST SLEEVES WILL NEED TO BE CUT

A. Pressure-treated post with Trex post sleeve
   - ***NOTE:*** » *Only for use with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) post sleeve*
   - » Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Select Stair cocktail design

B. Deck board top rail (1 x 6 or 2 x 6). ***NOTE:*** *Enhance cannot be used.*
C. Select Stair top rail
D. Select Stair bottom rail
E. Round Aluminum Balusters

See page 255 for "How to Install Cocktail Stair Railing".

NOTE: *Additional pan head screws will need to be purchased–see detailed instructions.*



Cutting post sleeves is **NOT** required.

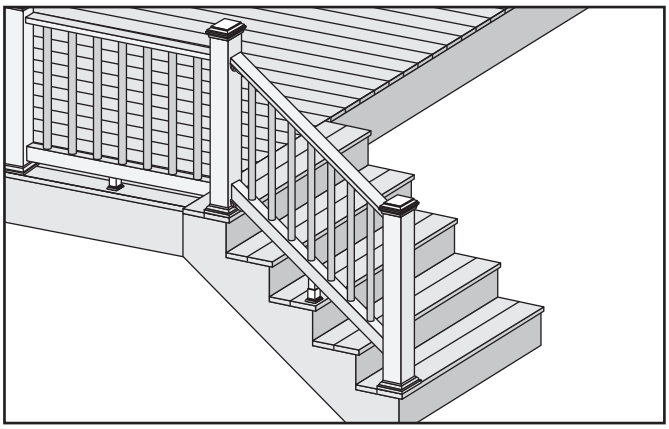
A. Pressure-Treated post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, Trex post mount/ Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve, or joist mount post/Trex 4x4 or 6x6 post sleeve (INSIDE MOUNT ONLY).
B. 2 x 4 ateral top rail
C. Select Stair top rail
D. Select Stair bottom rail
E. Round Aluminum Balusters

See page 256 for "How to Install Traditional Stair Railing".

NOTE: *Additional pan head screws will need to be purchased - see detailed instructions.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD STAIR RAILING
TREX SELECT®



1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts**

» ***PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.***

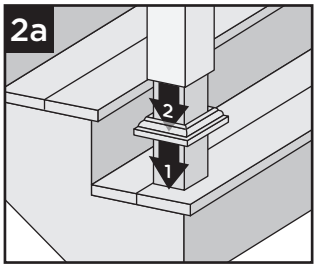
» ***PRESSURE TREATED POSTS MUST BE INSTALLED ON INSIDE OF STAIR STRINGER AND AT NOSE OF STAIR TREAD.***

» ***POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.***

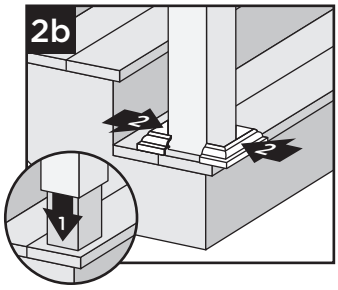
» *Post sleeve longer than 39″ (991 mm) will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.*

Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves

2a. If using a 1-piece skirt, slide post sleeve skirt over post and down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.



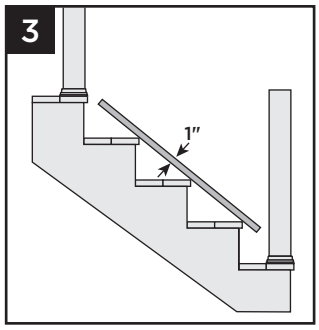
2b. If using a two-piece skirt Slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.

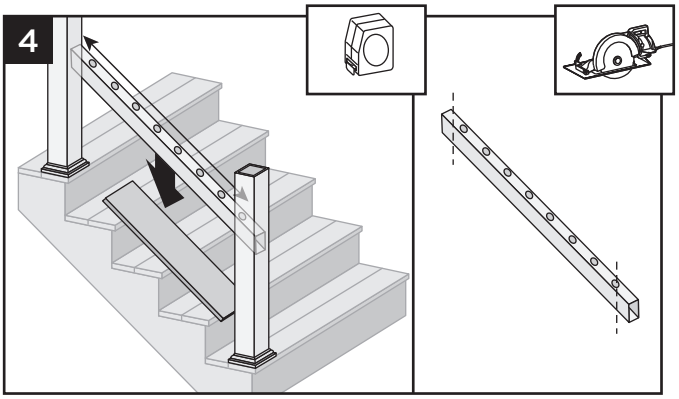


Note: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

Measuring and Cutting Bottom Rail

3. Place a 1″ deckboard on the nose of the stair tread.

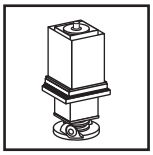




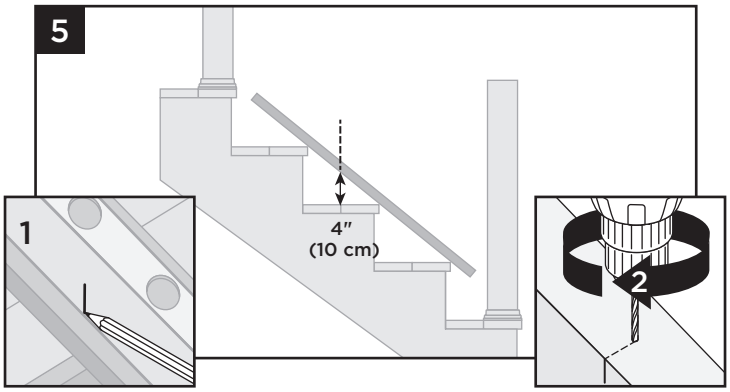
4. Set railing on top of deckboard, making sure baluster holes are vertically aligned and mark line at each intersection. **When measuring, cut equal lengths from each side of railing allowing a minimum of 2″ (51 mm) on each end from the last baluster hole to the end of the rail.** This will ensure proper baluster and bracket placement and equal spacing of balusters per each railing section.

IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING FOOT BLOCK INSTALLATION:

» *Refer to detailed instructions (Trex Select rail instructions) included with foot block prior to installation of railing section as these include other required steps for proper installation.*



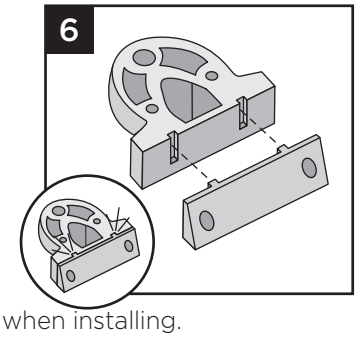
Marking Location for Foot Block to Bottom Rail



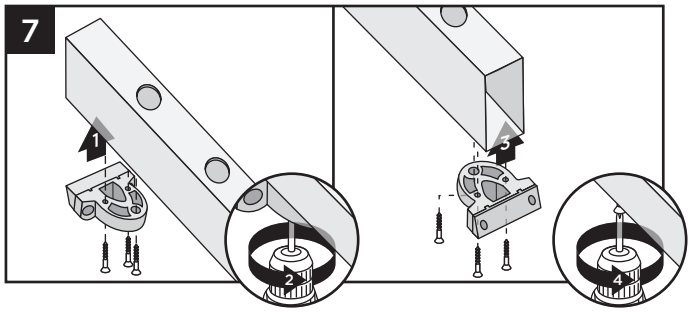
5. Mark approximate location for foot block, allowing a measurement of 4" maximum. Invert the bottom rail, and at marked location drill a hole using a 3/16" drill bit in the center of the channel. Foot block is to be installed at last step.

Attaching Brackets to Bottom Rail

6. Snap the top stair adaptor bracket (labeled TOP) to the standard bracket. Repeat for remaining bottom bracket.



TIP: Use a dab of super glue when snapping bracket together. This will help stabilize bracket when installing.



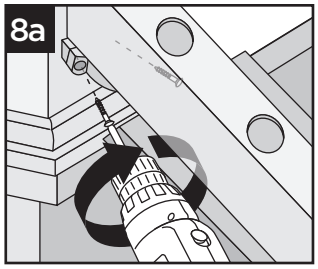
7. On the BOTTOM RAIL, attach the assembled bottom stair brackets to the OPPOSITE SIDE of the baluster holes. Attach both brackets using three #8-18x1" selfdrilling screws (provided).

Attachment of Bottom Rail to Post

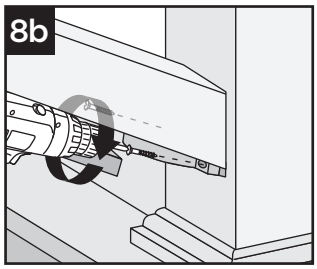
NOTE: *For attachment of brackets to posts, use at least a 3" long drill bit or extension so as to not damage sides of rails when installing.*

TIP: Pre-drill prior to screw installation using a 7/64" drill bit

8a. Keeping deck board on stair treads, center bottom rail between posts and attach bottom rail stair bracket to upper post using two #9-16 x 3" wood screws *(provided)*.

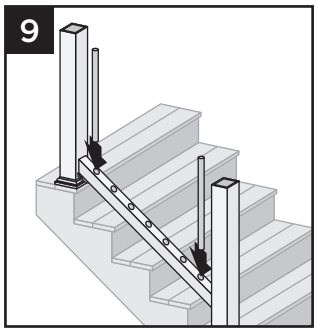


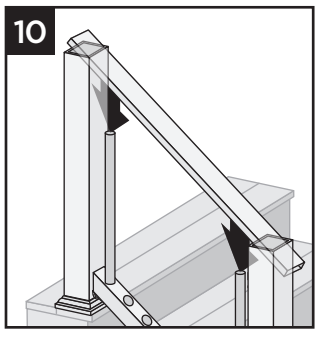
8b. Attach bottom stair rail stair bracket to lower post using two #9-16 x 3" wood screws *(provided)*. (deck board can now be removed).



IMPORTANT NOTE:
SET DRILL TO LOW SPEED AND LOW CLUTCH SETTING WHEN INSTALLING THESE SCREWS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.

Measuring and Cutting Top Stair Rail

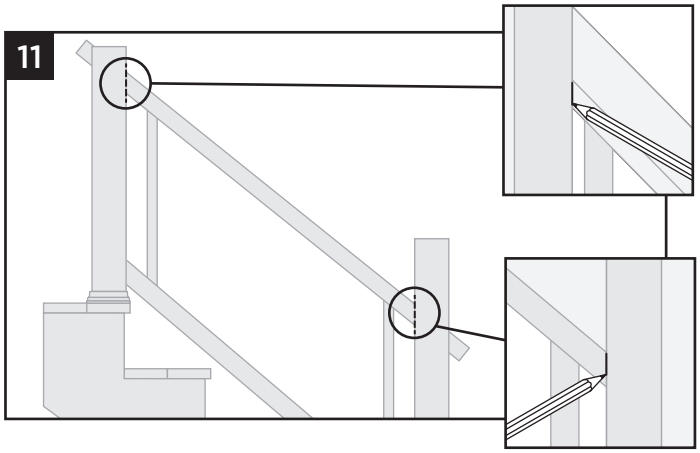




9. Place two balusters into lower stair rail at each end closest to the post.
10. Position top stair rail onto balusters, ensuring balusters are fully seated in rail (position to side of post), and ENSURE balusters are spaced evenly AND parallel with posts.

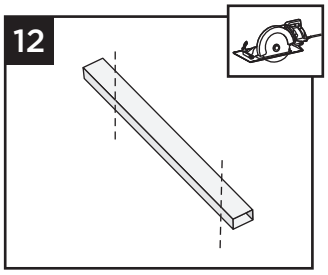
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®



11. Mark top stair rail at post intersections.

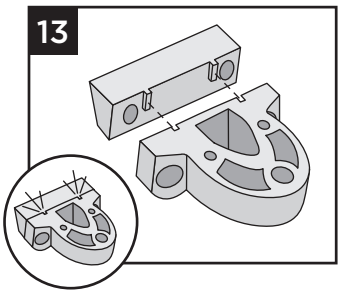
12. Remove rail, and cut along the marks.



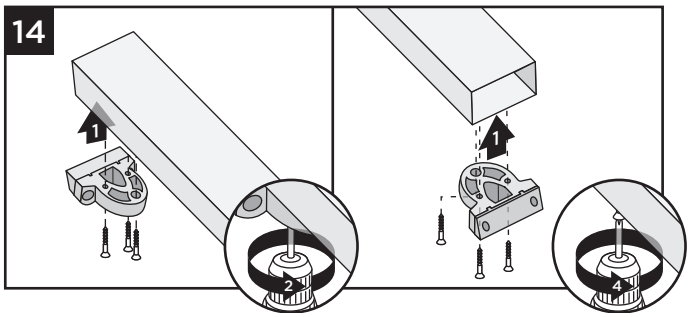
NOTE: *Verify the height of the railing before installing rail to post to ensure this meets proper height requirements for stairs.*

Attaching Brackets on Top Stair Rail

13. Snap the top stair adaptor bracket (labeled TOP) to the standard bracket. Repeat for remaining bracket.



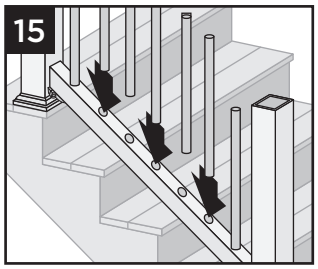
TIP: Use a dab of super glue when snapping bracket together. This will help stabilize bracket when installing.



14. On the TOP RAIL, attach the assembled stair brackets to the side WITH the baluster holes. Attach both brackets using three #8-18x1" self-drilling screws (provided).

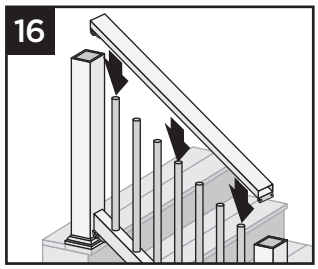
Installing Balusters

15. Slide remaining balusters into bottom rail until balusters are fully seated.



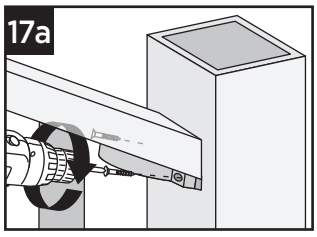
Attachment of Top Rail to Post

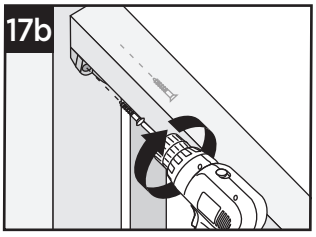
16. Place top rail onto balusters, allowing the top rail to rest on the surface of the balusters.



NOTE: *For attachment of brackets to posts, use at least a 3" long drill bit or extension so as to not damage sides of rails when installing.*

TIP: Pre-drill prior to screw installation using a 7/64" drill bit





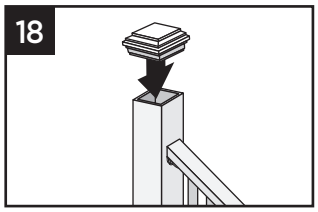
17a. Attach top stair rail bracket to upper post using two #9-16 x 3" screws *(provided)*.

17b. Attach top stair rail bracket to lower post using two #9-16 x 3" screws *(provided)*.

IMPORTANT NOTE: SET DRILL TO LOW SPEED AND LOW CLUTCH SETTING WHEN INSTALLING THESE SCREWS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.

Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block

18. Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs). Attach Foot Block per Foot Block instructions.



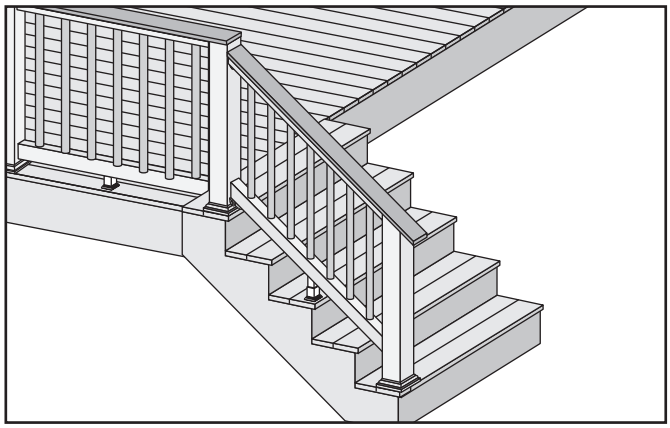
NOTE: *Clean up any excess adhesive before it dries.*

HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL STAIR RAILING
TREX SELECT®

IMPORTANT NOTES:

» ***Only for use with pressure-treated 4 x 4 post (3.5"nominal square) and 4" x 4" (102 mm x 1 02 mm) post sleeve. Trex post mounts or joist mount posts cannot be used with Trex Select stair cocktail. Cutting post and post sleeve only apply to the Cocktail style railing.***

» ***THE DECK BOARD USED IN SELECT STAIR COCKTAIL RAILING WILL NEED TO TERMINATE AT THE UPPER STAIR POST AS SHOWN BELOW. THE DECK BOARD WILL HAVE TO BE TOENAILED INTO THE SIDE OF THE POST IN THESE AREAS USING 2 APPROPRIATE COMPOSITE DECKING SCREWS – PRE-DRILLING IS RECOMMENDED.***



1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts**
   See instructions on page 251 .(See note above in regards to not cutting post/post sleeve).

2. **Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves**
   See instructions on page 251.

3. **Measuring and Cutting Bottom Stair Rail**
   See instructions on page 251.

4. **Marking Location for Foot Block to Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 252.

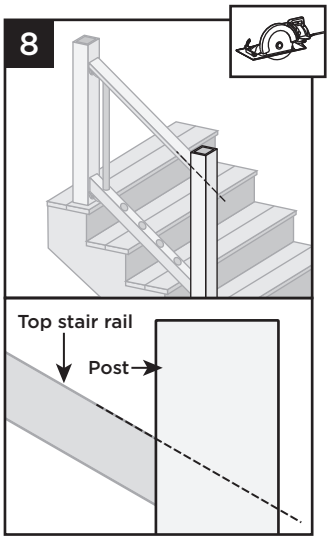
5. **Attaching Brackets to Bottom Rail**
   See instructions on page 252.

6. **Attachment of Bottom Rail to Post**
   See instructions on page 252.

7. **Measuring and Cutting Top Stair Rail**
   See instructions on page 252.

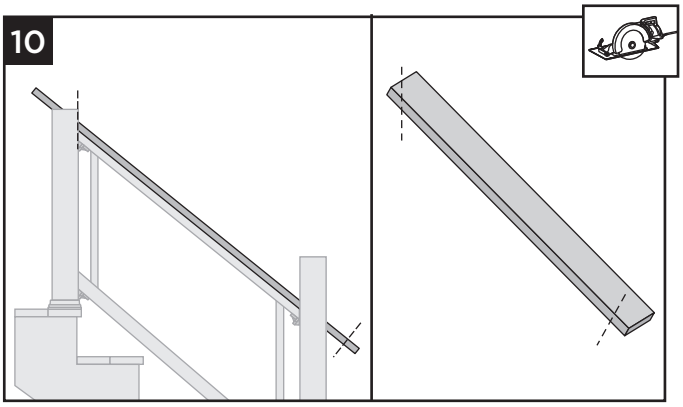
Cutting Post and Post Sleeve

8. Cut lower post/post sleeve at proper angle so this is flush with the top of the top rail.



9. **Attaching Brackets on Top Stair Rail**
   See instructions on page 253.

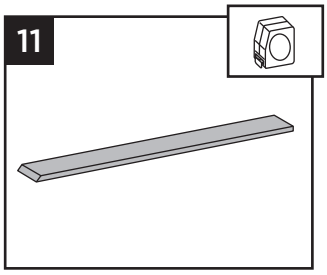
Measuring and Cutting Deck Board



10. Measure accordingly and cut deck boards to appropriate length of railing span also allowing for additional decking material that will be installed over the lower stair rail post.

Attaching Deck Board to Select Top Stair Rail

11. Place inverted deck board (place top side of deck board down) on clean, flat surface.

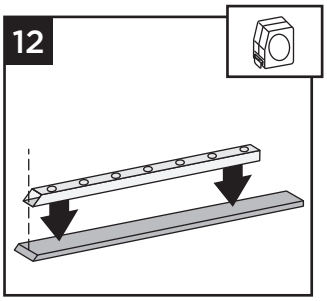


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

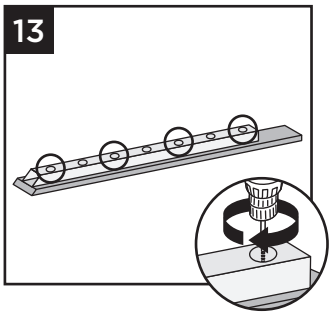
HOW TO INSTALL COCKTAIL STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

Attaching Deck Board to Select Top Rail

12. Place inverted Select top rail (orient properly so baluster holes are shown top side up), on the deck board so the angled cuts will align properly along with centering the top rail on the deck board.



13. Secure deck board to Select top rail with 3/4" screws provided approximately every 16" on center. Screws are to be installed inside of the baluster holes into the decking board.



NOTES:

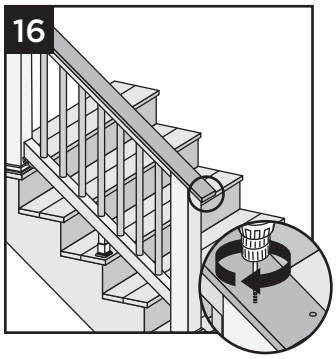
- ***DO NOT** overtighten.*
- *Note that a long drill bit will be required to fit inside the baluster holes.*
- *If installing 8' rail section and using the Aluminum Rail Stiffener, predrilling will be required through the stiffener.*

14. **Installing Balusters**
See instructions on page 253.

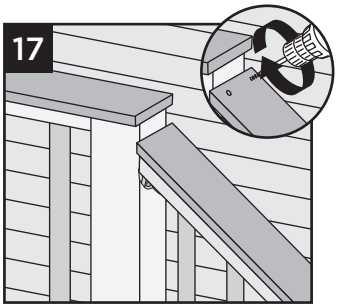
15. **Attachment of Top Rail to Post**
See instructions on page 253.

Attachment of Deck Board to Post

16. Attach deck board to lower post with Trex-recommended composite screws (quantity of 2 per each post/board end).



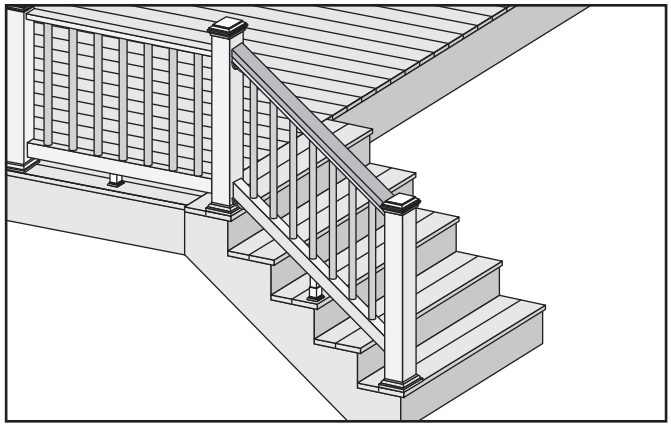
17. Where deck board terminates at upper post, PREDRILL and toenail two approved composite deck screws as shown into post, being careful to avoid hitting stair bracket.



Installation of Foot Block

18. *Attach foot block per foot block instructions.*

HOW TO INSTALL TRADITIONAL STAIR RAILING
TREX SELECT®



1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts**
See instructions on page 251.

2. **Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves**
See instructions on page 251.

3. **Measuring and Cutting Bottom Stair Rail**
See instructions on page 251.

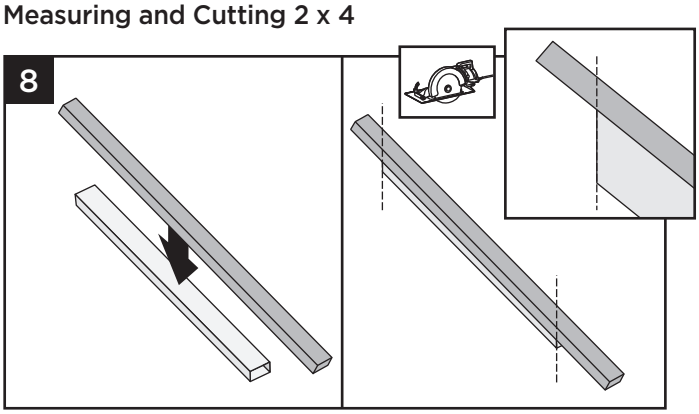
4. **Marking Location for Foot Block to Bottom Rail**
See instructions on page 252.

5. **Attaching Brackets to Bottom Rail**
See instructions on page 252.

6. **Attachment of Bottom Rail to Post**
   See instructions on page 252.

7. **Measuring and Cutting Top Stair Rail**
   See instructions on page 252.

Measuring and Cutting 2 x 4

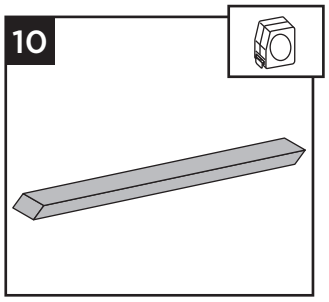


8. Using the cut top rail as template, cut 2 x 4 at same angle and length of the top rail.

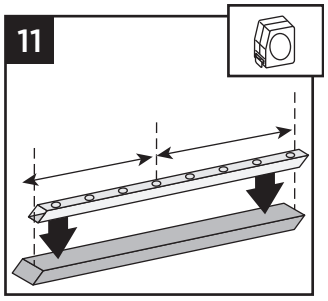
9. **Attaching Brackets on Top Stair Rail**
   See instructions on page 253.

Attaching 2 x 4 to Select Top Rail

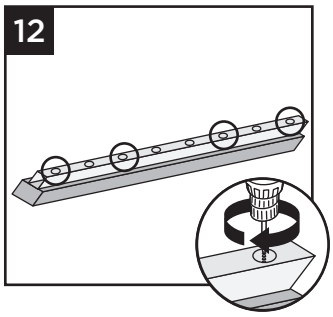
10. Place inverted 2 x 4 (top side face down) on clean, flat surface.



11. Place inverted Select top rail (orient properly so baluster holes are shown top side up) on 2 x 4.



12. Secure 2 x 4 to Select top rail with 3/4" screw provided approximately every 16" on center. Screws are to be installed inside of the baluster holes into the 2 x 4.

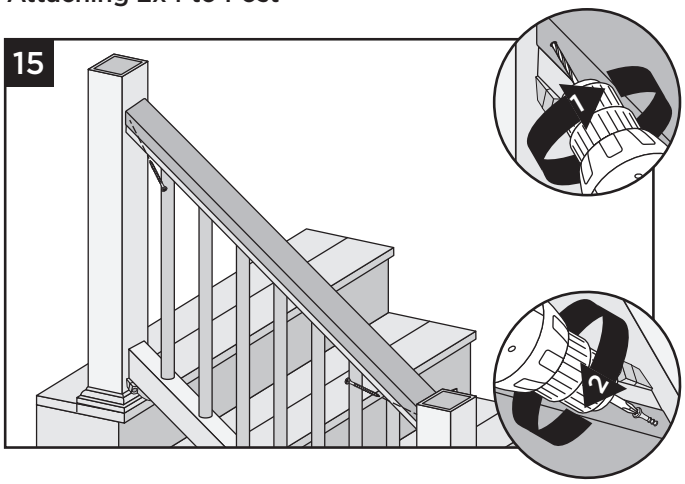


NOTES:
- » ***DO NOT** overtighten.*
- » *Note that a long drill bit will be required to fit inside the baluster holes.*
- » *If installing 8' rail section and using Aluminum Rail Stiffener, predrilling will be required through the stiffener.*

13. **Installing Balusters**
    See instructions on page 253.

14. **Attachment of Top Rail to Post**
    See instructions on page 253.

Attaching 2x4 to Post



15. Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2" (6.4 cm) composite deck screw ***(not provided)*** at each end of 2 x 4 into post on outside of stair rail (side not facing decking).

16. **Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block**
    See instructions on page 253.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SELECT T-RAIL® HORIZONTAL RAILING

NOTES:

» *TREX SELECT T-RAIL RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST. NOTCHING OF PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS OR POSTS INSTALLED ON OUTSIDE OF RIM JOIST IS NOT ALLOWED.*

» *All Select T-Rail Railing lengths are manufactured at CLEAR SPAN dimensions (spanning between space of posts): 72" for 6′ and 96" for 8′ clear span. Note that railings are designed to be slightly longer than required to allow for very slight play in post placement – trimming may be required. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO MEASURE FIRST.*

» *IF INSTALLING RAILING OVER 6′, THE TREX T-RAIL ALUMINUM RAIL STIFFENER MUST BE USED TO MEET CODE REQUIREMENTS.*

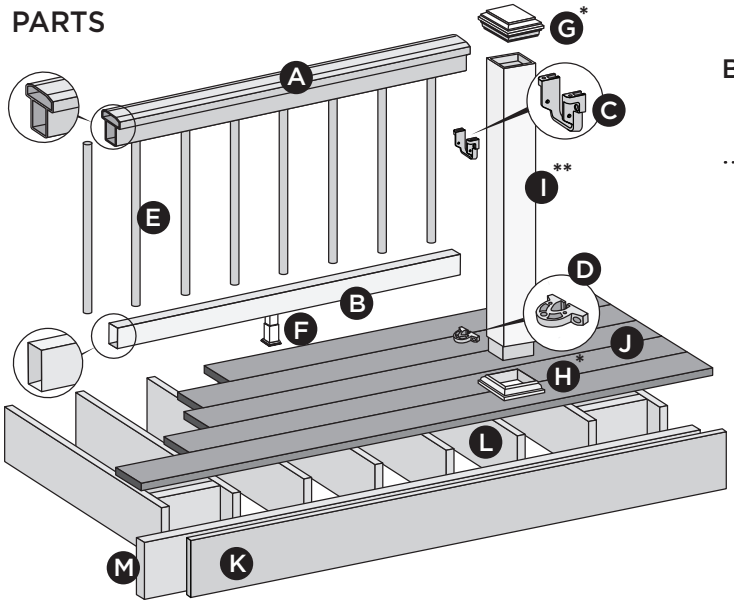
Care and Cleaning

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex Select T-Rail railing is important. Occasional washing is recommended. Over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

» *Clean railing with standard cleaning vinegar or mild soap and water.*

» *For more detailed cleaning recommendations, please refer to the Trex Railing Care and Cleaning guide found on www.trex.com.*

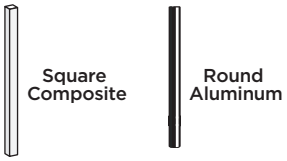
PARTS



NOTE: *T-Rail Aluminum Rail Stiffener not shown above but is required for all railing installations over 6′ (sku SELALTRAILSTIFFNR sold separately).*

DETERMINING BALUSTERS NEEDED		
Baluster Type	**Per 6′ Section**	**Per 8′ Section**
Horizontal Application	15	20

BALUSTER OPTIONS



A. T-Rail
B. Bottom Rail
C. T-Rail Brackets
D. Bottom Rail Brackets
E. Aluminum Round Balusters
F. Adjustable Foot Block
G. Post Sleeve Cap*
H. Post Sleeve Skirt*
I. Post Sleeve**
   - » Select 4x4 post sleeve
   - » Transcend 4x4 post sleeve
   - » Transcend 6x6 post sleeve

J Trex Decking
K. Trex Fascia
L. Code-approved Wood Joist - 2 x 8
M. Code-approved Wood Rim Joist - 2 x 8 or Larger

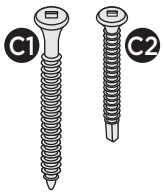
* *Item not included in the railing kits.*

** *All post sleeves are designed to fit over 4" x 4" pressure-treated post.*

Screws Supplied with RSB

C1. Wood screw for attachment of RSB to wood post/composite sleeve

C2. Self-drilling screw for attachment of RSB to rail



HOW TO INSTALL STANDARD HORIZONTAL RAILING

TREX SELECT T-RAIL®

Read all instructions BEFORE installation.

Installing Pressure-Treated Posts

1. **PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.**

NOTES:

» ***Posts are to be installed 6′ or 8′ clear span to accommodate appropriate railing length.***

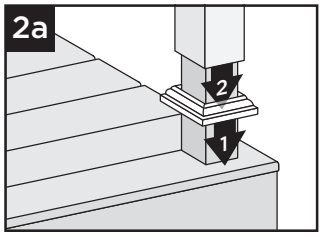
» ***Ensure pressure-treated posts are installed at proper heights so when post sleeves are installed, both the PT post and post sleeve are flush at the top.***

» ***If using 48" post sleeves, measure carefully to allow for clearance of both rail attachment as well as clearance for post cap attachment, and trim these before installing over pressure treated posts. For 36" rail height, post and post sleeve should be cut at minimum of 40".***

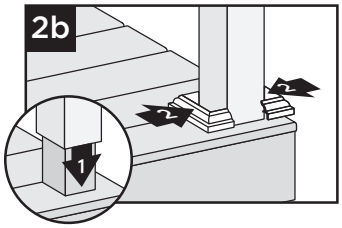
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT T-RAIL®

Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves

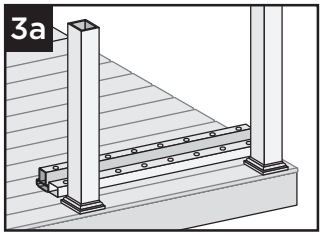
2a. If using a 1-piece skirt, slide post sleeve skirt over post and down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.

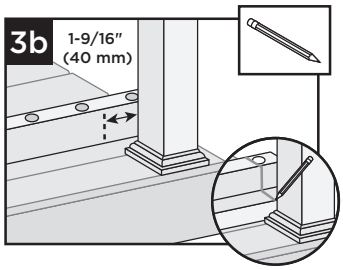


2b. If using a two-piece skirt, slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.



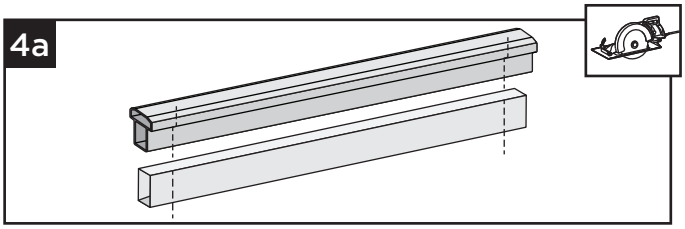
Cutting Railings (if required)





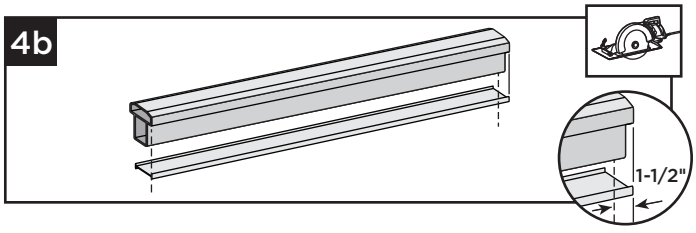
3a. Position bottom rail and T-Rail between posts, ensuring baluster holes are lined up and spaced evenly.

3b. Also allow for a minimum of 1-9/16" (40 mm) on each end of rail for bracket placement AND baluster clearance. Mark rails at intersection of rail and post.



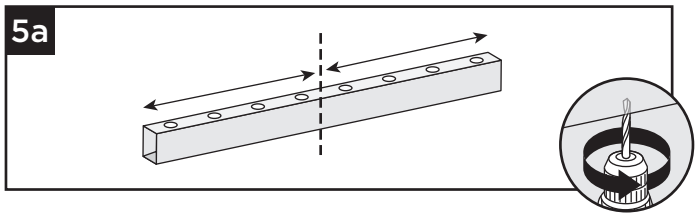
4a. Cut T-Rail and bottom rail to specified length.

Cutting T-Rail Aluminum Stiffener (if required)



4b. For railing installations over 6′ in length, the T-Rail aluminum rail stiffener must be used. For full 8′ spans the stiffener will NOT need to be cut. For odd span lengths the stiffener MUST be cut 1 1/2" shorter than the T-Rail.

Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Rail and Adding Weep Holes

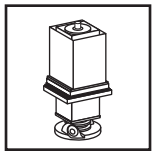


5a. Invert the bottom rail. Center and drill a hole using a 3/16" drill bit. This will be the location for foot block attachment (to be installed last).

5b. Keeping bottom rail inverted, Use same drill bit, center and drill weep holes through bottom rail at 4 evenly spanned locations to allow for water drainage.

IMPORTANT NOTES REGARDING FOOT BLOCK INSTALLATION:

» *Refer to detailed instructions included with foot block prior to installation of railing section as these include other required steps for proper installation.*



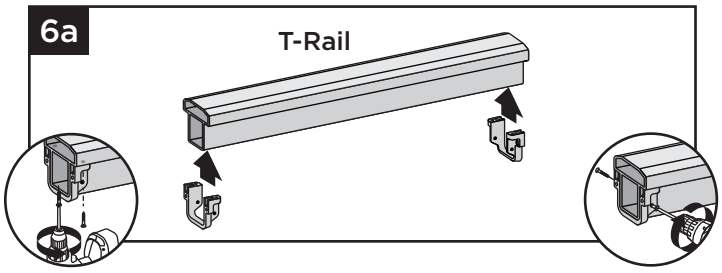
Attaching Brackets to T-Rail

NOTES:

» ***EXTENSION BIT IS HIGHLY RECOMMENDED FOR SCREW ATTACHMENT.***

» ***IF USING T-RAIL ALUMINUM STIFFENER REFER TO STEPS 6b-6d.***

» *For ease of bracket attachment place rail against stationary flat vertical surface along with bracket.*

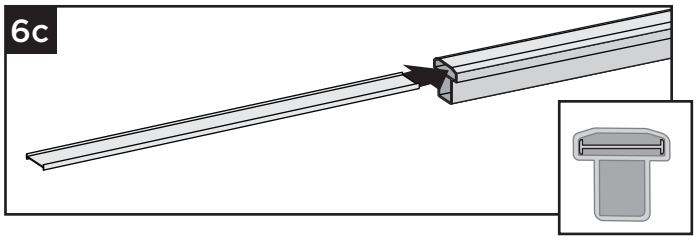


6a. Position brackets on each end of T-Rail on the same side as baluster holes (brackets are always located on the underside of the bottom rail and T-Rail). Attach brackets using four #8-18x1" self-drilling screws *(provided).* Install upper screws first into underside of T-Rail and then install screws on the side.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

If Installing T-Rail Aluminum Stiffener

6b. Position one bracket on end of T-Rail and install bracket as stated in step 6a.

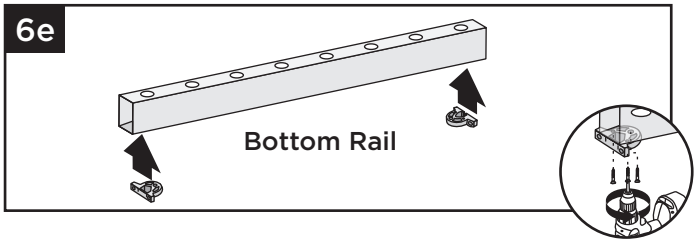


6c. Slide T-Rail aluminum stiffener inside T-Rail as shown.

***Note** that the stiffener must be slightly shorter to allow for brackets to be installed. Screws from brackets are NOT to penetrate the stiffener.*

6d. Install remaining bracket on opposite end of T-Rail as stated in step 6a.

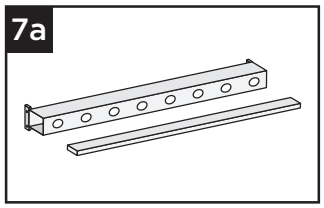
Attaching Brackets to Bottom Rail



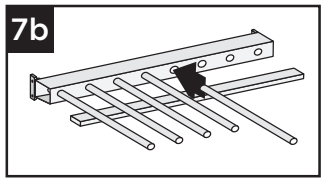
6e. Position brackets on each end of BOTTOM RAIL on the **OPPOSITE SIDE** of the baluster holes. Attach brackets using three #8-18x1" self-drilling screws *(provided).*

Assembling Railing Section

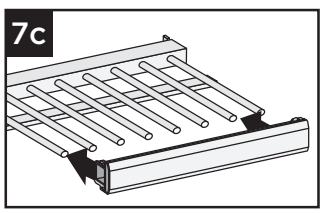
7a. On a clean flat surface lay bottom railing on its side. Make sure to allow enough room for installation of balusters and T-Rail. Place a scrap piece of 1" decking board running parallel to bottom rail for support when installing balusters.



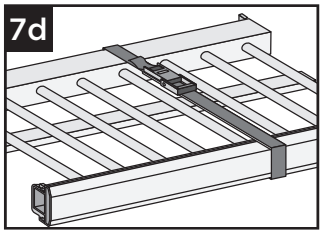
7b. Insert balusters into bottom rail slots until balusters are fully seated.



7c. Attach T-Rail to balusters, feeding each baluster into required slots. Start on one end and work towards the other.

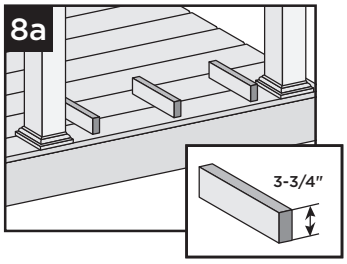


7d. To help temporarily secure the railing section together, place a ratchet strap around the T-Rail and bottom rail and tighten until snug. **DO NOT OVERTIGHTEN AS YOU CAN BEND THE RAILING.**

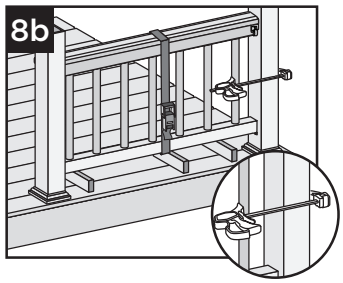


Installing Railing Section to Posts

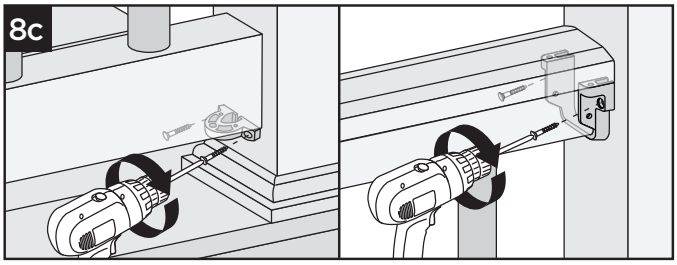
8a. Using scrap material (i.e. 2 x 4s, decking boards, etc.) cut at least three support blocks at 3-3/4" in height. Place one each on decking surface beside each post and one near center of span.



8b. Lift secured railing section up, and CENTER this section in between the spanned posts on pre-positioned support blocks.



***NOTE:** To help stabilize railing section use a quick-grip clamp (or other type of clamp) and clamp the first baluster to post sleeve. (DO NOT OVER-TIGHTEN CLAMP.)*

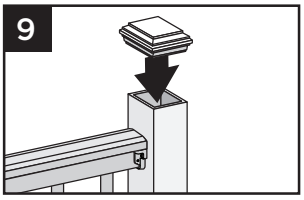


8c. Install both bottom and T-Rail brackets on each side to post using two #9-16 x 2" wood screws (provided). If using a 6x6 post sleeve use #9-16 x 2 1/2" screws (not provided).

***NOTE:** Screw goes in at slight angle.*

Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block

9. Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs). Attach foot block per foot block instructions.



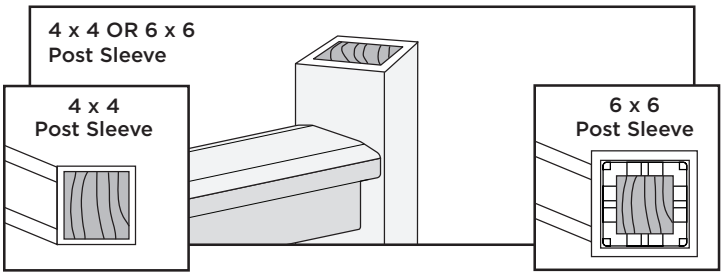
***NOTE:** Clean up any excess adhesive before it dries.*

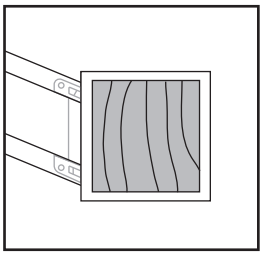
HOW TO INSTALL 22.5° HORIZONTAL ANGLE RAILING

TREX SELECT T-RAIL®

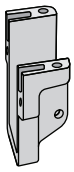
NOTES:

- *Trex Select T-Rail brackets are designed to be installed at 22.5° angle only and only for horizontal applications. Ensure post placements are set to accommodate this angle so railing is install on flat side of post.*
- *Brackets must be installed on rails first (see standard horizontal instructions for reference).*
- *When installing railing to posts, the brackets may need to be located slightly off center (rails will be centered). Measure and mark first before attachment to rail to ensure railing are centered.*

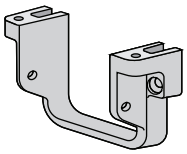




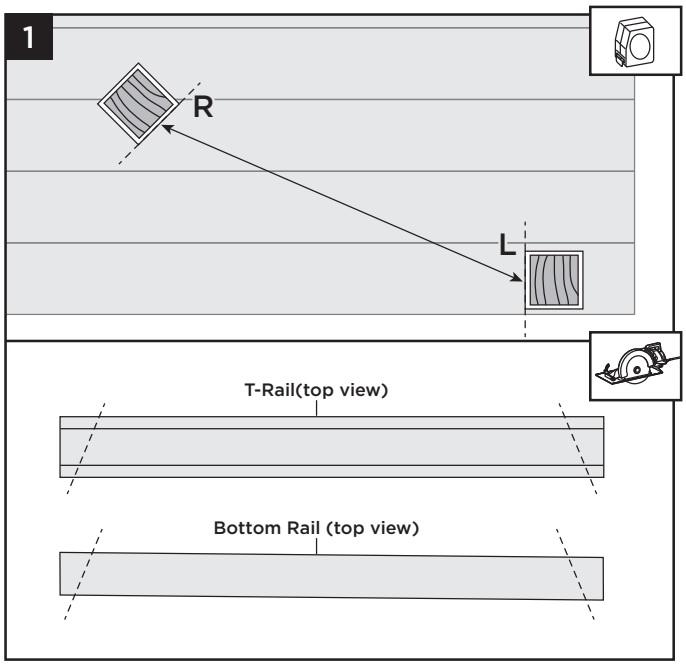
PARTS



Left T-Rail
Angle Bracket



Right T-Rail
Angle Bracket



Measure and Cutting Railings

1. Measure between the posts and cut both bottom rail and T-Rail to proper angles.
2. **Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Rail and Adding Weep Holes**
   See instructions on page 258.
3. **Attaching Brackets to Railings**
   See instructions on page 258
4. **Assembling Railing Section**
   See instructions on page 259.
5. **Installing Railing Section to Posts**
   See instructions on page 259.
6. **Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block**
   See instructions on page 259.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL BIRDSMOUTH HORIZONTAL RAILING

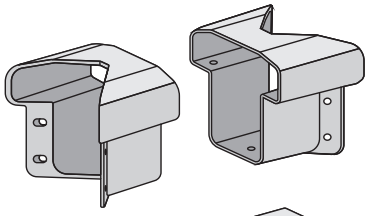
TREX SELECT T-RAIL®

NOTES:

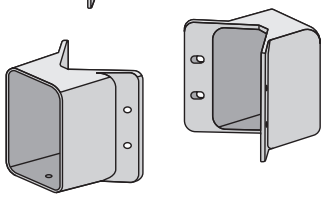
- *Use with 4x4 post sleeve only*
- *Rails are not to be cut at angles, brackets accommodate railing that are cut flat when required.*
- *Brackets must be installed on rails first.*
- *For ease of bracket attachment place rail against stationary flat vertical surface along with bracket.*

PARTS

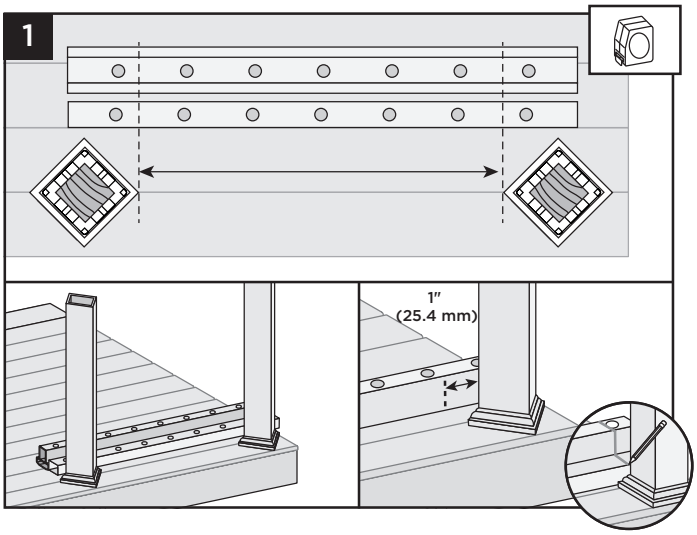
Birdsmouth T-Rail Bracket



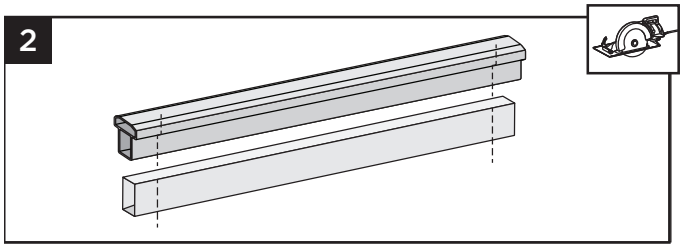
Birdsmouth Bottom Rail Bracket



Measuring and Cutting Rails (when required)



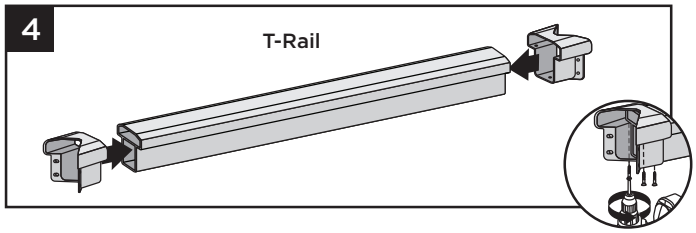
1. Measure from corner-to-corner between posts ensuring baluster holes are at equal distance at each post location. Allow for a clearance of 1" for bracket placement.



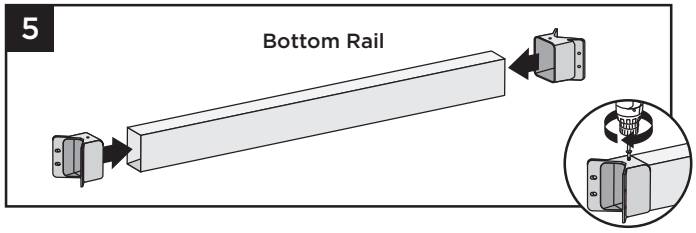
2. Mark rails and cut. Note rails do not need to be cut at an angle. If installing at full span railings may only require slight trim on each side for fit.

3. **Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Rail and Adding Weep Holes**
See instructions on page 258.

Installing Brackets to Rail



4. Slide T-Rail Birdsmouth bracket onto T-Rail, ensuring that end of rail aligned is with center of bracket, and attach using three #8-18 x 1" self-drilling screws (provided).



5. Invert the bottom rail (baluster holes facing down) and slide bottom Birdsmouth bracket onto bottom rail, ensuring that end of rail is aligned with center of bracket and bracket is positioned so the screw hole is facing up. Attach using one #8-18 x 1" self-drilling screw (provided).

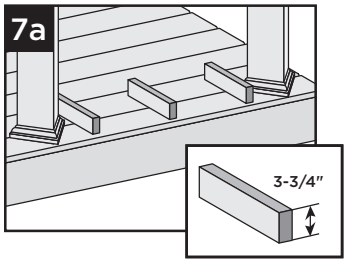
6. **Assembling Railing Section**
See instructions on page 259.

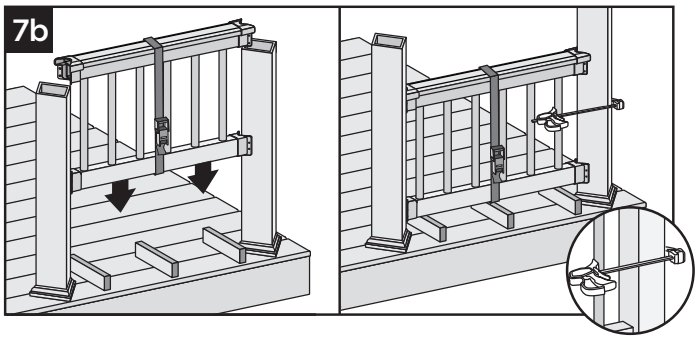
HOW TO INSTALL BIRDSMOUTH HORIZONTAL RAILING/CONTINUED

TREX SELECT T-RAIL®

Installing Railing Section to Posts

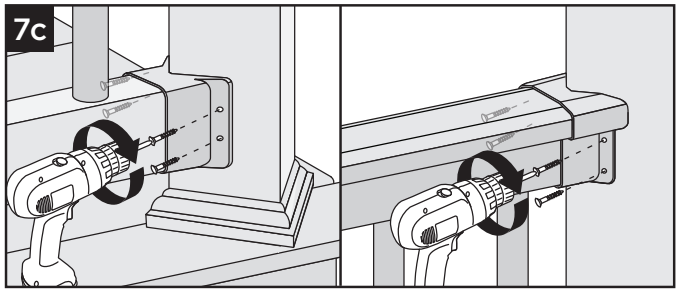
7a. Using scrap material (i.e. 2 x 4s, decking boards,etc.) cut at least three support blocks at 3-3/4" in height. Place one each on decking surface beside each post and one near center of span.





7b. Lift secured railing section up above posts and slide down into position between posts.

NOTE: *To help stabilize railing section use a quick-grip clamp (or other type of clamp) and clamp the first baluster to post sleeve. (DO NOT OVERTIGHTEN CLAMP.)*



7c. Install both bottom and T-Rail Birdsmouth bracket post sleeve using four #9-16 x 1 3/4" screws (provided) per bracket. Note screws are installed on angle.

8. **Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block**
See instructions on page 259.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SELECT T-RAIL® STAIR RAILING

IMPORTANT NOTES:

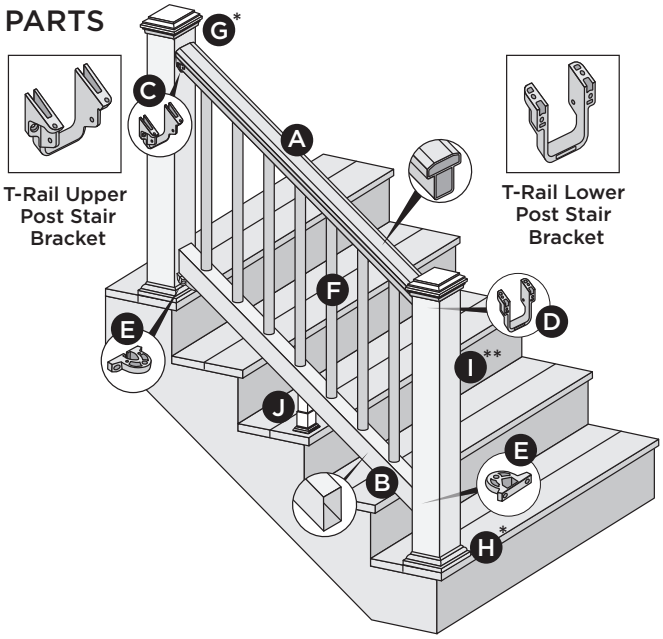
- *TREX SELECT T-RAIL RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST. NOTCHING OF PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS OR POSTS INSTALLED ON OUTSIDE OF RIM JOIST IS NOT ALLOWED.*
- *POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *IF INSTALLING STAIR RAILING OVER 6′, THE TREX T-RAIL ALUMINUM RAIL STIFFENER MUST BE USED TO MEET CODE REQUIREMENTS.*

Care and Cleaning

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex T-Rail railing is important. The occasional wash is recommended as over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

- *Clean railing using a standard cleaning vinegar or mild soap and water.*
- *For more detailed cleaning recommendations please refer to the Trex Railing Care and Cleaning guide found on www.trex.com.*

PARTS



NOTE: *T-Rail Aluminum Rail Stiffener not shown above but is required for all stair railing installations over 6′.*

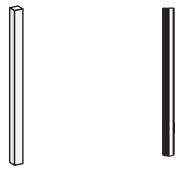
A. Stair T-Rail
B. Stair Bottom Rail
C. T-Rail Upper Post Stair Bracket
D. T-Rail Lower Post Stair Bracket
E. Lower Post Bracket
F. Balusters
G. Post sleeve cap*
H. Post sleeve skirt*
I. Post sleeve**
   - » Select 4x4 post sleeve
   - » Transcend 4x4 post sleeve
   - » Transcend 6x6 post sleeve
J. Adjustable foot block (quantity of one is required for all railing span lengths)

** Item not included in the Enhance railing kits.*

*** All post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post.*

DETERMINING BALUSTERS NEEDED		
Baluster Type	**Per 6′ Section**	**Per 8′ Section**
Stair Application	13	17

BALUSTER OPTIONS



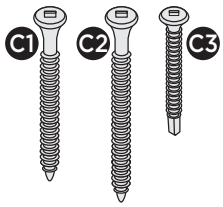
Square Composite | Round Aluminum

NOTES:

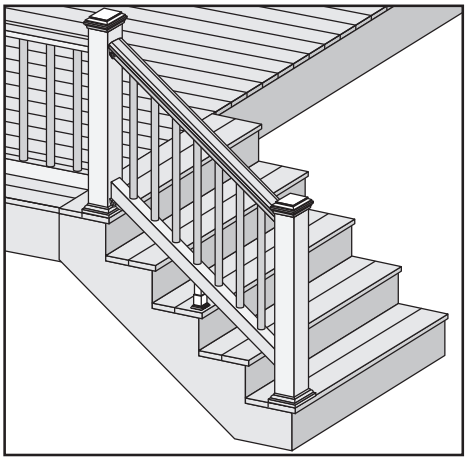
- ***In most cases, a post and post sleeve longer than 39" will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.***
- ***Make sure top and bottom posts for stairs are installed at nose of each tread.***
- ***If using 8′ railings, the Trex Select 8′ Aluminum T-Rail Stiffener (sku SELALTRAILSTIFFNR sold separately) can also be used to allow the rail to be stronger if required.***

Screws Supplied with Brackets

C1. 2" Wood screw for attachment of T-Rail stair bracket to wood post/composite sleeve
C2. 3" Wood screw for attachment of lower rail bracket to wood post/composite sleeve
C3. 1" Self-drilling rail screw for attachment of railing to bracket



HOW TO INSTALL STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT T-RAIL®



1. **Installing Pressure-Treated Posts**

» ***PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.***

» *PRESSURE TREATED POSTS MUST BE INSTALLED ON INSIDE OF STAIR STRINGER AND AT NOSE OF STAIR TREAD.*

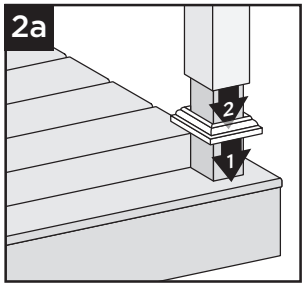
» *POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6'. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6' SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*

» *A post and post sleeve longer than 39" will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.*

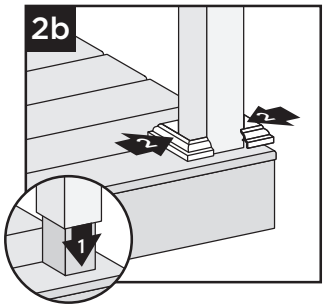
» *Ensure pressure-treated posts are installed at proper heights so when post sleeves are installed, both the PT post and post sleeve are flush at the top.*

Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves

2a. If using a 1-piece skirt, slide post sleeve skirt over post and down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.



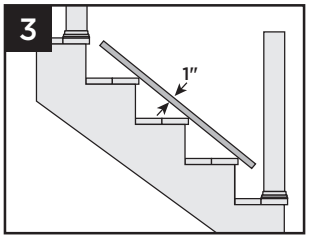
2b. If using a two-piece skirt, slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.

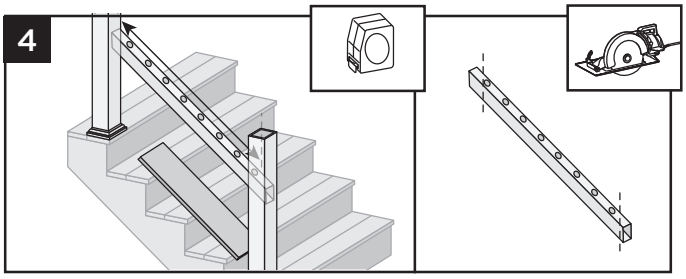


NOTE: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

Measuring and Cutting Bottom Rail

3. Place a 1" deckboard on the nose of the stair tread.

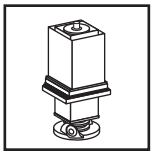




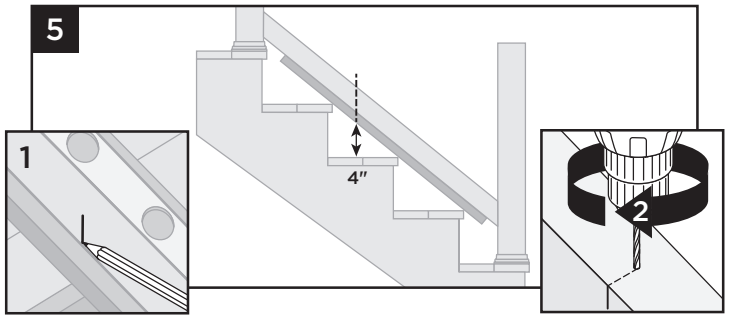
4. Set bottom stair rail on top of deckboard, making sure baluster holes are vertically aligned and mark line at each intersection. **When measuring, cut equal lengths from each side of railing allowing a minimum of 2" on each end from the last baluster hole to the end of the rail.** This will ensure proper baluster and bracket placement and equal spacing of balusters per each railing section.

IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING FOOT BLOCK INSTALLATION:

» *Refer to detailed instructions included with foot block prior to installation of railing section as these include other required steps for proper installation.*



Marking Location for Foot Block to Bottom Rail

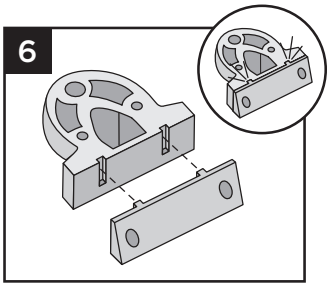


5. Mark approximate location for foot block, allowing a measurement of 4" maximum. Invert the bottom rail, and at marked location drill a hole using a 3/16" drill bit in the center of the channel. Foot block is to be installed at last step.

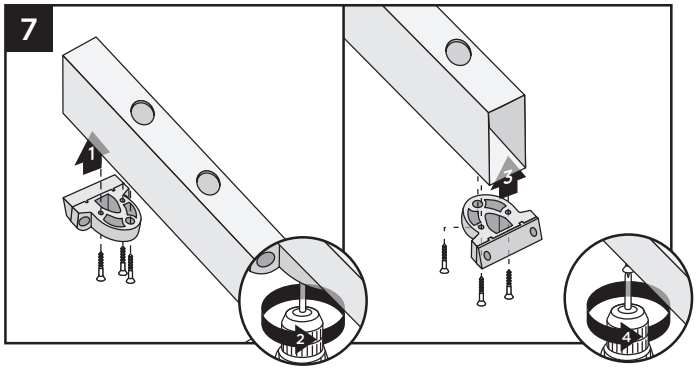
HOW TO INSTALL STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT T-RAIL®

Attaching Brackets to Bottom Rail

6. Snap the top stair adaptor bracket (labeled TOP) to the standard bracket. Repeat for remaining bottom bracket.



TIP: Use a dap of super glue when snapping bracket together. This will help stabilize bracket when installing.



7. On the BOTTOM RAIL, attach the assembled bottom stair brackets to the OPPOSITE SIDE of the baluster holes. Attach both brackets using three #8-18 x 1" self-drilling screws (provided).

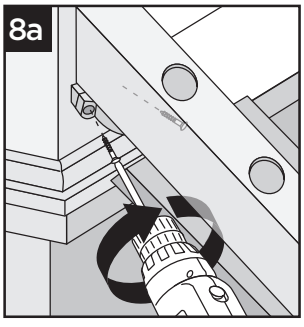
Attachment of Bottom Rail to Post

NOTES:

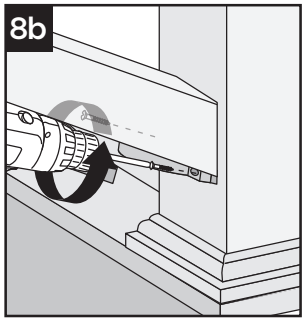
- *For attachment of brackets to posts, use at least a 3" long drill bit or extension so as to not damage sides of rails when installing.*
- ***SET DRILL TO LOW SPEED AND LOW CLUTCH SETTING WHEN INSTALLING THESE SCREWS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.***

TIP: Pre-drill prior to screw installation using a 7/64" drill bit

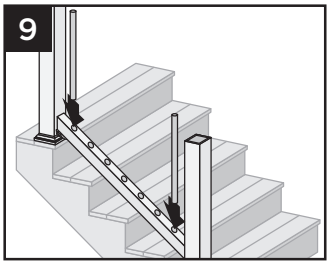
8a. Keeping deck board on stair treads, center bottom rail between posts and attach bottom rail stair bracket to upper post using two #9-16 x 3" wood screws *(provided)*.

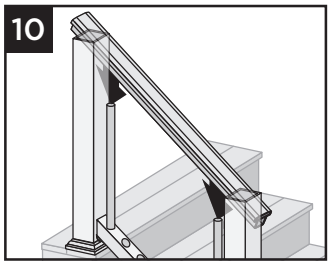


8b. Attach bottom stair rail stair bracket to lower post using two #9-16 x 3" wood screws *(provided)*. (deck board can now be removed).



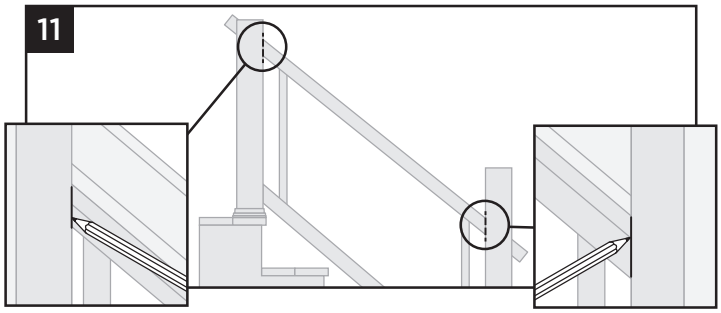
Measuring and Cutting Stair T-Rail





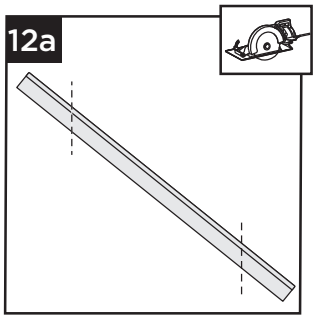
9. Place two balusters into lower stair rail at each end closest to the post.

10. Position T-Rail onto balusters, ensuring balusters are fully seated in rail (position to side of post), and ENSURE balusters are spaced evenly AND parallel with posts.



11. Mark stair T-Rail at post intersections.

12a. Remove T-Rail, and cut along the marks.

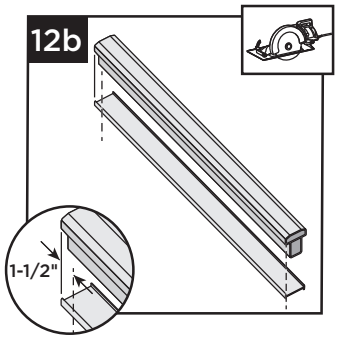


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT T-RAIL®

Cutting T-Rail Aluminum Stiffener (if required)

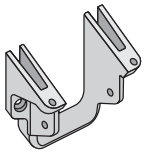
12b. For stair railing installations over 6′ in length, the T-Rail aluminum rail stiffener must be used. The stiffener MUST be cut 1 1/2″ shorter than the T-Rail.



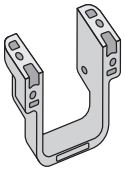
Attaching Brackets on Stair T-Rail

NOTES:

- *For attachment of brackets to posts, use at least a 3″ long drill bit or extension so as to not damage sides of rails when installing.*
- ***SET DRILL TO LOW SPEED AND LOW CLUTCH SETTING WHEN INSTALLING THESE SCREWS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.***

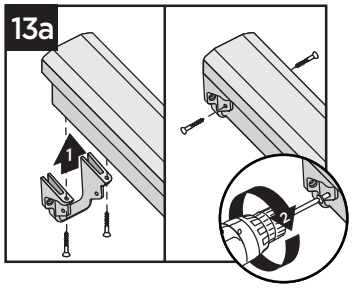


T-Rail Upper Post Stair

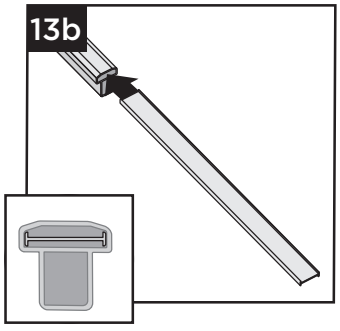


T-Rail Lower Post Stair

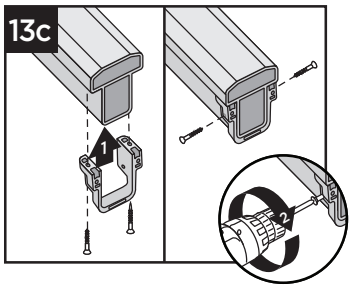
13a. On the T-Rail at UPPER POST location, attach the stair bracket to the side WITH the baluster holes. Attach bracket using four #8-18 x 1″ self-drilling screws provided). Install upper screws first into underside of T-Rail and then install screws on the side.



13b. If using the T-Rail aluminum stiffener, slide this inside T-Rail as shown. Note that the stiffener must be slightly shorter to allow for brackets to be installed. Screws from brackets are NOT to penetrate the stiffener.

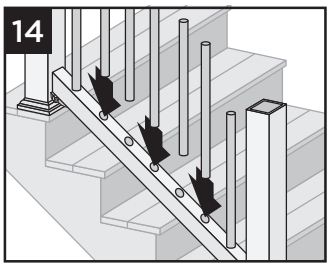


13c. On the T-Rail at the LOWER POST location, attach the bracket to the side WITH the baluster holes. Attach bracket using four #8-18 x 1″ self-drilling screws (provided). Install upper screws first into underside of T-Rail and then install screws on the side.



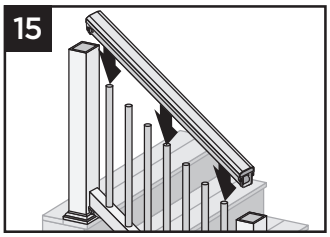
Installing Balusters

14. Slide remaining balusters into bottom rail until balusters are fully seated.

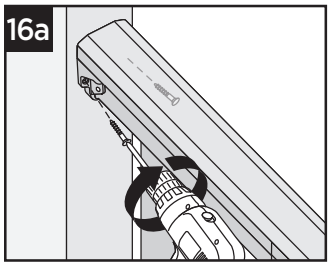


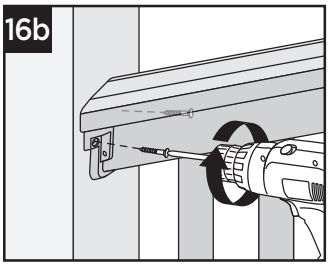
Attachment of T-Rail to Post

15. Place T-Rail onto balusters, allowing the T-Rail to rest on the surface of the balusters.



TIP: Pre-drill prior to screw installation using a 7/64″ drill bit.



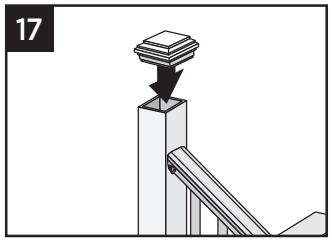


16a. Attach stair T-Rail bracket to upper post using two #9-16 x 2″ screws *(provided)*.

16b. Attach stair T-Rail bracket to lower post using two #9-16 x 2″ screws *(provided)*.

Attaching Post Caps and Installing Foot Block

17. Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive. (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs). Attach foot block per foot block instructions.



NOTE: *Clean up any excess adhesive before it dries.*

TREX SELECT® HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING

NOTES:

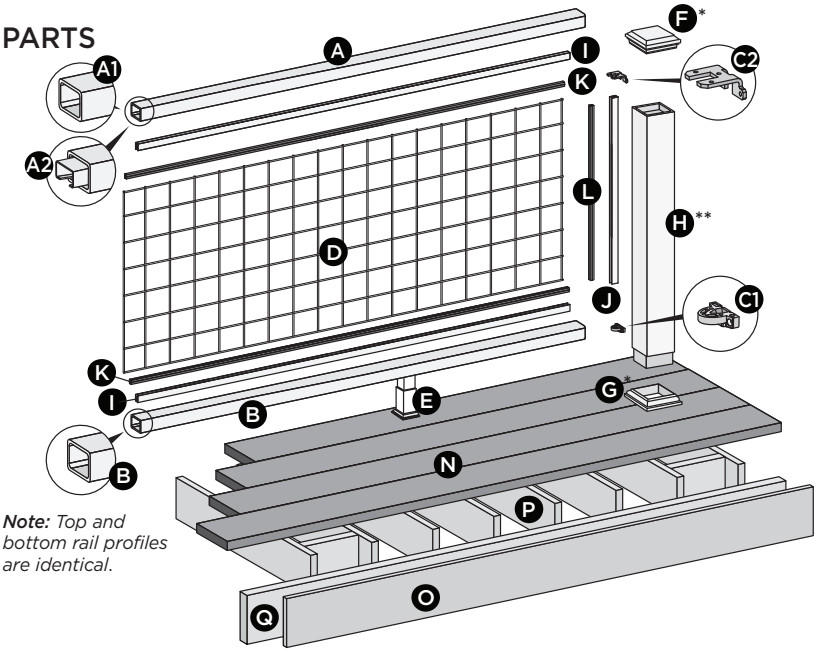
- *TREX SELECT RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST. NOTCHING OF PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS OR POSTS INSTALLED ON OUTSIDE OF RIM JOIST IS NOT ALLOWED.*
- *All Trex Select Railing lengths are manufactured at CLEAR SPAN dimensions (spanning between space of posts): 72″ for 6′ clear span and 96″ for 8′ clear span. Note that railings are designed to be slightly longer than required to allow for very slight play in post placement trimming may be required. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO MEASURE FIRST.*
- *IF INSTALLING RAILING OVER 6′, THE TREX ALUMINUM RAIL STIFFENER MUST BE USED TO MEET CODE REQUIREMENTS.*
- *Trex Aluminum Rail Stiffener is not included in 8′ horizontal kits.*

Care and Cleaning

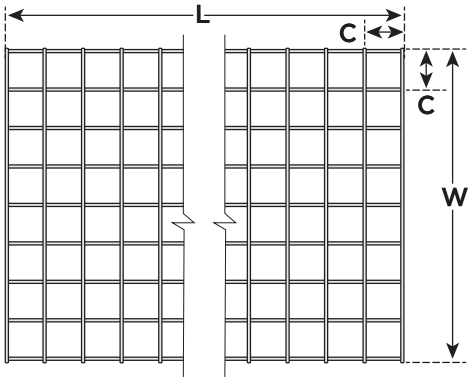
Maintaining the appearance of your Trex Select railing is important. Occasional washing is recommended. Over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

- **For detailed cleaning recommendations, please refer to the Trex Railing Care and Cleaning guide found on www.trex.com.**

PARTS



Note: *Top and bottom rail profiles are identical.*



MESH DIMENSIONS CHART			
Carbon Steel–Black			
36″ x 6′	36″	72″	4″
36″ x 8′	36″	96″	4″
72″ x 60″	72″	60″	4″

IMPORTANT NOTE: ALL MESH PANELS WILL HAVE TO BE CUT, SEE DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS REGARDING PROPER CUT SIZES

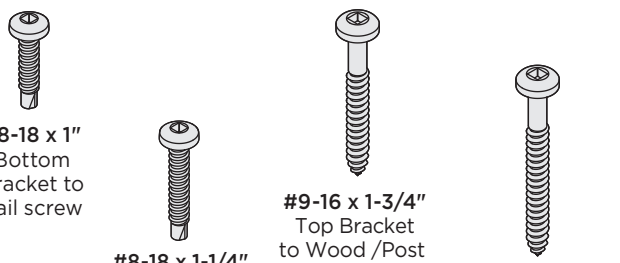
A1. Top rail
A2. Top Rail with Stiffener (for over 72″ installation–not included)
B. Bottom Rail
C1. Bottom Brackets
C2. Top Brackets
D. Mesh Panel
E. Adjustable foot block
F. Post sleeve cap*
G. Post sleeve skirt*
H. Post sleeve**
> Select 4x4 post sleeve
> Transcend 4x4 post sleeve
> Transcend 6x6 post sleeve
I. Top and Bottom Channels
J. Vertical Channels
K. Top and Bottom Anti-Rattle Gaskets
L. Side Anti-Rattle Gaskets
M. Mesh Caps (not shown above)
N. Trex Decking
O. Trex Fascia
P. Code-approved Wood Joist – 2 x 8
Q. Code-approved Wood Rim Joist – 2 x 8 or Larger

* *Item not included in the railing kits. Note when using the Select post sleeve, the cap and skirt are included with this post sleeve.*

** *4″ x 4″ (102 mm x 102 mm) and 6″ x 6″ (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post.*

NOTES:

- *Ensure pressure-treated posts are installed at proper heights. If installing 42″ (1067 mm) railing, use longer post sleeves and measure accordingly to ensure a proper cut. DO NOT CUT TO ACTUAL 42″ LENGTH WITHOUT CONFIRMING WHAT STYLE OF RAILING YOU ARE INSTALLING.*
- **See specific installation instructions for attachment of Trex post mounts or Trex Joist Mount Posts prior to installing any railing.*



#8-18 x 1″ Bottom Bracket to Rail screw

#8-18 x 1-1/4″ Top Bracket to Rail screw, Channel Attachment screw

#9-16 x 1-3/4″ Top Bracket to Wood /Post Sleeve screw

#9-16 x 2″ Bottom Bracket to Wood/Post Sleeve screw

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING
TREX SELECT®

Read all instructions BEFORE installation.

Important: Post sleeves are **NOT** to be cut for this design style.

Installing Pressure-Treated Posts

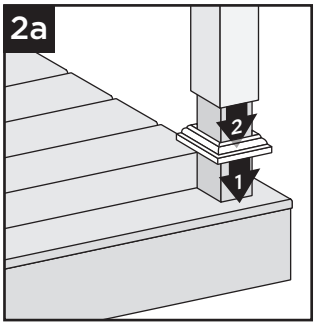
1. ***PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.***

» *Posts are to be installed 6′ or 8′ clear span to accommodate appropriate railing length.*

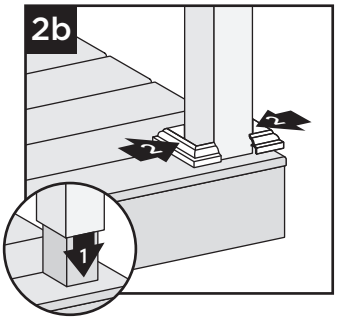
NOTE: *Smaller spans are allowed.*

Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves

2a. If using a 1-piece skirt, slide post sleeve skirt over post and down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.



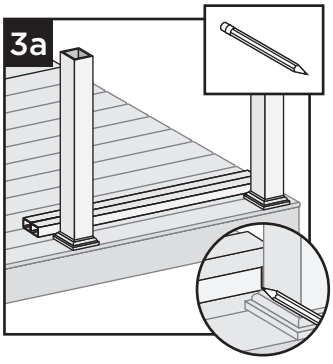
2b. If using a two-piece skirt Slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.



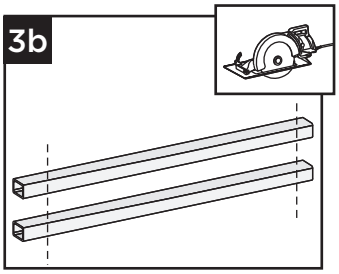
NOTE: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

Cutting Railings (if required)

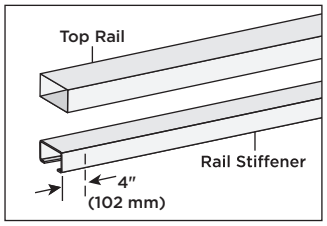
3a. Position bottom and top rails between posts and mark rails at post locations.



3b. Cut railing at marked locations.

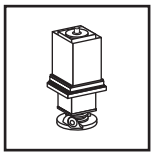


NOTE: *For any rail lengths over 6′ AND when using aluminum rail stiffener, remove this from the top rail and cut the stiffener 4″ shorter than the top rail cut length.*



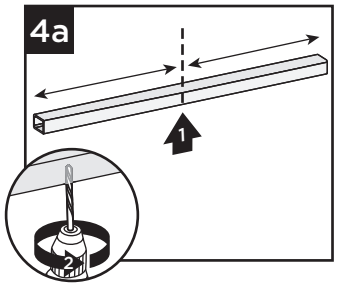
IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING FOOT BLOCK INSTALLATION:

» *Refer to detailed instructions (Trex Select rail instructions) included with foot block prior to installation of railing section as these include other required steps for proper installation.*



Attaching Foot Block to Bottom Rail and Adding Weep Holes

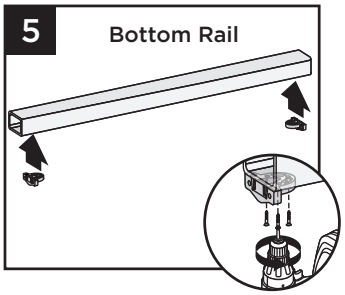
4a. Invert the bottom rail. Center and drill a hole using a 3/16″ (5 mm) drill bit. This will be location for foot block attachment (to be installed last).



4b. Keeping bottom rail inverted, Use same drill bit, center and drill weep holes through bottom rail at 4 evenly spanned locations to allow for water drainage.

Attaching Bottom Brackets to Bottom Rails

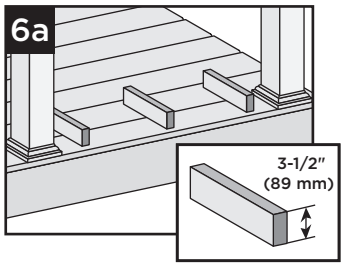
5. Position brackets on each end of BOTTOM RAIL. Attach brackets using three #8-18 x 1″ self-drilling screws *(provided)*.



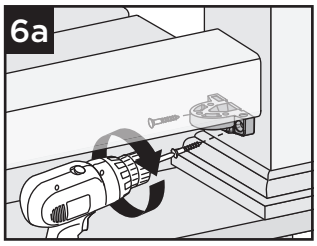
NOTE: *For ease of bracket attachment place rail against stationary flat vertical surface along with bracket.*

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

6a. Using scrap material (i.e. 2 x 4s, decking boards, etc.) cut at least three support blocks at 3-1/2″ (89 mm) in height. Place one each on decking surface beside each post and one near center of span.



6b. Center bottom rail on support blocks and install bottom brackets on each post using two #9-16 x 2″ wood screws (provided). If using a 6x6 post sleeve use two #9-16 x 2 1/2″ screws (not provided).



***NOTE:** screws go in at slight angle.*

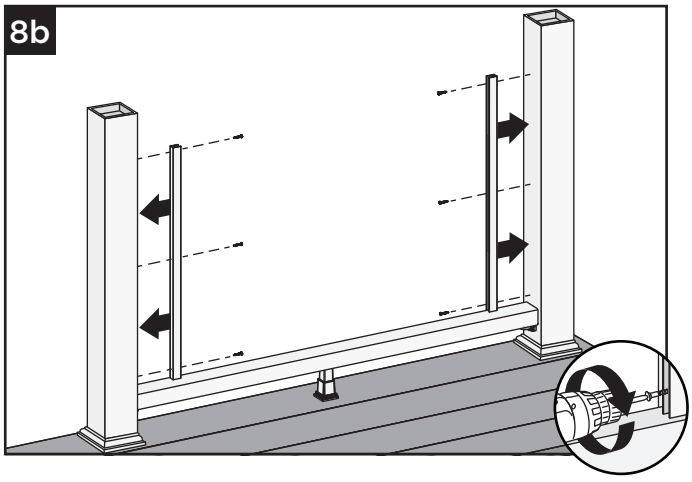
IMPORTANT NOTE: SET DRILL TO LOW SPEED AND LOW CLUTCH SETTING WHEN INSTALLING THESE SCREWS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.

Attaching Foot Block

7. Attach Foot Block per foot block instructions.

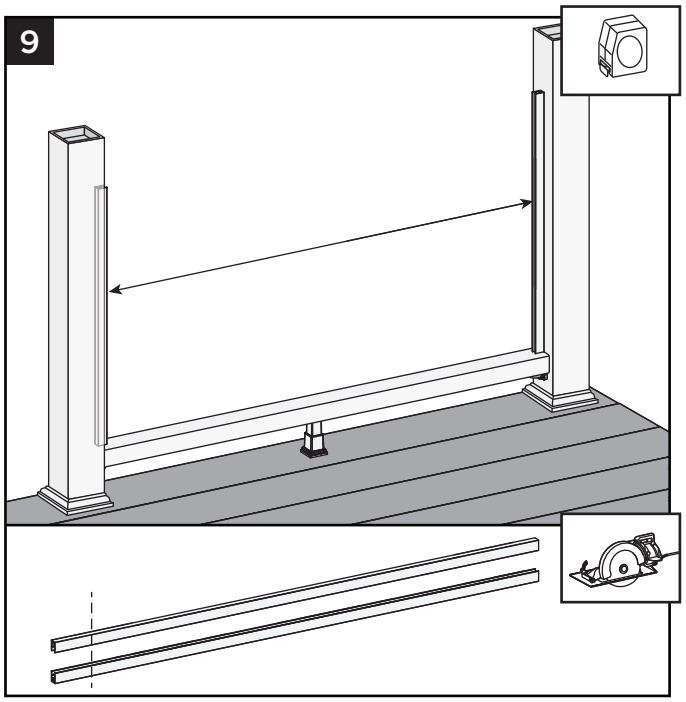
Cutting (when required) and Installing Vertical Channels

8a. For 36″ rail heights, measure and cut vertical channels to 28 3/4″. For 44″ rail heights, vertical channels will not require cutting.



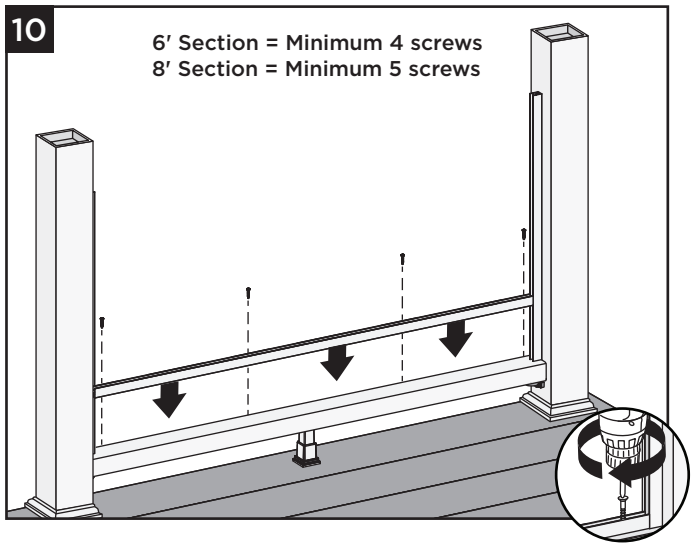
8b. Place vertical channels on bottom rail centered between posts, and attach screws into channel using three #8-18 x 1 1/4″ self-drilling screws *(provided)*. Install **lower** and **uppers screws** approximately **1″** from each end of vertical channel. Center and install remaining screws.

Measuring and Cutting Top and Bottom Channels (when required)



9. Measure distance between vertical channels, and cut top and bottom channels to this length.

Install Bottom Channels



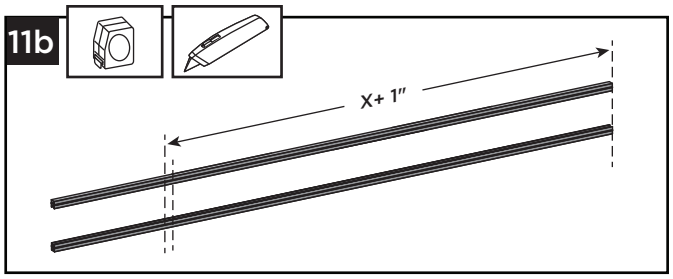
10. Center and install bottom channel using #8-18 x 1 1/4″ self-drilling screws *(provided),* minimum four screws for 6′ section and minimum five screws for 8′ section.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

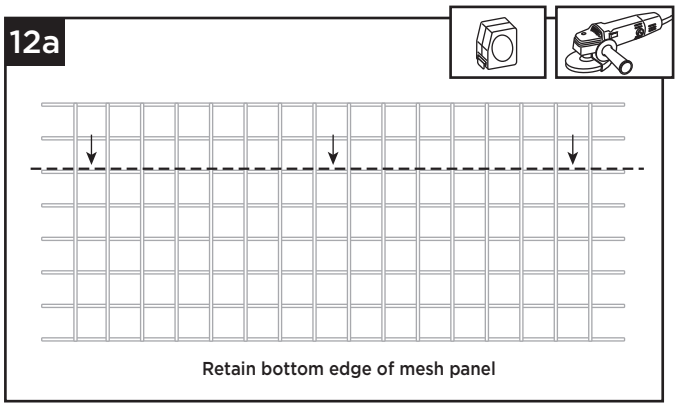
Measuring and Cutting Anti-Rattle Gaskets

11a. For 36" rail heights, measure, and cut side anti-rattle gaskets to 27". For 44" rail heights, side anti-rattle gaskets will not require cutting.



11b. For top and bottom anti-rattle gaskets, using same measurement from top/bottom channels (see step 9), add 1" and cut top and bottom anti-rattle gaskets to this measurement.

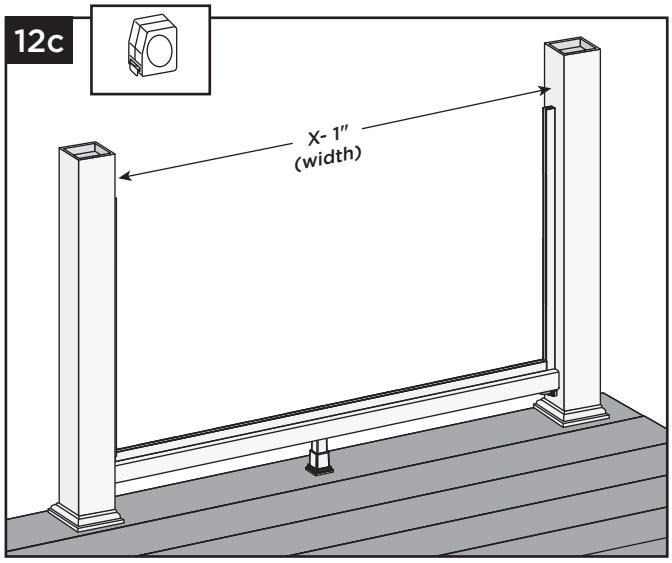
Cutting Mesh



12a. WHEN INSTALLING **36" HEIGHT AT FULL SPAN**: For 36" rail heights, cut the top two rows of the mesh. **DO NOT CUT BOTTOM OF MESH PANEL**.

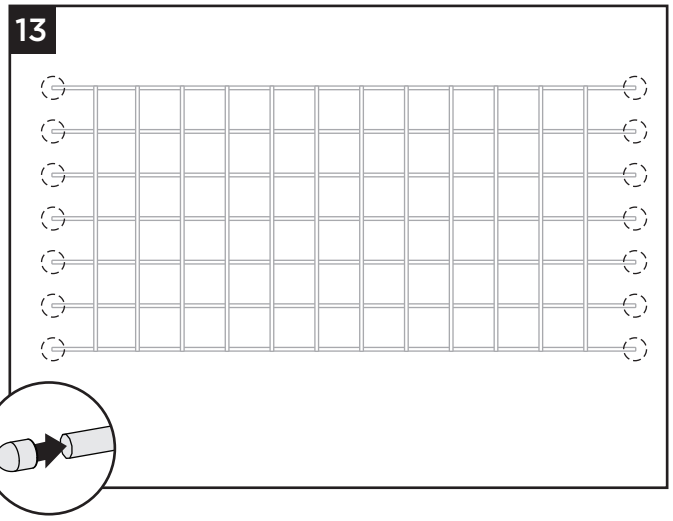
NOTE: *An angle grinder (with proper blade) is recommended for cutting wire mesh. (ALWAYS USE PROPER SAFETY GEAR WHEN CUTTING WITH ANGLE GRINDER.) Note that heavy duty bolt cutters can also be used.*

12b. WHEN INSTALLING **44" rail heights**, mesh will not require cutting.



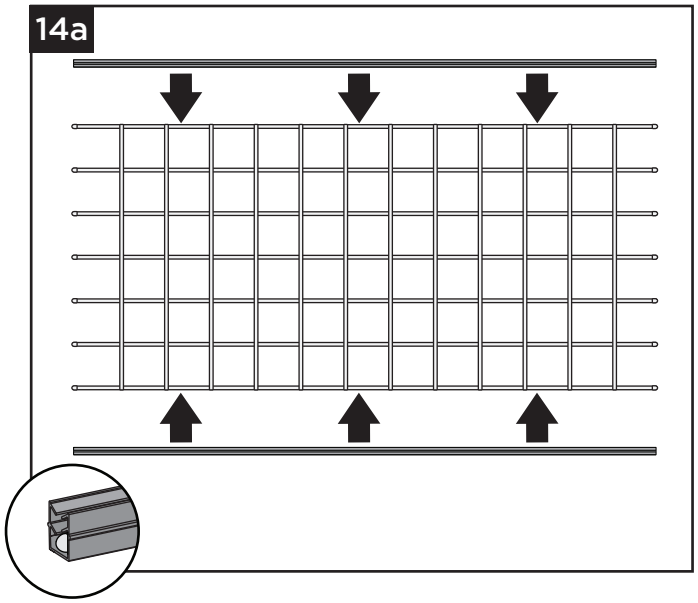
12c. CUTTING MESH WIDTH **(REQUIRED FOR ANY SPAN)**: For width, measure distance between posts and subtract 1", and cut mesh to length calculated.

Installing Mesh Caps

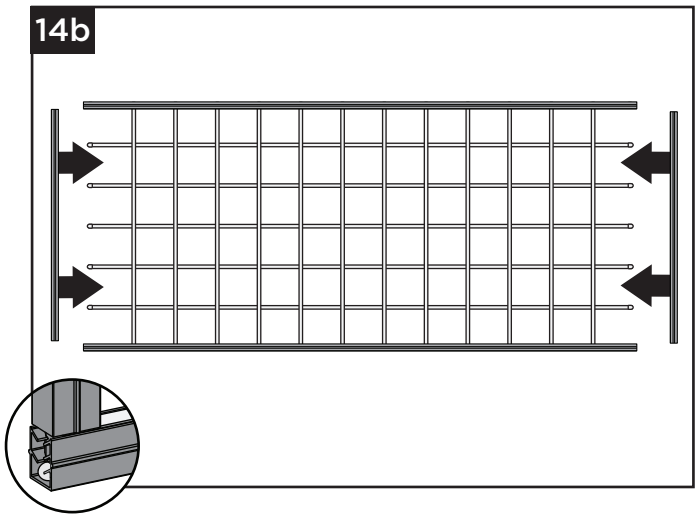


13. Place mesh caps on all cut ends of mesh for corrosion protection.

Installing Anti-Rattle Gaskets onto Mesh

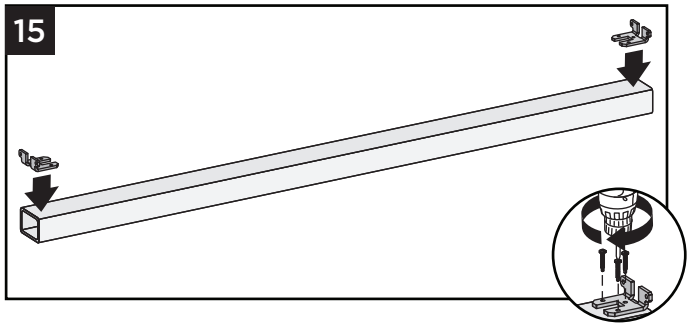


14a. Install top and bottom gaskets onto top and bottom of mesh panel. Make sure gaskets are centered and fully seated onto mesh.



14b. Install side anti-rattle gaskets. Ensure gaskets are full seated.

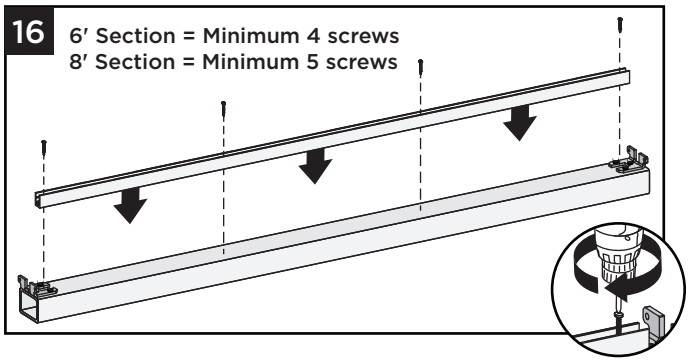
Attaching Top Brackets on Top Rail



15. Center top brackets on each end of TOP RAIL. Attach bracket using three #8-18 x 1 1/14" self-drilling screws *(provided).*

NOTE: *For ease of bracket attachment place rail against stationary flat vertical surface along with bracket.*

Installing Top Channel to Top Rail

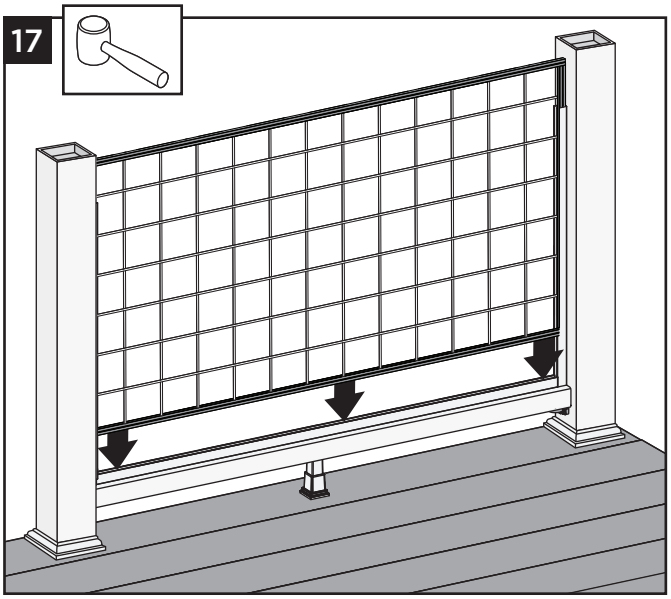


16. Center top channel in between slots in bracket, also centering on rail (NOTE: there will be a slight gap on each end between brackets and channel), and install using #8-18 x 1 1/4" self-drilling screws *(provided)*: Using a minimum four screws for 6′ section and minimum five screws for 8′ section.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

Installing Mesh Panel



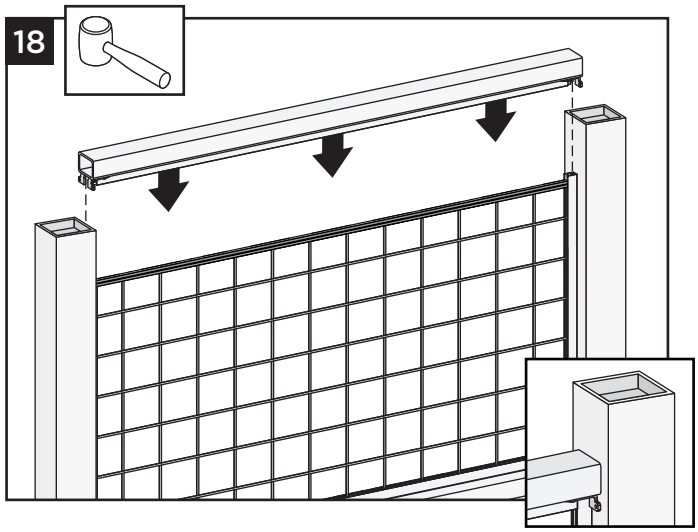
17. Slide mesh panel down into side channels/side anti-rattle gaskets and fully seat into bottom channel/ anti-rattle gaskets.

IMPORTANT NOTES:

» *ENSURE THAT THE NON-CUT SIDE OF THE MESH PANEL IS PLACED IN THE BOTTOM CHANNEL.*

» *IF NECESSARY USE SOAPY WATER ON THE VERTICAL ANTI-RATTLE GASKETS TO ALLOW MESH PANEL TO SLIDE DOWN MORE EASILY.*

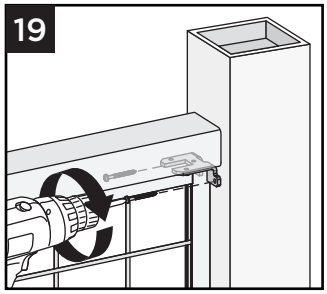
Installing Top Rail onto Mesh Panel



18. Place top rail assembly onto mesh rail, pressing down top rail until brackets fully rest on side channels.

NOTE: *Use a rubber mallet if required to fully seat top rail.*

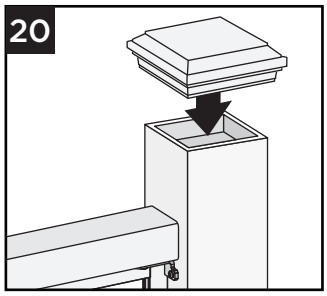
19. Secure top bracket to post using two wood #9-16 x 1 3/4″ screws *(provided)*.



IMPORTANT NOTE: *SET DRILL TO LOW SPEED AND LOW CLUTCH SETTING WHEN INSTALLING THESE SCREWS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.*

Attaching Post Caps

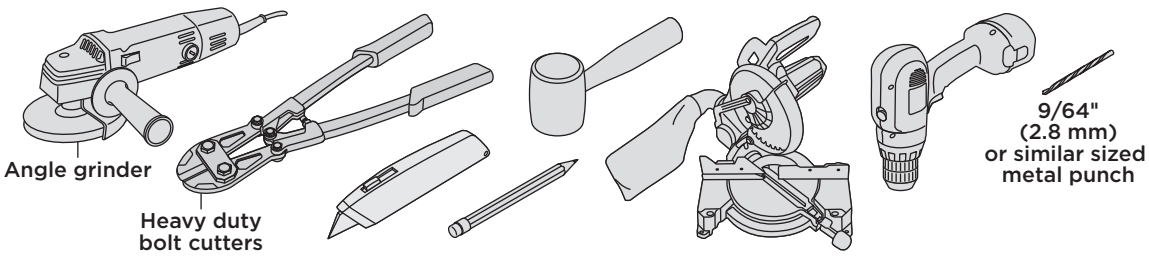
20. Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs).

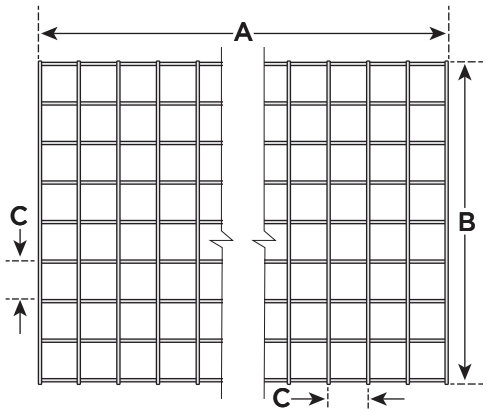


NOTE: *Clean up any excess adhesive before it dries.*

TREX SELECT® MESH STAIR RAILING

TOOLS NEEDED



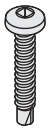


MESH DIMENSIONS CHART			
Carbon Steel – Black			
36" x 6'	36"	72"	4"
36" x 8'	36"	96"	4"
72" x 60"	72"	60"	4"

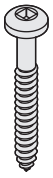
IMPORTANT NOTE: ALL MESH PANELS WILL HAVE TO BE CUT, SEE DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS REGARDING PROPER CUT SIZES

Screws Provided

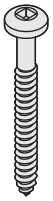
#8-18 x 1" Bottom Bracket to Rail Screw



#8-18 x 1-1/4" Top Bracket to Rail screw, Channel Attachment screw



#9-16 x 1-3/4" Top Bracket to Wood/Post Sleeve screw



#9-16 x 3" Bottom Bracket to Wood/Post Sleeve screw

NOTES:

- *TREX SELECT RAILINGS ARE DESIGNED TO BE INSTALLED OVER THE DECKING FRAME OR ON INSIDE OF RIM JOIST. NOTCHING OF PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS OR POSTS INSTALLED ON OUTSIDE OF RIM JOIST IS NOT ALLOWED.*
- *POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6'. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°-37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6' SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *IF INSTALLING STAIR RAILING OVER 6', THE TREX ALUMINUM RAIL STIFFENER MUST BE USED TO MEET CODE REQUIREMENTS.*
- *Trex Aluminum Rail Stiffener is not included in 8' horizontal kits.*

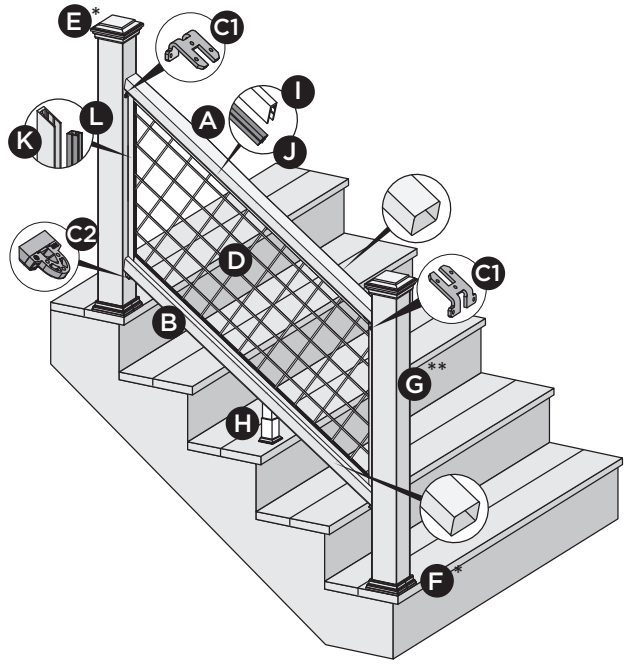
Care and Cleaning

Maintaining the appearance of your Trex Select railing is important. Occasional washing is recommended. Over time your railing may show signs of weathering as a result of exposure to the elements. The frequency of cleaning will depend on the environment and exposure to various types of elements.

» For detailed cleaning recommendations, please refer to the Trex Railing Care and Cleaning guide found on www.trex.com.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

PARTS



A. Top Stair Rail
B. Bottom Stair Rail
C1. Top Stair Bracket
C2. Bottom Stair Bracket
D. Mesh Panel
E. Post sleeve cap*
F. Post sleeve skirt*
G. Post Sleeve*#
   > Select 4x4 post sleeve
   > Transcend 4x4 post sleeve
   > Transcend 6x6 post sleeve
H. Adjustable foot block (quantity of one is required for all railing span lengths)
I. Top and Bottom Channels
J. Top and Bottom Anti-Rattle Gaskets
K. Side Channels
L. Side Anti-Rattle Gaskets
M. Mesh Caps (not shown)

* *Item not included in the Select railing kits.* ***Note:*** *when using the Select post sleeve, the cap and skirt are included with this post sleeve.*

*# *4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) and 6" x 6" (152 mm x 152 mm) post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post.*

HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL MESH RAILING
TREX SELECT®

1. Installing Pressure-Treated Posts

» ***PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE TREATED POSTS.***

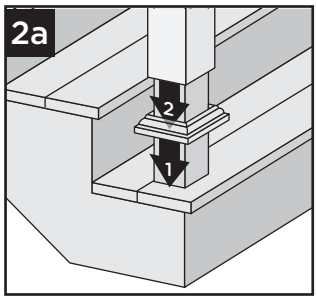
» ***PRESSURE TREATED POSTS MUST BE INSTALLED ON INSIDE OF STAIR STRINGER AND AT NOSE OF STAIR TREAD.***

» ***POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE (32°- 37°) AT WHICH THE RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.***

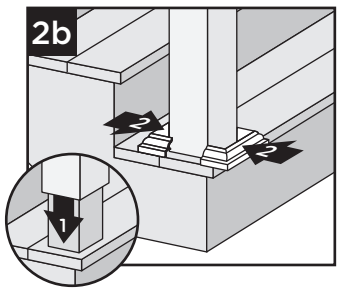
» *Post sleeve longer than 39" (991 mm) will be needed on the lower section of stair rail to accommodate stair angle.*

Installing Post Sleeve Skirts and Post Sleeves

2a. When using the Select post sleeve and one-piece skirt, slide post sleeve skirt over post and down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.



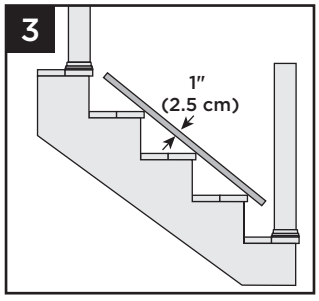
2b. When using the Transcend post sleeve and two-piece skirt, slide post sleeve over post and down to rest on decking surface. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.



Note: *Shims can be used to plumb post sleeves.*

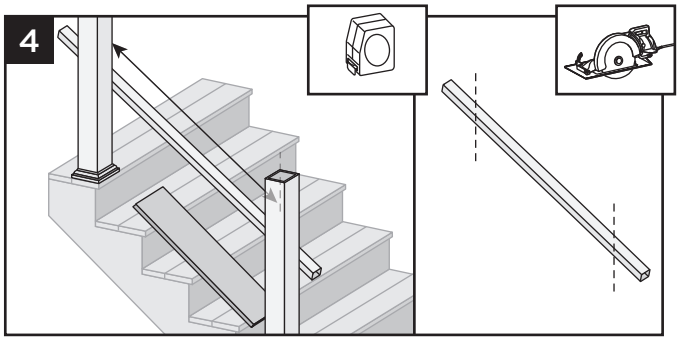
Measuring and Cutting Bottom Rail

3. Place a 1" deckboard on the nose of the stair tread.



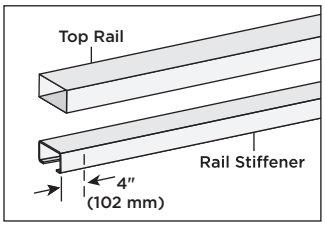
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL MESH STAIR RAILING
TREX SELECT®



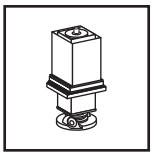
4. Set bottom rail on top of deckboard. Mark rail at post locations and cut bottom rail. ENSURE POSTS ARE PLUMB BEFORE CUTTING RAILING.

NOTE: *For any rail lengths over 6′ AND when using aluminum rail stiffener, remove this from the top rail and cut the stiffener 4″ shorter than the top rail cut length.*

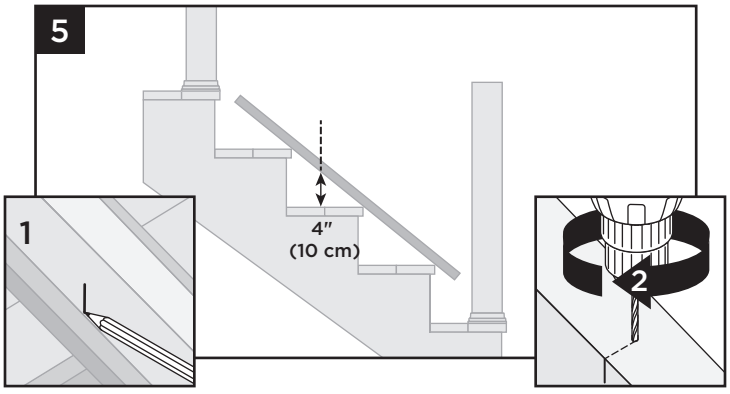


IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING FOOT BLOCK INSTALLATION:

» *Refer to detailed instructions (Trex Select rail instructions) included with foot block prior to installation of railing section as these include other required steps for proper installation.*

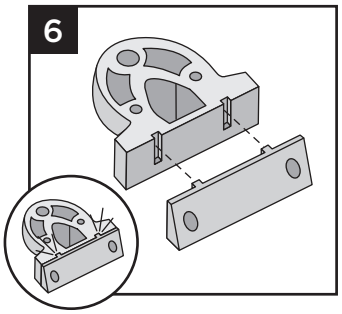


Marking Location for Foot Block to Bottom Rail



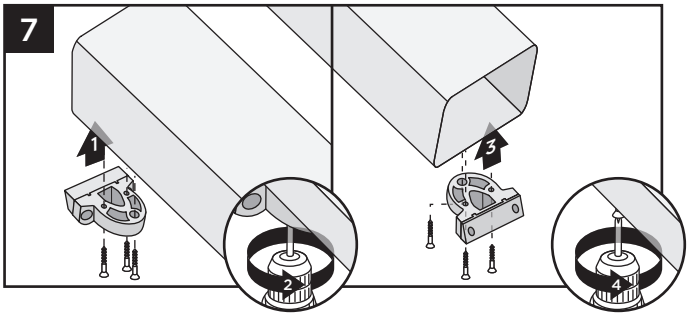
5. Mark approximate location for foot block, allowing a measurement of 4″ maximum. Invert the bottom rail, and at marked location drill a hole using a 3/16″ drill bit in the center of the channel. Foot block is to be installed at last step.

Attaching Brackets to Bottom Rail



6. Snap the top stair adaptor bracket (labeled TOP) to the standard bracket. Repeat for remaining bottom bracket.

TIP: Use a dap of super glue when snapping bracket together. This will help stabilize bracket when installing.

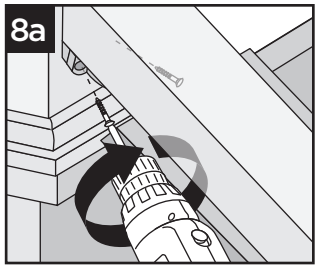


7. On the BOTTOM RAIL, attach the assembled bottom stair brackets to the OPPOSITE SIDE of the baluster holes. Attach both brackets using three #8-18x1″ selfdrilling screws (provided).

Attachment of Bottom Rail to Post

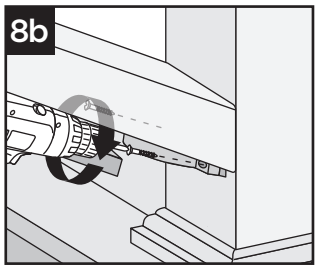
NOTE: *For attachment of brackets to posts, use at least a 3″ long drill bit or extension so as to not damage sides of rails when installing.*

TIP: Pre-drill prior to screw installation using a 7/64″ drill bit



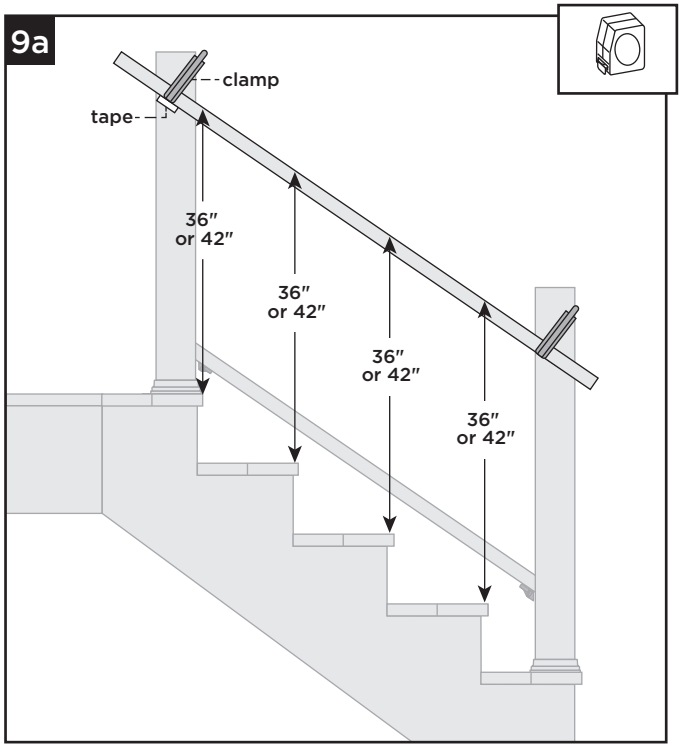
8a. Keeping deck board on stair treads, center bottom rail between posts and attach bottom rail stair bracket to upper post using two #9-16 x 3″ wood screws (provided).

8b. Attach bottom stair rail stair bracket to lower post using two #9-16 x 3" wood screws *(provided)*. (deck board can now be removed).

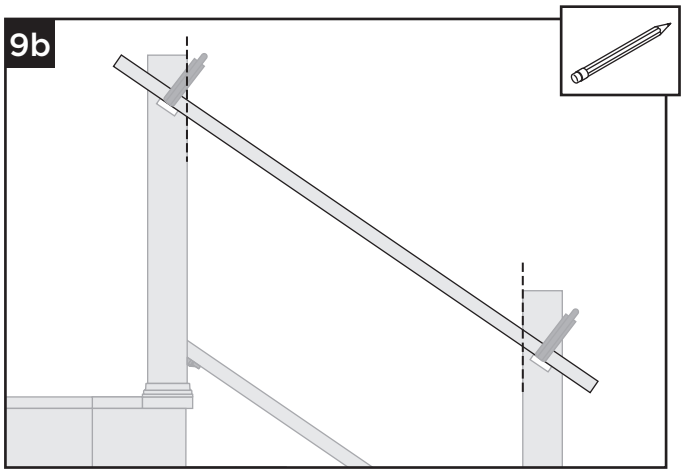


IMPORTANT NOTE:
SET DRILL TO LOW SPEED AND LOW CLUTCH SETTING WHEN INSTALLING THESE SCREWS. DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER.

Mark Location for Top Rail Height and Mark Location for Cutting Top Rail

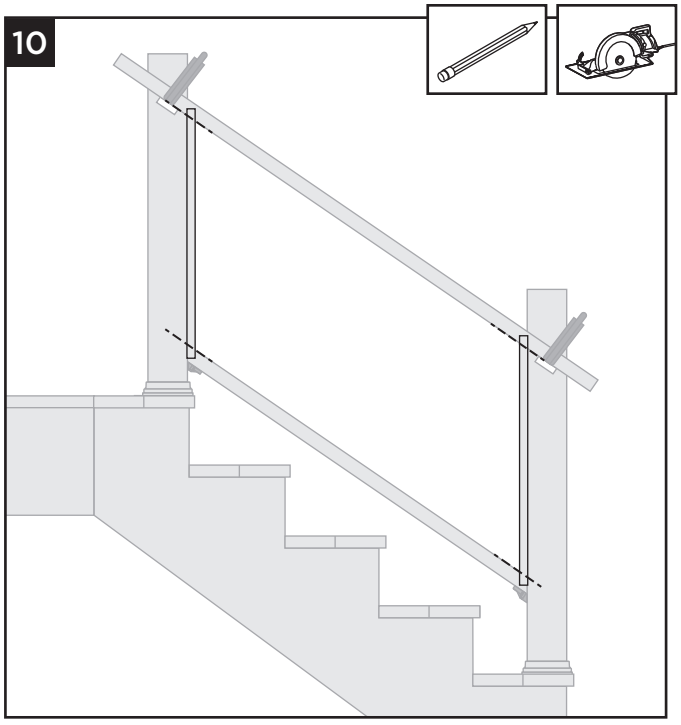


9a. Measure up from front/nose of stair treads as listed above depending on your rail height. Ensure that the measurement is the same at each location. Temporarily clamp top rail in this location, ensuring its parallel to bottom rail. Use a removable tape to mark intersection at top and bottom post. Do not remove top rail until after step 10.



9b. Mark top rail at intersection of posts. Do not remove top rail until after step 10.

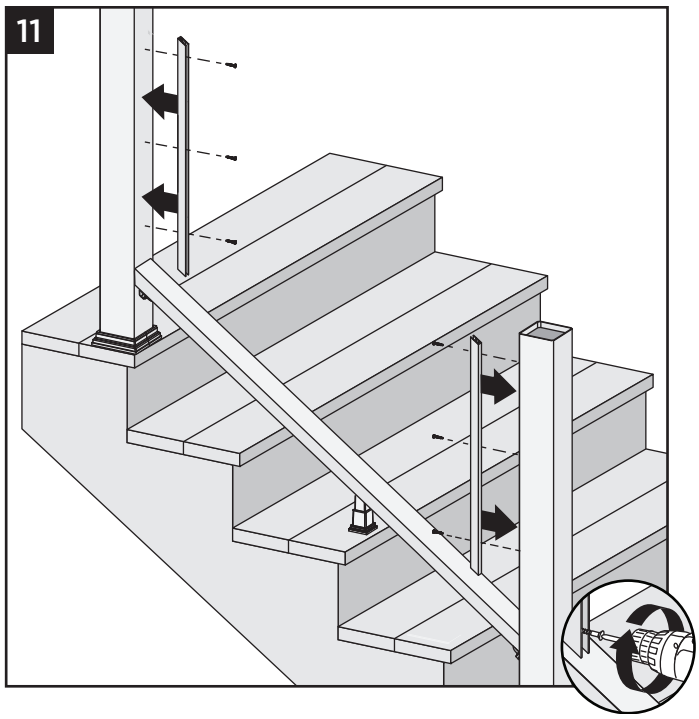
Cutting and Installing Vertical Channels



10. With top rail still in place, align vertical channels against the inside of each post, mark at intersections on top and bottom rails and cut at these locations. Remove the top rail.

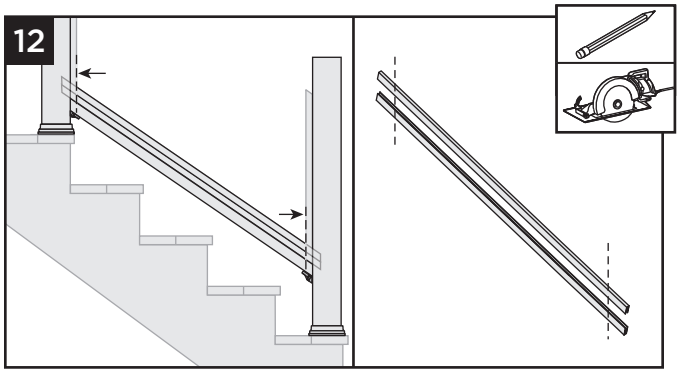
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Installing Vertical Channels



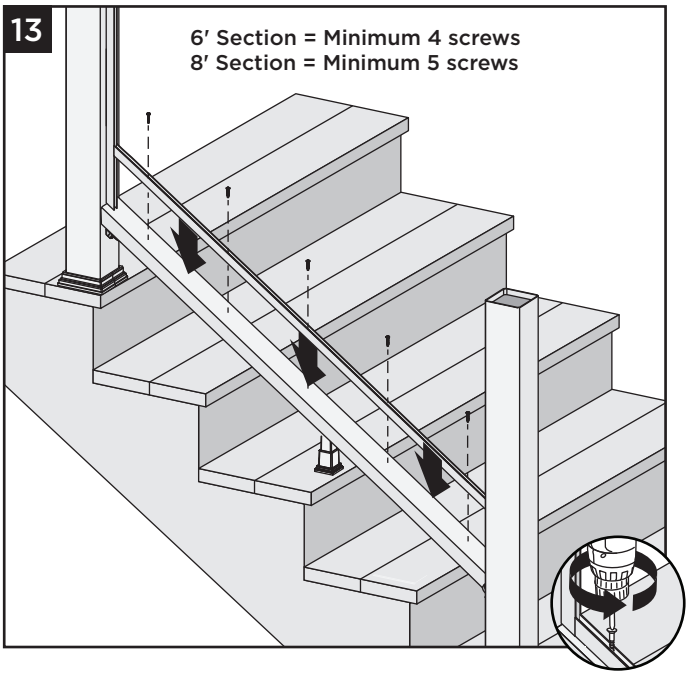
11. Center vertical channel between posts, and attach screws into channel using three #8-18 x 1/14" self-drilling screws (provided). Install lower and upper screws approximately 1" from each end of channel. Center and install remaining screws.

Measuring and Cutting Bottom and Top Channel



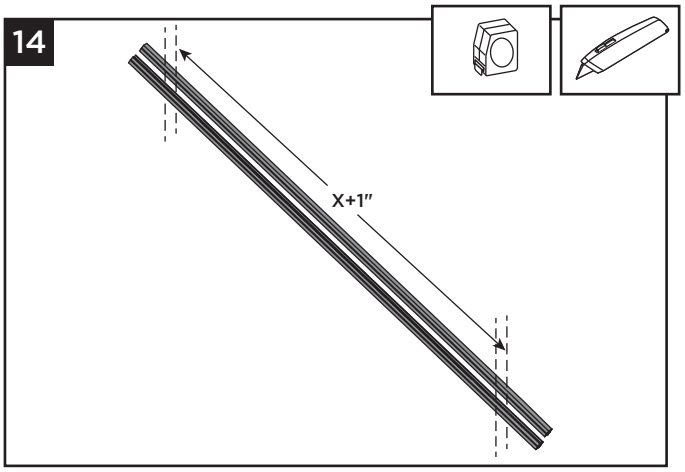
12. Align bottom and top channel so they run parallel to bottom rail, mark at location where these intersect with the side verticals, and cut both bottom and top channel to this length.

Installing Bottom Channel



13. Center and install bottom channel using #8-18 x 1 1/4" self-drilling screws (provided), minimum 4 screws for 6′ section and 5 screws for 8′ section.

Measuring and Cutting Top and Bottom Anti-Rattle Gaskets

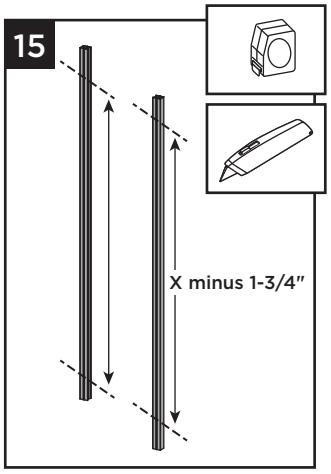


14. Using same measurement from top/bottom channels (see step 12, add 1" and cut top and bottom anti-rattle gaskets to this measurement).

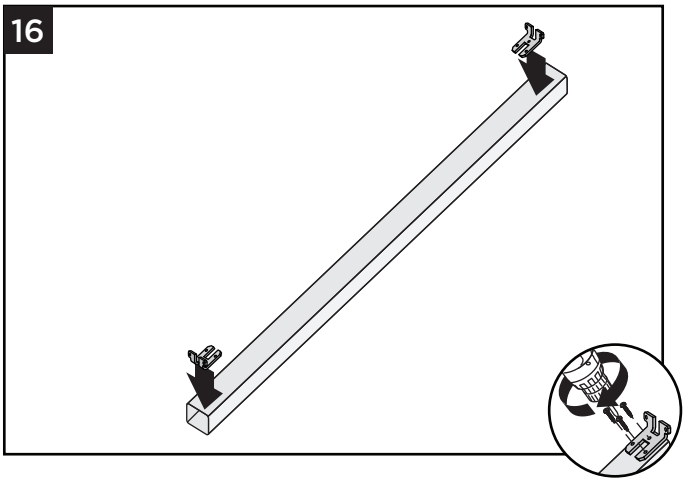
NOTE: *Both sides will have to be cut to accommodate angle.*

Cutting Side Anti-Rattle Gaskets

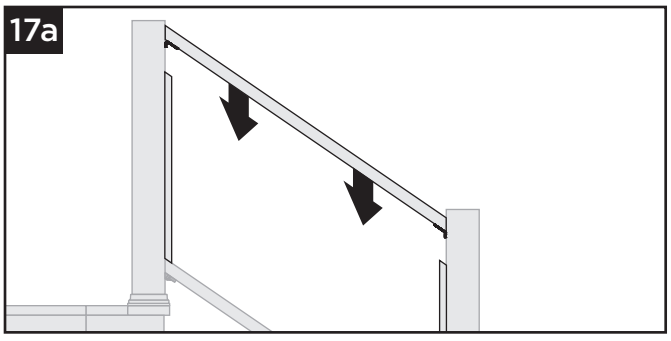
15. Using same measurement from side verticals (see step 10) subtract 1 3/4" and cut side gaskets at same angles as the verticals



Cutting Top Rail and Attaching Top Stair Brackets

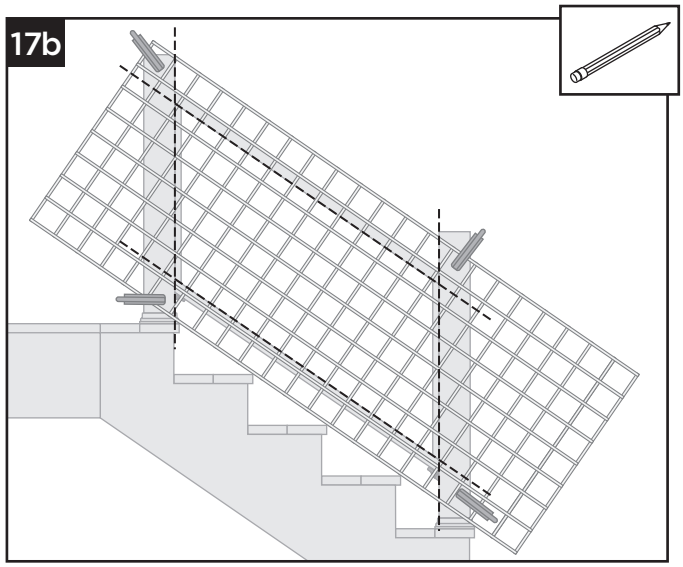


16. Cut top rail at previous marked locations. Center top stair brackets on each end of TOP RAIL. Attach brackets by placing end of rail onto flat surface along with back part of bracket, and attach using three #8-18 x 1 1/14" self-drilling screws (provided).

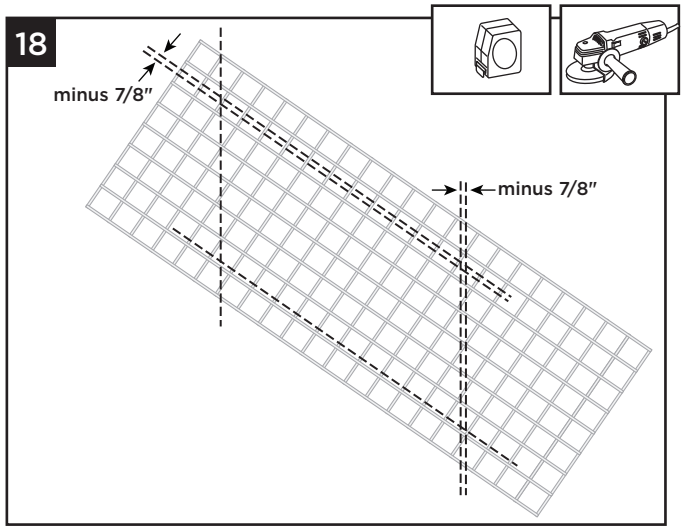


17a. Clamp or loosely place top rail onto side channels.

Measuring and Cutting Mesh Panels



17b. Rest mesh panel on stair treads, and ensure mesh panel is running parallel to bottom rail. Mark mesh where this intersects at inside of rails and posts.

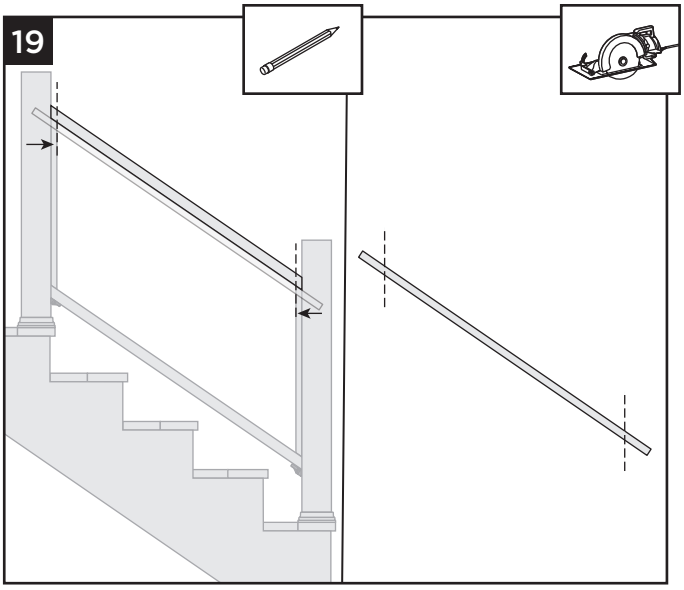


18. Remove mesh panel. Substract 7/8" from top of mesh, and only ONE SIDE of mesh and mark these locations. Cut at all marked lines.

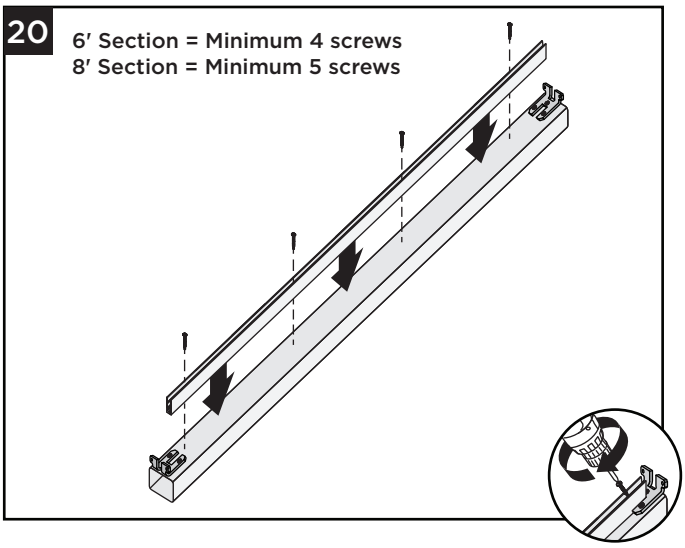
NOTE: *An angle grinder (with proper blade) is recommended for cutting wire mesh. (ALWAYS USE PROPER SAFETY GEAR WHEN CUTTING WITH ANGLE GRINDER.) Note that heavy duty bolt cutters can also be used.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

Measuring and Cutting Top Channel

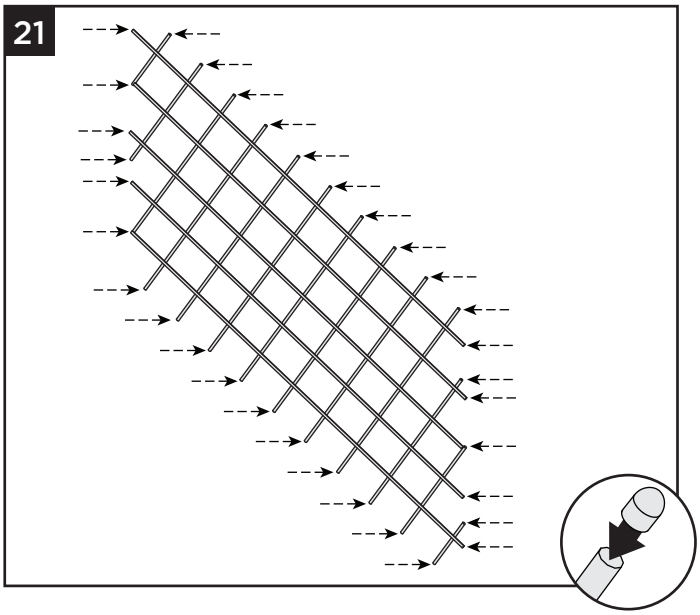


19. With top rail still in place align top channel so it runs parallel to the top rail, mark at locations where this intersects with the side channels as shown, and cut.



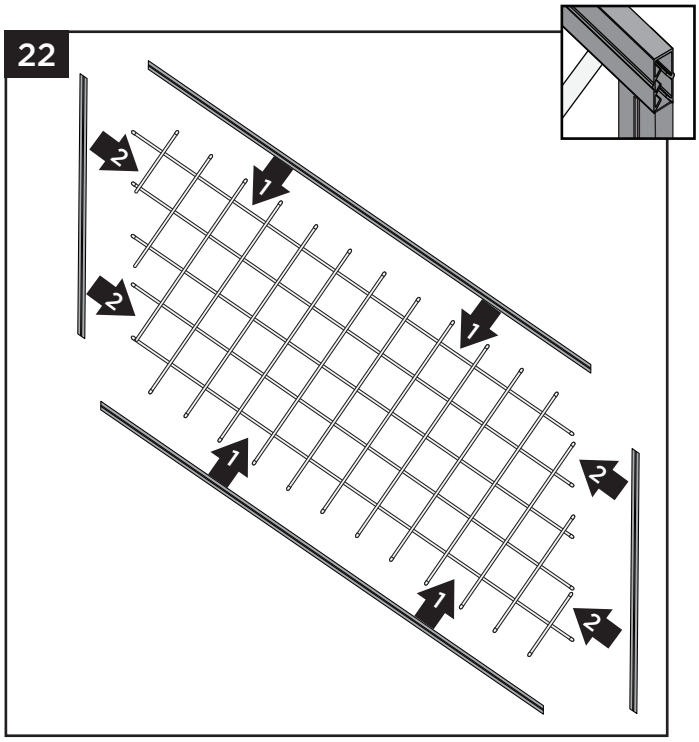
20. Remove top rail, and center top channel between slots in brackets and centering on rail (NOTE: There may be a slight gap on each end between brackets and channel), and install using #8-18 x 1 1/4″ self-drilling screws (provided): Using minimum 4 screws for 6′ section and minimum 5 screws for 8′ section.

Install Mesh Caps



21. Install mesh caps on all cut ends.

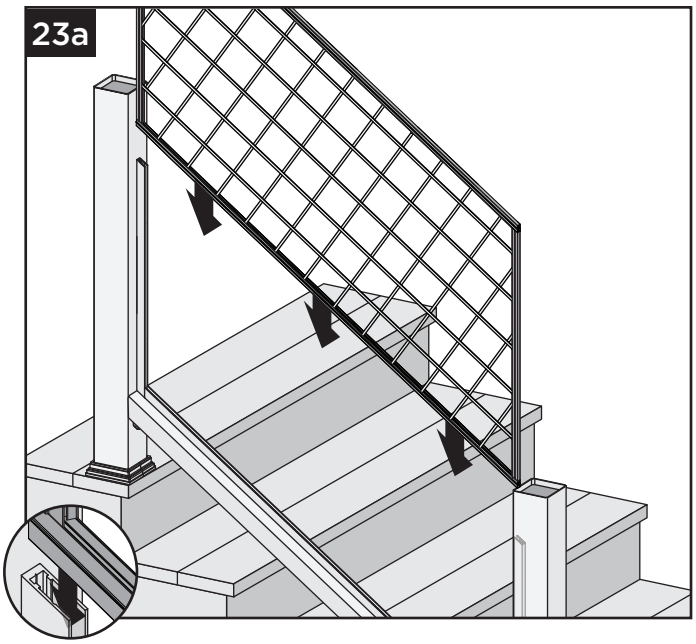
Install Anti-Rattle Gaskets onto Mesh



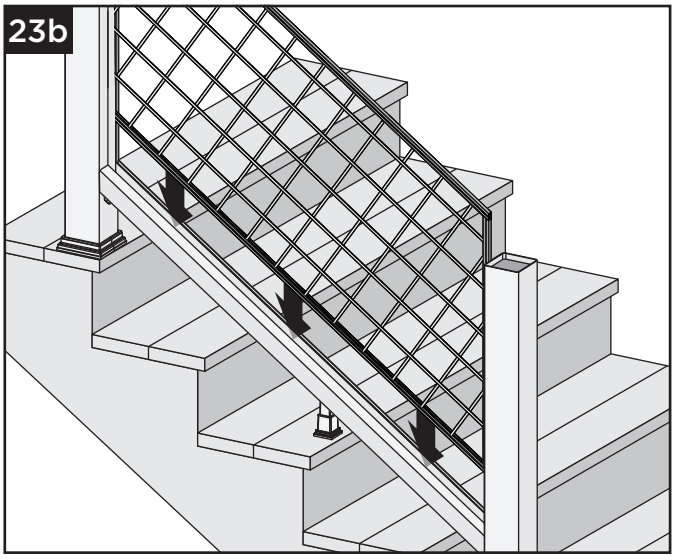
22. Install top and bottom gaskets onto mesh panel, followed by side gaskets. Make sure all gaskets are centered and fully seated.

HOW TO INSTALL MESH STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

Installing Mesh Panel



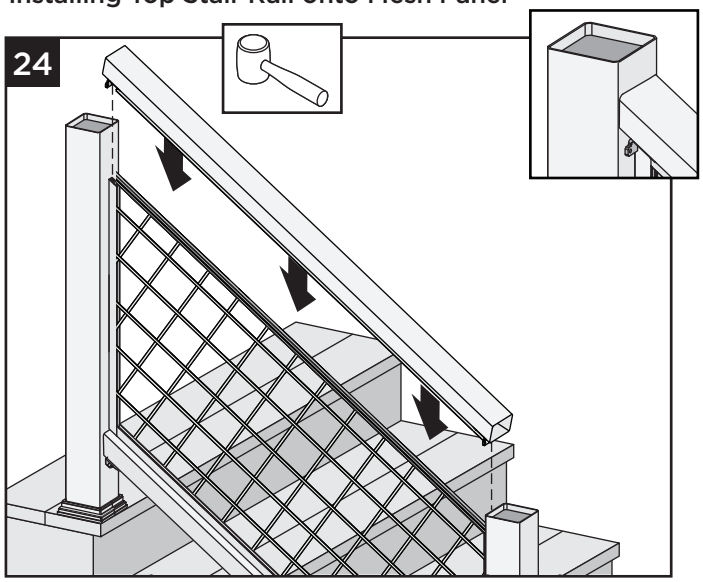
23a. Insert mesh panel with anti-rattle gaskets into side channels.



23b. Push mesh firmly into the bottom and side gaskets.

IMPORTANT NOTE: *IF NECESSARY USE SOAPY WATER ON THE VERTICAL ANTI-RATTLE GASKETS TO ALLOW MESH PANEL TO SLIDE DOWN MORE EASILY.*

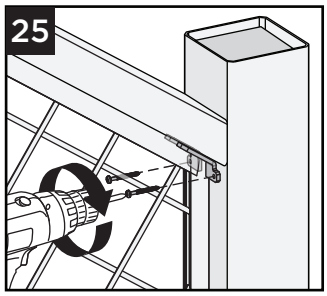
Installing Top Stair Rail onto Mesh Panel



24. Place top rail assembly onto mesh rail, pressing down top rail until brackets fully rest on side channels.

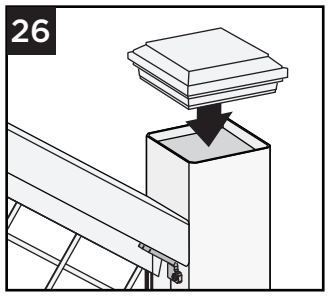
NOTE: *Use a rubber mallet if required to fully seat top rail.*

25. Secure top bracket to post using two #9-16 x 1 3/4" screws *(provided)*.



Attaching Post Caps

26. Secure post caps with silicone or PVC adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs).



NOTE: *Clean up any excess adhesive before it dries.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SELECT® ALUMINUM POSTS

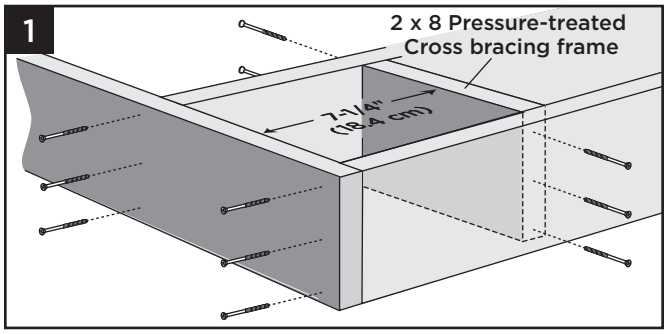
IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *EACH POST MUST BE ATTACHED AS SHOWN TO ENSURE A CODE COMPLIANT AND SAFE INSTALLATION.*
- *ALWAYS refer to your local building code official prior to installing any railing system to ensure all code and safety requirements are met. Trex cannot be held responsible for improper or non-recommended installations.*
- *When installing Trex Select Aluminum posts on ACQ surfaces, use an appropriate isolation barrier between post and surface (contact local building code official if needed).*
- *All Trex Select Aluminum stair installations require the use of a 53" (134.6 cm) stair post, measured and cut to appropriate length if necessary.*

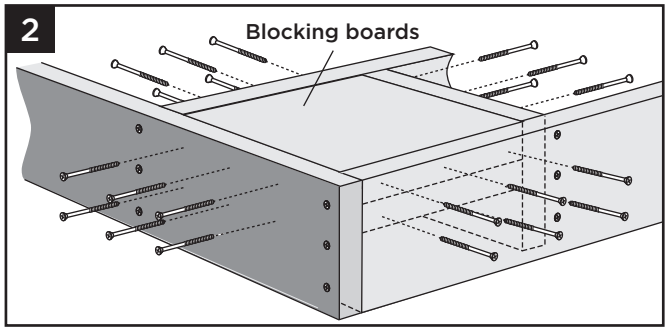
TOOLS AND MATERIALS NEEDED

- Drill and/or screw gun
- 1/2" (1.3 cm) drill bit for wood
- Blocking – 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) pressure-treated Southern Yellow Pine or equivalent
- Qty: 36 (per post) – 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws

Installing Select Aluminum Posts on Pressure-treated Wood Framing (Corner Post Installation)



1. Install 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) cross bracing frame in between joists at 7-1/4" (18.4 cm). Attach a total of twelve 3" (7.6 cm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

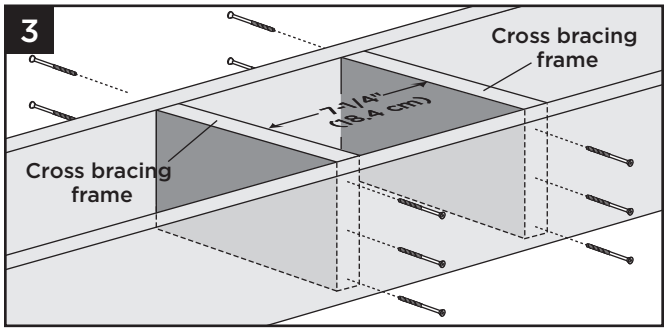


2. Install two 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of twenty-four 3" (7.6 cm) pressure-treated compatible screws (not provided).

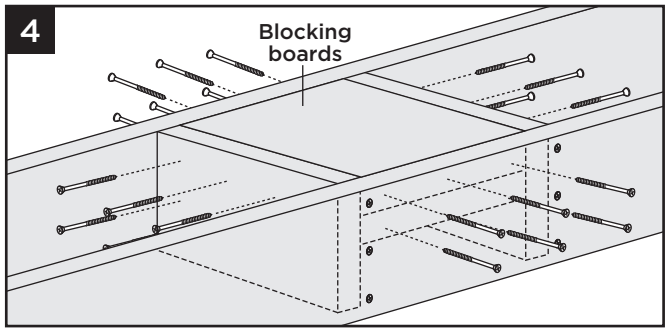
NOTE: *TO ENSURE THE BLOCKING IS FULLY SECURE, USE THE AMOUNT OF SCREWS indicated ABOVE.*

TIP: Use two additional screws to "sandwich" blocking boards together for easier attachment to framing.

Line Post Installation

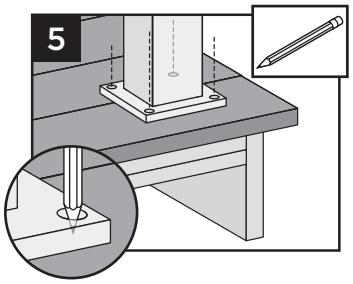


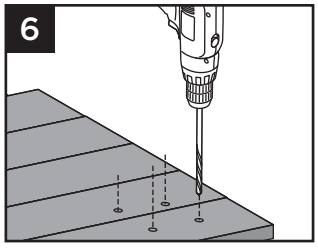
3. Install two 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) cross bracing frames in between joists at 7-1/4" (18.4 cm). Attach a total of twelve 3" (7.6 cm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.



4. Install two 2 x 8 (5.1 cm x 20.3 cm) boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of twenty-four 3" (7.6 cm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

- ***Metal backplate is only required for 2.5" (6.4 cm) post in IRC installations.*** *(Consult local code official for more information.)*

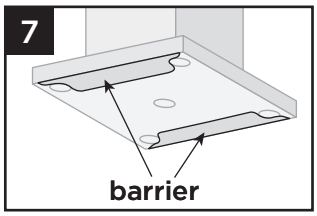




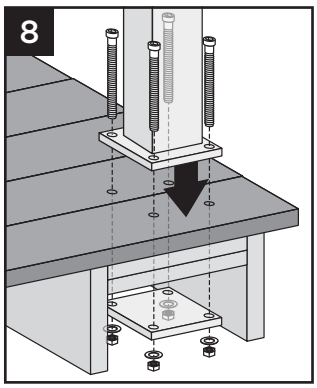
5. Using post as a template, mark locations of holes.
6. Drill through decking and blocking boards using 5/8" diameter bit (long drill bit will be required).

Installing Select Aluminum Posts on Pressure-treated Wood Framing (Corner Post Installation)

7. Insert (2) stainless steel barrier strips (not provided) under the mounting bolt holes. BARRIER STRIPS ARE REQUIRED ONLY IF ATTACHING POST DIRECTLY TO PRESSURE-TREATED FRAMING.



8. Attach posts using four 3/8" x 6" (1.0 cm x 15.2 cm) hex cap bolts, washers, and nuts, along with aluminum back plate on underside of blocking. If the project requires IRC compliance, this back plate MUST be installed under the decking to ensure this will meet code compliance. Reference SKU part number ALPOSTHWDECK for required hardware and aluminum plate. (Consult local code official for more information on IRC Compliance.)



TREX® 4X4 ALUMINUM POST SLEEVE

» ***Trex® 4x4 aluminum post sleeves can be used to fit over a pressure-treated post or Trex® Surface Mount Post Mounts.***

4x4 Pressure-treated Post:

- *Cover 4x4 pressure-treated post with plastic, house wrap, or similar product before installing 4x4 aluminum post sleeve.*
- *Ensure to use bracket to post screws that are supplied with the Trex railing product being used, do not substitute hardware.*
- *Pre-drilling through 4x4 aluminum post sleeve is required for all Trex railing products, with the exception of Trex® Select® Aluminum Railing as this uses a SS self-tapping screw.*

Trex® Surface Mount Post:

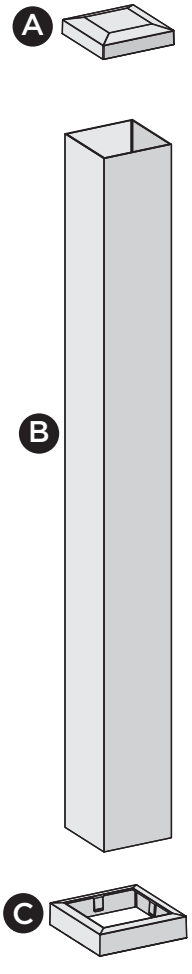
- *When using Trex® Surface Mount Posts, use bracket to post screws that are supplied with the surface mount posts, do NOT use bracket to post screws that are provided with railing products. See Trex® Surface Mount Post instructions for details.*
- *Pre-drilling through the 4x4 aluminum post sleeve is required.*

» ***Cannot be used with corner rail/Birdsmouth installations.***

PARTS

A. Aluminum Post Cap
B. Aluminum Sleeve
C. Aluminum Post Skirt

4X4 ALUMINUM POST SLEEVE			
Available Lengths	37.5"	43.5"	53"



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SELECT® ALUMINUM HORIZONTAL RAILING

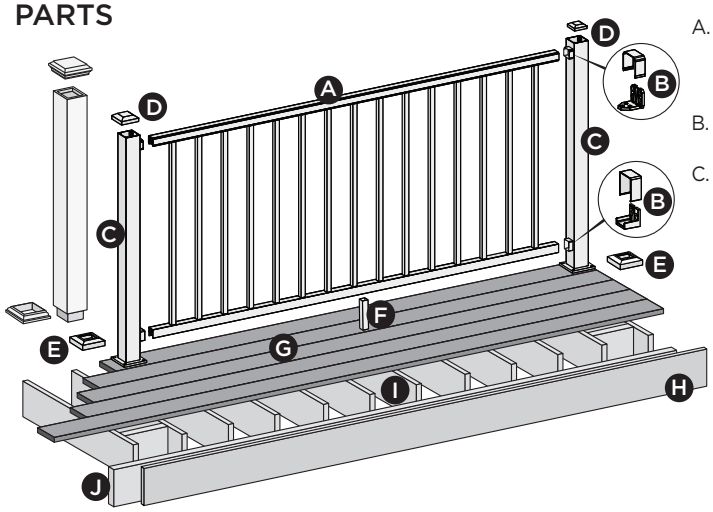
NOTES:

- *TREX SELECT ALUMINUM RAILING PANELS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A CLEAR SPAN OF 6' OR 8'.*
- ***WHEN INSTALLING COCKTAIL OR TRADITIONAL RAILING CONFIGURATIONS WITH SELECT ALUMINUM POSTS, YOU MUST USE TALLER POSTS. FOR 36" RAILING HEIGHTS USE 42" POST, FOR 42" RAILING HEIGHTS USE 53" POST. FAILURE TO DO THIS WILL NOT ALLOW POST CAPS TO FIT PROPERLY ON POSTS DUE TO INSUFFICIENT CLEARANCE.***
- *DO NOT CUT SELECT ALUMINUM RAILING PANELS ON TOP OF DECK SURFACE. METAL FLAKING CAN BE DIFFICULT TO CLEAN.*
- *ALWAYS WEAR APPROPRIATE SAFETY GLASSES WHEN CUTTING METAL.*
- *IF USING A ONE-PIECE SKIRT ENSURE TO ATTACH THIS BEFORE ATTACHING RAILING.*
- *IF USING THE SELECT ALUMINUM POST SLEEVE, COVER 4X4 PRESSURE-TREATED POST WITH PLASTIC, HOUSE WRAP, OR SIMILAR PRODUCT BEFORE INSTALLING ALUMINUM POST SLEEVE.*
- ***DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER WHEN INSTALLING SELECT ALUMINUM RAILING, ONLY USE STANDARD DRILL FOR SCREW ATTACHMENT OF BRACKET TO POSTS AND RAILS.***
- *PLAN AHEAD FOR POST PLACEMENT IF PANELS REQUIRE CUTTING TO ENSURE THAT PANELS/BALUSTERS ARE CENTERED BETWEEN POSTS AND THERE IS ENOUGH RAIL CLEARANCE FOR ATTACHMENT TO BRACKETS.*
- *IF ATTACHING TREX SELECT ALUMINUM RAILING TO PRESSURE-TREATED POST OR PRESSURE-TREATED POST/POST SLEEVES, ATTACH BRACKETS TO POSTS USING #10 X 1 3/4" STAINLESS STEEL SCREW (INCLUDED).*
- *IF INSTALLING COCKTAIL RAIL PANEL WITH PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVE CONFIGURATION, SEE PAGE 4 FOR INSTRUCTIONS ON CUTTING POSTS TO REQUIRED HEIGHTS BEFORE INSTALLING BRACKETS.*
- *TREX SELECT ALUMINUM POSTS CAN BE PURCHASED SEPARATELY WHICH HAVE BRACKETS PREINSTALLED, THUS SKIPPING STEPS 1-4 BELOW.*

SKU NUMBER	*DESCRIPTION*
BKAL252537SELPEND	2.5" X 2.5" X 37" BKAL SEL END PST
BKAL252537SELPLINE	2.5" X 2.5" X 37" BK AL SEL LINE PST
BKAL252537SELPCNR	2.5" X 2.5" X 37" BK AL SEL CORNER PST
BKAL252543SELPEND	2.5" X 2.5" X 43" BK AL SEL END PST
BKAL252543SELPLINE	2.5" X 2.5" X 43' BK AL SEL LINE PST
BKAL252543SELPCNR	2.5" X 2.5" X 43" BK AL SEL CORNER PST

SKU NUMBER	*DESCRIPTION*
BBAL252537SELPEND	2.5" X 2.5" X 37" BN AL SEL END PST
BBAL252537SELPLINE	2.5" X 2.5" X 37" BN AL SEL LINE PST
BBAL252537SELPCNR	2.5" X 2.5" X 37' BN AL SEL CORNER PST
BBAL252543SELPEND	2.5" X 2.5" X 43" BN AL SEL END PST
BBAL252543S ELPLINE	2.5" X 2.5" X 43" BN AL SEL LINE PST
BBAL252543SELPCNR	2.5" X 2.5" X 43" BN AL SEL CORNER PST

PARTS



A. Trex Select Aluminum Rail horizontal panel
   - 6' (actual length 71.7)
   - 8' (actual length 95.3")
B. Trex Select Aluminum Rail upper and lower brackets and bracket covers
C. Trex Select Aluminum post*
   - 36" (actual length 37.5")
   - 42" (actual length 43.5")
   - 53"

   or Trex Post Sleeve#
   - Select 4x4 composite post sleeve
   - Select 4x4 aluminum post sleeve
   - Transcend 4x4 post sleeve
   - Transcend 6x6 post sleeve

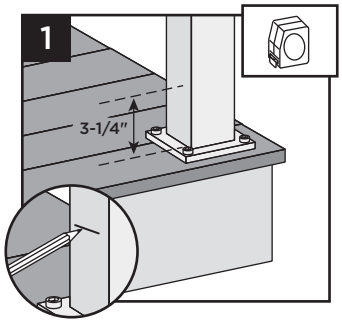
D. Select Aluminum Rail post cap
E. Select Aluminum Rail post skirt
F. Footblock
G. Trex decking
H. Trex fascia
I. Code-approved wood joist 2 x 8 or larger
J. Code-approved wood rim joist 2 x 8 or larger

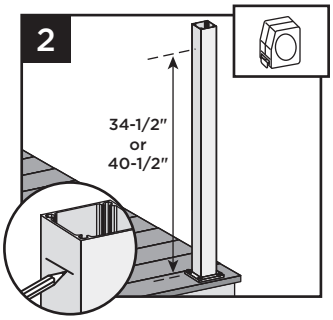
** If installing cocktail or traditional railing configuration with Select Aluminum Railing:*
-For a 36" railing height - use a 42" post.
-For a 42" railing height - use a 53" post.

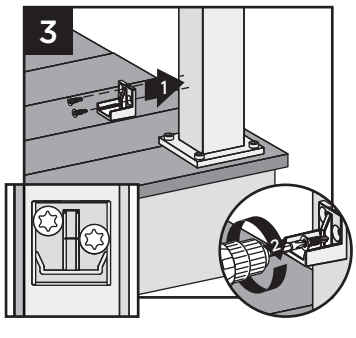
 # Composite and aluminum post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post. Ensure to use correct post cap and skirt with corresponding post sleeve.

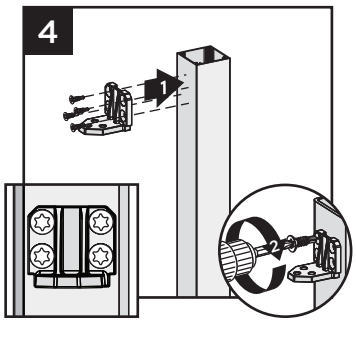
HOW TO INSTALL SELECT™ ALUMINUM RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL

Attaching Brackets if Using Select Aluminum Posts









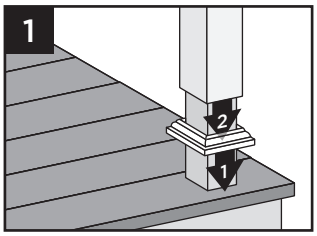
1. Measure from top of post base plate 3-1/4". Mark with light line.
2. Measure up from post base plate 34-1/2" for 36" rail height or 40-1/2" for 42" rail height. Mark with light line.
3. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #10 x 3/4" self-drilling screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using four #10 x 3/4" self-drilling screws *(provided)*.

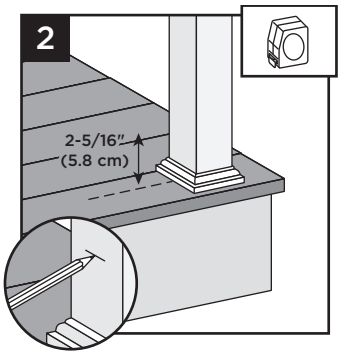
HOW TO INSTALL SELECT® ALUMINUM RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL/CONTINUED

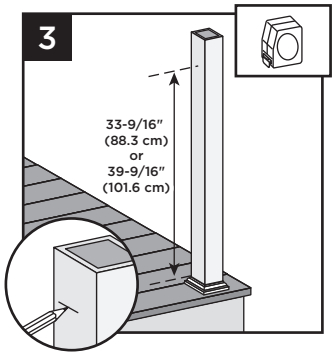
Attaching Brackets if Using Pressure-Treated Posts with Select Composite Post Sleeves

Install 1-Piece Skirt and Post Sleeve

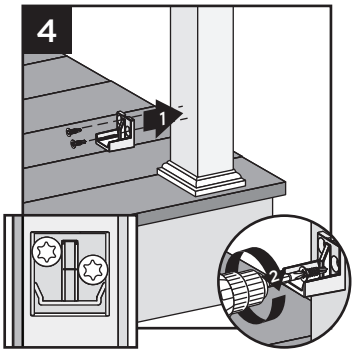
1. Slide 1-piece skirt down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.

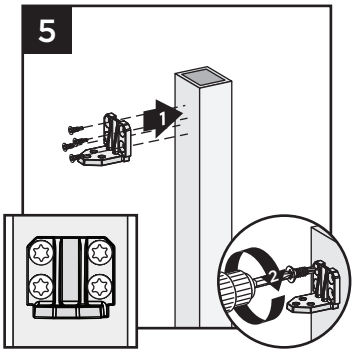






2. Measure up from top of skirt 2 5/16". Mark with light line.
3. Measure up from top of skirt 33 9/16" for 36" rail height or 39 9/16" for 42" rail height. Mark with light line.



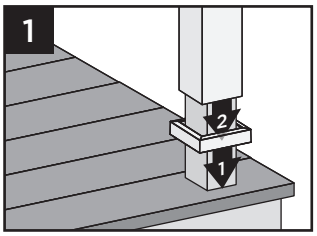


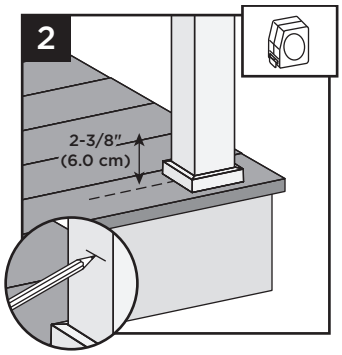
4. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #10 X 1 3/4" stainless steel screws (included).
5. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using four #10 X 1 3/4" stainless steel screws (included).

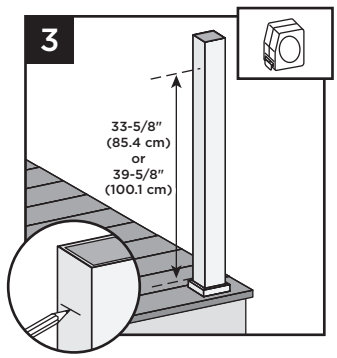
Attaching Brackets if Using Pressure-Treated Posts with Select Aluminum Post Sleeves

Install 1-Piece Skirt and Post Sleeve

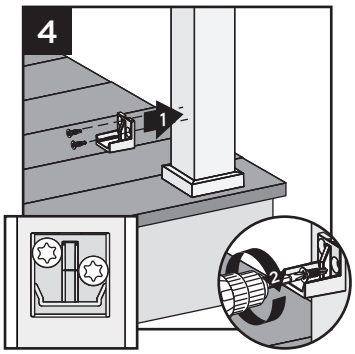
1. Slide 1-piece skirt down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.

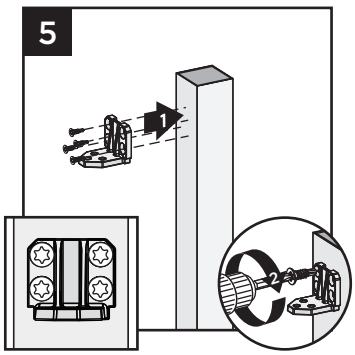






2. Measure up from top of skirt 2 3/8". Mark with light line.
3. Measure up from top of skirt 33 5/8" for 36" rail height or 39 5/8" for 42" rail height. Mark with light line.



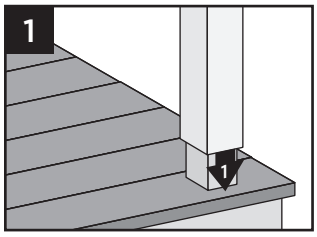


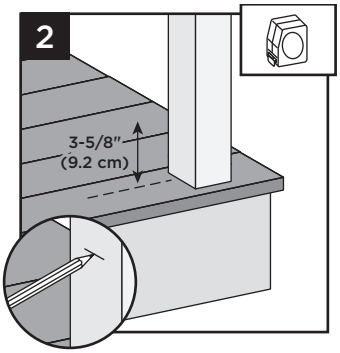
4. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #10 X 1 3/4" stainless steel screws (included).
5. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using four #10 X 1 3/4" stainless steel screws (included).

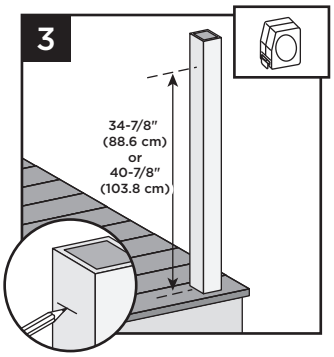
HOW TO INSTALL SELECT® ALUMINUM RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL/CONTINUED

Attaching Brackets if using Pressure-Treated Posts with Transcend 4x4 Post Sleeves

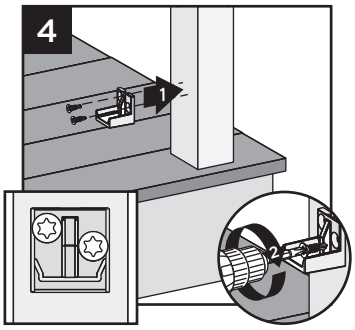
1. Install post sleeve over pressure-treated post.

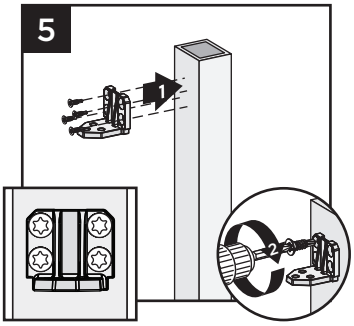






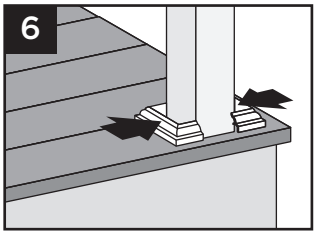
2. Measure up from top of decking surface 3 5/8". Mark with light line.
3. Measure up from top of decking surface 34 7/8" for 36" rail height or 40 7/8" for 42" rail height. Mark with light line.





4. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #10 X 1 3/4" stainless steel screws (included).
5. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using four #10 X 1 3/4" stainless steel screws (included).

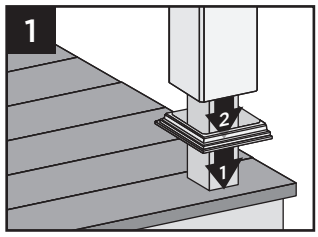
6. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.

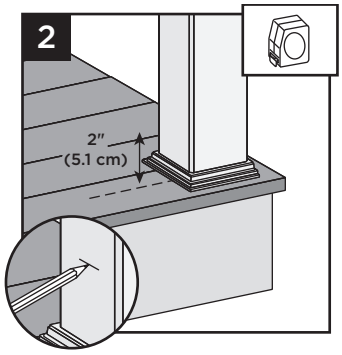


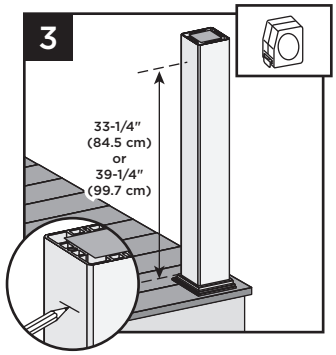
Attaching Brackets if using Pressure-Treated Posts with Transcend 6x6 Post Sleeves

Install 1-Piece Skirt and Post Sleeve

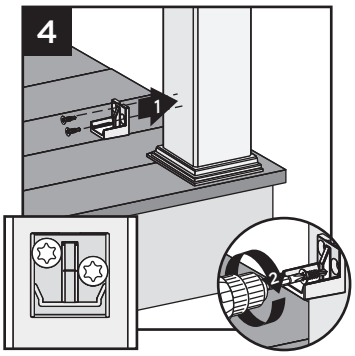
1. Slide 1-piece skirt down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.

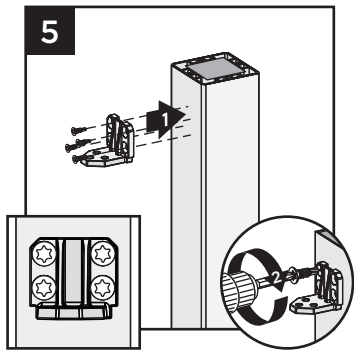






2. Measure up from top of skirt 2". Mark with light line.
3. Measure up from top of skirt 33 1/4" for 36" rail height or 39 1/4" for 42" rail height. Mark with light line.



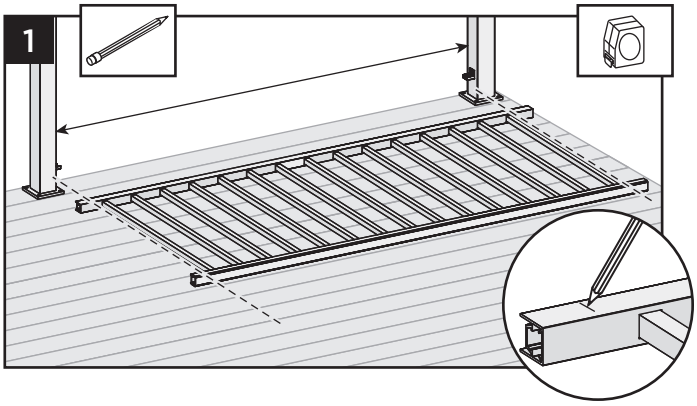


4. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #10 X 1 3/4" stainless steel screws (included).
5. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using four #10 X 1 3/4" stainless steel screws (included).

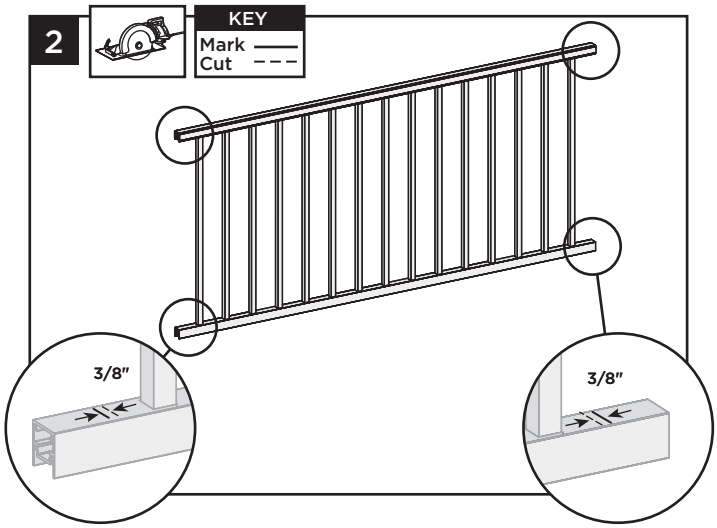
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL SELECT® ALUMINUM RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL/CONTINUED

How to Measure and Cut Panel Rails (When REQUIRED)

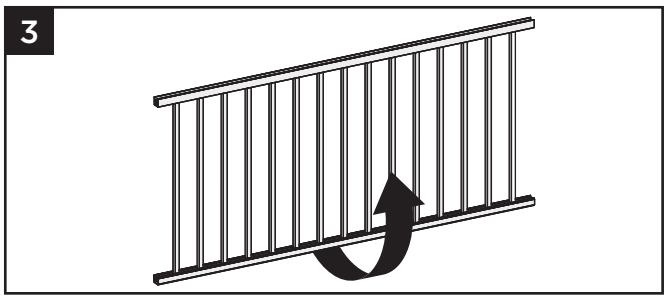


1. Position panel between posts and ensure there is equal distance on each of the end balusters and posts. Allow 1-1/2" on each side of rails to allow for attachment to brackets.

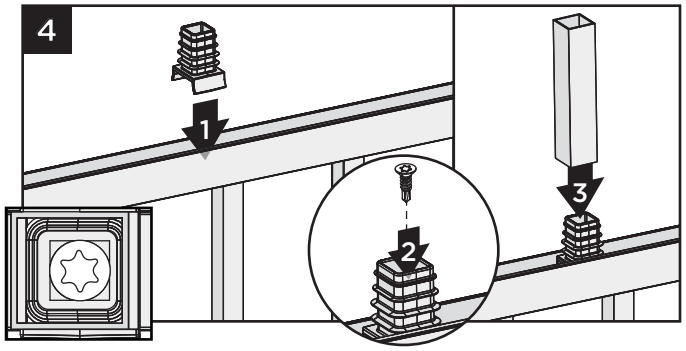


2. Cut ends of both bottom and top rails 3/8" shorter on each side to allow for fit into brackets.

Installing Foot Block

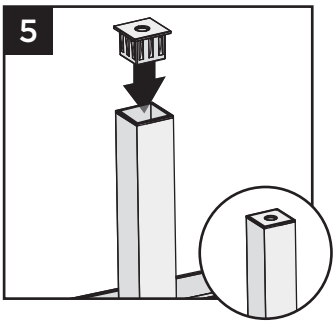


3. Turn panel upside down.

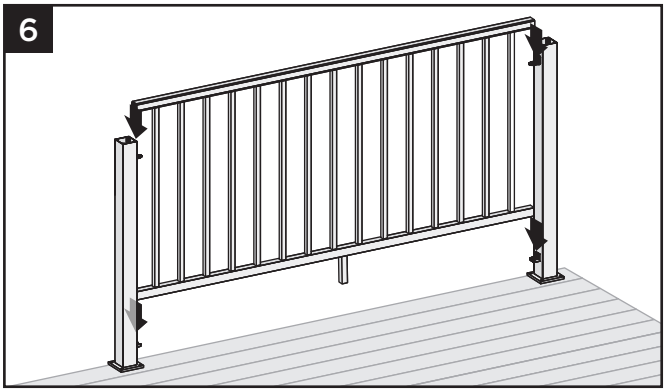


4. Center foot block insert on underside of bottom rail, and install using one #10 x 3/4" screw. Push foot block shaft onto foot block insert.

5. Gently tap foot block cap into foot block shaft.



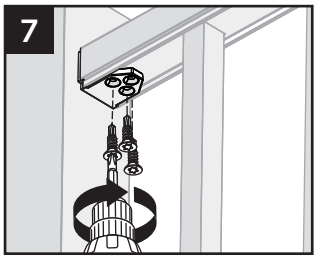
Installing Panel to Brackets



6. Place panel in bottom and top brackets.

NOTE: THERE WILL BE A SMALL GAP BETWEEN THE BRACKETS AND THE RAILS.

7. Attach top panel rails to top brackets using three #10 x 3/4" self-drilling screws.

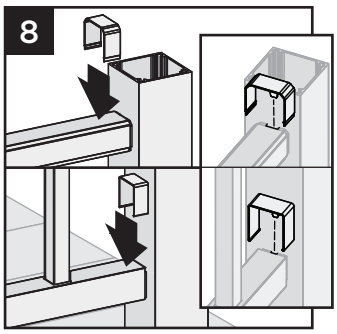


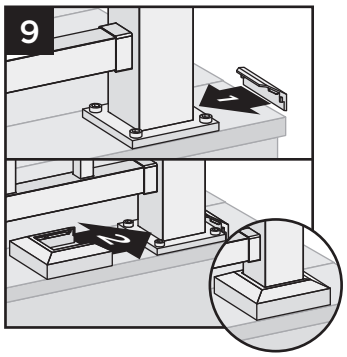
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

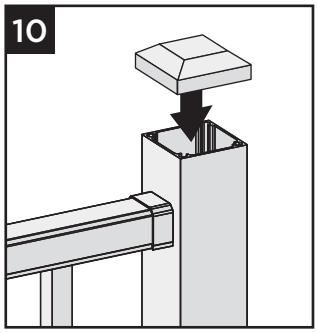
HOW TO INSTALL SELECT® ALUMINUM RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL/CONTINUED

Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps

8. Gently spread and then snap the corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.





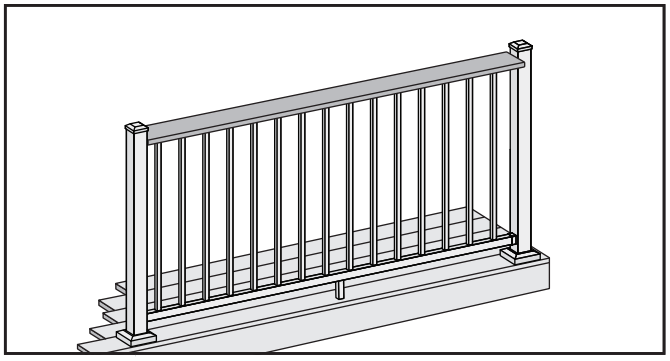


9. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of post.
10. Attach post caps to posts (use of a rubber mallet may be required for secure attachment).

HOW TO INSTALL SELECT® ALUMINUM RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL – COCKTAIL RAIL CONFIGURATIONS

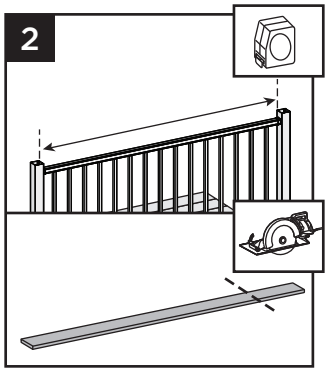
- *Trex Cocktail Rail brackets (sold separately) are for use with either Traditional or Cocktail designs. For a 6′ section, use 4 brackets and screws provided, for 8′ section, use 5 brackets and screws provided.*
- *When installing Cocktail or Traditional railing configurations with Select Aluminum Posts, you MUST use taller posts. For 36″ railing heights use 42″ post, for 42″ railing heights use 53″ post. Failure to do this will not allow post caps to fit properly on posts due to insufficient clearance.*
- *When using Select Aluminum Posts, these can be cut to desired heights once Cocktail or Traditional rail heights are established. Ensure to allow enough space for post cap to fit properly.*
- *When using pressure treated and post sleeve, post and post sleeve must be cut.*
- *If using a one-piece skirt, ensure to attach this BEFORE attaching railing.*
- *IF USING PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS WITH POST SLEEVES, PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS.*

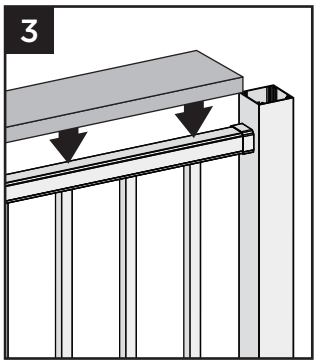
Cocktail Rail Panel with Select Aluminum Post Configuration



1. Follow steps on previous pages for installing brackets, panels, bracket covers, and skirts.

Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

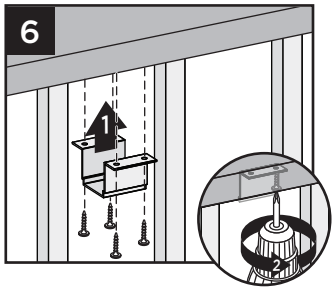




2. Measure between posts and cut deck board to length.
3. Place deck board onto top rail.
4. On underside of deck board, mark outline of bracket cover location.
5. Remove deck board from rail. Using a router bit, forstner bit, or something similar, rout out this area to allow deck board to fully seat onto top rail.

HOW TO INSTALL SELECT® ALUMINUM RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL – COCKTAIL RAIL AND TRADITIONAL RAIL CONFIGURATIONS/CONTINUED

6. Secure boards to top rail using cocktail bracket (sold separately). The cocktail bracket should be installed at ends of each rail, covering the underside of the top rail cocktail bracket, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with four screws provided.

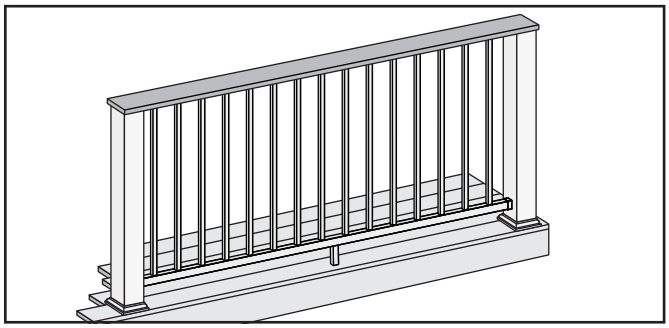


NOTE: *Predrilling before attachment is recommended.*

Attachment of Caps

7. See step 10 on previous page.

Cocktail Rail Panel with Pressure treated Post and Post Sleeve Configuration



Cutting Post and Post Sleeve

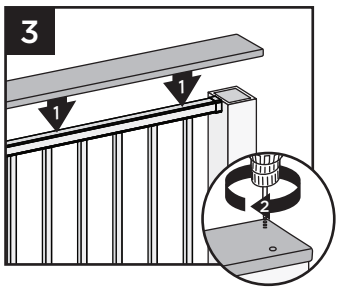
1. Mark and cut post and post sleeve measuring from deck surface:
   - » 36" for 36" height.
   - » 42" for 42 height.

2. Follow steps on previous pages for installing brackets, panels, bracket covers, and skirts.

NOTE: *When installing the upper bracket covers, these will be slightly higher than the post/post sleeve.*

Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

3. Place deck boards (**DO NOT** use Enhance deck boards for top rail) over top rails.

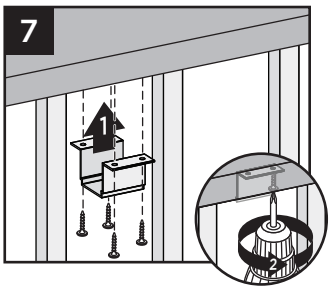


4. On underside of deck board, mark outline of bracket cover location only.

5. Remove deck board from rail. Using a router bit, forstner bit, or something similar, rout out this area to allow deck board to fully seat onto top rail and post/post sleeve.

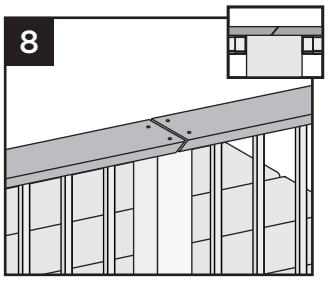
6. Attach boards on each post with Trex-approved composite screws (quantity of 2 per each board end).

7. Secure boards to top rail using Trex Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



NOTE: *Predrilling before attachment is recommended.*

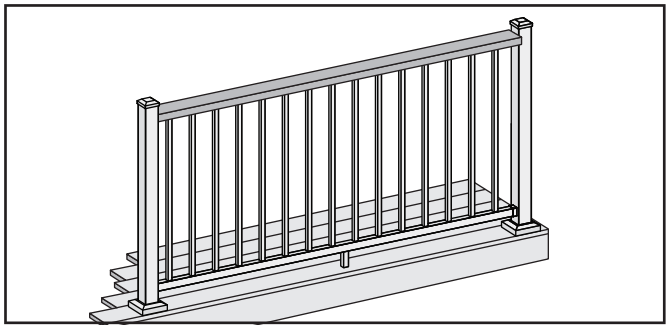
8. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.



NOTES:

- » *Leave 1/8" gap between deck boards.*
- » *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2".*

Traditional Rail Panel with Select Aluminum Post Configuration

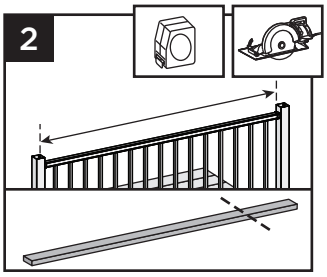


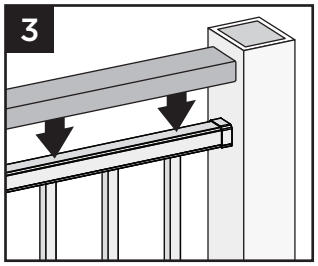
1. Follow steps on previous pages for installing brackets, panels, and bracket covers.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL SELECT® ALUMINUM RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL – TRADITIONAL RAIL CONFIGURATIONS

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail



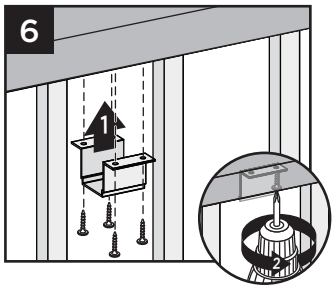


2. Measure between posts and cut 2 x 4 to length.
3. Place 2 x 4 on Select top rail.

4. On underside of 2 x 4, mark outline of bracket cover location.

5. Remove 2 x 4 from rail. Using a router bit, forstner bit, or something similar, rout out this area to allow 2 x 4 to fully seat onto top rail.

6. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using cocktail bracket (sold separately). The cocktail bracket should be installed at ends of each rail, covering the underside of the top rail bracket, then space cocktail brackets approximately every 24" and attach with four screws provided.

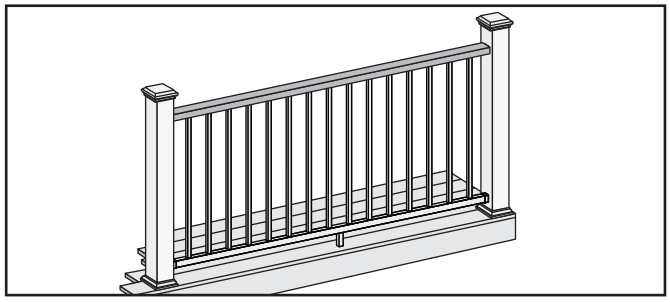


NOTE: *Predrilling before attachment is recommended.*

Attachment of Caps

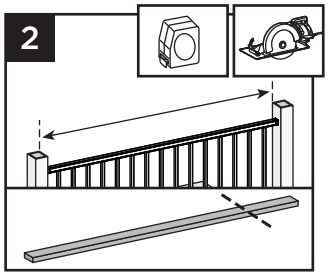
7. *See step 10 on page 287.*

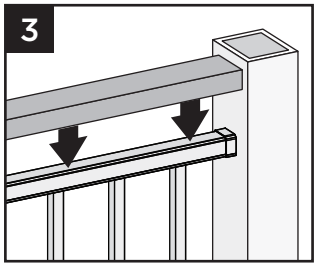
Traditional Rail Panel with Pressure treated Post and Post Sleeve Configuration



1. *Follow steps on previous pages for installing brackets, panels, and bracket covers.*

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail



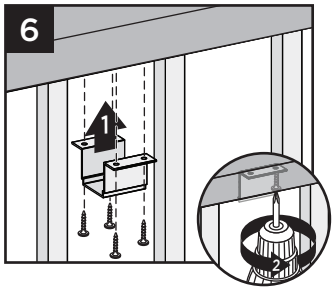


2. Measure between posts and cut 2 x 4 to length.
3. Place 2 x 4 on top rail.

4. On underside of 2 x 4, mark outline of bracket cover location.

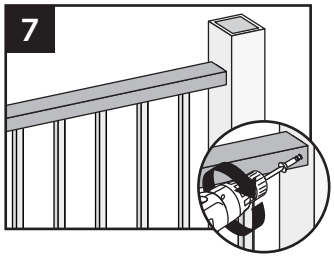
5. Remove 2 x 4 from rail. Using a router bit, forstner bit, or something similar, rout out this area to allow 2 x 4 to fully seat onto top rail.

6. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using Trex Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.

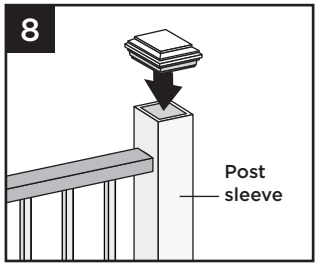


NOTE: *Predrilling before attachment is recommended.*

7. Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2" approved screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



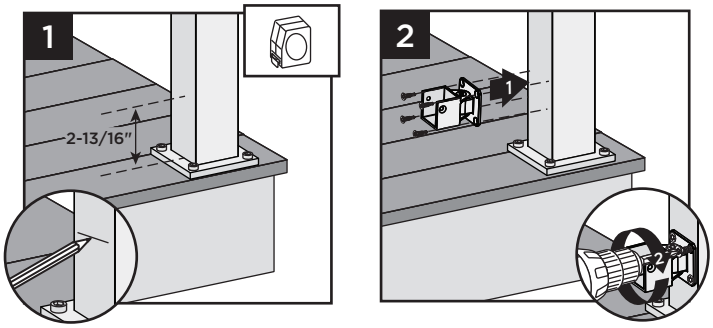
8. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/corner tabs) 2 x 4 to fully seat onto top rail provided.



HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS

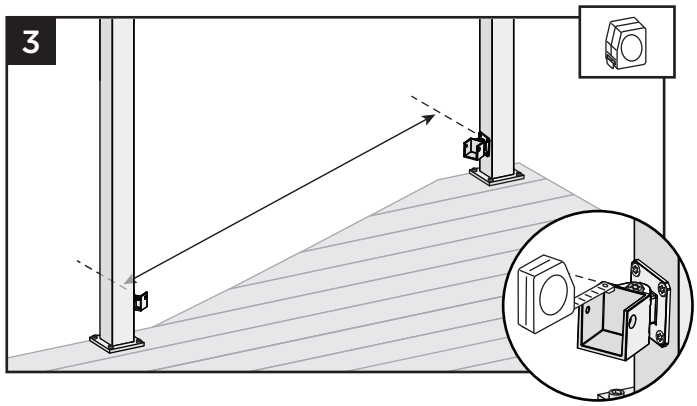
- *» HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS CAN BE USED UP TO A 45° ANGLE FOR TREX SELECT ALUMINUM PANEL RAILINGS.*
- *» WHEN USING HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO LAY OUT LOCATION AND ORIENTATION OF POSTS AND SWIVEL BRACKETS BEFORE INSTALLING SWIVEL BRACKETS.*

Attach Lower Swivel Brackets to Select Aluminum Posts



1. Measure 2-13/16" from top of post base plate. Mark with light line.
2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using four #10 x 3/4" self-drilling screws *(provided).*

How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top Railings (When Required)

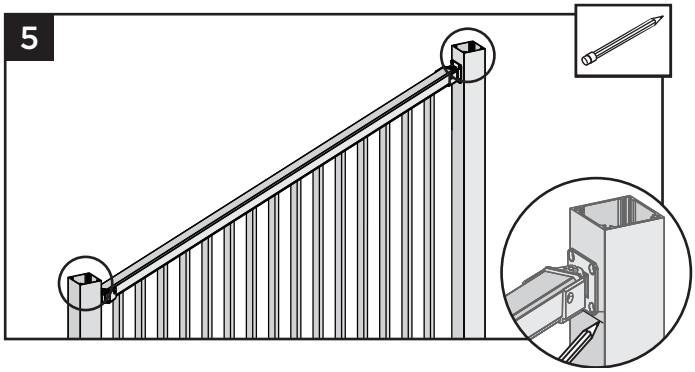


3. With lower brackets in correct swivel location, measure distance from inside of bracket to inside of bracket. Also allow for 1-1/2" clearance on each side for panel rails to attach to brackets. Cut panel as per previous instructions.

Attaching Foot Block

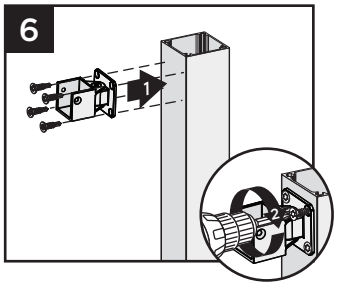
4. Attach foot blocks as per previous instructions on page 286.

Installing Upper Swivel Brackets to Select Aluminum Posts

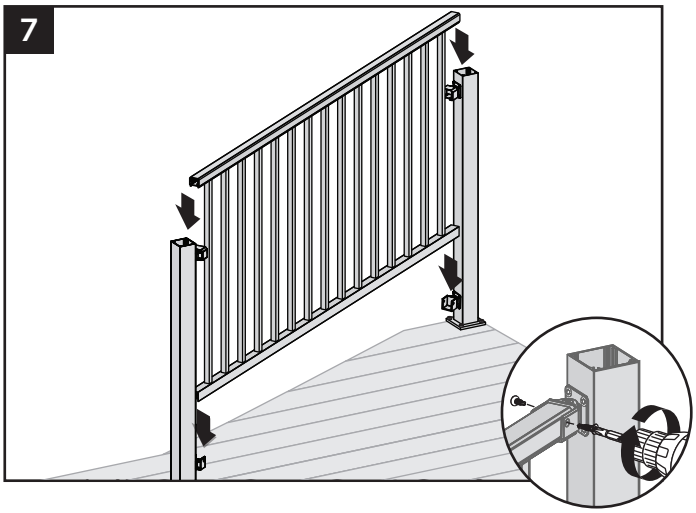


5. Place panel into lower swivel brackets. Temporarily place the upper swivel brackets onto the top rail and mark post at underside of bracket location. If necessary, use a clamp to hold brackets on top rail.

6. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using four #10 x 3/4" self-drilling screws *(provided)*.



Installing Panel to Brackets



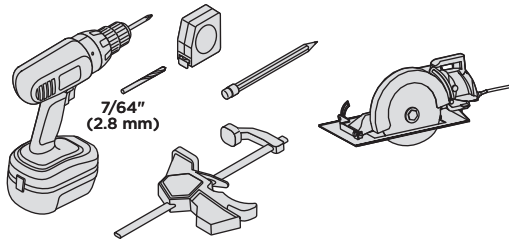
7. Attach panel to brackets using two #4 x 3/4" self-drilling screws (provided).

8. Attach bracket covers, caps, and skirts as per previous instructions on page 287.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX SELECT® ALUMINUM STAIR RAIL PANEL

TOOLS NEEDED

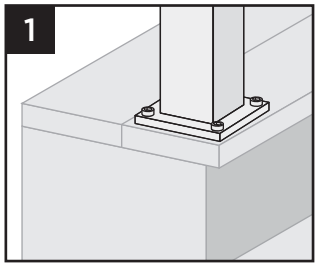


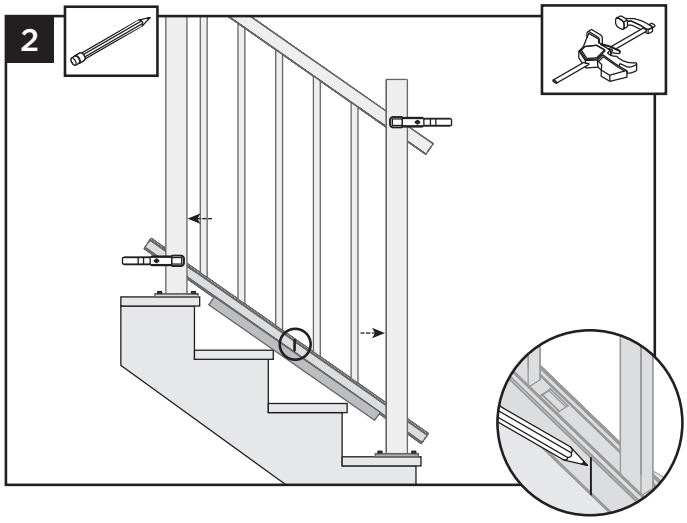
NOTES:

- *FOR A 6′ OR 8′ STAIR RAIL, POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING STAIR POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM STAIR RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE AT WHICH THE STAIR RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.*
- *FOR STAIR INSTALLATIONS USE A 53″ STAIR POST. POST CAN BE CUT TO DESIRED HEIGHT ONCE RAILING HEIGHT IS ESTABLISHED. ENSURE ADEQUATE SPACE FOR POST CAP TO FIT PROPERLY.*
- *DO NOT CUT SELECT ALUMINUM RAILING PANELS ON TOP OF DECK SURFACE. METAL FLAKING CAN BE DIFFICULT TO CLEAN.*
- *ALWAYS WEAR APPROPRIATE SAFETY GLASSES WHEN CUTTING METAL.*
- *USE CAUTION WHEN INSTALLING STAIR PANEL AS TOO MUCH RACKING MAY CAUSE PANEL TO DISENGAGE.*

HOW TO INSTALL ALUMINUM STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

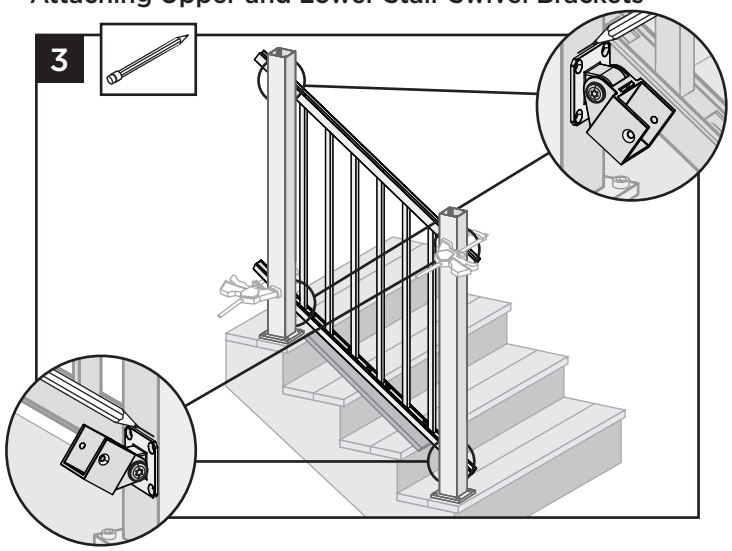
1. Install post at nose of stair tread directly above the required blocking. ALWAYS refer to your local building code official prior to installing any railing system to ensure all code and safety requirements are met. Trex cannot be held responsible for improper or non-recommended installations.



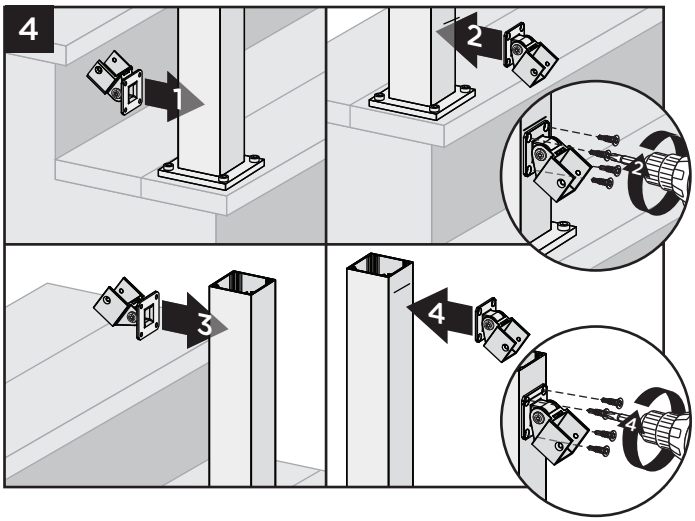


2. Use a 1″ deck board as a spacer board and lay this on the stair treads between the posts. Place stair panel on top of the deck board and clamp stair panel to posts. Ensure that balusters are straight and positioned with equal spacing at post locations. Make a small mark near the center of the panel for the location of the foot block.

Attaching Upper and Lower Stair Swivel Brackets



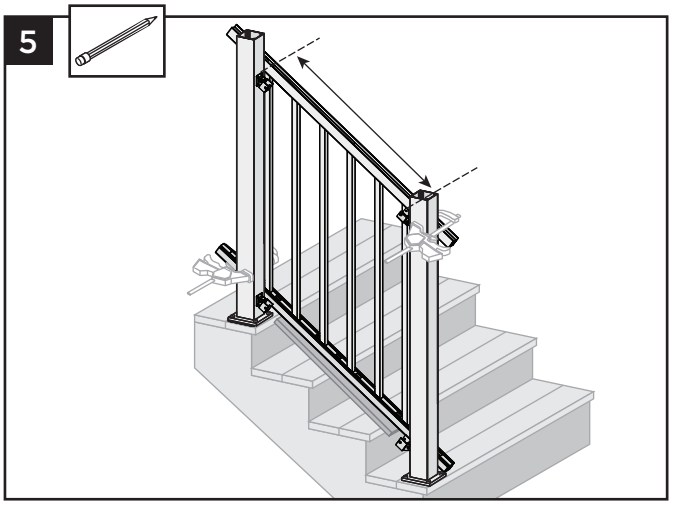
3. Align the bracket with top and bottom railing. Mark a light line on post above the swivel base.



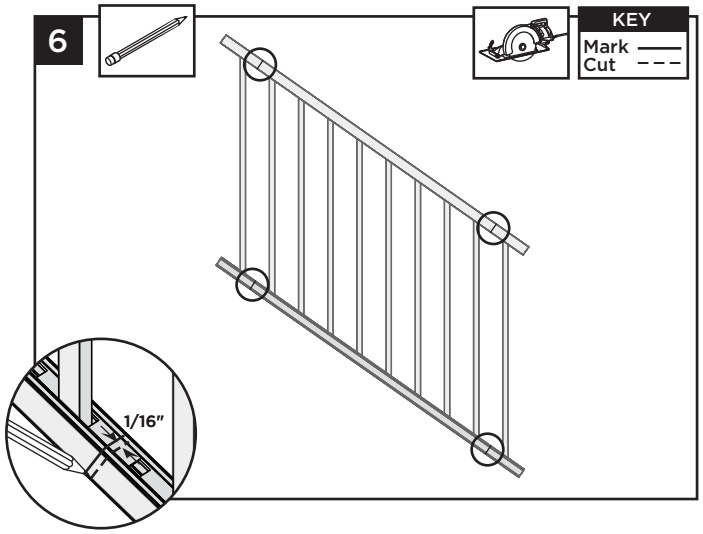
4. Center stair brackets on posts below the marked line and attach using four #10 x 3/4″ self-drilling screws *(provided).* In some cases it may be difficult to attach the stair bracket on the lower stair post. A 90˚drill or adapter is recommended to attach screws in this area.

HOW TO INSTALL ALUMINUM STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

Marking and Cutting Stair Panel Rails (when required)

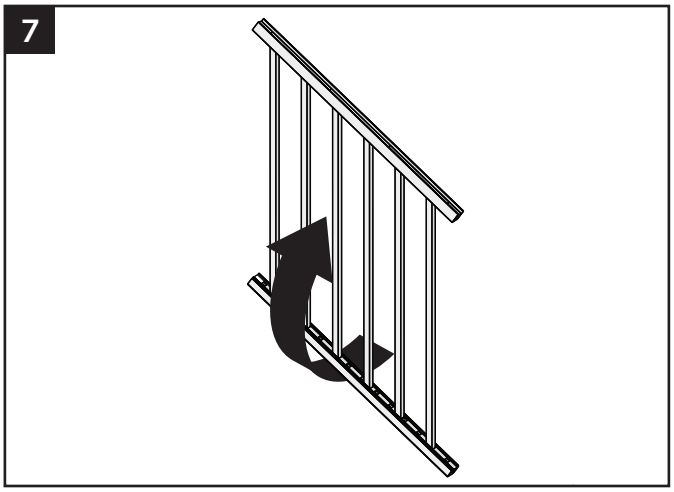


5. Mark top and bottom rails where they align with the rear wall of the top and bottom brackets.

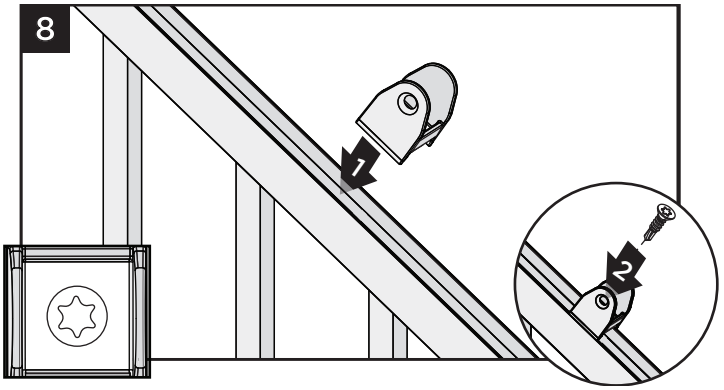


6. Remove panel and place on flat surface (note stair panel can be "unracked" if necessary for ease of cutting - use caution as balusters may come lose). Extend marks to side of rails. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with a standard perpendicular cut. Cut end of rails 1/16" shorter than mark on each side to allow for a better fit.

Installing Foot Block Insert

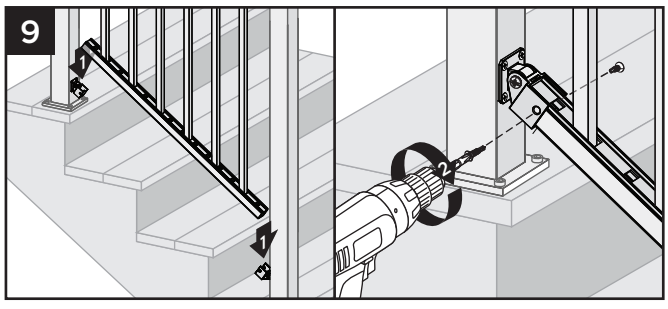


7. Turn panel upside down.



8. Install foot block insert on underside of bottom rail at marked location using one #10 x 3/4" screw.

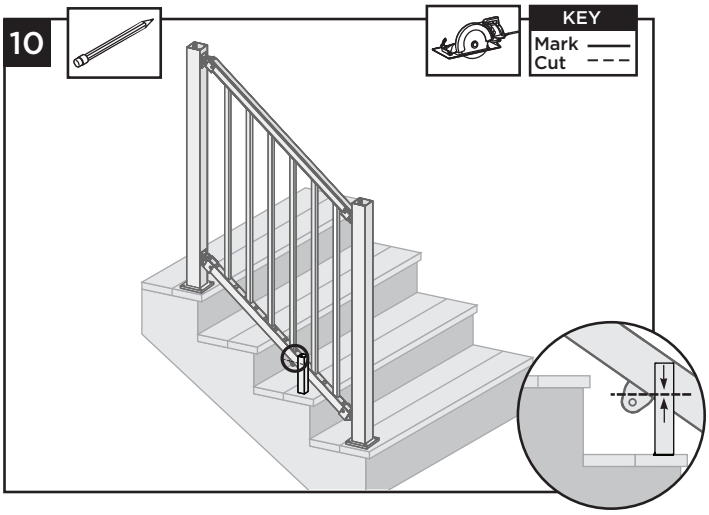
Attaching Stair Panel to Stair Swivel Brackets



9. Attach stair panel to swivel brackets using two #10 x 3/4" self-drilling screws *(provided)*.

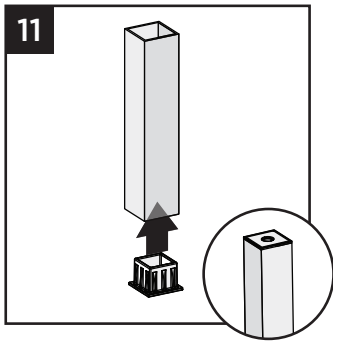
HOW TO INSTALL ALUMINUM STAIR RAILING/CONTINUED
TREX SELECT®

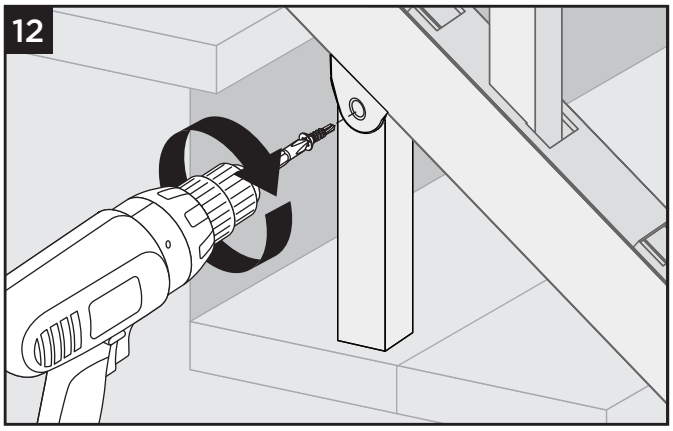
Installing Foot Block Shaft



10. Place foot block shaft beside mounted stair panel, mark above mounting hole (also allow for bottom rail clearance) and cut to length.

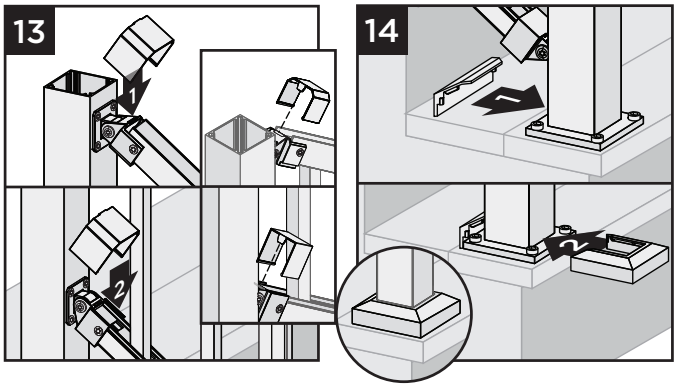
11. Gently tap bottom plug into cut side foot block (this will cover exposed cut aluminum).





12. Install foot block shaft to foot block insert with one #10 x 3/4" screw.

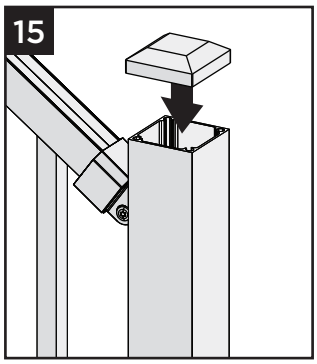
Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps



13. Gently spread and then snap corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.

14. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of post.

15. Attach post caps to posts (use of a rubber mallet may be required for secure attachment).



NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

TREX ENHANCE™ STEEL POSTS

IMPORTANT NOTES:

- *EACH POST MUST BE ATTACHED AS SHOWN TO ENSURE A CODE COMPLIANT AND SAFE INSTALLATION.*
- *ALWAYS refer to your local building code official prior to installing any railing system to ensure all code and safety requirements are met. Trex cannot be held responsible for improper or non-recommended installations.*
- *All Trex Enhance Steel stair installations require the use of a 53" (1346 mm) stair post, measured and cut to appropriate length if necessary.*

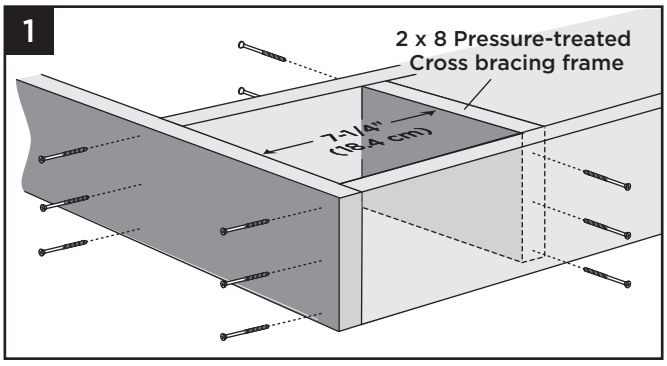
TOOLS AND MATERIALS NEEDED

- Drill and/or screw gun
- 9/16" (14 mm) drill bit for wood
- Blocking – 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) pressure-treated Southern Yellow Pine or equivalent
- Qty: 36 (per post) – 3" pressure-treated compatible wood screws

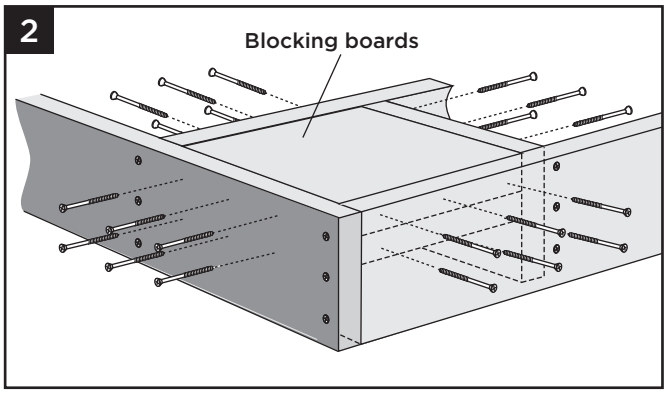
REQUIRED HARDWARE PER POST (NOT PROVIDED)

- Qty 4 - 1/2-13 x 6" zinc plated steel hex bolt (Grade A307 or equivalent)
- Qty 4 - 1/2" ID, 1-3/8" OD (Minimum), 0.109" Thick (Minimum) galvanized steel flat washer (Grade A307 or equivalent)
- Qty 4 - 1/2"-13 galvanized steel hex nut (Grade 2 or equivalent)

Installing Enhance Steel Posts on Pressure-treated Wood Framing (Corner Post Installation)



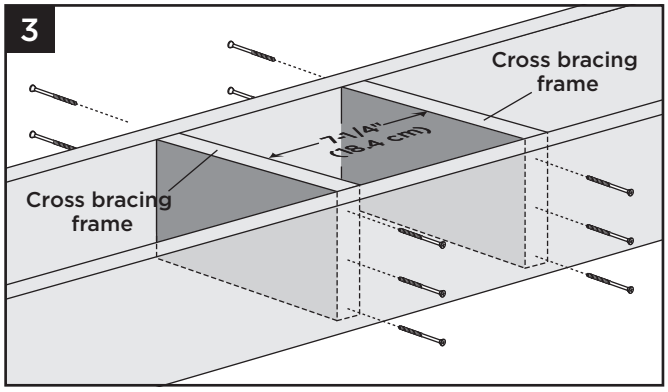
1. Install 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) cross bracing frame in between joists at 7-1/4" (184 mm). Attach a total of twelve 3" (76 mm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.



2. Install two 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of twenty-four 3" (76 mm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

NOTE: *TO ENSURE THE BLOCKING IS FULLY SECURE, USE THE AMOUNT OF SCREWS indicated ABOVE.*
TIP: Use two additional screws to "sandwich" blocking boards together for easier attachment to framing.

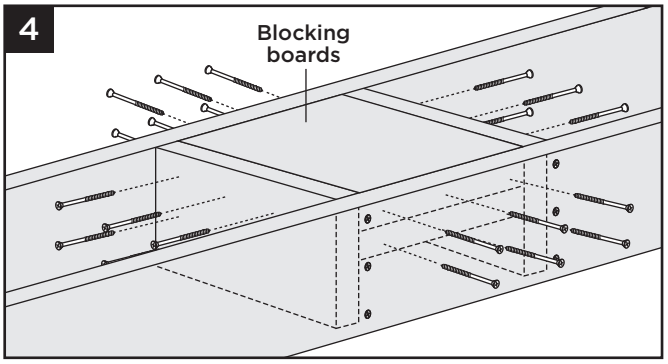
Line Post Installation



3. Install two 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) cross bracing frames in between joists at 7-1/4" (184 mm). Attach a total of twelve 3" (76 mm) pressure-treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

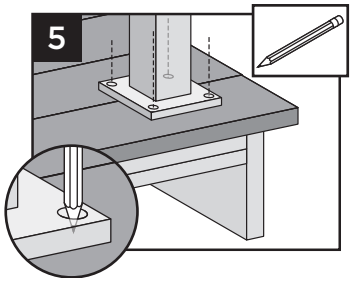
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

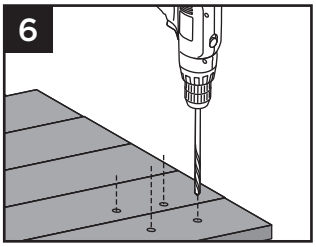
TREX ENHANCE™ STEEL POSTS/CONTINUED



4. Install two 2 x 8 (51 mm x 203 mm) boards as blocking under post location. Securely attach blocking using a total of twenty-four 3" (76 mm) pressure- treated compatible screws *(not provided)*.

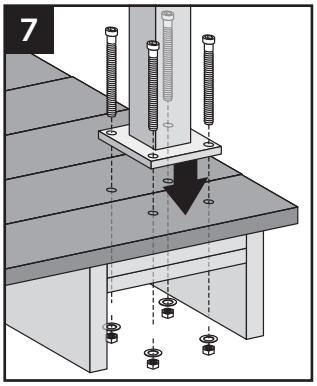
   NOTE: *After all proper blocking has been installed for posts, decking can be installed per manufacturer's instructions.*





5. Using post a template, mark locations of holes.
6. Drill through decking and blocking boards using 9/16" diameter bit (long drill bit will be required).

7. Attach posts using four 1/2" x 6" (13 mm x 152 mm) hex cap bolts, washers, and nuts, along on underside of blocking. (Always ensure to consult local code official for more information on IRC or IBC Compliance).



TREX ENHANCE™ STEEL HORIZONTAL RAILING

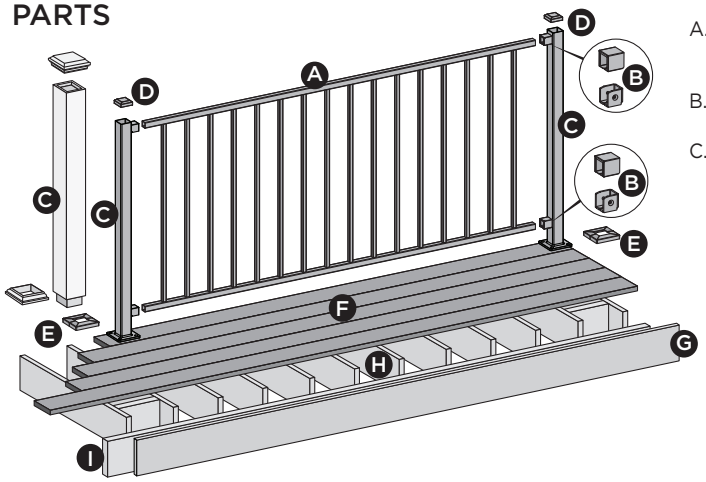
NOTES:

- *TREX ENHANCE STEEL RAILING PANELS ARE DESIGNED TO BE ATTACHED WITH POSTS INSTALLED AT A CLEAR SPAN OF 6' OR 8'.*
- ***WHEN INSTALLING COCKTAIL OR TRADITIONAL RAILING CONFIGURATIONS WITH ENHANCE STEEL POSTS, YOU MUST USE TALLER POSTS. FOR 36" RAILING HEIGHTS USE 42" POST, FOR 42" RAILING HEIGHTS USE 53" POST. FAILURE TO DO THIS WILL NOT ALLOW POST CAPS TO FIT PROPERLY ON POSTS DUE TO INSUFFICIENT CLEARANCE.***
- *WHEN CUTTING ENHANCE STEEL RAILING PANELS, USE A METAL CUTTING BLADE.*
- *DO NOT CUT ENHANCE STEEL RAILING PANELS ON TOP OF DECK SURFACE. METAL FLAKING CAN BE DIFFICULT TO CLEAN.*
- *ALWAYS WEAR APPROPRIATE SAFETY GLASSES WHEN CUTTING METAL.*
- *TREX RECOMMENDS COVERING ANY END CUTS EXPOSING RAW STEEL OR SCRATCHES TO THE RAILING. CLEAN THE SURFACE OF THE RAIL AND APPLY AN APPROVED PAINT FOR EXTERIOR STEEL SURFACES SUCH AS RUST-OLEUM® PRODUCTS MATCHING THE LOW GLOSS FINISH OF YOUR ENHANCE STEEL RAILING.*
- *IF USING A ONE-PIECE SKIRT ENSURE TO ATTACH THIS BEFORE ATTACHING RAILING.*
- ***DO NOT USE IMPACT DRIVER WHEN INSTALLING ENHANCE STEEL RAILING, ONLY USE STANDARD DRILL FOR SCREW ATTACHMENT OF BRACKET TO POSTS AND RAILS.***
- *FIXED UPPER AND LOWER BRACKETS ARE IDENTICAL.*
- *PLAN AHEAD FOR POST PLACEMENT IF PANELS REQUIRE CUTTING TO ENSURE THAT PANELS/BALUSTERS ARE CENTERED BETWEEN POSTS AND THERE IS ENOUGH RAIL CLEARANCE FOR ATTACHMENT TO BRACKETS.*
- *IF ATTACHING TREX ENHANCE STEEL RAILING TO PRESSURE-TREATED POST OR PRESSURE-TREATED POST/POST SLEEVES, ATTACH BRACKETS TO POSTS USING #10 X 2.5" HIGH CARBON STEEL COATED BLACK SCREWS (NOT INCLUDED).*
- *IF INSTALLING COCKTAIL RAIL PANEL WITH PRESSURE-TREATED POST AND POST SLEEVE CONFIGURATION, SEE PAGE 5 FOR INSTRUCTIONS ON CUTTING POSTS TO REQUIRED HEIGHTS BEFORE INSTALLING BRACKETS.*
- *TREX ENHANCE STEEL POSTS CAN BE PURCHASED SEPARATELY WHICH HAVE BRACKETS PREINSTALLED, THUS SKIPPING STEPS 1-4 BELOW.*

SKU NUMBER	*DESCRIPTION*
BKSTL202043ENPCNR	*43" BLACK STEEL ENHANCE CORNER POST*
BKSTL202043ENPLINE	*43" BLACK STEEL ENHANCE LINE POST*
BKSTL202043ENPEND	*43" BLACK STEEL ENHANCE END POST*

SKU NUMBER	*DESCRIPTION*
BKSTL202037ENPCNR	*37" BLACK STEEL ENHANCE CORNER POST*
BKSTL202037ENPLINE	*37" BLACK STEEL ENHANCE LINE POST*
BKSTL202037ENPEND	*37" BLACK STEEL ENHANCE END POST*

PARTS



A. Trex Enhance Steel Rail horizontal panel
   - 6' (actual length 71.5" [181.6 cm])
   - 8' (actual length 95.5" [242.6 cm])

B. Trex Enhance Steel Rail upper and lower brackets and bracket covers

C. Trex Enhance Steel post*
   - 36" (actual length 37.25" [94.6 cm])
   - 42" (actual length 43.25" [109.8 cm])
   - 53" (135 cm)

   or Trex Post Sleeve#
   - Enhance 4x4 post sleeve
   - Transcend 4x4 post sleeve
   - Transcend 6x6 post sleeve

D. Enhance Steel Rail post cap

E. Enhance Steel Rail post skirt

F. Trex decking

G. Trex fascia

H. Code-approved wood joist
   2 x 8 or larger

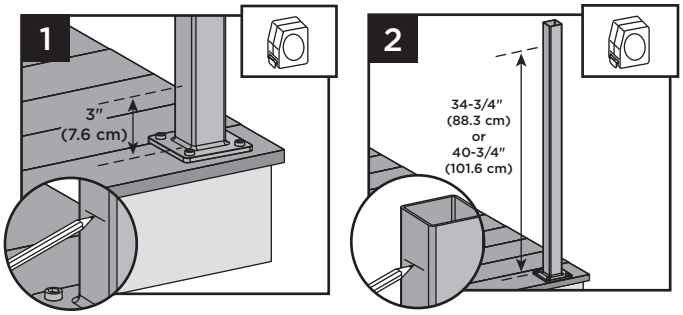
I. Code-approved wood rim joist 2 x 8 or larger

** If installing cocktail or traditional railing configuration with Enhance Steel Railing:*
-For a 36" railing height - use a 42" post.
-For a 42" railing height - use a 53" post.

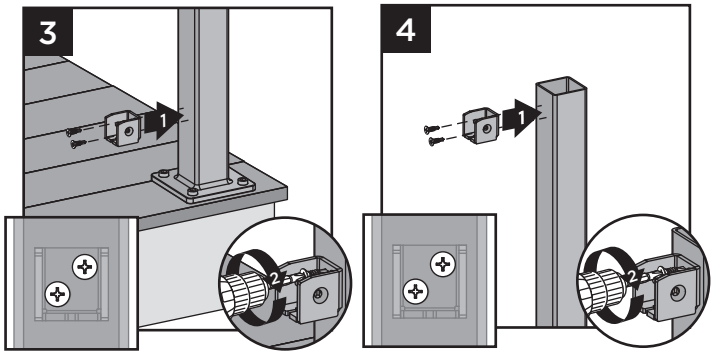
 # Composite post sleeves are designed to fit over 4x4 pressure-treated post. Ensure to use correct post cap and skirt with corresponding post sleeve.

HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL

Attaching Brackets if Using Enhance Steel Posts



1. Measure 3" (7.6 cm) from top of post base plate. Mark with light line.
2. Measure up from post base plate 34 3/4" (88.3 cm) for 36" (92 cm) rail height or 40 3/4" (101.6 cm) for 42"(107 cm) rail height. Mark with light line.
   OPTIONAL: *Install bottom bracket, then measure up from top surface of bottom bracket 31 3/4" for 36" rail height or 37 3/4" for 42" rail height. Mark location on post. Install top bracket BELOW this mark.*



3. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #12 x 3/4" self-drilling screws *(provided)*.
4. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using two #12 x 3/4" self-drilling screws *(provided)*.

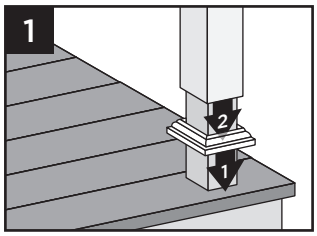
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

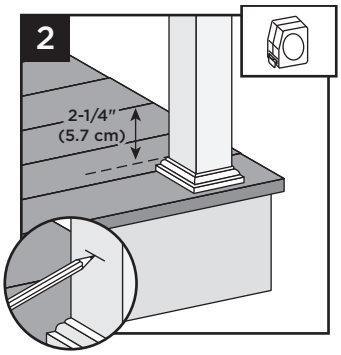
HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL/CONTINUED

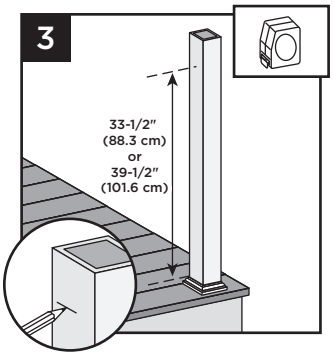
Attaching Brackets if Using Pressure-Treated Posts with Enhance Composite Post Sleeves

Install 1-Piece Skirt and Post Sleeve

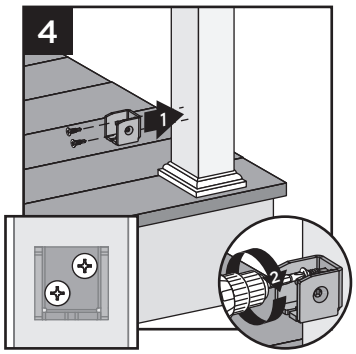
1. Slide 1-piece skirt down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.

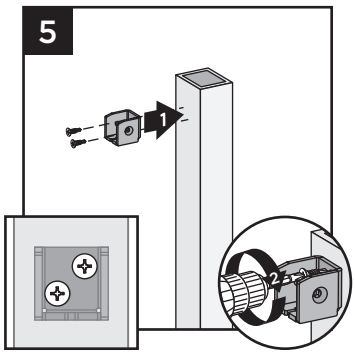






2. Measure up from top of skirt 2 1/4". Mark with light line.
3. Measure up from top of skirt 34" for 36" rail height for 40" for 42" rail height. Mark with light line.

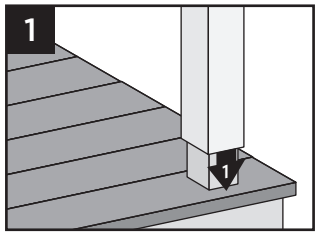


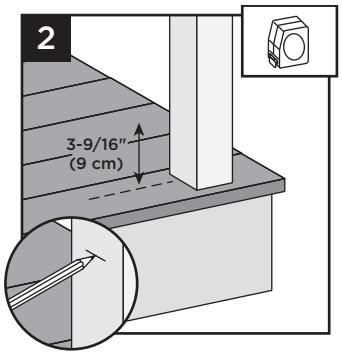


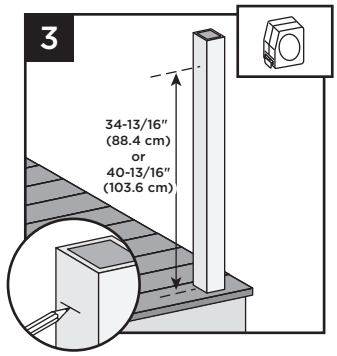
4. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #10 x 2.5" high carbon steel coated black screws *(not provided).*
5. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using two #10 x 2.5" high carbon steel coated black screws *(not provided)*.

Attaching Brackets if using Pressure-Treated Posts with Transcend 4x4 Post Sleeves

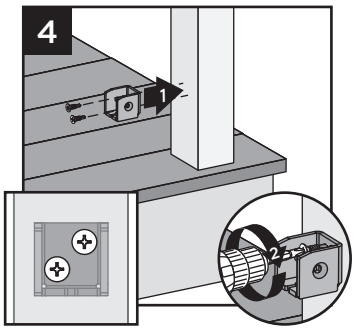
1. Install post sleeve over pressure-treated post.

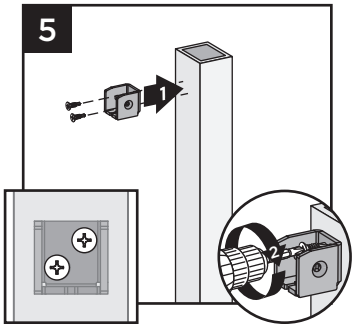




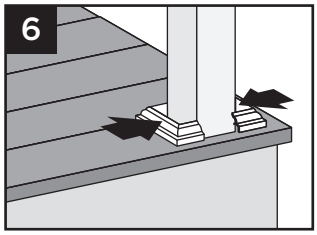


2. Measure up from top of decking surface 3 9/16". Mark with light line.
3. Measure up from top of decking surface 35 5/16" for 36" rail height or 41 5/16" for 42" rail height. Mark with light line.





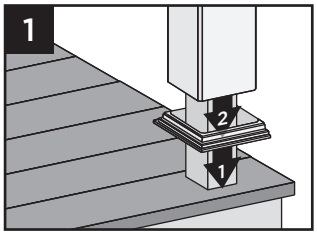
4. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #10 x 2.5" high carbon steel coated black screws *(not provided)*.
5. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using two #10 x 2.5" high carbon steel coated black screws *(not provided)*.
6. Snap two piece skirt over post sleeve.

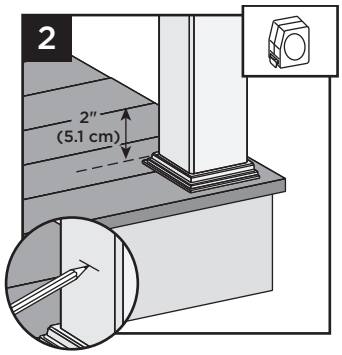


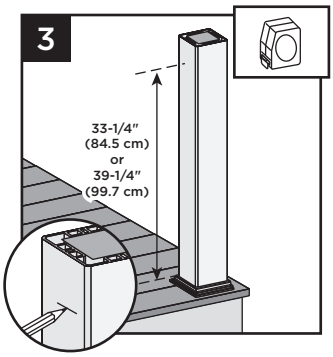
Attaching Brackets if using Pressure-Treated Posts with Transcend 6x6 Post Sleeves

Install 1-Piece Skirt and Post Sleeve

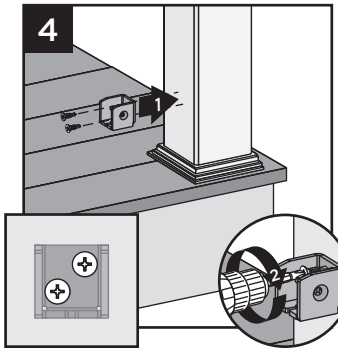
1. Slide 1-piece skirt down to rest on decking surface. Slide post sleeve over post and position inside post sleeve skirt.

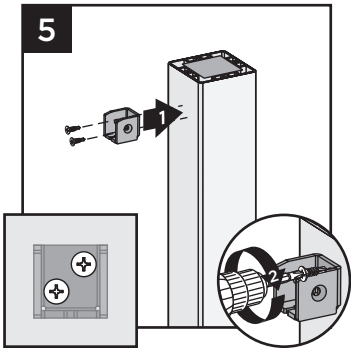






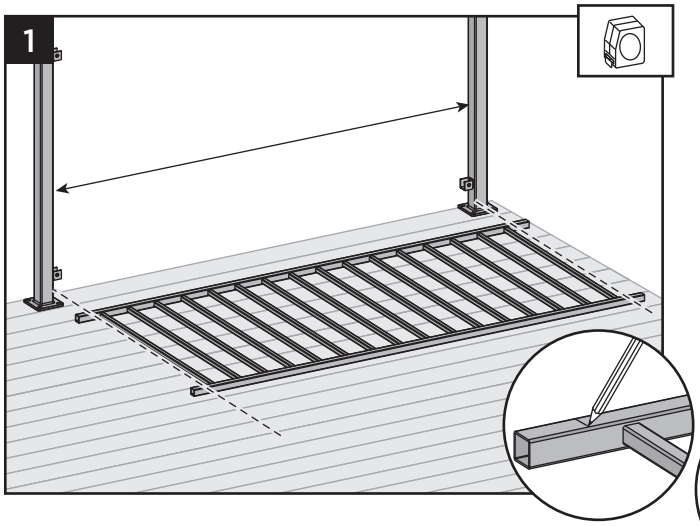
2. Measure up from top of skirt 2". Mark with light line.
3. Measure up from top of skirt 33 3/4" for 36" rail height or 39 3/4" for 42" rail height. Mark with light line.



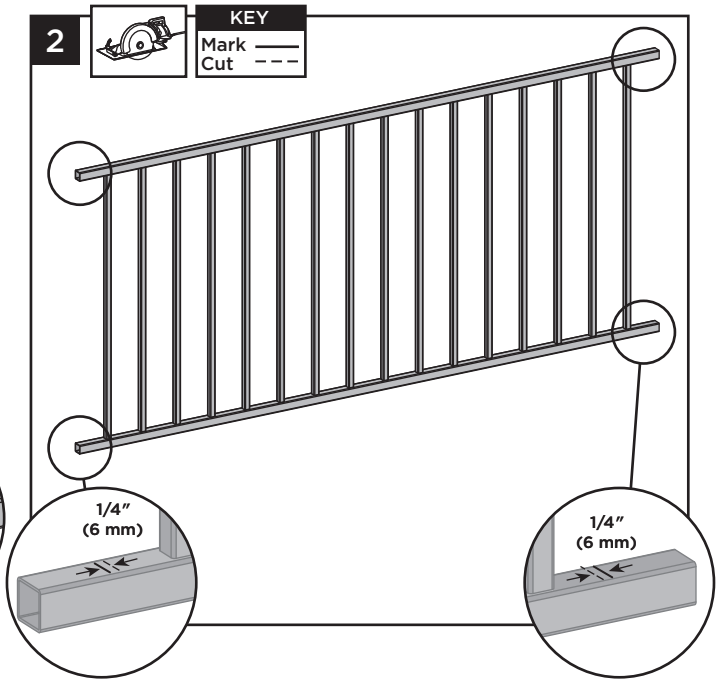


4. Center lower bracket on post above the marked line and attach using two #10 x 2.5" high carbon steel coated black screws *(not provided)*.
5. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using two #10 x 2.5" high carbon steel coated black screws *(not provided)*.

How to Measure and Cut Panel Rails (When REQUIRED)



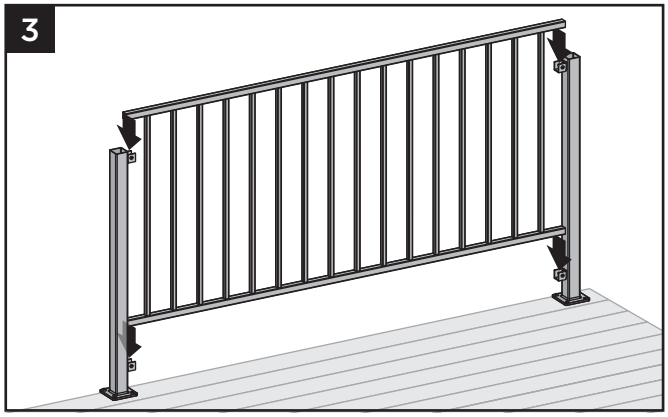
1. Position panel between posts and ensure there is equal distance on each of the end balusters and posts, as well as allow 1-1/2" on each side of rails to allow for attachment to brackets.



2. Using a saw with metal blade, cut ends of both bottom and top rails 1/4" shorter on each side to allow for fit into brackets.

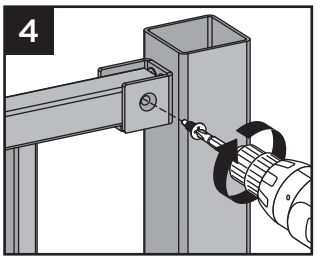
HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL HORIZONTAL PANEL/CONTINUED

Installing Panel to Brackets

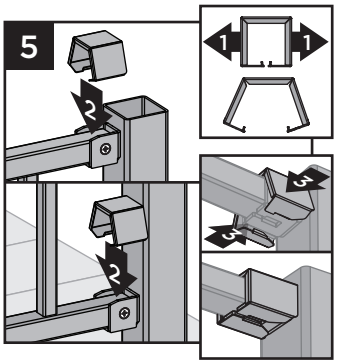


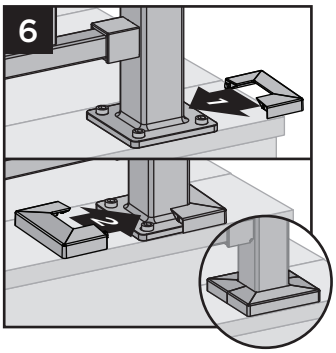
3. Place panel in bottom and top brackets.
4. Attach panel rails to brackets using one #12 x 3/4" self-drilling screw.

Note: *Brackets are designed to allow screw on either side, customer may choose based on preference.*

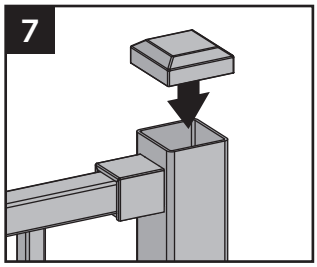


Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps





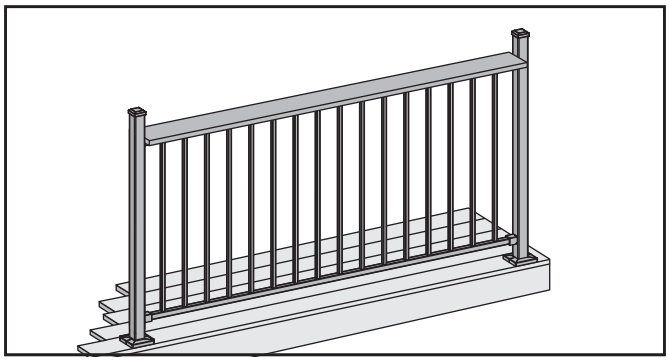
5. Gently spread and then snap corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.
6. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of post.
7. Attach post caps to posts (use of rubber mallet may be required for secure attachment).



HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL – COCKTAIL RAIL PANEL CONFIGURATIONS

- *Trex Cocktail Rail brackets (sold separately) are for use with either Traditional or Cocktail designs. For a 6′ section, use 4 brackets and screws provided, for 8′ section, use 5 brackets and screws provided.*
- *When installing Cocktail or Traditional railing configurations with Enhance Steel Posts, you MUST use taller posts. For 36" railing heights use 42" post, for 42" railing heights use 53" post. Failure to do this will not allow post caps to fit properly on posts due to insufficient clearance.*
- *When using Enhance Steel Posts, these can be cut to desired heights once Cocktail or Traditional rail heights are established. Ensure to allow enough space for post cap to fit properly.*
- *When using pressure-treated and post sleeve, post and post sleeve must be cut.*
- *If using a one-piece skirt, ensure to attach this BEFORE attaching railing.*
- *IF USING PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS WITH POST SLEEVES, PLEASE REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO ATTACHING PRESSURE-TREATED POSTS.*

Cocktail Rail Panel with Enhance Steel Posts Configuration

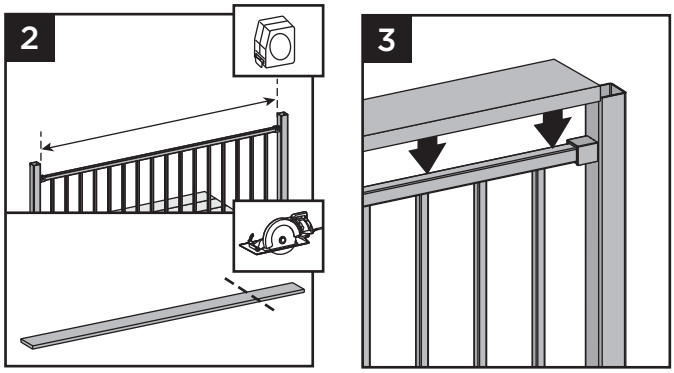


NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL – COCKTAIL RAIL PANEL CONFIGURATIONS/CONTINUED

1. *Follow steps on previous pages for installing brackets, panels, bracket covers, and skirts.*

Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

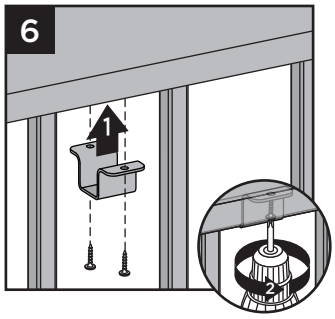


2. Measure between posts and cut deck board to length.
3. Place deck board onto top rail.

4. On underside of deck board, mark outline of bracket cover location.

5. Remove deck board from rail. Using a router bit, forstner bit, or something similar, rout out this area to allow deck board to fully seat onto top rail.

6. Secure boards to top rail using Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 2 screws provided.

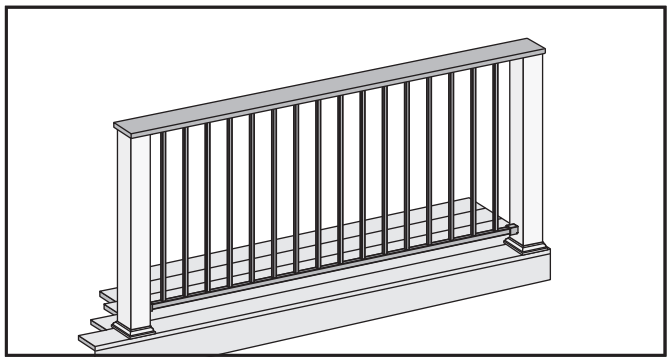


NOTE: *Predrilling before attachment is recommended.*

Attachment of Caps

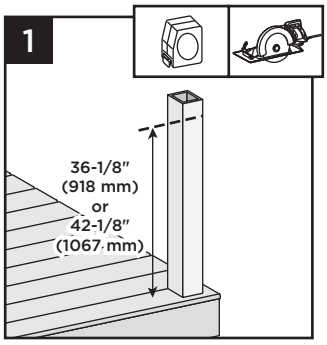
7. *See step 7 on previous page.*

Cocktail Rail Panel with Pressure-Treated Post and Post Sleeve Configuration



Cutting Post and Post Sleeve

1. Mark and cut post and post sleeve measuring from deck surface:
   - » 36 1/8" (918mm) for 36" (914 mm height.
   - » 42 1/8" (1067mm) for 42" (1067 mm) height.

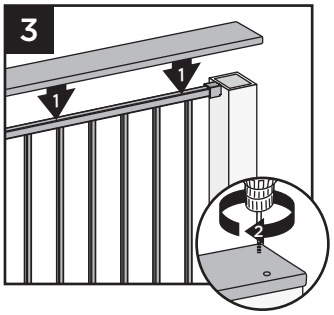


2. *Follow steps on previous pages for installing brackets and panels, and bracket covers.*

NOTE: *When installing the upper bracket covers, these will be slightly higher than the post/post sleeve.*

Attaching Deck Board to Top Rail

3. Place deck boards (**DO NOT** use Enhance deck boards for top rail) over top rails.



4. On underside of deck board, mark outline of bracket cover location only.

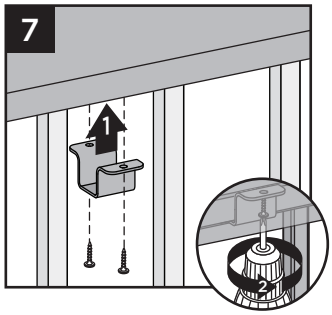
5. Remove deck board from rail. Using a router bit, forstner bit, or something similar, rout out this area to allow deck board to fully seat onto top rail and post/post sleeve.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL – COCKTAIL RAIL CONFIGURATIONS/CONTINUED

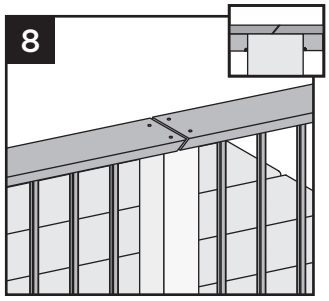
6. Attach boards on each post with Trex-approved composite screws (quantity of 2 per each board end).

7. Secure boards to top rail using Trex Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 4 screws provided.



NOTE: *Predrilling before attachment is recommended.*

8. Use scarf cut for posts where two deck boards meet.



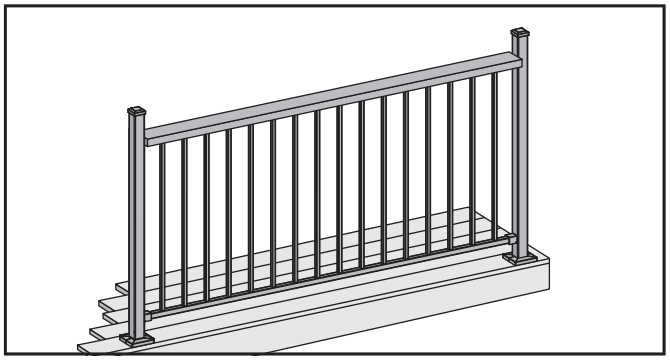
NOTES:

» *Leave 1/8" (3 mm) gap between deck boards.*

» *Deck boards can overhang end of last post maximum 1/2" (13 mm).*

HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL – TRADITIONAL RAIL CONFIGURATIONS/

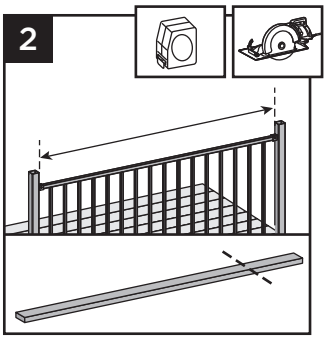
Traditional Rail Panel with Enhance Steel Posts Configuration



1. *Follow steps on previous pages for installing brackets, panels, bracket covers, and skirts.*

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail

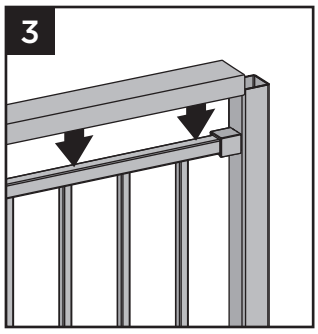
2. Measure between posts and cut 2 x 4 to length.



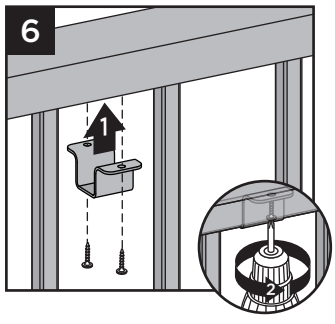
3. Place 2 x 4 on top rail.

4. On underside of 2 x 4, mark outline of bracket cover location.

5. Remove 2 x 4 from rail. Using a router bit, forstner bit, or something similar, rout out this area to allow 2 x 4 to fully seat onto top rail.



6. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24" and attach with 2 screws provided.



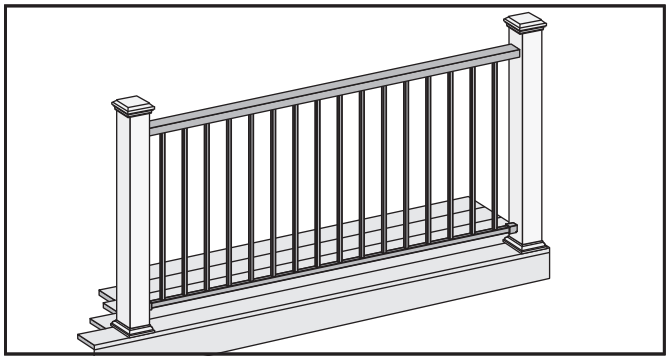
NOTE: *Predrilling before attachment is recommended.*

Attachment of Caps

7. *See step 7 on page 299.*

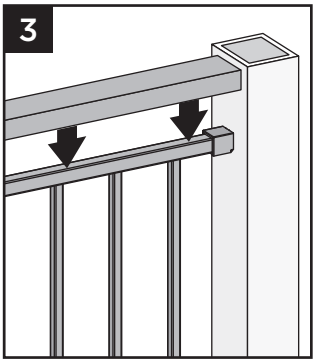
HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL – TRADITIONAL RAIL CONFIGURATIONS/CONTINUED

Traditional Rail Panel with Pressure-Treated Post and Post Sleeve Configuration

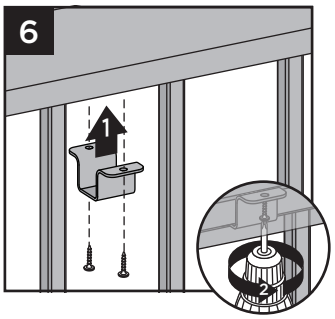


1. *Follow steps on previous pages for installing brackets, panels, and bracket covers.*

Attaching 2 x 4 to Top Rail

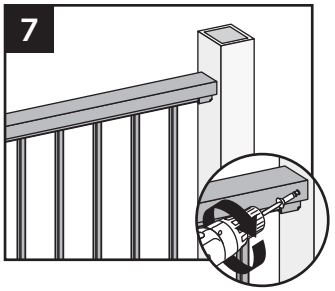


2. Measure between posts and cut 2 x 4 to length.
3. Place 2 x 4 on top rail.
4. On underside of 2 x 4, mark outline of bracket cover location.
5. Remove 2 x 4 from rail. Using a router bit, forstner bit, or something similar, rout out this area to allow 2 x 4 to fully seat onto top rail.

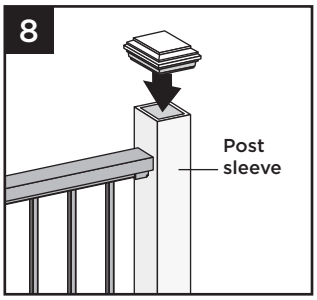


6. Secure 2 x 4 to top rail using Trex Cocktail Bracket (sold separately). Ensure that there is a bracket at each end of the railing section, then space brackets approximately every 24″ and attach with 4 screws provided.

NOTE: *Predrilling before attachment is recommended.*



7. Pre-drill a pilot hole and toenail 2-1/2″ (6.4 cm) screw at each end of 2 x 4 into post on back side of rail (side not facing decking).



8. Attach post caps to post sleeves using external grade PVC construction adhesive (apply adhesive on the inside self-centering/ corner tabs).

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

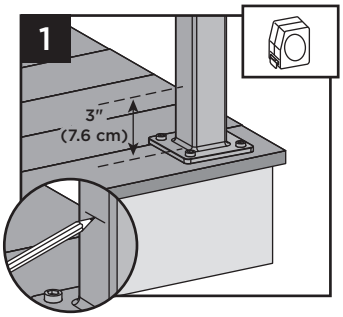
HOW TO INSTALL HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS

» *HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS CAN BE USED UP TO A 45° ANGLE FOR TREX ENHANCE STEEL PANEL RAILINGS.*

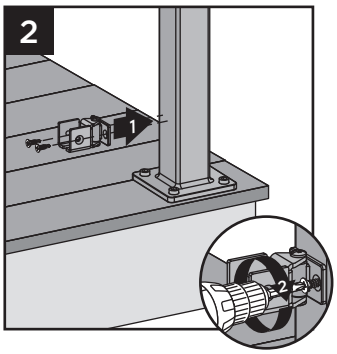
» *WHEN USING HORIZONTAL SWIVEL BRACKETS VERY IMPORTANT TO LAY OUT LOCATION AND ORIENTATION OF POSTS AND SWIVEL BRACKETS BEFORE INSTALLING SWIVEL BRACKETS.*

Attach Lower Swivel Brackets to Enhance Steel Posts

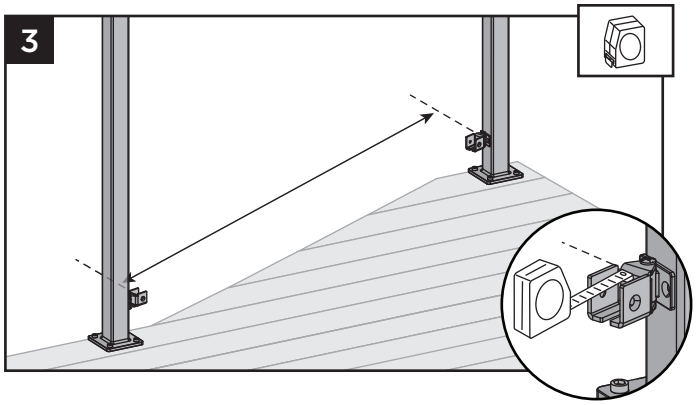
1. Measure 3 3/16″ (8.1 cm) from top of post base plate. Mark with light line.



2. Center lower bracket on post **above** the marked line and attach using two #12 x 3/4 self-drilling screws *(provided).*

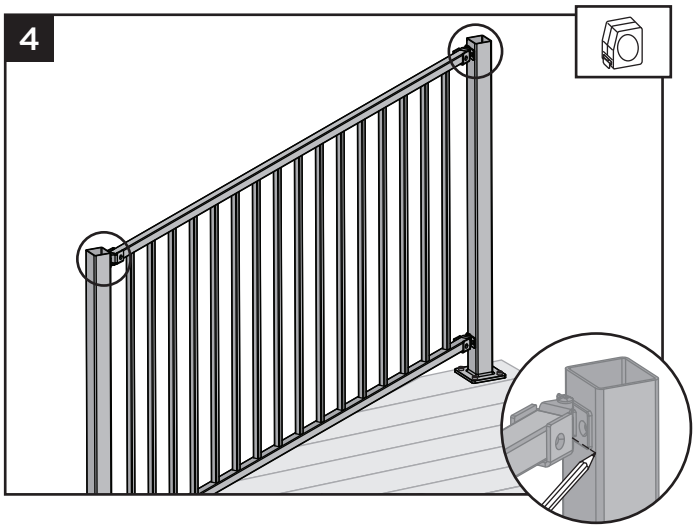


How to Measure and Cut Bottom and Top Railings (When Required)



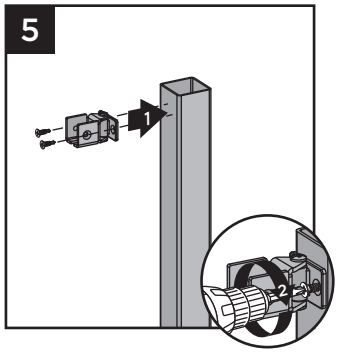
3. With lower brackets in correct swivel location, measure distance from inside of bracket to inside of bracket. Also allow for 1-1/2″ clearance on each side for panel rails to attach to brackets. Cut panel as per previous instructions.

Installing Upper Swivel Brackets to Enhance Steel Posts



4. Place panel into lower swivel brackets. Place upper swivel brackets temporarily onto top rail and mark post at underside of bracket location. If necessary use a clamp to hold brackets on top rail.

5. Center upper bracket on post above marked line and attach using two #12 x 3/4″ self-drilling screws *(provided)*.



Installing Panel to Brackets

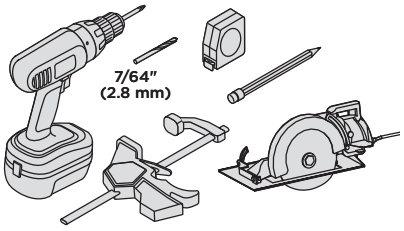
6. *Attach panels to brackets as per previous instructions.*

7. *Attach bracket covers, caps, and skirts as per previous instructions.*

RUST-OLEUM® is a trademark of Rust-Oleum Corporation

TREX ENHANCE™ STEEL RAIL STAIR PANEL

TOOLS NEEDED

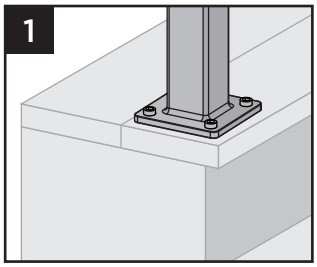


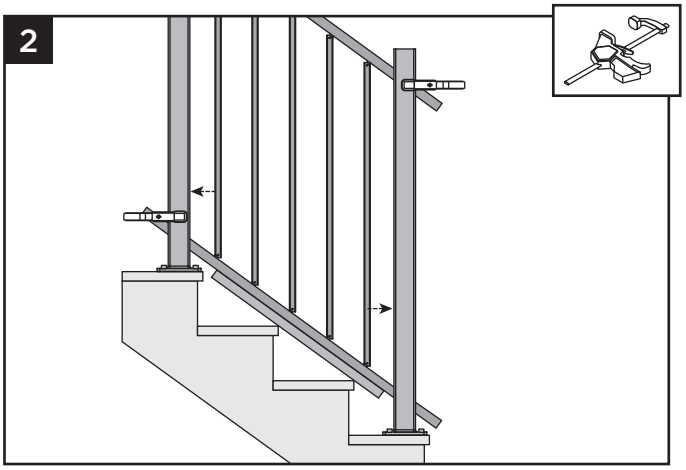
NOTES:

- ***FOR A 6′ OR 8′ STAIR RAIL, POST TO POST SPAN WILL BE LESS THAN 6′ OR 8′. PRIOR TO INSTALLING STAIR POSTS CALCULATE POST TO POST SPAN USING A MAXIMUM STAIR RAIL LENGTH REQUIRED AND THE ANGLE AT WHICH THE STAIR RAILS WILL BE INSTALLED. DO NOT INSTALL STAIR POSTS AT 6′ OR 8′ SPAN, AS STAIR RAILINGS WILL THEN BE TOO SHORT.***
- *FOR STAIR INSTALLATIONS USE A 53″ STAIR POST. POST CAN BE CUT TO DESIRED HEIGHT ONCE RAILING HEIGHT IS ESTABLISHED. ENSURE ADEQUATE SPACE FOR POST CAP TO FIT PROPERLY.*
- *WHEN CUTTING ENHANCE STEEL RAILING PANELS, USE A METAL CUTTING BLADE.*
- *DO NOT CUT ENHANCE STEEL RAILING PANELS ON TOP OF DECK SURFACE. METAL FLAKING CAN BE DIFFICULT TO CLEAN.*
- *ALWAYS WEAR APPROPRIATE SAFETY GLASSES WHEN CUTTING METAL.*
- *TREX RECOMMENDS COVERING ANY END CUTS EXPOSING RAW STEEL OR SCRATCHES TO THE RAILING. CLEAN THE SURFACE OF THE RAIL AND APPLY AN APPROVED PAINT FOR EXTERIOR STEEL SURFACES SUCH AS RUST-OLEUM® PRODUCTS MATCHING THE LOW GLOSS FINISH OF YOUR ENHANCE STEEL RAILING.*

HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL STAIR PANEL/CONTINUED

1. Install post at nose of stair tread directly above required blocking. ALWAYS refer to your local building code official prior to installing any railing system to ensure all code and safety requirements are met. Trex cannot be held responsible for improper or non-recommended installations.

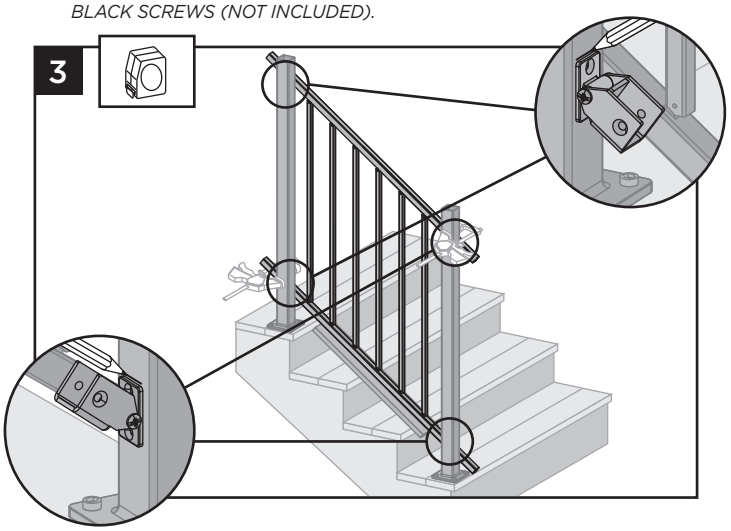




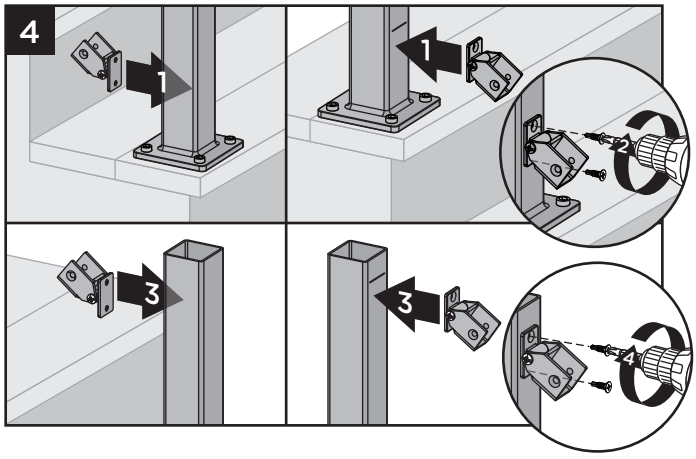
2. Use a 1″ deck board as a spacer board and lay this on the stair treads between the posts. Place stair panel on top of the deck board and clamp stair panel to posts. Ensure that balusters are straight and positioned with equal spacing at post locations.

Attaching Upper and Lower Stair Swivel Brackets

- *IF ATTACHING TREX ENHANCE STEEL RAILING TO PRESSURE-TREATED POST OR PRESSURE-TREATED POST/POST SLEEVES, ATTACH BRACKETS TO POSTS USING #10 X 2.5″ HIGH CARBON STEEL COATED BLACK SCREWS (NOT INCLUDED).*



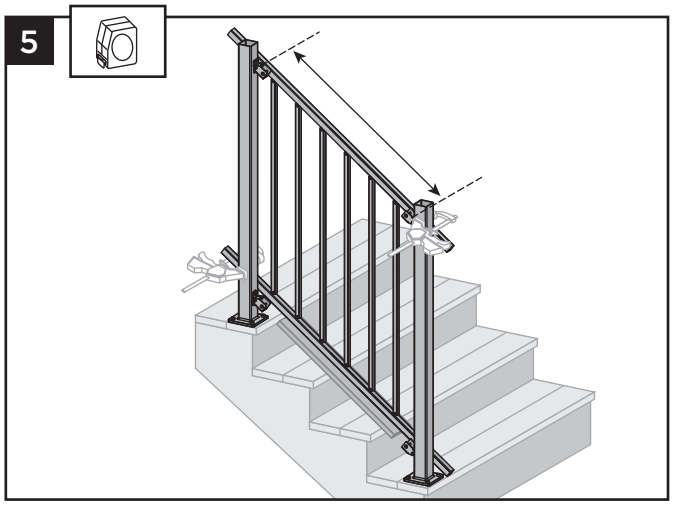
3. Line up bracket with top and bottom railing. Place a light line on post above swivel base.



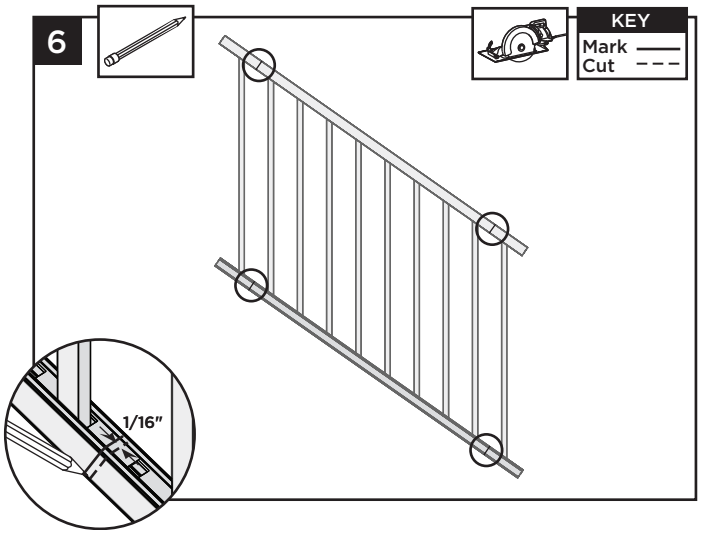
4. Center stair brackets on posts below the marked line and attach using two #12 x 3/4″ self-drilling screws *(provided).* In some cases it may be difficult to attach the stair bracket on the lower stair post. A 90˚drill or adaptor is recommended to attach screws in this area.

HOW TO INSTALL ENHANCE STEEL RAIL STAIR PANEL/CONTINUED

Marking and Cutting Stair Panel Rails (when required)

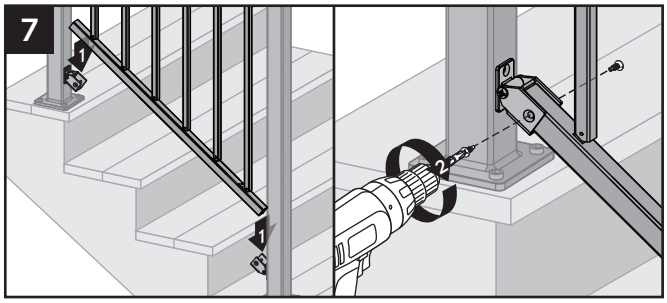


5. Mark top and bottom rails where they align with the rear wall of the top and bottom brackets.



6. Remove panel and place on flat surface (note stair panel can be "unracked" if necessary for ease of cutting). Extend marks to side of rails. Brackets are designed to allow for railing to be installed with a standard perpendicular cut. Cut end of rails 1/16" shorter than mark on each side to allow for fit into brackets.

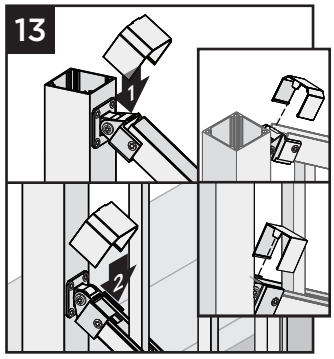
Attaching Stair Panel to Stair Swivel Brackets

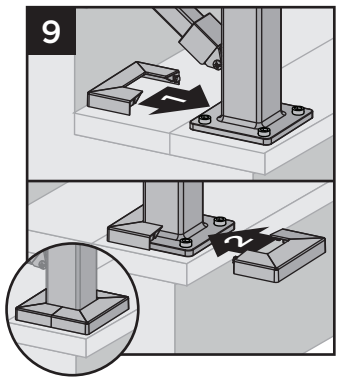


7. Attach stair panel to swivel brackets using one #12 x 3/4" self-drilling screw *(provided)* on one side of stair bracket.

Note: *Brackets are designed to allow screw on either side, customer may choose based on preference.*

Attachment of Bracket Covers, Skirts, and Caps

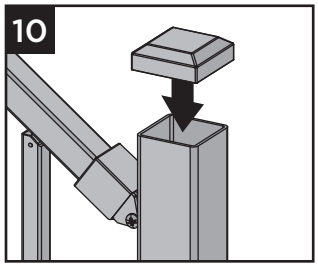




8. Gently spread and then snap corresponding bracket covers over opening in upper and bottom rails.

9. Attach provided post skirt to bottom of post.

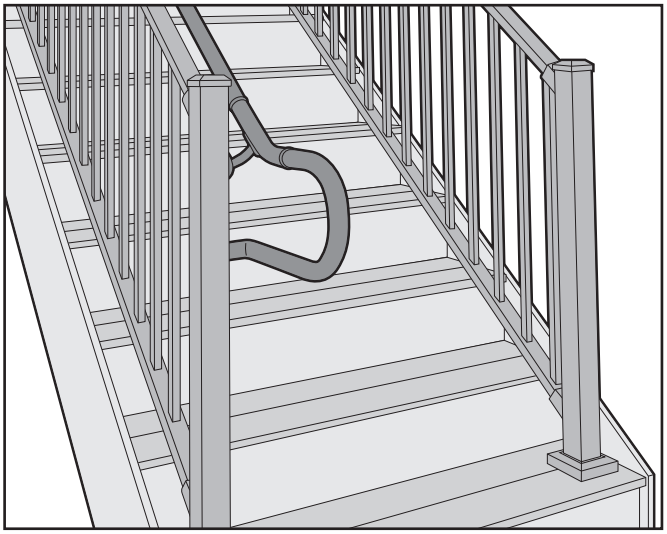
10. Attach post caps to posts (use of rubber mallet may be required for secure attachment).



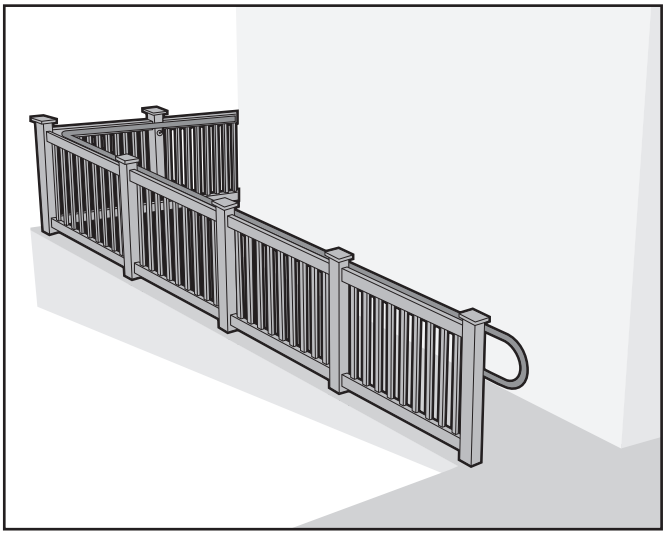
RUST-OLEUM® is a trademark of Rust-Oleum Corporation.

TREX® ALUMINUM ADA COMPLIANT HANDRAIL

STAIR APPLICATION

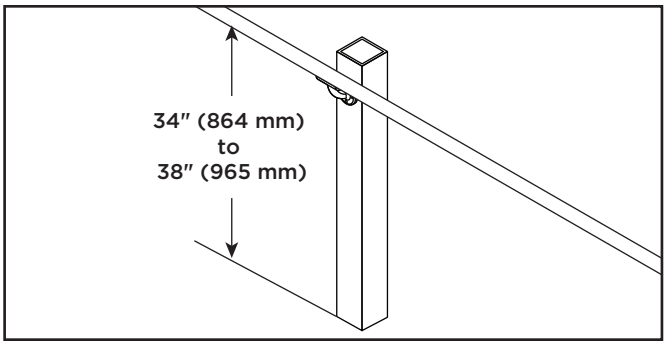


RAMP APPLICATION



ADA Handrail Guidelines

1. ADA handrails can be installed using various design applications such as those for stairs, ramps, and horizontal applications. Designs include options for straight and 90° wall returns, 90° corners, and adjustable angles. Choose which is best for your needs before installing. *Refer to railing profile page for a more detailed parts list.*



2. The handrail system top rail should be 34" (864 mm) to 38" (965 mm) above the surface. However, verifying height requirements with local building code officials before installing is important as codes vary in different areas.*
3. Maintain a minimum clearance of 1-1/2" (38 mm) between the handrail and any obstructions above or behind the handrail.
4. The end loop return at all landings must extend 12" (305 mm) past the end of the ramp or stair application.*
5. The slope of the handrail for the ramp should not exceed 1" (25 mm) rise over a 12" (305 mm) run.
6. **The maximum recommended span between supports is 6′ (1.83 m) on center. Thus, placement of posts is critical when installation of railing is being considered.***
7. Rails are designed to have a tight fit into other connecting components. It is critical to line these up in the correct orientation BEFORE connecting parts together. If it is necessary to shift or move a component on a rail, wrap with a protective cloth to prevent scratching as you may need to use a wide-mouth wrench to correct this.
8. ***At any straight location where internal connector is used, it is CRITICAL to locate these as close to a wall mount as possible.***
9. If using metal posts, pre-drill all locations for bracket attachment. (**ALWAYS** use a drill bit slightly SMALLER in diameter than the screw being used for attachment.)
10. All elbow components can be cut down to allow for tighter angles. Cut a maximum of 2" (51 mm) on each side if this is required.

**Refer to the American Disabilities Act for detailed information with regard to handrail requirements.*

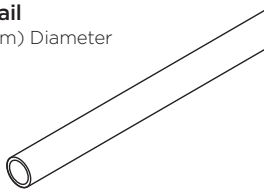
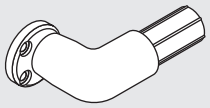
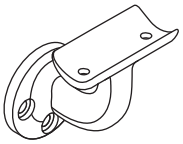
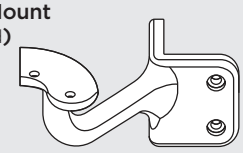
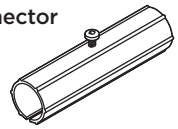
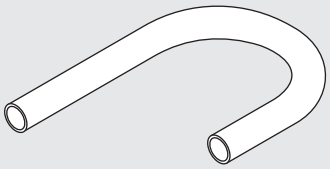
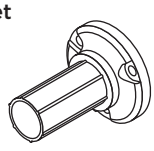
SAFETY NOTES

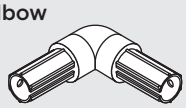
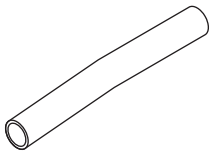
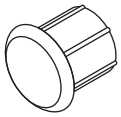
- *When cutting metal, ALWAYS wear proper safety eyewear (as well as any other proper safety wear).*
- *Remove all burrs from cut ends before installation.*
- *Use of a non-ferrous metal blade is recommended.*

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

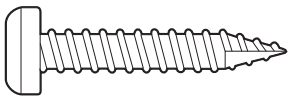
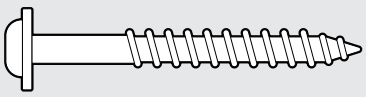
ADA RAILING PROFILES

» SEE PAGE 75 FOR SKU NUMBERS.

DESCRIPTION	COLOR
ADA Handrail 1.375" (34.9mm) Diameter 	BK, BZ, WT
ADA Wall Return (screws included) 	BK, BZ, WT
ADA Wall Mount (screws included) 	BK, BZ, WT
ADA Corner Mount (screws included) 	BK, BZ, WT
ADA Internal Connector 	
ADA Handrail Return 	BK, BZ, WT
ADA Inline Bracket (screws included) 	BK, BZ, WT

DESCRIPTION	COLOR
ADA Adjustable Elbow 	BK, BZ, WT
ADA 90° Elbow* *This component is designed for both inside corners and outside corners.	BK, BZ, WT
ADA 36°, 34°, and 31° Elbows	BK, BZ, WT
ADA 5° Elbow 	BK, BZ, WT
ADA Collar	BK, BZ, WT
ADA End Cap 	BK, BZ, WT

HARDWARE

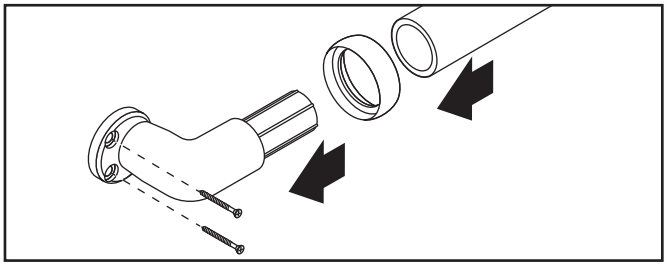
RAIL TO BRACKET ATTACHMENT	
Short Metal Screw (#10 x 5/8" [16 mm])	
BRACKET TO METAL POST ATTACHMENT	
Long Metal Screw (#12 x 1-1/4" [32 mm])	
BRACKET TO WOOD POST/POST SLEEVE ATTACHMENT	
Wood Screw (#10 x 2" [51 mm])	

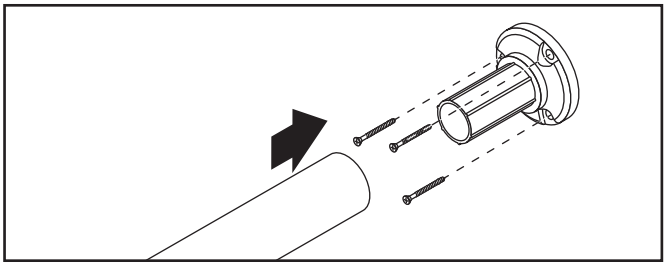
NOTE: *If attaching brackets to 6x6 posts/postsleeves, use #10 x 2-1/2" (64 mm) wood screws (not included).*

COLORS: **BK** Charcoal Black **BZ** Bronze **WT** White

HOW TO INSTALL TREX® ALUMINUM ADA COMPLIANT HANDRAIL

90° Wall Return

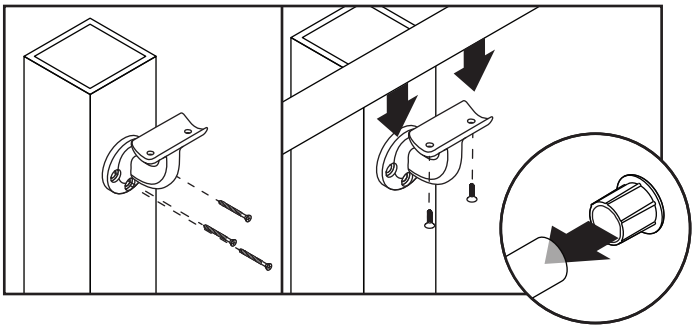




1. If required, cut railing to proper length based on location of wall return(s) or attachment to other components.
2. If desired, collar ring can be used to hide seam of wall return to rail. Slide over rail **BEFORE** inserting rail into wall return.
3. Slide rail onto wall return until it is fully inserted and seam is hidden under collar (if collar is being used).
4. Attach wall return to post using specific hardware provided *(see chart on previous page)*, **ENSURING** wall return is at proper angle of alignment to post. (Wall return is designed to have tight fit into rail, thus location of attachment is critical.) If using metal posts, pre-drill post prior to attachment of wall mount.

Wall Mount

NOTE: *Refer to Rail-to-Rail Connections section if connecting two or more rails together to make continuous straight run.*



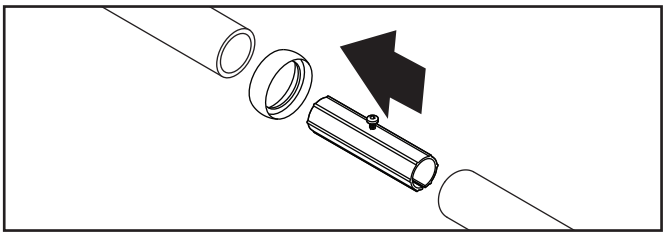
1. If required, cut railing to proper length based on location of wall mount(s) or attachment to other components.
2. Attach wall mount to post using specific hardware provided *(see chart on previous page)*, **ENSURING** wall mount is at proper angle of alignment to angle of rail. If using metal posts, pre-drill post prior to attachment of wall mount.

TIP: To help with angled attachment, place one screw into bottom hole of bracket and pivot wall mount to position required.

3. Attach rail to wall mount using specific hardware provided *(see chart on previous page)*.
4. Attach end cap to railing.

Inline Bracket

1. If required, cut railing to proper length based on location of inline bracket(s) or attachment to other components.
2. Attach inline bracket to post using specific hardware provided *(see chart on previous page)*. If using metal posts, pre-drill post prior to attachment of inline bracket.
3. Slide rail onto inline bracket until it is fully inserted.



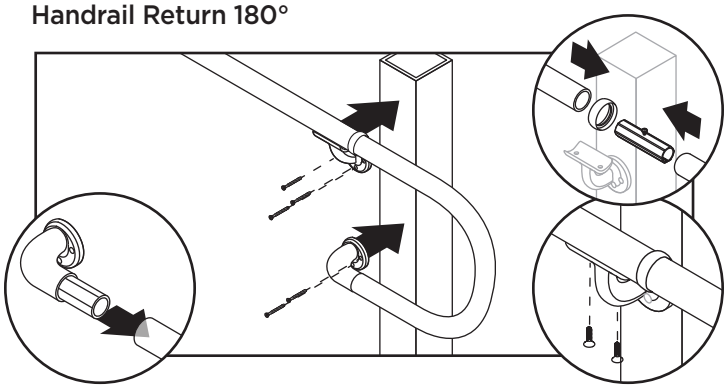
Rail-to-Rail Connections/Internal Connector

NOTE: *When rail-to-rail straight connections are use for longer spans, posts must be installed 6′ OC max. In addition, a wall mount MUST be used at each seam of rail-to-rail connections as close to center of wall mount as possible. If collar is used, this can be offset slightly to allow for the collar to fit.*

1. If required, cut railing to proper length.
2. If desired, collar ring can be used to hide seam between rails. Slide ring over rail BEFORE inserting rails into internal connector.
3. Slide internal connector into rail end until metal spacer screw is touching either end of rail or collar, if used.
4. Slide second rail over opposite end of internal connector, until it is touching metal spacer screw.
5. Remove metal spacer screw using #2 square-head screwdriver.
6. Push second rail further over internal connector until it fits in the collar (if used) or fits tightly against rail.
7. Attach wall mount to post per previous instructions.
8. Attach rail to wall mount per previous instructions.
9. Use end caps where required.

HOW TO INSTALL TREX ALUMINUM ADA COMPLIANT HANDRAIL/CONTINUED

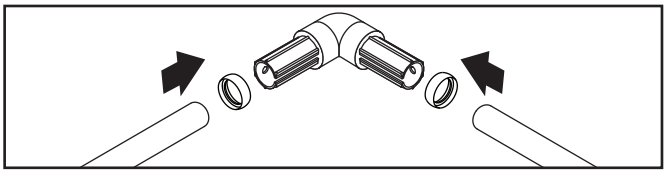
Handrail Return 180°



NOTE: *Ramp application shown here. (Appropriate angle elbow also required for stair applications.)*

1. If required, cut railing to proper length based on location of elbow used as well and other components being used.
2. If desired, collar ring can be used to hide seam of handrail return to rail or elbow being used. Slide this over rail **BEFORE** inserting rail into other component.
3. Ensure that all components are aligned to both wall mount on post as well as location of elbow on rail **BEFORE** attachment.
4. Slide internal connector into appropriate elbow being until metal spacer screw is touching either end of elbow or the collar, if this was used.
5. Attach wall return to lower end of handrail return (longer side), **ENSURING** wall return is at proper angle of alignment to post. (Wall return is designed to have tight fit into rail, thus location of attachment is critical.)
6. Slide opposite end of handrail return onto internal connector, until it is touching metal spacer screw.
7. Remove metal spacer screw using #2 square-head screwdriver.
8. Push handrail return further over internal connector until it fits in the collar (if used) or fits tightly against elbow.
9. Attach wall return to post per previous instructions.
10. Attach rail to wall mount per previous instructions.
11. Use end caps where required.

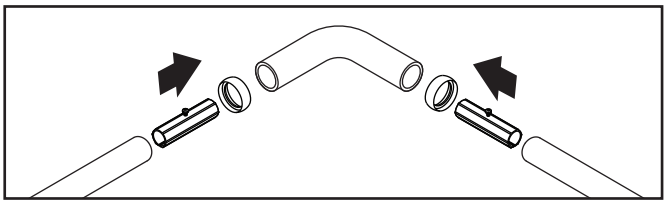
Adjustable Elbow



NOTE: *This elbow is designed to take the guesswork out of which elbow to buy based on stair angle.*

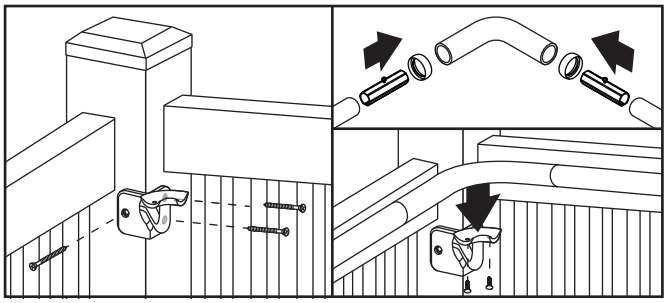
1. If required, cut railing to proper length based on location of elbows and other components being used.
2. If desired, collar ring can be used to hide seam of adjustable elbow to rail. Slide over rail BEFORE inserting rail into adjustable elbow.
3. Slide adjustable elbow into rail and ensure this fits tightly against rail.
4. Determine angle required and tighten set screw on adjustable elbow. (It is recommended to do this before final attachment in order to access the set screw more easily.)
5. Slide other connector of adjustable elbow into the 180° handrail return or transition rail.

Elbows (90°, 36°, 34°, 31°, 5°)



1. If required, cut railing to proper length based on location of elbows and other components being used.
2. If desired, collar ring can be used to hide seam of elbow to rail. Slide over rail **BEFORE** inserting rail into elbow.
3. Slide internal connector into rail end until metal spacer screw is touching either end of rail or the collar, if this was used.
4. Slide appropriate angled elbow onto opposite end of internal connector, until it is touching metal spacer screw.
5. Remove metal spacer screw using #2 square head screwdriver.
6. Push elbow further over internal connector until it fits in the collar (if used) or fits tightly against rail.
7. Attach wall mount to post per previous instructions.
8. Attach rail to wall mount per previous instructions.

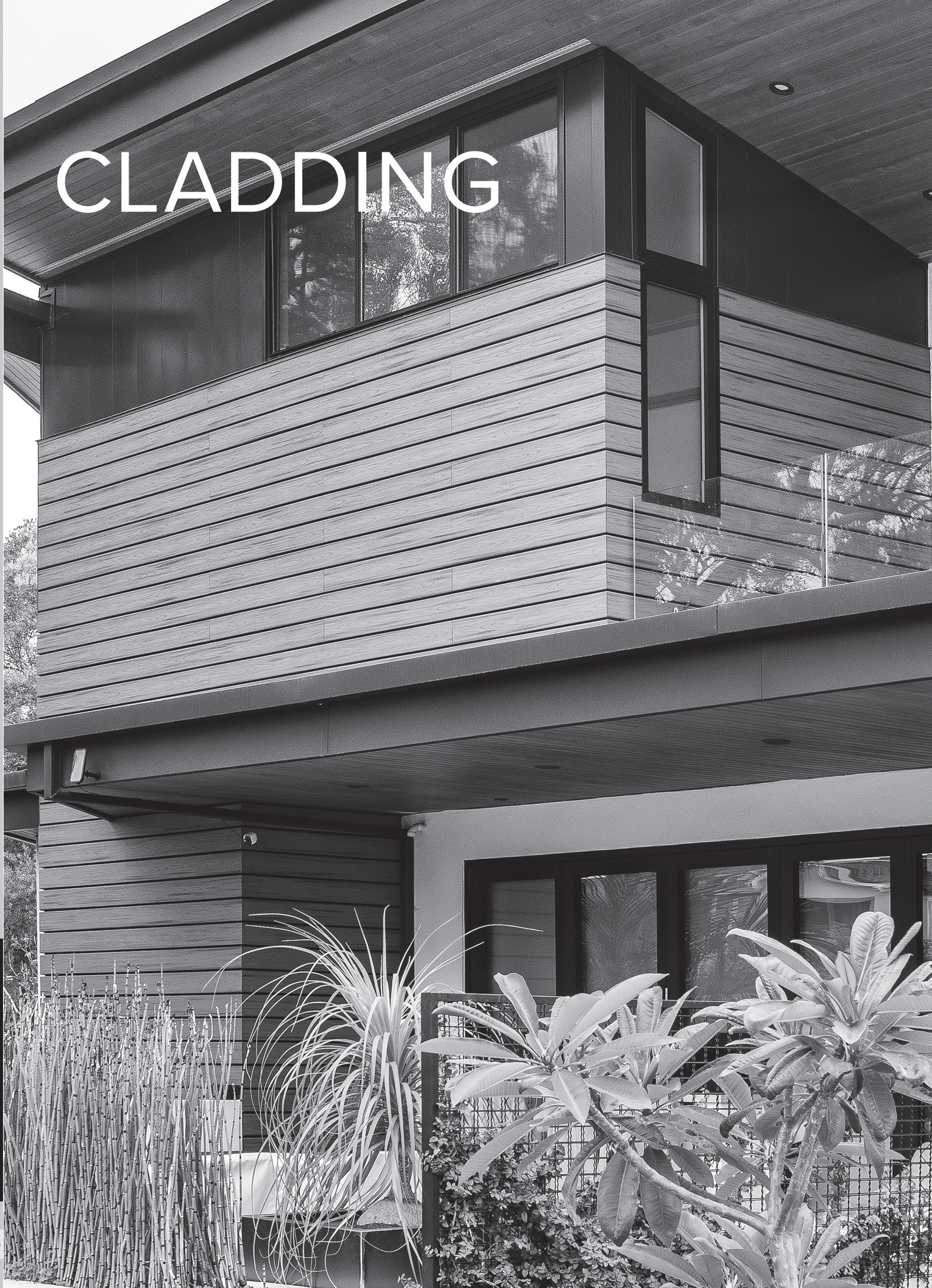
Corner Mount



1. Pre-drill metal post and install corner post to metal post using specific hardware provided *(see chart on previous page)*.
2. If desired, collar ring can be used to hide seam of elbow to rail. Slide this over rail **BEFORE** inserting rail into elbow.
3. Slide internal connector into rail end until metal spacer screw is touching either end of rail or the collar, if this was used.
4. Slide appropriate angled elbow onto opposite end of internal connector, until this is touching metal spacer screw.
5. Remove metal spacer screw using #2 square-head screwdriver.
6. Push elbow further over internal connector until this fits in the collar (if used) or fits tightly against rail.
7. Install elbow to corner mount using specific hardware provided.

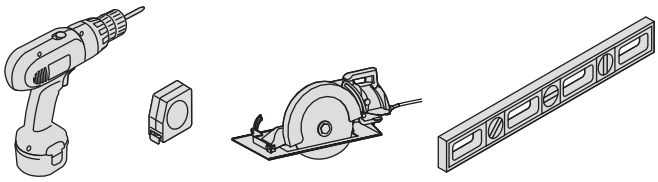
NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

CLADDING



HOW TO INSTALL OPEN-JOINT CLADDING
TREX TRANSCEND®

TOOLS NEEDED



NOTES:
- » *Only Trex Transcend or Trex Signature square-edge profiles are approved for use in cladding applications.*
- » *Consult local building code officials regarding applicable requirements of cladding applications, including that of proper methods of attachment of cladding framing supports.*
- » *Always install wood or steel furring strips over a flat substrate or a suitable cladding substructure.*
- » *Ensure that proper gapping requirements are followed as listed within instructions.*
- » *Open-joint facades are permitted when following Trex Cladding install instructions.*

TREX-APPROVED PRODUCT FOR CLADDING APPLICATIONS:

PROFILE		DESCRIPTION		ITEM #	COLORS
1" Square-Edge Board *Actual dimensions:* Signature: .94 in x 5.5 in x 20 ft (24 mm x 140 mm x 609 cm) Transcend: .94 in x 5.5 in x 16 ft / 20 ft (24 mm x 140 mm x 487 cm / 609 cm)		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Signature	XX010616NS01 XX010620NS01	OC, WY
		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Lineage	XX010616TLS01 XX010620TLS01	BC, CL, HT, JA, IM, RN, SF
		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Tropicals	XX010616TS01 XX010620TS01	HG, IM, LR, SR, TT
		1 x 6 x 16' 1 x 6 x 20'	Transcend Earth Tones	XX010616T2S01 XX010620T2S01	RS

Approved Fasteners:

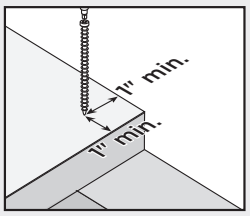
NOTE: *The fasteners listed below are all approved fasteners for attachment of Trex Cladding to furring strips. Consult local building code official for proper fasteners to use when attaching furring strips to structural wall. For salt water applications, it is recommended to use wood furring strips with appropriate stainless steel screws.*

If any condition occurs which is attributable to the use of non-recommended fasteners, such condition shall not be covered under the Trex Limited Warranty.

Cladding Attachment to Wood Furring Strips:
- » Starborn® Cap-Tor® xd Epoxy Coated & Headcote® 305 Stainless 2″ **ONLY**.
- » Starborn Deckfast® Fascia System –Epoxy Coated & Headcote® 305 Stainless.
- » Starborn® Pro Plug® System for PVC and Composite (Epoxy Coated & 305 or 316 Stainless) 2″ **ONLY**.

Cladding Attachment to Steel Furring Strips:
- » Starborn® Pro Plug® System for PVC and Composite for Metal Framing (410SS, self-drilling).
- » Starborn Deckfast® Metal 410SS with Epoxy Coating.

FASTENING TIPS



Install fasteners at a 90° angle (perpendicular to the board).

Install screws at minimum of 1" (25 mm) from the board end and edge, without splitting the board.

Gapping and Overhang:

You must gap Trex cladding both end-to-end and width-to-width. Gapping is necessary for airflow and the slight thermal expansion and contraction of Trex cladding boards.
- » **ALWAYS** follow Trex recommended gapping guidelines.
- » Maximum allowable perpendicular overhang for all Trex decking is 3/4″.

WIDTH-TO-WIDTH GAP
3/16″ Min.

END-TO-END/END-TO-WIDTH AND ABUTTING GAP		
	End-to-End/ End-to-Width	**Abutting Solid Objects**
Above 40°F* (4.5°C)*	1/8″	1/4″
Below 40°F* (4.5°C)*	3/16″	1/2″

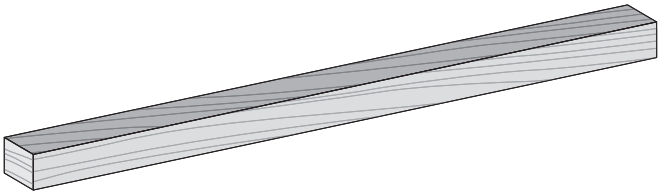
**Temperature at installation*

Pro Plug®, DeckFast® Cap-Tor® xd and HeadCote® are registered trademarks of Starborn Industries Inc.

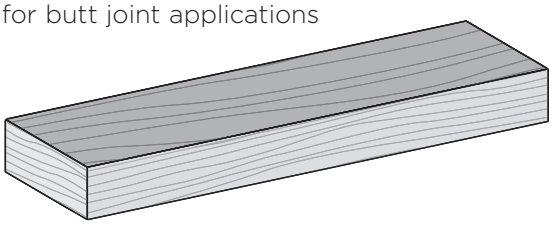
HOW TO INSTALL OPEN-JOINT CLADDING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND®

WOOD FURRING STRIPS (Pressure-Treated Wood)

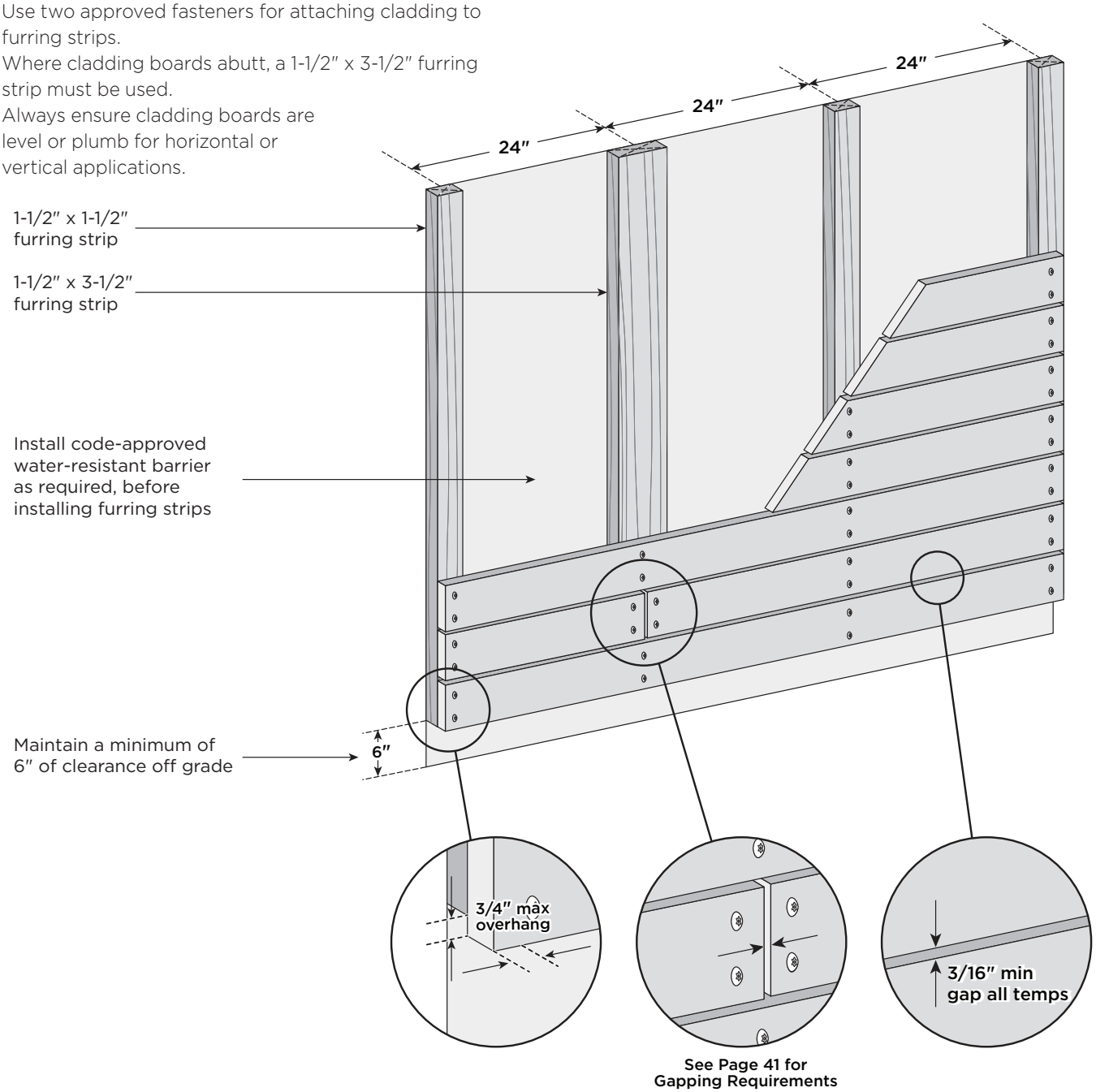
Minimum 1-1/2" x 1-1/2"



1-1/2" x 3-1/2"
Used for butt joint applications



- » Install furring strips at a maximum of 24" on center.
- » Use two approved fasteners for attaching cladding to furring strips.
- » Where cladding boards abutt, a 1-1/2" x 3-1/2" furring strip must be used.
- » Always ensure cladding boards are level or plumb for horizontal or vertical applications.



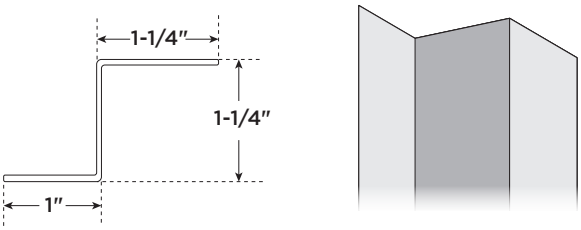
See Page 41 for Gapping Requirements

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

METAL FURRING STRIPS (Not Sold by TREX)

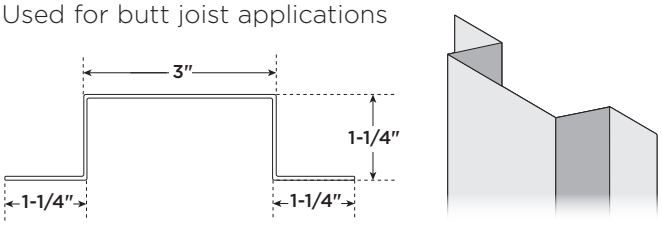
NOTE: *18 ga. (min) 33 ksi at sizes shown below.*

Z Furring Strip

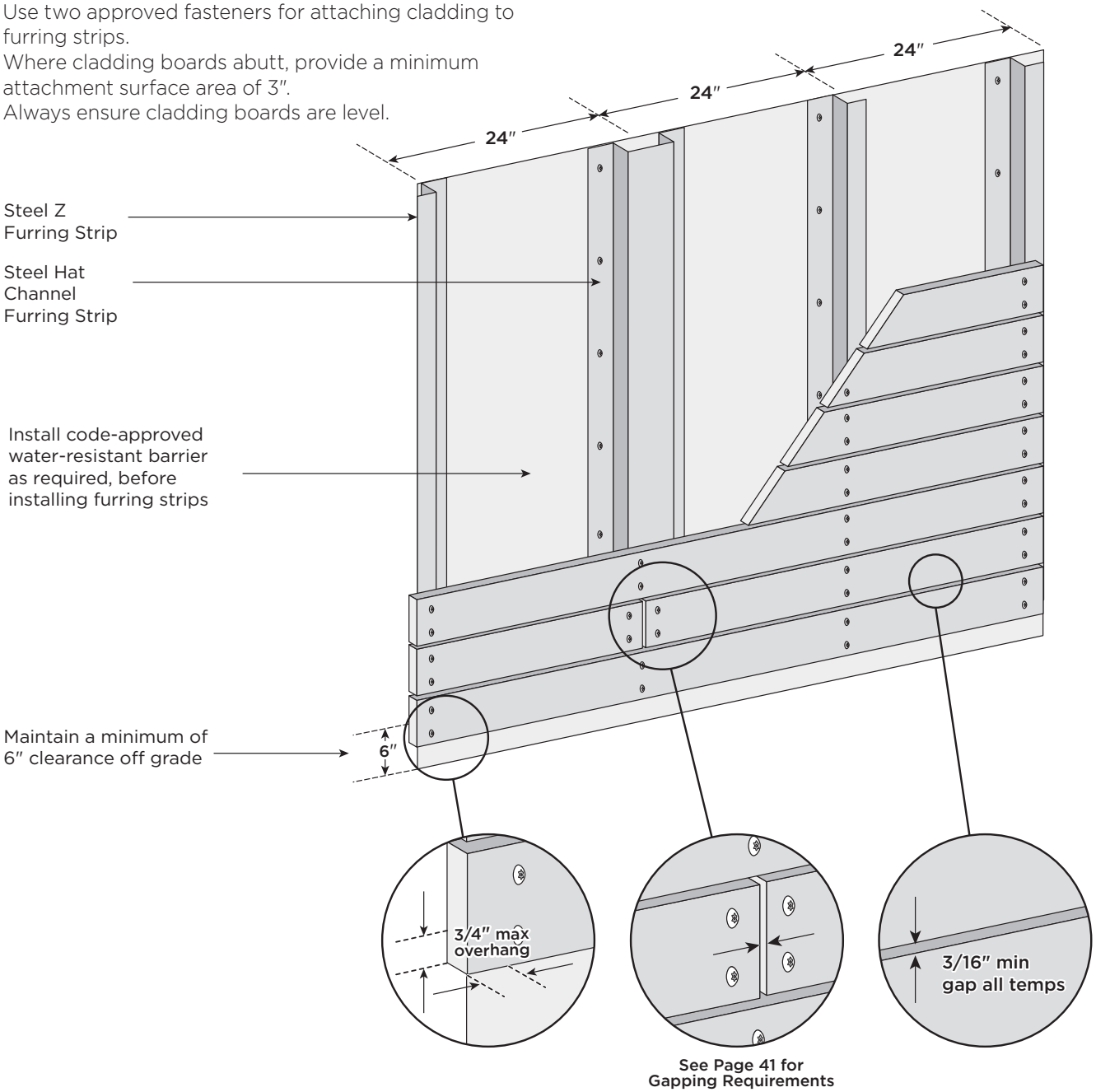


Hat Channel Furring Strip

Used for butt joist applications



- Install furring strips at a maximum of 24″ on center.
- Use two approved fasteners for attaching cladding to furring strips.
- Where cladding boards abutt, provide a minimum attachment surface area of 3″.
- Always ensure cladding boards are level.

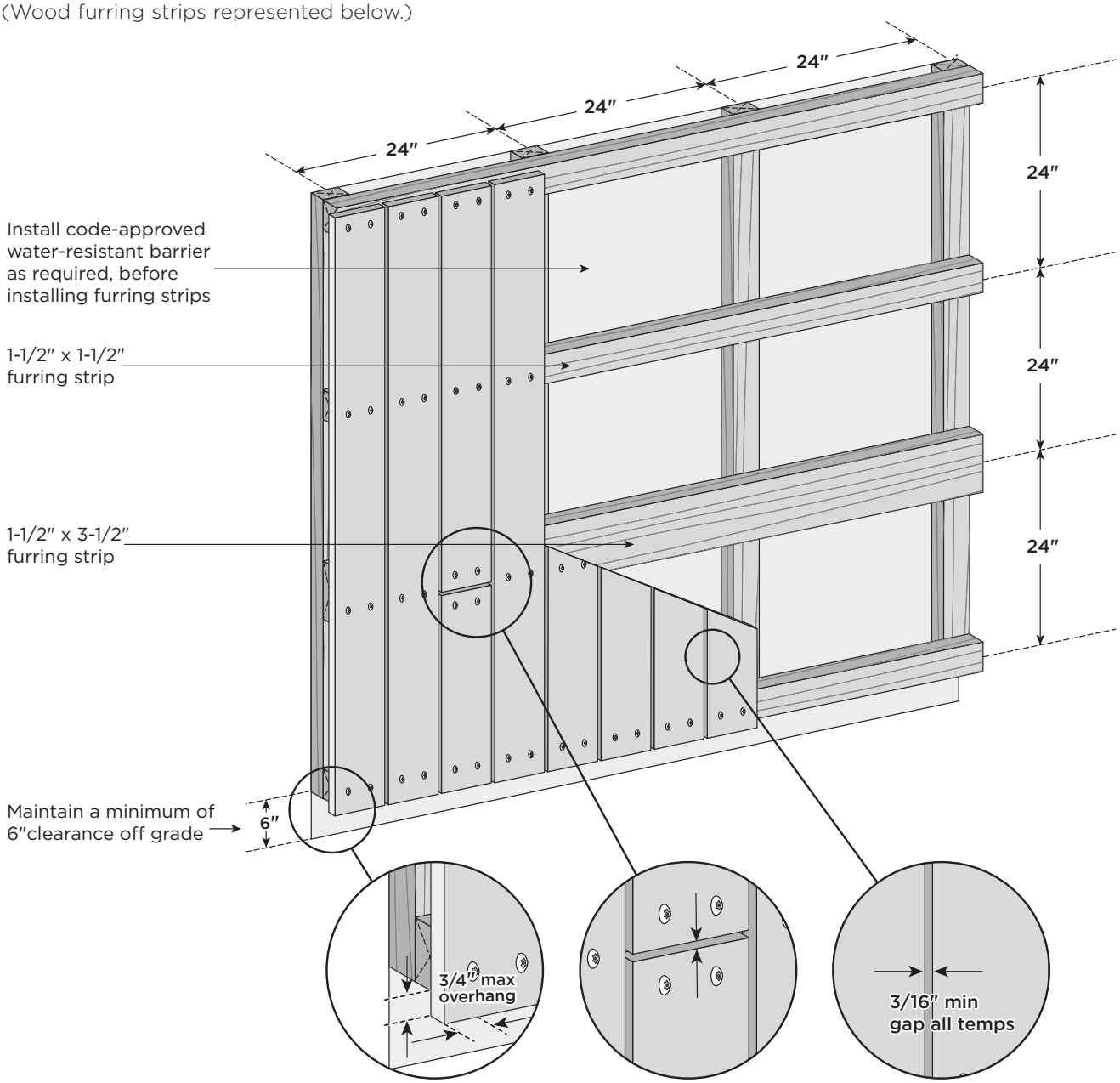


See Page 41 for Gapping Requirements

HOW TO INSTALL OPEN-JOINT CLADDING/CONTINUED
TREX TRANSCEND®

VERTICAL ORIENTATION OF CLADDING

(Wood furring strips represented below.)

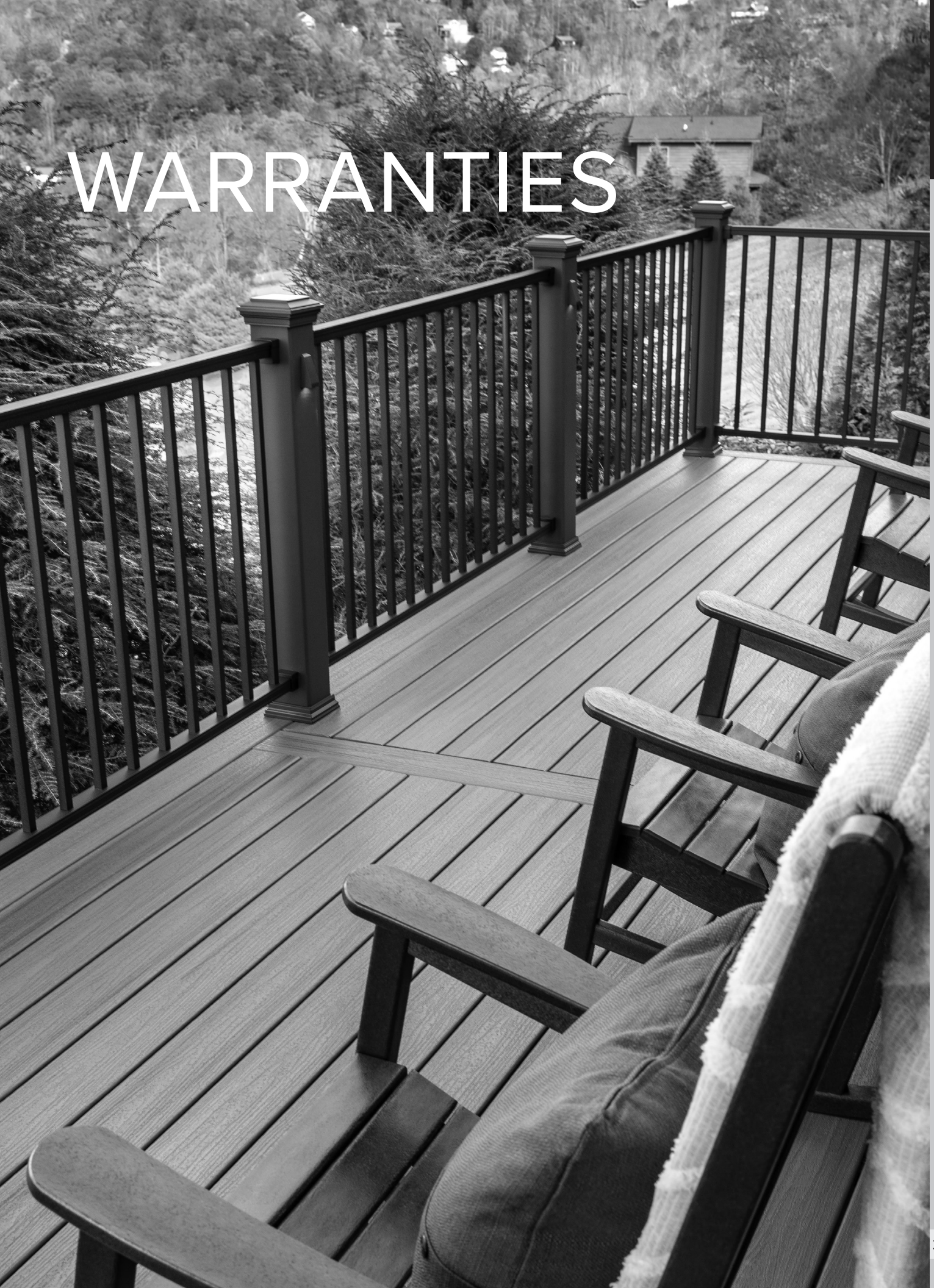


See Page 41 for Gapping Requirements

- Install furring strips at a maximum of 24" on center.
- Use two approved fasteners for attaching cladding to furring strips.
- Where cladding boards abutt, a 1-1/2" x 3-1/2" furring strip must be used.
- Always ensure cladding boards are plumb.

NOTE: Construction methods are always improving. Please refer to www.trex.com for the most up-to-date installation requirements.

WARRANTIES



TREX® DECKING, FASCIA & CLADDING LIMITED WARRANTY

Trex Company, Inc. (hereinafter "Trex") warrants to the original end-use purchaser ("Purchaser") that, for the applicable Warranty Period set forth in Table I below, when properly installed, used and maintained under normal use and service conditions and in accordance with Trex's written instructions, Trex® product set forth in Table I below (the "Product") shall perform as follows:

Physical Integrity: The Product shall be free from material defects in workmanship and materials, and shall not split, splinter, rot or suffer structural damage from termites or fungal decay.

Fade Resistance: The Product shall not fade in color from light and weathering exposure as measured by color change of (a) more than 5 Delta E (CIE) units for twenty-five years from the date of original purchase, and (b) more than 15 Delta E (CIE) units for the remainder of the Warranty Period, if any. While the Product is designed to resist fading, no material is fade proof when exposed to years of UV exposure and the elements. The Product is designed to resist fading under normal weather conditions and will not fade by more than the number of Delta E (CIE) units indicated above.

Stain Resistance: The Product shall be resistant to permanent staining resulting from spills of food and beverage items including ketchup, mustard, salad oils, tea, wine, coffee, fruit punch, barbeque sauce, sodas and other food and beverage related items that would typically be present on a residential deck, or mold and mildew naturally occurring in the environment, provided that such substances are removed from the Product with soap and water within one (1) week of exposure of the food or beverage to the surface or first appearance of the mold and mildew. Cleaning procedures are described in the Care & Cleaning Guide at www.trex.com.

Not withstanding the foregoing, Trex does not warrant that the Product is stain-proof and does not warrant stain resistance resulting from spilled or otherwise applied food and beverage substances which are not properly cleaned as provided above within one (1) week of exposure. In addition, materials not covered in this stain resistance section of this Limited Warranty include abrasive compounds of acidic or basic pH, paints or stains, strong solvents, metallic rust or other abnormal deck use items, and non-food and non-beverage substances, including but not limited to, biocides, fungicides, plant food, bactericides, cement, concrete, mortar, stucco and colored chalk. Mold and mildew can settle and grow on any outdoor surface, including this Product. You should periodically clean your deck to remove dirt and pollen that can feed mold and mildew. This Limited Warranty does not cover mold and mildew which is not properly cleaned as provided above within one (1) week of first appearance.

Residential/Commercial Application: For purposes of this Limited Warranty, a "residential application" shall refer to an installation of the Product on an individual residence, and a "commercial application" shall refer to any installation of the Product other than on an individual residence.

Term of Limited Warranty: The term of this Limited Warranty for a Product (the "Warranty Period") begins on the date of original purchase and shall be equal to the number of years set forth next to such Product in Table I below.

TABLE I

Product	Residential Warranty Period	Commercial Warranty Period
Trex Signature® Decking andFascia	50 Years	10 Years
Trex® Transcend® Decking and Fascia	50 Years	10 Years
Trex® Cladding	50 Years	25 Years
Trex Select® Decking and Fascia Trex® Composite Decking Trex® Universal Fascia	35 Years	10 Years
Trex® Enhance® Decking and Fascia	25 Years	10 Years

Transferability: With respect to a residential application, this Limited Warranty may be transferred one (1) time, within the five (5) year period beginning from the date of original purchase by the Purchaser, to a subsequent buyer of the property upon which the Product was originally installed. With respect to a commercial application, this Limited Warranty is freely transferable to subsequent buyers of the property upon which the Product was originally installed.

EXCLUSIONS FROM WARRANTY COVERAGE

The Products must be stored, handled, installed, used and maintained in accordance with instructions provided by Trex, and this Limited Warranty is conditioned upon compliance with all such instructions. Copies of Trex's Installation Guides, Technical Information and Care and Cleaning Guides are available from Trex at the address listed below. The materials may also be obtained on Trex's website at trex.com. Any information or suggestion by Trex with respect to the Products concerning applications, specifications or compliance with codes and standards, including building or safety codes, is provided solely for Purchaser's convenient reference and is made without any representation as to accuracy or suitability. Purchaser must verify and test the suitability of any information with respect to the Products for Purchaser's specific application. This Limited Warranty does not cover defects caused by:

Exposure to Heat: Direct or indirect contact with extreme heat sources (over 275°F/135°C) may cause fading and may damage the surface of the Product, and any effects of such exposure are expressly excluded from coverage under this Limited Warranty.

Surface Damage: Never use metal shovels or sharp-edged tools to remove snow and ice on the surface of the Product. If the surface of the Product is damaged or punctured, this Limited Warranty will be voided.

Paint or Other Materials Applied to the Product: If paint, solvents or other coating materials are applied to the Product, this Limited Warranty will be voided.

Other Exclusions: This Limited Warranty shall not cover any condition attributable to: (1) improper installation of the Product and/or failure to abide by Trex's installation guidelines, including but not limited to improper gapping; (2) use of the Product beyond normal use or service conditions, or in an application not recommended by Trex's guidelines and local building codes; (3) movement, distortion, collapse or settling of the ground or the supporting structure on which the Product is installed; (4) any act of God (such as flooding, hurricane, earthquake, lightning, etc.), environmental condition (such as air pollution, mold, mildew, etc.), staining from foreign substances other than food and beverages (such as dirt, grease, oil, etc.); (5) improper handling, storage, abuse or neglect of the Product by Purchaser, the transferee or third parties; (6) any fading or staining not on the walking surface of the Product (i.e., the underside or the ends of the Product); or (7) ordinary wear and tear.

Excluded Products: This Warranty shall not apply to any Trex products not listed in Table I, including, but not limited to, Trex Transcend® railing, Trex Enhance® railing, Trex Select® railing, Trex Signature® railing, Trex Decklighting products, TrexTrim™ products, Trex® Outdoor Lighting products, Trex Hideaway® Fasteners, and Trex® Fencing, which are excluded from this Limited Warranty. Each of these products has a separate Limited Warranty.

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING A CLAIM UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY

To make a claim under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser must do the following:

1. If the Purchaser is making a claim relating to the Limited Warranty on stain resistance, Purchaser must do as follows:

(a) Purchaser must try to clean the affected area of the deck by using the cleaning procedures described above (and provided in more detail in the Care & Cleaning Guide found at www.trex.com) within one (1) week of exposure of the food or beverage to the Product or first appearance of the mold and mildew.

(b) If the affected area remains reasonably unsatisfactory after Purchaser has tried these cleaning procedures, then Purchaser must have the affected area of the deck professionally cleaned at Purchaser's expense.

(c) If the affected area remains reasonably unsatisfactory after the professional cleaning, Purchaser may make a claim under this Limited Warranty, provided that such claim is made within thirty (30) days after the professional cleaning.

2. To make a claim under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser, or the transferee, shall send to Trex, within the Warranty Period referred to above, a written description and photographs of the claimed defect, proof of purchase, and if the claim relates to the Limited Warranty on stain resistance, proof of compliance with paragraph 1 above, to the following address:

Trex Company, Inc.
Customer Relations
2500 Trex Way
Winchester, VA 22601

TREX® DECKING, FASCIA & CLADDING LIMITED WARRANTY (CONTINUED)

3. Upon confirmation by an authorized Trex representative of a valid claim hereunder, Trex's sole responsibility shall be, at its option, to either: (a) replace the affected Product with new Product in an amount equal to the volume (linear feet) of defective material; or (b) refund the portion of the purchase price paid by Purchaser for such affected Product (not including the cost of its initial installation). Replacement Products will be as close in color, design, and quality to the original Products as reasonably possible, in Trex's discretion and determination, but Trex does not guarantee an exact match as colors and designs may change and Trex's obligation as to replacement shall further be limited to replacement with the styles and colors of the Product that are available at the time of the replacement. **THE REMEDIES STATED IN THIS PARAGRAPH ARE PURCHASER'S SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES FOR ANY PRODUCT THAT FAILS TO CONFORM TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY.**

If a valid warranty claim hereunder is made during year eleven (11) or any year thereafter through the expiration of the applicable Warranty Period after the original purchase, recovery will be prorated in accordance with Table II, below. If Trex is providing replacement materials, it may elect to replace the percentage listed in Table II, below, of boards otherwise meeting the requirements for a claim, or if it is refunding the purchase price, it may elect to refund the percentage listed below in Table II of the purchase price of Product otherwise meeting the requirements for a claim.

TABLE II

Year of Claim	Warranty Period		
	50 Year	35 Year	25 Year
11	90%	80%	80%
12	90%	80%	80%
13	90%	80%	80%
14	90%	80%	60%
15	90%	60%	60%
16	90%	60%	60%
17	70%	60%	40%
18	70%	60%	40%
19	70%	40%	40%
20	70%	40%	20%
21	70%	40%	20%
22	70%	40%	20%
23	50%	20%	10%
24	50%	20%	10%
25	50%	20%	10%
26	50%	20%	–
27	50%	20%	–
28	50%	20%	–
29	30%	10%	–
30	30%	10%	–
31	30%	10%	–
32	30%	10%	–
33	30%	10%	–
34	30%	10%	–
35	30%	10%	–
36	20%	–	–
37	20%	–	–
38	20%	–	–
39	20%	–	–
40	20%	–	–
41	20%	–	–
42	20%	–	–
43	10%	–	–
44	10%	–	–
45	10%	–	–
46	10%	–	–
47	10%	–	–
48	10%	–	–
49	10%	–	–
50	10%	–	–

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, TREX'S SOLE OBLIGATION UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL BE, AT ITS OPTION, REPLACEMENT OF NON-CONFORMING PRODUCTS OR A REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE, AS DESCRIBED ABOVE. PURCHASER ASSUMES ALL RISK WHATSOEVER AS TO THE RESULT OF THE USE OF THE PRODUCTS PURCHASED, WHETHER USED SINGULARLY OR IN COMBINATION WITH ANY OTHER PRODUCTS OR SUBSTANCES.

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL NOT COVER, AND TREX SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR, COSTS AND EXPENSES INCURRED WITH RESPECT TO THE REMOVAL OF DEFECTIVE PRODUCT OR THE INSTALLATION OF REPLACEMENT MATERIALS, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LABOR AND FREIGHT.

No person or entity is authorized by Trex to make and Trex shall not be bound by any statement or representation as to the quality or performance of Product other than as contained in this Limited Warranty. This Limited Warranty may not be altered or amended except in a written instrument signed by Trex and Purchaser.

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES WILL TREX BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, RELIANCE, STATUTORY, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF TIME, LOSS OF REVENUES, INCONVENIENCE, LOSS OF BUSINESS OPPORTUNITIES, OR DAMAGE TO GOOD WILL OR REPUTATION DAMAGES, WHETHER SUCH DAMAGES ARE SOUGHT IN CONTRACT, IN TORT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO NEGLIGENCE AND STRICT LIABILITY) OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES OR SUCH DAMAGES COULD HAVE BEEN REASONABLY FORESEEN, IN CONNECTION WITH, ARISING OUT OF, OR AS A RESULT OF, THE SALE, DELIVERY, INSTALLATION, USE OR LOSS OF USE OF THE PRODUCTS SOLD HEREUNDER, OR FOR ANY LIABILITY OF PURCHASER TO ANY THIRD PARTY WITH RESPECT THERETO AND TREX'S LIABILITY FOR NON-PERSONAL INJURY CLAIMS WITH RESPECT TO DEFECTIVE PRODUCT SHALL IN NO EVENT EXCEED THE REPLACEMENT OF SUCH PRODUCT OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE, AS DESCRIBED ABOVE.

Some States or Provinces do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from State to State or Province to Province.

Copyright © 2024 Trex Company, Inc.

TREX® FASTENERS LIMITED WARRANTY

Trex Company, Inc. (hereinafter "Trex") warrants to the original end-use purchaser ("Purchaser") that, for the period of time set forth in the following paragraph, when properly installed, used and maintained under normal use and service conditions, and in accordance with Trex's written instructions, Trex® products set forth in Table I below (the "Product") shall be free from material defects in workmanship and materials, and shall not structurally fail due to corrosion or rust.

TABLE I

Product
Trex Hideaway® Hidden Fasteners
Trex Hideaway® Decking Screws
Trex Hideaway® Fascia Screws

Term of Limited Warranty: The term of this Limited Warranty for a Product (the "Warranty Period") begins on the date of original purchase and shall be equal to the warranty period of the Trex Decking Product on which it is installed which can be found in the "Trex Decking, Fascia and Cladding Limited Warranty" available from Trex at the address listed below and on Trex's website at trex.com. If the Product is installed on other brands of woodplastic composite, cellular PVC or mineral-based composite decking, the warranty shall be twenty-five (25) years from the date of original purchase for a residential application, and ten (10) years from the date of original purchase for a commercial application.

Residential/Commercial Application: For purposes of this warranty, a "residential application" shall refer to an installation of the Product on an individual residence, and a "commercial application" shall refer to any installation of the Product other than on an individual residence.

Transferability: With respect to a residential application, this warranty may be transferred one (1) time, within the five- (5) year period beginning from the date of original purchase by the Purchaser, to a subsequent buyer of the property upon which the Product was originally installed. With respect to a commercial application, this warranty is freely transferable to subsequent buyers of the property upon which the Product was originally installed.

EXCLUSIONS FROM WARRANTY COVERAGE

This warranty shall not apply to any Trex products not listed in Table I, including, but not limited to, installation drive bits, counterbore tools and hand-held installation tools.

The Products must be stored, handled, installed, used and maintained in accordance with instructions provided by Trex, and this Limited Warranty is conditioned upon compliance with all such instructions. Copies of Trex's Installation Guides and Technical Information are available from Trex at the address listed below. The materials may also be obtained on Trex's website at trex.com.

Any information or suggestion by Trex with respect to the Products concerning applications, specifications or compliance with codes and standards, including building or safety codes, is provided solely for Purchaser's convenient reference, and is made without any representation as to accuracy or suitability. Purchaser must verify and test the suitability of any information with respect to the Products for Purchaser's specific application.

Trex does not warrant against and is not responsible for any condition attributable to: (1) improper installation of Product and/or failure to abide by Trex's installation guidelines, including but not limited to improper gapping; (2) use of Product beyond normal use and service conditions, or in an application not recommended by Trex's guidelines and local building codes; (3) movement, distortion, collapse or settling of the ground or the supporting structure on which Product is installed; (4) any act of God (such as flooding, hurricane, earthquake, lightning, etc.), environmental condition (such as air pollution, mold, mildew, etc.); (5) variations or changes in color of Product; (6) improper handling, storage, abuse or neglect of Product by Purchaser, the transferee or third parties; or (7) ordinary wear and tear.

Additionally, for Product except the Trex Hideaway® Hidden Fasteners, Trex does not warrant against and is not responsible for any condition attributable to: (1) installation exposed to chemicals used in pools and hot tubs; (2) exposure to de-icing products containing chemicals or salt; (3) installation in high salinity environments, such as installations within 1500 feet of any body of salt water or in direct contact with any body of water; (4) consistently wet applications; (5) installation on decks installed at ground level, decks installed over sleeper systems; (6) installation exposed to ground contact; (7) Products driven into lumber that contains corrosive tannins; or (8) use of the Products in any application other than securing wood alternative decking and fascia products to wood framing.

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING A CLAIM UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY

To make a claim under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser, or the transferee, shall send to Trex, within the Warranty Period referred to above, a written description and photographs of the claimed defect and proof of purchase, to the following address:

Trex Company, Inc.
Customer Relations
2500 Trex Way
Winchester, VA 22601

Upon confirmation by an authorized Trex representative of a valid claim hereunder, Trex's sole responsibility shall be, at its option, to either: (a) replace the affected Product with new Product in an amount equal to the amount of defective material; or (b) refund the portion of the purchase price paid by Purchaser for such affected Product (not including the cost of its initial installation). Replacement Products will be as close in color, design, and quality to the original Products as reasonably possible, in Trex's discretion and determination, but Trex does not guarantee an exact match as colors and designs may change and Trex's obligation as to replacement shall further be limited to replacement with the styles and colors of the Product that are available at the time of the replacement.

THE REMEDIES STATED IN THIS PARAGRAPH ARE PURCHASER'S SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES FOR ANY PRODUCT THAT FAILS TO CONFORM TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL NOT COVER AND TREX SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR COSTS AND EXPENSES INCURRED WITH RESPECT TO THE REMOVAL OF DEFECTIVE PRODUCT OR THE INSTALLATION OF REPLACEMENT MATERIALS, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LABOR AND FREIGHT.

TREX® FASTENERS LIMITED WARRANTY (continued)

If a valid warranty claim hereunder is made during year eleven (11) or any year thereafter through the expiration of the applicable Warranty Period after the original purchase, recovery will be prorated in accordance with Table II, below. If Trex is providing replacement materials, it may elect to replace the percentage listed in Table II, below, of Product otherwise meeting the requirements for a claim, or if it is refunding the purchase price, it may elect to refund the percentage listed below in Table II of the purchase price of Product otherwise meeting the requirements for a claim.

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES WILL TREX BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, RELIANCE, STATUTORY, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF TIME, LOSS OF REVENUES, INCONVENIENCE, LOSS OF BUSINESS OPPORTUNITIES OR DAMAGE TO GOOD WILL OR REPUTATION DAMAGES, WHETHER SUCH DAMAGES ARE SOUGHT IN CONTRACT, IN TORT (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, NEGLIGENCE AND STRICT LIABILITY) OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES OR SUCH DAMAGES COULD HAVE BEEN REASONABLY FORESEEN, IN CONNECTION WITH, ARISING OUT OF, OR AS A RESULT OF, THE SALE, DELIVERY, INSTALLATION, USE OR LOSS OF USE OF THE PRODUCT SOLD HEREUNDER, OR FOR ANY LIABILITY OF PURCHASER TO ANY THIRD PARTY WITH RESPECT THERETO AND TREX'S LIABILITY FOR NON-PERSONAL INJURY CLAIMS WITH RESPECT TO DEFECTIVE PRODUCT SHALL IN NO EVENT EXCEED THE REPLACEMENT OF SUCH PRODUCT OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE, AS DESCRIBED ABOVE.

TABLE II

Year of Claim	Warranty Period		
	50 Year	35 Year	25 Year
11	90%	80%	80%
12	90%	80%	80%
13	90%	80%	80%
14	90%	80%	60%
15	90%	60%	60%
16	90%	60%	60%
17	70%	60%	40%
18	70%	60%	40%
19	70%	40%	40%
20	70%	40%	20%
21	70%	40%	20%
22	70%	40%	20%
23	50%	20%	10%
24	50%	20%	10%
25	50%	20%	10%
26	50%	20%	–
27	50%	20%	–
28	50%	20%	–
29	30%	10%	–
30	30%	10%	–
31	30%	10%	–
32	30%	10%	–
33	30%	10%	–
34	30%	10%	–
35	30%	10%	–
36	20%	–	–
37	20%	–	–
38	20%	–	–
39	20%	–	–
40	20%	–	–
41	20%	–	–
42	20%	–	–
43	10%	–	–
44	10%	–	–
45	10%	–	–
46	10%	–	–
47	10%	–	–
48	10%	–	–
49	10%	–	–
50	10%	–	–

Copyright © 2025 Trex Company, Inc.

TREX® STEEL RAILING LIMITED WARRANTY

Trex Company, Inc. (hereinafter "Trex") warrants to the original end-use purchaser ("Purchaser") that, for the applicable Warranty Period set forth below, when properly installed, used and maintained under normal use and service conditions, and in accordance with Trex's written instructions, Trex® product set forth in Table I below (the "Product") shall be free from material defects in workmanship and materials, and shall not crack, peel, blister, flake, split, or suffer excessive corrosion. Corrosion is termed extensive when there are multiple rust-through perforations on the same piece of Product.

Residential/Commercial Application: For purposes of this warranty, a "residential application" shall refer to an installation of the Product on an individual residence, and a "commercial application" shall refer to any installation of the Product other than on an individual residence.

Term of Limited Warranty: The term of this Limited Warranty for a Product (the "Warranty Period") begins on the date of original purchase and shall be either (1) for a period of 1 year for Product located within 1 mile or less from a saltwater coast line OR (2) for Product located more than 1 mile from a saltwater coastline, equal to the number of years set forth next to such Product in Table I below.

TABLE I

Product	Residential Warranty Period	Commercial Warranty Period
Trex Enhance™ Steel Railing, Trex Select™ Steel Mesh Railing (Mesh Infill Panel ONLY)	15 Years	10 Years

Transferability: With respect to a residential application, this warranty may be transferred one (1) time, within the five (5) year period beginning from the date of original purchase by the Purchaser, to a subsequent buyer of the property upon which the Product was originally installed. With respect to a commercial application, this warranty is freely transferable to subsequent buyers of the property upon which the Product was originally installed.

EXCLUSIONS FROM WARRANTY COVERAGE

Notwithstanding the foregoing, (a) this warranty shall not apply to any Trex products not listed in Table I, including, but not limited to, Trex decking products, Trex cladding products, Trex fascia products, Trex fasteners, Trex Deck Lighting products, Trex Signature® railing, Trex Signature® X-Series™ railing, Trex Transcend® railing, Trex Select™ aluminum and composite railing, Trex Enhance® composite railing, Trex Fencing and TrexTrim (which each have separate warranties); (b) with respect to installations where the atmosphere is influenced by a body of salt water (or other contaminant conditions), failure to adhere to the cleaning guidelines available at www.trex.com will void this warranty with respect to any condition resulting from such failure; and (c) Products that have had direct contact with salt water are excluded from this warranty.

The Product must be stored, handled, installed, used and maintained in accordance with instructions provided by Trex, and this Limited Warranty is conditioned upon compliance with all such instructions. Copies of Trex's Installation Guides, Technical Information and Care and Cleaning Guides are available from Trex at the address listed below. The materials may also be obtained on Trex's website at trex.com.

Any information or suggestion by Trex with respect to the Product concerning applications, specifications or compliance with codes and standards, including building or safety codes, is provided solely for Purchaser's convenient reference and is made without any representation as to accuracy or suitability. Purchaser must verify and test the suitability of any information with respect to the Product for Purchaser's specific application.

Trex does not warrant against, and is not responsible for, any condition attributable to: (1) improper installation of Product and/or failure to abide by Trex's installation guidelines; (2) use of Product beyond normal use and service conditions, or in an application not recommended by Trex's guidelines and local building codes; (3) movement, distortion, collapse or settling of the ground or the supporting structure on which Product is installed; (4) any act of God (such as flooding, hurricane, earthquake, lightning, etc.), environmental condition (such as air pollution, mold, mildew, etc.), exposure to corrosive elements or atmospheric contaminants (such as salt spray, salt air, chemicals (including pool and ice removal chemicals), pollution, etc.), staining from foreign substances (such as dirt, grease, oil, etc.), tarnishing, welding, lawn care equipment damage, or normal weathering (defined as exposure to sunlight, weather and atmosphere which will cause any colored surface to gradually fade, chalk, or accumulate dirt or stains); (5) variations or changes in color of Product; (6) surface corrosion from scratches, nicks and dents; (7) improper handling, storage, abuse or neglect of Product by Purchaser, the transferee or third parties; (8) ordinary wear and tear; (9) vandalism; or (10) other causes beyond the control of Trex.

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING A CLAIM UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY

To make a claim under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser, or the transferee, shall send to Trex, within the Warranty Period referred to above, a written description and photographs of the claimed defect and proof of purchase, to the following address:

Trex Company, Inc.
Customer Relations
2500 Trex Way
Winchester, VA 22601

Upon confirmation by an authorized Trex representative of a valid claim hereunder, Trex's sole responsibility shall be, at its option, to either: (a) replace the affected Product with new Product in an amount equal to the amount of defective material; or (b) refund the portion of the purchase price paid by Purchaser for such affected Product (not including the cost of its initial installation, in accordance with Table II below). Replacement Product will be as close in color, design and quality to the original Product as reasonably possible, in Trex's discretion and determination, but Trex does not guarantee an exact match as colors and designs may change and Trex's obligation as to replacement shall further be limited to replacement with the styles and colors of the Product that are available at the time of the replacement. The remedies stated in this paragraph are purchaser's sole and exclusive remedies for any product that fails to conform to this limited warranty.

TREX® STEEL RAILING LIMITED WARRANTY (CONTIUNED)

If a valid warranty claim hereunder is made during year seven (7) or any year thereafter through the expiration of the applicable Warranty Period after the original purchase, recovery will be prorated in accordance with Table II, below. If Trex is providing replacement materials, it may elect to replace the percentage listed in Table II, below, of Product otherwise meeting the requirements for a claim, or if it is refunding the purchase price, it may elect to refund the percentage listed below in Table II of the purchase price of Product otherwise meeting the requirements for a claim.

TABLE II

Year of Claim	Recovery
7	80%
8	80%
9	60%
10	60%
11	40%
12	40%
13	20%
14	10%
15	10%

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, TREX'S SOLE OBLIGATION UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL BE, AT ITS OPTION, REPLACEMENT OF NON-CONFORMING PRODUCT OR A REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE, AS DESCRIBED ABOVE. PURCHASER ASSUMES ALL RISK WHATSOEVER AS TO THE RESULT OF THE USE OF THE PRODUCT PURCHASED, WHETHER USED SINGULARLY OR IN COMBINATION WITH ANY OTHER PRODUCTS OR SUBSTANCES.

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL NOT COVER, AND TREX SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR, COSTS AND EXPENSES INCURRED WITH RESPECT TO THE REMOVAL OF DEFECTIVE PRODUCT OR THE INSTALLATION OF REPLACEMENT MATERIALS, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LABOR AND FREIGHT.

No person or entity is authorized by Trex to make, and Trex shall not be bound by, any statement or representation as to the quality or performance of Product other than as contained in this Limited Warranty. This Limited Warranty may not be altered or amended except in a written instrument signed by Trex and Purchaser.

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES WILL TREX BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, RELIANCE, STATUTORY, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF TIME, LOSS OF REVENUES, INCONVENIENCE, LOSS OF BUSINESS OPPORTUNITIES OR DAMAGE TO GOOD WILL OR REPUTATION DAMAGES, WHETHER SUCH DAMAGES ARE SOUGHT IN CONTRACT, IN TORT (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, NEGLIGENCE AND STRICT LIABILITY) OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES OR SUCH DAMAGES COULD HAVE BEEN REASONABLY FORESEEN, IN CONNECTION WITH, ARISING OUT OF, OR AS A RESULT OF, THE SALE, DELIVERY, INSTALLATION, USE OR LOSS OF USE OF THE PRODUCT SOLD HEREUNDER, OR FOR ANY LIABILITY OF PURCHASER TO ANY THIRD PARTY WITH RESPECT THERETO AND TREX'S LIABILITY FOR NON-PERSONAL INJURY CLAIMS WITH RESPECT TO DEFECTIVE PRODUCT SHALL IN NO EVENT EXCEED THE REPLACEMENT OF SUCH PRODUCT OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE, AS DESCRIBED ABOVE.

Some States or Provinces do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from State to State or Province to Province.

Copyright © 2025 Trex Company, Inc.

TREX ALUMINUM AND COMPOSITE RAILING AND ANCILLARY PRODUCTS LIMITED WARRANTY

Trex Company, Inc. (hereinafter "Trex") warrants to the original end-use purchaser ("Purchaser") that, for the applicable Warranty Period set forth in Table I below, when properly installed, used and maintained under normal use and service conditions, and in accordance with Trex's written instructions, Trex® product set forth in Table I below (the "Product") shall be free from material defects in workmanship and materials, and shall not split, splinter, rot or suffer structural damage from termites or fungal decay.

Residential/Commercial Application: For purposes of this warranty, a "residential application" shall refer to an installation of the Product on an individual residence, and a "commercial application" shall refer to any installation of the Product other than on an individual residence.

Term of Limited Warranty: The term of this Limited Warranty for a Product (the "Warranty Period") begins on the date of original purchase and shall be equal to the number of years set forth next to such Product in Table I below.

TABLE I

Product	Residential Warranty Period	Commercial Warranty Period
Trex Signature® Aluminum Railing, Trex Signature® X-Series™ Railing	50 Years	25 Years
Trex Signature® X-Series™ Cable Rail (Cable Infill/Assemblies ONLY)	10 Years	10 Years
Trex Transcend® Composite Railing	35 Years* or 25 Years*	10 Years
Select® Composite Railing, Trex Enhance® Composite Railing, Select™ Aluminum Railing, Trex® Fencing, and TrexTrim™	25 Years	10 Years
Trex® Deck Lighting LEDs and Housings)	7 Years	7 Years
Trex® Deck Lighting (Transformer, Timer, Dimmer, WiFi Controller, Solar Components)	3 Years	3 Years
Trex® Deck Lighting (Solar Battery)	1 Year	1 Year

*The 35-Year Residential Warranty Period for Trex Transcend Railing applies only in the United States of America, except in Arizona, Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Louisiana, New Mexico, Missouri and Texas. In these States and all other Countries, Trex Transcend Railing has a 25-Year Residential Warranty Period.

Transferability: With respect to a residential application, this warranty may be transferred one (1) time, within the five (5) year period beginning from the date of original purchase by the Purchaser, to a subsequent buyer of the property upon which the Product was originally installed. With respect to a commercial application, this warranty is freely transferable to subsequent buyers of the property upon which the Product was originally installed.

EXCLUSIONS FROM WARRANTY COVERAGE

Notwithstanding the foregoing, (a) the warranty for Trex® Deck Lighting Products (excluding Trex® Solar Post Cap Lights) is valid only in each case provided that a Trex transformer is used (with no warranty on any components if a Trex transformer is not used), and any other Trex® Deck Lighting parts or accessories not listed in Table I above shall not be warranted; (b) this warranty shall not apply to any Trex products not listed in Table I, including, but not limited to, Trex decking products, Trex cladding products, Trex fascia products, Trex SelectTM Steel Mesh (infill panel), Trex EnhanceTM Steel Railing, and Trex fasteners (which each have separate warranties); and (c) with respect to installations where the atmosphere is influenced by a body of salt water (or other contaminant conditions), failure to adhere to the cleaning guidelines available at www.trex.com will void this warranty with respect to any condition resulting from such failure.

The Product must be stored, handled, installed, used and maintained in accordance with instructions provided by Trex, and this Limited Warranty is conditioned upon compliance with all such instructions. Copies of Trex's Installation Guides, Technical Information and Care and Cleaning Guides are available from Trex at the address listed below. The materials may also be obtained on Trex's website at trex.com.

Any information or suggestion by Trex with respect to the Product concerning applications, specifications or compliance with codes and standards, including building or safety codes, is provided solely for Purchaser's convenient reference and is made without any representation as to accuracy or suitability. Purchaser must verify and test the suitability of any information with respect to the Product for Purchaser's specific application.

Trex does not warrant against, and is not responsible for, any condition attributable to: (1) improper installation of Product and/or failure to abide by Trex's installation guidelines; (2) use of Product beyond normal use and service conditions, or in an application not recommended by Trex's guidelines and local building codes; (3) movement, distortion, collapse or settling of the ground or the supporting structure on which Product is installed; (4) any act of God (such as flooding, hurricane, earthquake, lightning, etc.), environmental condition (such as air pollution, mold, mildew, etc.), exposure to corrosive elements (such as chemicals, pollution, etc.), or atmospheric contaminants (such as salt spray, salt air, etc.) if proper care and cleaning in accordance with the "Trex Signature®, Trex Signature® X-Series™, Trex Select™ Aluminum Care and Cleaning Guide" was not adhered to, staining from foreign substances (such as dirt, grease, oil, etc.), tarnishing, or normal weathering (defined as exposure to sunlight, weather and atmosphere which will cause any colored surface to gradually fade, chalk, or accumulate dirt or stains); (5) variations or changes in color of Product; (6) improper handling, storage, abuse or neglect of Product by Purchaser, the transferee or third parties; (7) ordinary wear and tear; (8) vandalism; or (9) other causes beyond the control of Trex.

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING A CLAIM UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY

To make a claim under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser, or the transferee, shall send to Trex, within the Warranty Period referred to above, a written description and photographs of the claimed defect and proof of purchase, to the following address:

Trex Company, Inc.
Customer Relations
2500 Trex Way
Winchester, VA 22601

Upon confirmation by an authorized Trex representative of a valid claim hereunder, Trex's sole responsibility shall be, at its option, to either: (a) replace the affected Product with new Product in an amount equal to the amount of defective material; or (b) refund the portion of the purchase price paid by Purchaser for such affected Product (not including the cost of its initial installation). Replacement Product will be as close in color, design and quality to the original Product as reasonably possible, in Trex's discretion and determination, but Trex does not guarantee an exact match as colors and designs may change and Trex's obligation as to replacement shall further be limited to replacement with the styles and colors of the Product that are available at the time of the replacement. The remedies stated in this paragraph are purchaser's sole and exclusive remedies for any product that fails to conform to this limited warranty.

TREX ALUMINUM AND COMPOSITE RAILING AND ANCILLARY PRODUCTS LIMITED WARRANTY (CONTINUED)

If a valid warranty claim hereunder is made during year eleven (11) or any year thereafter through the expiration of the applicable Warranty Period after the original purchase, recovery will be prorated in accordance with Table II, below. If Trex is providing replacement materials, it may elect to replace the percentage listed in Table II, below, of Product otherwise meeting the requirements for a claim, or if it is refunding the purchase price, it may elect to refund the percentage listed below in Table II of the purchase price of Product otherwise meeting the requirements for a claim.

TABLE II

	Warranty Period				
	50 Year	35 Year	25 Year	15 Year	10 Year
Year of Claim	Recovery				
7	100%	100%	100%	80%	80%
8	100%	100%	100%	80%	80%
9	100%	100%	100%	60%	60%
10	100%	100%	100%	60%	60%
11	90%	80%	80%	40%	
12	90%	80%	80%	40%	
13	90%	80%	80%	20%	
14	90%	80%	60%	10%	
15	90%	60%	60%	10%	
16	90%	60%	60%		
17	70%	60%	40%		
18	70%	60%	40%		
19	70%	40%	40%		
20	70%	40%	20%		
21	70%	40%	20%		
22	70%	40%	20%		
23	50%	20%	10%		
24	50%	20%	10%		
25	50%	20%	10%		
26	50%	20%			
27	50%	20%			
28	50%	20%			
29	30%	10%			
30	30%	10%			
31	30%	10%			
32	30%	10%			
33	30%	10%			
34	30%	10%			
35	30%	10%			
36	20%				
37	20%				
38	20%				
39	20%				
40	20%				
41	20%				
42	20%				
43	20%				
44	20%				
45	20%				
46	20%				
47	20%				
48	10%				
49	10%				
50	10%				

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, TREX'S SOLE OBLIGATION UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL BE, AT ITS OPTION, REPLACEMENT OF NON-CONFORMING PRODUCT OR A REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE, AS DESCRIBED ABOVE. PURCHASER ASSUMES ALL RISK WHATSOEVER AS TO THE RESULT OF THE USE OF THE PRODUCT PURCHASED, WHETHER USED SINGULARLY OR IN COMBINATION WITH ANY OTHER PRODUCTS OR SUBSTANCES.

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL NOT COVER, AND TREX SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR, COSTS AND EXPENSES INCURRED WITH RESPECT TO THE REMOVAL OF DEFECTIVE PRODUCT OR THE INSTALLATION OF REPLACEMENT MATERIALS, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LABOR AND FREIGHT.

No person or entity is authorized by Trex to make and Trex shall not be bound by any statement or representation as to the quality or performance of Product other than as contained in this Limited Warranty. This Limited Warranty may not be altered or amended except in a written instrument signed by Trex and Purchaser.

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES WILL TREX BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, RELIANCE, STATUTORY, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF TIME, LOSS OF REVENUES, INCONVENIENCE, LOSS OF BUSINESS OPPORTUNITIES OR DAMAGE TO GOOD WILL OR REPUTATION DAMAGES, WHETHER SUCH DAMAGES ARE SOUGHT IN CONTRACT, IN TORT (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, NEGLIGENCE AND STRICT LIABILITY) OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES OR SUCH DAMAGES COULD HAVE BEEN REASONABLY FORESEEN, IN CONNECTION WITH, ARISING OUT OF, OR AS A RESULT OF, THE SALE, DELIVERY, INSTALLATION, USE OR LOSS OF USE OF THE PRODUCT SOLD HEREUNDER, OR FOR ANY LIABILITY OF PURCHASER TO ANY THIRD PARTY WITH RESPECT THERETO AND TREX'S LIABILITY FOR NON-PERSONAL INJURY CLAIMS WITH RESPECT TO DEFECTIVE PRODUCT SHALL IN NO EVENT EXCEED THE REPLACEMENT OF SUCH PRODUCT OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE, AS DESCRIBED ABOVE.

Some States or Provinces do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from State to State or Province to Province.

Copyright © 2025 Trex Company, Inc.

TREXPRO® RESIDENTAL LABOR LIMITED WARRANTY

Trex Company, Inc. (hereinafter "Trex") warrants to the holder of this labor warranty ("Owner"), that if a breach of warranty occurs with respect to the Owner's Trex® decking, railing, fascia, cladding and/or fasteners (the "Products") under either the Trex Decking, Fascia and Cladding Limited Warranty, the Trex Aluminum and Composite Railing and Ancillary Products Limited Warranty, the Trex Steel Railing Limited Warranty, or the Trex Fasteners Limited Warranty (the "Warranties"), and provided that a TrexPro® contractor installed the Products and properly registered the Warranties, Trex will pay for all reasonable labor expenses in replacing the defective Products. The term of this Warranty, beginning on the date of final installation of the Products, shall be as follows:

TABLE I

Contractor Level	If Trex decking OR Trex railing is installed (but not both)	If both Trex decking AND Trex railing are installed	If Trex decking, Trex railing AND Trex fasteners are installed
TrexPro	1 Year	2 Years	3 Years
TrexPro Gold	3 Years	6 Years	8 Years
TrexPro Platinum	5 Years	10 Years	12 Years

In order for railing to be covered under this labor warranty, and in order to qualify for the Trex decking AND Trex railing extended coverage, the railing (rails, infills and hardware) must be totally comprised of Trex Signature®, Trex Signature® X-Series™, Trex Transcend® and/or Trex Select® railing materials.

In order for fasteners to be covered under this labor warranty, and in order to qualify for the Trex decking, railing AND fasteners extended coverage, the railing (rails, infills and hardware) must be totally comprised of Trex Signature®, Trex Signature® X-Series™, Trex Transcend® and/or Trex Select® railing materials and all applicable fasteners that Trex supplies must be installed and cannot be substituted with fasteners supplied by others.

This labor warranty excludes coverage for Enhance® Basics and Enhance® Naturals decking and fascia, and Trex Enhance® railings.

In order for fascia to be covered under this labor warranty, either Trex decking or Trex railing (or both) need to be installed.

This labor warranty covers only residential installations.

This labor warranty may be transferred one (1) time, within the five (5) year period beginning from the date of original purchase by Owner, to a subsequent buyer of the property upon which the Product was originally installed.

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING A CLAIM UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY

To make a claim under this labor warranty, Owner shall send to Trex, within the warranty period referred to above, a description of the claimed defect and proof of purchase to the following address:

Trex Company, Inc.
Customer Relations
2500 Trex Way
Winchester, VA 22601

Upon confirmation by an authorized Trex representative of a defect covered by one of the Warranties, the prior registration of Owner's Warranties and compliance with all other terms of this labor warranty, Trex shall (1) replace the Product under the terms of the applicable Warranty, and (2) arrange for a local TrexPro contractor to replace, remove and dispose of the defective Product, at Trex's cost.

This labor warranty may not be altered or amended except in a written instrument signed by Trex and Owner.

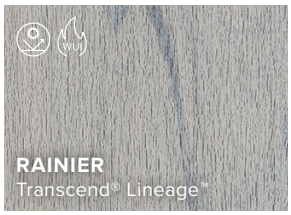
TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES WILL TREX BE LIABLE FOR ANY COST OTHER THAN LABOR COSTS TO REPLACE, REMOVE AND DISPOSE OF DEFECTIVE TREX PRODUCT. TREX SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY OTHER INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, WHETHER SUCH DAMAGES ARE SOUGH IN CONTRACT, IN TORT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO NEGLIGENCE AND STRICT LIABILITY) OR OTHERWISE.

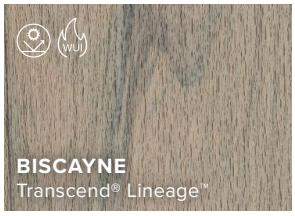
Any TrexPro contractor who replaces Owner's Products under this labor warranty is independently owned and operated and is neither affiliated with nor an agent or representative of Trex. Trex makes no representations or warranties as to, and is not responsible for, the performance, acts or omissions of such contractor. It is the ultimate responsibility of the Owner to approve such contractor prior to any work commencing.

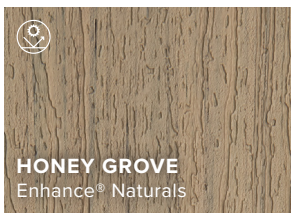
Some States or Provinces do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from State to State or Province to Province. This warranty shall only be applicable and enforceable in the United States of America and Canada.

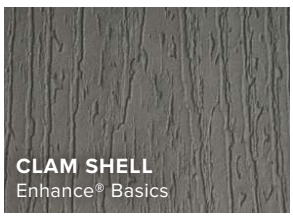
Copyright © 2024 Trex Company, Inc.

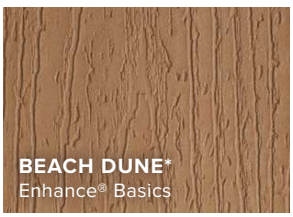
DECKING COLOR PALETTE











SunComfortable™ NOTICEABLY COOLER DECKING

INDICATES SUNCOMFORTABLE™ PRODUCTS

Our SunComfortable™ products with heat-mitigating technology are designed to be cooler than most other composite decking products of a similar color. Although engineered to be more comfortable, they can still get hot to the touch when direct sunlight and high temperatures converge for extended periods of time. On such days, care should be taken.

WUI

Boards with this symbol are Wildland Urban Interface (WUI) compliant, making them an excellent option for areas prone to wildfires.

**Beach Dune and Coastal Bluff will be discontinued effective October 2025*

RAILING COLOR PALETTE

ALUMINUM:

COMPOSITE:

COVER PHOTO:
© 2024 Warner Bros. Discovery, Inc. or its subsidiaries and affiliates. All rights reserved.

FRONT:
Trex Transcend® Lineage® Decking in Carmel (CL) with Trex Signature® Mesh & Glass Railing in Charcoal Black (BK)

BACK:
Trex Transcend® Lineage® Decking in Island Mist (IM) with Transcend® Railing in Classic White (WT)

Trex

Engineering What's Next in Outdoor Living®

DECKING | RAILING | LIGHTING | FASCIA | KITCHENS | FURNITURE | PERGOLA | DRAINAGE
SPIRAL STAIRS | CORNHOLE | LATTICE | CLADDING | HIDDEN FASTENERS | FENCING

Visit **trex.com** or call **1-800-BUY-TREX**

FIND US ON

© 2025 Trex Company, Inc. All rights reserved. Trex®, the Trex logo, TrexPro®, Enhance®, Trex Select®, Transcend®, Lineage®, Trex Signature®, Trex® OutdoorLighting, and Trex Hideaway® are either federally registered trademarks, trademarks or trade dress of Trex Company, Inc., Winchester, Virginia or its licensees.